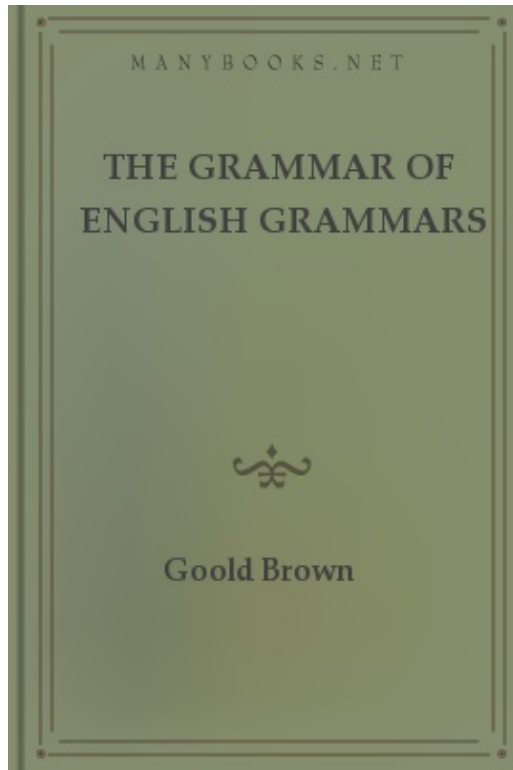




CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER X.

CHAPTER XI.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VI.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VIII.

CHAPTER I

CHAPTER II

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VI.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.
CHAPTER V.
CHAPTER VI.
CHAPTER VII.
CHAPTER VIII.
CHAPTER IX.
CHAPTER X.
CHAPTER XI.
CHAPTER I.
CHAPTER II.
CHAPTER III.
CHAPTER IV.
CHAPTER V.
CHAPTER VI.

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS,

WITH

AN INTRODUCTION

HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL;

THE WHOLE

METHODICALLY ARRANGED AND AMPLY ILLUSTRATED;

WITH

FORMS OF CORRECTING AND OF PARSING, IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION, EXAMPLES FOR PARSING, QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION, EXERCISES FOR WRITING, OBSERVATIONS FOR THE ADVANCED STUDENT, DECISIONS AND PROOFS FOR THE SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTED POINTS, OCCASIONAL STRICTURES AND DEFENCES, AN EXHIBITION OF THE SEVERAL METHODS OF ANALYSIS,

AND

A KEY TO THE ORAL EXERCISES:

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

FOUR APPENDIXES,

PERTAINING SEPARATELY TO THE FOUR PARTS OF GRAMMAR.

BY GOOLD BROWN,

AUTHOR OF THE INSTITUTES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, THE FIRST LINES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, ETC.

"So let great authors have their due, that Time, who is the author of authors, be not deprived of his due, which is, farther and farther to discover truth."--LORD BACON.

SIXTH EDITION--REVISED AND IMPROVED.

ENLARGED BY THE ADDITION OF A COPIOUS INDEX OF MATTERS.

BY SAMUEL U. BERRIAN, A. M.

PREFACE

The present performance is, so far as the end could be reached, the fulfillment of a design, formed about twenty-seven years ago, of one day presenting to the world, if I might, something like a complete grammar of the English language;--not a mere work of criticism, nor yet a work too tame, indecisive, and uncritical; for, in books of either of these sorts, our libraries already abound;--not a mere philosophical investigation of what is general or universal in grammar, nor yet a minute detail of what forms only a part of our own philology; for either of these plans falls very far short of such a purpose;--not a mere grammatical compend, abstract, or compilation, sorting with other works already before the public; for, in the production of school grammars, the author had early performed his part; and, of small treatises on this subject, we have long had a superabundance rather than a lack.

After about fifteen years devoted chiefly to grammatical studies and exercises, during most of which time I had been alternately instructing youth in four different languages, thinking it practicable to effect some improvement upon the manuals which explain our own, I prepared and published, for the use of schools, a duodecimo volume of about three hundred pages; which, upon the presumption that its principles were conformable to the best usage, and well established thereby, I entitled, "The Institutes of English Grammar." Of this work, which, it is believed, has been gradually gaining in reputation and demand ever since its first publication, there is no occasion to say more here, than that it was the result of diligent study, and that it is, essentially, the nucleus, or the groundwork, of the present volume.

With much additional labour, the principles contained in the Institutes of English Grammar, have here been not only reaffirmed and rewritten, but occasionally improved in expression, or amplified in their details. New topics, new definitions, new rules, have also been added; and all parts of the subject have been illustrated by a multiplicity of new examples and exercises, which it has required a long time to amass and arrange. To the main doctrines, also, are here subjoined many new observations and criticisms, which are the results of no inconsiderable reading and reflection.

Regarding it as my business and calling, to work out the above-mentioned purpose as circumstances might permit, I have laid no claim to genius, none to infallibility; but I have endeavoured to be accurate, and aspired to be useful; and it is a part of my plan, that the reader of this volume shall never, through my fault, be left in doubt as to the origin of any thing it contains. It is but the duty of an author, to give every needful facility for a fair estimate of his work; and, whatever authority there may be for anonymous copying in works on grammar, the precedent is always bad.

The success of other labours, answerable to moderate wishes, has enabled me to pursue this task under favourable circumstances, and with an unselfish, independent aim. Not with vainglorious pride, but with reverent gratitude to God, I acknowledge this advantage, giving thanks for the signal mercy which has upborne me to the long-continued effort. Had the case been otherwise,--had the labours of the school-room been still demanded for my support,--the present large volume would never have appeared. I had desired some

leisure for the completing of this design, and to it I scrupled not to sacrifice the profits of my main employment, as soon as it could be done without hazard of adding another chapter to "the Calamities of Authors."

The nature and design of this treatise are perhaps sufficiently developed in connexion with the various topics which are successively treated of in the Introduction. That method of teaching, which I conceive to be the best, is also there described. And, in the Grammar itself, there will be found occasional directions concerning the manner of its use. I have hoped to facilitate the study of the English language, not by abridging our grammatical code, or by rejecting the common phraseology [sic--KTH] of its doctrines, but by extending the former, improving the latter, and establishing both;--but still more, by furnishing new illustrations of the subject, and arranging its vast number of particulars in such order that every item may be readily found.

An other important purpose, which, in the preparation of this work, has been borne constantly in mind, and judged worthy of very particular attention, was the attempt to settle, so far as the most patient investigation and the fullest exhibition of proofs could do it, the multitudinous and vexatious disputes which have hitherto divided the sentiments of teachers, and made the study of English grammar so uninviting, unsatisfactory, and unprofitable, to the student whose taste demands a reasonable degree of certainty.

"Whenever labour implies the exertion of thought, it does good, at least to the strong: when the saving of labour is a saving of thought, it enfeebles. The mind, like the body, is strengthened by hard exercise: but, to give this exercise all its salutary effect, it should be of a reasonable kind; it should lead us to the perception of regularity, of order, of principle, of a law. When, after all the trouble we have taken, we merely find anomalies and confusion, we are disgusted with what is so uncongenial: and, as our higher faculties have not been called into action, they are not unlikely to be outgrown by the lower, and overborne as it were by the underwood of our minds. Hence, no doubt, one of the reasons why our language has been so much neglected, and why such scandalous ignorance prevails concerning its nature and history, is its unattractive, disheartening irregularity: none but Satan is fond of plunging into chaos."--*Philological Museum*, (Cambridge, Eng., 1832,) Vol. i, p. 666.

If there be any remedy for the neglect and ignorance here spoken of, it must be found in the more effectual teaching of English grammar. But the principles of grammar can never have any beneficial influence over any person's manner of speaking or writing, till by some process they are made so perfectly familiar, that he can apply them with all the readiness of a native power; that is, till he can apply them not only to what has been said or written, but to whatever he is about to utter. They must present themselves to the mind as by intuition, and with the quickness of thought; so as to regulate his language before it proceeds from the lips or the pen. If they come only by tardy recollection, or are called to mind but as contingent afterthoughts, they are altogether too late; and serve merely to mortify the speaker or writer, by reminding him of some deficiency or inaccuracy which there may then be no chance to amend.

But how shall, or can, this readiness be acquired? I answer, By a careful attention to such *exercises* as are fitted to bring the learner's knowledge into practice. The student will therefore find, that I have given him something to *do*, as well as something to *learn*. But, by the formules and directions in this work, he is very carefully shown how to proceed; and, if he be a tolerable reader, it will be his own fault, if he does not, by such aid, become a tolerable grammarian. The chief of these exercises are the *parsing* of what is right, and the *correcting* of what is wrong; both, perhaps, equally important; and I have intended to make them equally easy. To any real proficient in grammar, nothing can be more free from embarrassment, than the performance of these exercises, in all ordinary cases. For grammar, rightly learned, institutes in the mind a certain knowledge, or process of thought, concerning the sorts, properties, and relations, of all the words which can be presented in any intelligible sentence; and, with the initiated, a perception of the construction will always instantly follow or accompany a discovery of the sense: and instantly, too, should there be a perception of the error, if any of the words are misspelled, misjoined, misapplied,--or are, in any way, unfaithful to the sense intended.

Thus it is the great end of grammar, to secure the power of apt expression, by causing the principles on which language is constructed, if not to be constantly present to the mind, at least to pass through it more rapidly than either pen or voice can utter words. And where this power resides, there cannot but be a proportionate degree of critical skill, or of ability to judge of the language of others. Present what you will, grammar directs the mind immediately to a consideration of the sense; and, if properly taught, always creates a discriminating taste which is not less offended by specious absurdities, than by the common blunders of clownishness. Every one who has any pretensions to this art, knows that, to *parse* a sentence, is but to resolve it according to one's understanding of its import; and it is equally clear, that the power to *correct* an erroneous passage, usually demands or implies a knowledge of the author's thought.

But, if parsing and correcting are of so great practical importance as our first mention of them suggests, it may be well to be more explicit here concerning them. The pupil who cannot perform these exercises both accurately and fluently, is not truly prepared to perform them at all, and has no right to expect from any body a patient hearing. A slow and faltering rehearsal of words clearly prescribed, yet neither fairly remembered nor understandingly applied, is as foreign from parsing or correcting, as it is from elegance of diction. Divide and conquer, is the rule here, as in many other cases. Begin with what is simple; practise it till it becomes familiar; and then proceed. No child ever learned to speak by any other process. Hard things become easy by use; and skill is gained by little and little. Of the whole method of parsing, it should be understood, that it is to be a critical exercise in utterance, as well as an evidence of previous study,—an exhibition of the learner's attainments in the practice, as well as in the theory, of grammar; and that, in any tolerable performance of this exercise, there must be an exact adherence to the truth of facts, as they occur in the example, and to the forms of expression, which are prescribed as models, in the book. For parsing is, in no degree, a work of invention; but wholly an exercise, an exertion of skill. It is, indeed, an exercise for all the powers of the mind, except the inventive faculty. Perception, judgement, reasoning, memory, and method, are indispensable to the performance. Nothing is to be guessed at, or devised, or uttered at random. If the learner can but rehearse the necessary definitions and rules, and perform the simplest exercise of judgement in their application, he cannot but perceive what he *must say* in order to speak the truth in parsing. His principal difficulty is in determining the parts of speech. To lessen this, the trial should commence with easy sentences, also with few of the definitions, and with definitions that have been perfectly learned. This difficulty being surmounted, let him follow the forms prescribed for the several praxes of this work, and he shall not err. The directions and examples given at the head of each exercise, will show him exactly the number, the order, and the proper phraseology, of the particulars to be stated; so that he may go through the explanation with every advantage which a book can afford. There is no hope of him whom these aids will not save from "plunging into chaos."

"Of all the works of man, language is the most enduring, and partakes the most of eternity. And, as our own language, so far as thought can project itself into the future, seems likely to be coeval with the world, and to spread vastly beyond even its present immeasurable limits, there cannot easily be a nobler object of ambition than to purify and better it."—*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 665.

It was some ambition of the kind here meant, awakened by a discovery of the scandalous errors and defects which abound in all our common English grammars, that prompted me to undertake the present work. Now, by the bettering of a language, I understand little else than the extensive teaching of its just forms, according to analogy and the general custom of the most accurate writers. This teaching, however, may well embrace also, or be combined with, an exposition of the various forms of false grammar by which inaccurate writers have corrupted, if not the language itself, at least their own style in it.

With respect to our present English, I know not whether any other improvement of it ought to be attempted, than the avoiding and correcting of those improprieties and unwarrantable anomalies by which carelessness, ignorance, and affectation, are ever tending to debase it, and the careful teaching of its true grammar, according to its real importance in education. What further amendment is feasible, or is worthy to engage attention, I will not pretend to say; nor do I claim to have been competent to so much as was manifestly desirable within these limits. But what I lacked in ability, I have endeavored to supply by diligence; and what

I could conveniently strengthen by better authority than my own, I have not failed to support with all that was due, of names, guillemets, and references.

Like every other grammarian, I stake my reputation as an author, upon "a certain set of opinions," and a certain manner of exhibiting them, appealing to the good sense of my readers for the correctness of both. All contrary doctrines are unavoidably censured by him who attempts to sustain his own; but, to grammatical censures, no more importance ought to be attached than what belongs to grammar itself. He who cares not to be accurate in the use of language, is inconsistent with himself, if he be offended at verbal criticism; and he who is displeased at finding his opinions rejected, is equally so, if he cannot prove them to be well founded. It is only in cases susceptible of a rule, that any writer can be judged deficient. I can censure no man for differing from me, till I can show him a principle which he ought to follow. According to Lord Kames, the standard of taste, both in arts and in manners, is "the common sense of mankind," a principle founded in the universal conviction of a common nature in our species. (See *Elements of Criticism*, Chap, xxv, Vol. ii, p. 364.) If this is so, the doctrine applies to grammar as fully as to any thing about which criticism may concern itself.

But, to the discerning student or teacher, I owe an apology for the abundant condescension with which I have noticed in this volume the works of unskillful grammarians. For men of sense have no natural inclination to dwell upon palpable offences against taste and scholarship; nor can they be easily persuaded to approve the course of an author who makes it his business to criticise petty productions. And is it not a fact, that grammatical authorship has sunk so low, that no man who is capable of perceiving its multitudinous errors, dares now stoop to notice the most flagrant of its abuses, or the most successful of its abuses? And, of the quackery which is now so prevalent, what can be a more natural effect, than a very general contempt for the study of grammar? My apology to the reader therefore is, that, as the honour of our language demands correctness in all the manuals prepared for schools, a just exposition of any that are lacking in this point, is a service due to the study of English grammar, if not to the authors in question.

The exposition, however, that I have made of the errors and defects of other writers, is only an incident, or underpart, of the scheme of this treatise. Nor have I anywhere exhibited blunders as one that takes delight in their discovery. My main design has been, to prepare a work which, by its own completeness and excellence, should deserve the title here chosen. But, a comprehensive code of false grammar being confessedly the most effectual means of teaching what is true, I have thought fit to supply this portion of my book, not from anonymous or uncertain sources, but from the actual text of other authors, and chiefly from the works of professed grammarians.

"In what regards the laws of grammatical purity," says Dr. Campbell, "the violation is much more conspicuous than the observance."--See *Philosophy of Rhetoric*, p. 190. It therefore falls in with my main purpose, to present to the public, in the following ample work, a condensed mass of special criticism, such as is not elsewhere to be found in any language. And, if the littleness of the particulars to which the learner's attention is called, be reckoned an objection, the author last quoted has furnished for me, as well as for himself, a good apology. "The elements which enter into the composition of the hugest bodies, are subtle and inconsiderable. The rudiments of every art and science exhibit at first, to the learner, the appearance of littleness and insignificancy. And it is by attending to such reflections, as to a superficial observer would appear minute and hypercritical, that language must be improved, and eloquence perfected."--*Ib.*, p. 244.

GOOLD BROWN.

LYNN, MASS., 1851.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PRELIMINARY MATTERS.

Preface to the Grammar of English Grammars

This Table of Contents

Catalogue of English Grammars and Grammarians

INTRODUCTION.

- * Chapter I. Of the Science of Grammar
 - * Chapter II. Of Grammatical Authorship
 - * Chapter III. Of Grammatical Success and Fame
 - * Chapter IV. Of the Origin of Language
 - * Chapter V. Of the Power of Language
 - * Chapter VI. Of the Origin and History of the English Language
 - * Chapter VII. Changes and Specimens of the English Language
 - * Chapter VIII. Of the Grammatical Study of the English Language
 - * Chapter IX. Of the Best Method of Teaching Grammar
 - * Chapter X. Of Grammatical Definitions
 - * Chapter XI. Brief Notices of the Schemes of certain Grammars
-

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

Introductory Definitions

General Division of the Subject

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

- * Chapter I. Of Letters

I. Names of the Letters

II. Classes of the Letters

III. Powers of the Letters

IV. Forms of the Letters

Rules for the use of Capitals

Errors concerning Capitals

Promiscuous Errors of Capitals

* Chapter II. Of Syllables

Diphthongs and Triphthongs

Rules for Syllabication

Observations on Syllabication

Errors concerning Syllables

* Chapter III. Of Words

Rules for the Figure of Words

Observations on Figure of Words

On the Identity of Words

Errors concerning Figure

Promiscuous Errors in Figure

* Chapter IV. Of Spelling

Rules for Spelling

Observations on Spelling

Errors in Spelling

Promiscuous Errors in Spelling

* Chapter V. Questions on Orthography

* Chapter VI Exercises for Writing

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

Introductory Definitions

* Chapter I. Of the Parts of Speech

Observations on Parts of Speech

Examples for Parsing, Praxis I

* Chapter II. Of the Articles

Observations on the Articles

Examples for Parsing, Praxis II

Errors concerning Articles

* Chapter III. Of Nouns

Classes of Nouns

Modifications of Nouns

Persons

Numbers

Genders

Cases

The Declension of Nouns

Examples for Parsing, Praxis III

Errors concerning Nouns

* Chapter IV. Of Adjectives

Classes of Adjectives

Modifications of Adjectives

Regular Comparison

Comparison by Adverbs

Irregular Comparison

Examples for Parsing, Praxis IV

Errors concerning Adjectives

* Chapter V. Of Pronouns

Classes of the Pronouns

Modifications of the Pronouns

The Declension of Pronouns

Examples for Parsing, Praxis V

Errors concerning Pronouns

* Chapter VI. Of Verbs

Classes of Verbs

Modifications of Verbs

Moods

Tenses

Persons and Numbers

The Conjugation of Verbs

I. Simple Form, Active or Neuter

First Example, the verb *LOVE*

Second Example, the verb *SEE*

Third Example, the verb *BE*

II. Compound or Progressive Form

Fourth Example, to *BE READING*

Observations on Compound Forms

III. Form of Passive Verbs

Fifth Example, to *BE LOVED*

IV. Form of Negation

V. Form of Question

VI. Form of Question with Negation

Irregular Verbs, with Obs. and List

Redundant Verbs, with Obs. and List

Defective Verbs, with Obs. and List

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VI

Errors concerning Verbs

* Chapter VII. Of Participles

Classes of Participles

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VII

Errors concerning Participles

* Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs

Classes of Adverbs

Modifications of Adverbs

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VIII

Errors concerning Adverbs

* Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions

Classes of Conjunctions

List of the Conjunctions

Examples for Parsing, Praxis IX

Errors concerning Conjunctions

* Chapter X. Of Prepositions

List of the Prepositions

Examples for Parsing, Praxis X

Errors concerning Prepositions

* Chapter XI. Of Interjections

List of the Interjections

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XI

Errors concerning Interjections

* Chapter XII. Questions on Etymology

* Chapter XIII. Exercises for Writing

PART III. SYNTAX.

Introductory Definitions

* Chapter I. Of Sentences

The Rules of Syntax

General or Critical Obs. on Syntax

The Analyzing of Sentences

The several Methods of Analysis

Observations on Methods of Analysis

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XII

* Chapter II. Of the Articles

Rule I. Syntax of Articles

Observations on Rule I

Notes to Rule I; 17 of them

False Syntax under Notes to Rule I

* Chapter III. Of Cases, or Nouns

Rule II. Of Nominatives

Observations on Rule II

False Syntax under Rule II

Rule III. Of Apposition

Observations on Rule III

False Syntax under Rule III

Rule IV. Of Possessives

Observations on Rule IV

Notes to Rule IV; 5 of them

False Syntax under Notes to Rule IV

Rule V. Of Objectives after Verbs

Observations on Rule V

Notes to Rule V; 8 of them

False Syntax under Rule V

Rule VI. Of Same Cases

Observations on Rule VI

Notes to Rule VI; 2 of them

False Syntax under Rule VI

Rule VII. Of Objectives after Prepositions

Observations on Rule VII

Note to Rule VII; 1 only

False Syntax under Rule VII

Rule VIII. Of Nominatives Absolute

Observations on Rule VIII

False Syntax under Rule VIII

* Chapter IV. Of Adjectives

Rule IX. Of Adjectives

Observations on Rule IX

Notes to Rule IX; 16 of them

False Syntax under Rule IX

* Chapter V. Of Pronouns

Rule X. Pronoun and Antecedent

Observations on Rule X

Notes to Rule X; 16 of them

False Syntax under Rule X

Rule XI. Pronoun and Collective Noun

Observations on Rule XI

Notes to Rule XI; 2 of them

False Syntax under Rule XI

Rule XII. Pronoun after AND

Observations on Rule XII

False Syntax under Rule XII

Rule XIII. Pronoun after OR or NOR

Observations on Rule XIII

False Syntax under Rule XIII

* Chapter VI. Of Verbs

Rule XIV. Verb and Nominative

Observations on Rule XIV

Notes to Rule XIV; 10 of them

False Syntax under Rule XIV

Rule XV. Verb and Collective Noun

Observations on Rule XV

Note to Rule XV; 1 only

False Syntax under Rule XV

Rule XVI. The Verb after AND

Observations on Rule XVI

Notes to Rule XVI; 7 of them

False Syntax under Rule XVI

Rule XVII. The Verb with OR or NOR

Observations on Rule XVII

Notes to Rule XVII; 15 of them

False Syntax under Rule XVII

Rule XVIII. Of Infinitives with TO

Observations on Rule XVIII

False Syntax under Rule XVIII

Rule XIX. Of Infinitives without TO

Observations on Rule XIX

False Syntax under Rule XIX

* Chapter VII. Of Participles

Rule XX. Syntax of Participles

Observations on Rule XX

Notes to Rule XX; 13 of them

False Syntax under Rule XX

* Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs

Rule XXI. Relation of Adverbs

Observations on Rule XXI

Notes to Rule XXI; 10 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXI

* Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions

Rule XXII. Use of Conjunctions

Observations on Rule XXII

Notes to Rule XXII; 8 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXII

* Chapter X. Of Prepositions

Rule XXIII. Use of Prepositions

Observations on Rule XXIII

Notes to Rule XXIII; 5 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXIII

* Chapter XI. Of Interjections

Rule XXIV. For Interjections

Observations on Rule XXIV

False Syntax Promiscuous

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XIII

* Chapter XII. General Review

False Syntax for a General Review

* Chapter XIII. General Rule of Syntax

Critical Notes to the General Rule

General Observations on the Syntax

False Syntax under the General Rule

False Syntax under the Critical Notes

Promiscuous Examples of False Syntax

* Chapter XIV. Questions on Syntax

* Chapter XV. Exercises for Writing

PART IV. PROSODY.

Introductory Definitions and Observations

* Chapter I. Punctuation

Obs. on Pauses, Points, Names, &c.

Section I. The Comma; its 17 Rules

Errors concerning the Comma

Section II. The Semicolon; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Semicolon

Mixed Examples of Error

Section III. The Colon; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Colon

Mixed Examples of Error

Section IV. The Period; its 8 Rules

Observations on the Period

Errors concerning the Period

Mixed Examples of Error

Section V. The Dash; its 3 Rules

Observations on the Dash

Errors concerning the Dash

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VI. The Eroteme; its 3 Rules

Observations on the Eroteme

Errors concerning the Eroteme

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VII. The Ecphoneme; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Ecphoneme

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VIII. The Curves; and their 2 Rules

Errors concerning the Curves

Mixed Examples of Error

Section IX. The Other Marks

Mixed Examples of Error

Bad English Badly Pointed

* Chapter II. Of Utterance

Section I. Of Articulation

Article I. Of the Definition

Article II. Of Good Articulation

Section II. Of Pronunciation

Article I. Powers of Letters

Article II. Of Quantity

Article III. Of Accent

Section III. Of Elocution

Article I. Of Emphasis

Article II. Of Pauses

Article III. Of Inflections

Article IV. Of Tones

* Chapter III. Of Figures

Section I. Figures of Orthography

Section II. Figures of Etymology

Section III. Figures of Syntax

Section IV. Figures of Rhetoric

Section V. Examples for Parsing, Praxis XIV

* Chapter IV. Of Versification

Section I. Of Verse

Definitions and Principles

Observations on Verse

Section II. Of Accent and Quantity

Section III. Of Poetic Feet

Critical Observations on Theories

Section IV. Of the Kinds of Verse

Order I. Iambic Verse; its 8 Measures

Order II. Trochaic Verse; its Nature

Observations on Trochaic Metre

Trochaics shown in their 8 Measures

Order III. Anapestic Verse; its 4 Measures

Observations on the Short Anapestics

Order IV. Dactylic Verse; its 8 Measures

Observations on Dactyls

Order V. Composite Verse

Observations on Composites

Section V. Improperities for Correction

* Chapter V. Questions on Prosody

* Chapter VI. Exercises for Writing

KEY TO THE ORAL EXERCISES.

THE KEY.--PART I.--ORTHOGRAPHY.

* Chapter I. Of Letters; Capitals

Corrections under each of the 16 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Capitals

* Chapter II. Of Syllables

Corrections of False Syllabication

* Chapter III. Of the Figure of Words

Corrections under each of the 6 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Figure

* Chapter IV. Of Spelling

Corrections under each of the 15 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Spelling

THE KEY.--PART II.--ETYMOLOGY.

* Chapter I. Of the Parts of Speech

Remark concerning False Etymology

* Chapter II. Of Articles; 5 Lessons

* Chapter III. Of Nouns; 3 Lessons

* Chapter IV. Of Adjectives; 3 Lessons

* Chapter V. Of Pronouns; 3 Lessons

* Chapter VI. Of Verbs; 3 Lessons

* Chapter VII. Of Participles; 3 Lessons

* Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs; 1 Lesson

* Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions; 1 Lesson

* Chapter X. Of Prepositions; 1 Lesson

* Chapter XI. Of Interjections; 1 Lesson

THE KEY.--PART III.--SYNTAX.

* Chapter I. Of Sentences; Remark

* Chapter II. Of Articles. Corrections under the 17 Notes to Rule 1

* Chapter III. Of Cases, or Nouns

Cor. under Rule II; of Nominatives

Cor. under Rule III; of Apposition

Cor. under Rule IV; of Possessives

Cor. under Rule V; of Objectives

Cor. under Rule VI; of Same Cases

Cor. under Rule VII; of Objectives

Cor. under Rule VIII; of Nom. Absolute

* Chapter IV. Of Adjectives. Corrections under the 16 Notes to Rule IX

* Chapter V. Of Pronouns. Corrections under Rule X and its 16 Notes

Corrections under Rule XI; of Pronouns

Cor. under Rule XII; of Pronouns

Cor. under Rule XIII; of Pronouns

* Chapter VI. Of Verbs. Corrections under Rule XIV and its 10 Notes

Cor. under Rule XV and its Note

Cor. under Rule XVI and its 7 Notes

Cor. under Rule XVII and its 15 Notes

Cor. under Rule XVIII; of Infinitives

Cor. under Rule XIX; of Infinitives

* Chapter VII. Of Participles. Corrections under the 13 Notes to Rule XX

* Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs. Corrections under the 10 Notes to Rule XXI

* Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions. Corrections under the 8 Notes to Rule XXII

* Chapter X. Of Prepositions. Corrections under the 5 Notes to Rule XXIII

* Chapter XI. Promiscuous Exercises. Corrections of the 8 Lessons

* Chapter XII. General Review. Corrections under all the preceding Rules and Notes; 18 Lessons

* Chapter XIII. General Rule. Corrections under the General Rule; 16

Lessons

Corrections under the Critical Notes

Promiscuous Corrections of False Syntax; 5 Lessons, under Various Rules

THE KEY.--PART IV.--PROSODY.

* Chapter I. Punctuation

Section I. The Comma; Corrections under its 17 Rules

Section II. The Semicolon; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section III. The Colon; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section IV. The Period; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section V. The Dash; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VI. The Eroteme; Corrections under its 3 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VII. The Ecphoneme; Corrections under its 3 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VIII. The Curves; Corrections under their 2 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section IX. All Points; Corrections

Good English Rightly Pointed

* Chapter II. Utterance; no Corrections

* Chapter III. Figures; no Corrections

* Chapter IV. Versification. False Prosody, or Errors of Metre, Corrected

THE FOUR APPENDIXES.

Appendix I. (To Orthography.) Of the Sounds of the Letters

Appendix II. (To Etymology.) Of the Derivation of Words

Appendix III. (To Syntax.) Of the Qualities of Style

Appendix IV. (To Prosody.) Of Poetic Diction; its Peculiarities

INDEX OF MATTERS.

A DIGESTED CATALOGUE OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS AND GRAMMARIANS,

WITH SOME COLLATERAL WORKS AND AUTHORITIES, ESPECIALLY SUCH AS ARE CITED IN THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

ADAM, ALEXANDER, LL. D.; "Latin and English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 302: Edinburgh, 1772; Boston, 1803.

ADAMS, JOHN QUINCY, LL. D.; "Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory;" 2 vols., 8vo: Cambridge, N. E., 1810.

ADAMS, Rev. CHARLES, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 172: 1st Edition, Boston, 1838. ADAMS, DANIEL, M. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 103: 3d Edition, Montpelier, Vt., 1814.

ADAMS, E.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 143. Leicester, Mass., 1st Ed., 1806; 5th Ed., 1821.

AICKIN, JOSEPH; English Grammar, 8vo: London, 1693.

AINSWORTH, ROBERT; Latin and English Dictionary, 4to: 1st Ed., 1736; revised Ed., Lond., 1823.

AINSWORTH, LUTHER; "A Practical System of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 144: 1st Ed., Providence, R. I., 1837.

ALDEN, ABNER, A. M.; "Grammar Made Easy;" 12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Boston, 1811.

ALDEN, Rev. TIMOTHY, Jun.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Boston, 1811.

ALDRICH, W.; "Lectures on English Grammar and Rhetoric, for Common Schools, Academies," &c.; 18mo, pp. 68: 11th Ed., Boston, 1847.

ALEXANDER, CALEB, A. M.; (1.) "Grammatical Elements," published before 1794. (2.) "A Grammatical Institute of the Latin Language;" 12mo, pp. 132: Worcester, Mass., 1794. (3.) "A Grammatical System of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 96; written at Mendon, Mass., 1795: 10th Ed., Keene, N. H., 1814. Also, (4.) "An Introduction to Latin," 1795; and, (5.) "An Introduction to the Speaking and Writing of English."

ALEXANDER, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 216: 4th Edition, London, 1832.

ALGER, ISRAEL, Jun., A. M.; "Abridgement of Murray's E. Gram.," &c.; 18mo, pp. 126: Boston, 1824 and 1842.

ALLEN, Rev. WILLIAM, M. A.; "Grammar of the English Language," &c.; 18mo: London. Also, "The Elements of English Grammar." &c.; 12mo, pp. 457: London, 1813; 2d Ed.,

ALLEN and CORNWELL.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 162: 3d Edition, London, 1841.

ALLEN, D. CAVERNO; "Grammatic Guide, or Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 94: Syracuse, N. Y., 1847.

ANDREW, JAMES, LL. D.; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 129: London, 1817.

ANDREWS & STODDARD; "A Grammar of the Latin Language;" 12mo, pp. 328: Boston, 1836; 11th Ed., 1845.

ANGELL, OLIVER, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 90: 1st Edition, Providence, R. I., 1830.

ANGUS, WILLIAM, M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 255: 2d Edition, Glasgow, Scotland, 1807.

ANON.; "The British Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 281: London, 1760, or near that date. Boston, Mass., 1784.

ANON.; "A Comprehensive Grammar," &c.; 18mo, pp. 174: 3d Ed., Philadelphia, T. Dobson, 1789.

ANON.; "The Comic Grammar," &c.; London, 1840.

ANON.; "The Decoy," an English Grammar with Cuts; 12mo, pp. 33: New York, S. Wood & Sons, 1820.

ANON.: E. Gram., "By T. C.;" 18mo, pp. 104: London, 1843.

ANON.; Grammar and Rhetoric; 12mo, pp. 221: London, 1776.

ANON.; "The English Tutor;" 8vo: London, 1747.

ANON.; English Grammar, 12mo: London, Boosey, 1795.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 161: London, 1838.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 85: London, 1838.

ANON.; An English Grammar, with Engravings; 18mo, pp. 16: London, 1820.

ANON.; English Grammar, pp. 84: 1st Ed., Huddersfield, 1817.

ANON.: "The Essentials of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 3d Edition, London, 1821.

ANON.; "A Plain and Comprehensive Grammar," in "The Complete Letter-Writer;" 12mo, pp. 31;--pages of the whole book, 215: London, 1811.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 131: Albany, N. Y., 1819.

ANON.; (A. H. Maltby & Co. pub.;;) Murray's Abridgement, "with Additions;" 18mo, pp. 120: Newhaven, Ct., 1822.

ANON.; (James Loring, pub.;;) Murray's Abridgement, "with Alterations and Improvements; by a Teacher of Youth;" (Lawson Lyon;) 18mo, pp. 72: 14th Ed., Boston, 1821.

ANON.; "The Infant School Grammar;" (said to have been written by Mrs. Bethune;) 18mo, pp. 182: New York, 1830. Jonathan Seymour, proprietor.

ANON.; Pestalozzian Grammar; 12mo, pp. 60: Boston, 1830.

ANON.; Interrogative Grammar; 12mo, pp. 70: Boston, 1832.

ANON.; Grammar with Cuts; 18mo, pp. 108: Boston, 1830. ANON.; "The Juvenile English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 89: Boston, 1829. B. Perkins & Co., publishers and proprietors.

ANON.; "The Little Grammarian;" 18mo, pp. 108: 2d Edition, Boston, 1829.

ANON.; An Inductive Grammar; 12mo, pp. 185: Windsor, Vt., 1829.

ANON.; "A Concise Grammar of the English Language, attempted in Verse;" 18mo, pp. 63: 1st Edition, New York, 1825. ANON.; "Edward's First Lessons in Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Boston, T. H. Webb & Co., 1843.

ANON.; "The First Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 90: 1st Edition, Boston, 1842.

ANON.; "A New Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 124: New York, 1831; 2d Ed., Boston, 1834.

ANON.; "Enclytica, or the Principles of Universal Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 133: London, J. Booth, 1814.

ANON.; "The General Principles of Grammar, edited by a few Well-Wishers to Knowledge;" 18mo, pp. 76: Philadelphia, Lea & Blanchard, 1847.

ANON.; "English School Grammar;" small 12mo, pp. 32: London, 1850. A meagre sketch, published by "the Society for promoting Christian Knowledge."

ANON.; "An English Grammar, together with a First Lesson in Reading;" 18mo, pp. 16: James Burns, London; 2d Ed., 1844. Not worth a pin.

ARISTOTLE; his Poetics;--the Greek text, with Goulston's Latin Version, and Winstanley's Notes;--8vo, pp. 320: Oxford, England, 1780.

ARNOLD, T. K., M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 76: 2d Edition, London, 1841.

ASH, JOHN, LL. D.; "Grammatical Institutes;" 18mo, pp. 142: London, first published about 1763; New York, "A New Edition, Revised and Corrected," 1799.

BACON, CALEB, Teacher; "Murray's English Grammar Put into Questions and Answers;" 18mo, pp. 108: New York, 1st Edition, 1818; 5th Edition, 1823, 1827, and 1830.

BADGLEY, JONATHAN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 200: 1st Edition, Utica, N. Y., 1845. Suppressed for plagiarism from G. Brown.

BALCH, WILLIAM S.; (1.) "Lectures on Language;" 12mo, pp. 252: Providence, 1838. (2.) "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 140: 1st Edition, Boston, 1839.

BALDWIN, EDWARD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 148: London, 1810; 2d Ed., 1824.

BARBER, Dr. JONATHAN; "A Grammar of Elocution;" 12mo; Newhaven, 1830.

BARNARD, FREDERICK A. P., A. M.; "Analytic Grammar; with Symbolic Illustration;" 12mo, pp. 264: New York, 1836. This is a curious work, and remarkably well-written.

BARNES, DANIEL H., of N. Y.; "The Red Book," or Bearcroft's "Practical Orthography," Revised and Enlarged; 12mo, pp. 347: New York, 1828.

BARNES, WILLIAM, B. D.; (1.) English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 120: London, 1842. (2.) "A Philological Grammar, grounded upon English, and formed from a Comparison of more than Sixty Languages;" 8vo, pp. 312: London, 1854.

BARRETT, JOHN; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo, pp. 214: 2d Ed., Boston, 1819.

BARRETT, SOLOMON, Jun.; (1.) "The Principles of Language;" 12mo, pp. 120: Albany, 1837. (2.) "The Principles of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 96; "Tenth Edition, Revised;" Utica, 1845. (3.) "The Principles of Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 407: "Revised Edition;" Cambridge, 1854.

BARRIE, ALEXANDER; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 54: Edinburgh, 9th Ed., 1800.

BARTLETT, MONTGOMERY R.; "The Common School Manual;" called in the Third or Philadelphia Edition, "The *National* School Manual;"--"in Four Parts," or Separate Volumes, 12mo: I, pp. 108; II, 302; III, 379; IV, promised "to consist of 450 or 500 pages." First three parts, "Second Edition," New York, 1830. A miserable jumble, in the successive pages of which, Grammar is mixed up with Spelling-columns, Reading-lessons, Arithmetic, Geometry, and the other supposed daily tasks of a school-boy!

BAILEY, N., Schoolmaster; "English and Latin Exercises;" 12mo, pp. 183: London. 18th Ed., 1798.

BAILEY, Rev. R. W., A. M.; "English Grammar," or "Manual of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 240: 2d Ed., Philadelphia, 1854.

BAYLEY, ANSELM, LL. D.; English Grammar, 8vo: London, 1772.

BEALE, SOLON; English Grammar, 18mo, pp. 27: Bangor, Maine, 1833.

BEALL, ALEXANDER; English Grammar, 12mo: 1st Ed., Cincinnati, Ohio, 1841.

BEATTIE, JAMES, LL. D.; "Theory of Language;" London, 1783; Philadelphia, 1809. "Elements of Moral

Science;" 12mo, pp. 572; Baltimore, 1813. See, in Part I, the sections which treat of "The Faculty of Speech," and the "Essentials of Language;" and, in Part IV, those which treat of "Rhetorick, Figures, Sentences, Style, and Poetry."

BECK, WILLIAM; "Outline of English Grammar;" very small, pp. 34: 3d Ed., London, 1829.

BEECHER, CATHARINE E.; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 74. 1st Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1829.

BELL, JOHN; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 446: (2 vols.:) 1st Ed., Glasgow, 1769.

BELLAMY, ELIZABETH; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1802.

BENEDICT,-----; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 192: 1st Ed., Nicholasville, Ky., 1832.

BETTESWORTH, JOHN; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1778.

BICKNELL, ALEXANDER, Esq.; "The Grammatical Wreath; or, a Complete System of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 804: London, 1790.

BINGHAM, CALEB, A. M.; "The Young Lady's Accidence;" 18mo, pp. 60: Boston, 1804; 20th Ed., 1815.

BLAIR, HUGH, D. D., F. B. S.; "Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles-Lettres;" 8vo, pp. 500: London, 1783; New York, 1819.

BLAIR, JOHN, D. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 145: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1831.

BLAIR, DAVID, Rev.; "A Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo, pp. 167: 7th Ed., London, 1815.

BLAISDALE, SILAS; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 88: 1st Ed., Boston, 1831.

BLISS, LEONARD Jun.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 73: 1st Ed., Louisville, Ky., 1839.

BOBBITT, A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 136: 1st Ed., London, 1833.

BOLLES, WILLIAM; (1.) "A Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 180: Ster. Ed., N. London, 1831. (2.) "An Explanatory and Phonographic Pronouncing Dictionary of the English Language;" royal octavo, pp. 944; Ster. Ed., New London, 1845.

BOOTH, DAVID; Introd. to Analytical Dict.; 8vo, pp. 168: London, 1814. Analytical Dictionary of the English Language: London, 1835. E. Grammar, 12mo: London, 1837.

BRACE, JOAB; "The Principles of English Grammar;" (vile theft from Lennie;) 18mo, pp. 144: 1st Edition, Philadelphia, 1839.

BRADLEY, JOSHUA, A. M.; "Youth's Literary Guide;" 12mo, pp. 192: 1st Ed., Windsor, Vt., 1815.

BRADLEY, Rev. C.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 148: York, Eng., 1810; 3d Ed., 1813.

BRIDIL, EDMUND, LL. D.; E. Gram., 4to: London, 1799.

BRIGHTLAND, JOHN, *Pub.*; "A Grammar of the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 800: 7th Ed., London, 1748.

BRITTAIN, Rev. LEWIS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 156: 2d Edition, London, 1790.

BROMLEY, WALTER; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 104: 1st Ed., Halifax, N. S., 1822.

BROWN, GOOLD; (1.) "The Institutes of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 220-312: New York, 1st Ed., 1823; stereotyped in 1832, and again in 1846. (2.) "The First Lines of English Grammar;" early copies 18mo, late copies 12mo, pp. 108: New York, 1st Ed., 1823; stereotyped in 1827, and in 1844. (3.) "A Key to the Exercises for Writing, contained in the Institutes of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 51: New York, 1825. (4.) "A Catechism of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 72: New York, 1827. (5.) "A Compendious English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 22: (in Part I of the Treasury of Knowledge:) New York, 1831. (6.) "The Grammar of English Grammars;" 8vo, pp. 1028; first printed in Boston in 1850 and 1851.

BROWN, JAMES; (1.) An Explanation of E. Grammar as taught by an Expensive Machine; 8vo, pp. 40: 1st Ed., Boston, 1815. (2.) "The American Grammar;" a Pamphlet; 12mo, pp. 48: Salem, N. Y., 1821. (3.) "An American Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 162: New York, 1821. (4.) "An Appeal from the British System of English Grammar to Common Sense;" 12mo, pp. 336: Philadelphia, 1837. (5.) "The American System of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 216: Philad., 1838. (6.) "An Exegesis of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 147: Philad., 1840. (7.) "The First Part of the American System of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 195: Boston, 1841. (8.) "An English Syntascope," a "Chart," and other fantastical works.

BROWN, J. H., A. M.; (with Gengemhre;) "Elements of English Grammar, on a Progressive System;" 12mo, pp. 213: Philad., 1855.

BROWN, RICHARD; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1692.

BUCHANAN, JAMES; "A Regular English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 196: 5th American Ed., Philad., 1792.

BUCKE, CHARLES; "A Classical Grammar of the E. Language;" 18mo, pp. 152: London, 1829.

BULLEN, Rev. H. ST. JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 140: 1st Edition, London, 1797.

BULLIONS, Rev. PETER, D. D.; (1.) "Elements of the Greek Language;" (now called, "The Principles of Greek Grammar;") mostly a version of Dr. Moor's "Elementa Linguæ Græcæ;" 1st Ed., 1831. (2.) "The Principles of English Grammar;" (mostly copied from Lennie;) 12mo, pp. 187; 2d Ed., New York, 1837; 5th Ed., Revised, pp. 216, 1843. (3.) "The Principles of Latin Grammar;" (professedly, "upon the foundation of Adam's Latin Grammar;") 12mo, pp. 312: Albany, 1841: 12th Ed., New York, 1846. (4.) "Practical Lessons in English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 132: New York, 1844. (5.) "An Analytical and Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 240: 1st Ed., New York, 1849.

BULLOKAR, WILLIAM; (1.) "Booke at Large for the Amendement of Orthographie for English Speech." (2.) "A Bref Grammar for English:" London, 1586.

BURHANS, HEZEKIAH; "The Critical Pronouncing Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 204: 1st Ed., Philad., 1823.

BURLES, EDWARD; E. Gram., 12mo: Lond., 1652.

BURN, JOHN; "A Practical Grammar of the E. Lang.;" 12mo, pp. 275: Glasgow, 1766; 10th Ed., 1810.

BURR, JONATHAN, A. M.; "A Compendium of Eng. Gram.;" 18mo, pp. 72: Boston, 1797,--1804,--1818.

BUTLER, CHARLES; E. Gram., 4to: Oxford, Eng., 1633.

BUTLER, NOBLE, A. M.; (1.) "A Practical Grammar of the E. Lang.;" 12mo, pp. 216: 1st Ed., Louisville, Ky., 1845. (2.) "Introductory Lessons in E. Grammar," 1845.

CAMPBELL, GEORGE, D. D., F. R. S.; "The Philosophy of Rhetoric;" 8vo, pp. 445: London, 1776: Philad., 1818.

CARDELL, WM. S.; (1.) An "Analytical Spelling-Book;" (with Part of the "Story of Jack Halyard;") 12mo, pp. 192: (published at first under the fictitious name of "John Franklin Jones:") New York, 1823; 2d Ed., 1824. (2.) An "Essay on Language;" 12mo, pp. 203: New York, 1825. (3.) "Elements of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 141: New York, 1826; 3d Ed., Hartford, 1827. (4.) "Philosophic Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 236: Philadelphia, 1827.

CAREY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 220: 1st Ed., London, 1809.

CARTER, JOHN; E. Gram., 8vo: Leeds, 1773.

CHANDLER, JOSEPH R.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 180: Philad., 1821. Rev. Ed., pp. 208, stereotyped, 1847.

CHAPIN, JOEL; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 252: 1st Edition, Springfield, Mass., 1842.

CHAUVIER, J. H., M. A.; "A Treatise on Punctuation;" translated from the French, by J. B. Huntington; large 18mo, pp. 112: London, 1849.

CHESSMAN, DANIEL, A. M.; Murray Abridged; 18mo, pp. 24: 3d Ed., Hallowell, Me., 1821.

CHILD, PROF. F. J.; "Revised Edition" of Dr. Latham's "Elementary English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 236: Cambridge, N. E., 1852.

CHURCHILL, T. O.; "A New Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 454: 1st Ed., London, 1823.

CLAPHAM, Rev. SAMUEL; E. Grammar: London, 1810.

CLARK, HENRY; E. Grammar; 4to: London, 1656.

CLARK, SCHUYLER; "The American Linguist, or Natural Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 240: Providence, 1830.

CLARK, S. W., A. M.; "A Practical Grammar," with "a System of Diagrams;" 12mo, pp. 218; 2d Ed., New York, 1848.

CLARK, WILLIAM; E. Gram.; 18mo: London, 1810.

CLARKE, R.; "Poetical Grammar of the English Language, and an Epitome of Rhetoric;" 12mo, pp. 172; price, 2s. 6d.: London, 1855.

COAR, THOMAS; "A Grammar of the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 276: 1st Ed., London, 1796.

COBB, ENOS; "Elements of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Boston, 1820.

COBB, LYMAN, A. M.; (1.) A Spelling-Book according to J. Walker; "Revised Ed.:" Ithaca, N. Y., 1825. (2.) "Abridgment of Walker's Crit. Pron. Dict.:" Hartford, Ct., 1829. (3.) "Juvenile Reader, Nos. 1, 2, 3, and Sequel:" New York, 1831. (4.) "The North American Reader;" 12mo, pp. 498: New York, 1835. (5.) "New

Spelling-Book, in Six Parts;" 12mo, pp. 168: N. Y., 1843. (6.) An "Expositor," a "Miniature Lexicon," books of "Arithmetic, &c., &c."

COBBETT, WILLIAM; "A Grammar of the E. Language;" 12mo, New York and Lond., 1818; 18mo, N. Y., 1832.

COBBIN, Rev. INGRAM, M. A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 20th Edition, London, 1844.

COCHRAN, PETER, A. B.: English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 71: 1st Ed., Boston, 1802.

COLET, Dr. John, Dean of St. Paul's; the "English Introduction" to Lily's Grammar; dedicated to Lily in 1510. See *Gram. of E. Gram., Introd.*, Chap. XI, ¶¶ 3, 4, and 5.

COMLY, JOHN; "English Grammar Made Easy;" 18mo, pp. 192: 6th Ed., Philad., 1815; 15th Ed., 1826.

COMSTOCK, ANDREW, M. D.; "A System of Elocution;" 12mo, pp. 364: Philadelphia, 1844. "A Treatise on Phonology;" 12mo, 1846: &c.

CONNEL, ROBERT; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 162: Glasgow, 1831; 2d Ed., 1834.

CONNON, C. W., M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: Edinburgh, 1845.

COOPER, Rev. JOAB GOLDSMITH, A. M.; (1.) "An Abridgment of Murray's English Grammar;" (largely stolen from G. Brown;) 12mo, pp. 200: Philadelphia, 1828. (2.) "A Plain and Practical English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 210: Philad., 1831.

COOTE, C., LL. D.; on the English Language; 8vo, pp. 281: 1st Edition, London, 1788.

CORBET, JAMES; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 153: 1st Edition, Glasgow, 1743.

CORBET, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo: Shrewsbury, England, 1784.

CORNELL, WILLIAM M.; English Grammar; 4to, pp. 12: 1st Edition, Boston, 1840.

COVELL, L. T.; "A Digest of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 219: 3d Ed., New York, 1853. Much indebted to S. S. Greene, H. Mandeville, and G. Brown.

CRANE, GEORGE; "The Principles of Language;" 12mo, pp. 264: 1st Ed., London, 1843.

CROCKER, ABRAHAM; English Grammar, 12mo: Lond., 1772.

CROMBIE, ALEXANDER, LL. D., F. R. S.; "A Treatise on the Etymology and Syntax of the English Language;" 8vo, pp. 425: London, 2d Ed., 1809; 4th Ed., 1836.

CUTLER, ANDREW, A. M.; "English Grammar and Parser;" 12mo, pp. 168: 1st Ed., Plainfield, Ct., 1841.

DALE, W. A. T.; a small "English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed., Albany, N. Y., 1820.

DALTON, JOHN; "Elements of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 122: London, 1st Ed., 1801.

DAVENPORT, BISHOP; "English Grammar Simplified;" 18mo, pp. 139: 1st Ed., Wilmington, Del., 1830.

DAVIDSON, DAVID; a Syntactical Treatise, or Grammar; 12mo: London, 1823.

DAVIS, Rev. JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 188: 1st Ed., Belfast, Ireland, 1832.

DAVIS, PARDON; (1.) An Epitome of E. Gram.; 12mo, pp. 56: 1st Ed., Philad., 1818. (2.) "Modern Practical E. Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 175: 1st Ed., Philad., 1845.

DAY, PARSONS E.; "District School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 120: 2d Ed., Ithaca, N. Y., 1844.

DAY, WILLIAM; "Punctuation Reduced to a System;" 18mo, pp. 147: 3d Ed., London, 1847.

DEARBORN, BENJAMIN; "Columbian Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 140: 1st Ed., Boston, 1795.

DEL MAR, E.; Treatise on English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 115: 1st Ed., London, 1842.

D'ORSEY, ALEXANDER J. D.; (1.) A Duodecimo Grammar, in Two Parts; Part I, pp. 153; Part II, pp. 142: 1st Ed., Edinburgh, 1842. (2.) An Introduction to E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 104: Edin., 1845.

DE SACY, A. J. SYLVESTRE, Baron; "Principles of General Grammar;" translated from the French, by D. Fosdick, Jun.; 12mo, pp. 156: 1st American, from the 5th French Edition; Andover and New York, 1834.

"DESPAUTER, JOHN, a Flemish grammarian, whose books were, at one time, in great repute; he died in 1520."--*Univ. Biog. Dict.* Despauter's Latin Grammar, in Three Parts,--Etymology, Syntax, and Versification,--comprises 858 octavo pages. Dr. Adam says, in the "Preface to the Fourth Edition" of his Grammar, "The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509." G. Brown's copy is a "complete edition," printed partly in 1517, and partly in 1518.

DEVIS, ELLEN; E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 130: London and Dublin; 1st Ed., 1777; 17th Ed., 1825. [Fist] Devis's Grammar, spoken of in D. Blair's Preface, as being too "comprehensive and minute," is doubtless an other and much larger work.

DILWORTH, THOMAS; "A New Guide to the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 148: London; 1st Ed., 1740: 26th Ed., 1764; 40th Ed., (used by G. B.), undated.

DOHERTY, HUGH; a Treatise on English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 240; 1st Ed., London, 1841.

DRUMMOND, JOHN; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1767. DYCHE, THOMAS; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 10: London, 1st Ed., 1710; 12th Ed., 1765.

EARL, MARY; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Boston, 1816.

EDWARDS, Mrs. M. C.; English Grammar; 8vo: Brentford. England, 1796.

EGELSHAM, WELLS; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1781.

ELMORE, D. W., A. M.; "English Grammar, or Natural Analysis;" 18mo, pp. 18: 1st Ed., Troy, N. Y., 1830. A mere trifle.

ELPHINSTON, JAMES; on the English Language; 12mo, pp. 298: 1st Ed., London, 1796.

EMERSON, BENJAMIN D.; "National Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 168: Boston, 1828.

EMERY, J., A. B.; *English Grammar*; 18mo, pp. 39: 1st Ed., Wellsborough, Pa., 1829.

EMMONS, S. B.; "The Grammatical Instructor;" 12mo, pp. 160: 1st Ed., Boston, 1832. Worthless.

ENSELL, G.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" in *English and Dutch*; 8vo, pp. 612: Rotterdam, 1797.

EVEREST, Rev. CORNELIUS B.; "An English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 270: 1st Ed., Norwich, Ct., 1835. Suppressed for plagiarism from G. Brown.

EVERETT, ERASTUS, A. M.; "A System of English Versification;" 12mo, pp. 198: 1st Ed., New York, 1848.

FARNUM, CALEB, Jun., A. M.; "Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 124: 1st Edition, (suppressed for petty larcenies from G. Brown,) Providence, R. I., 1842; 2d Edition, (altered to evade the charge of plagiarism,) Boston, 1843.

FARBO, DANIEL; "The Royal British Grammar and Vocabulary;" 12mo, pp. 344: 1st Ed., London. 1754.

FELCH, W.; "A Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 122: 1st Edition, Boston, 1837. This author can see others' faults better than his own.

FELTON, OLIVER C.; "A Concise Manual of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 145: Salem, Mass., 1843.

FENNING, DANIEL; *English Grammar*; 12mo, pp. 224: 1st Ed., London, 1771.

FENWICK, JOHN; *an English Grammar*, 12mo.: London, 1811.

FISHER, A.; "A Practical New Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 176: London: 1st Ed., 1753; 28th Ed., 1795; "A New Ed., Enlarged, Improved, and Corrected," (used by G. B.,) 1800.

FISK, ALLEN; (1.) *Epitome of E. Gram.*; 18mo, pp. 124: Hallowell, Me., 1821; 2d Ed., 1828. (2.) "Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified;" 8vo, pp. 190: New York, 1822; 2d Ed., 1824. (3.) "Murray's English Grammar Simplified;" 8vo, pp. 178: 1st Ed., Troy, N. Y., 1822.

FLEMING, Rev. CALEB; *an English Grammar*, 12mo: London, 1765.

FLETCHER, LEVI; *English Grammar*; 12mo, pp. 83: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1834.

FLETCHER, Rev. W.; *English Gram.*; 18mo, pp. 175: London; 1st Ed., 1828; 2d Ed., 1833.

FLINT, ABEL, A. M., and D. D.; "Murray's English Grammar Abridged;" 12mo, pp. 204: Hartford, Ct.; 1st Ed., 1807; 6th Ed., pp. 214, 1826.

FLINT, JOHN; "First Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 107: 1st Ed., New York, 1834.

FLOWER, M. and W. B.; *English Grammar*; 18mo, pp. 170: 1st Ed., London, 1844.

FOLKER, JOSEPH; "An Introduction to E. Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 34: Savannah, Ga., 1821.

FORMEY, M., M. D., S. E., &c., &c.; "Elementary Principles of the Belles-Lettres;"--"Translated from the French, by the late Mr. Sloper Forman;" 12mo, pp. 224: Glasgow, 1767.

FOWLE, WILLIAM BENTLEY; (1.) "The True English Grammar," (Part I;) 18mo, pp. 180: Boston, 1827. (2.) "The True English Grammar, Part II;" 18mo, pp. 97: Boston, 1829. (3.) "The Common School Grammar, Part I;" 12mo, pp. 46: Boston, 1842. (4.) "The Common School Grammar, Part II;" 12mo, pp. 108: Boston, 1842.

FOWLER, WILLIAM C.; "English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 675: 1st Ed., New York, 1850.

FRAZEE, Rev. BRADFORD; "An Improved Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192: Philad., 1844; Ster. Ed., 1845.

FRENCH, D'ARCY A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: Baltimore, 1st Ed., 1831.

FROST, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Elements of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Boston, 1829. (2.) "A Practical English Grammar;" (with 89 cuts;) 12mo, pp. 204: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1842.

FULLER, ALLEN; "Grammatical Exercises, being a plain and concise Method of teaching English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Plymouth, Mass., 1822. A book of no value.

GARTLEY, G.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 225: 1st Edition, London, 1830.

GAY, ANTHELME; "A French Prosodical Grammar;" for English or American Students; 12mo, pp. 215: New York, 1795.

GENGEMBRE, P. W.; "Brown and Gengembre's English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 213: Philad., 1855. (See J. H. Brown.)

GIBBS, Prof. J. W., of Yale C.; on Dialects, Sounds, and Derivations. See about 126 pages, credited to this gentleman, in Prof. Fowler's large Grammar, of 1850.

GILBERT, ELI; a "Catechetical Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 124: 1st Ed., 1834; 2d Ed., New York, 1835.

GILCHRIST, JAMES; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 269: 1st Ed., London, 1815.

GILES, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 152: London, 1804; 2d Ed., 1810.

GILES, Rev. T. A., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, London, 2d Ed., 1838.

GILL, ALEXANDER; English Grammar, treated in Latin; 4to: London, 1621.

GILLEADE, G.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 206: London; 1st Ed., 1816.

GIRAULT Du VIVIER, Ch. P.; (1.) "La Grammaire des Grammaires;" two thick volumes, 8vo: Paris; 2d Ed., 1814. (2.) "Traité des Participes;" 8vo, pp. 84: 2d Ed., Paris, 1816.

GOLDSBURY, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "The Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 94: 1st Ed., Boston, 1842. (2.) "Sequel to the Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 110: 1st Ed., Boston, 1842.

GOODENOW, SMITH B.; "A Systematic Text-Book of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 144: 1st Edition, Portland, 1839; 2d Edition, Boston, 1843.

GOUGH, JOHN and JAMES; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 212: 2d Ed., Dublin, 1760.

GOULD, BENJAMIN A.; "Adam's Lat. Gram., with Improvements;" 12mo, pp. 300: Boston, 1829.

GRAHAM, G. F.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 134: 1st Ed., London, 1843.

GRANT, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Institutes of Latin Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 453: London, 1808. (2.) A Comprehensive English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 410: 1st Ed., London, 1813.

GRANVILLE, GEO.; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1827.

GRAY, JAMES, D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 144: 1st Ed., Baltimore, 1818.

GREEN, MATTHIAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 148: 1st Ed., London, 1837.

GREEN, RICHARD W.; "Inductive Exercises in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., New York, 1829; 5th Ed., Phila., 1834.

GEEENE, ROSCOE G.; (1.) E. Gram.; 12mo, pp. 132: Hallowell, Me.; 1st Ed., 1828; Ster. Ed., 1835. (2.) "A Practical Grammar for the English Language;" (with Diagrams of Moods;) 12mo: Portland, 1829. (3.) "A Grammatical Text-Book, being an Abstract of a Practical Gram., &c.;" 12mo, pp. 69: Boston, 1833.

GREENE, SAMUEL S.; (1.) "Analysis of Sentences;" 12mo, pp. 258: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1848. (2.) "First Lessons in Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 171: 1st Ed., Philad., 1848.

GREENLEAF, JEREMIAH; "Grammar Simplified;" 4to, pp. 48: New York; 3d Ed., 1821; 20th Ed., 1837.

GREENWOOD, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 315: London, 1711; 2d Ed., 1722.

GEENVILLE, A. S.; "Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 63: 1st Ed., Boston, 1822.

GRISCOM, JOHN, LL. D.; "Questions in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 42: 1st Ed., New York, 1821.

GURNEY, DAVID. A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: Boston, 1801; 2d Ed., 1808.

GUY, JOSEPH, Jun.; "English School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 143: 4th Ed., London 1816.

HALL, Rev. S. R.; "The Grammatical Assistant;" 12mo, pp. 131: 1st Ed., Springfield, Mass., 1832.

HALL, WILLIAM; "Encyclopedia of English Grammar;" (by report;) Ohio, 1850.

HALLOCK, EDWARD J., A. M.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 251: 1st Ed., New York, 1842. A very inaccurate book, with sundry small plagiarisms from G. Brown.

HAMLIN, LORENZO F.; "English Grammar in Lectures;" 12mo, pp. 108: New York, 1831; Ster. Ed., 1832.

HAMMOND, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 8vo: Lond., 1744.

HARRIS, JAMES, Esq.; "Hermes; or a Philosophical Inquiry concerning Universal Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 468; London, 1751: 6th Ed., 1806.

HARRISON, Mr.; "Rudiments of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 9th American Ed., Philad., 1812.

HARRISON, Rev. MATTHEW, A. M.; "The Rise, Progress, and Present Structure of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 393: Preface dated Basingstoke, Eng., 1848; 1st American Ed., Philad., 1850.

HART, JOHN S., A. M.; "English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192; 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1845.

HARVEY, J.; English Grammar: London, 1841.

HAZEN, EDWARD, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 240: New York, 1842.

HAZLITT, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 205: London, 1810.

HENDRICK, J. L., A. M.; "A Grammatical Manual;" 18mo, pp. 105: 1st Ed., Syracuse, N. Y., 1844.

HEWES, JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 4to: London, 1624.

HEWETT, D.; English Grammar; folio, pp. 16: 1st Edition, New York, 1838.

HIGGINSON, Rev. T. E.; E. Gram.; 12mo; Dublin, 1803.

HILEY, RICHARD; "A Treatise on English Grammar," &c.; 12mo, pp. 269: 3d Ed., London, 1840. Hiley's Grammar Abridged; 18mo, pp. 196: London, 1843: 4th Ed., 1851.

HILL, J. H.; "On the Subjunctive Mood;" 8vo, pp. 63: 1st Ed., London, 1834.

HODGSON, Rev. ISAAC; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 184: 1st Ed., London, 1770.

HOME, HENRY, Lord Kames; "Elements of Criticism;" 2 volumes 8vo, pp. 836: (3d American, from the 8th London Ed.:) New York, 1819. Also, "The Art of Thinking;" 12mo, pp. 284: (from the last London Ed.:) New York, 1818.

HORNSEY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 144; York, England, 1798: 6th Ed., 1816.

HORT, W. JILLARD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 219: 1st Ed., London, 1822.

HOUGHTON, JOHN; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1766.

HOUSTON, SAMUEL, A. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 48: 1st Ed., Harrisburgh, Pa., 1818.

HOWE, S. L.; English Grammar; 18mo; 1st Ed., Lancaster, Ohio, 1838.

HOWELL, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1662.

HULL, JOSEPH HERVEY; "E. Gram., by Lectures;" 12mo, pp. 72: 4th Ed., Boston, 1828.

HUMPHREY, ASA; (1.) "The English Prosody;" 12mo, pp. 175: 1st Ed., Boston, 1847. (2.) "The Rules of Punctuation;" with "Rules for the Use of Capitals;" 18mo, pp. 71: 1st Ed., Boston, 1847.

HURD, S. T.; E. Gram.: 2d Ed., Boston, 1827.

HUTHERSAL, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo: England, 1814.

INGERSOLL, CHARLES M.; "Conversations on English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 296: New York, 1821.

JAMIESON, ALEXANDER; "A Grammar of Rhetoric and Polite Literature;" 12mo, pp. 345: "The first

American, from the last London Edition;" Newhaven, 1820.

JAUDON, DANIEL; "The Union Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 216: Philadelphia; 1st Ed., 1812; 4th, 1828.

JENKINS, AZARIAH; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 256; 1st Ed., Rochester, N. Y., 1835.

JOEL, THOMAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 78: 1st Ed., London, 1775.

JOHNSON, RICHARD; "Grammatical Commentaries;" (chiefly on Lily;) 8vo, pp. 436: London, 1706.

JOHNSON, SAMUEL, LL. D.; "A Dictionary of the English Language;" in two thick volumes, 4to: 1st American, from the 11th London Edition; Philadelphia, 1818. To this work, are prefixed Johnson's "History of the English Language," pp. 29; and his "Grammar of the English Tongue," pp. 14.

JONES, JOSHUA; E. Gram.; 18mo: Phila., 1841.

JONSON, BEN;--see, in his Works, "The English Grammar, made by Ben Jonson, for the Benefit of all Strangers, out of his Observation of the English Language, now spoken and in use:" London, 1634: 8vo, pp. 94; Lond., 1816.

JUDSON, ADONIRAM, Jun., A. B.; E. Grammar; 12mo, pp. 56: 1st Ed., Boston, 1808.

KENNION, CHARLOTTE; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 157: 1st Ed., London, 1842.

KILSON, ROGER; English Grammar; 12mo: England, 1807.

KING, WALTER W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 76: 1st Ed., London, 1841.

KIRKHAM, SAMUEL; "English Grammar in familiar Lectures;" 12mo, pp. 141--228: 2d Ed., Harrisburgh, Pa., 1825; 12th Ed., New York, 1829.

KNOWLES, JOHN; "The Principles of English Grammar;" 12mo: 3d Ed., London, 1794.

KNOWLTON, JOSEPH; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 84: Salem, Mass., 1818; 2d Ed., 1832.

LATHAM, ROBERT GORDON, A. M., M. D., F. R. S. (1.) "The English Language;" 8vo, pp. 418: 1st Ed., London, 1841. (2.) "English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 214: 1st Ed., London, 1843. (3.) "A Hand-Book of the English Language;" large 12mo, pp. 898: New York, 1852.

LEAVITT, DUDLEY; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 60: 1st Ed., Concord, N. H., 1826.

LENNIE, WILLIAM; "The Principles of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 142: 5th Ed., Edinburgh, 1819; 13th Ed., 1831.

LEWIS, ALONZO; "Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 50: 1st Ed., Boston, 1822.

LEWIS, JOHN; (1.) English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 48: 1st Ed., New York, 1828. (2.) "Tables of Comparative Etymology; or, The Student's Manual of Languages;" 4to, pp. 108: Philad., 1828.

LEWIS, WILLIAM GREATHEAD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 204: 1st Ed., London, 1821.

LILY, WILLIAM; "Brevissima Institutio, seu Ratio Grammatices cognoscendæ;" large 18mo, pp. 140:

London, 1793.

LINDSAY, Rev. JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 88: 1st Ed., London. 1842.

LOCKE, JOHN, M. D.; small English Grammar; 18mo: 1st Ed., Cincinnati, Ohio, 1827.

LOUGHTON, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 194: 3d Ed., London, 1739.

LOVECHILD, Mrs.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 40th Ed., London, 1842.

LOWTH, ROBERT, D. D.; "A Short Introduction to English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 132: London, 1763;--Philadelphia, 1799;--Cambridge, Mass., 1838.

LYNDE, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 10: 1st Ed., Woodstock, Vt., 1821.

MACK, EVERED J.; "The Self-Instructor, and Practical English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Springfield, Mass., 1835. An egregious plagiarism from G. Brown.

MACGOWAN, Rev. JAMES; "English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 248: London, 1825.

MACKINTOSH, DUNCAN; "An Essay on English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 239: Boston, 1797.

MACKILQUHEM, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo: Glasgow, 1799.

MAITTAIRE, MICHAEL; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 272: London, 1712.

MANDEVILLE, HENRY, D. D.; (1.) "Elements of Reading and Oratory;" large 12mo: Utica, N. Y., 1845. (2.) "A Course of Reading for Schools;" 12mo, pp. 377: Improved Ed.; New York, 1851.

MARCET, Mrs.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 331: 7th Ed., London, 1843.

MARTIN, BENJ.; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1754.

MATHESON, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 138: 2d Ed., London, 1821.

MAUNDER, SAMUEL; Grammar prefixed to Dict.; 12mo, pp. 20: 1st Ed., London, 1830.

MAVOR, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 70: 1st Ed., London, 1820.

M'CREADY, F.; 12mo Grammar: Philad., 1820.

M'CULLOCH, J. M., D. D.; "A Manual of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 188: 7th Ed., Edinburgh, 1841.

M'ELLIGOTT, JAMES N.; "Manual, Analytical and Synthetical, of Orthography and Definition;" 8vo, pp. 223: 1st Ed., New York, 1846. Also, "The Young Analyzer;" 12mo, pp. 54: New York, 1846.

MEILAN, MARK A.; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1803.

MENDENHALL, WILLIAM; "The Classification of Words;" 12mo, pp. 36: Philad., 1814.

MENNYE, J.; "English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 124: 1st Ed., New York, 1785.

MERCEY, BLANCHE; English Grammar; 12mo, 2 vols., pp. 248: 1st Ed., London, 1799.

MERCHANT, AARON M.; Murray's Small Grammar, Enlarged; 18mo, pp. 216: N. Y., 1824. This "Enlarged Abridgement" became "The American School Grammar" in 1828.

MILLER, ALEXANDER; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 119: 1st Ed., New York, 1795.

MILLER, The Misses; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 63: 1st Ed., London, 1830. MILLER, FERDINAND H.; "The Ready Grammarian;" square 12mo, pp. 24: Ithaca, New York, 1843.

MILLER, TOBIAS HAM; Murray's Abridgement, with Questions; 12mo, pp. 76: Portsmouth, N. H., 1823.

MILLIGAN, Rev. GEORGE; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: Edin., 1831; 2d Ed., 1839.

MOORE, THOMAS; "Orthography and Pronunciation;" 12mo, pp. 176: London, 1810.

MORGAN, JONATHAN, Jun., A. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 405: 1st Ed., Hallowell, Me., 1814.

MORLEY, CHARLES, A. B.; "School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 86: (with Cuts:) 1st Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1836.

MOREY, AMOS C.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: Albany, N. Y., 1829.

MULKEY, WILLIAM; "An Abridgment of Walker's Rules on the Sounds of the Letters;" 18mo, pp. 124: Boston. 1834. Fudge!

MULLIGAN, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Exposition of the Grammatical Structure of the English Language;" small 8vo, pp. 574: New York, 1852. (2.) Same Abridged for Schools; 12mo, pp. 301: N. Y., 1854.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER, D. D.; "The History of European Languages;" in two vols., 8vo.; pp. 800.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER, Schoolmaster; "Easy English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 194: 3d Ed., London, 1793.

MURRAY, LINDLEY; (1.) "English Grammar, Adapted to the Different Classes of Learners;" 12mo, pp. 284: York, Eng., 1795; 2d Ed., 1796; 23d Ed., 1816. (2.) "Abridgment of Murray's English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 105: "From the 30th English Ed.," New York, 1817. (3.) "An English Grammar;" in two volumes, octavo; pp. 684: 4th American from the last English Ed.; New York, 1819. (4.) A Spelling-Book; 18mo, pp. 180: New York, 1819.

MYLINS, WM. F.; Gram., 12mo: England, 1809.

MYLNE, Rev. A., D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 180: 11th Ed., Edinburgh, 1832.

NESBIT, A.; "An Introd. to English Parsing;" 18mo, pp. 213: 2d Ed., York, England, 1823.

NEWBURY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 152: 5th Ed., London, 1787.

NIGHTINGALE, Rev. J.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 96: 1st Ed., London, 1822.

NIXON, H.; (1.) "The English Parser;" 12mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., London, 1826. (2.) "New and Comprehensive English Grammar;" 12mo: 1st Ed., London, 1833.

NUTTING, RUFUS, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 144: 3d Ed., Montpelier, Vt., 1826.

ODELL, J., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 205: 1st Ed., London, 1806.

OLIVER, EDWARD, D. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 178: 1st Ed., London, 1807.

OLIVER, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 377: 1st Ed., London, 1825.

PALMER, MARY; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 48: New York, 1803.

PARKER, RICHARD GREEN; (1.) "Exercises in Composition;" 12mo, pp. 106: 3d Ed., Boston, 1833. (2.) "Aids to English Composition;" 12mo, pp. 418: 1st Ed., Boston, 1844.

PARKER and FOX; "Progressive Exercises in English Grammar;" in three separate parts, 12mo:--Part I, pp. 96; Boston, 1834: Part II, pp. 60; Boston, 1835: Part III, pp. 122; Boston, 1840.

PARKHURST, JOHN L.; (1.) "A Systematic Introduction to English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 104: Concord, N. H., 1820; 2d Ed., 1824. (2.) "English Grammar for Beginners;" 18mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Andover, Mass., 1838.

PARSONS, SAMUEL H.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 107: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1836.

PEIRCE, JOHN; "The New American Spelling-Book," with "A Plain and Easy Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 200: 6th Ed., Philadelphia, 1804. This Grammar is mostly copied from Harrison's.

PEIRCE, OLIVER B.; "The Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 384: 1st Ed., New York, 1839. Also, Abridgement of the same; 18mo, pp. 144: Boston, 1840.

PENGELLEY, EDWARD; English Gram.; 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., London, 1840.

PERLEY, DANIEL, M. D.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo, pp. 79: 1st Ed., Andover, Mass., 1834.

PERRY, WILLIAM; Grammar in Dict.; 12mo: Edinburgh, 1801.

PICKBOURN, JAMES; "Dissertation on the English Verb:" London, 1789.

PICKET, ALBERT; "Analytical School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 252: New York, 1823; 2d Ed., 1824.

PINNEO, T. S., M. A., M. D.; (1.) "A Primary Grammar, for Beginners:" Cincinnati. (2.) "Analytical Grammar of the E. Language;" 12mo, pp. 216: Cincinnati, 1850; New York, 1853. (3.) "Pinneo's English Teacher; in which is taught the Structure of Sentences by Analysis and Synthesis;" 12mo, pp. 240: Cincinnati, 1854.

PINNOCK, W.; (1.) A Catechism of E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 70: 18th Ed., London, 1825. (2.) A Comprehensive Grammar; 12mo, pp. 318: 1st Ed., London, 1829.

POND, ENOCH, D. D.; "Murray's System of Eng. Grammar, Improved;" 12mo, pp. 228: 5th Ed., Worcester, Mass., 1835. Also, under the same title, a petty Grammar with Cuts; 18mo, pp. 71: New Ed., Worcester, 1835.

POWERS, DANIEL, A. M.; E. Grammar; 12mo, pp. 188: 1st Ed., West Brookfield, Mass., 1845.

PRIESTLEY, JOSEPH, LL. D.; "The Rudiments of E. Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 202: 3d Ed., London, 1772.

PUE, HUGH A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 149: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1841.

PULLEN, P. H.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 321: London, 1820; 2d Ed., 1822.

PUTNAM, J. M.; "English Grammar;" (Murray's, Modified;) 18mo, pp. 162: Concord, N. H., 1825; Ster., 1831.

PUTNAM, SAMUEL; "Putnam's Murray;" 18mo, pp. 108: Improved Ster. Ed.; Dover, N. H., 1828.

PUTSEY, Rev. W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 211: London, 1821; 2d Ed., 1829.

QUACKENBOS, GEO. PAYN; (1.) "First Lessons in Composition." (2.) "Advanced Course of Composition and Rhetoric;" 12mo, pp. 455: New York, 1854.

RAND, ASA; "Teacher's Manual," &c.; 18mo, pp. 90: 1st Ed., Boston, 1832.

REED, CALEB, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 30: 1st Ed., Boston, 1821.

REID, A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 46: 2d Ed., London, 1839.

REID, JOHN, M. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 68: 1st Ed., Glasgow, 1830.

RICORD, F. W., A. M.; "The Youth's Grammar; or, Easy Lessons in Etymology;" 12mo, pp. 118: 1st Ed., N. Y., 1855.

RIGAN, JOHN; Grammar, 12mo: Dublin, 1823.

ROBBINS, MANASSEH; "Rudimental Lessons in Etym. and Synt.;" 12mo, pp. 70: Prov., R. I., 1826.

ROBINSON, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 95: 1st Ed., Maysville, 1830.

ROOME, Rev. T.; Gram.; 12mo: England, 1813.

ROSS, ROBERT; an American Grammar; 12mo, pp. 199: 7th Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1782.

ROTHWELL, J.; English Grammar; 12mo: 2d Ed., London, 1797.

ROZZELL, WM.; English Grammar in Verse; 8vo: London, 1795.

RUSH, JAMES, M. D.; "Philosophy of the Human Voice;" 8vo: Philadelphia, 1833.

RUSSELL, Rev. J., D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 168: London, 1835; 10th Ed., 1842.

RUSSELL, WILLIAM; (1.) "A Grammar of Composition;" 12mo, pp. 150: Newhaven, 1823. (2.) "Lessons in Enunciation;" Boston, 1841. (3.) "Orthophony; or the Cultivation of the Voice;" 12mo, pp. 300: improved Ed., Boston, 1847.

RUSSELL, WILLIAM E.: "An Abridgment of Murray's Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 142: Hartford, 1819.

RYLAND, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., Northampton, Eng., 1767.

SABINE, H., A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 120: 1st Ed., London, 1702.

SANBOBN, DYER H.; "An Analytical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 299: 1st Ed., Concord,

N. H., 1836.

SANDERS, CHARLES W. and J. C.; "The Young Grammarian;" 12mo, pp. 120: Rochester, N. Y., 1847.

SARGENT, EPES; "The Standard Speaker; a Treatise on Oratory and Elocution;" small 8vo, pp. 558: Philadelphia, 1852.

SCOTT, WILLIAM; Grammar, 12mo: Edinb., 1797. Dictionary, with Grammar prefixed; square, pp. 492: Cork, 1810.

SEARLE, Rev. THOMAS; Grammar in Verse; 18mo, pp. 114: 1st Ed., London, 1822.

SHATFORD, W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 104: 1st Ed., London, 1834.

SHAW, Rev. JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 259: 4th Ed., London, 1793.

SHERIDAN, THOMAS, A. M.; (1.) "Lectures on Elocution;" 12mo, pp. 185: London, 1762; Troy, N. Y., 1803. (2.) "Lectures on the Art of Reading." (3.) "A Rhetorical Grammar;" square 12mo, pp. 73: 3d Ed., Philadelphia, 1789. (4.) "Elements of English;" 12mo, pp. 69: Dublin, 1789. (5.) "A Complete Dictionary of the English Language;" 1st Ed., 1780.

SHERMAN, JOHN; American Grammar; 12mo, pp. 323: 1st Ed., Trenton Falls, N. Y., 1836.

SIMMONITE, W. J.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 228: 1st Ed., London, 1841.

SKILLERN, R. S., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 184: 2d Ed., Gloucester, England, 1808. SMART, B. H.; (1.) "A Practical Grammar of English Pronunciation;" 8vo: London, 1810. (2.) "The Accidence of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 52: London, 1841. (3.) "The Accidence and Principles of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 280: London, 1841.

SMETHAM, THOMAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: 1st Ed., London, 1774.

SMITH, ELI; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1812.

SMITH, JOHN; Grammar, 8vo: Norwich, Eng., 1816.

SMITH, PETER, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 176: 1st Ed., Edinburgh, 1826.

SMITH, Rev. THOMAS; (1.) Alderson's "Orthographical Exercises," Copied; 18mo, pp. 108: 15th Ed., London, 1819. (2.) "Smith's Edition of L. Murray's Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 128: London, 1832. Very petty authorship. SMITH, ROSWELL C.; (1.) "English Grammar on the Inductive System;" 12mo, pp. 205: Boston, 1830; 2d Ed., 1881. (2.) "English Grammar on the Productive System;" 12mo, pp. 192: 2d Ed., New York, 1832. A sham.

SNYDER, W.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., Winchester, Va., 1834.

SPALDING, CHARLES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Onondaga, N. Y., 1825.

SPEAR, MATTHEW P.; "The Teacher's Manual of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 116: 1st Ed., Boston, 1845.

SPENCER, GEORGE, A. M.; "An English Grammar on Synthetical Principles;" 12mo, pp. 178: New York, 1851.

STANIFORD, DANIEL, A. M.; "A Short but Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 96: Boston, 1807; 2d Ed., 1815.

STEARNS, GEORGE; English Grammar; 4to, pp. 17: 1st Ed., Boston, 1843.

STOCKWOOD, JOHN; Gram., 4to: London, 1590.

STORY, JOSHUA; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Newcastle, Eng., 1778; 3d, 1783.

ST. QUENTIN, D., M. A.; "The Rudiments of General Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 163: Lond., 1812.

SUTCLIFFE, JOSEPH, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 262; London, 1815; 2d Ed., 1821.

SWETT, J., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 192: Claremont, N. H., 1843; 2d Ed., 1844.

TICKEN, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 147: 1st Ed., London, 1806.

TICKNOR, ELISHA, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 3d Ed., Boston, 1794.

TOBITT, R.; "Grammatical Institutes;" (in Verse;) 12mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed., London, 1825.

TODD, LEWIS C.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 126: Fredonia, N. Y., 1826; 2d Ed., 1827.

TOOKE, JOHN HORNE, A. M.; "Epea Pteroenta; or, the Diversions of Purley;" 2 vols., 8vo; pp. 924: 1st American, from the 2d London Ed.; Philadelphia, 1806.

TOWER, DAVID B., A. M.; "Gradual Lessons in Grammar;" small 12mo, pp. 180: Boston, 1847.

TRENCH, RICHARD CHENEVIX, B. D; "On the Study of Words;" 12mo, pp. 236: London, 1st Ed., 1851; 2d Ed., 1852: reprinted, New York, 1852.

TRINDER, WILLIAM M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 116: 1st Ed., London, 1781.

TUCKER, BENJAMIN; "A Short Introd. to E. Gram.;" 18mo, pp. 36: 4th Ed., Phila., 1812.

TURNER, DANIEL, A. M.; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1739.

TURNER, Rev. BRANDON, A. M.; Grammar from G. Brown's Inst.; 12mo, pp. 238: Lond., 1841.

TWITCHELL, MARK; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: 1st Ed., Portland. Me., 1825.

USSHER, G. NEVILLE; English Grammar: 12mo, pp. 132: London, 1787; 3d Amer. Ed., Exeter, N. H., 1804.

WALDO, JOHN; "Rudiments," 12mo; Philad., 1813: "Abridg't," 18mo, pp. 124; Philadelphia, 1814.

WALKER, JOHN; (1.) E. Gram., 12mo, pp. 118: London, 1806. (2.) "Elements of Elocution;" 8vo, pp. 379: Boston, 1810. (3.) Rhyming Dict., 12mo; (4.) Pronouncing Dict., 8vo; and other valuable works.

WALKER, WILLIAM, B. D.; (1.) "A Treatise of English Particles;" 12mo, pp. 488: London, 1653; 10th Ed., 1691. (2.) "The Art of Teaching Grammar;" large 18mo, pp. 226: 8th Ed., London, 1717.

WALLIS, JOHN, D. D.; E. Gram. in Latin; 8vo, pp. 281: Lond., 1653; 6th Ed., 1765.

WARD, H.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 151: Whitehaven, England, 1777.

WARD, JOHN, LL. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 238: London, 1768.

WARD, WILLIAM, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192: York, England, 1765.

WARE, JONATHAN, Esq.; "A New Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 48: Windsor, Vt., 1814.

WASE, CHRISTOPHER, M. A.; "An Essay of a Practical Gram.," 12mo, pp. 79: Lond., 1660.

WATT, THOMAS, A. M.; "Gram. Made Easy;" 18mo, pp. 92: Edinburgh, 1708.; 5th Ed., 1742.

WEBBER, SAMUEL, A. M., M. D.; "An Introd. to E. Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 116: Cambridge, Mass., 1832.

WEBSTER, NOAH, LL. D.; (1.) "A Plain and Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 131: 8th Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1800. (2.) "A Philosophical and Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 250: Newhaven, Ct., 1807. (3.) "Rudiments of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 87: New York, 1811. (4.) "An Improved Grammar of the E. L.;" 12mo, pp. 180: Newhaven, 1831. (5.) "An American Dictionary of the E. L.," 4to; and an Abridgement, 8vo.

WELCH, A. S.; "Analysis of the English Sentence;" 12mo, pp. 264: New York, 1854. Of no value.

WELD, ALLEN H., A. M.; (1.) "English Grammar Illustrated;" 12mo, pp. 228: Portland, Me., 1846; 2d Ed., 1847: "Abridged Edition," Boston, 1849. "Improved Edition," much altered: Portland, 1852. (2.) "Parsing Book, containing Rules of Syntax," &c.; 18mo, pp. 112: Portland, 1847.

WELLS, WILLIAM H., M. A.; "Wells's School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 220: 1st Ed., Andover, 1846; "113th Thousand," 1850.

WHITE, MR. JAMES; "The English Verb;" 8vo, pp. 302: 1st Ed., London, 1761.

WHITING, JOSEPH, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo: Detroit, 1845.

WHITWORTH, T.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 216: 1st Ed., London, 1819.

WICKES, EDWARD WALTER; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: 2d Ed., London, 1841.

WILBER & LIVINGSTON; "The Grammatical Alphabet;" (with a Chart;) 18mo, pp. 36: 2d Ed., Albany, 1815.

WILBUR, JOSIAH; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 132: Bellows Falls, N. H., 1815; 2d Ed., 1822.

WILCOX, A. F.; "A Catechetical and Practical Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 110: 1st Ed., Newhaven, Ct., 1828.

WILLARD, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 54: 1st Ed., Greenfield, Mass., 1816.

WILLIAMS, MRS. HONORIA; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 226: London, 1823; 3d Ed., 1826.

WILSON, CHARLES, D. D.; "Elements of Hebrew Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 398: 3d Ed., London, 1802.

WILSON, GEORGE; English Grammar; 18mo; London, 1777.

WILSON, JAMES P., D. D.: "An Essay on Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 281: Philadelphia, 1817.

WILSON, JOHN; "A Treatise on English Punctuation;" 12mo, pp. 204: Boston, 1850.

WILSON, Rev. J.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 184: 3d Ed., Congleton, England, 1803.

WINNING, Rev. W. B., M. A.; "A Manual of Comparative Philology;" 8vo, pp. 291: London, 1838.

WISEMAN, CHARLES; an English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1765.

WOOD, HELEN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 207: London, 1st Ed., 1827; 6th Ed., 1841.

WOOD, Rev. JAMES, D. D; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1778.

WOODWORTH, A.; "Grammar Demonstrated;" 12mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed., Auburn, N. Y., 1823.

WORCESTER, JOSEPH, E.; "Universal and Critical Dictionary of the English Language;" 1st Ed., Boston, 1846.

WORCESTER, SAMUEL; "A First Book of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 86; Boston, 1831.

WRIGHT, ALBERT D.; "Analytical Orthography;" 18mo, pp. 112: 2d Ed., Cazenovia, N. Y., 1842.

WRIGHT, JOSEPH W.; "A Philosophical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 252: New York and London, 1838.

[Asterism] The *Names*, or *Heads*, in the foregoing alphabetical Catalogue, are 452; the *Works* mentioned are 548; the *Grammars* are 463; the *other Books* are 85.

END OF THE CATALOGUE.

INTRODUCTION

HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SCIENCE OF GRAMMAR.

"Hæc de Grammatica quam brevissime potui: non ut omnia dicerem sectatus, (quod infinitum erat,) sed ut maxima necessaria."--QUINTILIAN. *De Inst. Orat.*, Lib. i, Cap. x.

1. Language, in the proper sense of the term, is peculiar to man; so that, without a miraculous assumption of human powers, none but human beings can make words the vehicle of thought. An imitation of some of the articulate sounds employed in speech, may be exhibited by parrots, and sometimes by domesticated ravens, and we know that almost all brute animals have their peculiar natural voices, by which they indicate their feelings, whether pleasing or painful. But *language* is an attribute of reason, and differs essentially not only from all brute voices, but even from all the chattering, jabbering, and babbling of our own species, in which there is not an intelligible meaning, with division of thought, and distinction of words.

2. Speech results from the joint exercise of the best and noblest faculties of human nature, from our rational understanding and our social affection; and is, in the proper use of it, the peculiar ornament and distinction of man, whether we compare him with other orders in the creation, or view him as an individual preëminent among his fellows. Hence that science which makes known the nature and structure of speech, and immediately concerns the correct and elegant use of language, while it surpasses all the conceptions of the stupid or unlearned, and presents nothing that can seem desirable to the sensual and grovelling, has an intrinsic dignity which highly commends it to all persons of sense and taste, and makes it most a favourite with the most gifted minds. That science is Grammar. And though there be some geniuses who affect to despise the trammels of grammar rules, to whom it must be conceded that many things which have been unskillfully taught as such, deserve to be despised; yet it is true, as Dr. Adam remarks, that, "The study of Grammar has been considered an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages."--*Preface to Latin and English Gram.*, p. iii.

3. Grammar bears to language several different relations, and acquires from each a nature leading to a different definition. *First*, It is to language, as knowledge is to the thing known; and as doctrine, to the truths it inculcates. In these relations, grammar is a science. It is the first of what have been called the seven sciences, or liberal branches of knowledge; namely, grammar, logic, rhetoric, arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and music. *Secondly*, It is as skill, to the thing to be done; and as power, to the instruments it employs. In these relations, grammar is an art; and as such, has long been defined, "*ars rectè scribendi, rectèque loquendi*" the art of writing and speaking correctly. *Thirdly*, It is as navigation, to the ocean, which nautic skill alone enables men to traverse. In this relation, theory and practice combine, and grammar becomes, like navigation, a practical science. *Fourthly*, It is as a chart, to a coast which we would visit. In this relation, our grammar is a text-book, which we take as a guide, or use as a help to our own observation. *Fifthly*, It is as a single voyage, to the open sea, the highway of nations. Such is our meaning, when we speak of the grammar of a particular text or passage.

4. Again: Grammar is to language a sort of self-examination. It turns the faculty of speech or writing upon itself for its own elucidation; and makes the tongue or the pen explain the uses and abuses to which both are liable, as well as the nature and excellency of that power, of which, these are the two grand instruments. From this account, some may begin to think that in treating of grammar we are dealing with something too various and changeable for the understanding to grasp; a dodging Proteus of the imagination, who is ever ready to assume some new shape, and elude the vigilance of the inquirer. But let the reader or student do his part; and, if he please, follow us with attention. We will endeavour, with welded links, to bind this Proteus, in such a manner that he shall neither escape from our hold, nor fail to give to the consulter an intelligible and satisfactory response. Be not discouraged, generous youth. Hark to that sweet far-reaching note:

"Sed, quanto ille magis formas se vertet in omnes, Tanto, nate, magis contende tenacia vincla." VIRGIL. Geor. IV, 411.

"But thou, the more he varies forms, beware To strain his fetters with a stricter care." DRYDEN'S VIRGIL.

5. If for a moment we consider the good and the evil that are done in the world through the medium of speech, we shall with one voice acknowledge, that not only the faculty itself, but also the manner in which it is used, is of incalculable importance to the welfare of man. But this reflection does not directly enhance our respect for grammar, because it is not to language as the vehicle of moral or of immoral sentiment, of good or of evil to mankind, that the attention of the grammarian is particularly directed. A consideration of the subject in these relations, pertains rather to the moral philosopher. Nor are the arts of logic and rhetoric now considered to be properly within the grammarian's province. Modern science assigns to these their separate places, and restricts grammar, which at one period embraced all learning, to the knowledge of language, as respects its fitness to be the vehicle of any particular thought or sentiment which the speaker or writer may wish to convey by it. Accordingly grammar is commonly defined, by writers upon the subject, in the special sense of an art--"the *art* of speaking or writing a language with propriety or correctness."--*Webster's Dict.*

6. Lily says, "Grammatica est rectè scribendi atque loquendi ars;" that is, "Grammar is the art of writing and speaking correctly." Despauter, too, in his definition, which is quoted in a preceding paragraph, not improperly placed writing first, as being that with which grammar is primarily concerned. For it ought to be remembered, that over any fugitive colloquial dialect, which has never been fixed by visible signs, grammar has no control; and that the speaking which the art or science of grammar teaches, is exclusively that which has reference to a knowledge of letters. It is the certain tendency of writing, to improve speech. And in proportion as books are multiplied, and the knowledge of written language is diffused, local dialects, which are beneath the dignity of grammar, will always be found to grow fewer, and their differences less. There are, in the various parts of the world, many languages to which the art of grammar has never yet been applied; and to which, therefore, the definition or true idea of grammar, however general, does not properly extend. And even where it has been applied, and is now honoured as a popular branch of study, there is yet great room for improvement: barbarisms and solecisms have not been rebuked away as they deserve to be.

7. Melancthon says, "Grammatica est certa loquendi ac scribendi ratio, Latinis Latinè." Vossius, "Ars benè loquendi eoque et scribendi, atque id Latinis Latinè." Dr. Prat, "*Grammatica est rectè loquendi atque scribendi ars.*" Ruddiman also, in his Institutes of Latin Grammar, reversed the terms *writing* and *speaking*, and defined grammar, "*ars recè loquendi scribendique;*" and, either from mere imitation, or from the general observation that speech precedes writing, this arrangement of the words has been followed by most modern grammarians. Dr. Lowth embraces both terms in a more general one, and says, "Grammar is the art of *rightly expressing* our thoughts by words." It is, however, the province of grammar, to guide us not merely in the expression of our own thoughts, but also in our apprehension of the thoughts, and our interpretation of the words, of others. Hence, Perizonius, in commenting upon Sanctius's imperfect definition, "*Grammatica est ars rectè loquendi,*" not improperly asks, "*et quidni intelligendi et explicandi?*" "and why not also of understanding and explaining?" Hence, too, the art of *reading* is virtually a part of grammar; for it is but the art of understanding and speaking correctly that which we have before us on paper. And Nugent has accordingly given us the following definition: "Grammar is the art of reading, speaking, and writing a language by rules."--*Introduction to Dict.*, p. xii.[1]

8. The word *rectè*, rightly, truly, correctly, which occurs in most of the foregoing Latin definitions, is censured by the learned Richard Johnson, in his Grammatical Commentaries, on account of the vagueness of its meaning. He says, it is not only ambiguous by reason of its different uses in the Latin classics, but destitute of any signification proper to grammar. But even if this be true as regards its earlier application, it may well be questioned, whether by frequency of use it has not acquired a signification which makes it proper at the present time. The English word *correctly* seems to be less liable to such an objection; and either this brief term, or some other of like import, (as, "with correctness"--"with propriety,") is still usually employed to tell

what grammar is. But can a boy learn by such means what it is, *to speak and write grammatically*? In one sense, he can; and in an other, he cannot. He may derive, from any of these terms, some idea of grammar as distinguished from other arts; but no simple definition of this, or of any other art, can communicate to him that learns it, the skill of an artist.

9. R. Johnson speaks at large of *the relation* of words to each other in sentences, as constituting in his view the most essential part of grammar; and as being a point very much overlooked, or very badly explained, by grammarians in general. His censure is just. And it seems to be as applicable to nearly all the grammars now in use, as to those which he criticised a hundred and thirty years ago. But perhaps he gives to the relation of words, (which is merely their dependence on other words according to the sense,) an earlier introduction and a more prominent place, than it ought to have in a general system of grammar. To the right use of language, he makes four things to be necessary. In citing these, I vary the language, but not the substance or the order of his positions. *First*, That we should speak and write words according to the significations which belong to them: the teaching of which now pertains to lexicography, and not to grammar, except incidentally. *"Secondly*, That we should observe *the relations* that words have one to another in sentences, and represent those relations by such variations, and particles, as are usual with authors in that language." *Thirdly*, That we should acquire a knowledge of the proper sounds of the letters, and pay a due regard to accent in pronunciation. *Fourthly*, That we should learn to write words with their proper letters, spelling them as literary men generally do.

10. From these positions, (though he sets aside the first, as pertaining to lexicography, and not now to grammar, as it formerly did,) the learned critic deduces first his four parts of the subject, and then his definition of grammar. "Hence," says he, "there arise Four Parts of Grammar; *Analogy*, which treats of the several parts of speech, their definitions, accidents, and formations; *Syntax*, which treats of the use of those things in construction, according to their relations; *Orthography*, which treats of spelling; and *Prosody*, which treats of accenting in pronunciation. So, then, the true definition of Grammar is this: Grammar is the art of *expressing the relations* of things in construction, with due accent in speaking, and orthography in writing, according to the custom of those whose language we learn." Again he adds: "The word *relation* has other senses, taken by itself; but yet the *relation of words one to another in a sentence*, has no other signification than what I intend by it, namely, of cause, effect, means, end, manner, instrument, object, adjunct, and the like; which are names given by logicians to those relations under which the mind comprehends things, and therefore the most proper words to explain them to others. And if such things are too hard for children, then grammar is too hard; for there neither is, nor can be, any grammar without them. And a little experience will satisfy any man, that the young will as easily apprehend them, as *gender, number, declension*, and other grammar-terms." See *R. Johnson's Grammatical Commentaries*, p. 4.

11. It is true, that the *relation of words*--by which I mean that connexion between them, which the train of thought forms and suggests--or that dependence which one word has on an other according to the sense--lies at the foundation of all syntax. No rule or principle of construction can ever have any applicability beyond the limits, or contrary to the order, of this relation. To see what it is in any given case, is but to understand the meaning of the phrase or sentence. And it is plain, that no word ever necessarily agrees with an other, with which it is not thus connected in the mind of him who uses it. No word ever governs an other, to which the sense does not direct it. No word is ever required to stand immediately before or after an other, to which it has not some relation according to the meaning of the passage. Here then are the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement, of words in sentences; and these make up the whole of syntax--but not the whole of grammar. To this one part of grammar, therefore, the relation of words is central and fundamental; and in the other parts also, there are some things to which the consideration of it is incidental; but there are many more, like spelling, pronunciation, derivation, and whatsoever belongs merely to letters, syllables, and the forms of words, with which it has, in fact, no connexion. The relation of words, therefore, should be clearly and fully explained in its proper place, under the head of syntax; but the general idea of grammar will not be brought nearer to truth, by making it to be "the art of *expressing the relations* of things in construction," &c., according to the foregoing definition.

12. The term *grammar* is derived from the Greek word [Greek: *gramma*], a letter. The art or science to which this term is applied, had its origin, not in cursory speech, but in the practice of writing; and speech, which is first in the order of nature, is last with reference to grammar. The matter or common subject of grammar, is language in general; which, being of two kinds, *spoken* and *written*, consists of certain combinations either of sounds or of visible signs, employed for the expression of thought. Letters and sounds, though often heedlessly confounded in the definitions given of vowels, consonants, &c., are, in their own nature, very different things. They address themselves to different senses; the former, to the sight; the latter, to the hearing. Yet, by a peculiar relation arbitrarily established between them, and in consequence of an almost endless variety in the combinations of either, they coincide in a most admirable manner, to effect the great object for which language was bestowed or invented; namely, to furnish a sure medium for the communication of thought, and the preservation of knowledge.

13. All languages, however different, have many things in common. There are points of a philosophical character, which result alike from the analysis of any language, and are founded on the very nature of human thought, and that of the sounds or other signs which are used to express it. When such principles alone are taken as the subject of inquiry, and are treated, as they sometimes have been, without regard to any of the idioms of particular languages, they constitute what is called General, Philosophical, or Universal Grammar. But to teach, with Lindley Murray and some others, that "Grammar may be considered as *consisting of two species*, Universal and Particular," and that the latter merely "applies those general principles to a particular language," is to adopt a twofold absurdity at the outset.[2] For every cultivated language has its particular grammar, in which whatsoever is universal, is necessarily included; but of which, universal or general principles form only a part, and that comparatively small. We find therefore in grammar no "two species" of the same genus; nor is the science or art, as commonly defined and understood, susceptible of division into any proper and distinct sorts, except with reference to different languages--as when we speak of Greek, Latin, French, or English grammar.

14. There is, however, as I have suggested, a certain science or philosophy of language, which has been denominated Universal Grammar; being made up of those points only, in which many or all of the different languages preserved in books, are found to coincide. All speculative minds are fond of generalization; and, in the vastness of the views which may thus be taken of grammar, such may find an entertainment which they never felt in merely learning to speak and write grammatically. But the pleasure of such contemplations is not the earliest or the most important fruit of the study. The first thing is, to know and understand the grammatical construction of our own language. Many may profit by this acquisition, who extend not their inquiries to the analogies or the idioms of other tongues. It is true, that every item of grammatical doctrine is the more worthy to be known and regarded, in proportion as it approaches to universality. But the principles of all practical grammar, whether universal or particular, common or peculiar, must first be learned in their application to some one language, before they can be distinguished into such classes; and it is manifest, both from reason and from experience, that the youth of any nation not destitute of a good book for the purpose, may best acquire a knowledge of those principles, from the grammatical study of their native tongue.

15. Universal or Philosophical Grammar is a large field for speculation and inquiry, and embraces many things which, though true enough in themselves, are unfit to be incorporated with any system of practical grammar, however comprehensive its plan. Many authors have erred here. With what is merely theoretical, such a system should have little to do. Philosophy, dealing in generalities, resolves speech not only as a whole into its constituent parts and separable elements, as anatomy shows the use and adaptation of the parts and joints of the human body; but also as a composite into its matter and form, as one may contemplate that same body in its entirety, yet as consisting of materials, some solid and some fluid, and these curiously modelled to a particular figure. Grammar, properly so called, requires only the former of these analyses; and in conducting the same, it descends to the thousand minute particulars which are necessary to be known in practice. Nor are such things to be despised as trivial and low: ignorance of what is common and elementary, is but the more disgraceful for being ignorance of mere rudiments. "Wherefore," says Quintilian, "they are little to be respected, who represent this art as mean and barren; in which, unless you faithfully lay the

foundation for the future orator, whatever superstructure you raise will tumble into ruins. It is an art, necessary to the young, pleasant to the old, the sweet companion of the retired, and one which in reference to every kind of study has in itself more of utility than of show. Let no one therefore despise as inconsiderable the elements of grammar. Not because it is a great thing, to distinguish consonants from vowels, and afterwards divide them into semivowels and mutes; but because, to those who enter the interior parts of this temple of science, there will appear in many things a great subtilty, which is fit not only to sharpen the wits of youth, but also to exercise the loftiest erudition and science."--*De Institutione Oratoria*, Lib. i, Cap. iv.

16. Again, of the arts which spring from the composition of language. Here the art of logic, aiming solely at conviction, addresses the understanding with cool deductions of unvarnished truth; rhetoric, designing to move, in some particular direction, both the judgement and the sympathies of men, applies itself to the affections in order to persuade; and poetry, various in its character and tendency, solicits the imagination, with a view to delight, and in general also to instruct. But grammar, though intimately connected with all these, and essential to them in practice, is still too distinct from each to be identified with any of them. In regard to dignity and interest, these higher studies seem to have greatly the advantage over particular grammar; but who is willing to be an ungrammatical poet, orator, or logician? For him I do not write. But I would persuade my readers, that an acquaintance with that grammar which respects the genius of their vernacular tongue, is of primary importance to all who would cultivate a literary taste, and is a necessary introduction to the study of other languages. And it may here be observed, for the encouragement of the student, that as grammar is essentially the same thing in all languages, he who has well mastered that of his own, has overcome more than half the difficulty of learning another; and he whose knowledge of words is the most extensive, has the fewest obstacles to encounter in proceeding further.

17. It was the "original design" of grammar, says Dr. Adam, to facilitate "the acquisition of languages;" and, of all practical treatises on the subject, this is still the main purpose. In those books which are to prepare the learner to translate from one tongue into another, seldom is any thing else attempted. In those also which profess to explain the right use of vernacular speech, must the same purpose be ever paramount, and the "original design" be kept in view. But the grammarian may teach many things incidentally. One cannot learn a language, without learning at the same time a great many opinions, facts, and principles, of some kind or other, which are necessarily embodied in it. For all language proceeds from, and is addressed to, the understanding; and he that perceives not the meaning of what he reads, makes no acquisition even of the language itself. To the science of grammar, the *nature of the ideas* conveyed by casual examples, is not very essential: to the learner, it is highly important. The best thoughts in the best diction should furnish the models for youthful study and imitation; because such language is not only the most worthy to be remembered, but the most easy to be understood. A distinction is also to be made between use and abuse. In nonsense, absurdity, or falsehood, there can never be any grammatical authority; because, however language may be abused, the usage which gives law to speech, is still that usage which is founded upon the *common sense* of mankind.

18. Grammar appeals to reason, as well as to authority, but to what extent it should do so, has been matter of dispute. "The knowledge of useful arts," says Sanctius, "is not an invention of human ingenuity, but an emanation from the Deity, descending from above for the use of man, as Minerva sprung from the brain of Jupiter. Wherefore, unless thou give thyself wholly to laborious research into the nature of things, and diligently examine the *causes and reasons* of the art thou teachest, believe me, thou shalt but see with other men's eyes, and hear with other men's ears. But the minds of many are preoccupied with a certain perverse opinion, or rather ignorant conceit, that in grammar, or the art of speaking, there are no causes, and that reason is scarcely to be appealed to for any thing;--than which idle notion, I know of nothing more foolish;--nothing can be thought of which is more offensive. Shall man, endowed with reason, do, say, or contrive any thing, without design, and without understanding? Hear the philosophers; who positively declare that nothing comes to pass without a cause. Hear Plato himself; who affirms that names and words subsist by nature, and contends that language is derived from nature, and not from art."

19. "I know," says he, "that the Aristotelians think otherwise; but no one will doubt that names are the signs, and as it were the instruments, of things. But the instrument of any art is so adapted to that art, that for any other purpose it must seem unfit; thus with an auger we bore, and with a saw we cut wood; but we split stones with wedges, and wedges are driven with heavy mauls. We cannot therefore but believe that those who first gave names to things, did it with design; and this, I imagine, Aristotle himself understood when he said, *ad placitum nomina significare*. For those who contend that names were made by chance, are no less audacious than if they would endeavour to persuade us, that the whole order of the universe was framed together fortuitously."

20. "You will see," continues he, "that in the first language, whatever it was, the names of things were taken from Nature herself; but, though I cannot affirm this to have been the case in other tongues, yet I can easily persuade myself that in every tongue a reason can be rendered for the application of every name; and that this reason, though it is in many cases obscure, is nevertheless worthy of investigation. Many things which were not known to the earlier philosophers, were brought to light by Plato; after the death of Plato, many were discovered by Aristotle; and Aristotle was ignorant of many which are now everywhere known. For truth lies hid, but nothing is more precious than truth. But you will say, 'How can there be any certain origin to names, when one and the same thing is called by different names, in the several parts of the world?' I answer, of the same thing there may be different causes, of which some people may regard one, and others, an other. * * * There is therefore no doubt, that of all things, even of words, a reason is to be rendered: and if we know not what that reason is, when we are asked; we ought rather to confess that we do not know, than to affirm that none can be given. I know that Scaliger thinks otherwise; but this is the true account of the matter."

21. "These several observations," he remarks further, "I have unwillingly brought together against those stubborn critics who, while they explode reason from grammar, insist so much on the testimonies of the learned. But have they never read Quintilian, who says, (Lib. i, Cap. 6,) that, 'Language is established by reason, antiquity, authority, and custom?' He therefore does not exclude reason, but makes it the principal thing. Nay, in a manner, Laurentius, and other grammaticists, even of their fooleries, are forward to offer *reasons*, such as they are. Moreover, use does not take place without reason; otherwise, it ought to be called abuse, and not use. But from use authority derives all its force; for when it recedes from use, authority becomes nothing: whence Cicero reproves Coelius and Marcus Antonius for speaking according to their own fancy, and not according to use. But, 'Nothing can be lasting,' says Curtius, (Lib. iv,) 'which is not based upon reason.' It remains, therefore, that of all things the reason be first assigned; and then, if it can be done, we may bring forward testimonies; that the thing, having every advantage, may be made the more clear."--*Sanctii Minerva*, Lib. i, Cap. 2.

22. Julius Cæsar Scaliger, from whose opinion Sanctius dissents above, seems to limit the science of grammar to bounds considerably too narrow, though he found within them room for the exercise of much ingenuity and learning. He says, "Grammatica est scientia loquendi ex usu; neque enim constituit regulas scientibus usus modum, sed ex eorum stasis frequentibusque usurpationibus colligit communem rationem loquendi, quam discentibus traderet."--*De Causis L. Latinæ*, Lib. iv, Cap. 76. "Grammar is the science of speaking according to use; for it does not establish rules for those who know the manner of use, but from the settled and frequent usages of these, gathers the common fashion of speaking, which it should deliver to learners." This limited view seems not only to exclude from the science the use of the pen, but to exempt the learned from any obligation to respect the rules prescribed for the initiation of the young. But I have said, and with abundant authority, that the acquisition of a good style of writing is the main purpose of the study; and, surely, the proficient and adepts in the art can desire for themselves no such exemption. Men of genius, indeed, sometimes affect to despise the pettiness of all grammatical instructions; but this can be nothing else than affectation, since the usage of the learned is confessedly the basis of all such instructions, and several of the loftiest of their own rank appear on the list of grammarians.

23. Quintilian, whose authority is appealed to above, belonged to that age in which the exegesis of histories, poems, and other writings, was considered an essential part of grammar. He therefore, as well as Diomedes,

and other ancient writers, divided the grammarian's duties into two parts; the one including what is now called grammar, and the other the explanation of authors, and the stigmatizing of the unworthy. Of the opinion referred to by Sanctius, it seems proper to make here an ampler citation. It shall be attempted in English, though the paragraph is not an easy one to translate. I understand the author to say, "Speakers, too, have their rules to observe; and writers, theirs. Language is established by reason, antiquity, authority, and custom. Of reason the chief ground is analogy, but sometimes etymology. Ancient things have a certain majesty, and, as I might say, religion, to commend them. Authority is wont to be sought from orators and historians; the necessity of metre mostly excuses the poets. When the judgement of the chief masters of eloquence passes for reason, even error seems right to those who follow great leaders. But, of the art of speaking, custom is the surest mistress; for speech is evidently to be used as money, which has upon it a public stamp. Yet all these things require a penetrating judgement, especially analogy; the force of which is, that one may refer what is doubtful, to something similar that is clearly established, and thus prove uncertain things by those which are sure."--QUINT, *de Inst. Orat.*, Lib. i, Cap. 6, p. 48.

24. The science of grammar, whatever we may suppose to be its just limits, does not appear to have been better cultivated in proportion as its scope was narrowed. Nor has its application to our tongue, in particular, ever been made in such a manner, as to do *great* honour to the learning or the talents of him that attempted it. What is new to a nation, may be old to the world. The development of the intellectual powers of youth by instruction in the classics, as well as the improvement of their taste by the exhibition of what is elegant in literature, is continually engaging the attention of new masters, some of whom may seem to effect great improvements; but we must remember that the concern itself is of no recent origin. Plato and Aristotle, who were great masters both of grammar and of philosophy, taught these things ably at Athens, in the fourth century *before* Christ. Varro, the grammarian, usually styled the most learned of the Romans, was *contemporary* with the Saviour and his apostles. Quintilian lived in the *first* century of our era, and before he wrote his most celebrated book, taught a school twenty years in Rome, and received from the state a salary which made him rich. This "consummate guide of wayward youth," as the poet Martial called him, being neither ignorant of what had been done by others, nor disposed to think it a light task to prescribe the right use of his own language, was at first slow to undertake the work upon which his fame now reposes; and, after it was begun, diligent to execute it worthily, that it might turn both to his own honour, and to the real advancement of learning.

25. He says, at the commencement of his book: "After I had obtained a quiet release from those labours which for twenty years had devolved upon me as an instructor of youth, certain persons familiarly demanded of me, that I should compose something concerning the proper manner of speaking; but for a long time I withstood their solicitations, because I knew there were already illustrious authors in each language, by whom many things which might pertain to such a work, had been very diligently written, and left to posterity. But the reason which I thought would obtain for me an easier excuse, did but excite more earnest entreaty; because, amidst the various opinions of earlier writers, some of whom were not even consistent with themselves, the choice had become difficult; so that my friends seemed to have a right to enjoin upon me, if not the labour of producing new instructions, at least that of judging concerning the old. But although I was persuaded not so much by the hope of supplying what was required, as by the shame of refusing, yet, as the matter opened itself before me, I undertook of my own accord a much greater task than had been imposed; that while I should thus oblige my very good friends by a fuller compliance, I might not enter a common path and tread only in the footsteps of others. For most other writers who have treated of the art of speaking, have proceeded in such a manner as if upon adepts in every other kind of doctrine they would lay the last touch in eloquence; either despising as little things the studies which we first learn, or thinking them not to fall to their share in the division which should be made of the professions; or, what indeed is next to this, hoping no praise or thanks for their ingenuity about things which, although necessary, lie far from ostentation: the tops of buildings make a show, their foundations are unseen."--*Quintiliani de Inst. Orat.*, *Prooemium*.

26. But the reader may ask, "What have all these things to do with English Grammar?" I answer, they help to show us whence and what it is. Some acquaintance with the history of grammar as a science, as well as some

knowledge of the structure of other languages than our own, is necessary to him who professes to write for the advancement of this branch of learning--and for him also who would be a competent judge of what is thus professed. Grammar must not forget her origin. Criticism must not resign the protection of letters. The national literature of a country is in the keeping, not of the people at large, but of authors and teachers. But a grammarian presumes to be a judge of authorship, and a teacher of teachers; and is it to the honour of England or America, that in both countries so many are countenanced in this assumption of place, who can read no language but their mother tongue? English Grammar is not properly an indigenous production, either of this country or of Britain; because it is but a branch of the general science of philology--a new variety, or species, sprung up from the old stock long ago transplanted from the soil of Greece and Rome.

27. It is true, indeed, that neither any ancient system of grammatical instruction nor any grammar of an other language, however contrived, can be entirely applicable to the present state of our tongue; for languages must needs differ greatly one from an other, and even that which is called the same, may come in time to differ greatly from what it once was. But the general analogies of speech, which are the central principles of grammar, are but imperfectly seen by the man of one language. On the other hand, it is possible to know much of those general principles, and yet be very deficient in what is peculiar to our own tongue. Real improvement in the grammar of our language, must result from a view that is neither partial nor superficial. "Time, sorry artist," as was said of old, "makes all he handles worse." And Lord Bacon, seeming to have this adage in view, suggests: "If Time of course alter all things to the worse, and Wisdom and Counsel shall not alter them to the better, what shall be the end?"--*Bacon's Essays*, p. 64.

28. Hence the need that an able and discreet grammarian should now and then appear, who with skillful hand can effect those corrections which a change of fashion or the ignorance of authors may have made necessary; but if he is properly qualified for his task, he will do all this without a departure from any of the great principles of Universal Grammar. He will surely be very far from thinking, with a certain modern author, whom I shall notice in an other chapter, that, "He is bound to take words and explain them as he finds them in his day, *without any regard to their ancient construction and application.*"--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 28. The whole history of every word, so far as he can ascertain it, will be the view under which he will judge of what is right or wrong in the language which he teaches. Etymology is neither the whole of this view, nor yet to be excluded from it. I concur not therefore with Dr. Campbell, who, to make out a strong case, extravagantly says, "It is *never from an attention to etymology*, which would frequently mislead us, but from custom, the only infallible guide in this matter, that the meanings of words in present use must be learnt."--*Philosophy of Rhetoric*, p. 188. Jamieson too, with an implicitness little to be commended, takes this passage from Campbell; and, with no other change than that of "*learnt*" to "*learned*" publishes it as a corollary of his own.--*Grammar of Rhetoric*, p. 42. It is folly to state for truth what is so obviously wrong. Etymology and custom are seldom at odds; and where they are so, the latter can hardly be deemed infallible.

CHAPTER II.

OF GRAMMATICAL AUTHORSHIP.

"Respondeo, dupliciter aliquem dici grammaticum, arte et professione. Grammatici vera arte paucissimi sunt: et hi magna laude digni sunt, ut patuit: hos non vituperant summi viri; quia ipse Plinius ejusmodi grammaticus fuit, et de arte grammatica libelos edidit. Et Grellius veræ grammaticæ fuit diligentissimus doctor; sic et ipse Datus. Alii sunt grammatici professione, et ii plerumque sunt ineptissimi; quia scribimus indocti doctique, et indignissimus quisque hanc sibi artem vindicat:---hos mastigias multis probris docti summo jure insectantur."--DESPAUTER. *Syntaxis*, fol. 1.

1. It is of primary importance in all discussions and expositions of doctrines, of any sort, to ascertain well the *principles* upon which our reasonings are to be founded, and to see that they be such as are immovably established in the nature of things; for error in first principles is fundamental, and he who builds upon an uncertain foundation, incurs at least a *hazard* of seeing his edifice overthrown. The lover of *truth* will be, at all times, diligent to seek it, firm to adhere to it, willing to submit to it, and ready to promote it; but even the truth may be urged unseasonably, and important facts are things liable to be misjoined. It is proper, therefore, for every grammarian gravely to consider, whether and how far the principles of his philosophy, his politics, his morals, or his religion, ought to influence, or actually do influence, his theory of language, and his practical instructions respecting the right use of words. In practice, grammar is so interwoven with all else that is known, believed, learned, or spoken of among men, that to determine its own peculiar principles with due distinctness, seems to be one of the most difficult points of a grammarian's duty.

2. From misapprehension, narrowness of conception, or improper bias, in relation to this point, many authors have started wrong; denounced others with intemperate zeal; departed themselves from sound doctrine; and produced books which are disgraced not merely by occasional oversights, but by central and radical errors. Hence, too, have sprung up, in the name of grammar, many unprofitable discussions, and whimsical systems of teaching, calculated rather to embarrass than to inform the student. Mere collisions of opinion, conducted without any acknowledged standard to guide the judgement, never tend to real improvement. Grammar is unquestionably a branch of that universal philosophy by which the thoroughly educated mind is enlightened to see all things aright; for philosophy, in this sense of the term, is found in everything. Yet, properly speaking, the true grammarian is not a philosopher, nor can any man strengthen his title to the former character by claiming the latter; and it is certain, that a most disheartening proportion of what in our language has been published under the name of Philosophic Grammar, is equally remote from philosophy, from grammar, and from common sense.

3. True grammar is founded on the authority of reputable custom; and that custom, on the use which men make of their reason. The proofs of what is right are accumulative, and on many points there can be no dispute, because our proofs from the best usage, are both obvious and innumerable. On the other hand, the evidence of what is wrong is rather demonstrative; for when we would expose a particular error, we exhibit it in contrast with the established principle which it violates. He who formed the erroneous sentence, has in this case no alternative, but either to acknowledge the solecism, or to deny the authority of the rule. There are disputable principles in grammar, as there are moot points in law; but this circumstance affects no settled usage in either; and every person of sense and taste will choose to express himself in the way least liable to censure. All are free indeed from positive constraint on their phraseology; for we do not speak or write by statutes. But the ground of instruction assumed in grammar, is similar to that upon which are established the maxims of *common law*, in jurisprudence. The ultimate principle, then, to which we appeal, as the only true standard of grammatical propriety, is that species of custom which critics denominate GOOD USE; that is, present, reputable, general use.

4. Yet a slight acquaintance with the history of grammar will suffice to show us, that it is much easier to acknowledge this principle, and to commend it in words, than to ascertain what it is, and abide by it in

practice. Good use is that which is neither ancient nor recent, neither local nor foreign, neither vulgar nor pedantic; and it will be found that no few have in some way or other departed from it, even while they were pretending to record its dictates. But it is not to be concealed, that in every living language, it is a matter of much inherent difficulty, to reach the standard of propriety, where usage is various; and to ascertain with clearness the decisions of custom, when we descend to minute details. Here is a field in which whatsoever is achieved by the pioneers of literature, can be appreciated only by thorough scholars; for the progress of improvement in any art or science, can be known only to those who can clearly compare its ruder with its more refined stages; and it often happens that what is effected with much labour, may be presented in a very small compass.

5. But the knowledge of grammar may *retrograde*; for whatever loses the vital principle of renovation and growth, tends to decay. And if mere copyists, compilers, abridgers, and modifiers, be encouraged as they now are, it surely will not advance. Style is liable to be antiquated by time, corrupted by innovation, debased by ignorance, perverted by conceit, impaired by negligence, and vitiated by caprice. And nothing but the living spirit of true authorship, and the application of just criticism, can counteract the natural tendency of these causes. English grammar is still in its infancy; and even bears, to the imagination of some, the appearance of a deformed and ugly dwarf among the liberal arts. Treatises are multiplied almost innumerable, but still the old errors survive. Names are rapidly added to our list of authors, while little or nothing is done for the science. Nay, while new blunders have been committed in every new book, old ones have been allowed to stand as by prescriptive right; and positions that were never true, and sentences that were never good English, have been published and republished under different names, till in our language grammar has become the most ungrammatical of all studies! "Imitators generally copy their originals in an inverse ratio of their merits; that is, by adding as much to their faults, as they lose of their merits."--KNIGHT, *on the Greek Alphabet*, p. 117.

"Who to the life an exact piece would make, Must not from others' work a copy take."--Cowley.

6. All science is laid in the nature of things; and he only who seeks it there, can rightly guide others in the paths of knowledge. He alone can know whether his predecessors went right or wrong, who is capable of a judgement independent of theirs. But with what shameful servility have many false or faulty definitions and rules been copied and copied from one grammar to another, as if authority had canonized their errors, or none had eyes to see them! Whatsoever is dignified and fair, is also modest and reasonable; but modesty does not consist in having no opinion of one's own, nor reason in following with blind partiality the footsteps of others. Grammar unsupported by authority, is indeed mere fiction. But what apology is this, for that authorship which has produced so many grammars without originality? Shall he who cannot write for himself, improve upon him who can? Shall he who cannot paint, retouch the canvass of Guido? Shall modest ingenuity be allowed only to imitators and to thieves? How many a prefatory argument issues virtually in this! It is not deference to merit, but impudent pretence, practising on the credulity of ignorance! Commonness alone exempts it from scrutiny, and the success it has, is but the wages of its own worthlessness! To read and be informed, is to make a proper use of books for the advancement of learning; but to assume to be an author by editing mere commonplaces and stolen criticisms, is equally beneath the ambition of a scholar and the honesty of a man.

"'T is true, the ancients we may rob with ease; But who with that mean shift himself can please?" *Sheffield, Duke of Buckingham*.

7. Grammar being a practical art, with the principles of which every intelligent person is more or less acquainted, it might be expected that a book written professedly on the subject, should exhibit some evidence of its author's skill. But it would seem that a multitude of bad or indifferent writers have judged themselves qualified to teach the art of speaking and writing well; so that correctness of language and neatness of style are as rarely to be found in grammars as in other books. Nay, I have before suggested that in no other science are the principles of good writing so frequently and so shamefully violated. The code of false grammar embraced in the following work, will go far to sustain this opinion. There have been, however, several excellent scholars, who have thought it an object not unworthy of their talents, to prescribe and elucidate the

principles of English Grammar. But these, with scarcely any exception, have executed their inadequate designs, not as men engaged in their proper calling, but as mere literary almoners, descending for a day from their loftier purposes, to perform a service, needful indeed, and therefore approved, but very far from supplying all the aid that is requisite to a thorough knowledge of the subject. Even the most meritorious have left ample room for improvement, though some have evinced an ability which does honour to themselves, while it gives cause to regret their lack of an inducement to greater labour. The mere grammarian can neither aspire to praise, nor stipulate for a reward; and to those who were best qualified to write, the subject could offer no adequate motive for diligence.

8. Unlearned men, who neither make, nor can make, any pretensions to a knowledge of grammar as a study, if they show themselves modest in what they profess, are by no means to be despised or undervalued for the want of such knowledge. They are subject to no criticism, till they turn authors and write for the public. And even then they are to be treated gently, if they have any thing to communicate, which is worthy to be accepted in a homely dress. Grammatical inaccuracies are to be kindly excused, in all those from whom nothing better can be expected; for people are often under a necessity of appearing as speakers or writers, before they can have learned to write or speak grammatically. The body is more to be regarded than raiment; and the substance of an interesting message, may make the manner of it a little thing. Men of high purposes naturally spurn all that is comparatively low; or all that may seem nice, overwrought, ostentatious, or finical. Hence St. Paul, in writing to the Corinthians, suggests that the design of his preaching might have been defeated, had he affected the orator, and turned his attention to mere "excellency of speech," or "wisdom of words." But this view of things presents no more ground for neglecting grammar, and making coarse and vulgar example our model of speech, than for neglecting dress, and making baize and rags the fashionable costume. The same apostle exhorts Timothy to "hold fast the form of sound *words*," which he himself had taught him. Nor can it be denied that there is an obligation resting upon all men, to use speech fairly and understandingly. But let it be remembered, that all those upon whose opinions or practices I am disposed to animadvert, are either professed grammarians and philosophers, or authors who, by extraordinary pretensions, have laid themselves under special obligations to be accurate in the use of language. "*The wise in heart shall be called prudent; and the sweetness of the lips increaseth learning.*"--*Prov.*, xvi, 21. "*The words of a man's mouth are as deep waters, and the well-spring of wisdom [is] as a flowing brook.*"--*Ib.*, xviii, 4. "*A fool's mouth is his destruction, and his lips are the snare of his soul.*"--*Ib.*, xviii, 7.

9. The old maxim recorded by Bacon, "*Loquendum ut vulgus, sentiendum ut sapientes*,"--"We should speak as the vulgar, but think as the wise," is not to be taken without some limitation. For whoever literally speaks as the vulgar, shall offend vastly too much with his tongue, to have either the understanding of the wise or the purity of the good. In all untrained and vulgar minds, the ambition of speaking well is but a dormant or very weak principle. Hence the great mass of uneducated people are lamentably careless of what they utter, both as to the matter and the manner; and no few seem naturally prone to the constant imitation of low example, and some, to the practice of every abuse of which language is susceptible. Hence, as every scholar knows, the least scrupulous of our lexicographers notice many terms but to censure them as "*low*," and omit many more as being beneath their notice. Vulgarly of language, then, ever has been, and ever must be, repudiated by grammarians. Yet we have had pretenders to grammar, who could court the favour of the vulgar, though at the expense of all the daughters of Mnemosyne.

10. Hence the enormous insult to learning and the learned, conveyed in the following scornful quotations: "Grammarians, go to your *tailors* and *shoemakers*, and learn from them the *rational* art of constructing your grammars!"--*Neef's Method of Education*, p. 62. "From a labyrinth without a clew, in which the *most enlightened scholars* of Europe have mazed themselves and misguided others, the author ventures to turn aside."--*Cardell's Gram.*, 12mo, p. 15. Again: "The *nations* of *unlettered men* so adapted their language to philosophic truth, that all physical and intellectual research can find no essential rule to reject or change."--*Ibid.*, p. 91. I have shown that "the nations of unlettered men" are among that portion of the earth's population, upon whose language the genius of grammar has never yet condescended to look down! That people who make no pretensions to learning, can furnish better models or instructions than "the most

enlightened scholars," is an opinion which ought not to be disturbed by argument.

11. I regret to say, that even Dr. Webster, with all his obligations and pretensions to literature, has well-nigh taken ground with Neef and Cardell, as above cited; and has not forbore to throw contempt, even on grammar as such, and on men of letters indiscriminately, by supposing the true principles of every language to be best observed and kept by the illiterate. What marvel then, that all his multifarious grammars of the English language are despised? Having suggested that the learned must follow the practice of the populace, because they cannot control it, he adds: "Men of letters may revolt at this suggestion, but if they will attend to the history of our language, they will find the fact to be as here stated. It is commonly supposed that the tendency of this practice of unlettered men is *to corrupt the language*. But the fact is directly the reverse. I am prepared to prove, were it consistent with the nature of this work, that nineteen-twentieths of *all the corruptions* of our language, for five hundred years past, have been introduced by *authors*--men who have made alterations in particular idioms *which they did not understand*. The same remark is applicable to the *orthography* and *pronunciation*. The tendency of unlettered men is to *uniformity*--to *analogy*; and so strong is this disposition, that the common people have actually converted some of our irregular verbs into regular ones. It is to unlettered people that we owe the disuse of *holpen*, *bounden*, *sitten*, and the use of the regular participles, *swelled*, *helped*, *worked*, in place of the ancient ones. This popular tendency is not to be contemned and disregarded, as some of the learned affect to do;[3] for it is governed by *the natural, primary principles of all languages*, to which we owe all their regularity and all their melody; viz., a love of uniformity in words of a like character, and a preference of an easy natural pronunciation, and a desire to express the most ideas with the smallest number of words and syllables. It is a fortunate thing for language, that these natural principles generally prevail over arbitrary and artificial rules."--*Webster's Philosophical Gram.*, p. 119; *Improved Gram.*, p. 78. So much for *unlettered erudition*!

12. If every thing that has been taught under the name of grammar, is to be considered as belonging to the science, it will be impossible ever to determine in what estimation the study of it ought to be held; for all that has ever been urged either for or against it, may, upon such a principle, be *proved* by reference to different authorities and irreconcilable opinions. But all who are studious to know, and content to follow, *the fashion* established by the concurrent authority of *the learned*,[4] may at least have some standard to refer to; and if a grammarian's rules be based upon this authority, it must be considered the exclusive privilege of the unlearned to despise them--as it is of the unbred, to condemn the rules of civility. But who shall determine whether the doctrines contained in any given treatise are, or are not, based upon such authority? Who shall decide whether the contributions which any individual may make to our grammatical code, are, or are not, consonant with the best usage? For this, there is no tribunal but the mass of readers, of whom few perhaps are very competent judges. And here an author's reputation for erudition and judgement, may be available to him: it is the public voice in his favour. Yet every man is at liberty to form his own opinion, and to alter it whenever better knowledge leads him to think differently.

13. But the great misfortune is, that they who need instruction, are not qualified to choose their instructor; and many who must make this choice for their children, have no adequate means of ascertaining either the qualifications of such as offer themselves, or the comparative merits of the different methods by which they profess to teach. Hence this great branch of learning, in itself too comprehensive for the genius or the life of any one man, has ever been open to as various and worthless a set of quacks and plagiaries as have ever figured in any other. There always have been some who knew this, and there may be many who know it now; but the credulity and ignorance which expose so great a majority of mankind to deception and error, are not likely to be soon obviated. With every individual who is so fortunate as to receive any of the benefits of intellectual culture, the whole process of education must begin anew; and, by all that sober minds can credit, the vision of human perfectibility is far enough from any national consummation.

14. Whatever any may think of their own ability, or however some might flout to find their errors censured or their pretensions disallowed; whatever improvement may actually have been made, or however fondly we may listen to boasts and felicitations on that topic; it is presumed, that the general ignorance on the subject of

grammar, as above stated, is too obvious to be denied. What then is the remedy? and to whom must our appeal be made? Knowledge cannot be imposed by power, nor is there any domination in the republic of letters. The remedy lies solely in that zeal which can provoke to a generous emulation in the cause of literature; and the appeal, which has recourse to the learning of the learned, and to the common sense of all, must be pressed home to conviction, till every false doctrine stand refuted, and every weak pretender exposed or neglected. Then shall Science honour them that honour her; and all her triumphs be told, all her instructions be delivered, in "sound speech that cannot be condemned."

15. A generous man is not unwilling to be corrected, and a just one cannot but desire to be set right in all things. Even over noisy gainsayers, a calm and dignified exhibition of true doctrine [sic--KTH], has often more influence than ever openly appears. I have even seen the author of a faulty grammar heap upon his corrector more scorn and personal abuse than would fill a large newspaper, and immediately afterwards, in a new edition of his book, renounce the errors which had been pointed out to him, stealing the very language of his amendments from the man whom he had so grossly vilified! It is true that grammarians have ever disputed, and often with more acrimony than discretion. Those who, in elementary treatises, have meddled much with philological controversy, have well illustrated the couplet of Denham: "The tree of knowledge, blasted by disputes, Produces sapless leaves in stead of fruits."

16. Thus, then, as I have before suggested, we find among writers on grammar two numerous classes of authors, who have fallen into opposite errors, perhaps equally reprehensible; the visionaries, and the copyists. The former have ventured upon too much originality, the latter have attempted too little. "The science of philology," says Dr. Alexander Murray, "is not a frivolous study, fit to be conducted by ignorant pedants or visionary enthusiasts. It requires more qualifications to succeed in it, than are usually united in those who pursue it:--a sound penetrating judgement; habits of calm philosophical induction; an erudition various, extensive, and accurate; and a mind likewise, that can direct the knowledge expressed in words, to illustrate the nature of the signs which convey it."--*Murray's History of European Languages*, Vol. ii, p. 333.

17. They who set aside the authority of custom, and judge every thing to be ungrammatical which appears to them to be unphilosophical, render the whole ground forever disputable, and weary themselves in beating the air. So various have been the notions of this sort of critics, that it would be difficult to mention an opinion not found in some of their books. Amidst this rage for speculation on a subject purely practical, various attempts have been made, to overthrow that system of instruction, which long use has rendered venerable, and long experience proved to be useful. But it is manifestly much easier to raise even plausible objections against this system, than to invent an other less objectionable. Such attempts have generally met the reception they deserved. Their history will give no encouragement to future innovators.

18. Again: While some have thus wasted their energies in eccentric flights, vainly supposing that the learning of ages would give place to their whimsical theories; others, with more success, not better deserved, have multiplied grammars almost innumerable, by abridging or modifying the books they had used in childhood. So that they who are at all acquainted with the origin and character of the various compends thus introduced into our schools, cannot but desire to see them all displaced by some abler and better work, more honourable to its author and more useful to the public, more intelligible to students and more helpful to teachers. Books professedly published for the advancement of knowledge, are very frequently to be reckoned, among its greatest impediments; for the interests of learning are no less injured by whimsical doctrines, than the rights of authorship by plagiarism. Too many of our grammars, profitable only to their makers and venders, are like weights attached to the heels of Hermes. It is discouraging to know the history of this science. But the multiplicity of treatises already in use, is a reason, not for silence, but for offering more. For, as Lord Bacon observes, the number of ill-written books is not to be diminished by ceasing to write, but by writing others which, like Aaron's serpent, shall swallow up the spurious.[5]

19. I have said that some grammars have too much originality, and others too little. It may be added, that not a few are chargeable with both these faults at once. They are original, or at least anonymous, where there should

have been given other authority than that of the compiler's name; and they are copies, or, at best, poor imitations, where the author should have shown himself capable of writing in a good style of his own. What then is the middle ground for the true grammarian? What is the kind, and what the degree, of originality, which are to be commended in works of this sort? In the first place, a grammarian must be a writer, an author, a man who observes and thinks for himself; and not a mere compiler, abridger, modifier, copyist, or plagiarist. Grammar is not the only subject upon which we allow no man to innovate in doctrine; why, then, should it be the only one upon which a man may make it a merit, to work up silently into a book of his own, the best materials found among the instructions of his predecessors and rivals? Some definitions and rules, which in the lapse of time and by frequency of use have become a sort of public property, the grammarian may perhaps be allowed to use at his pleasure; yet even upon these a man of any genius will be apt to set some impress peculiar to himself. But the doctrines of his work ought, in general, to be expressed in his own language, and illustrated by that of others. With respect to quotation, he has all the liberty of other writers, and no more; for, if a grammarian makes "use of his predecessors' labours," why should any one think with Murray, "it is scarcely necessary to apologize for" this, "or for *omitting to insert* their names?"--*Introd. to L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 7.

20. The author of this volume would here take the liberty briefly to refer to his own procedure. His knowledge of what is *technical* in grammar, was of course chiefly derived from the writings of other grammarians; and to their concurrent opinions and practices, he has always had great respect; yet, in truth, not a line has he ever copied from any of them with a design to save the labour of composition. For, not to compile an English grammar from others already extant, but to compose one more directly from the sources of the art, was the task which he at first proposed to himself. Nor is there in all the present volume a single sentence, not regularly quoted, the authorship of which he supposes may now be ascribed to an other more properly than to himself. Where either authority or acknowledgement was requisite, names have been inserted. In the doctrinal parts of the volume, not only quotations from others, but most examples made for the occasion, are marked with guillemets, to distinguish them from the main text; while, to almost every thing which is really taken from any other known writer, a name or reference is added. For those citations, however, which there was occasion to repeat in different parts of the work, a single reference has sometimes been thought sufficient. This remark refers chiefly to the corrections in the Key, the references being given in the Exercises.

21. Though the theme is not one on which a man may hope to write well with little reflection, it is true that the parts of this treatise which have cost the author the most labour, are those which "consist chiefly of materials selected from the writings of others." These, however, are not the didactical portions of the book, but the proofs and examples; which, according to the custom of the ancient grammarians, ought to be taken from other authors. But so much have the makers of our modern grammars been allowed to presume upon the respect and acquiescence of their readers, that the ancient exactness on this point would often appear pedantic. Many phrases and sentences, either original with the writer, or common to everybody, will therefore be found among the illustrations of the following work; for it was not supposed that any reader would demand for every thing of this kind the authority of some great name. Anonymous examples are sufficient to elucidate principles, if not to establish them; and elucidation is often the sole purpose for which an example is needed.

22. It is obvious enough, that no writer on grammar has any right to propose himself as authority for what he teaches; for every language, being the common property of all who use it, ought to be carefully guarded against the caprices of individuals; and especially against that presumption which might attempt to impose erroneous or arbitrary definitions and rules. "Since the matter of which we are treating," says the philologist of Salamanca, "is to be verified, first by reason, and then by testimony and usage, none ought to wonder if we sometimes deviate from the track of great men; for, with whatever authority any grammarian may weigh with me, unless he shall have confirmed his assertions by reason, and also by examples, he shall win no confidence in respect to grammar. For, as Seneca says, Epistle 95, 'Grammarians are the *guardians*, not the *authors*, of language.'"--*Sanctii Minerva*, Lib. ii, Cap. 2. Yet, as what is intuitively seen to be true or false, is already sufficiently proved or detected, many points in grammar need nothing more than to be clearly stated and illustrated; nay, it would seem an injurious reflection on the understanding of the reader, to accumulate proofs

of what cannot but be evident to all who speak the language.

23. Among men of the same profession, there is an unavoidable rivalry, so far as they become competitors for the same prize; but in competition there is nothing dishonourable, while excellence alone obtains distinction, and no advantage is sought by unfair means. It is evident that we ought to account him the best grammarian, who has the most completely executed the worthiest design. But no worthy design can need a false apology; and it is worse than idle to prevaricate. That is but a spurious modesty, which prompts a man to disclaim in one way what he assumes in an other--or to underrate the duties of his office, that he may boast of having "done all that could reasonably be expected." Whoever professes to have improved the science of English grammar, must claim to know more of the matter than the generality of English grammarians; and he who begins with saying, that "little can be expected" from the office he assumes, must be wrongfully contradicted, when he is held to have done much. Neither the ordinary power of speech, nor even the ability to write respectably on common topics, makes a man a critic among critics, or enables him to judge of literary merit. And if, by virtue of these qualifications alone, a man will become a grammarian or a connoisseur, he can hold the rank only by courtesy--a courtesy which is content to degrade the character, that his inferior pretensions may be accepted and honoured under the name.

24. By the force of a late popular example, still too widely influential, grammatical authorship has been reduced, in the view of many, to little or nothing more than a mere serving-up of materials anonymously borrowed; and, what is most remarkable, even for an indifferent performance of this low office, not only unnamed reviewers, but several writers of note, have not scrupled to bestow the highest praise of grammatical excellence! And thus the palm of superior skill in grammar, has been borne away by a *professed compiler*; who had so mean an opinion of what his theme required, as to deny it even the common courtesies of compilation! What marvel is it, that, under the wing of such authority, many writers have since sprung up, to improve upon this most happy design; while all who were competent to the task, have been discouraged from attempting any thing like a complete grammar of our language? What motive shall excite a man to long-continued diligence, where such notions prevail as give mastership no hope of preference, and where the praise of his ingenuity and the reward of his labour must needs be inconsiderable, till some honoured compiler usurp them both, and bring his "most useful matter" before the world under better auspices? If the love of learning supply such a motive, who that has generously yielded to the impulse, will not now, like Johnson, feel himself reduced to an "humble drudge"--or, like Perizonius, apologize for the apparent folly of devoting his time to such a subject as grammar?

25. The first edition of the "Institutes of English Grammar," the doctrinal parts of which are embraced in the present more copious work, was published in the year 1823; since which time, (within the space of twelve years,) about forty new compends, mostly professing to be abstracts of *Murray*, with improvements, have been added to our list of English grammars. The author has examined as many as thirty of them, and seen advertisements of perhaps a dozen more. Being various in character, they will of course be variously estimated; but, so far as he can judge, they are, without exception, works of little or no real merit, and not likely to be much patronized or long preserved from oblivion. For which reason, he would have been inclined entirely to disregard the petty depredations which the writers of several of them have committed upon his earlier text, were it not possible, that by such a frittering-away of his work, he himself might one day seem to some to have copied that from others which was first taken from him. Trusting to make it manifest to men of learning, that in the production of the books which bear his name, far more has been done for the grammar of our language than any single hand had before achieved within the scope of practical philology, and that with perfect fairness towards other writers; he cannot but feel a wish that the integrity of his text should be preserved, whatever else may befall; and that the multitude of scribblers who judge it so needful to remodel *Murray's* defective compilation, would forbear to publish under his name or their own what they find only in the following pages.

26. The mere rivalry of their authorship is no subject of concern; but it is enough for any ingenuous man to have toiled for years in solitude to complete a work of public utility, without entering a warfare for life to

defend and preserve it. Accidental coincidences in books are unfrequent, and not often such as to excite the suspicion of the most sensitive. But, though the criteria of plagiarism are neither obscure nor disputable, it is not easy, in this beaten track of literature, for persons of little reading to know what is, or is not, original. Dates must be accurately observed; and a multitude of minute things must be minutely compared. And who will undertake such a task but he that is personally interested? Of the thousands who are forced into the paths of learning, few ever care to know, by what pioneer, or with what labour, their way was cast up for them. And even of those who are honestly engaged in teaching, not many are adequate judges of the comparative merits of the great number of books on this subject. The common notions of mankind conform more easily to fashion than to truth; and even of some things within their reach, the majority seem contend to take their opinions upon trust. Hence, it is vain to expect that that which is intrinsically best, will be everywhere preferred; or that which is meritoriously elaborate, adequately appreciated. But common sense might dictate, that learning is not encouraged or respected by those who, for the making of books, prefer a pair of scissors to the pen.

27. The fortune of a grammar is not always an accurate test of its merits. The goddess of the plenteous horn stands blindfold yet upon the floating prow; and, under her capricious favour, any pirate-craft, ill stowed with plunder, may sometimes speed as well, as barges richly laden from the golden mines of science. Far more are now afloat, and more are stranded on dry shelves, than can be here reported. But what this work contains, is candidly designed to qualify the reader to be himself a judge of what it *should* contain; and I will hope, so ample a report as this, being thought sufficient, will also meet his approbation. The favour of one discerning mind that comprehends my subject, is worth intrinsically more than that of half the nation: I mean, of course, the half of whom my gentle reader is not one.

"They praise and they admire they know not what, And know not whom, but as one leads the other."--*Milton*.

CHAPTER III.

OF GRAMMATICAL SUCCESS AND FAME.

"Non is ego sum, cui aut jucundum, aut adeo opus sit, de aliis detrahere, et hac viâ ad famam contendere. Melioribus artibus laudem parare didici. Itaque non libenter dico, quod præsens institutum dicere cogit."--Jo. AUGUSTI ERNESTI *Præf. ad Græcum Lexicon*, p. vii.

1. The real history of grammar is little known; and many erroneous impressions are entertained concerning it: because the story of the systems most generally received has never been fully told; and that of a multitude now gone to oblivion was never worth telling. In the distribution of grammatical fame, which has chiefly been made by the hand of interest, we have had a strange illustration of the saying: "Unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance; but from him that hath not, shall be taken away even that which he hath." Some whom fortune has made popular, have been greatly overrated, if learning and talent are to be taken into the account; since it is manifest, that with no extraordinary claims to either, they have taken the very foremost rank among grammarians, and thrown the learning and talents of others into the shade, or made them tributary to their own success and popularity.

2. It is an ungrateful task to correct public opinion by showing the injustice of praise. Fame, though it may have been both unexpected and undeserved, is apt to be claimed and valued as part and parcel of a man's good name; and the dissenting critic, though ever-so candid, is liable to be thought an envious detractor. It would seem in general most prudent to leave mankind to find out for themselves how far any commendation bestowed on individuals is inconsistent with truth. But, be it remembered, that celebrity is not a virtue; nor, on the other hand, is experience the cheapest of teachers. A good man may not have done all things ably and well; and it is certainly no small mistake to estimate his character by the current value of his copy-rights. Criticism may destroy the reputation of a book, and not be inconsistent with a cordial respect for the private worth of its author. The reader will not be likely to be displeased with what is to be stated in this chapter, if he can believe, that no man's merit as a writer, may well be enhanced by ascribing to him that which he himself, for the protection of his own honour, has been constrained to disclaim. He cannot suppose that too much is alleged, if he will admit that a grammarian's fame should be thought safe enough in his *own keeping*. Are authors apt to undervalue their own performances? Or because proprietors and publishers may profit by the credit of a book, shall it be thought illiberal to criticise it? Is the author himself to be disbelieved, that the extravagant praises bestowed upon him may be justified? "Superlative commendation," says Dillwyn, "is near akin to *detractation*." (See his *Reflections*, p. 22.) Let him, therefore, who will charge detractation upon me, first understand wherein it consists. I shall criticise, freely, both the works of the living, and the doctrines of those who, to us, live only in their works; and if any man dislike this freedom, let him rebuke it, showing wherein it is wrong or unfair. The amiable author just quoted, says again: "Praise has so often proved an *impostor*, that it would be well, wherever we meet with it, to treat it as a vagrant."--*Ib.*, p. 100. I go not so far as this; but that eulogy which one knows to be false, he cannot but reckon impertinent.

3. Few writers on grammar have been more noted than WILLIAM LILY and LINDLEY MURRAY. Others have left better monuments of their learning and talents, but none perhaps have had greater success and fame. The Latin grammar which was for a long time most popular in England, has commonly been ascribed to the one; and what the Imperial Review, in 1805, pronounced "the best English grammar, beyond all comparison, that has yet appeared," was compiled by the other. And doubtless they have both been rightly judged to excel the generality of those which they were intended to supersede; and both, in their day, may have been highly serviceable to the cause of learning. For all excellence is but comparative; and to grant them this superiority, is neither to prefer them now, nor to justify the praise which has been bestowed upon their authorship. As the science of grammar can never be taught without a book, or properly taught by any book which is not itself grammatical, it is of some importance both to teachers and to students, to make choice of the best. Knowledge will not advance where grammars hold rank by prescription. Yet it is possible that many, in learning to write and speak, may have derived no inconsiderable benefit from a book that is neither accurate nor complete.

4. With respect to time, these two grammarians were three centuries apart; during which period, the English language received its most classical refinement, and the relative estimation of the two studies, Latin and English grammar, became in a great measure reversed. Lily was an Englishman, born at Odiham,[6] in Hampshire, in 1466. When he had arrived at manhood, he went on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem; and while abroad studied some time at Rome, and also at Paris. On his return he was thought one of the most accomplished scholars in England. In 1510, Dr. John Colet, dean of St. Paul's church, in London, appointed him the first high master of St. Paul's School, then recently founded by this gentleman's munificence. In this situation, Lily appears to have taught with great credit to himself till 1522, when he died of the plague, at the age of 56. For the use of this school, he wrote and published certain parts of the grammar which has since borne his name. Of the authorship of this work many curious particulars are stated in the preface by John Ward, which may be seen in the edition of 1793. Lily had able rivals, as well as learned coadjutors and friends. By the aid of the latter, he took precedence of the former; and his publications, though not voluminous, soon gained a general popularity. So that when an arbitrary king saw fit to silence competition among the philologists, by becoming himself, as Sir Thomas Elliott says, "the chiefe authour and setter-forth of an introduction into grammar, for the childrene of his lovyng subjects," Lily's Grammar was preferred for the basis of the standard. Hence, after the publishing of it became a privilege patented by the crown, the book appears to have been honoured with a royal title, and to have been familiarly called King Henry's Grammar.

5. Prefixed to this book, there appears a very ancient epistle to the reader, which while it shows the reasons for this royal interference with grammar, shows also, what is worthy of remembrance, that guarded and maintained as it was, even royal interference was here ineffectual to its purpose. It neither produced uniformity in the methods of teaching, nor, even for instruction in a dead language, entirely prevented the old manual from becoming diverse in its different editions. The style also may serve to illustrate what I have elsewhere said about the duties of a modern grammarian. "As for the diversitie of grammars, it is well and profitably taken awaie by the King's Majesties wisdome; who, foreseeing the inconvenience, and favorably providing the remedie, caused one kind of grammar by sundry learned men to be diligently drawn, and so to be set out, only every where to be taught, for the use of learners, and for the hurt in changing of schoolemaisters." That is, to prevent the injury which schoolmasters were doing by a whimsical choice, or frequent changing, of grammars. But, says the letter, "The varietie of teaching is divers yet, and alwaies will be; for that every schoolemaister liketh that he knoweth, and seeth not the use of that he knoweth not; and therefore judgeth that the most sufficient waie, which he seeth to be the readiest meane, and perfectest kinde, to bring a learner to have a thorough knowledge therein." The only remedy for such an evil then is, to teach those who are to be teachers, and to desert all who, for any whim of their own, desert sound doctrine.

6. But, to return. A law was made in England by Henry the Eighth, commanding Lily's Grammar only, (or that which has commonly been quoted as Lily's,) to be everywhere adopted and taught, as the common standard of grammatical instruction.[7] Being long kept in force by means of a special inquiry, directed to be made by the bishops at their stated visitations, this law, for three hundred years, imposed the book on all the established schools of the realm. Yet it is certain, that about one half of what has thus gone under the name of Lily, ("because," says one of the patentees, "he had *so considerable a hand* in the composition,") was written by Dr. Colet, by Erasmus, or by others who improved the work after Lily's death. And of the other half, it has been incidentally asserted in history, that neither the scheme nor the text was original. The Printer's Grammar, London, 1787, speaking of the art of type-foundry, says: "The Italians in a short time brought it to *that* perfection, that in the beginning of the year 1474, they cast a letter not much inferior to the best types of the present age; as may be seen in a Latin Grammar, written by Omnibonus Leonicensus, and printed at Padua on the 14th of January, 1474; *from whom our grammarian, Lily, has taken the entire scheme of his Grammar, and transcribed the greatest part thereof, without paying any regard to the memory of this author.*" The historian then proceeds to speak about types. See also the same thing in the History of Printing, 8vo, London, 1770. This is the grammar which bears upon its title page: "*Quam solam Regia Majestas in omnibus scholis docendam præcipit.*"

7. Murray was an intelligent and very worthy man, to whose various labours in the compilation of books our

schools are under many obligations. But in original thought and critical skill he fell far below most of "the authors to whom," he confesses, "the grammatical part of his compilation is *principally indebted for its materials*; namely, Harris, Johnson, Lowth, Priestley, Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, Coote, Blair, and Campbell."--*Introd. to Lindley Murray's Gram.*, p. 7. It is certain and evident that he entered upon his task with a very insufficient preparation. His biography, which was commenced by himself and completed by one of his most partial friends, informs us, that, "Grammar did not particularly engage his attention, until a short time previous to the publication of his first work on that subject;" that, "His Grammar, as it appeared in the first edition, was completed in rather less than a year;" that, "It was begun in the spring of 1794, and published in the spring of 1795--though he had an intervening illness, which, for several weeks, stopped the progress of the work;" and that, "The Exercises and Key were also composed in about a year."--*Life of L. Murray*, p. 188. From the very first sentence of his book, it appears that he entertained but a low and most erroneous idea of the duties of that sort of character in which he was about to come before the public.[8] He improperly imagined, as many others have done, that "little can be expected" from a modern grammarian, or (as he chose to express it) "from a *new compilation*, besides a careful selection of the most useful matter, and some degree of improvement in the mode of adapting it to the understanding, and the gradual progress of learners."--*Introd. to L. Murray's Gram.*; 8vo, p. 5; 12mo, p. 3. As if, to be master of his own art--to think and write well himself, were no part of a grammarian's business! And again, as if the jewels of scholarship, thus carefully selected, could need a burnish or a foil from other hands than those which fashioned them!

8. Murray's general idea of the doctrines of grammar was judicious. He attempted no broad innovation on what had been previously taught; for he had neither the vanity to suppose he could give currency to novelties, nor the folly to waste his time in labours utterly nugatory. By turning his own abilities to their best account, he seems to have done much to promote and facilitate the study of our language. But his notion of grammatical authorship, cuts off from it all pretence to literary merit, for the sake of doing good; and, taken in any other sense than as a forced apology for his own assumptions, his language on this point is highly injurious towards the very authors whom he copied. To justify himself, he ungenerously places them, in common with others, under a degrading necessity which no able grammarian ever felt, and which every man of genius or learning must repudiate. If none of our older grammars disprove his assertion, it is time to have a new one that will; for, to expect the perfection of grammar from him who cannot treat the subject in a style at once original and pure, is absurd. He says, "The greater part of an English grammar *must necessarily be a compilation*;" and adds, with reference to his own, "originality belongs to but a small portion of it. This I have acknowledged; and I trust *this acknowledgement* will protect me from all attacks, grounded on any supposed unjust and irregular assumptions." This quotation is from a letter addressed by Murray to his American publishers, in 1811, after they had informed him of certain complaints respecting the liberties which he had taken in his work. See "*The Friend*," Vol. iii, p. 34.

9. The acknowledgement on which he thus relies, does not appear to have been made, till his grammar had gone through several editions. It was, however, at some period, introduced into his short preface, or "Introduction," in the following well-meant but singularly sophistical terms: "In a *work* which professes itself to be a *compilation*, and which, *from the nature and design of it*, must consist chiefly of materials selected from the writings of others, *it is scarcely necessary to apologise* for the use which the Compiler has made of his predecessors' labours, or for *omitting to insert* their names. *From the alterations* which have been frequently made in the sentiments and the language, to suit the connexion, and to adapt them to the particular purposes for which they are introduced; and, in many instances, *from the uncertainty to whom* the passages originally belonged, the insertion of names *could seldom be made with propriety*. But if this could have been generally done, a work of this nature *would derive no advantage from it*, equal to the inconvenience of crowding the pages with a repetition of names and references. It is, however, proper to acknowledge, in general terms, that the authors to whom the grammatical part of this compilation is principally indebted for its materials, are Harris, Johnson, Lowth, Priestley, Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, and Coote."--*Introd.; Duodecimo Gram.*, p. 4; *Octavo*, p. 7.

10. The fallacy, or absurdity, of this language sprung from necessity. An impossible case was to be made out.

For compilation, though ever so fair, is not grammatical authorship. But some of the commendators of Murray have not only professed themselves satisfied with this general acknowledgement, but have found in it a candour and a liberality, a modesty and a diffidence, which, as they allege, ought to protect him from all animadversion. Are they friends to learning? Let them calmly consider what I reluctantly offer for its defence and promotion. In one of the recommendations appended to Murray's grammars, it *is* said, "They have nearly superseded every thing else of the kind, by concentrating the remarks of the best authors on the subject." But, in truth, with several of the best English grammars published previously to his own, Murray appears to have been totally unacquainted. The chief, if not the only school grammars which were largely copied by him, were Lowth's and Priestley's, though others perhaps may have shared the fate of these in being "superseded" by his. It may be seen by inspection, that in copying these two authors, the compiler, agreeably to what he says above, omitted all names and references--even such as they had scrupulously inserted: and, at the outset, assumed to be himself the sole authority for all his doctrines and illustrations; satisfying his own mind with making, some years afterwards, that general apology which we are now criticising. For if he so mutilated and altered the passages which he adopted, as to make it improper to add the names of their authors, upon what other authority than his own do they rest? But if, on the other hand, he generally copied without alteration; his examples are still anonymous, while his first reason for leaving them so, is plainly destroyed: because his position is thus far contradicted by the fact.

11. In his later editions, however, there are two opinions which the compiler thought proper to support by regular quotations; and, now and then, in other instances, the name of an author appears. The two positions thus distinguished, are these: *First*, That the noun *means* is necessarily singular as well as plural, so that one cannot with propriety use the singular form, *mean*, to signify that by which an end is attained; *Second*, That the subjective mood, to which he himself had previously given all the tenses without inflection, is not different in form from the indicative, except in the present tense. With regard to the later point, I have shown, in its proper place, that he taught erroneously, both before and after he changed his opinion; and concerning the former, the most that can be proved by quotation, is, that both *mean* and *means* for the singular number, long have been, and still are, in good use, or sanctioned by many elegant writers; so that either form may yet be considered grammatical, though the irregular can claim to be so, only when it is used in this particular sense. As to his second reason for the suppression of names, to wit, "the *uncertainty to whom* the passages originally belonged,"--to make the most of it, it is but partial and relative; and, surely, no other grammar ever before so multiplied the difficulty in the eyes of teachers, and so widened the field for commonplace authorship, as has the compilation in question. The origin of a sentiment or passage may be uncertain to one man, and perfectly well known to another. The embarrassment which a *compiler* may happen to find from this source, is worthy of little sympathy. For he cannot but know from what work he is taking any particular sentence or paragraph, and those parts of a *grammar*, which are new to the eye of a great grammarian, may very well be credited to him who claims to have written the book. I have thus disposed of his second reason for the omission of names and references, in compilations of grammar.

12. There remains one more: "A work of this nature *would derive no advantage from it*, equal to the inconvenience of crowding the pages with a repetition of names and references." With regard to a small work, in which the matter is to be very closely condensed, this argument has considerable force. But Murray has in general allowed himself very ample room, especially in his two octavo's. In these, and for the most part also in his duodecimo's, all needful references might easily have been added without increasing the size of his volumes, or injuring their appearance. In nine cases out of ten, the names would only have been occupied what is now blank space. It is to be remembered, that these books do not differ much, except in quantity of paper. His octavo Grammar is but little more than a reprint, in a larger type, of the duodecimo Grammar, together with his Exercises and Key. The demand for this expensive publication has been comparatively small; and it is chiefly to the others, that the author owes his popularity as a grammarian. As to the advantage which Murray or his work might have derived from an adherence on his part to the usual custom of compilers, *that* may be variously estimated. The remarks of the best grammarians or the sentiments of the best authors, are hardly to be thought the more worthy of acceptance, for being concentrated in such a manner as to merge their authenticity in the fame of the copyist. Let me not be understood to suggest that this good man sought

popularity at the expense of others; for I do not believe that either fame or interest was his motive. But the right of authors to the credit of their writings, is a delicate point; and, surely, his example would have been worthier of imitation, had he left no ground for the foregoing objections, and carefully barred the way to any such interference.

13. But let the first sentence of this apology be now considered. It is here suggested, that because this work is a compilation, even such an acknowledgement as the author makes, is "scarcely necessary." This is too much to say. Yet one may readily admit, that a compilation, "from the nature and design of it, must consist chiefly"--nay, *wholly*--"of materials selected from the writings of others." But what able grammarian would ever willingly throw himself upon the horns of such a dilemma! The nature and design *of a book*, whatever they may be, are matters for which the author alone is answerable; but the nature and design *of grammar*, are no less repugnant to the strain of this apology, than to the vast number of errors and defects which were overlooked by Murray in his work of compilation. It is the express purpose of this practical science, to enable a man to write well himself. He that cannot do this, exhibits no excess of modesty when he claims to have "done all that could reasonably be expected in a work of this nature."--*L. Murray's Gram., Introd.*, p. 9. He that sees with other men's eyes, is peculiarly liable to errors and inconsistencies: uniformity is seldom found in patchwork, or accuracy in secondhand literature. Correctness of language is in the mind, rather than in the hand or the tongue; and, in order to secure it, some originality of thought is necessary. A delineation from new surveys is not the less original because the same region has been sketched before; and how can he be the ablest of surveyors, who, through lack of skill or industry, does little more than transcribe the field-notes and copy the projections of his predecessors?

14. This author's oversights are numerous. There is no part of the volume more accurate than that which he literally copied from Lowth. To the Short Introduction alone, he was indebted for more than a hundred and twenty paragraphs; and even in these there are many things obviously erroneous. Many of the best practical notes were taken from Priestley; yet it was he, at whose doctrines were pointed most of those "positions and discussions," which alone the author claims as original. To some of these reasonings, however, his own alterations may have given rise; for, where he "persuades himself he is not destitute of originality," he is often arguing against the text of his own earlier editions. Webster's well-known complaints of Murray's unfairness, had a far better cause than requital; for there was no generosity in ascribing them to peevishness, though the passages in question were not worth copying. On perspicuity and accuracy, about sixty pages were extracted from Blair; and it requires no great critical acumen to discover, that they are miserably deficient in both. On the law of language, there are fifteen pages from Campbell; which, with a few exceptions, are well written. The rules for spelling are the same as Walker's: the third one, however, is a gross blunder; and the fourth, a needless repetition.

15. Were this a place for minute criticism, blemishes almost innumerable might be pointed out. It might easily be shown that almost every rule laid down in the book for the observance of the learner, was repeatedly violated by the hand of the master. Nor is there among all those who have since abridged or modified the work, an abler grammarian than he who compiled it. Who will pretend that Flint, Alden, Comly, Jaudon, Russell, Bacon, Lyon, Miller, Alger, Maltby, Ingersoll, Fisk, Greenleaf, Merchant, Kirkham, Cooper, R. G. Greene, Woodworth, Smith, or Frost, has exhibited greater skill? It is curious to observe, how frequently a grammatical blunder committed by Murray, or some one of his predecessors, has escaped the notice of all these, as well as of many others who have found it easier to copy him than to write for themselves. No man professing to have copied and improved Murray, can rationally be supposed to have greatly excelled him; for to pretend to have produced an *improved copy of a compilation*, is to claim a sort of authorship, even inferior to his, and utterly unworthy of any man who is able to prescribe and elucidate the principles of English grammar.

16. But Murray's grammatical works, being extolled in the reviews, and made common stock in trade,--being published, both in England and in America, by booksellers of the most extensive correspondence, and highly commended even by those who were most interested in the sale of them,--have been eminently successful

with the public; and in the opinion of the world, success is the strongest proof of merit. Nor has the force of this argument been overlooked by those who have written in aid of his popularity. It is the strong point in most of the commendations which have been bestowed upon Murray as a grammarian. A recent eulogist computes, that, "at least five millions of copies of his various school-books have been printed;" particularly commends him for his "candour and liberality towards rival authors;" avers that, "he went on, examining and correcting his Grammar, through all its forty editions, till he brought it to a degree of perfection which will render it as permanent as the English language itself;" censures (and not without reason) the "presumption" of those "superficial critics" who have attempted to amend the work, and usurp his honours; and, regarding the compiler's confession of his indebtedness to others, but as a mark of "his exemplary diffidence of his own merits," adds, (in very bad English,) "Perhaps there never was an author whose success and fame were more *unexpected by himself than Lindley Murray*."--*The Friend*, Vol. iii, p. 33.

17. In a New-York edition of Murray's Grammar, printed in 1812, there was inserted a "Caution to the Public," by Collins & Co., his American correspondents and publishers, in which are set forth the unparalleled success and merit of the work, "as it came *in purity* from the pen of the author;" with an earnest remonstrance against the several *revised editions* which had appeared at Boston, Philadelphia, and other places, and against the unwarrantable liberties taken by American teachers, in altering the work, under pretence of improving it. In this article it is stated, "that *the whole* of these mutilated editions *have been seen* and examined by Lindley Murray himself, and that they, have met with *his decided disapprobation*. Every rational mind," continue these gentlemen, "will agree with him, that, 'the *rights of living authors*, and the *interests of science and literature*, demand the abolition of this *ungenerous practice*.'" (See this also in *Murray's Key*, 12mo, N. Y., 1811, p. iii.) Here, then, we have the feeling and opinion of Murray himself, upon this tender point of right. Here we see the tables turned, and other men judging it "scarcely necessary to apologize for the use which *they have made* of their predecessors' labours."

18. It is really remarkable to find an author and his admirers so much at variance, as are Murray and his commenders, in relation to his grammatical authorship; and yet, under what circumstances could men have stronger desires to avoid apparent contradiction? They, on the one side, claim for him the highest degree of merit as a grammarian; and continue to applaud his works as if nothing more could be desired in the study of English grammar--a branch of learning which some of them are willing emphatically to call "*his science*." He, on the contrary, to avert the charge of plagiarism, disclaims almost every thing in which any degree of literary merit consists; supposes it impossible to write an English grammar the greater part of which is not a "compilation;" acknowledges that originality belongs to but a small part of his own; trusts that such a general acknowledgement will protect him from all censure; suppresses the names of other writers, and leaves his examples to rest solely on his own authority; and, "contented with the great respectability of his private character and station, is satisfied with being *useful* as an author."--*The Friend*, Vol. iii, p. 33. By the high praises bestowed upon his works, his own voice is overborne: the trumpet of fame has drowned it. His liberal authorship is profitable in trade, and interest has power to swell and prolong the strain.

19. The name and character of Lindley Murray are too venerable to allow us to approach even the errors of his grammars, without some recognition of the respect due to his personal virtues and benevolent intentions. For the private virtues of Murray, I entertain as cordial a respect as any other man. Nothing is argued against these, even if it be proved that causes independent of true literary merit have given him his great and unexpected fame as a grammarian. It is not intended by the introduction of these notices, to impute to him any thing more or less than what his own words plainly imply; except those inaccuracies and deficiencies which still disgrace his work as a literary performance, and which of course he did not discover. He himself knew that he had not brought the book to such perfection as has been ascribed to it; for, by way of apology for his frequent alterations, he says, "Works of this nature admit of repeated improvements; and are, perhaps, never complete." Necessity has urged this reasoning upon me. I am as far from any invidious feeling, or any sordid motive, as was Lindley Murray. But it is due to truth, to correct erroneous impressions; and, in order to obtain from some an impartial examination of the following pages, it seemed necessary first to convince them, *that it is possible* to compose a better grammar than Murray's, without being particularly indebted to him. If this

treatise is not such, a great deal of time has been thrown away upon a useless project; and if it is, the achievement is no fit subject for either pride or envy. It differs from his, and from all the pretended amendments of his, as a new map, drawn from actual and minute surveys, differs from an old one, compiled chiefly from others still older and confessedly still more imperfect. The region and the scope are essentially the same; the tracing and the colouring are more original; and (if the reader can pardon the suggestion) perhaps more accurate and vivid.

20. He who makes a new grammar, does nothing for the advancement of learning, unless his performance excel all earlier ones designed for the same purpose; and nothing for his own honour, unless such excellence result from the exercise of his own ingenuity and taste. A good style naturally commends itself to every reader--even to him who cannot tell why it is worthy of preference. Hence there is reason to believe, that the true principles of practical grammar, deduced from custom and sanctioned by time, will never be generally superseded by any thing which individual caprice may substitute. In the republic of letters, there will always be some who can distinguish merit; and it is impossible that these should ever be converted to any whimsical theory of language, which goes to make void the learning of past ages. There will always be some who can discern the difference between originality of style, and innovation in doctrine,--between a due regard to the opinions of others, and an actual usurpation of their text; and it is incredible that these should ever be satisfied with any mere compilation of grammar, or with any such authorship as either confesses or betrays the writer's own incompetence. For it is not true, that, "an English grammar must necessarily be," in any considerable degree, if at all, "a compilation;" nay, on such a theme, and in "the grammatical part" of the work, all compilation beyond a fair use of authorities regularly quoted, or of materials either voluntarily furnished or free to all, most unavoidably implies--not conscious "ability," generously doing honour to rival merit--nor "exemplary diffidence," modestly veiling its own--but inadequate skill and inferior talents, bribing the public by the spoils of genius, and seeking precedence by such means as not even the purest desire of doing good can justify.

21. Among the professed copiers of Murray, there is not one to whom the foregoing remarks do not apply, as forcibly as to him. For no one of them all has attempted any thing more honourable to himself, or more beneficial to the public, than what their master had before achieved; nor is there any one, who, with the same disinterestedness, has guarded his design from the imputation of a pecuniary motive. It is comical to observe what they say in their prefaces. Between praise to sustain their choice of a model, and blame to make room for their pretended amendments, they are often placed in as awkward a dilemma, as that which was contrived when grammar was identified with compilation. I should have much to say, were I to show them all in their true light.[9] Few of them have had such success as to be worthy of notice here; but the names of many will find frequent place in my code of false grammar. The one who seems to be now taking the lead in fame and revenue, filled with glad wonder at his own popularity, is SAMUEL KIRKHAM. Upon this gentleman's performance, I shall therefore bestow a few brief observations. If I do not overrate this author's literary importance, a fair exhibition of the character of his grammar, may be made an instructive lesson to some of our modern literati. The book is a striking sample of a numerous species.

22. Kirkham's treatise is entitled, "English Grammar *in familiar Lectures*, accompanied by a *Compendium*;" that is, by a folded sheet. Of this work, of which I have recently seen copies purporting to be of the "SIXTY-SEVENTH

ference. And perhaps there are few, however learned, who, on a perusal of the volume, would not be furnished with some important rules and facts which had not before occurred to their own observation.

9. The greatest peculiarity of the method is, that it requires the pupil to speak or write a great deal, and the teacher very little. But both should constantly remember that grammar is the art of speaking and writing well; an art which can no more be acquired without practice, than that of dancing or swimming. And each should ever be careful to perform his part handsomely--without drawling, omitting, stopping, hesitating, faltering, miscalling, reiterating, stuttering, hurrying, slurring, mouthing, misquoting, mispronouncing, or any of the

thousand faults which render utterance disagreeable and inelegant. It is the learner's diction that is to be improved; and the system will be found well calculated to effect that object; because it demands of him, not only to answer questions on grammar, but also to make a prompt and practical application of what he has just learned. If the class be tolerable readers, and have learned the art of attention, it will not be necessary for the teacher to say much; and in general he ought not to take up the time by so doing. He should, however, carefully superintend their rehearsals; give the word to the next when any one errs; and order the exercise in such a manner that either his own voice, or the example of his best scholars, may gradually correct the ill habits of the awkward, till all learn to recite with clearness, understanding well what they say, and making it intelligible to others.

10. Without oral instruction and oral exercises, a correct habit of speaking our language can never be acquired; but written rules, and exercises in writing, are perhaps quite as necessary, for the formation of a good style. All these should therefore be combined in our course of English grammar. And, in order to accomplish two objects at once, the written doctrines, or the definitions and rules of grammar, should statedly be made the subject of a critical exercise in utterance; so that the boy who is parsing a word, or correcting a sentence, in the hearing of others, may impressively realize, that he is then and there exhibiting his own skill or deficiency in oral discourse. Perfect forms of parsing and correcting should be given him as models, with the understanding that the text before him is his only guide to their right application. It should be shown, that in parsing any particular word, or part of speech, there are just so many things to be said of it, and no more, and that these are to be said in the best manner: so that whoever tells fewer, omits something requisite; whoever says more, inserts something irrelevant; and whoever proceeds otherwise, either blunders in point of fact, or impairs the beauty of the expression. I rely not upon what are called "*Parsing Tables*" but upon the precise forms of expression which are given in the book for the parsing of the several sorts of words. Because the questions, or abstract directions, which constitute the common parsing tables, are less intelligible to the learner than a practical example; and more time must needs be consumed on them, in order to impress upon his memory the number and the sequence of the facts to be stated.

11. If a pupil happen to be naturally timid, there should certainly be no austerity of manner to embarrass his diffidence; for no one can speak well, who feels afraid. But a far more common impediment to the true use of speech, is carelessness. He who speaks before a school, in an exercise of this kind, should be made to feel that he is bound by every consideration of respect for himself, or for those who hear him, to proceed with his explanation or rehearsal, in a ready, clear, and intelligible manner. It should be strongly impressed upon him, that the grand object of the whole business, is his own practical improvement; that a habit of speaking clearly and agreeably, is itself one half of the great art of grammar; that to be slow and awkward in parsing, is unpardonable negligence, and a culpable waste of time; that to commit blunders in rehearsing grammar, is to speak badly about the art of speaking well; that his recitations must be limited to such things as he perfectly knows; that he must apply himself to his book, till he can proceed without mistake; finally, that he must watch and imitate the utterance of those who speak well, ever taking that for the best manner, in which there are the fewest things that could be *mimicked*. [57]

12. The exercise of parsing should be commenced immediately after the first lesson of etymology--the lesson in which are contained the definitions of the ten parts of speech; and should be carried on progressively, till it embraces all the doctrines which are applicable to it. If it be performed according to the order prescribed in the following work, it will soon make the student perfectly familiar with all the primary definitions and rules of grammar. It asks no aid from a dictionary, if the performer knows the meaning of the words he is parsing; and very little from the teacher, if the forms in the grammar have received any tolerable share of attention. It requires just enough of thought to keep the mind attentive to what the lips are uttering; while it advances by such easy gradations and constant repetitions as leave the pupil utterly without excuse, if he does not know what to say. Being neither wholly extemporaneous nor wholly rehearsed by rote, it has more dignity than a school-boy's conversation, and more ease than a formal recitation, or declamation; and is therefore an exercise well calculated to induce a habit of uniting correctness with fluency in ordinary speech--a species of elocution as valuable as any other. [58]

13. Thus would I unite the practice with the theory of grammar; endeavouring to express its principles with all possible perspicuity, purity, and propriety of diction; retaining, as necessary parts of the subject, those technicalities which the pupil must needs learn in order to understand the disquisitions of grammarians in general; adopting every important feature of that system of doctrines which appears to have been longest and most generally taught; rejecting the multitudinous errors and inconsistencies with which unskillful hands have disgraced the science and perplexed the schools; remodelling every ancient definition and rule which it is possible to amend, in respect to style, or grammatical correctness; supplying the numerous and great deficiencies with which the most comprehensive treatises published by earlier writers, are chargeable; adapting the code of instruction to the present state of English literature, without giving countenance to any innovation not sanctioned by reputable use; labouring at once to extend and to facilitate the study, without forgetting the proper limits of the science, or debasing its style by puerilities.

14. These general views, it is hoped, will be found to have been steadily adhered to throughout the following work. The author has not deviated much from the principles adopted in the most approved grammars already in use; nor has he acted the part of a servile copyist. It was not his design to introduce novelties, but to form a practical digest of established rules. He has not laboured to subvert the general system of grammar, received from time immemorial; but to improve upon it, in its present application to our tongue. That which is excellent, may not be perfect; and amendment may be desirable, where subversion would be ruinous. Believing that no theory can better explain the principles of our language, and no contrivance afford greater facilities to the student, the writer has in general adopted those doctrines which are already best known; and has contented himself with attempting little more than to supply the deficiencies of the system, and to free it from the reproach of being itself ungrammatical. This indeed was task enough; for, to him, all the performances of his predecessors seemed meagre and greatly deficient, compared with what he thought needful to be done. The scope of his labours has been, to define, dispose, and exemplify those doctrines anew; and, with a scrupulous regard to the best usage, to offer, on that authority, some further contributions to the stock of grammatical knowledge.

15. Having devoted many years to studies of this nature, and being conversant with most of the grammatical treatises already published, the author conceived that the objects above referred to, might be better effected than they had been in any work within his knowledge. And he persuades himself, that, however this work may yet fall short of possible completeness, the improvements here offered are neither few nor inconsiderable. He does not mean to conceal in any degree his obligations to others, or to indulge in censure without discrimination. He has no disposition to depreciate the labours, or to detract from the merits, of those who have written ably upon this topic. He has studiously endeavoured to avail himself of all the light they have thrown upon the subject. With a view to further improvements in the science, he has also resorted to the original sources of grammatical knowledge, and has not only critically considered what he has seen or heard of our vernacular tongue, but has sought with some diligence the analogies of speech in the structure of several other languages. If, therefore, the work now furnished be thought worthy of preference, as exhibiting the best method of teaching grammar; he trusts it will be because it deviates least from sound doctrine, while, by fair criticism upon others, it best supplies the means of choosing judiciously.

16. Of all methods of teaching grammar, that which has come nearest to what is recommended above, has doubtless been the most successful; and whatever objections may have been raised against it, it will probably be found on examination to be the most analogous to nature. It is analytic in respect to the doctrines of grammar, synthetic in respect to the practice, and logical in respect to both. It assumes the language as an object which the learner is capable of conceiving to be one whole; begins with the classification of all its words, according to certain grand differences which make the several parts of speech; then proceeds to divide further, according to specific differences and qualities, till all the classes, properties, and relations, of the words in any intelligible sentence, become obvious and determinate: and he to whom these things are known, so that he can see at a glance what is the construction of each word, and whether it is right or not, is a good grammarian. The disposition of the human mind to generalize the objects of thought, and to follow broad analogies in the use of words, discovers itself early, and seems to be an inherent principle of our nature.

Hence, in the language of children and illiterate people, many words are regularly inflected even in opposition to the most common usage.

17. It has unfortunately become fashionable to inveigh against the necessary labour of learning by heart the essential principles of grammar, as a useless and intolerable drudgery. And this notion, with the vain hope of effecting the same purpose in an easier way, is giving countenance to modes of teaching well calculated to make superficial scholars. When those principles are properly defined, disposed, and exemplified, the labour of learning them is far less than has been represented; and the habits of application induced by such a method of studying grammar, are of the utmost importance to the learner. Experience shows, that the task may be achieved during the years of childhood; and that, by an early habit of study, the memory is so improved, as to render those exercises easy and familiar, which, at a later period, would be found very difficult and irksome. Upon this plan, and perhaps upon every other, some words will be learned before the ideas represented by them are fully comprehended, or the things spoken of are fully understood. But this seems necessarily to arise from the order of nature in the development of the mental faculties; and an acquisition cannot be lightly esteemed, which has signally augmented and improved that faculty on which the pupil's future progress in knowledge depends.

18. The memory, indeed, should never be cultivated at the expense of the understanding; as is the case, when the former is tasked with ill-devised lessons by which the latter is misled and bewildered. But truth, whether fully comprehended or not, has no perplexing inconsistencies. And it is manifest that that which does not in some respect surpass the understanding, can never enlighten it--can never awaken the spirit of inquiry or satisfy research. How often have men of observation profited by the remembrance of words which, at the time they heard them, they did not "*perfectly understand!*" We never study any thing of which we imagine our knowledge to be perfect. To learn, and, to understand, are, with respect to any science or art, one and the same thing. With respect to difficult or unintelligible phraseology alone, are they different. He who by study has once stored his memory with the sound and appropriate language of any important doctrine, can never, without some folly or conceit akin to madness, repent of the acquisition. Milton, in his academy, professed to teach things rather than words; and many others have made plausible profession of the same thing since. But it does not appear, that even in the hands of Milton, the attempt was crowned with any remarkable success. See *Dr. Barrow's Essays*, p. 85.

19. The vain pretensions of several modern simplifiers, contrivers of machines, charts, tables, diagrams, vincula, pictures, dialogues, familiar lectures, ocular analyses, tabular compendiums, inductive exercises, productive systems, intellectual methods, and various new theories, for the purpose of teaching grammar, may serve to deceive the ignorant, to amuse the visionary, and to excite the admiration of the credulous; but none of these things has any favourable relation to that improvement which may justly be boasted as having taken place within the memory of the present generation. The definitions and rules which constitute the doctrines of grammar, may be variously expressed, arranged, illustrated, and applied; and in the expression, arrangement, illustration, and application of them, there may be room for some amendment; but no contrivance can ever relieve the pupil from the necessity of committing them thoroughly to memory. The experience of all antiquity is added to our own, in confirmation of this; and the judicious teacher, though he will not shut his eyes to a real improvement, will be cautious of renouncing the practical lessons of hoary experience, for the futile notions of a vain projector.

20. Some have been beguiled with the idea, that great proficiency in grammar was to be made by means of a certain fanciful method of *induction*. But if the scheme does not communicate to those who are instructed by it, a better knowledge of grammar than the contrivers themselves seem to have possessed, it will be found of little use.[59] By the happy method of Bacon, to lead philosophy into the common walks of life, into the ordinary business and language of men, is to improve the condition of humanity; but, in teaching grammar, to desert the plain didactic method of definition and example, rule and praxis, and pretend to lead children by philosophic induction into a knowledge of words, is to throw down the ladder of learning, that boys may imagine themselves to ascend it, while they are merely stiling over the low level upon which its fragments are

cast.

21. The chief argument of these inductive grammarians is founded on the principle, that children cannot be instructed by means of any words which they do not perfectly understand. If this principle were strictly true, children could never be instructed by words at all. For no child ever fully understands a word the first time he hears or sees it; and it is rather by frequent repetition and use, than by any other process, that the meaning of words is commonly learned. Hence most people make use of many terms which they cannot very accurately explain, just as they do of many *things*, the real nature of which they do not comprehend. The first perception we have of any word, or other thing, when presented to the ear or the eye, gives us some knowledge of it. So, to the signs of thought, as older persons use them, we soon attach some notion of what is meant; and the difference between this knowledge, and that which we call an understanding of the word or thing, is, for the most part, only in degree. Definitions and explanations are doubtless highly useful, but induction is not definition, and an understanding of words may be acquired without either; else no man could ever have made a dictionary. But, granting the principle to be true, it makes nothing for this puerile method of induction; because the regular process by definitions and examples is both shorter and easier, as well as more effectual. In a word, this whole scheme of inductive grammar is nothing else than a series of *leading* questions and *manufactured* answers; the former being generally as unfair as the latter are silly. It is a remarkable tissue of ill-laid premises and of forced illogical sequences.

22. Of a similar character is a certain work, entitled, "English Grammar on the *Productive System*: a method of instruction recently adopted in Germany and Switzerland." It is a work which certainly will be "*productive*" of no good to any body but the author and his publishers. The book is as destitute of taste, as of method; of authority, as of originality. It commences with "the *inductive* process," and after forty pages of such matter as is described above, becomes a "*productive* system," by means of a misnamed "RECAPITULATION;" which jumbles together the etymology and the syntax of the language, through seventy-six pages more. It is then made still more "*productive*" by the appropriation of a like space to a reprint of Murray's Syntax and Exercises, under the inappropriate title, "GENERAL OBSERVATIONS." To Prosody, including punctuation and the use of capitals, there are allotted six pages, at the end; and to Orthography, four lines, in the middle of the volume! (See p. 41.) It is but just, to regard the *title* of this book, as being at once a libel and a lie; a libel upon the learning and good sense of Woodbridge;[60] and a practical lie, as conveying a false notion of the origin of what the volume contains.

23. What there is in Germany or Switzerland, that bears *any resemblance* to this misnamed system of English Grammar, remains to be shown. It would be prodigal of the reader's time, and inconsistent with the studied brevity of this work, to expose the fallacy of what is pretended in regard to the origin of this new method. Suffice it to say, that the anonymous and questionable account of the "Productive System of Instruction," which the author has borrowed from a "valuable periodical," to save himself the trouble of writing a preface, and, as he says, to "*assist* [the reader] in forming an opinion of the comparative merits of *the system*" is not only destitute of all authority, but is totally irrelevant, except to the whimsical *name* of his book. If every word of it be true, it is insufficient to give us even the slightest reason to suppose, that any thing analogous to his production ever had existence in either of those countries; and yet it is set forth on purpose to convey the idea that such a system "*now predominates*" in the schools of both. (See *Pref.*, p. 5.) The infidel *Neef*, whose new method of education has been tried in our country, and with its promulgator forgot, was an accredited disciple of this boasted "productive school;" a zealous coadjutor with Pestalozzi himself, from whose halls he emanated to "teach the offspring of a free people"--to teach them the nature of things sensible, and a contempt for all the wisdom of *books*. And what similarity is there between his method of teaching and that of *Roswell C. Smith*, except their pretence to a common parentage, and that both are worthless?

24. The success of Smith's Inductive and Productive Grammars, and the fame perhaps of a certain "Grammar in Familiar Lectures," produced in 1836 a rival work from the hands of a gentleman in New Hampshire, entitled, "An Analytical Grammar of the English Language, embracing the *Inductive and Productive Methods of Teaching*, with *Familiar Explanations in the Lecture Style*" &c. This is a fair-looking duodecimo volume of

three hundred pages, the character and pretensions of which, if they could be clearly stated, would throw further light upon the two fallacious schemes of teaching mentioned above. For the writer says, "This grammar professes *to combine* both the *Inductive* and *Productive* methods of imparting instruction, of which much has been said within a few years *past*"--*Preface*, p. iv. And again: "The inductive and productive methods of instruction contain the essence of modern improvements."--*Gram.*, p. 139. In what these modern improvements consist, he does not inform us; but, it will be seen, that he himself claims the *copyright* of *all* the improvements which he allows to *English grammar* since the appearance of Murray in 1795. More than two hundred pretenders to such improvements, appear however within the time; nor is the grammarian of Holdgate the least positive of the claimants. This new purveyor for the public taste, dislikes the catering of his predecessor, who poached in the fields of Murray; and, with a tacit censure upon *his productions*, has *honestly bought* the rareties which he has served up. In this he has the advantage. He is a better writer too than some who make grammars; though no adept at composition, and a total stranger to method. To call his work a "*system*" is a palpable misnomer; to tell what it is, an impossibility. It is a grammatical chaos, bearing such a resemblance to Smith's or Kirkham's as one mass of confusion naturally bears to an other, yet differing from both in almost every thing that looks like order in any of the three.

25. The claimant of the combination says, "this new system of English grammar now offered to the public, embraces *the principles* of a 'Systematic Introduction to English Grammar,' by John L. Parkhurst; and the *present author* is indebted to Mr. Parkhurst for a knowledge of *the manner* of applying the principles involved in *his peculiar method* of teaching grammatical science. He is also under obligations to Mr. Parkhurst for many useful hints received several years since while under his instruction.--The *copy right* of Parkhurst's Grammar has been purchased by the writer of this, who alone is responsible for the present application of *its definitions*. Parkhurst's Systematic Introduction to English Grammar has passed through two editions, and is *the first improved system* of English grammar that has appeared before the public *since the first introduction* of Lindley Murray's English Grammar."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, *Preface*, p. iii. What, then, is "THE PRODUCTIVE SYSTEM?" and with whom did it originate? The thousands of gross blunders committed by its professors, prove at least that it is no system of writing grammatically; and, whether it originated with Parkhurst or with Pestalozzi, with Sanborn or with Smith, as it is confessedly a method but "recently adopted," and, so far as appears, never fairly tested, so is it a method that needs only to be *known*, to be immediately and forever exploded.

26. The best instruction is that which ultimately gives the greatest facility and skill in practice; and grammar is best taught by that process which brings its doctrines most directly home to the habits as well as to the thoughts of the pupil--which the most effectually conquers inattention, and leaves the deepest impress of shame upon blundering ignorance. In the language of some men, there is a vividness, an energy, a power of expression, which penetrates even the soul of dullness, and leaves an impression both of words unknown and of sentiments unfelt before. Such men can teach; but he who kindly or indolently accommodates himself to ignorance, shall never be greatly instrumental in removing it. "The colloquial barbarisms of boys," says Dr. Barrow, "should never be suffered to pass without notice and censure. Provincial tones and accents, and all defects in articulation, should be corrected whenever they are heard; lest they grow into established habits, unknown, from their familiarity, to him who is guilty of them, and adopted by others, from the imitation of his manner, or their respect for his authority."--*Barrow's Essays on Education*, p. 88.

27. In the whole range of school exercises, there is none of greater importance than that of parsing; and yet perhaps there is none which is, in general, more defectively conducted. Scarcely less useful, as a means of instruction, is the practice of correcting false syntax orally, by regular and logical forms of argument; nor does this appear to have been more ably directed towards the purposes of discipline. There is so much to be done, in order to effect what is desirable in the management of these things; and so little prospect that education will ever be generally raised to a just appreciation of that study which, more than all others, forms the mind to habits of correct thinking; that, in reflecting upon the state of the science at the present time, and upon the means of its improvement, the author cannot but sympathize, in some degree, with the sadness of the learned Sanctius; who tells us, that he had "always lamented, and often with tears, that while other branches of

learning were excellently taught, grammar, which is the foundation of all others, lay so much neglected, and that for this neglect there seemed to be no adequate remedy."--*Pref. to Minerva*. The grammatical use of language is in sweet alliance with the moral; and a similar regret seems to have prompted the following exclamation of the Christian poet:

"Sacred Interpreter of human thought, How few respect or use thee as they ought!"--COWPER.

28. No directions, either oral or written, can ever enable the heedless and the unthinking to speak or write well. That must indeed be an admirable book, which can attract levity to sober reflection, teach thoughtlessness the true meaning of words, raise vulgarity from its fondness for low examples, awaken the spirit which attains to excellency of speech, and cause grammatical exercises to be skillfully managed, where teachers themselves are so often lamentably deficient in them. Yet something may be effected by means of better books, if better can be introduced. And what withstands?--Whatever there is of ignorance or error in relation to the premises. And is it arrogant to say there is much? Alas! in regard to this, as well as to many a weightier matter, one may too truly affirm, *Multa non sunt sicut multis videntur*--Many things are not as they seem to many. Common errors are apt to conceal themselves from the common mind; and the appeal to reason and just authority is often frustrated, because a wrong head defies both. But, apart from this, there are difficulties: multiplicity perplexes choice; inconvenience attends change; improvement requires effort; conflicting theories demand examination; the principles of the science are unprofitably disputed; the end is often divorced from the means; and much that belies the title, has been published under the name.

29. It is certain, that the printed formularies most commonly furnished for the important exercises of parsing and correcting, are either so awkwardly written or so negligently followed, as to make grammar, in the mouths of our juvenile orators, little else than a crude and faltering jargon. Murray evidently intended that his book of exercises should be constantly used with his grammar; but he made the examples in the former so dull and prolix, that few learners, if any, have ever gone through the series agreeably to his direction. The publishing of them in a separate volume, has probably given rise to the absurd practice of endeavouring to teach his grammar without them. The forms of parsing and correcting which this author furnishes, are also misplaced; and when found by the learner, are of little use. They are so verbose, awkward, irregular, and deficient, that the pupil must be either a dull boy or utterly ignorant of grammar, if he cannot express the facts extemporaneously in better English. They are also very meagre as a whole, and altogether inadequate to their purpose; many things that frequently occur in the language, not being at all exemplified in them, or even explained in the grammar itself. When we consider how exceedingly important it is, that the business of a school should proceed without loss of time, and that, in the oral exercises here spoken of, each pupil should go through his part promptly, clearly, correctly, and fully, we cannot think it a light objection that these forms, so often to be repeated, are so badly written. Nor does the objection lie against this writer only: "*Ab uno disce omnes.*" But the reader may demand some illustrations.[61]

30. First--from his etymological parsing: "O Virtue! how amiable thou art!" Here his form for the word *Virtue* is--"*Virtue is a common substantive, of the neuter gender, of the third person, in the singular number, and the nominative case.*"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 2. It should have been--"*Virtue is a common noun, personified proper, of the second person, singular number, feminine gender, and nominative case.*" And then the definitions of all these things should have followed in regular numerical order. He gives the class of this noun wrong, for virtue addressed becomes an individual; he gives the gender wrong, and in direct contradiction to what he says of the word in his section on gender; he gives the person wrong, as may be seen by the pronoun *thou*, which represents it; he repeats the definite article three times unnecessarily, and inserts two needless prepositions, making them different where the relation is precisely the same: and all this, in a sentence of two lines, to tell the properties of the noun *Virtue*!--But further: in etymological parsing, the definitions explaining the properties of the parts of speech, ought to be regularly and rapidly rehearsed by the pupil, till all of them become perfectly familiar; and till he can discern, with the quickness of thought, what alone will be true for the full description of any word in any intelligible sentence. All these the author omits; and, on account of this omission, his whole method of etymological parsing is, miserably deficient.[62]

31. Secondly--from his syntactical parsing: "*Vice* degrades us." Here his form for the word *Vice* is--"*Vice* is a common substantive, of the third person, in the singular number, and the nominative case."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 9. Now, when the learner is told that this is the syntactical parsing of a noun, and the other the etymological, he will of course conclude, that to advance from the etymology to the syntax of this part of speech, is merely, to omit the gender--this being the only difference between the two forms. But even this difference had no other origin than the compiler's carelessness in preparing his octavo book of exercises--the gender being inserted in the duodecimo. And what then? Is the syntactical parsing of a noun to be precisely the same as the etymological? Never. But Murray, and all who admire and follow his work, are content to parse many words by halves--making, or pretending to make, a necessary distinction, and yet often omitting, in both parts of the exercise, every thing which constitutes the difference. He should here have said--"*Vice* is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case: and is the subject of *degrades*; according to the rule which says, 'A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the nominative case.' Because the meaning is--*vice degrades*." This is the whole description of the word, with its construction; and to say less, is to leave the matter unfinished.

32. Thirdly--from his "Mode of verbally correcting erroneous sentences:" Take his first example: "The man is prudent which speaks little." (How far silence is prudence, depends upon circumstances: I waive that question.) The learner is here taught to say, "This sentence is incorrect; because *which* is a pronoun of the neuter gender, and does not agree in gender with its antecedent *man*, which is masculine. But a pronoun should agree with its antecedent in gender, &c. according to the fifth rule of syntax. *Which* should therefore be *who*, a relative pronoun, agreeing with its antecedent *man*; and the sentence should stand thus: 'The man is prudent *who* speaks little.'"--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, Vol. ii, p. 18; *Exercises*, 12mo, p. xii. Again: "After I visited Europe, I returned to America." This sentence," says Murray, "*is not correct*; because the verb *visited* is in the imperfect tense, and yet used here to express an action, not only past, but prior to the time referred to by the verb *returned*, to which it relates. By the thirteenth rule of syntax, when verbs are used that, in point of time, relate to each other, the order of time should be observed. The imperfect tense *visited* should therefore have been *had visited*, in the pluperfect tense, representing the action of *visiting*, not only as past, but also as prior to the time of *returning*. The sentence corrected would stand thus: 'After I *had visited* Europe, I returned to America.'"--*Gr.*, ii, p. 19; and *Ex.* 12mo, p. xii. These are the first two examples of Murray's verbal corrections, and the only ones retained by Alger, in his *improved, recopy-righted edition* of Murray's *Exercises*. Yet, in each of them, is the argumentation palpably false! In the former, truly, *which* should be *who*; but not because *which* is "of the neuter gender;" but because the application of that relative to *persons*, is now nearly obsolete. Can any grammarian forget that, in speaking of brute animals, male or female, we commonly use *which*, and never *who*? But if *which* must needs be *neuter*, the world is wrong in this.--As for the latter example, it is right as it stands; and the correction is, in some sort, tautological. The conjunctive adverb *after* makes one of the actions subsequent to the other, and gives to the *visiting* all the priority that is signified by the pluperfect tense. "*After I visited Europe*," is equivalent to "*When I had visited Europe*." The whole argument is therefore void.[63]

33. These few brief illustrations, out of thousands that might be adduced in proof of the faultiness of the common manuals, the author has reluctantly introduced, to show that even in the most popular books, with all the pretended improvements of revisers, the grammar of our language has never been treated with that care and ability which its importance demands. It is hardly to be supposed that men unused to a teacher's duties, can be qualified to compose such books as will most facilitate his labours. Practice is a better pilot than theory. And while, in respect to grammar, the consciousness of failure is constantly inducing changes from one system to another, and almost daily giving birth to new expedients as constantly to end in the same disappointment; perhaps the practical instructions of an experienced teacher, long and assiduously devoted to the study, may approve themselves to many, as seasonably supplying the aid and guidance which they require.

34. From the doctrines of grammar, novelty is rigidly excluded. They consist of details to which taste can lend no charm, and genius no embellishment. A writer may express them with neatness and perspicuity--their importance alone can commend them to notice. Yet, in drawing his illustrations from the stores of literature,

the grammarian may select some gems of thought, which will fasten on the memory a worthy sentiment, or relieve the dullness of minute instruction. Such examples have been taken from various authors, and interspersed through the following pages. The moral effect of early lessons being a point of the utmost importance, it is especially incumbent on all those who are endeavouring to confer the benefits of intellectual culture, to guard against the admission or the inculcation of any principle which may have an improper tendency, and be ultimately prejudicial to those whom they instruct. In preparing this treatise for publication, the author has been solicitous to avoid every thing that could be offensive to the most delicate and scrupulous reader; and of the several thousands of quotations introduced for the illustration or application of the principles of the science, he trusts that the greater part will be considered valuable on account of the sentiments they contain.

35. The nature of the subject almost entirely precludes invention. The author has, however, aimed at that kind and degree of originality which are to be commended in works of this sort. What these are, according to his view, he has sufficiently explained in a preceding chapter. And, though he has taken the liberty of a grammarian, to think for himself and write in a style of his own, he trusts it will be evident that few have excelled him in diligence of research, or have followed more implicitly the dictates of that authority which gives law to language. In criticising the critics and grammaticists of the schools, he has taken them upon their own ground--showing their errors, for the most part, in contrast with the common principles which they themselves have taught; and has hoped to escape censure, in his turn, not by sheltering himself under the name of a popular master, but by a diligence which should secure to his writings at least the humble merit of self-consistency. His progress in composing this work has been slow, and not unattended with labour and difficulty. Amidst the contrarieties of opinion, that appear in the various treatises already before the public, and the perplexities inseparable from so complicated a subject, he has, after deliberate consideration, adopted those views and explanations which appeared to him the least liable to objection, and the most compatible with his ultimate object--the production of a work which should show, both extensively and accurately, what is, and what is not, good English.

36. The great art of meritorious authorship lies chiefly in the condensation of much valuable thought into few words. Although the author has here allowed himself ampler room than before, he has still been no less careful to store it with such information as he trusted would prevent the ingenious reader from wishing its compass less. He has compressed into this volume the most essential parts of a mass of materials in comparison with which the book is still exceedingly small. The effort to do this, has greatly multiplied his own labour and long delayed the promised publication; but in proportion as this object has been reached, the time and patience of the student must have been saved. Adequate compensation for this long toil, has never been expected. Whether from this performance any profit shall accrue to the author or not, is a matter of little consequence; he has neither written for bread, nor on the credit of its proceeds built castles in the air. His ambition was, to make an acceptable book, by which the higher class of students might be thoroughly instructed, and in which the eyes of the critical would find little to condemn. He is too well versed in the history of his theme, too well aware of the precarious fortune of authors, to indulge in any confident anticipations of extraordinary success: yet he will not deny that his hopes are large, being conscious of having cherished them with a liberality of feeling which cannot fear disappointment. In this temper he would invite the reader to a thorough perusal of these pages.

37. A grammar should speak for itself. In a work of this nature, every word or tittle which does not recommend the performance to the understanding and taste of the skillful, is, so far as it goes, a certificate against it. Yet if some small errors shall have escaped detection, let it be recollected that it is almost impossible to compose and print, with perfect accuracy, a work of this size, in which so many little things should be observed, remembered, and made exactly to correspond. There is no human vigilance which multiplicity may not sometimes baffle, and minuteness sometimes elude. To most persons grammar seems a dry and difficult subject; but there is a disposition of mind, to which what is arduous, is for that very reason alluring. "*Quo difficilius, hoc præclarior,*" says Cicero; "*The more difficult, the more honourable.*" The merit of casting up a high-way in a rugged land, is proportionate not merely to the utility of the achievement, but to

the magnitude of the obstacles to be overcome. The difficulties encountered in boyhood from the use of a miserable epitome and the deep impression of a few mortifying blunders made in public, first gave the author a fondness for grammar; circumstances having since favoured this turn of his genius, he has voluntarily pursued the study, with an assiduity which no man will ever imitate for the sake of pecuniary recompense.

CHAPTER X.

OF GRAMMATICAL DEFINITIONS.

"Scientiam autem nusquam esse censebant, nisi in animi motionibus atque rationibus: quâ de causâ *definitiones* rerum probabant, et has ad omnia, de quibus disceptabatur, adhibebant."--CICERONIS *Academica*, Lib. i, 9.

1. "The first and highest philosophy," says Puffendorf, "is that which delivers the most accurate and comprehensive *definitions* of things." Had all the writers on English grammar been adepts in this philosophy, there would have been much less complaint of the difficulty and uncertainty of the study. "It is easy," says Murray, "to advance plausible objections against almost every definition, rule, and arrangement of grammar."--*Gram.*, 8vo, p. 59. But, if this is true, as regards his, or any other work, the reason, I am persuaded, is far less inherent in the nature of the subject than many have supposed.[64] Objectionable definitions and rules are but evidences of the ignorance and incapacity of him who frames them. And if the science of grammar has been so unskillfully treated that almost all its positions may be plausibly impugned, it is time for some attempt at a reformation of the code. The language is before us, and he who knows most about it, can best prescribe the rules which we ought to observe in the use of it. But how can we expect children to deduce from a few particulars an accurate notion of general principles and their exceptions, where learned doctors have so often faltered? Let the abettors of grammatical "*induction*" answer.

2. Nor let it be supposed a light matter to prescribe with certainty the principles of grammar. For, what is requisite to the performance? To know certainly, in the first place, what is the *best usage*. Nor is this all. Sense and memory must be keen, and tempered to retain their edge and hold, in spite of any difficulties which the subject may present. To understand things exactly as they are; to discern the differences by which they may be distinguished, and the resemblances by which they ought to be classified; to know, through the proper evidences of truth, that our ideas, or conceptions, are rightly conformable to the nature, properties, and relations, of the objects of which we think; to see how that which is complex may be resolved into its elements, and that which is simple may enter into combination; to observe how that which is consequent may be traced to its cause, and that which is regular be taught by rule; to learn from the custom of speech the proper connexion between words and ideas, so as to give to the former a just application, to the latter an adequate expression, and to things a just description; to have that penetration which discerns what terms, ideas, or things, are definable, and therefore capable of being taught, and what must be left to the teaching of nature: these are the essential qualifications for him who would form good definitions; these are the elements of that accuracy and comprehensiveness of thought, to which allusion has been made, and which are characteristic of "the first and highest philosophy."

3. Again, with reference to the cultivation of the mind, I would add: To observe accurately the appearances of things, and the significations of words; to learn first principles first, and proceed onward in such a manner that every new truth may help to enlighten and strengthen the understanding; and thus to comprehend gradually, according to our capacity, whatsoever may be brought within the scope of human intellect:--to do these things, I say, is, to ascend by sure steps, so far as we may, from the simplest elements of science--which, in fact, are our own, original, undefinable notices of things--towards the very topmost height of human wisdom and knowledge. The ancient saying, that truth lies hid, or in the bottom of a well, must not be taken without qualification; for "the first and highest philosophy" has many principles which even a child may understand. These several suggestions, the first of which the Baron de Puffendorf thought not unworthy to introduce his great work on the Law of Nature and of Nations, the reader, if he please, may bear in mind, as he peruses the following digest of the laws and usages of speech.

4. "Definitions," says Duncan, in his *Elements of Logic*, "are intended to make known the meaning of words standing for *complex ideas*:[65] and were we always careful to form those ideas exactly in our minds, and copy our definitions from that appearance, much of the confusion and obscurity complained of in languages

might be prevented."--P. 70. Again he says: "The writings of the mathematicians are a clear proof, how much the advancement of human knowledge depends upon a right use of definitions."--P. 72. Mathematical science has been supposed to be, in its own nature, that which is best calculated to develop and strengthen the reasoning faculty; but, as speech is emphatically *the discourse of reason*, I am persuaded, that had the grammarians been equally clear and logical in their instructions, their science would never have been accounted inferior in this respect. Grammar is perhaps the most comprehensive of all studies; but it is chiefly owing to the unskillfulness of instructors, and to the errors and defects of the systems in use, that it is commonly regarded as the most dry and difficult.

5. "Poor Scaliger (who well knew what a definition should be) from his own melancholy experience exclaimed--'*Nihil infelicius grammatico definitore!*' Nothing is more unhappy than the grammatical definer."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 238. Nor do our later teachers appear to have been more fortunate in this matter. A majority of all the definitions and rules contained in the great multitude of English grammars which I have examined, are, in some respect or other, erroneous. The nature of their multitudinous faults, I must in general leave to the discernment of the reader, except the passages be such as may be suitably selected for examples of false syntax. Enough, however, will be exhibited, in the course of this volume, to make the foregoing allegation credible; and of the rest a more accurate judgement may perhaps be formed, when they shall have been compared with what this work will present as substitutes. The importance of giving correct definitions to philological terms, and of stating with perfect accuracy whatsoever is to be learned as doctrine, has never been duly appreciated. The grand source of the disheartening difficulties encountered by boys in the study of grammar, lies in their ignorance of the meaning of words. This cause of embarrassment is not to be shunned and left untouched; but, as far as possible, it ought to be removed. In teaching grammar, or indeed any other science, we cannot avoid the use of many terms to which young learners may have attached no ideas. Being little inclined or accustomed to reflection, they often hear, read, or even rehearse from memory, the plainest language that can be uttered, and yet have no very distinct apprehension of what it means. What marvel then, that in a study abounding with terms taken in a peculiar or technical sense, many of which, in the common manuals, are either left undefined, or are explained but loosely or erroneously, they should often be greatly puzzled, and sometimes totally discouraged?

6. *Simple ideas* are derived, not from teaching, but from sensation or consciousness; but *complex ideas*, or the notions which we have of such things as consist of various parts, or such as stand in any known relations, are definable. A person can have no better definition of *heat*, or of *motion*, than what he will naturally get by *moving towards a fire*. Not so of our complex or general ideas, which constitute science. The proper objects of scientific instruction consist in those genuine perceptions of pure mind, which form the true meaning of generic names, or common nouns; and he who is properly qualified to teach, can for the most part readily tell what should be understood by such words. But are not many teachers too careless here? For instance: a boy commencing the process of calculation, is first told, that, "Arithmetic is the art of computing by numbers," which sentence he partly understands; but should he ask his teacher, "What is a *number*, in arithmetic?" what answer will he get? Were Gould Brown so asked, he would simply say, "*A number, in arithmetic, is an expression that tells how many;*" for every expression that tells how many, is a number in arithmetic, and nothing else is. But as no such definition is contained in *the books*, [66] there are ten chances to one, that, simple as the matter is, the readiest master you shall find, will give an erroneous answer. Suppose the teacher should say, "That is a question which I have not thought of; turn to your dictionary." The boy reads from Dr. Webster: "NUMBER--the designation of a unit in reference to other units, or in reckoning, counting, enumerating."--"Yes," replies the master, "that is it; Dr. Webster is unrivalled in giving definitions." Now, has the boy been instructed, or only puzzled? Can he conceive how the number *five* can be a *unit*? or how the word *five*, the figure 5, or the numeral letter V, is "the designation of a *unit*?" He knows that each of these is a number, and that the oral monosyllable *five* is the same number, in an other form; but is still as much at a loss for a proper answer to his question, as if he had never seen either schoolmaster or dictionary. So is it with a vast number of the simplest things in grammar.

7. Since what we denominate scientific terms, are seldom, if ever, such as stand for ideas simple and

undefinable; and since many of those which represent general ideas, or classes of objects, may be made to stand for more or fewer things, according to the author's notion of classification; it is sufficiently manifest that the only process by which instruction can effectually reach the understanding of the pupil and remove the difficulties spoken of, is that of delivering accurate definitions. These are requisite for the information and direction of the learner; and these must be thoroughly impressed upon his mind, as the only means by which he can know exactly how much and what he is to understand by our words. The power which we possess, of making known all our complex or general ideas of things by means of definitions, is a faculty wisely contrived in the nature of language, for the increase and spread of science; and, in the hands of the skillful, it is of vast avail to these ends. It is "the first and highest philosophy," instructing mankind, to think clearly and speak accurately; as well as to know definitely, in the unity and permanence of a general nature, those things which never could be known or spoken of as the individuals of an infinite and fleeting multitude.

8. And, without contradiction, the shortest and most successful way of teaching the young mind to distinguish things according to their proper differences, and to name or describe them aright, is, to tell in direct terms what they severally are. Cicero intimates that all instruction appealing to reason ought to proceed in this manner: "Omnis enim quæ à ratione suscipitur de re aliqua institutio, debet à *definitione* proficisci, ut intelligatur quid sit id, de quo disputetur."--*Off. Lib. i, p. 4.* Literally thus: "For all instruction which from reason is undertaken concerning any thing, ought to proceed from a *definition*, that it may be understood what the thing is, about which the speaker is arguing." Little advantage, however, will be derived from any definition, which is not, as Quintilian would have it, "Lucida et succincta rei descriptio,"--"a clear and brief description of the thing."

9. Let it here be observed that scientific definitions are of *things*, and not merely of *words*; or if equally of words *and* things, they are rather of nouns than of the other parts of speech. For a definition, in the proper sense of the term, consists not in a mere change or explanation of the verbal sign, but in a direct and true answer to the question, What is such or such a thing? In respect to its extent, it must with equal exactness include every thing which comes under the name, and exclude every thing which does not come under the name: then will it perfectly serve the purpose for which it is intended. To furnish such definitions, (as I have suggested,) is work for those who are capable of great accuracy both of thought and expression. Those who would qualify themselves for teaching any particular branch of knowledge, should make it their first concern to acquire clear and accurate ideas of all things that ought to be embraced in their instructions. These ideas are to be gained, either by contemplation upon the things themselves as they are presented naturally, or by the study of those books in which they are rationally and clearly explained. Nor will such study ever be irksome to him whose generous desire after knowledge, is thus deservedly gratified.

10. But it must be understood, that although scientific definitions are said to be of *things*, they are not copied immediately from the real essence of the things, but are formed from the conceptions of the author's mind concerning that essence. Hence, as Duncan justly remarks, "A mistaken idea never fails to occasion a mistake also in the definition." Hence, too, the common distinction of the logicians, between definitions of the *name* and definitions of the *thing*, seems to have little or no foundation. The former term they applied to those definitions which describe the objects of pure intellection, such as triangles, and other geometrical figures; the latter, to those which define objects actually existing in external nature. The mathematical definitions, so noted for their certainty and completeness, have been supposed to have some peculiar preëminence, as belonging to the former class. But, in fact the idea of a triangle exists as substantively in the mind, as that of a tree, if not indeed more so; and if I define these two objects, my description will, in either case, be equally a definition both of the name and of the thing; but in neither, is it copied from any thing else than that notion which I have conceived, of the common properties of all triangles or of all trees.

11. Infinitives, and some other terms not called nouns, may be taken abstractly or substantively, so as to admit of what may be considered a regular definition; thus the question, "What is it *to read*?" is nearly the same as, "What is *reading*?" "What is it *to be wise*?" is little different from, "What is *wisdom*?" and a true answer might be, in either case, a true definition. Nor are those mere translations or explanations of words, with

which our dictionaries and vocabularies abound, to be dispensed with in teaching: they prepare the student to read various authors with facility, and furnish him with a better choice of terms, when he attempts to write. And in making such choice, let him remember, that as affectation of *hard* words makes composition ridiculous, so the affectation of *easy* and *common* ones may make it unmanly. But not to digress. With respect to grammar, we must sometimes content ourselves with such explications of its customary terms, as cannot claim to be perfect definitions; for the most common and familiar things are not always those which it is the most easy to define. When Dr. Johnson was asked, "What is *poetry*?" he replied, "Why, sir, it is easier to tell what it is not. We all know what *light* is: but it is not easy to tell what it is."--*Boswell's Life of Johnson*, Vol. iii, p. 402. This was thought by the biographer to have been well and ingeniously said.

12. But whenever we encounter difficulties of this sort, it may be worth while to seek for their *cause*. If we find it, the understanding is no longer puzzled. Dr. Johnson seemed to his biographer, to show, by this ready answer, the acuteness of his wit and discernment. But did not the wit consist in adroitly excusing himself, by an illusory comparison? What analogy is there between the things which he compares? Of the difficulty of defining *poetry*, and the difficulty of defining *light*, the reasons are as different as are the two things themselves, *poetry* and *light*. The former is something so various and complex that it is hard to distinguish its essence from its accidents; the latter presents an idea so perfectly simple and unique that all men conceive of it exactly in the same way, while none can show wherein it essentially consists. But is it true, that, "We all know *what light is*?" Is it not rather true, that we know nothing at all about it, but what it is just as easy to tell as to think? We know it is that reflexible medium which enables us to see; and this is definition enough for all but the natively blind, to whom no definition perhaps can ever convey an adequate notion of its use in respect to sight.

13. If a person cannot tell what a thing is, it is commonly considered to be a fair inference, that he does not know. Will any grammarian say, "I know well enough what the thing is, but I cannot tell?" Yet, taken upon this common principle, the authors of our English grammars, (if in framing their definitions they have not been grossly wanting to themselves in the exercise of their own art,) may be charged, I think, with great ignorance, or great indistinctness of apprehension; and that, too, in relation to many things among the very simplest elements of their science. For example: Is it not a disgrace to a man of letters, to be unable to tell accurately what a letter is? Yet to say, with Lowth, Murray, Churchill, and a hundred others of inferior name, that, "A letter is *the first principle or least part* of a word," is to utter what is neither good English nor true doctrine. The two articles *a* and *the* are here inconsistent with each other. "A letter" is *one* letter, *any* letter; but "*the first principle* of a word" is, surely, not one or any principle taken *indefinitely*. Equivocal as the phrase is, it must mean either *some particular principle*, or some particular *first principle*, of a word; and, taken either way, the assertion is false. For it is manifest, that in *no sense* can we affirm of *each* of the letters of a word, that it is "*the first principle*" of that word. Take, for instance, the word *man*. Is *m* the first principle of this word? You may answer, "Yes; for it is the first *letter*." Is *a* the first principle? "No; it is the *second*." But *n* too is a letter; and is *n* the first principle? "No; it is the *last*!" This grammatical error might have been avoided by saying, "*Letters* are the first principles, or least parts, of words." But still the definition would not be true, nor would it answer the question, What is a letter? The true answer to which is: "A letter is an alphabetic *character*, which commonly represents some elementary sound of human articulation, or speech."

14. This true definition sufficiently distinguishes letters from the marks used in punctuation, because the latter are not alphabetic, and they represent silence, rather than sound; and also from the Arabic figures used for numbers, because these are no part of any alphabet, and they represent certain entire words, no one of which consists only of one letter, or of a single element of articulation. The same may be said of all the characters used for abbreviation; as, & for *and*, \$ for *dollars*, or the marks peculiar to mathematicians, to astronomers, to druggists, &c. None of these are alphabetic, and they represent significant words, and not single elementary sounds: it would be great dullness, to assume that a word and an elementary sound are one and the same thing. But the reader will observe that this definition embraces *no idea* contained in the faulty one to which I am objecting; neither indeed could it, without a blunder. So wide from the mark is that notion of a letter, which the popularity of Dr. Lowth and his copyists has made a hundred-fold more common than any other! [67]

According to an other erroneous definition given by these same gentlemen, "*Words* are articulate *sounds*, used by common consent, as signs of our ideas."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 22; *Kirkham's*, 20; *Ingersoll's*, 7; *Alger's*, 12; *Russell's*, 7; *Merchant's*, 9; *Fisk's*, 11; *Greenleaf's*, 20; and many others. See *Lowth's Gram.*, p. 6; from which almost all authors have taken the notion, that words consist of "*sounds*" only. But letters are no principles or parts of *sounds* at all; unless you will either have visible marks to be sounds, or the sign to be a principle or part of the thing signified. Nor are they always principles or parts of *words*: we sometimes write what is *not a word*; as when, by letters, we denote pronunciation alone, or imitate brute voices. If words were formed of articulate sounds only, they could not exist in books, or be in any wise known to the deaf and dumb. These two primary definitions, then, are both false; and, taken together, they involve the absurdity of dividing things acknowledged to be indivisible. In utterance, we cannot divide consonants from their vowels; on paper, we can. Hence letters are the least parts of written language only; but the least parts of spoken words are syllables, and not letters. Every definition of a consonant implies this.

15. They who cannot define a letter or a word, may be expected to err in explaining other grammatical terms. In my opinion, nothing is well written, that can possibly be misunderstood; and if any definition be likely to *suggest* a wrong idea, this alone is enough to condemn it: nor does it justify the phraseology, to say, that a more reasonable construction can be put upon it. By Murray and others, the young learner is told, that, "A vowel is an articulate *sound*, that can be perfectly *uttered by itself*;" as if a vowel were nothing but a sound, and that a sort of echo, which can *utter itself*; and next, that, "A consonant is an articulate *sound*, which cannot be perfectly uttered *without the help of* a vowel." Now, by their own showing, every letter is either a vowel or a consonant; hence, according to these definitions, all the letters are articulate *sounds*. And, if so, what is a "silent letter?" It is a *silent articulate sound*! Again: ask a boy, "What is a *triphthong*?" He answers in the words of Murray, Weld, Pond, Smith, Adams, Kirkham, Merchant, Ingersoll, Bacon, Alger, Worcester, and others: "A triphthong is the union of three vowels, *pronounced in like manner*: as *eau* in *beau*, *iew* in *view*." He accurately cites an entire paragraph from his grammar, but does he well conceive how the three vowels in *beau* or *view* are "pronounced *in like manner*?" Again: "A syllable is a *sound*, either simple or compound, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 22. This definition resolves syllables into *sounds*; whereas their true elements are *letters*. It also mistakes the participle *compounded* for the adjective *compound*; whereas the latter only is the true reverse of *simple*. A *compound sound* is a sound composed of others which may be separated; a *sound compounded* is properly that which is made an ingredient with others, but which may itself be simple.

16. It is observable, that in their attempts to explain these prime elements of grammar, Murray, and many others who have copied him, overlook all *written* language; whereas their very science itself took its origin, name, and nature, from the invention of writing; and has consequently no bearing upon any dialect which has not been written. Their definitions absurdly resolve letters, vowels, consonants, syllables, and words, all into *sounds*; as if none of these things had any existence on paper, or any significance to those who read in silence. Hence, their explanations of all these elements, as well as of many other things equally essential to the study, are palpably erroneous. I attribute this to the carelessness with which men have compiled or made up books of grammar; and that carelessness to those various circumstances, already described, which have left diligence in a grammarian no hope of praise or reward. Without alluding here to my own books, no one being obliged to accuse himself, I doubt whether we have any school grammar that is much less objectionable in this respect, than Murray's; and yet I am greatly mistaken, if nine tenths of all the definitions in Murray's system are not faulty. "It was this sort of definitions, which made *Scaliger* say, '*Nihil infelicius definitore grammatico*.'"--See *Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 351; also *Paragraph 5th*, above.

17. Nor can this objection be neutralized by saying, it is a mere matter of opinion--a mere prejudice originating in rivalry. For, though we have ample choice of terms, and may frequently assign to particular words a meaning and an explanation which are in some degree arbitrary; yet whenever we attempt to define things under the name which custom has positively fixed upon them, we are no longer left to arbitrary explications; but are bound to think and to say that only which shall commend itself to the understanding of others, as being altogether true to nature. When a word is well understood to denote a particular object or class

of objects, the definition of it ought to be in strict conformity to what is known of the real being and properties of the thing or things contemplated. A definition of this kind is a proposition susceptible of proof and illustration; and therefore whatsoever is erroneously assumed to be the proper meaning of such a term, may be refuted. But those persons who take every thing upon trust, and choose both to learn and to teach mechanically, often become so slavishly habituated to the peculiar phraseology of their text-books, that, be the absurdity of a particular expression what it may, they can neither discover nor suspect any inaccuracy in it. It is also very natural even for minds more independent and acute, to regard with some reverence whatsoever was gravely impressed upon them in childhood. Hence the necessity that all school-books should proceed from skillful hands. Instruction should tell things as they are, and never falter through negligence.

18. I have admitted that definitions are not the only means by which a general knowledge of the import of language may be acquired; nor are they the only means by which the acquisition of such knowledge may be aided. To exhibit or point out *things* and tell their names, constitutes a large part of that instruction by which the meaning of words is conveyed to the young mind; and, in many cases, a mere change or apposition of terms may sufficiently explain our idea. But when we would guard against the possibility of misapprehension, and show precisely what is meant by a word, we must fairly define it. There are, however, in every language, many words which do not admit of a formal definition. The import of all definitive and connecting particles must be learned from usage, translation, or derivation; and nature reserves to herself the power of explaining the objects of our simple original perceptions. "All words standing for complex ideas are definable; but those by which we denote simple ideas, are not. For the perceptions of this latter class, having no other entrance into the mind, than by sensation or reflection, can be acquired only by experience."--*Duncan's Logic*, p. 63. "And thus we see, that as our simple ideas are the materials and foundation of knowledge, so the names of simple ideas may be considered as the elementary parts of language, beyond which we cannot trace the meaning and signification of words. When we come to them, we suppose the ideas for which they stand to be already known; or, if they are not, experience alone must be consulted, and not definitions or explications."--*Ibid.*, p. 69.

19. But this is no apology for the defectiveness of any definition which might be made correct, or for the effectiveness of our English grammars, in the frequent omission of all explanation, and the more frequent adoption of some indirect form of expression. It is often much easier to make some loose observation upon what is meant by a given word or term in science, than to frame a faultless definition of the thing; because it is easier to refer to some of the relations, qualities, offices, or attributes of things, than to discern wherein their essence consists, so as to be able to tell directly and clearly what they are. The improvement of our grammatical code in this respect, was one of the principal objects which I thought it needful to attempt, when I first took up the pen as a grammarian. I cannot pretend to have seen, of course, every definition and rule which has been published on this subject; but, if I do not misjudge a service too humble for boasting, I have myself framed a greater number of new or improved ones, than all other English grammarians together. And not a few of them have, since their first publication in 1823, been complimented to a place in other grammars than my own. This is in good keeping with the authorship which has been spoken of in an other chapter; but I am constrained to say, it affords no proof that they were well written. If it did, the definitions and rules in Murray's grammar must undoubtedly be thought the most correct that ever have been given: they have been more frequently copied than any others.

20. But I have ventured to suggest, that nine tenths of this author's definitions are bad, or at least susceptible of some amendment. If this can be shown to the satisfaction of the reader, will he hope to find an other English grammar in which the eye of criticism may not detect errors and deficiencies with the same ease? My object is, to enforce attention to the proprieties of speech; and this is the very purpose of all grammar. To exhibit here all Murray's definitions, with criticisms upon them, would detain us too long. We must therefore be content to take a part of them as a sample. And, not to be accused of fixing only upon the worst, we will take a *series*. Let us then consider in their order his definitions of the nine parts of speech;--for, calling the participle a verb, he reduces the sorts of words to that number. And though not one of his nine definitions now stands exactly as it did in his early editions, I think it may be said, that not one of them is now, if it ever has

been, expressed grammatically.

21. FIRST DEFINITION:--"An Article is a word *prefixed* to substantives, to *point them out*, and to show how far their[68] signification extends."--*Murray, and others, from, Lowth's Gram.*, p. 10. This is obscure. In what manner, or in what respect, does an article point out substantives? To point them out *as such*, or to show which words are substantives, seems at first view to be the meaning intended; but it is said soon after, "A or *an* is used in a vague sense, to *point out* one single *thing* of the kind, in other respects *indeterminate*; as, 'Give me a book;' 'Bring me *an* apple.'"--*Lowth*, p. 11; *Murray*, p. 31. And again: "It is *of the nature* of both the articles to determine or limit *the thing* spoken of."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 170. Now to point out *nouns* among the parts of speech, and to point out *things* as individuals of their class, are very different matters; and which of these is the purpose for which articles are used, according to Lowth and Murray? Their definition says the former, their explanations imply the latter; and I am unable to determine which they really meant. The term *placed before* would have been better than "*prefixed*;" because the latter commonly implies junction, as well as location. The word "*indeterminate*" is not a very easy one for a boy; and, when he has found out what it means, he may possibly not know to which of the four preceding nouns it ought to be referred:--"in a vague sense, to point out one single *thing* of the kind, in other respects *indeterminate*." What is this "vague sense?" and what is it, that is "indeterminate?"

22. SECOND DEFINITION:--"A Substantive or Noun is the name of any thing *that* exists, or of *which* we have any notion."--*Murray, and others*. According to his own syntax, this sentence of Murray's is wrong; for he himself suggests, that when two or more relative clauses refer to the same antecedent, the same pronoun should be used in each. Of clauses connected like these, this is true. He should therefore have said, "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any thing *which* exists, or of *which* we have any notion." His rule, however, though good against a text like this, is utterly wrong in regard to many others, and not very accurate in taking *two* for a "*series*" thus: "Whatever relative is used, in one of a *series* of clauses relating to the same antecedent, the same relative ought, generally to be used in *them all*. In the following sentence, *this rule is violated*: 'It is remarkable, that Holland, against *which* the war was undertaken, and *that*, in the very beginning, was reduced to the brink of destruction, lost nothing.' The clause ought to have been, 'and *which* in the very beginning.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 155. But both the rule and the example, badly as they correspond, were borrowed from Priestley's Grammar, p. 102, where the text stands thus: "Whatever relative *be* used, in one of a *series* of clauses, relating to the same antecedent, the same ought to be used in *them all*. 'It is remarkable, that Holland,'" &c.

23. THIRD DEFINITION:--"An Adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express *its* quality."--*Lowth, Murray, Bullions, Pond, and others*. Here we have the choice of two meanings; but neither of them is according to truth. It seems doubtful whether "*its* quality" is the *adjective's* quality, or the *substantive's*; but in either sense, the phrase is false; for an adjective is added to a noun, not to express any quality either of the adjective or of the noun, but to express some quality of the *thing signified* by the noun. But the definition is too much restricted; for adjectives may be added to pronouns as well as to nouns, nor do they always express *quality*.

24. FOURTH DEFINITION:--"A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to *avoid the too frequent* repetition of *the same word*."--*Dr. Ash's Gram.*, p. 25; *Murray's*, 28 and 50; *Felton's*, 18; *Alger's*, 13; *Bacon's*, 10; and *others*. The latter part of this sentence is needless, and also contains several errors. 1. The verb *avoid* is certainly very ill-chosen; because it implies intelligent agency, and not that which is merely instrumental. 2. The article *the* is misemployed for *a*; for, "*the* too frequent repetition," should mean *some particular* too frequent repetition--an idea not intended here, and in itself not far from absurdity. 3. The phrase, "*the same word*" may apply to the pronoun itself as well as to the noun: in saying, "*I* came, *I* saw, *I* conquered," there is as frequent a repetition of *the same word*, as in saying, "*Cæsar* came, *Cæsar* saw, *Cæsar* conquered." If, therefore, the latter part of this definition must be retained, the whole should be written thus: "A Pronoun is a word used *in stead* of a noun, to *prevent* too frequent a repetition of *it*."

25. FIFTH DEFINITION:--"A Verb is a word which signifies *to be, to do, or to suffer*"--*Lowth, Murray, and others*. NOTE:--"A verb may generally be distinguished by *its making sense* with any of the personal pronouns, or the word *to* before it."--*Murray, and others*. It is confessedly difficult to give a perfect definition of a *verb*; and if, with Murray, we will have the participles *to be verbs*, there must be no small difficulty in forming one that shall be tolerable. Against the foregoing old explanation, it may be objected, that the phrase *to suffer*, being now understood in a more limited sense than formerly, does not well express the nature or import of a passive verb. I have said, "A Verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon*." Children cannot readily understand, how every thing that is in any way *acted upon*, may be said *to suffer*. The participle, I think, should be taken as a distinct part of speech, and have its own definition. The note added by Murray to his definition of a verb, would prove the participle not to be included in this part of speech, and thus practically contradict his scheme. It is also objectionable in respect to construction. The phrase "*by its making sense*" is at least very questionable English; for "*its making*" supposes *making* to be a noun, and "*making sense*" supposes it to be an active participle. But Lowth says, "Let it be either the one or the other, and abide by its own construction." Nay, the author himself, though he therein contradicts an other note of his own, virtually condemns the phrase, by his caution to the learner against treating words in *ing*, "as if they were of an *amphibious species*, partly nouns and partly verbs."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 193.

26. SIXTH DEFINITION:--"An Adverb is a *part of speech joined* to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, to express some *quality or circumstance* respecting it."--*Murray's Gram.*, pp. 28 and 114. See *Dr. Ash's Gram.*, p. 47. This definition contains many errors; some of which are gross blunders. 1. The first word, "*An*," is erroneously put for *The*: *an* adverb is *one* adverb, not the whole class; and, if, "*An* adverb is a part of speech," any and every adverb is a *part of speech*; then, how many parts of speech are there? 2. The word "*joined*" is not well chosen; for, with the exception of *not* in *cannot*, the adverb is very rarely *joined* to the word to which it relates. 3. The want of a comma before *joined*, perverts the construction; for the phrase, "*speech joined* to a verb," is nonsense; and to suppose *joined* to relate to the noun *part*, is not much better. 4. The word "*and*" should be *or*; because no adverb is ever added to three or four different terms at once. 5. The word "*sometimes*" should be omitted; because it is needless, and because it is inconsistent with the only conjunction which will make the definition true. 6. The preposition "*to*" should either be inserted before "*an adjective*," or suppressed before the term which follows; for when several words occur in the same construction, uniformity of expression is desirable. 7. For the same reason, (if custom may be thus far conformed to analogy,) the article "*an*" ought, in cases like this, if not always, to be separated from the word *other*; thus, "An adverb is a word added to *a* verb, *a* participle, *an* adjective, or *an* other adverb." Were the eye not familiar with it, *another* would be thought as irregular as *theother*. 8. The word "*quality*" is wrong; for no adverb ever expresses any *quality*, as such; qualities are expressed by *adjectives*, and never, in any direct manner, by adverbs. 9. The "*circumstances*" which we express by adverbs never belong to the *words*, as this definition avers that they do, but always to the *actions* or *qualities* which the words signify. 10. The pronoun *it*, according to Murray's second rule of syntax, ought to be *them*, and so it stands in his own early editions; but if *and* be changed to *or*, as I have said it should be, the pronoun *it* will be right.

27. SEVENTH DEFINITION:--"Prepositions serve to connect words with *one another*, and to show the relation *between them*."--*Lowth, Murray, and others*. This is only an observation, not a definition, as it ought to have been; nor does it at all distinguish the preposition from the conjunction. It does not reach the thing in question. Besides, it contains an actual solecism in the expression. The word "*between*" implies but *two* things; and the phrase "*one another*" is not applicable where there are but two. It should be, "to connect words with *each other*, and to show the *relation between them*;"--or else, "to connect words with *one another*, and to show the *relations among them*." But the latter mode of expression would not apply to prepositions considered severally, but only to the whole class.

28. EIGHTH DEFINITION:--"A Conjunction is a *part of speech* that is *chiefly* used to connect sentences; so as, out of two *or more* sentences, to make but one: it sometimes connects only words."--*Murray, and others*. Here are more than thirty words, awkwardly and loosely strung together; and all that is said in them, might be much better expressed in half the number. For example: "A Conjunction is a word which connects other

terms, and commonly of two sentences makes but one." But verbosity and want of unity are not the worst faults of this definition. We have three others to point out. 1. "A conjunction is" not "*a part of speech*;" because a conjunction is *one* conjunction, and a part of speech is a whole class, or sort, of words. A similar error was noticed in Murray's definition of an adverb; and so common has this blunder become, that by a comparison of the definitions which different authors have given of the parts of speech, probably it will be found, that, by some hand or other, every one of the ten has been commenced in this way. 2. The words "*or more*" are erroneous, and ought to be omitted; for no one conjunction can connect more than two terms, in that consecutive order which the sense requires. Three or more simple sentences may indeed form a compound sentence; but, as they cannot be joined in a *cluster*, they must have two or more connectives. 3. The last clause erroneously suggests, that any or every conjunction "*sometimes connects only words*;" but the conjunctions which may connect only words, are not more than five, whereas those which connect only sentences are four times as many.

29. NINTH DEFINITION:--"Interjections are words *thrown in between the parts of a sentence*, to express the passions or emotions of the *speaker*; as, 'O Virtue! how amiable thou art!'"--*Murray, and many others*. This definition, which has been copied from grammar to grammar, and committed to memory millions of times, is obviously erroneous, and directly contradicted by the example. Interjections, though often enough thrown in between the parts of a *discourse*, are very rarely "thrown in between the parts of a *sentence*." They more frequently occur at the beginning of a sentence than any where else; and, in such cases, they do not come under this narrow definition. The author, at the head of his chapter on interjections, appends to this definition two other examples; both of which contradict it in like manner: "*Oh!* I have alienated my friend."--"*Alas!* I fear for life." Again: Interjections are used occasionally, in *written*, as well as in *oral* discourse; nor are they less indicative of the emotions of the *writer*, than of those "of the *speaker*."

30. I have thus exhibited, with all intentional fairness of criticism, the entire series of these nine primary definitions; and the reader may judge whether they sustain the praises which have been bestowed on the book,[69] or confirm the allegations which I have made against it. He will understand that my design is, here, as well as in the body of this work, to teach grammar practically, by *rectifying*, so far as I may, all sorts of mistakes either in it or respecting it; to compose a book which, by a condensed exposition of such errors as are commonly found in other grammars, will at once show the need we have of a better, and be itself a fit substitute for the principal treatises which it censures. Grammatical errors are universally considered to be small game for critics. They must therefore be very closely grouped together, to be worth their room in this work. Of the tens of thousands who have learned for grammar a multitude of ungrammatical definitions and rules, comparatively few will ever know what I have to say of their acquisitions. But this I cannot help. To the readers of the present volume it is due, that its averments should be clearly illustrated by particular examples; and it is reasonable that these should be taken from the most accredited sources, whether they do honour to their framers or not. My argument is only made so much the stronger, as the works which furnish its proofs, are the more esteemed, the more praised, or the more overrated.

31. Murray tells us, "There is no necessary connexion between words and ideas."--*Octavo Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 139. Though this, as I before observed, is not altogether true, he doubtless had very good reason to distinguish, in his teaching, "between *the sign* and *the thing signified*." Yet, in his own definitions and explanations, he frequently *confounds* these very things which he declares to be so widely different as not even to have a "necessary connexion." Errors of this kind are very common in all our English grammars. Two instances occur in the following sentence; which also contains an error in doctrine, and is moreover obscure, or rather, in its literal sense, palpably absurd: "To substantives belong gender, number, and case; and *they* are *all* of the third person *when spoken of*, and of the second person *when spoken to*."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 38; *Alger's Murray*, 16; *Merchant's*, 23; *Bacon's*, 12; *Maltby's*, 12; *Lyon's*, 7; *Guy's*, 4; *Ingersoll's*, 26; *S. Putnam's*, 13; *T. H. Miller's*, 17; *Rev. T. Smith's*, 13. Who, but a child taught by language like this, would ever think of *speaking to a noun*? or, that a noun of the second person *could not be spoken of*? or, that a noun cannot be put in the *first person*, so as to agree with *I* or *we*? Murray himself once taught, that, "Pronouns *must always agree* with their antecedents, *and* the nouns for which they stand, in gender, number, and

person;" and he departed from a true and important principle of syntax, when he altered his rule to its present form. But I have said that the sentence above is obscure, or its meaning absurd. What does the pronoun "*they*" represent? "*Substantives*," according to the author's intent; but "*gender, number, and case*," according to the obvious construction of the words. Let us try a parallel: "To scribes belong pen, ink, and paper; and *they* are all of primary importance when there is occasion to use them, and of none at all when they are not needed." Now, if this sentence is *obscure*, the other is not less so; but, if this is perfectly *clear*, so that what is said is obviously and only what is intended, then it is equally clear, that what is said in the former, is gross absurdity, and that the words cannot reasonably be construed into the sense which the writer, and his copyists, designed.

32. All Murray's grammars, not excepting the two volumes octavo, are as *incomplete* as they are *inaccurate*; being deficient in many things which are of so great importance that they should not be excluded from the very smallest epitome. For example: On the subject of the *numbers*, he attempted but one definition, and that is a fourfold solecism. He speaks of the *persons*, but gives neither definitions nor explanations. In treating of the *genders*, he gives but one formal definition. His section on the *cases* contains no regular definition. On the *comparison* of adjectives, and on the *moods* and *tenses* of verbs, he is also satisfied with a very loose mode of teaching. The work as a whole exhibits more industry than literary taste, more benevolence of heart than distinctness of apprehension; and, like all its kindred and progeny, fails to give to the principles of grammar that degree of clearness of which they are easily susceptible. The student does not know this, but he feels the effects of it, in the obscurity of his own views on the subject, and in the conscious uncertainty with which he applies those principles. In grammar, the terms *person, number, gender, case, mood, tense*, and many others, are used in a technical and peculiar sense; and, in all scientific works, the sense of technical terms should be clearly and precisely defined. Nothing can be gained by substituting other names of modern invention; for these also would need definitions as much as the old. We want to know the things themselves, and what they are most appropriately called. We want a book which will tell us, in proper order, and in the plainest manner, what all the elements of the science are.

33. What does he know of grammar, who cannot directly and properly answer such questions as these?--"What are numbers, in grammar? What is the singular number? What is the plural number? What are persons, in grammar? What is the first person? What is the second person? What is the third person? What are genders, in grammar? What is the masculine gender? What is the feminine gender? What is the neuter gender? What are cases, in grammar? What is the nominative case? What is the possessive case? What is the objective case?"--And yet the most complete acquaintance with every sentence or word of Murray's tedious compilation, may leave the student at a loss for a proper answer, not only to each of these questions, but also to many others equally simple and elementary! A boy may learn by heart all that Murray ever published on the subject of grammar, and still be left to confound the numbers in grammar with numbers in arithmetic, or the persons in grammar with persons in civil life! Nay, there are among the professed *improvers* of this system of grammar, *men* who have actually confounded these things, which are so totally different in their natures! In "Smith's New Grammar on the Productive System," a work in which Murray is largely copied and strangely metamorphosed, there is an abundance of such confusion. For instance: "What is the meaning of the word *number*? Number means *a sum that may be counted*."--R. C. Smith's *New Gram.*, p. 7. From this, by a tissue of half a dozen similar absurdities, called *inductions*, the novice is brought to the conclusion that the numbers are *two*--as if there were in nature but two sums that might be counted! There is no end to the sickening detail of such blunders. How many grammars tell us, that, "The first person is the *person who speaks*;" that, "The second person is the *person spoken to*;" and that, "the third person is the *person spoken of*!" As if the three persons of a verb, or other part of speech, were so many *intelligent beings*! As if, by exhibiting a word in the three persons, (as *go, goest, goes*,) we put it first *into the speaker*, then *into the hearer*, and then *into somebody else*! Nothing can be more abhorrent to grammar, or to sense, than such confusion. The things which are identified in each of these three definitions, are as unlike as Socrates and moonshine! The one is a thinking being; the other, a mere form peculiar to certain words. But Chandler, of Philadelphia, ("the Grammar King," forsooth!) without mistaking the grammatical persons for rational souls, has contrived to crowd into his definition of *person* more errors of conception and of language,--more insult to common

sense,--than one could have believed it possible to put together in such space. And this ridiculous old twaddle, after six and twenty years, he has deliberately re-written and lately republished as something "adapted to the schools of America." It stands thus: "*Person is a distinction which is made in a noun between its representation of its object, either as spoken to, or spoken of.*"--Chandler's E. Grammar; Edition of 1821, p. 16; Ed. 1847, p. 21.

34. Grammarians have often failed in their definitions, because it is impossible to define certain terms in the way in which the description has been commonly attempted. He who undertakes what is impossible must necessarily fail; and fail too, to the discredit of his ingenuity. It is manifest that whenever a generic name in the singular number is to be defined, the definition must be founded upon some property or properties common to all the particular things included under the term. Thus, if I would define a *globe*, a *wheel*, or a *pyramid*, my description must be taken, not from what is peculiar to one or another of these things, but from those properties only which are common to all globes, all wheels, or all pyramids. But what property has *unity* in common with *plurality*, on which a definition of *number* may be founded? What common property have the *three cases*, by which we can clearly define *case*? What have the *three persons* in common, which, in a definition of *person*, could be made evident to a child? Thus all the great classes of grammatical modifications, namely, *persons*, *numbers*, *genders*, *cases*, *moods*, and *tenses*, though they admit of easy, accurate, and obvious definitions in the plural, can scarcely be defined at all in the singular. I do not say, that the terms *person*, *number*, *gender*, *case*, *mood*, and *tense*, in their technical application to grammar, are all of them equally and absolutely undefinable in the singular; but I say, that no definition, just in sense and suitable for a child, can ever be framed for any one of them. Among the thousand varied attempts of grammarians to explain them so, there are a hundred gross solecisms for every tolerable definition. For this, as I have shown, there is a very simple reason in the nature of the things.

35. But this reason, as well as many other truths equally important and equally clear, our common grammarians, have, so far as I know, every man of them, overlooked. Consequently, even when they were aiming at the right thing, they frequently fell into gross errors of expression; and, what is still more surprising, such errors have been entailed upon the very art of grammar, and the art of authorship itself, by the prevalence of an absurd notion, that modern writers on this subject can be meritorious authors without originality. Hence many a school-boy is daily rehearsing from his grammar-book what he might well be ashamed to have written. For example, the following definition from Murray's grammar, is found in perhaps a dozen other compends, all professing to teach the art of speaking and writing with propriety: "*Number is the consideration of an object, as one or more.*" [70] Yet this short sentence, as I have before suggested, is a fourfold solecism. *First*, the word "*number*" is wrong; because those modifications of language, which distinguish unity and plurality, cannot be jointly signified by it. *Secondly*, the word "*consideration*" is wrong; because *number* is not *consideration*, in any sense which can be put upon the terms: *condition*, *constitution*, *configuration*, or any other word beginning with *con*, would have done just as well. *Thirdly*, "*the consideration of an object as one,*" is but idle waste of thought; for, that one thing is one,--that *an* object is *one* object,--every child knows by *intuition*, and not by "*consideration.*" *Lastly*, to consider "*an object as more*" than one, is impossible; unless this admirable definition lead us into a misconception in so plain a case! So much for the art of "the grammatical definer."

36. Many other examples, equally faulty and equally common, might, be quoted and criticised for the further proof and illustration of what I have alleged. But the reader will perhaps judge the foregoing to be sufficient. I have wished to be brief, and yet to give my arguments, and the neglected facts upon which they rest, their proper force upon the mind. Against such prejudices as may possibly arise from the authorship of rival publications, or from any interest in the success of one book rather than of another, let both my judges and me be on our guard. I have intended to be fair; for captiousness is not criticism. If the reader perceives in these strictures any improper bias, he has a sort of discernment which it is my misfortune to lack. Against the compilers of grammars, I urge no conclusions at which any man can hesitate, who accedes to my preliminary remarks upon them; and these may be summed up in the following couplet of the poet Churchill:

"To copy beauties, forfeits all pretence To fame;--to copy faults, is want of sense."

CHAPTER XI.

BRIEF NOTICES OF THE SCHEMES OF CERTAIN GRAMMARS.

"Sed ut perveniri ad summa nisi ex principiis non potest: ita, procedente jam opere, minima incipiunt esse quæ prima sunt."--QUINTILIAN. *De Inst. Orat.*, Lib. x, Cap. 1, p. 560.

1. The *history* of grammar, in the proper sense of the term, has heretofore been made no part of the study. I have imagined that many of its details might be profitable, not only to teachers, but to that class of learners for whose use this work is designed. Accordingly, in the preceding pages, there have been stated numerous facts properly historical, relating either to particular grammars, or to the changes and progress of this branch of instruction. These various details it is hoped will be more entertaining, and perhaps for that reason not less useful, than those explanations which belong merely to the construction and resolution of sentences. The attentive reader must have gathered from the foregoing chapters some idea of what the science owes to many individuals whose names are connected with it. But it seems proper to devote to this subject a few pages more, in order to give some further account of the origin and character of certain books.

2. The manuals by which grammar was first taught in English, were not properly English Grammars. They were translations of the Latin *Accidence*; and were designed to aid British youth in acquiring a knowledge of the Latin language, rather than accuracy in the use of their own. The two languages were often combined in one book, for the purpose of teaching sometimes both together, and sometimes one through the medium of the other. The study of such works doubtless had a tendency to modify, and perhaps at that time to improve, the English style of those who used them. For not only must variety of knowledge have led to copiousness of expression, but the most cultivated minds would naturally be most apt to observe what was orderly in the use of speech. A language, indeed, after its proper form is well fixed by letters, must resist all introduction of foreign idioms, or become corrupted. Hence it is, that Dr. Johnson avers, "The great pest of speech is frequency of translation. No book was ever turned from one language into another, without imparting something of its native idiom; this is the most mischievous and comprehensive innovation."--*Preface to Joh. Dict.*, 4to, p. 14. Without expressly controverting this opinion, or offering any justification of mere metaphrases, or literal translations, we may well assert, that the practice of comparing different languages, and seeking the most appropriate terms for a free version of what is ably written, is an exercise admirably calculated to familiarize and extend grammatical knowledge.

3. Of the class of books here referred [sic--KTH] to, that which I have mentioned in an other chapter, as Lily's or King Henry's Grammar, has been by far the most celebrated and the most influential. Concerning this treatise, it is stated, that its parts were not put together in the present form, until eighteen or twenty years after Lily's death. "The time when this work was completed," says the preface of 1793, "has been differently related by writers. Thomas Hayne places it in the year 1543, and Anthony Wood, in 1545. But neither of these accounts can be right; for I have seen a beautiful copy, printed upon vellum, and illuminated, anno 1542, in quarto. And it may be doubted whether this was the first edition."--*John Ward, Pref.*, p. vii. In an Introductory Lecture, read before the University of London in 1828, by Thomas Dale, professor of English literature, I find the following statement: "In this reign,"--the reign of Henry VIII,--"the study of grammar was reduced to a system, by the promulgation of many grammatical treatises; one of which was esteemed of sufficient importance to be honoured with a royal name. It was called, 'The Grammar of King Henry the Eighth;' and to this, 'with other works, the young Shakspeare was probably indebted for some learning and much loyalty.' But the honour of producing the first English grammar is claimed by William Bullokar, who published, in the year 1586, 'A Bref Grammar for English,' being, to use his own words, 'the first Grammar for English that ever waz, except my Grammar at large.'"

4. Ward's preface to Lily commences thus: "If we look back to the origin of our common *Latin Grammar*, we shall find it was no hasty performance, nor the work of a single person; but composed at different times by several eminent and learned men, till the whole was at length finished, and by the order of *King Henry VIII.*[,]

brought into that form in which it has ever since continued. The *English introduction* was written by the reverend and learned Dr. *John Colet*, Dean of St. *Paul's*, for the use of the school he had lately founded there; and was dedicated by him to *William Lily*, the first high master of that school, in the year 1510; for which reason it has usually gone by the name of *Paul's Accidence*. The substance of it remains the same, as at first; though it has been much altered in the manner of expression, and sometimes the order, with other improvements. The *English syntax* was the work of *Lily*, as appears by the title in the most ancient editions, which runs thus: *Gulielmi Lili Angli Rudimenta*. But it has been greatly improved since his time, both with regard to the method, and an enlargement of double the quantity."

5. *Paul's Accidence* is therefore probably the oldest grammar that can now be found in our language. It is not, however, an English grammar; because, though written in antique English, and embracing many things which are as true of our language as of any other, it was particularly designed for the teaching of *Latin*. It begins thus: "In speech be these eight parts following: Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, declined; Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined." This is the old platform of the Latin grammarians; which differs from that of the Greek grammars, only in having no Article, and in separating the Interjection from the class of Adverbs. Some Greek grammarians, however, separate the Adjective from the Noun, and include the Participle with the Verb: thus, "There are in Greek eight species of words, called Parts of Speech; viz. Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction."--*Anthon's Valpy*, p. 18. With respect to our language, the plan of the Latin *Accidence* is manifestly inaccurate; nor can it be applied, without some variation, to the Greek. In both, as well as in all other languages that have *Articles*, the best amendment of it, and the nearest adherence to it, is, to make the Parts of Speech *ten*; namely, the Article, the Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Participle, the Adverb, the Conjunction, the Preposition, and the Interjection.

6. The best Latin grammarians admit that the Adjective ought not to be called a Noun; and the best Greek grammarians, that the Interjections ought not to be included among Adverbs. With respect to Participles, a vast majority of grammarians in general, make them a distinct species, or part of speech; but, on this point, the English grammarians are about equally divided: nearly one half include them with the verbs, and a few call them adjectives. In grammar, it is wrong to deviate from the old groundwork, except for the sake of truth and improvement; and, in this case, to vary the series of parts, by suppressing one and substituting an other, is in fact a greater innovation, than to make the terms *ten*, by adding one and dividing an other. But our men of nine parts of speech innovated yet more: they added the Article, as did the Greeks; divided the Noun into Substantive and Adjective; and, without good reason, suppressed the Participle. And, of latter time, not a few have thrown the whole into confusion, to show the world "the order of [their] understanding." What was grammar fifty years ago, some of these have not thought it worth their while to inquire! And the reader has seen, that, after all this, they can complacently talk of "the censure so frequently and so justly awarded to *unfortunate innovators*."--*KIRKHAM'S Gram.*, p. 10.

7. The old scheme of the Latin grammarians has seldom, if ever, been *literally* followed in English; because its distribution of the parts of speech, as declined and undeclined, would not be true with respect to the English participle. With the omission of this unimportant distinction, it was, however, scrupulously retained by Dilworth, by the author of the British Grammar, by William Ward, by Buchanan, and by some others now little known, who chose to include both the article and the adjective with the noun, rather than to increase the number of the parts of speech beyond eight. Dr. Priestley says, "I shall adopt the *usual distribution* of words into eight classes; viz. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.[71] I do this in compliance with the practice of most Grammarians; and because, *if any number, in a thing so arbitrary, must be fixed upon*, this seems to be as comprehensive and distinct as any. All the innovation I have made hath been to throw out the *Participle*, and substitute the *Adjective*, as more evidently a distinct part of speech."--*Rudiments of English Gram.*, p. 3. All this comports well enough with Dr. Priestley's haste and carelessness; but it is not true, that he either adopted, "the usual distribution of words," or made an other "as comprehensive and distinct as any." His "*innovation*," too, which has since been countenanced by many other writers, I have already shown to be greater, than if, by a promotion of the article and the adjective,

he had made the parts of speech ten. Dr. Beattie, who was Priestley's coeval, and a much better scholar, adopted this number without hesitation, and called every one of them by what is still its right name: "In English there are *ten* sorts of words, which are all found in the following short sentence; 'I now see the good man coming; but, alas! he walks with difficulty.' *I* and *he* are pronouns; *now* is an adverb; *see* and *walks* are verbs; *the* is an article; *good*, an adjective; *man* and *difficulty* are nouns, the former substantive, the latter abstract; *coming* is a participle; *but*, a conjunction; *alas!* an interjection; *with*, a preposition. That no other sorts of words are necessary in language, will appear, when we have seen in what respects these are necessary."--*Beattie's Moral Science*, Vol. i, p. 30. This distribution is precisely that which the best *French* grammarians have *usually* adopted.

8. Dr. Johnson professes to adopt the division, the order, and the terms, "of the common grammarians, without inquiring whether a fitter distribution might not be found."--*Gram. before 4to Dict.*, p. 1. But, in the Etymology of his Grammar, he makes no enumeration of the parts of speech, and treats only of articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs; to which if we add the others, according to the common grammarians, or according to his own Dictionary, the number will be *ten*. And this distribution, which was adopted by Dr. Ash about 1765, by Murray the schoolmaster about 1790, by Caleb Alexander in 1795, and approved by Dr. Adam in 1793, has since been very extensively followed; as may be seen in Dr. Crombie's treatise, in the Rev. Matt. Harrison's, in Dr. Mandeville's reading-books, and in the grammars of Harrison, Staniford, Alden, Coar, John Peirce, E. Devis, C. Adams, D. Adams, Chandler, Comly, Jaudon, Ingersoll, Hull, Fuller, Greenleaf, Kirkham, Ferd. H. Miller, Merchant, Mack, Nutting, Bucke, Beck, Barrett, Barnard, Maunder, Webber, Emmons, Hazen, Bingham, Sanders, and many others. Dr. Lowth's distribution is the same, except that he placed the adjective after the pronoun, the conjunction after the preposition, and, like Priestley, called the participle a verb, thus making the parts of speech *nine*. He also has been followed by many; among whom are Bicknell, Burn, Lennie, Mennye, Lindley Murray, W. Allen, Guy, Churchill, Wilson, Cobbett, Davis, David Blair, Davenport, Mendenhall, Wilcox, Picket, Pond, Russell, Bacon, Bullions, Brace, Hart, Lyon, Tob. H. Miller, Alger, A. Flint, Folker, S. Putnam, Cooper, Frost, Goldsbury, Hamlin, T. Smith, R. C. Smith, and Woodworth. But a third part of these, and as many more in the preceding list, are confessedly mere modifiers of Murray's compilation; and perhaps, in such a case, those have done best who have deviated least from the track of him whom they professed to follow.[72]

9. Some seem to have supposed, that by reducing the number of the parts of speech, and of the rules for their construction, the study of grammar would be rendered more easy and more profitable to the learner. But this, as would appear from the history of the science, is a mere retrogression towards the rudeness of its earlier stages. It is hardly worth while to dispute, whether there shall be nine parts of speech or ten; and perhaps enough has already been stated, to establish the expediency of assuming the latter number. Every word in the language must be included in some class, and nothing is gained by making the classes larger and less numerous. In all the artificial arrangements of science, distinctions are to be made according to the differences in things; and the simple question here is, what differences among words shall be at first regarded. To overlook, in our primary division, the difference between a verb and a participle, is merely to reserve for a subdivision, or subsequent explanation, a species of words which most grammarians have recognized as a distinct sort in their original classification.

10. It should be observed that the early period of grammatical science was far remote from the days in which *English* grammar originated. Many things which we now teach and defend as grammar, were taught and defended two thousand years ago, by the philosophers of Greece and Rome. Of the parts of speech, Quintilian, who lived in the first century of our era, gives the following account: "For the ancients, among whom were Aristotle[73] and Theodectes, treated only of verbs, nouns, and conjunctions: as the verb is what we say, and the noun, that of which we say it, they judged the power of discourse to be in *verbs*, and the matter in *nouns*, but the connexion in *conjunctions*. Little by little, the philosophers, and especially the Stoics, increased the number: first, to the conjunctions were added *articles*; afterwards, *prepositions*; to nouns, was added the *appellation*; then the *pronoun*; afterwards, as belonging to each verb, the *participle*; and, to verbs in common, *adverbs*. Our language [i. e., the *Latin*] does not require articles, wherefore they are scattered among the other

parts of speech; but there is added to the foregoing the *interjection*. But some, on the authority of good authors, make the parts only eight; as Aristarchus, and, in our day, Palæmon; who have included the vocable, or appellation, with the noun, as a species of it. But they who make the noun one and the vocable an other, reckon nine. But there are also some who divide the vocable from the appellation; making the former to signify any thing manifest to sight or touch, as *house, bed*; and the latter, any thing to which either or both are wanting, as *wind, heaven, god, virtue*. They have also added the *asseveration* and the *attrectation*, which I do not approve. Whether the vocable or appellation should be included with the noun or not, as it is a matter of little consequence, I leave to the decision of others."--See QUINTIL. *de Inst. Orat.*, Lib. i, Cap. 4, §24.

11. Several writers on English grammar, indulging a strange unsettlement of plan, seem not to have determined in their own minds, how many parts of speech there are, or ought to be. Among these are Horne Tooke, Webster, Dalton, Cardell, Green, and Cobb; and perhaps, from what he says above, we may add the name of Priestley. The present disputation about the sorts of words, has been chiefly owing to the writings of Horne Tooke, who explains the minor parts of speech as mere abbreviations, and rejects, with needless acrimony, the common classification. But many have mistaken the nature of his instructions, no less than that of the common grammarians. This author, in his third chapter, supposes his auditor to say, "But you have not all this while informed me *how many parts of speech* you mean to lay down." To whom he replies, "That shall be as you please. Either *two*, or *twenty*, or *more*." Such looseness comported well enough with his particular purpose; because he meant to teach the derivation of words, and not to meddle at all with their construction. But who does not see that it is impossible to lay down rules for the *construction* of words, without first dividing them into the classes to which such rules apply? For example: if a man means to teach, that, "A verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number," must he not first show the learner *what words are verbs*? and ought he not to see in this rule a reason for not calling the participle a verb? Let the careless followers of Lowth and Priestley answer. Tooke did not care to preserve any parts of speech at all. His work is not a system of grammar; nor can it be made the basis of any regular scheme of grammatical instruction. He who will not grant that the same words may possibly be used as different parts of speech, must make his parts of speech either very few or very many. This author says, "I do not allow that *any* words change their nature in this manner, so as to belong sometimes to one part of speech, and sometimes to another, from the different ways of using them. I never could perceive any such fluctuation in any word whatever."--*Diversions of Purley*, Vol. i, p. 68.

12. From his own positive language, I imagine this ingenious author never well considered what constitutes the sameness of words, or wherein lies the difference of the parts of speech; and, without understanding these things, a grammarian cannot but fall into errors, unless he will follow somebody that knows them. But Tooke confessedly contradicts, and outfaces "*all other Grammarians*" in the passage just cited. Yet it is plain, that the whole science of grammar--or at least the whole of etymology and syntax, which are its two principal parts--is based upon a division of words into the parts of speech; a division which necessarily refers, in many instances, the same words to different sections according to the manner in which they are used. "Certains mots répondent, ainsi au même temps, à diverses parties d'oraison selon que la grammaire les emploie diversement."--*Buffier*, Art. 150. "Some words, from the different ways in which they are used, belong sometimes to one part of speech, sometimes to another."--*M'Culloch's Gram.*, p. 37. "And so say all other Grammarians."--*Tooke, as above*.

13. The history of *Dr. Webster*, as a grammarian, is singular. He is remarkable for his changeableness, yet always positive; for his inconsistency, yet very learned; for his zeal "to correct popular errors," yet often himself erroneous; for his fertility in resources, yet sometimes meagre; for his success as an author, yet never satisfied; for his boldness of innovation, yet fond of appealing to antiquity. His grammars are the least judicious, and at present the least popular, of his works. They consist of four or five different treatises, which for their mutual credit should never be compared: it is impossible to place any firm reliance upon the authority of a man who contradicts himself so much. Those who imagine that the last opinions of so learned a man must needs be right, will do well to wait, and see what will be his last: they cannot otherwise know to what his instructions will finally lead: Experience has already taught him the folly of many of his pretended

improvements, and it is probable his last opinions of English grammar will be most conformable to that just authority with which he has ever been tampering. I do not say that he has not exhibited ingenuity as well as learning, or that he is always wrong when he contradicts a majority of the English grammarians; but I may venture to say, he was wrong when he undertook to disturb the common scheme of the parts of speech, as well as when he resolved to spell all words exactly as they are pronounced.

14. It is not commonly known with how rash a hand this celebrated author has sometimes touched the most settled usages of our language. In 1790, which was seven years after the appearance of his first grammar, he published an octavo volume of more than four hundred pages, consisting of Essays, moral, historical, political, and literary, which might have done him credit, had he not spoiled his book by a grammatical whim about the reformation of orthography. Not perceiving that English literature, multiplied as it had been within two or three centuries, had acquired a stability in some degree corresponding to its growth, he foolishly imagined it was still as susceptible of change and improvement as in the days of its infancy. Let the reader pardon the length of this digression, if for the sake of any future schemer who may chance to adopt a similar conceit, I cite from the preface to this volume a specimen of the author's practice and reasoning. The ingenious attorney had the good sense quickly to abandon this project, and content himself with less glaring innovations; else he had never stood as he now does, in the estimation of the public. But there is the more need to record the example, because in one of the southern states the experiment has recently been tried again. A still abler member of the same profession, has renewed it but lately; and it is said there are yet remaining some converts to this notion of improvement. I copy literally, leaving all my readers and his to guess for themselves why he spelled "*writers*" with a *w* and "*riting*" without.

15. "During the course of ten or twelv yeers, I have been laboring to correct popular errors, and to assist my yung brethren in the road to truth and virtue; my publications for theze purposes hav been numerous; much time haz been spent, which I do not regret, and much censure incurred, which my hart tells me I do not dezerv." * * * "The reeder wil observ that the *orthography* of the volum iz not uniform. The reezon iz, that many of the essays hav been published before, in the common orthography, and it would hav been a laborious task to copy the whole, for the sake of changing the spelling. In the essays, ritten within the last yeer, a considerable change of spelling iz introduced by way of experiment. This liberty waz taken by the writers before the age of queen Elizabeth, and to this we are indeted for the preference of modern spelling over that of Gower and Chaucer. The man who admits that the change of *hoasbonde*, *mynde*, *ygone*, *moneth* into *husband*, *mind*, *gone*, *month*, iz an improovment, must acknowlege also the riting of *helth*, *breth*, *rong*, *tung*, *munth*, to be an improovment. There iz no alternativ. Every possible reezon that could ever be offered for altering the spelling of wurds, stil exists in full force; and if a gradual reform should not be made in our language, it wil proof that we are less under the influence of reezon than our ancestors."--*Noah Webster's Essays, Preface*, p. xi.

16. But let us return, with our author, to the question of the parts of speech. I have shown that if we do not mean to adopt some less convenient scheme, we must count them *ten*, and preserve their ancient order as well as their ancient names.[74] And, after all his vacillation in consequence of reading Horne Tooke, it would not be strange if Dr. Webster should come at last to the same conclusion. He was not very far from it in 1828, as may be shown by his own testimony, which he then took occasion to record. I will give his own words on the point: "There is great difficulty in devising a correct classification of the several sorts of words; and probably no classification that shall be simple and at the same time philosophically correct, can be invented. There are some words that do not strictly fall under any description of any class yet devised. Many attempts have been made and are still making to remedy this evil; but such schemes as I have seen, do not, in my apprehension, correct the defects of the old schemes, nor simplify the subject. On the other hand, all that I have seen, serve only to obscure and embarrass the subject, by substituting new arrangements and new terms which are as incorrect as the old ones, and less intelligible. I have attentively viewed these subjects, in all the lights which my opportunities have afforded, and am convinced that the distribution of words, most generally received, *is the best that can be formed*, with some slight alterations adapted to the particular construction of the English language."

17. This passage is taken from the advertisement, or preface, to the Grammar which accompanies the author's edition of his great quarto Dictionary. Now the several schemes which bear his own name, were doubtless all of them among those which he had that he had "*seen*;" so that he here condemns them all collectively, as he had previously condemned some of them at each reformation. Nor is the last exempted. For although he here plainly gives his vote for that common scheme which he first condemned, he does not adopt it without "some slight alterations;" and in contriving these alterations he is inconsistent with his own professions. He makes the parts of speech *eight*, thus: "1. The name or noun; 2. The pronoun or substitute; 3. The adjective, attribute, or attributive; 4. The verb; 5. The adverb; 6. The preposition; 7. The connective or conjunction; 8. The exclamation or interjection." In his Rudiments of English Grammar, published in 1811, "to unfold the *true principles* of the language," his parts of speech were *seven*; "viz. 1. Names or nouns; 2. Substitutes or pronouns; 3. Attributes or adjectives; 4. Verbs, with their participles; 5. Modifiers or adverbs; 6. Prepositions; 7. Connectives or conjunctions." In his Philosophical and Practical Grammar, published in 1807, a book which professes to teach "the *only legitimate principles*, and established usages," of the language, a twofold division of words is adopted; first, into two general classes, primary and secondary; then into "*seven species* or parts of speech," the first two belonging to the former class, the other five to the latter; thus: "1. Names or nouns; 2. Verbs; 3. Substitutes; 4. Attributes; 5. Modifiers; 6. Prepositions; 7. Connectives." In his "Improved Grammar of the English Language," published in 1831, the same scheme is retained, but the usual names are preferred.

18. How many different schemes of classification this author invented, I know not; but he might well have saved himself the trouble of inventing any; for, so far as appears, none of his last three grammars ever came to a second edition. In the sixth edition of his "Plain and Comprehensive Grammar, grounded on the *true principles* and idioms of the language," a work which his last grammatical preface affirms to have been originally fashioned "on the model of Lowth's," the parts of speech are reckoned "*six*; nouns, articles, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, and abbreviations or particles." This work, which he says "was extensively used in the schools of this country," and continued to be in demand, he voluntarily suppressed; because, after a profitable experiment of four and twenty years, he found it so far from being grounded on "true principles," that the whole scheme then appeared to him incorrigibly bad. And, judging from this sixth edition, printed in 1800, the only one which I have seen, I cannot but concur with him in the opinion. More than one half of the volume is a loose *Appendix* composed chiefly of notes taken from Lowth and Priestley; and there is a great want of method in what was meant for the body of the work. I imagine his several editions must have been different grammars with the same title; for such things are of no uncommon occurrence, and I cannot otherwise account for the assertion that this book was compiled "on the model of Lowth's, and on the same principles as [those on which] Murray has constructed his."--*Advertisement in Webster's Quarto Dict., 1st Ed.*

19. In a treatise on grammar, a bad scheme is necessarily attended with inconveniences for which no merit in the execution can possibly compensate. The first thing, therefore, which a skillful teacher will notice in a work of this kind, is the arrangement. If he find any difficulty in discovering, at sight, what it is, he will be sure it is bad; for a lucid order is what he has a right to expect from him who pretends to improve upon all the English grammarians. Dr. Webster is not the only reader of the EPEA PTEROENTA, who has been thereby prompted to meddle with the common scheme of grammar; nor is he the only one who has attempted to simplify the subject by reducing the parts of speech to *six*. John Dalton of Manchester, in 1801, in a small grammar which he dedicated to Horne Tooke, made them six, but not the same six. He would have them to be, nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions. This writer, like Brightland, Tooke, Fisher, and some others, insists on it that the articles are *adjectives*. Priestley, too, throwing them out of his classification, and leaving the learner to go almost through his book in ignorance of their rank, at length assigns them to the same class, in one of his notes. And so has Dr. Webster fixed them in his late valuable, but not faultless, dictionaries. But David Booth, an etymologist perhaps equally learned, in his "Introduction to an Analytical Dictionary of the English Language," declares them to be of the same species as the *pronouns*; from which he thinks it strange that they were ever separated! See *Booth's Introd.*, p. 21.

20. Now, what can be more idle, than for teachers to reject the common classification of words, and puzzle the

heads of school-boys with speculations like these? It is easy to admit all that etymology can show to be true, and still justify the old arrangement of the elements of grammar. And if we depart from the common scheme, where shall we stop? Some have taught that the parts of speech are only *five*; as did the latter stoics, whose classes, according to Priscian and Harris, were these: articles, nouns appellative, nouns proper, verbs, and conjunctions. Others have made them *four*; as did Aristotle and the elder stoics, and, more recently, Milnes, Brightland, Harris, Ware, Fisher, and the author of a work on Universal Grammar, entitled Enclytica. Yet, in naming the four, each of these contrives to differ from *all the rest!* With Aristotle, they are, "nouns, verbs, articles, and conjunctions;" with Milnes, "nouns, adnouns, verbs, and particles;" with Brightland, "names, qualities, affirmations, and particles;" with Harris, "substantives, attributives, definitives, and connectives;" with Ware, "the name, the word, the assistant, the connective;" with Fisher, "names, qualities, verbs, and particles;" with the author of Enclytica, "names, verbs, modes, and connectives." But why make the classes so numerous as four? Many of the ancients, Greeks, Hebrews, and Arabians, according to Quintilian, made them *three*; and these three, according to Vossius, were nouns, verbs, and particles. "Veteres Arabes, Hebræi, et Græci, tres, non amplius, classes faciebant; 1. Nomen, 2. Verbum, 3. Particula seu Dictio."--*Voss. de Anal.*, Lib. i, Cap. 1.

21. Nor is this number, *three*, quite destitute of modern supporters; though most of these come at it in an other way. D. St. Quentin, in his Rudiments of General Grammar, published in 1812, divides words into the "three general classes" last mentioned; viz., "1. Nouns, 2. Verbs, 3. Particles."--P. 5. Booth, who published the second edition of his etymological work in 1814, examining severally the ten parts of speech, and finding what he supposed to be the true origin of all the words in some of the classes, was led to throw one into an other, till he had destroyed seven of them. Then, resolving that each word ought to be classed according to the meaning which its etymology fixes upon it, he refers the number of classes to *nature*, thus: "If, then, each [word] has a *meaning*, and is capable of raising an idea in the mind, that idea must have its prototype in nature. It must either denote an *exertion*, and is therefore a *verb*; or a *quality*, and is, in that case, an *adjective*; or it must express an *assemblage* of qualities, such as is observed to belong to some individual object, and is, on this supposition, the *name* of such object, or a *noun*. * * * We have thus given an account of the different divisions of words, and have found that the whole may be classed under the three heads of Names, Qualities, and Actions; or Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs."--*Introd. to Analyt. Dict.*, p. 22.

22. This notion of the parts of speech, as the reader will presently see, found an advocate also in the author of the popular little story of Jack Halyard. It appears in his Philosophic Grammar published in Philadelphia in 1827. Whether the writer borrowed it from Booth, or was led into it by the light of "nature," I am unable to say: he does not appear to have derived it from the ancients. Now, if either he or the lexicographer has discovered in "nature" a prototype for this scheme of grammar, the discovery is only to be proved, and the schemes of all other grammarians, ancient or modern, must give place to it. For the reader will observe that this triad of parts is not that which is mentioned by Vossius and Quintilian. But authority may be found for reducing the number of the parts of speech yet lower. Plato, according to Harris, and the first inquirers into language, according to Horne Tooke, made them *two*; nouns and verbs, which Crombie, Dalton, McCulloch, and some others, say, are the only parts essentially necessary for the communication of our thoughts. Those who know nothing about grammar, regard all words as of *one* class. To them, a word is simply a word; and under what other name it may come, is no concern of theirs.

23. Towards this point, tends every attempt to simplify grammar by suppressing any of the *ten* parts of speech. Nothing is gained by it; and it is a departure from the best authority. We see by what steps this kind of reasoning may descend; and we have an admirable illustration of it in the several grammatical works of William S. Cardell. I shall mention them in the order in which they appeared; and the reader may judge whether the author does not ultimately arrive at the conclusion to which the foregoing series is conducted. This writer, in his Essay on Language, reckons seven parts of speech; in his New-York Grammar, six; in his Hartford Grammar, three principal, with three others subordinate; in his Philadelphia Grammar, three only--nouns, adjectives, and verbs. Here he alleges, "The unerring plan of *nature* has established three classes of perceptions, and consequently three parts of speech."--P. 171. He says this, as if he meant to abide by it.

But, on his twenty-third page, we are told, "Every adjective is either a noun or a participle." Now, by his own showing, there are no participles: he makes them all adjectives, in each of his schemes. It follows, therefore, that all his adjectives, including what others call participles, are nouns. And this reduces his three parts of speech to two, in spite of "the unerring plan of *nature*!" But even this number is more than he well believed in; for, on the twenty-first page of the book, he affirms, that, "All other terms are but derivative forms and new applications of *nouns*." So simple a thing is this method of grammar! But Neef, in his zeal for reformation, carries the anticlimax fairly off the brink; and declares, "In the grammar which shall be the work of my pupils, there shall be found no nouns, no pronouns, no articles, no participles, no verbs, no prepositions, no conjunctions, no adverbs, no interjections, no gerunds, not even one single supine. Unmercifully shall they be banished from it."--*Neef's Method of Education*, p. 60.

24. When Cardell's system appeared, several respectable men, convinced by "his powerful demonstrations," admitted that he had made "many things in the *established doctrines* of the expounders of language appear sufficiently ridiculous;" [75] and willingly lent him the influence of their names, trusting that his admirable scheme of English grammar, in which their ignorance saw nothing but new truth, would be speedily "perfected and generally embraced." [76] Being invited by the author to a discussion of his principles, I opposed them *in his presence*, both privately and publicly; defending against him, not unsuccessfully, those doctrines which time and custom have sanctioned. And, what is remarkable, that candid opposition which Cardell himself had treated with respect, and parried in vain, was afterwards, by some of his converts, impeached of all unfairness, and even accused of wanting common sense. "No one," says Niebuhr, "ever overthrew a literary idol, without provoking the anger of its worshipers."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 489. The certificates given in commendation of this "set of opinions," though they had no extensive effect on the public, showed full well that the signers knew little of the history of grammar; and it is the continual repetition of such things, that induces me now to dwell upon its history, for the information of those who are so liable to be deceived by exploded errors republished as novelties. A eulogist says of Cardell, "He had adopted a set of opinions, which, to most of his readers, appeared *entirely new*." A reviewer proved, that all his pretended novelties are to be found in certain grammars now forgotten, or seldom read. The former replies, Then he [Cardell,] is right--and the man is no less stupid than abusive, who finds fault; for here is proof that the former "had highly respectable authority for almost every thing he has advanced!"--See *The Friend*, Vol. ii, pp. 105 and 116, from which all the quotations in this paragraph, except one, are taken.

25. The reader may now be curious to know what these doctrines were. They were summed up by the reviewer, thus: "Our author pretends to have drawn principally from his own resources, in making up his books; and many may have supposed there is more *novelty* in them than there really is. For instance: 1. He classes the *articles* with *adjectives*; and so did Brightland, Tooke, Fisher, Dalton, and Webster. 2. He calls the *participles*, *adjectives*; and so did Brightland and Tooke. 3. He make the *pronouns*, either *nouns* or *adjectives*; and so did Adam, Dalton, and others. 4. He distributes the *conjunctions* among the other parts of speech; and so did Tooke. 5. He rejects the *interjections*; and so did Valla, Sanctius, and Tooke. 6. He makes the *possessive case* an *adjective*; and so did Brightland. 7. He says our language has *no cases*; and so did Harris. 8. He calls *case*, *position*; and so did James Brown. 9. He reduces the adjectives to two classes, *defining* and *describing*; and so did Dalton. 10. He declares all *verbs* to be *active*; and so did Harris, (in his *Hermes*, Book i, Chap. ix,) though he admitted the *expediency* of the common division, and left to our author the absurdity of contending about it. Fisher also rejected the class of *neuter verbs*, and called them all *active*. 11. He reduces the *moods* to *three*, and the *tenses* to *three*; and so did Dalton, in the very same words. Fisher also made the *tenses three*, but said there *are no moods* in English. 12. He makes the *imperative mood* always *future*; and so did Harris, in 1751. Nor did the doctrine originate with him; for Brightland, a hundred years ago, [about 1706,] ascribed it to some of his predecessors. 13. He reduces the whole of our *syntax* to about *thirty lines*; and two thirds of these are useless; for Dr. Johnson expressed it quite as fully in *ten*. But their explanations are both good for nothing; and Wallis, more wisely, omitted it altogether."--*The Friend*, Vol. ii, p. 59.

26. Dr. Webster says, in a marginal note to the preface of his *Philosophical Grammar*, "Since the days of *Wallis*, who published a *Grammar of the English Language*, in Latin, in the reign of Charles II.[.] from which

Johnson and Lowth borrowed most of their rules, *little improvement* has been made in English grammar. Lowth supplied some valuable criticisms, most of which however respect obsolete phrases; but many of his criticisms are extremely erroneous, and they have had an ill effect, in perverting the true idioms of our language. Priestley furnished a number of new and useful observations on the peculiar phrases of the English language. To which may be added some good remarks of Blair and Campbell, interspersed with many errors. Murray, not having mounted to the original sources of information, and professing only to select and arrange the rules and criticisms of preceding writers, has furnished little or nothing new. Of the numerous compilations of inferior character, it may be affirmed, that they have added nothing to the stock of grammatical knowledge." And the concluding sentence of this work, as well as of his *Improved Grammar*, published in 1831, extends the censure as follows: "It is not the English language only whose history and principles are yet to be illustrated; but the grammars and dictionaries of *all other* languages, with which I have any acquaintance, must be revised and corrected, before their elements and true construction can be fully understood." In an advertisement to the grammar prefixed to his quarto *American Dictionary*, the Doctor is yet more severe upon books of this sort. "I close," says he, "with the single remark, that from all the observations I have been able to make, I am convinced the dictionaries and grammars which have been used in our seminaries of learning for the last forty or fifty years, are *so incorrect and imperfect* that they have introduced or sanctioned more errors than they have amended; in other words, had the people of England and of these States been left to learn the pronunciation and construction of their vernacular language solely by tradition, and the reading of good authors, the language would have been spoken and written with more purity than it has been and now is, by those who have learned to adjust their language by the rules which dictionaries prescribe."

27. Little and much are but relative terms; yet when we look back to the period in which English grammar was taught only in Latin, it seems extravagant to say, that "little improvement has been made" in it since. I have elsewhere expressed a more qualified sentiment. "That the grammar of our language has made considerable progress since the days of Swift, who wrote a petty treatise on the subject, is sufficiently evident; but whoever considers what remains to be done, cannot but perceive how ridiculous are many of the boasts and felicitations which we have heard on that topic." [77] Some further notice will now be taken of that progress, and of the writers who have been commonly considered the chief promoters of it, but especially of such as have not been previously mentioned in a like connexion. Among these may be noticed *William Walker*, the preceptor of Sir Isaac Newton, a teacher and grammarian of extraordinary learning, who died in 1684. He has left us sundry monuments of his taste and critical skill: one is his "Treatise of English Particles,"--a work of great labour and merit, but useless to most people now-a-days, because it explains the English in Latin; another, his "Art of Teaching Improv'd,"--which is also an able treatise, and apparently well adapted to its object, "the Grounding of a Young Scholar in the Latin Tongue." In the latter, are mentioned other works of his, on "*Rhetorick*, and *Logick*" which I have not seen.

28. In 1706, *Richard Johnson* published an octavo volume of more than four hundred pages, entitled, "Grammatical Commentaries; being an Apparatus to a New National Grammar: by way of animadversion upon the falsities, obscurities, redundancies and defects of Lily's System now in use." This is a work of great acuteness, labour, and learning; and might be of signal use to any one who should undertake to prepare a new or improved Latin grammar: of which, in my opinion, we have yet urgent need. The English grammarian may also peruse it with advantage, if he has a good knowledge of Latin--and without such knowledge he must be ill prepared for his task. This work is spoken of and quoted by some of the early English grammarians; but the hopes of the writer do not appear to have been realized. His book was not calculated to supply the place of the common one; for the author thought it impracticable to make a new grammar, suitable for boys, and at the same time to embrace in it proofs sufficient to remove the prejudices of teachers in favour of the old. King Henry's edict in support of Lily, was yet in force, backed by all the partiality which long habit creates; and Johnson's learning, and labour, and zeal, were admired, and praised, and soon forgot.

29. Near the beginning of the last century, some of the generous wits of the reign of Queen Anne, seeing the need there was of greater attention to their vernacular language, and of a grammar more properly English than

any then in use, produced a book with which the later writers on the same subjects, would have done well to have made themselves better acquainted. It is entitled "A Grammar of the English Tongue; with the Arts of Logick, Rhetorick, Poetry, &c. Illustrated with useful Notes; giving the Grounds and Reasons of Grammar in General. The Whole making a Compleat System of an English Education. *Published by JOHN BRIGHTLAND, for the Use of the Schools of Great Britain and Ireland.*" It is ingeniously recommended in a certificate by Sir Richard Steele, or the Tattler, under the fictitious name of Isaac Bickerstaff, Esq., and in a poem of forty-three lines, by Nahum Tate, poet laureate to her Majesty. It is a duodecimo volume of three hundred pages; a work of no inconsiderable merit and originality; and written in a style which, though not faultless, has scarcely been surpassed by any English grammarian since. I quote it as Brightland's:[78] who were the real authors, does not appear. It seems to be the work of more than one, and perhaps the writers of the Tattler were the men. My copy is of the seventh edition, London, printed for Henry Lintot, 1746. It is evidently the work of very skillful hands; yet is it not in all respects well planned or well executed. It unwisely reduces the parts of speech to four; gives them new names; and rejects more of the old system than the schools could be made willing to give up. Hence it does not appear to have been very extensively adopted.

30. It is now about a hundred and thirty years, since *Dr. Swift*, in a public remonstrance addressed to the Earl of Oxford, complained of the imperfect state of our language, and alleged in particular, that "in many instances it offended against every part of grammar." [79] Fifty years afterward, *Dr. Lowth* seconded this complaint, and pressed it home upon the polite and the learned. "Does he mean," says the latter, "that the English language, as it is spoken by the politest part of the nation, and as it stands in the writings of the most approved authors, often offends against every part of grammar? *Thus far, I am afraid the charge is true.*"--*Lowth's Grammar, Preface*, p. iv. Yet the learned Doctor, to whom much praise has been justly ascribed for the encouragement which he gave to this neglected study, attempted nothing more than "A Short Introduction to English Grammar;" which, he says, "was calculated for the learner *even of the lowest class*:" and those who would enter more deeply into the subject, he referred to *Harris*; whose work is not an English grammar, but "A Philosophical Inquiry concerning Universal Grammar." Lowth's Grammar was first published in 1758. At the commencement of his preface, the reverend author, after acknowledging the enlargement, polish, and refinement, which the language had received during the preceding two hundred years, ventures to add, "but, whatever other improvements it may have received, it hath made *no advances* in grammatical accuracy." I do not quote this assertion to affirm it literally true, in all its apparent breadth; but there is less reason to boast of the correctness even now attained, than to believe that the writers on grammar are not the authors who have in general come nearest to it in practice. Nor have the ablest authors always produced the best compends for the literary instruction of youth.

31. The treatises of the learned doctors Harris, Lowth, Johnson, Ash, Priestley, Horne Tooke, Crombie, Coote, and Webster, owe their celebrity not so much to their intrinsic fitness for school instruction, as to the literary reputation of the writers. Of *Harris's Hermes*, (which, in comparison with our common grammars, is indeed a work of much ingenuity and learning, full of interesting speculations, and written with great elegance both of style and method,) *Dr. Lowth* says, it is "the most beautiful and perfect example of analysis, that has been exhibited since the days of Aristotle."--*Preface to Gram.*, p. x. But these two authors, if their works be taken together, as the latter intended they should be, supply no sufficient course of English grammar. The instructions of the one are too limited, and those of the other are not specially directed to the subject.

32. *Dr. Johnson*, who was practically one of the greatest grammarians that ever lived, and who was very nearly coetaneous with both Harris and Lowth, speaks of the state of English grammar in the following terms: "I found our speech copious without order, and energetick *without rules*: wherever I turned my view, there was perplexity to be disentangled, and confusion to be regulated."--*Preface to Dict.*, p. 1. Again: "Having therefore *no assistance but from general grammar*, I applied myself to the perusal of our writers; and noting whatever might be of use to ascertain or illustrate any word or phrase, accumulated in time the materials of a dictionary."--*Ibid.* But it is not given to any one man to do every thing; else, Johnson had done it. His object was, to compile a dictionary, rather than to compose a grammar, of our language. To lexicography, grammar is necessary, as a preparation; but, as a purpose, it is merely incidental. *Dr. Priestley* speaks of Johnson thus:

"I must not conclude this preface, without making my acknowledgements to Mr. *Johnson*, whose admirable dictionary has been of the greatest use to me in the study of our language. It is pity he had not formed as just, and as extensive an idea of English grammar. Perhaps this very useful work may still be reserved for his distinguished abilities in this way."--*Priestley's Grammar, Preface*, p. xxiii. Dr. Johnson's English Grammar is all comprised in fourteen pages, and of course it is very deficient. The syntax he seems inclined entirely to omit, as (he says) Wallis did, and Ben Jonson had better done; but, for form's sake, he condescends to bestow upon it ten short lines.

33. My point here is, that the best grammarians have left much to be done by him who may choose to labour for the further improvement of English grammar; and that a man may well deserve comparative praise, who has not reached perfection in a science like this. Johnson himself committed many errors, some of which I shall hereafter expose; yet I cannot conceive that the following judgement of his works was penned without some bias of prejudice: "Johnson's merit ought not to be denied to him; but his dictionary is the most imperfect and faulty, and the least valuable of *any*[80] of his productions; and that share of merit which it possesses, makes it by so much the more hurtful. I rejoice, however, that though the least valuable, he found it the most profitable: for I could never read his preface without shedding a tear. And yet it must be confessed, that his *grammar* and *history* and *dictionary* of what *he calls* the English language, are in all respects (except the bulk of the *latter*[81]) most truly contemptible performances; and a reproach to the learning and industry of a nation which could receive them with the slightest approbation. Nearly one third of this dictionary is as much the language of the Hottentots as of the English; and it would be no difficult matter so to translate any one of the plainest and most popular numbers of the *Spectator* into the language of this dictionary, that no mere Englishman, though well read in his own language, would be able to comprehend one sentence of it. It appears to be a work of labour, and yet is in truth one of the most idle performances ever offered to the public; compiled by an author who possessed not one single requisite for the undertaking, and (being a publication of a set of booksellers) owing its success to that very circumstance which alone must make it impossible that it should deserve success."--*Tooke's Diversions of Purley*, Vol. i, p. 182.

34. Dr. Ash's "Grammatical Institutes, or Easy Introduction to Dr. Lowth's English Grammar," is a meagre performance, the ease of which consists in nothing but its brevity. Dr. *Priestley*, who in the preface to his third edition acknowledges his obligations to Johnson, and also to Lowth, thought it premature to attempt an English grammar; and contented himself with publishing a few brief "Rudiments," with a loose appendix consisting of "Notes and Observations, for the use of those who have made some proficiency in the language." He says, "With respect to our own language, there seems to be a kind of claim upon all who make use of it, to do something for its improvement; and the best thing we can do for this purpose at present, is, to exhibit its actual structure, and the varieties with which it is used. When these are once distinctly pointed out, and generally attended to, the best forms of speech, and those which are most agreeable to the analogy of the language, will soon recommend themselves, and come into general use; and when, by this means, the language shall be written with sufficient uniformity, we may hope to see a complete grammar of it. At present, *it is by no means ripe for such a work*:[82] but we may approximate to it very fast, if all persons who are qualified to make remarks upon it, will give a little attention to the subject. In such a case, a few years might be sufficient to complete it."--*Priestley's Grammar, Preface*, p. xv. In point of time, both Ash and Priestley expressly claim priority to Lowth, for their first editions; but the former having allowed his work to be afterwards entitled an Introduction to Lowth's, and the latter having acknowledged some improvements in his from the same source, they have both been regarded as later authors.

35. The great work of the learned etymologist *John Horne Tooke*, consists of two octavo volumes, entitled, "EPEA PTEROENTA, or the Diversions of Purley." This work explains, with admirable sagacity, the origin and primitive import of many of the most common yet most obscure English words; and is, for that reason, a valuable performance. But as it contains nothing respecting the construction of the language, and embraces no proper system of grammatical doctrines, it is a great error to suppose that the common principles of practical grammar ought to give place to such instructions, or even be modelled according to what the author proves to be true in respect to the origin of particular words. The common grammarians were less confuted by him, than

many of his readers have imagined; and it ought not to be forgotten that his purpose was as different from theirs, as are their schemes of Grammar from the plan of his critical "Diversions." In this connexion may be mentioned an other work of similar size and purpose, but more comprehensive in design; the "History of European Languages," by that astonishing linguist the late *Dr. Alexander Murray*. This work was left unfinished by its lamented author; but it will remain a monument of erudition never surpassed, acquired in spite of wants and difficulties as great as diligence ever surmounted. Like Tooke's volumes, it is however of little use to the mere English scholar. It can be read to advantage only by those who are acquainted with several other languages. The works of *Crombie* and *Coote* are more properly essays or dissertations, than elementary systems of grammar.

36. The number of English grammars has now become so very great, that not even a general idea of the comparative merits or defects of each can here be given. I have examined with some diligence all that I have had opportunity to obtain; but have heard of several which I have never yet seen. Whoever is curious to examine at large what has been published on this subject, and thus to qualify himself to judge the better of any new grammar, may easily make a collection of one or two hundred bearing different names. There are also many works not called grammars, from which our copyists have taken large portions of their compilations. Thus Murray confessedly copied from ten authors; five of whom are Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, Blair, and Campbell. Dr. Beattie, who acquired great celebrity as a teacher, poet, philosopher, and logician, was well skilled in grammar; but he treated the subject only in critical disquisitions, and not in any distinct elementary work adapted to general use. Sheridan and Walker, being lexicographers, confined themselves chiefly to orthography and pronunciation. Murray derived sundry principles from the writings of each; but the English Grammar prepared by the latter, was written, I think, several years later than Murray's. The learned doctors Blair and Campbell wrote on rhetoric, and not on the elementary parts of grammar. Of the two, the latter is by far the more accurate writer. Blair is fluent and easy, but he furnishes not a little false syntax; Campbell's *Philosophy of Rhetoric* is a very valuable treatise. To these, and five or six other authors whom I have noticed, was Lindley Murray "principally indebted for his materials." Thus far of the famous contributors to English grammar. The *Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory*, delivered at Harvard University by John Quincy Adams, and published in two octavo volumes in 1810, are such as do credit even to that great man; but they descend less to verbal criticism, and enter less into the peculiar province of the grammarian, than do most other works of a similar title.

37. Some of the most respectable authors or compilers of more general systems of English grammar for the use of schools, are the writer of the *British Grammar*, Bicknell, Buchanan, William Ward, Alexander Murray the schoolmaster, Mennye, Fisher, Lindley Murray, Penning, W. Allen, Grant, David Blair, Lennie, Guy, Churchill. To attempt any thing like a review or comparative estimate of these, would protract this introduction beyond all reasonable bounds; and still others would be excluded, which are perhaps better entitled to notice. Of mere modifiers and abridgers, the number is so great, and the merit or fame so little, that I will not trespass upon the reader's patience by any further mention of them or their works. Whoever takes an accurate and comprehensive view of the history and present state of this branch of learning, though he may not conclude, with Dr. Priestley, that it is premature to attempt a complete grammar of the language, can scarcely forbear to coincide with Dr. Barrow, in the opinion that among all the treatises heretofore produced no such grammar is found. "Some superfluities have been expunged, some mistakes have been rectified, and some obscurities have been cleared; still, however, that all the grammars used in our different schools, public as well as private, are disgraced by errors or defects, is a complaint as just as it is frequent and loud."--*Barrow's Essays*, p. 83.

38. Whether, in what I have been enabled to do, there will be found a remedy for this complaint, must be referred to the decision of others. Upon the probability of effecting this, I have been willing to stake some labour; how much, and with what merit, let the candid and discerning, when they shall have examined for themselves, judge. It is certain that we have hitherto had, of our language, no complete grammar. The need of such a work I suppose to be at this time in no small degree felt, especially by those who conduct our higher institutions of learning; and my ambition has been to produce one which might deservedly stand along side of

the Port-Royal Latin and Greek Grammars, or of the Grammaire des Grammaires of Girault Du Vivier. If this work is unworthy to aspire to such rank, let the patrons of English literature remember that the achievement of my design is still a desideratum. We surely have no other book which might, in any sense, have been called "*the Grammar of English Grammars*;" none, which, either by excellence, or on account of the particular direction of its criticism, might take such a name. I have turned the eyes of Grammar, in an especial manner, upon the conduct of her own household; and if, from this volume, the reader acquire a more just idea of *the grammar* which is displayed in *English grammars*, he will discover at least one reason for the title which has been bestowed upon the work. Such as the book is, I present it to the public, without pride, without self-seeking, and without anxiety: knowing that most of my readers will be interested in estimating it *justly*; that no true service, freely rendered to learning, can fail of its end; and that no achievement merits aught with Him who graciously supplies all ability. The opinions expressed in it have been formed with candour, and are offered with submission. If in any thing they are erroneous, there are those who can detect their faults. In the language of an ancient master, the earnest and assiduous *Despauter*, I invite the correction of the candid: "Nos quoque, quantumcunque diligentes, cum a candidis tum a lividis carpemur: a candidis interdum justè; quos oro, ut de erratis omnibus amicè me admoneant--erro nonnunquam quia homo sum."

GOOLD BROWN.

New York, 1836.

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

Grammar, as an art, is the power of reading, writing, and speaking correctly. As an acquisition, it is the essential skill of scholarship. As a study, it is the practical science which teaches the right use of language.

An English Grammar is a book which professes to explain the nature and structure of the English language; and to show, on just authority, what is, and what is not, good English.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR, in itself, is the art of reading, writing, and speaking the English language correctly. It implies, in the adept, such knowledge as enables him to avoid improprieties of speech; to correct any errors that may occur in literary compositions; and to parse, or explain grammatically, whatsoever is rightly written.

To read is to perceive what is written or printed, so as to understand the words, and be able to utter them with their proper sounds.

To write is to express words and thoughts by letters, or characters, made with a pen or other instrument.

To speak is to utter words orally, in order that they may be heard and understood.

Grammar, like every other liberal art, can be properly taught only by a regular analysis, or systematic elucidation, of its component parts or principles; and these parts or principles must be made known chiefly by means of definitions and examples, rules and exercises.

A perfect definition of any thing or class of things is such a description of it, as distinguishes that entire thing or class from every thing else, by briefly telling *what it is*.

An example is a particular instance or model, serving to prove or illustrate some given proposition or truth.

A rule of grammar is some law, more or less general, by which custom regulates and prescribes the right use of language.

An *exercise* is some technical performance required of the learner in order to bring his knowledge and skill into practice.

LANGUAGE, in the primitive sense of the term, embraced only vocal expression, or human speech uttered by the mouth; but after letters were invented to represent articulate sounds, language became twofold, *spoken* and *written*, so that the term, *language*, now signifies, *any series of sounds or letters formed into words and employed for the expression of thought*.

Of the composition of language we have also two kinds, *prose* and *verse*; the latter requiring a certain number and variety of syllables in each line, but the former being free from any such restraint.

The *least parts* of written language are letters; of spoken language, syllables; of language significant in each part, words; of language combining thought, phrases; of language subjoining sense, clauses; of language coördinating sense, members; of language completing sense, sentences.

A discourse, or narration, of any length, is but a series of sentences; which, when written, must be separated by the proper points, that the meaning and relation of all the words may be quickly and clearly perceived by the reader, and the whole be uttered as the sense requires.

In extended compositions, a sentence is usually less than a paragraph; a paragraph, less than a section; a section, less than a chapter; a chapter, less than a book; a book, less than a volume; and a volume, less than the entire work.

The common order of *literary division*, then, is; of a large work, into volumes; of volumes, into books; of books, into chapters; of chapters, into sections; of sections, into paragraphs; of paragraphs, into sentences; of sentences, into members; of members, into clauses; of clauses, into phrases; of phrases, into words; of words, into syllables; of syllables, into letters.

But it rarely happens that any one work requires the use of all these divisions; and we often assume some natural distinction and order of parts, naming each as we find it; and also subdivide into articles, verses, cantoes, stanzas, and other portions, as the nature of the subject suggests.

Grammar is divided into four parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

Orthography treats of letters, syllables, separate words, and spelling.

Etymology treats of the different *parts of speech*, with their classes and modifications.

Syntax treats of the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement of words in sentences.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In the Introduction to this work, have been taken many views of the study, or general science, of grammar; many notices of its history, with sundry criticisms upon its writers or critics; and thus language has often been presented to the reader's consideration, either as a whole, or with broader scope than belongs to the teaching of its particular forms. We come now to the work of *analyzing* our own tongue, and of laying down those special rules and principles which should guide us in the use of it, whether in speech or in writing. The author intends to dissent from other grammarians no more than they are found to dissent from truth and reason; nor will he expose their errors further than is necessary for the credit of the science and the information of the learner. A candid critic can have no satisfaction merely in finding fault with other men's

performances. But the facts are not to be concealed, that many pretenders to grammar have shown themselves exceedingly superficial in their knowledge, as well as slovenly in their practice; and that many vain composers of books have proved themselves *despisers* of this study, by the abundance of their inaccuracies, and the obviousness of their solecisms.

OBS. 2.--Some grammarians have taught that the word *language* is of much broader signification, than that which is given to it in the definition above. I confine it to speech and writing. For the propriety of this limitation, and against those authors who describe the thing otherwise, I appeal to the common sense of mankind. One late writer defines it thus: "LANGUAGE is *any means* by which one *person* communicates his *ideas* to *another*."--*Sanders's Spelling-Book*, p. 7. The following is the explanation of an other slack thinker: "One may, by speaking or by writing, (and sometimes *by motions*,) communicate his thoughts to others. *The process* by which this is done, is called LANGUAGE.--*Language is the expression* of thought *and feeling*."--*S. W. Clark's Practical Gram.*, p. 7. Dr. Webster goes much further, and says, "LANGUAGE, in its most extensive sense, is the instrument or means of communicating ideas *and affections* of the mind *and body*, from one *animal* to *another*. In this sense, *brutes possess the power of language*; for by various inarticulate sounds, they make known their wants, desires, and sufferings."--*Philosophical Gram.*, p. 11; *Improved Gram.*, p. 5. This latter definition the author of that vain book, "*the District School*," has adopted in his chapter on Grammar. Sheridan, the celebrated actor and orthoëpist, though he seems to confine language to the human species, gives it such an extension as to make words no necessary part of its essence. "The first thought," says he, "that would occur to every one, who had not properly considered the point, is, that language is composed of words. And yet, this is so far from being an adequate idea of language, that the point in which most men think its very essence to consist, is not even a necessary property of language. For language, in its full extent, means, any way or method whatsoever, by which *all that passes in the mind of one man*, may be manifested to another."--*Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution*, p. 129. Again: "I have already *shown*, that words are, in their own nature, *no essential part of language*, and are only considered so through custom."--*Ib.* p. 135.

OBS. 3.--According to S. Kirkham's notion, "LANGUAGE, in its most extensive sense, implies those signs by which *men and brutes*, communicate *to each other* their thoughts, affections and desires."--*Kirkham's English Gram.*, p. 16. Again: "*The language of brutes* consists in the use of those inarticulate sounds by which they express *their thoughts and affections*."--*Ib.* To me it seems a shameful abuse of speech, and a vile descent from the dignity of grammar, to make the voices of "*brutes*" any part of language, as taken in a literal sense. We might with far more propriety raise our conceptions of it to the spheres above, and construe literally the metaphors of David, who ascribes to the starry heavens, both "*speech*" and "*language*," "*voice*" and "*words*," daily "*uttered*" and everywhere "*heard*." See *Psalms* xix.

OBS. 4.--But, strange as it may seem, Kirkham, commencing his instructions with the foregoing definition of language, proceeds to divide it, agreeably to this notion, into two sorts, *natural* and *artificial*; and affirms that the former "is common both to man and brute," and that the language which is peculiar to man, the language which consists of *words*, is altogether an *artificial invention*: [83] thereby contradicting at once a host of the most celebrated grammarians and philosophers, and that without appearing to know it. But this is the less strange, since he immediately forgets his own definition and division of the subject, and as plainly contradicts himself. Without limiting the term at all, without excluding his fanciful "*language of brutes*," he says, on the next leaf, "*Language is conventional*, and not only *invented*, but, in its progressive advancement, *varied for purposes of practical convenience*. Hence it assumes *any and every form* which those who make use of it, choose to give it."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 18. This, though scarcely more rational than his "*natural language of men and brutes*," plainly annihilates that questionable section of grammatical science, whether brutal or human, by making all language a thing "*conventional*" and "*invented*." In short, it leaves no ground at all for any grammatical science of a positive character, because it resolves all forms of language into the irresponsible will of those who utter any words, sounds, or noises.

OBS. 5.--Nor is this gentleman more fortunate in his explanation of what may really be called language. On

one page, he says, "*Spoken language or speech*, is made up of articulate sounds uttered by the human voice."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 17. On the next, "The most important use of *that faculty called speech*, is, to convey our thoughts to others."--*Ib.*, p. 18. Thus the grammarian who, in the same short paragraph, seems to "defy the ingenuity of man to give his words any other meaning than that which he himself intends *them to express*," (*Ib.*, p. 19,) either writes so badly as to make any ordinary false syntax appear trivial, or actually conceives man to be the inventor of one of his own *faculties*. Nay, docs he not make man the contriver of that "natural language" which he possesses "in common with the brutes?" a language "*The meaning of which*," he says, "*all the different animals perfectly understand*?"--See his *Gram.*, p. 16. And if this notion again be true, does it not follow, that a horse knows perfectly well what horned cattle mean by their bellowing, or a flock of geese by their gabbling? I should not have noticed these things, had not the book which teaches them, been made popular by *a thousand* imposing attestations to its excellence and accuracy. For grammar has nothing at all to do with inarticulate voices, or the imaginary languages of *brutes*. It is scope enough for one science to explain all the languages, dialects, and speeches, that lay claim to *reason*. We need not enlarge the field, by descending

"To beasts, whom[84] God on their creation-day Created mute to all articulate sound."--*Milton*. [85]

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, syllables, separate words, and spelling.

CHAPTER I.

--OF LETTERS.

A *Letter* is an alphabetic character, which commonly represents some elementary sound of the human voice, some element of speech.

An elementary sound of the human voice, or an element of speech, is one of the simple sounds which compose a spoken language. The sound of a letter is commonly called its *power*: when any letter of a word is not sounded, it is said to be *silent* or *mute*. The letters in the English alphabet, are twenty-six; the simple or primary sounds which they represent, are about thirty-six or thirty-seven.

A knowledge of the letters consists in an acquaintance with these *four sorts of things*; their *names*, their *classes*, their *powers*, and their *forms*.

The letters are written, or printed, or painted, or engraved, or embossed, in an infinite variety of shapes and sizes; and yet are always *the same*, because their essential properties do not change, and their names, classes, and powers, are mostly permanent.

The following are some of the different sorts of types, or styles of letters, with which every reader should be early acquainted:--

1. The Roman: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.

2. The Italic: *A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.*

3. The Script: [Script: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.]

4. The Old English: [Old English: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.]

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A letter *consists* not in the figure only, or in the power only, but in the figure and power united; as an ambassador consists not in the man only, or in the commission only, but in the man commissioned. The figure and the power, therefore, are necessary to constitute the letter; and a name is as necessary, to call it by, teach it, or tell what it is. The *class* of a letter is determined by the nature of its power, or sound; as the ambassador is plenipotentiary or otherwise, according to the extent of his commission. To all but the deaf and dumb, written language is the representative of that which is spoken; so that, in the view of people in general, the powers of the letters are habitually identified with their sounds, and are conceived to be nothing else. Hence any given sound, or modification of sound, which all men can produce at pleasure, when arbitrarily associated with a written sign, or conventional character, constitutes what is called a *letter*. Thus we may produce the sounds of *a, e, o*, then, by a particular compression of the organs of utterance, modify them all, into *ba, be, bo*, or *fa, fe, fo*; and we shall see that *a, e*, and *o*, are letters of one sort, and *b* and *f* of another. By *elementary* or *articulate* sounds,[86] then, we mean not only the simple tones of the voice itself, but the modifying stops and turns which are given them in speech, and marked by letters: the real voices constituting vowels; and their modifications, consonants.

OBS. 2.--A mere mark to which no sound or power is ever given, cannot be a letter; though it may, like the marks used for punctuation, deserve a name and a place in grammar. Commas, semicolons, and the like, represent *silence*, rather than sounds, and are therefore not letters. Nor are the Arabic figures, which represent entire *words*, nor again any symbols standing for *things*, (as the astronomic marks for the sun, the moon, the planets,) to be confounded with letters; because the representative of any word or number, of any name or thing, differs widely in its power, from the sign of a simple elementary sound: i. e., from any constituent *part* of a written word. The first letter of a word or name does indeed sometimes stand for the whole, and is still a letter; but it is so, as being the first element of the word, and not as being the representative of the whole.

OBS. 3.--In their definitions of vowels and consonants, many grammarians have resolved letters into *sounds only*; as, "A Vowel is an articulate *sound*," &c.--"A Consonant is an articulate *sound*," &c.--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 7. But this confounding of the visible signs with the things which they signify, is very far from being a true account of either. Besides, letters combined are capable of a certain mysterious power which is independent of all sound, though speech, doubtless, is what they properly represent. In practice, almost all the letters may occasionally happen to be *silent*; yet are they not, in these cases, necessarily useless. The deaf and dumb also, to whom none of the letters express or represent sounds, may be taught to read and write understandingly. They even learn in some way to distinguish the accented from the unaccented syllables, and to have some notion of *quantity*, or of something else equivalent to it; for some of them, it is said, can compose verses according to the rules of prosody. Hence it would appear, that the powers of the letters are not, of necessity, identified with their sounds; the things being in some respect distinguishable, though the terms are commonly taken as synonymous. The fact is, that a word, whether spoken or written, is of itself *significant*, whether its corresponding form be known or not. Hence, in the one form, it may be perfectly intelligible to the illiterate, and in the other, to the educated deaf and dumb; while, to the learned who hear and speak, either form immediately suggests the other, with the meaning common to both.

OBS. 4.--Our knowledge of letters rises no higher than to the forms used by the ancient Hebrews and Phoenicians. Moses is supposed to have written in characters which were nearly the same as those called Samaritan, but his writings have come to us in an alphabet more beautiful and regular, called the Chaldee or Chaldaic, which is said to have been made by Ezra the scribe, when he wrote out a new copy of the law, after the rebuilding of the temple. Cadmus carried the Phoenician alphabet into Greece, where it was subsequently altered and enlarged. The small letters were not invented till about the seventh century of our era. The Latins, or Romans, derived most of their capitals from the Greeks; but their small letters, if they had any, were made afterwards among themselves. This alphabet underwent various changes, and received very great improvements, before it became that beautiful series of characters which we now use, under the name of *Roman letters*. Indeed these particular forms, which are now justly preferred by many nations, are said to have been adopted after the invention of printing. "The Roman letters were first used by Sweynheim and Pannartz, printers who settled at Rome, in 1467. The earliest work printed wholly in this character in England, is said to have been Lily's or Paul's Accidence, printed by Richard Pinson, 1518. The Italic letters were invented by Aldus Manutius at Rome, towards the close of the fifteenth century, and were first used in an edition of Virgil, in 1501."--*Constables Miscellany*, Vol. xx, p. 147. The Saxon alphabet was mostly Roman. Not more than one quarter of the letters have other forms. But the changes, though few, give to a printed page a very different appearance. Under William the Conqueror, this alphabet was superseded by the modern Gothic, Old English, or Black letter; which, in its turn, happily gave place to the present Roman. The Germans still use a type similar to the Old English, but not so heavy.

OBS. 5.--I have suggested that a true knowledge of the letters implies an acquaintance with their *names*, their *classes*, their *powers*, and their *forms*. Under these four heads, therefore, I shall briefly present what seems most worthy of the learner's attention at first, and shall reserve for the appendix a more particular account of these important elements. The most common and the most useful things are not those about which we are in general most inquisitive. Hence many, who think themselves sufficiently acquainted with the letters, do in fact know but very little about them. If a person is able to read some easy book, he is apt to suppose he has no more to learn respecting the letters; or he neglects the minute study of these elements, because he sees what

words they make, and can amuse himself with stories of things more interesting. But merely to understand common English, is a very small qualification for him who aspires to scholarship, and especially for a *teacher*. For one may do this, and even be a great reader, without ever being able to name the letters properly, or to pronounce such syllables as *ca, ce, ci, co, cu, cy*, without getting half of them wrong. No one can ever teach an art more perfectly than he has learned it; and if we neglect the *elements* of grammar, our attainments must needs be proportionately unsettled and superficial.

I. NAMES OF THE LETTERS. The *names* of the letters, as now commonly spoken and written in English, are *A, Bee, Cee, Dee, E, Eff, Gee, Aitch, I, Jay, Kay, Ell, Em, En, O, Pee, Kue, Ar, Ess, Tee, U, Vee, Double-u, Ex, Wy, Zee*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--With the learning and application of these names, our literary education begins; with a continual rehearsal of them in spelling, it is for a long time carried on; nor can we ever dispense with them, but by substituting others, or by ceasing to mention the things thus named. What is obviously indispensable, needs no proof of its importance. But I know not whether it has ever been noticed, that these names, like those of the days of the week, are worthy of particular distinction, for their own nature. They are words of a very peculiar kind, being nouns that are at once *both proper and common*. For, in respect to rank, character, and design, each letter is a thing strictly individual and identical--that is, it is ever one and the same; yet, in an other respect, it is a comprehensive sort, embracing individuals both various and numberless. Thus every B is a *b*, make it as you will; and can be nothing else than that same letter *b*, though you make it in a thousand different fashions, and multiply it after each pattern innumerable. Here, then, we see individuality combined at once with great diversity, and infinite multiplicity; and it is *to this combination*, that letters owe their wonderful power of transmitting thought. Their *names*, therefore, should always be written with capitals, as proper nouns, at least in the singular number; and should form the plural regularly, as ordinary appellatives. Thus: (if we adopt the names now most generally used in English schools:) *A, Aes; Bee, Bees; Cee, Cees; Dee, Dees; E, Ees; Eff, Effs; Gee, Gees; Aitch, Aitches; I, Ies; Jay, Jays; Kay, Kays; Ell, Ells; Em, Ems; En, Ens; O, Oes; Pee, Pees; Kue, Kues; Ar, Ars; Ess, Esses; Tee, Tees; U, Ues; Vee, Vees; Double-u, Double-ues; Ex, Exes; Wy, Wies; Zee, Zees*.

OBS. 2.--The names of the letters, as expressed in the modern languages, are mostly framed *with reference* to their powers, or sounds. Yet is there in English no letter of which the name is always identical with its power: for *A, E, I, O, and U*, are the only letters which can name themselves, and all these have other sounds than those which their names express. The simple powers of the other letters are so manifestly insufficient to form any name, and so palpable is the difference between the nature and the name of each, that did we not know how education has been trifled with, it would be hard to believe even Murray, when he says, "They are frequently confounded by writers on grammar. Observations and reasonings on the *name*, are often applied to explain the *nature* of a consonant; and by this means the student is led into error and perplexity."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 8. The confounding of names with the things for which they stand, implies, unquestionably, great carelessness in the use of speech, and great indistinctness of apprehension in respect to things; yet so common is this error, that Murray himself has many times fallen into it.[87] Let the learner therefore be on his guard, remembering that grammar, both in its study and in its practice, requires the constant exercise of a rational discernment. Those letters which name themselves, take for their names those sounds which they usually represent at the end of an accented syllable; thus the names, *A, E, I, O, U*, are uttered with the sounds given to the same letters in the first syllables of the other names, *Abel, Enoch, Isaac, Obed, Urim*; or in the first syllables of the common words, *paper, penal, pilot, potent, pupil*. The other letters, most of which can never be perfectly sounded alone, have names in which their powers are combined with other sounds more vocal; as, *Bee, Cee, Dee,--Ell, Em, En,--Jay, Kay, Kue*. But in this respect the terms *Aitch* and *Double-u* are irregular; because they have no obvious reference to the powers of the letters thus named.

OBS. 3.--Letters, like all other things, must be learned and spoken of *by their names*; nor can they be spoken

of otherwise; yet, as the simple characters are better known and more easily exhibited than their written names, the former are often substituted for the latter, and are read as the words for which they are assumed. Hence the orthography of these words has hitherto been left too much to mere fancy or caprice. Our dictionaries, by a strange oversight or negligence, do not recognize them as words; and writers have in general spelled them with very little regard to either authority or analogy. What they are, or ought to be, has therefore been treated as a trifling question: and, what is still more surprising, several authors of spelling-books make no mention at all of them; while others, here at the very threshold of instruction, teach falsely--giving "*he*" for *Aitch*, "*er*" for *Ar*, "*oo*" or "*uu*" for *Double-u*, "*ye*" for *Wy*, and writing almost all the rest improperly. So that many persons who think themselves well educated, would be greatly puzzled to name on paper these simple elements of all learning. Nay, there can be found a hundred men who can readily write the alphabetic names which were in use two or three thousand years ago in Greece or Palestine, for one who can do the same thing with propriety, respecting those which we now employ so constantly in English:[88] and yet the words themselves are as familiar to every school-boy's lips as are the characters to his eye. This fact may help to convince us, that *the grammar* of our language has never yet been sufficiently taught. Among all the particulars which constitute this subject, there are none which better deserve to be everywhere known, by proper and determinate names, than these prime elements of all written language.

OBS. 4.--Should it happen to be asked a hundred lustrums hence, what were the names of the letters in "the Augustan age of English literature," or in the days of William the Fourth and Andrew Jackson, I fear the learned of that day will be as much at a loss for an answer, as would most of our college tutors now, were they asked, by what series of names the Roman youth were taught to spell. Might not Quintilian or Varro have obliged many, by recording these? As it is, we are indebted to Priscian, a grammarian of the sixth century, for almost all we know about them. But even the information which may be had, on this point, has been strangely overlooked by our common Latin grammarians.[89] What, but the greater care of earlier writers, has made the Greek names better known or more important than the Latin? In every nation that is not totally illiterate, custom must have established for the letters a certain set of names, which are *the only true ones*, and which are of course to be preferred to such as are local or unauthorized. In this, however, as in other things, use may sometimes vary, and possibly improve; but when its decisions are clear, no feeble reason should be allowed to disturb them. Every parent, therefore, who would have his children instructed to read and write the English language, should see that in the first place they learn to name the letters as they are commonly named in English. A Scotch gentleman of good education informs me, that the names of the letters, as he first learned them in a school in his own country, were these: "A, Ib, Ec, Id, E, Iff, Ig, Ich, I, Ij, Ik, Ill, Im, In, O, Ip, Kue, Ir, Iss, It, U, Iv, Double-u, Ix, Wy, Iz;" but that in the same school the English names are now used. It is to be hoped, that all teachers will in time abandon every such local usage, and name the letters *as they ought to be named*; and that the day will come, in which the regular English *orthography* of these terms, shall be steadily preferred, ignorance of it be thought a disgrace, and the makers of school-books feel no longer at liberty to alter names that are a thousand times better known than their own.

OBS. 5.--It is not in respect to their *orthography* alone, that these first words in literature demand inquiry and reflection: the *pronunciation* of some of them has often been taught erroneously, and, with respect to three or four of them, some writers have attempted to make an entire change from the customary forms which I have recorded. Whether the name of the first letter should be pronounced "*Aye*," as it is in England, "*Ah*," as it is in Ireland, or "*Aw*," as it is in Scotland, is a question which Walker has largely discussed, and clearly decided in favour of the first sound; and this decision accords with the universal practice of the schools in America. It is remarkable that this able critic, though he treated minutely of the letters, naming them all in the outset of his "*Principles*" subsequently neglected the names of them all, except the first and the last. Of *Zee*, (which has also been called *Zed*, *Zad*, *Izzard*, *Uzzard*, *Izzet*, and *Iz*,)[90] he says, "Its common name is *izzard*, which Dr. Johnson explains into *s hard*; if, however, this is the meaning, it is a gross misnomer; for the *z* is not the hard, but the soft *s*:[91] but as it has a less sharp, and therefore not so audible a sound, it is not impossible *but* it may mean *s surd*. *Zed*, borrowed from the French, is the more fashionable name of this letter; but, in my opinion, *not to be admitted, because the names of the letters ought to have no diversity*."--Walker's *Principles*, No. 483. It is true, the name of a letter ought to be one, and in no respect diverse; but where diversity has

already obtained, and become firmly rooted in custom, is it to be obviated by insisting upon what is old-fashioned, awkward, and inconvenient? Shall the better usage give place to the worse? Uniformity cannot be so reached. In this country, both *Zed* and *Izzard*, as well as the worse forms *Zad* and *Uzzard*, are now fairly superseded by the softer and better term *Zee*; and whoever will spell aloud, with each of these names, a few such words as *dizzy*, *mizzen*, *gizzard*, may easily perceive why none of the former can ever be brought again into use. The other two, *Iz* and *Izzet*, being localisms, and not authorized English, I give up all six; *Zed* to the French, and the rest to oblivion.

OBS. 6.--By way of apology for noticing the name of the first letter, Walker observes, "If a diversity of names to vowels did not confound us in our spelling, or declaring to each other the component letters of a word, it would be entirely needless to enter into *so trifling a question* as the mere name of a letter; but when we find ourselves unable to convey signs to each other on account of this diversity of names, and that words themselves are endangered by an improper utterance of their component parts, it seems highly incumbent on us to attempt a uniformity in this point, which, insignificant as it may seem, is undoubtedly the foundation of a just and regular pronunciation."--*Dict.*, under *A*. If diversity in this matter is so perplexing, what shall we say to those who are attempting innovations without assigning reasons, or even pretending authority? and if a knowledge of these names is the basis of a just pronunciation, what shall we think of him who will take no pains to ascertain how he ought to speak and write them? He who pretends to teach the proper fashion of speaking and writing, cannot deal honestly, if ever he silently prefer a suggested improvement, to any established and undisturbed usage of the language; for, in grammar, no individual authority can be a counterpoise to general custom. The best usage can never be that which is little known, nor can it be well ascertained and taught by him who knows little. Inquisitive minds are ever curious to learn the nature, origin, and causes of things; and that instruction is the most useful, which is best calculated to gratify this rational curiosity. This is my apology for dwelling so long upon the present topic.

OBS. 7.--The names originally given to the letters were not mere notations of sound, intended solely to express or make known the powers of the several characters then in use; nor ought even the modern names of our present letters, though formed with special reference to their sounds, to be considered such. Expressions of mere sound, such as the notations in a pronouncing dictionary, having no reference to what is meant by the sound, do not constitute words at all; because they are not those acknowledged signs to which a meaning has been attached, and are consequently without that significance which is an essential property of words. But, in every language, there must be a series of sounds by which the alphabetical characters are commonly known in speech; and which, as they are the acknowledged names of these particular objects, must be entitled to a place among *the words* of the language. It is a great error to judge otherwise; and a greater to make it a "trifling question" in grammar, whether a given letter shall be called by one name or by an other. Who shall say that *Daleth*, *Delta*, and *Dee*, are not three *real words*, each equally important in the language to which it properly belongs? Such names have always been in use wherever literature has been cultivated; and as the forms and powers of the letters have been changed by the nations, and have become different in different languages, there has necessarily followed a change of the names. For, whatever inconvenience scholars may find in the diversity which has thence arisen, to name these elements in a set of foreign terms, inconsistent with the genius of the language to be learned, would surely be attended with a tenfold greater. We derived our letters, and their names too, from the Romans; but this is no good reason why the latter should be spelled and pronounced as we suppose they were spelled and pronounced in Rome.

OBS. 8.--The names of the twenty-two letters in Hebrew, are, without dispute, proper *words*; for they are not only significant of the letters thus named, but have in general, if not in every instance, some other meaning in that language. Thus the mysterious ciphers which the English reader meets with, and wonders over, as he reads the 119th Psalm, may be resolved, according to some of the Hebrew grammars, as follows:--

[Hebrew: Aleph] Aleph, A, an ox, or a leader; [Hebrew: Beth] Beth, Bee, house; [Hebrew: Gimel] Gimel, Gee, a camel; [Hebrew: Dalet] Daleth, Dee, a door; [Hebrew: he] He, E, she, or behold; [Hebrew: vav] Vau, U, a hook, or a nail; [Hebrew: zain] Zain, Zee, armour; [Hebrew: het] Cheth, or Heth, Aitch, a hedge;

[Hebrew: tet] Teth, Tee, a serpent, or a scroll; [Hebrew: jod] Jod, or Yod, I, or Wy, a hand shut; [Hebrew: kaf] Caph, Cee, a hollow hand, or a cup; [Hebrew: lamed] Lamed, Ell, an ox-goad; [Hebrew: mem] Mem, Em, a stain, or spot; [Hebrew: nun] Nun, En, a fish, or a snake; [Hebrew: samekh] Samech, Ess, a basis, or support; [Hebrew: ayin] Ain, or Oin, O, an eye, or a well; [Hebrew: pe] Pe, Pee, a lip, or mouth; [Hebrew: tsadi] Tzaddi, or Tsadhe, Tee-zee, (i. e. tz, or ts,) a hunter's pole; [Hebrew: qof] Koph, Kue, or Kay, an ape; [Hebrew: resh] Resch, or Resh, Ar, a head; [Hebrew: shin] Schin, or Sin, Ess-aitch, or Ess, a tooth; [Hebrew: tav] Tau, or Thau, Tee, or Tee-aitch, a cross, or mark.

These English names of the Hebrew letters are written with much less uniformity than those of the Greek, because there has been more dispute respecting their powers. This is directly contrary to what one would have expected; since the Hebrew names are words originally significant of other things than the letters, and the Greek are not. The original pronunciation of both languages is admitted to be lost, or involved in so much obscurity that little can be positively affirmed about it; and yet, where least was known, grammarians have produced the most diversity; aiming at disputed sounds in the one case, but generally preferring a correspondence of letters in the other.

OBS. 9.--The word *alphabet* is derived from the first two names in the following series. The Greek letters are twenty-four; which are formed, named, and sounded, thus:--

[Greek: A a], Alpha, a; [Greek: B b], Beta, b; [Greek: G g], Gamma, g hard; [Greek: D d], Delta, d; [Greek: E e], Epsilon, e short; [Greek: Z z], Zeta, z; [Greek: Æ æ], Eta, e long; [Greek: TH Th th], Theta, th; [Greek: I i], Iota, i; [Greek: K k], Kappa, k; [Greek: L l], Lambda, l; [Greek: M m], Mu, m; [Greek: N n], Nu, n; [Greek: X x], Xi, x; [Greek: O o], Omicron, o short; [Greek: P p], Pi, p; [Greek: R r] Rho, r; [Greek: S s s], Sigma, s; [Greek: T t], Tau, t; [Greek: Y y], Upsilon, u; [Greek: PH ph], Phi, ph; [Greek: CH ch], Chi, ch; [Greek: PS ps], Psi, ps; [Greek: O o], Omega, o long.

Of these names, our English dictionaries explain the first and the last; and Webster has defined *Iota*, and *Zeta*, but without reference to the meaning of the former in Greek. *Beta*, *Delta*, *Lambda*, and perhaps some others, are also found in the etymologies or definitions of Johnson and Webster, both of whom spell the word *Lambda* and its derivative *lambdoidal* without the silent *b*, which is commonly, if not always, inserted by the authors of our Greek grammars, and which Worcester, more properly, retains.

OBS. 10.--The reader will observe that the foregoing names, whether Greek or Hebrew, are in general much less simple than those which our letters now bear; and if he has ever attempted to spell aloud in either of those languages, he cannot but be sensible of the great advantage which was gained when to each letter there was given a short name, expressive, as ours mostly are, of its ordinary power. This improvement appears to have been introduced by the Romans, whose names for the letters were even more simple than our own. But so negligent in respect to them have been the Latin grammarians, both ancient and modern, that few even of the learned can tell what they really were in that language; or how they differed, either in orthography or sound, from those of the English or the French, the Hebrew or the Greek. Most of them, however, may yet be ascertained from Priscian, and some others of note among the ancient philologists; so that by taking from later authors the names of those letters which were not used in old times, we can still furnish an entire list, concerning the accuracy of which there is not much room to dispute. It is probable that in the ancient pronunciation of Latin, *a* was commonly sounded as in *father*; *e* like the English *a*; *i* mostly like *e* long; *y* like *i* short; *c* generally and *g* always hard, as in *come* and *go*. But, as the original, native, or just pronunciation of a language is not necessary to an understanding of it when written, the existing nations have severally, in a great measure, accommodated themselves, in their manner of reading this and other ancient tongues.

OBS. 11.--As the Latin language is now printed, its letters are twenty-five. Like the French, it has all that belong to the English alphabet, except the *Double-u*. But, till the first Punic war, the Romans wrote C for G, and doubtless gave it the power as well as the place of the Gamma or Gimel. It then seems to have slid into K; but they used it also for S, as we do now. The ancient Saxons, generally pronounced C as K, but sometimes as

Ch. Their G was either guttural, or like our Y. In some of the early English grammars the name of the latter is written *Ghee*. The letter F, when first invented, was called, from its shape, Digamma, and afterwards Ef. J, when it was first distinguished from I, was called by the Hebrew name Jod, and afterwards Je. V, when first distinguished from U, was called Vau, then Va, then Ve. Y, when the Romans first borrowed it from the Greeks, was called Ypsilon; and Z, from the same source, was called Zeta; and, as these two letters were used only in words of Greek origin, I know not whether they ever received from the Romans any shorter names. In Schneider's Latin Grammar, the letters are named in the following manner; except Je and Ve, which are omitted by this author: "A, Be, Ce, De, E, Ef, Ge, Ha, I, [Je,] Ka, El, Em, En, O, Pe, Cu, Er, Es, Te, U, [Ve,] Ix, Ypsilon, Zeta." And this I suppose to be the most proper way of writing their names *in Latin*, unless we have sufficient authority for shortening Ypsilon into Y, sounded as short *i*, and for changing Zeta into Ez.

OBS. 12.--In many, if not in all languages, the five vowels, A, E, I, O, U, name themselves; but they name themselves differently to the ear, according to the different ways of uttering them in different languages. And as the name of a consonant necessarily requires one or more vowels, that also may be affected in the same manner. But in every language there should be a known way both of writing and of speaking every name in the series; and that, if there is nothing to hinder, should be made conformable to *the genius of the language*. I do not say that the names above can be regularly declined in Latin; but in English it is as easy to speak of two Dees as of two trees, of two Kays as of two days, of two Exes as of two foxes, of two Effs as of two skiffs; and there ought to be no more difficulty about the correct way of writing the word in the one case, than in the other. In Dr. Sam. Prat's Latin Grammar, (an elaborate octavo, all Latin, published in London, 1722,) nine of the consonants are reckoned mutes; b, c, d, g, p, q, t, j, and v; and eight, semivowels; f, l, m, n, r, s, x, z. "All the mutes," says this author, "are named by placing *e* after them; as, be, ce, de, ge, except *q*, which ends in *u*." See p. 8. "The semivowels, beginning with *e*, end in themselves; as, ef, *ach*, el, em, en, er, es, *ex*, (or, as Priscian will have it, *ix*,) *eds*." See p. 9. This mostly accords with the names given in the preceding paragraph; and so far as it does not, I judge the author to be wrong. The reader will observe that the Doctor's explanation is neither very exact nor quite complete: K is a mute which is not enumerated, and the rule would make the name of it *Ke*, and not *Ka*;--H is not one of his eight semivowels, nor does the name *Ach* accord with his rule or seem like a Latin word;--the name of Z, according to his principle, would be *Ez* and not "*Eds*," although the latter may better indicate the *sound* which was then given to this letter.

OBS. 13.--If the history of these names exhibits diversity, so does that of almost all other terms; and yet there is some way of writing every word with correctness, and correctness tends to permanence. But Time, that establishes authority, destroys it also, when he fairly sanctions newer customs. To all names worthy to be known, it is natural to wish a perpetual uniformity; but if any one thinks the variableness of these to be peculiar, let him open the English Bible of the fourteenth century, and read a few verses, observing the names. For instance: "Forsothe whanne *Eroude* was to bringynge forth hym, in that nigth *Petir* was slepyng bitwixe tweyno knytis."--*Dedis*, (i. e., *Acts*,) xii, 6. "*Crist Ihesu* that is to demynge the quyke and deed."--2 *Tim.*, iv, 1. Since this was written for English, our language has changed much, and at the same time acquired, by means of the press, some aids to stability. I have recorded above the *true* names of the letters, as they are now used, with something of their history; and if there could be in human works any thing unchangeable, I should wish, (with due deference to all schemers and fault-finders,) that these names might remain the same forever.

OBS. 14.--If any change is desirable in our present names of the letters, it is that we may have a shorter and simpler term in stead of *Double-u*. But can we change this well known name? I imagine it would be about as easy to change *Alpha*, *Upsilon*, or *Omega*; and perhaps it would be as useful. Let Dr. Webster, or any defender of his spelling, try it. He never named the *English* letters rightly; long ago discarded the term *Double-u*; and is not yet tired of his experiment with "*oo*;" but thinks still to make the vowel sound of this letter its name. Yet he writes his new name wrong; has no authority for it but his own; and is, most certainly, reprehensible for the *innovation*. [92] If W is to be named as a vowel, it ought to *name itself*, as other vowels do, and not to take *two Oes* for its written name. Who that knows what it is, to name a letter, can think of naming *w* by double *o*? That it is possible for an ingenious man to misconceive this simple affair of naming the letters, may appear not only from the foregoing instance, but from the following quotation: "Among the

thousand mismanagements of literary instruction, there is at the outset in the hornbook, *the pretence to represent elementary sounds* by syllables composed of two or more elements; as, *Be, Kay, Zed, Double-u, and Aitch*. These words are used in infancy, and through life, as *simple elements* in the process of synthetic spelling. If the definition of a *consonant* was made by the master from the practice of the child, it might suggest pity for the pedagogue, but should not make us forget the realities of nature."--*Dr. Push, on the Philosophy of the Human Voice*, p. 52. This is a strange allegation to come from such a source. If I bid a boy spell the word *why*, he says, "Double-u, Aitch, Wy, *hwi*;" and knows that he has spelled and pronounced the word correctly. But if he conceives that the five syllables which form the three words, *Double-u, and Aitch, and Wy*, are the three simple sounds which he utters in pronouncing the word *why*, it is not because the hornbook, or the teacher of the hornbook, ever made any such blunder or "pretence;" but because, like some great philosophers, he is capable of misconceiving very plain things. Suppose he should take it into his head to follow Dr. Webster's books, and to say, "Oo, he, ye, *hwi*;" who, but these doctors, would imagine, that such spelling was supported either by "the realities of nature," or by the authority of custom? I shall retain both the old "definition of a consonant," and the usual names of the letters, notwithstanding the contemptuous pity it may excite in the minds of *such* critics.

II. CLASSES OF THE LETTERS.

The letters are divided into two general classes, *vowels* and *consonants*.

A *vowel* is a letter which forms a perfect sound when uttered alone; as, *a, e, o*.

A *consonant* is a letter which cannot be perfectly uttered till joined to a vowel; as, *b, c, d*. [93]

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*. All the other letters are consonants.

W or *y* is called a consonant when it precedes a vowel heard in the same syllable; as in *wine, twine, whine; ye, yet, youth*: in all other cases, these letters are vowels; as in *Yssel, Ystadt, yttria; newly, dewy, eyebrow*.

CLASSES OF CONSONANTS.

The consonants are divided, with respect to their powers, into *semivowels* and *mutes*.

A *semivowel* is a consonant which can be imperfectly sounded without a vowel, so that at the end of a syllable its sound may be protracted; as, *l, n, z*, in *al, an, az*.

A *mute* is a consonant which cannot be sounded at all without a vowel, and which at the end of a syllable suddenly stops the breath; as, *k, p, t*, in *ak, ap, at*.

The semivowels are, *f, h, j, l, m, n, r, s, v, w, x, y, z*, and *c* and *g* soft: but *w* or *y* at the end of a syllable, is a vowel; and the sound of *c, f, g, h, j, s*, or *x*, can be protracted only as an *aspirate*, or strong breath.

Four of the semivowels,--*l, m, n*, and *r*,--are termed *liquids*, on account of the fluency of their sounds; and four others,--*v, w, y*, and *z*,--are likewise more vocal than the aspirates.

The mutes are eight;--*b, d, k, p, q, t*, and *c* and *g* hard: three of these,--*k, q*, and *c* hard,--sound exactly alike: *b, d*, and *g* hard, stop the voice less suddenly than the rest.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The foregoing division of the letters is of very great antiquity, and, in respect to its principal features sanctioned by almost universal authority; yet if we examine it minutely, either with reference to the various

opinions of the learned, or with regard to the essential differences among the things of which it speaks, it will not perhaps be found in all respects indisputably certain. It will however be of use, as a basis for some subsequent rules, and as a means of calling the attention of the learner to the manner in which he utters the sounds of the letters. A knowledge of about three dozen different elementary sounds is implied in the faculty of speech. The power of producing these sounds with distinctness, and of adapting them to the purposes for which language is used, constitutes perfection of utterance. Had we a perfect alphabet, consisting of one symbol, and only one, for each elementary sound; and a perfect method of spelling, freed from silent letters, and precisely adjusted to the most correct pronunciation of words; the process of learning to read would doubtless be greatly facilitated. And yet any attempt toward such a reformation, any change short of the introduction of some entirely new mode of writing, would be both unwise and impracticable. It would involve our laws and literature in utter confusion, because pronunciation is the least permanent part of language; and if the orthography of words were conformed entirely to this standard, their origin and meaning would, in many instances, be soon lost. We must therefore content ourselves to learn languages as they are, and to make the best use we can of our present imperfect system of alphabetic characters; and we may be the better satisfied to do this, because the deficiencies and redundancies of this alphabet are not yet so well ascertained, as to make it certain what a perfect one would be.

OBS. 2.--In order to have a right understanding of the letters, it is necessary to enumerate, as accurately as we can, the elementary *sounds* of the language; and to attend carefully to the manner in which these sounds are enunciated, as well as to the characters by which they are represented. The most unconcerned observer cannot but perceive that there are certain differences in the sounds, as well as in the shapes, of the letters; and yet under what heads they ought severally to be classed, or how many of them will fall under some particular name, it may occasionally puzzle a philosopher to tell. The student must consider what is proposed or asked, use his own senses, and judge for himself. With our lower-case alphabet before him, he can tell by his own eye, which are the long letters, and which the short ones; so let him learn by his own ear, which are the vowels, and which, the consonants. The processes are alike simple; and, if he be neither blind nor deaf, he can do both about equally well. Thus he may know for a certainty, that *a* is a short letter, and *b* a long one; the former a vowel, the latter a consonant: and so of others. Yet as he may doubt whether *t* is a long letter or a short one, so he may be puzzled to say whether *w* and *y*, as heard in *we* and *ye*, are vowels or consonants: but neither of these difficulties should impair his confidence in any of his other decisions. If he attain by observation and practice a clear and perfect pronunciation of the letters, he will be able to class them for himself with as much accuracy as he will find in books.

OBS. 3.--Grammarians have generally agreed that every letter is either a vowel or a consonant; and also that there are among the latter some semivowels, some mutes, some aspirates, some liquids, some sharps, some flats, some labials, some dentals, some nasals, some palatals, and perhaps yet other species; but in enumerating the letters which belong to these several classes, they disagree so much as to make it no easy matter to ascertain what particular classification is best supported by their authority. I have adopted what I conceive to be the best authorized, and at the same time the most intelligible. He that dislikes the scheme, may do better, if he can. But let him with modesty determine what sort of discoveries may render our ancient authorities questionable. Aristotle, three hundred and thirty years before Christ, divided the Greek letters into *vowels*, *semivowels*, and *mutes*, and declared that no syllable could be formed without a vowel. In the opinion of some neoterics, it has been reserved to our age, to detect the fallacy of this. But I would fain believe that the Stagirite knew as well what he was saying, as did Dr. James Rush, when, in 1827, he declared the doctrine of vowels and consonants to be "a misrepresentation." The latter philosopher resolves the letters into "*tonics*, *subtonics*, and *atonic*;" and avers that "consonants alone may form syllables." Indeed, I cannot but think the ancient doctrine better. For, to say that "consonants alone may form syllables," is as much as to say that consonants are not consonants, but vowels! To be consistent, the attempters of this reformation should never speak of vowels or consonants, semivowels or mutes; because they judge the terms inappropriate, and the classification absurd. They should therefore adhere strictly to their "*tonics*, *subtonics*, and *atonic*;" which classes, though apparently the same as vowels, semivowels, and mutes, are better adapted to their new and peculiar division of these elements. Thus, by reforming both language and philosophy at once, they may make

what they will of either!

OBS. 4.--Some teach that *w* and *y* are always vowels: conceiving the former to be equivalent to *oo*, and the latter to *i* or *e*. Dr. Lowth says, "*Y* is always a vowel," and "*W* is either a vowel or a diphthong." Dr. Webster supposes *w* to be always "a vowel, a simple sound;" but admits that, "At the beginning of words, *y* is called an *articulation* or *consonant*, and with some propriety perhaps, as it brings the root of the tongue in close contact with the lower part of the palate, and nearly in the position to which the close *g* brings it."--*American Dict.*, Octavo. But I follow Wallis, Brightland, Johnson, Walker, Murray, Worcester, and others, in considering both of them sometimes vowels and sometimes consonants. They are consonants at the beginning of words in English, because their sounds take the article *a*, and not *an*, before them; as, *a wall*, *a yard*, and not, *an wall*, *an yard*. But *oo* or the sound of *e*, requires *an*, and not *a*; as, *an eel*, *an oozy bog*. [94] At the end of a syllable we know they are vowels; but at the beginning, they are so squeezed in their pronunciation, as to follow a vowel without any hiatus, or difficulty of utterance; as, "*O worthy youth! so young, so wise!*"

OBS. 5.--Murray's rule, "*W* and *y* are consonants when they begin a word or syllable, but in every other situation they are vowels," which is found in Comly's book, *Kirkham's*, Merchant's, Ingersoll's, Fisk's. Hart's, Hiley's, Alger's, Bullions's, Pond's, S. Putnam's, Weld's, and in sundry other grammars, is favourable to my doctrine, but too badly conceived to be quoted here as authority. It *undesignedly* makes *w* a consonant in *wine*, and a vowel in *twine*; and *y* a consonant when it *forms* a syllable, as in *dewy*: for a letter that *forms* a syllable, "begins" it. But *Kirkham* has lately learned his letters anew; and, supposing he had Dr. Rush on his side, has philosophically taken their names for their sounds. He now calls *y* a "*diphthong*." But he is wrong here by his own showing: he should rather have called it a *triphthong*. He says, "By pronouncing in a very deliberate and perfectly natural manner, the letter *y*, (which is a *diphthong*,) the *unpractised* student will perceive, that the sound produced, is compound; being formed, at its opening, of the obscure sound of *oo* as heard in *oo-ze*, which sound rapidly slides into that of *i*, and then advances to that of *ee* as heard in *e-ve*, and on which it gradually passes off into silence."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 75. Thus the "unpractised student" is taught that *b-y* spells *bwy*; or, if pronounced "very deliberately, *boo-i-ee!*" Nay, this grammarist makes *b*, not a labial mute, as Walker, Webster, Cobb, and others, have called it, but a nasal subtonic, or semivowel. He delights in protracting its "guttural murmur;" perhaps, in assuming its name for its sound; and, having proved, that "consonants are capable of forming syllables," finds no difficulty in mouthing this little monosyllable *by* into *b-oo-i-ee!* In this way, it is the easiest thing in the world, for such a man to outface Aristotle, or any other divider of the letters; for he *makes* the sounds by which he judges. "Boy," says the teacher of *Kirkham's Elocution*, "describe the protracted sound of *y*."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 110. The pupil may answer, "That letter, sir, has no longer or more complex sound, than what is heard in the word *eye*, or in the vowel *i*; but the book which I study, describes it otherwise. I know not whether I can make you understand it, but I will *tr-oo-i-ee.*" If the word *try*, which the author uses as an example, does not exhibit his "protracted sound of *y*," there is no word that does: the sound is a mere fiction, originating in strange ignorance.

OBS. 6.--In the large print above, I have explained the principal classes of the letters, but not all that are spoken of in books. It is proper to inform the learner that the *sharp* consonants are *t*, and all others after which our contracted preterits and participles require that *d* should be sounded like *t*; as in the words *faced*, *reached*, *stuffed*, *laughed*, *triumphed*, *croaked*, *cracked*, *houghed*, *reaped*, *nipped*, *piqued*, *missed*, *wished*, *earthed*, *betrothed*, *fixed*. The *flat* or *smooth* consonants are *d*, and all others with which the proper sound of *d* may be united; as in the words, *daubed*, *judged*, *hugged*, *thronged*, *sealed*, *filled*, *aimed*, *crammed*, *pained*, *planned*, *feared*, *marred*, *soothed*, *loved*, *dozed*, *buzzed*. The *labials* are those consonants which are articulated chiefly by the lips; among which, Dr. Webster reckons *b*, *f*, *m*, *p*, and *v*. But Dr. Rush says, *b* and *m* are nasals, the latter, "purely nasal." [95] The *dentals* are those consonants which are referred to the teeth; the *nasals* are those which are affected by the nose; and the *palatals* are those which compress the palate, as *k* and hard *g*. But these last-named classes are not of much importance; nor have I thought it worth while to notice *minutely* the opinions of writers respecting the others, as whether *h* is a semivowel, or a mute, or neither.

OBS. 7.--The Cherokee alphabet, which was invented in 1821, by See-quo-yah, or George Guess, an

ingenious but wholly illiterate Indian, contains eighty-five letters, or characters. But the sounds of the language are much fewer than ours; for the characters represent, not simple tones and articulations, but *syllabic sounds*, and this number is said to be sufficient to denote them all. But the different syllabic sounds in our language amount to some thousands. I suppose, from the account, that *See-quo-yah* writes his name, in his own language, with three letters; and that characters so used, would not require, and probably would not admit, such a division as that of vowels and consonants. One of the Cherokees, in a letter to the American Lyceum, states, that a knowledge of this mode of writing is so easily acquired, that one who understands and speaks the language, "can learn to read in a day; and, indeed," continues the writer, "I have known some to acquire the art in a single evening. It is only necessary to learn the different sounds of the characters, to be enabled to read at once. In the English language, we must not only first learn the letters, but to spell, before reading; but in Cherokee, all that is required, is, to learn the letters; for they have *syllabic sounds*, and by connecting different ones together, a word is formed: in which there is no art. All who understand the language can do so, and both read and write, so soon as they can learn to trace with their fingers the forms of the characters. I suppose that more than one half of the Cherokees can read their own language, and are thereby enabled to acquire much valuable information, with which they otherwise would never have been blessed."--*W. S. Coodey*, 1831.

OBS. 8.--From the foregoing account, it would appear that the Cherokee language is a very peculiar one: its words must either be very few, or the proportion of polysyllables very great. The characters used in China and Japan, stand severally for *words*; and their number is said to be not less than seventy thousand; so that the study of a whole life is scarcely sufficient to make a man thoroughly master of them. Syllabic writing is represented by Dr. Blair as a great improvement upon the Chinese method, and yet as being far inferior to that which is properly *alphabetic*, like ours. "The first step, in this new progress," says he, "was the invention of an alphabet of syllables, which probably preceded the invention of an alphabet of letters, among some of the ancient nations; and which is said to be retained to this day, in Ethiopia, and some countries of India. By fixing upon a particular mark, or character, for every syllable in the language, the number of characters, necessary to be used in writing, was reduced within a much smaller compass than the number of words in the language. Still, however, the number of characters was great; and must have continued to render both reading and writing very laborious arts. Till, at last, some happy genius arose, and tracing the sounds made by the human voice, to their most simple elements, reduced them to a very few *vowels and consonants*; and, by affixing to each of these, the signs which we now call letters, taught men how, by their combinations, to put in writing all the different words, or combinations of sound, which they employed in speech. By being reduced to this simplicity, the art of writing was brought to its highest state of perfection; and, in this state, we now enjoy it in all the countries of Europe."--*Blair's Rhetoric*, Lect. VII, p. 68.

OBS. 9.--All certain knowledge of the sounds given to the letters by Moses and the prophets having been long ago lost, a strange dispute has arisen, and been carried on for centuries, concerning this question, "Whether the Hebrew letters are, or are not, *all consonants*:" the vowels being supposed by some to be suppressed and understood; and not written, except by *points* of comparatively late invention. The discussion of such a question does not properly belong to English grammar; but, on account of its curiosity, as well as of its analogy to some of our present disputes, I mention it. Dr. Charles Wilson says, "After we have sufficiently known the figures and names of the letters, the next step is, to learn to enunciate or to pronounce them, so as to produce articulate sounds. On this subject, which appears at first sight very plain and simple, numberless contentions and varieties of opinion meet us at the threshold. From the earliest period of the invention of written characters to represent human language, however more or less remote that time may be, it seems absolutely certain, that the distinction of letters into *vowels and consonants* must have obtained. All the speculations of the Greek grammarians assume this as a first principle." Again: "I beg leave only to premise this observation, that I absolutely and unequivocally deny the position, that all the letters of the Hebrew alphabet are consonants; and, after the most careful and minute inquiry, give it as my opinion, that of the twenty-two letters of which the Hebrew alphabet consists, five are vowels and seventeen are consonants. The five vowels by name are, Aleph, He, Vau, Yod, and Ain."--*Wilson's Heb. Gram.*, pp. 6 and 8.

III. POWERS OF THE LETTERS.

The powers of the letters are properly those elementary sounds which their figures are used to represent; but letters formed into words, are capable of communicating thought independently of sound. The simple elementary sounds of any language are few, commonly not more than *thirty-six*;^[96] but they may be variously *combined*, so as to form words innumerable. Different vowel sounds, or vocal elements, are produced by opening the mouth differently, and placing the tongue in a peculiar manner for each; but the voice may vary in loudness, pitch, or time, and still utter the same vowel power.

The *vowel sounds* which form the basis of the English language, and which ought therefore to be perfectly familiar to every one who speaks it, are those which are heard at the beginning of the words, *ate, at, ah, all, eel, ell, isle, ill, old, on, ooze, use, us*, and that of *u* in *bull*.

In the formation of syllables, some of these fourteen primary sounds may be joined together, as in *ay, oil, out, owl*; and all of them may be preceded or followed by certain motions and positions of the lips and tongue, which will severally convert them into other terms in speech. Thus the same essential sounds may be changed into a new series of words by an *f*; as, *fate, fat, far, fall, feel, fell, file, fill, fold, fond, fool, fuse, fuss, full*. Again, into as many more with a *p*; as, *pate, pat, par, pall, peel, pell, pile, pill, pole, pond, pool, pule, purl, pull*. Each of the vowel sounds may be variously expressed by letters. About half of them are sometimes words: the rest are seldom, if ever, used alone even to form syllables. But the reader may easily learn to utter them all, separately, according to the foregoing series. Let us note them as plainly as possible: *eigh, ~a, ah, awe, =eh, ~e, eye, ~i, oh, ~o, oo, yew, ~u, û*. Thus the eight long sounds, *eigh, ah, awe, eh, eye, oh, ooh, yew*, are, or may be, words; but the six less vocal, called the short vowel sounds, as in *at, et, it, ot, ut, put*, are commonly heard only in connexion with consonants; except the first, which is perhaps the most frequent sound of the vowel *A* or *a*--a sound sometimes given to the word *a*, perhaps most generally; as in the phrase, "twice *~a* day."

The simple *consonant sounds* in English are twenty-two: they are marked by *b, d, f, g hard, h, k, l, m, n, ng, p, r, s, sh, t, th sharp, th flat, v, w, y, z*, and *zh*. But *zh* is written only to show the sound of other letters; as of *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

All these sounds are heard distinctly in the following words: *buy, die, fie, guy, high, kie, lie, my, nigh, eying, pie, rye, sigh, shy, tie, thigh, thy, vie, we, ye, zebra, seizure*. Again: most of them may be repeated in the same word, if not in the same syllable; as in *bibber, diddle, fifty, giggle, high-hung, cackle, lily, mimic, ninny, singing, pippin, mirror, hissest, flesh-brush, tittle, thinketh, thither, vivid, witwal, union*,^[97] *dizzies, vision*.

With us, the consonants *J* and *X* represent, not simple, but complex sounds: hence they are never doubled. *J* is equivalent to *dzh*; and *X*, either to *ks* or to *gz*. The former ends no English word, and the latter begins none. To the initial *X* of foreign words, we always give the simple sound of *Z*; as in *Xerxes, xebec*.

The consonants *C* and *Q* have no sounds peculiar to themselves. *Q* has always the power of *k*. *C* is hard, like *k*, before *a, o*, and *u*; and soft, like *s*, before *e, i*, and *y*: thus the syllables, *ca, ce, ci, co, cu, cy*, are pronounced, *ka, se, si, ko, ku, sy*. *S* before *c* preserves the former sound, but coalesces with the latter; hence the syllables, *sca, sce, sci, sco, scu, scy*, are sounded, *ska, se, si, sko, sku, sy*. *Ce* and *ci* have sometimes the sound of *sh*; as in *ocean, social*. *Ch* commonly represents the compound sound of *tsh*; as in *church*.

G, as well as *C*, has different sounds before different vowels. *G* is always hard, or guttural, before *a, o*, and *u*; and generally soft, like *j*, before *e, i*, or *y*: thus the syllables, *ga, ge, gi, go, gu, gy*, are pronounced *ga, je, ji, go, gu, jy*.

The possible combinations and mutations of the twenty-six letters of our alphabet, are many millions of millions. But those clusters which are unpronounceable, are useless. Of such as may be easily uttered, there

are more than enough for all the purposes of useful writing, or the recording of speech.

Thus it is, that from principles so few and simple as about six or seven and thirty plain elementary sounds, represented by characters still fewer, we derive such a variety of oral and written signs, as may suffice to explain or record all the sentiments and transactions of all men in all ages.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A knowledge of sounds can be acquired, in the first instance, only by the ear. No description of the manner of their production, or of the differences which distinguish them, can be at all intelligible to him who has not already, by the sense of hearing, acquired a knowledge of both. What I here say of the sounds of the letters, must of course be addressed to those persons only who are able both to speak and to read English. Why then attempt instruction by a method which both ignorance and knowledge on the part of the pupil, must alike render useless? I have supposed some readers to have such an acquaintance with the powers of the letters, as is but loose and imperfect; sufficient for the accurate pronunciation of some words or syllables, but leaving them liable to mistakes in others; extending perhaps to all the sounds of the language, but not to a ready analysis or enumeration of them. Such persons may profit by a written description of the powers of the letters, though no such description can equal the clear impression of the living voice. Teachers, too, whose business it is to aid the articulation of the young, and, by a patient inculcation of elementary principles, to lay the foundation of an accurate pronunciation, may derive some assistance from any notation of these principles, which will help their memory, or that of the learner. The connexion between letters and sounds is altogether *arbitrary*; but a few positions, being assumed and made known, in respect to some characters, become easy standards for further instruction in respect to others of similar sound.

OBS. 2.--The importance of being instructed at an early age, to pronounce with distinctness and facility all the elementary sounds of one's native language, has been so frequently urged, and is so obvious in itself, that none but those who have been themselves neglected, will be likely to disregard the claims of their children in this respect.[98] But surely an accurate knowledge of the ordinary powers of the letters would be vastly more common, were there not much hereditary negligence respecting the manner in which these important rudiments are learned. The utterance of the illiterate may exhibit wit and native talent, but it is always more or less barbarous, because it is not aided by a knowledge of orthography. For pronunciation and orthography, however they may seem, in our language especially, to be often at variance, are certainly correlative: a true knowledge of either tends to the preservation of both. Each of the letters represents some one or more of the elementary sounds, exclusive of the rest; and each of the elementary sounds, though several of them are occasionally transferred, has some one or two letters to which it most properly or most frequently belongs. But borrowed, as our language has been, from a great variety of sources, to which it is desirable ever to retain the means of tracing it, there is certainly much apparent lack of correspondence between its oral and its written form. Still the discrepancies are few, when compared with the instances of exact conformity; and, if they are, as I suppose they are, unavoidable, it is as useless to complain of the trouble they occasion, as it is to think of forcing a reconciliation. The wranglers in this controversy, can never agree among themselves, whether orthography shall conform to pronunciation, or pronunciation to orthography. Nor does any one of them well know how our language would either sound or look, were he himself appointed sole arbiter of all variances between our spelling and our speech.

OBS. 3.--"Language," says Dr. Rush, "was long ago analyzed into its alphabetic elements. Wherever this analysis is known, the art of teaching language has, with the best success, been conducted upon the rudimental method." * * * "The art of reading consists in having all the vocal elements under complete command, that they may be properly applied, for the vivid and elegant delineation of the sense and sentiment of discourse."--*Philosophy of the Voice*, p. 346. Again, of "the pronunciation of the alphabetic elements," he says, "The least deviation from the assumed standard converts the listener into the critic; and I am surely speaking within bounds when I say, that for every miscalled element in discourse, ten succeeding words are lost to the greater part of an audience."--*Ibid.*, p. 350. These quotations plainly imply both the practicability

and the importance of teaching the pronunciation of our language analytically by means of its present orthography, and agreeably to the standard assumed by the grammarians. The first of them affirms that it has been done, "with the best success," according to some ancient method of dividing the letters and explaining their sounds. And yet, both before and afterwards, we find this same author complaining of our alphabet and its subdivisions, as if sense or philosophy must utterly repudiate both; and of our orthography, as if a ploughman might teach us to spell better: and, at the same time, he speaks of softening his censure through modesty. "The deficiencies, redundancies, and confusion, of the system of alphabetic characters in this language, prevent the adoption of its subdivisions in this essay."--*Ib.*, p. 52. Of the specific sounds given to the letters, he says, "The first of these matters is under the rule of every body, and therefore is very properly to be excluded from the discussions of that philosophy which desires to be effectual in its instruction. How can we hope to establish a system of elemental pronunciation in a language, when great masters in criticism condemn at once every attempt, in so simple and useful a labour as the correction of its orthography!"--P. 256. Again: "I *deprecate* noticing the faults of speakers, in the pronunciation of the alphabetic elements. It is better for criticism to be modest on this point, till it has the sense or independence to make our alphabet and its uses, look more like the work of what is called--wise and transcendent humanity: till the pardonable variety of pronunciation, and the *true spelling by the vulgar*, have satirized into reformation that pen-craft which keeps up the troubles of orthography for no other purpose, as one can divine, than to boast of a very questionable merit as a criterion of education."--*Ib.*, p. 383.

OBS. 4.--How far these views are compatible, the reader will judge. And it is hoped he will excuse the length of the extracts, from a consideration of the fact, that a great master of the "pen-craft" here ridiculed, a noted stickler for needless Kays and Ues, now commonly rejected, while he boasts that his grammar, which he mostly copied from Murray's, is teaching the old explanation of the alphabetic elements to "more than one hundred thousand children and youth," is also vending under his own name an abstract of the new scheme of "*tonicks, subtonicks, and atonicks*;" and, in one breath, bestowing superlative praise on both, in order, as it would seem, to monopolize all inconsistency. "Among those who have successfully laboured in the philological field, *Mr. Lindley Murray* stands forth in bold relief, as undeniably at the head of the list."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 12. "The modern candidate for oratorical fame, stands on very different, and far more advantageous, ground, than that occupied by the young and aspiring Athenian; especially since a *correct analysis of the vocal organs*, and a faithful record of their operations, have been given to the world by *Dr. James Rush*, of Philadelphia--a name that will *outlive* the unquarried marble of our mountains."--*Ibid.*, p. 29. "But what is to be said when presumption pushes itself into the front ranks of elocution, and thoughtless friends undertake to support it? The fraud must go on, till presumption quarrels, as often happens, with its own friends, or with itself, and thus dissolves the spell of its merits."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 405.

OBS. 5.--The question respecting the *number* of simple or elementary sounds in our language, presents a remarkable puzzle: and it is idle, if not ridiculous, for any man to declaim about the imperfection of our alphabet and orthography, who does not show himself able to solve it. All these sounds may easily be written in a plain sentence of three or four lines upon almost any subject; and every one who can read, is familiar with them all, and with all the letters. Now it is either easy *to count* them, or it is difficult. If difficult, wherein does the difficulty lie? and how shall he who knows not what and how many they are, think himself capable of reforming our system of their alphabetic signs? If easy, why do so few pretend to know their number? and of those who do pretend to this knowledge, why are there so few that agree? A certain verse in the seventh chapter of Ezra, has been said to contain all the letters. It however contains no *j*; and, with respect to the sounds, it lacks that of *f*, that of *th sharp*, and that of *u* in *bull*. I will suggest a few additional words for these; and then both all the letters, and all the sounds, of the English language, will be found in the example; and most of them, many times over: "'And I, even I, Artaxerxes, the king, do make a decree to all the treasurers' who 'are beyond the river, that whatsoever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the law of the God of heaven, shall require of you, it be done speedily' and faithfully, according to that which he shall enjoin." Some letters, and some sounds, are here used much more frequently than others; but, on an average, we have, in this short passage, each sound five times, and each letter eight. How often, then, does a man speak all the elements of his language, who reads well but one hour!

OBS. 6.--Of the number of elementary sounds in our language, different orthoëpists report differently; because they cannot always agree among themselves, wherein the identity or the simplicity, the sameness or the singleness, even of well-known sounds, consists; or because, if each is allowed to determine these points for himself, no one of them adheres strictly to his own decision. They may also, each for himself, have some peculiar way of utterance, which will confound some sounds which other men distinguish, or distinguish some which other men confound. For, as a man may write a very bad hand which shall still be legible, so he may utter many sounds improperly and still be understood. One may, in this way, make out a scheme of the alphabetic elements, which shall be true of his own pronunciation, and yet have obvious faults when tried by the best usage of English speech. It is desirable not to multiply these sounds beyond the number which a correct and elegant pronunciation of the language obviously requires. And what that number is, it seems to me not very difficult to ascertain; at least, I think we may fix it with sufficient accuracy for all practical purposes. But let it be remembered, that all who have hitherto attempted the enumeration, have deviated more or less from their own decisions concerning either the simplicity or the identity of sounds; but, most commonly, it appears to have been thought expedient to admit some exceptions concerning both. Thus the long or diphthongal sounds of *I* and *U*, are admitted by some, and excluded by others; the sound of *j*, or soft *g*, is reckoned as simple by some, and rejected as compound by others; so a part, if not all, of what are called the long and the short vowels, as heard in *ale* and *ell*, *arm* and *am*, *all* and *on*, *isle* or *eel* and *ill*, *tone* and *tun*, *pule* or *pool* and *pull*, have been declared essentially the same by some, and essentially different by others. Were we to recognize as elementary, no sounds but such as are unquestionably simple in themselves, and indisputably different in quality from all others, we should not have more sounds than letters: and this is a proof that we have characters enough, though the sounds are perhaps badly distributed among them.

OBS. 7.--I have enumerated *thirty-six* well known sounds, which, in compliance with general custom, and for convenience in teaching. I choose to regard as the oral elements of our language. There may be found some reputable authority for adding four or five more, and other authority as reputable, for striking from the list seven or eight of those already mentioned. For the sake of the general principle, which we always regard in writing, a principle of universal grammar, *that there can be no syllable without a vowel*, I am inclined to teach, with Brightland, Dr. Johnson, L. Murray, and others, that, in English, as in French, there is given to the vowel *e* a certain very obscure sound which approaches, but amounts not to an absolute suppression, though it is commonly so regarded by the writers of dictionaries. It may be exemplified in the words *oven*, *shovel*, *able*;[99] or in the unemphatic article *the* before a consonant, as in the sentence, "Take the nearest:" we do not hear it as "*thee nearest*," nor as "*then carest*," but more obscurely. There is also a feeble sound of *i* or *y* unaccented, which is equivalent to *ee* uttered feebly, as in the word *diversity*. This is the most common sound of *i* and of *y*. The vulgar are apt to let it fall into the more obscure sound of short *u*. As elegance of utterance depends much upon the preservation of this sound from such obtuseness, perhaps Walker and others have done well to mark it as *e* in *me*; though some suppose it to be peculiar, and others identify it with the short *i* in *fit*. Thirdly, a distinction is made by some writers, between the vowel sounds heard in *hate* and *bear*, which Sheridan and Walker consider to be the same. The apparent difference may perhaps result from the following consonant *r*, which is apt to affect the sound of the vowel which precedes it. Such words as *bear*, *care*, *dare*, *careful*, *parent*, are very liable to be corrupted in pronunciation, by too broad a sound of the *a*; and, as the multiplication of needless distinctions should be avoided, I do not approve of adding an other sound to a vowel which has already quite too many. Worcester, however, in his new Dictionary, and Wells, in his new Grammar, give to the vowel *A* *six* or *seven* sounds in lieu of *four*; and Dr. Mandeville, in his Course of Reading, says, "*A* has *eight* sounds."--P. 9.

OBS. 8.--Sheridan made the elements of his oratory *twenty-eight*. Jones followed him implicitly, and adopted the same number.[100] Walker recognized several more, but I know not whether he has anywhere told us *how many there are*. Lindley Murray enumerates *thirty-six*, and the same thirty-six that are given in the main text above. The eight sounds not counted by Sheridan are these: 1. The Italian *a*, as in *far*, *father*, which he reckoned but a lengthening of the *a* in *hat*; 2. The short *o*, as in *hot*, which he supposed to be but a shortening of the *a* in *hall*; 3. The diphthongal *i*, as in *isle*, which he thought but a quicker union of the sounds of the diphthong *oi*, but which, in my opinion, is rather a very quick union of the sounds *ah* and *ee* into *ay*, *I*:[101] 4.

The long *u*, which is acknowledged to be equal to *yu* or *yew*, though perhaps a little different from *you* or *yoo*, [102] the sound given it by Walker; 5. The *u* heard in *pull*, which he considered but a shortening of *oo*; 6. The consonant *w*, which he conceived to be always a vowel, and equivalent to *oo*; 7. The consonant *y*, which he made equal to a short *ee*; 8. The consonant *h*, which he declared to be no letter, but a mere breathing. In all other respects, his scheme of the alphabetic elements agrees with that which is adopted in this work, and which is now most commonly taught.

OBS. 9.--The effect of *Quantity* in the prolation of the vowels, is a matter with which every reader ought to be experimentally acquainted. *Quantity* is simply the *time* of utterance, whether long or short. It is commonly spoken of with reference to *syllables*, because it belongs severally to all the distinct or numerable impulses of the voice, and to these only; but, as vowels or diphthongs may be uttered alone, the notion of quantity is of course as applicable to them, as to any of the more complex sounds in which consonants are joined with them. All sounds imply time; because they are the transient effects of certain percussions which temporarily agitate the air, an element that tends to silence. When mighty winds have swept over sea and land, and the voice of the *Ocean* is raised, he speaks to the towering cliffs in the deep tones of a *long* quantity; the rolling billows, as they meet the shore, pronounce the long-drawn syllables of his majestic elocution. But see him again in gentler mood; stand upon the beach and listen to the rippling of his more frequent waves: he will teach you *short* quantity, as well as long. In common parlance, to avoid tediousness, to save time, and to adapt language to circumstances, we usually utter words with great rapidity, and in comparatively short quantity. But in oratory, and sometimes in ordinary reading, those sounds which are best fitted to fill and gratify the ear, should be sensibly protracted, especially in emphatic words; and even the shortest syllable, must be so lengthened as to be uttered with perfect clearness: otherwise the performance will be judged defective.

OBS. 10.--Some of the vowels are usually uttered in longer time than others; but whether the former are naturally long, and the latter naturally short, may be doubted: the common opinion is, that they are. But one author at least denies it; and says, "We must explode the pretended natural epithets *short* and *long* given to our vowels, independent on accent: and we must observe that our silent *e* final lengthens not its syllable, unless the preceding vowel be accented."--*Mackintosh's Essay on E. Gram.*, p. 232. The distinction of long and short vowels which has generally obtained, and the correspondences which some writers have laboured to establish between them, have always been to me sources of much embarrassment. It would appear, that in one or two instances, sounds that differ only in length, or time, are commonly recognized as different elements; and that grammarians and orthoëpists, perceiving this, have attempted to carry out the analogy, and to find among what they call the long vowels a parent sound for each of the short ones. In doing this, they have either neglected to consult the ear, or have not chosen to abide by its verdict. I suppose the vowels heard in *pull* and *pool* would be necessarily identified, if the former were protracted or the latter shortened; and perhaps there would be a like coalescence of those heard in *of* and *all*, were they tried in the same way, though I am not sure of it. In protracting the *e* in *met*, and the *i* in *ship*, ignorance or carelessness might perhaps, with the help of our orthoëpists, convert the former word into *mate* and the latter into *sheep*; and, as this would breed confusion in the language, the avoiding of the similarity may perhaps be a sufficient reason for confining these two sounds of *e* and *i*, to that short quantity in which they cannot be mistaken. But to suppose, as some do, that the protraction of *u* in *tun* would identify it with the *o* in *tone*, surpasses any notion I have of what stupidity may misconceive. With one or two exceptions, therefore, it appears to me that each of the pure vowel sounds is of such a nature, that it may be readily recognized by its own peculiar quality or tone, though it be made as long or as short as it is possible for any sound of the human voice to be. It is manifest that each of the vowel sounds heard in *ate*, *at*, *arm*, *all*, *eel*, *old*, *ooze*, *us*, may be protracted to the entire extent of a full breath slowly expended, and still be precisely the same one simple sound; [103] and, on the contrary, that all but one may be shortened to the very minimum of vocality, and still be severally known without danger of mistake. The prolation of a pure vowel places the organs of utterance in that particular position which the sound of the letter requires, and then *holds them unmoved* till we have given to it all the length we choose.

OBS. 11.--In treating of the quantity and quality of the vowels, Walker says, "The first distinction of sound that seems to obtrude itself upon us when we utter the vowels, is a long and a short sound, according to the

greater or less duration of time taken up in pronouncing them. This distinction is so obvious as to have been adopted in all languages, and is that to which we annex *clearer ideas than to any other*; and though the short sounds of some vowels have not in our language been classed with sufficient accuracy with their parent long ones, yet this has bred but little confusion, as vowels long and short are always sufficiently distinguishable."--*Principles*, No. 63. Again: "But though the terms long and short, as applied to vowels, are pretty generally understood, an accurate ear will easily perceive that these terms do not always mean the long and short sounds of the respective vowels to which they are applied; for, if we choose to be directed by the ear, in denominating vowels long or short, we must certainly give these appellations to those sounds only which have *exactly the same radical tone*, and differ only in the long or short emission of that tone."--*Ib.*, No. 66. He then proceeds to state his opinion that the vowel sounds heard in the following words are thus correspondent: *tame, them; car, carry; wall, want; dawn, gone; theme, him; tone, nearly tun; pool, pull*. As to the long sounds of *i* or *y*, and of *u*, these two being diphthongal, he supposes the short sound of each to be no other than the short sound of its latter element *ee* or *oo*. Now to me most of this is exceedingly unsatisfactory; and I have shown why.

OBS. 12.--If men's notions of the length and shortness of vowels are the clearest ideas they have in relation to the elements of speech, how comes it to pass that of all the disputable points in grammar, this is the most perplexed with contrarieties of opinion? In coming before the world as an author, no man intends to place himself clearly in the wrong; yet, on the simple powers of the letters, we have volumes of irreconcilable doctrines. A great connoisseur in things of this sort, who professes to have been long "in the habit of listening to sounds of every description, and that with more than ordinary attention," declares in a recent and expensive work, that "in every language we find the vowels *incorrectly classed*"; and, in order to give to "the simple elements of English utterance" a better explanation than others have furnished, he devotes to a new analysis of our alphabet the ample space of twenty octavo pages, besides having several chapters on subjects connected with it. And what do his twenty pages amount to? I will give the substance of them in ten lines, and the reader may judge. He does not tell us *how many* elementary sounds there are; but, professing to arrange the vowels, long and short, "in the order in which they are naturally found," as well as to show of the consonants that the mutes and liquids form correspondents in regular pairs, he presents a scheme which I abbreviate as follows. VOWELS: 1. *A*, as in *=all* and *wh~at*, or *o*, as in *orifice* and *n~ot*; 2. *U*--=*urn* and *h~ut*, or *l=ove* and *c~ome*; 3. *O*--=*v=ote* and *ech~o*; 4. *A*--=*ah* and *h~at*; 5. *A*--*h=azy*, no short sound; 6. *E*--=*e=el* and *it*; 7. *E*--*m=ercy* and *m~et*; 8. *O*--*pr=ove* and *ad~o*; 9. *OO*--*t=o=ol* and *f~o~ot*; 10. *W*--*vo=w* and *la~w*; 11. *Y*--(like the first *e*--)*s=yntax* and *dut~y*. DIPHTHONGS: 1. *I*--as *ah-ee*; 2. *U*--as *ee-oo*; 3. *OU*--as *au-oo*. CONSONANTS: 1. Mutes,--*c* or *s*, *f*, *h*, *k* or *q*, *p*, *t*, *th sharp*, *sh*; 2. Liquids,--*l*, which has no corresponding mute, and *z*, *v*, *r*, *ng*, *m*, *n*, *th flat* and *j*, which severally correspond to the eight mutes in their order; 3. Subliquids,--*g hard*, *b*, and *d*. See "Music of Nature," by *William Gardiner*, p. 480, and after.

OBS. 13.--Dr. Rush comes to the explanation of the powers of the letters as the confident first revealer of nature's management and wisdom; and hopes to have laid the foundation of a system of instruction in reading and oratory, which, if adopted and perfected, "will beget a similarity of opinion and practice," and "be found to possess an excellence which must grow into sure and irreversible favour."--*Phil. of the Voice*, p. 404. "We have been willing," he says, "*to believe, on faith alone*, that nature is wise in the contrivance of speech. Let us now show, by our works of analysis, how she manages the *simple elements* of the voice, in the production of their unbounded combinations."--*Ibid.*, p. 44. Again: "Every one, with peculiar self-satisfaction, thinks he reads well, and yet all read differently: there is, however, *but one mode* of reading well."--*Ib.*, p. 403. That one mode, some say, his philosophy alone teaches. Of that, others may judge. I shall only notice here what seems to be his fundamental position, that, on all the vocal elements of language, nature has stamped duplicity. To establish this extraordinary doctrine, he first attempts to prove, that "the letter *a*, as heard in the word *day*," combines two distinguishable yet inseparable sounds; that it is a compound of what he calls, with reference to vowels and syllables in general, "the radical and the vanishing movement of the voice,"--a single and indivisible element in which "two sounds are heard continuously successive," the sounds of *a* and *e* as in *ale* and *eve*. He does not know that some grammarians have contended that *ay* in *day* is a proper diphthong, in which both the vowels are heard; but, so pronouncing it himself, infers from the experiment, that there is no

simpler sound of the vowel *a*. If this inference is not wrong, the word *shape* is to be pronounced *sha-epe*; and, in like manner, a multitude of other words will acquire a new element not commonly heard in them.

OBS. 14.--But the doctrine stops not here. The philosopher examines, in some similar way, the other simple vowel sounds, and finds a beginning and an end, a base and an apex, a radical and a vanishing movement, to them all; and imagines a sufficient warrant from nature to divide them all "into two parts," and to convert most of them into diphthongs, as well as to include all diphthongs with them, as being altogether as simple and elementary. Thus he begins with confounding all distinction between diphthongs and simple vowels; except that which he makes for himself when he admits "the radical and the vanish," the first half of a sound and the last, to have no difference in quality. This admission is made with respect to the vowels heard in *ooze*, *eel*, *err*, *end*, and *in*, which he calls, not diphthongs, but "monothongs." But in the *a* of *ale*, he hears =*a'-ee*; in that of *an*, ~*a'--e*; (that is, the short *a* followed by something of the sound of *e* in *err*;) in that of *art*, *ah'--e*; in that of *all*, *awe'--e*; in the *i* of *isle*, =*i'-ee*; in the *o* of *old*, =*o'-oo*; in the proper diphthong *ou*, *ou'-oo*; in the *oy* of *boy*, he knows not what. After his explanation of these mysteries, he says, "The seven radical sounds with their vanishes, which have been described, include, as far as I can perceive, all the elementary diphthongs of the English language."--*Ib.*, p. 60. But all the sounds of the vowel *u*, whether diphthongal or simple, are excluded from his list, unless he means to represent one of them by the *e* in *err*; and the complex vowel sound heard in *voice* and *boy*, is confessedly omitted on account of a doubt whether it consists of two sounds or of three! The elements which he enumerates are thirty-five; but if *oi* is not a triphthong, they are to be thirty-six. Twelve are called "*Tonics*;" and are heard in the usual sound of the separated *Italics*, in the following words: *A-ll*, *a-rt*, *a-n*, *a-le*, *ou-r*, *i-sle*, *o-ld*, *ee-l*, *oo-ze*, *e-rr*, *e-nd*, *i-n*,"--*Ib.*, p. 53. Fourteen are called "*Subtonics*;" and are marked by the separated *Italics*, in the following words: *B-ow*, *d-are*, *g-ive*, *v-ile*, *z-one*, *y-e*, *w-o*, *th-en*, *a-z-ure*, *si-ng*, *l-ove*, *m-ay*, *n-ot*, *r-oe*,"--*Ib.*, p. 54. Nine are called "*Atonics*;" they are heard in the words, *U-p*, *ou-t*, *ar-k*, *i-f*, *ye-s*, *h-e*, *wh-eat*, *th-in*, *pu-sh*,"--*Ib.*, p. 56. My opinion of this scheme of the alphabet the reader will have anticipated.

IV. FORMS OF THE LETTERS.

In printed books of the English language, the Roman characters are generally employed; sometimes, the *Italic*; and occasionally, the [Font change: Old English]: but in handwriting, [Font change: Script letters] are used, the forms of which are peculiarly adapted to the pen.

Characters of different sorts or sizes should never be *needlessly mixed*; because facility of reading, as well as the beauty of a book, depends much upon the regularity of its letters.

In the ordinary forms of the Roman letters, every thick stroke that slants, slants from the left to the right downwards, except the middle stroke in *Z*; and every thin stroke that slants, slants from the left to the right upwards.

Italics are chiefly used to distinguish emphatic or remarkable words: in the Bible, they show what words were supplied by the translators.

In manuscripts, a single line drawn under a word is meant for *Italics*; a double line, for small capitals; a triple line, for full capitals.

In every kind of type or character, the letters have severally *two forms*, by which they are distinguished as *capitals* and *small letters*. Small letters constitute the body of every work; and capitals are used for the sake of eminence and distinction. The titles of books, and the heads of their principal divisions, are printed wholly in capitals. Showbills, painted signs, and short inscriptions, commonly appear best in full capitals. Some of these are so copied in books; as, "I found an altar with this inscription, TO THE UNKNOWN GOD."--*Acts*, xvii, 23. "And they set up over his head, his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS, THE KING OF THE JEWS."--*Matt.*, xxvii, 37.

RULES FOR THE USE OF CAPITALS.

RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

When particular books are mentioned by their names, the chief words in their titles begin with capitals, and the other letters are small; as, "Pope's Essay on Man"--"the Book of Common Prayer"--"the Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments." [104]

RULE II.--FIRST WORDS.

The first word of every distinct sentence, or of any clause separately numbered or paragraphed, should begin with a capital; as, "Rejoice evermore. Pray without ceasing. In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you. Quench not the Spirit. Despise not prophesyings. Prove all things: hold fast that which is good."--*1 Thess.*, v, 16--21.

"14. He has given his assent to their acts of pretended legislation: 15. *For* quartering large bodies of armed troops among us: 16. *For* protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for murders: 17. *For* cutting off our trade with all parts of the world: 18. *For* imposing taxes on us without our consent:" &c. *Declaration of American Independence.*

RULE III.--OF THE DEITY.

All names of the Deity, and sometimes their emphatic substitutes, should begin with capitals; as, "God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being, Divine Providence, the Messiah, the Comforter, the Father, the Son, the Holy Spirit, the Lord of Sabaoth."

"The hope of my spirit turns trembling to Thee."--*Moore.*

RULE IV.--PROPER NAMES.

Proper names, of every description, should always begin with capitals; as, "Saul of Tarsus, Simon Peter, Judas Iscariot, England, London, the Strand, the Thames, the Pyrenees, the Vatican, the Greeks, the Argo and the Argonauts."

RULE V.--OF TITLES.

Titles of office or honour, and epithets of distinction, applied to persons, begin usually with capitals; as, "His Majesty William the Fourth, Chief Justice Marshall, Sir Matthew Hale, Dr. Johnson, the Rev. Dr. Chalmers, Lewis the Bold, Charles the Second, James the Less, St. Bartholomew, Pliny the Younger, Noah Webster, Jun., Esq."

RULE VI.--ONE CAPITAL.

Those compound proper names which by analogy incline to a union of their parts without a hyphen, should be so written, and have but one capital: as, "Eastport, Eastville, Westborough, Westfield, Westtown, Whitehall, Whitechurch, Whitehaven, Whiteplains, Mountmellick, Mountpleasant, Germantown, Germanflats, Blackrock, Redhook, Kinderhook, Newfoundland, Statenland, Newcastle, Northcastle, Southbridge, Fairhaven, Dekalb, Deruyter, Lafayette, Macpherson."

RULE VII.--TWO CAPITALS.

The compounding of a name under one capital should be avoided when the general analogy of other similar

terms suggests a separation under two; as, "The chief mountains of Ross-shire are Ben Chat, *Benchasker*, Ben Golich, Ben Nore, Ben Foscarg, and Ben Wyvis."--*Glasgow Geog.*, Vol. ii, p. 311. Write *Ben Chasker*. So, when the word *East*, *West*, *North*, or *South*, as part of a name, denotes relative position, or when the word *New* distinguishes a place by contrast, we have generally separate words and two capitals; as, "East Greenwich, West Greenwich, North Bridgewater, South Bridgewater, New Jersey, New Hampshire."

RULE VIII.--COMPOUNDS.

When any adjective or common noun is made a distinct part of a compound proper name, it ought to begin with a capital; as, "The United States, the Argentine Republic, the Peak of Teneriffe, the Blue Ridge, the Little Pedee, Long Island, Jersey City, Lower Canada, Green Bay, Gretna Green, Land's End, the Gold Coast."

RULE IX.--APPOSITION.

When a common and a proper name are associated merely to explain each other, it is in general sufficient, if the proper name begin with a capital, and the appellative, with a small letter; as, "The prophet Elisha, Matthew the publican, the brook Cherith, the river Euphrates, the Ohio river, Warren county, Flatbush village, New York city."

RULE X.--PERSONIFICATIONS.

The name of an object personified, when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital; as, "Upon this, *Fancy* began again to bestir herself."--*Addison*. "Come, gentle *Spring*, ethereal mildness, come."--*Thomson*.

RULE XI.--DERIVATIVES.

Words derived from proper names, and having direct reference to particular persons, places, sects, or nations, should begin with capitals; as, "Platonic, Newtonian, Greek, or Grecian, Romish, or Roman, Italic, or Italian, German, or Germanic, Swedish, Turkish, Chinese, Genoese, French, Dutch, Scotch, Welsh:" so, perhaps, "to Platonize, Grecize, Romanize, Italicize, Latinize, or Frenchify."

RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

The words *I* and *O* should always be capitals; as, "Praise the Lord, O Jerusalem; praise thy God, O Zion."--*Psalms* cxlvii. "O wretched man that I am!"--"For that which I do, I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I."--*Rom.*, vii, 24 and 15.

RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

Every line in poetry, except what is regarded as making but one verse with the line preceding, should begin with a capital; as,

"Our sons their fathers' failing language see, And such as Chaucer is, shall Dryden be."--*Pope*.

Of the exception, some editions of the Psalms in Metre are full of examples; as,

"Happy the man whose tender care relieves the poor distress'd! When troubles compass him around, the Lord shall give him rest." *Psalms with Com. Prayer*, N. Y., 1819, Ps. xli.

RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

The first word of a full example, of a distinct speech, or of a direct quotation, should begin with a capital; as, "Remember this maxim: 'Know thyself.'"--"Virgil says, 'Labour conquers all things.'"--"Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?"--*John*, x, 34. "Thou knowest the commandments, Do not commit adultery, Do not kill, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Honour thy father and thy mother."--*Luke*, xviii, 20.

RULE XV.--CHIEF WORDS.

Other words of particular importance, and such as denote the principal subjects treated of, may be distinguished by capitals; and names subscribed frequently have capitals throughout: as, "In its application to the Executive, with reference to the Legislative branch of the Government, the same rule of action should make the President ever anxious to avoid the exercise of any discretionary authority which can be regulated by Congress."--ANDREW JACKSON, 1835.

RULE XVI.--NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

Capitals are improper wherever there is not some special rule or reason for their use: a century ago books were disfigured by their frequency; as, "Many a Noble *Genius* is lost for want of *Education*. Which wou'd then be Much More Liberal. As it was when the *Church* Enjoy'd her *Possessions*. And *Learning* was, in the *Dark Ages*, Preserv'd almost only among the *Clergy*."--CHARLES LESLIE, 1700; *Divine Right of Tythes*, p. 228.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The letters of the alphabet, read by their names, are equivalent to words. They are a sort of universal signs, by which we may mark and particularize objects of any sort, named or nameless; as, "To say, therefore, that while A and B are both quadrangular, A is more or less quadrangular than B, is absurd."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 50. Hence they are used in the sciences as symbols of an infinite variety of things or ideas, being construed both substantively and adjectively; as, "In ascending from the note C to D, the interval is equal to an inch; and from D to E, the same."--*Music of Nature*, p. 293. "We have only to imagine the G clef placed below it."--*Ib.* Any of their forms may be used for such purposes, but the custom of each science determines our choice. Thus Algebra employs small Italics; Music, Roman capitals; Geometry, for the most part, the same; Astronomy, Greek characters; and Grammar, in some part or other, every sort. Examples: "Then comes *answer* like an ABC book."--*Beauties of Shakspeare*, p. 97. "Then comes *question* like an *a, b, c*, book."--*Shakspeare*." See A, B, C, in *Johnson's quarto Dict.* Better:--"like an A-Bee-Cee book."

"For A, his magic pen evokes an O, And turns the tide of Europe on the foe."--*Young*.

OBS. 2.--A lavish use of capitals defeats the very purpose for which the letters were distinguished in rank; and carelessness in respect to the rules which govern them, may sometimes misrepresent the writer's meaning. On many occasions, however, their use or disuse is arbitrary, and must be left to the judgement and taste of authors and printers. Instances of this kind will, for the most part, concern *chief words*, and come under the fifteenth rule above. In this grammar, the number of rules is increased; but the foregoing are still perhaps too few to establish an accurate uniformity. They will however tend to this desirable result; and if doubts arise in their application, the difficulties will be in particular examples only, and not in the general principles of the rules. For instance: In 1 Chron., xxix, 10th, some of our Bibles say, "Blessed be thou, LORD God of Israel our father, for ever and ever." Others say, "Blessed be thou, LORD God of Israel, our Father, for ever and ever." And others, "Blessed be thou, LORD God of Israel our Father, for ever and ever." The last is wrong, either in the capital F, or for lack of a comma after *Israel*. The others differ in meaning; because they construe the word *father*, or *Father*, differently. Which is right I know not. The first agrees with the Latin Vulgate, and the second, with the Greek text of the Septuagint; which two famous versions here disagree, without ambiguity in either.[105]

OBS. 3.--The innumerable discrepancies in respect to capitals, which, to a greater or less extent, disgrace the very best editions of our most popular books, are a sufficient evidence of the want of better directions on this point. In amending the rules for this purpose, I have not been able entirely to satisfy myself; and therefore must needs fail to satisfy the very critical reader. But the public shall have the best instructions I can give. On Rule 1st, concerning *Books*, it may be observed, that when particular books or writings are mentioned by other terms than their real titles, the principle of the rule does not apply. Thus, one may call *Paradise Lost*, "Milton's *great poem*;" or the *Diversions of Purley*, "the *etymological investigations* of Horne Tooke." So it is written in the Bible, "And there was delivered unto him *the book of the prophet Esaias*."--*Luke*, iv, 17. Because the name of Esaias, or Isaiah, seems to be the only proper title of his book.

OBS. 4.--On Rule 2d, concerning *First Words*, it may be observed, that the using of other points than the period, to separate sentences that are totally distinct in sense, as is sometimes practised in quoting, is no reason for the omission of capitals at the beginning of such sentences; but, rather, an obvious reason for their use. Our grammarians frequently manufacture a parcel of puerile examples, and, with the formality of apparent quotation, throw them together in the following manner: "He is above disguise;" "we serve under a good master;" "he rules over a willing people;" "we should do nothing beneath our character."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 118. These sentences, and all others so related, should, unquestionably, begin with capitals. Of themselves, they are distinct enough to be separated by the period and a dash. With examples of one's own making, the quotation points may be used or not, as the writer pleases; but not on their insertion or omission, nor even on the quality of the separating point, depends in all cases the propriety or impropriety of using initial capitals. For example: "The Future Tense is the form of the verb which denotes future time; as, John *will come*, you shall go, they will learn, the sun will rise to-morrow, he will return next week."--*Frazer's Improved Gram.*, p. 38; *Old Edition*, 35. To say nothing of the punctuation here used, it is certain that the initial words, *you*, *they*, *the*, and *he*, should have commenced with capitals.

OBS. 5.--On Rule 3d, concerning *Names of Deity*, it may be observed, that the words *Lord* and *God* take the nature of proper names, only when they are used in reference to the Eternal Divinity. The former, as a title of honour to men, is usually written with a capital; but, as a common appellative, with a small letter. The latter, when used with reference to any fabulous deity, or when made plural to speak of many, should seldom, if ever, begin with a capital; for we do not write with a capital any common name which we do not mean to honour: as, "Though there be that are called *gods*, whether in heaven or in earth--as there be *gods* many, and *lords* many."--*1 Cor.*, viii, 5. But a diversity of design or conception in respect to this kind of distinction, has produced great diversity concerning capitals, not only in original writings, but also in reprints and quotations, not excepting even the sacred books. Example: "The Lord is a great God, and a great King above all *Gods*."--*Gurney's Essays*, p. 88. Perhaps the writer here exalts the inferior beings called gods, that he may honour the one true God the more; but the Bible, in four editions to which I have turned, gives the word *gods* no capital. See *Psalms*, xcv, 3. The word *Heaven* put for God, begins with a capital; but when taken literally, it commonly begins with a small letter. Several nouns occasionally connected with names of the Deity, are written with a very puzzling diversity: as, "The Lord of *Sabaoth*;"--"The Lord God of *hosts*;"--"The God of *armies*;"--"The Father of *goodness*;"--"The Giver of all *good*;"--"The Lord, the righteous *Judge*." All these, and many more like them, are found sometimes with a capital, and sometimes without. *Sabaoth*, being a foreign word, and used only in this particular connexion, usually takes a capital; but the equivalent English words do not seem to require it. For "*Judge*," in the last example, I would use a capital; for "*good*" and "*goodness*," in the preceding ones, the small letter: the one is an eminent name, the others are mere attributes. Alger writes, "*the Son of Man*," with two capitals; others, perhaps more properly, "*the Son of man*," with one--wherever that phrase occurs in the New Testament. But, in some editions, it has no capital at all.

OBS. 6.--On Rule 4th, concerning *Proper Names*, it may be observed, that the application of this principle supposes the learner to be able to distinguish between proper names and common appellatives. Of the difference between these two classes of words, almost every child that can speak, must have formed some idea. I once noticed that a very little boy, who knew no better than to call a pigeon a turkey because the creature had feathers, was sufficiently master of this distinction, to call many individuals by their several

names, and to apply the common words, *man, woman, boy, girl, &c.*, with that generality which belongs to them. There is, therefore, some very plain ground for this rule. But not all is plain, and I will not veil the cause of embarrassment. It is only an act of imposture, to pretend that grammar *is easy*, in stead of making it so. Innumerable instances occur, in which the following assertion is by no means true: "The distinction between a common and a proper noun is *very obvious*."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p 32. Nor do the remarks of this author, or those of any other that I am acquainted with, remove any part of the difficulty. We are told by this gentleman, (in language incorrigibly bad,) that, "*Nouns* which denote the genus, species, or variety of beings or things, are always common; as, *tree*, the genus; *oak, ash, chestnut, poplar*, different species; and *red oak, white oak, black oak*, varieties."--*Ib.*, p. 32. Now, as it requires *but one noun* to denote either a genus or a species, I know not how to conceive of *those "nouns* which denote *the genus* of things," except as of other confusion and nonsense; and, as for the three varieties of oak, there are surely no "*nouns*" here to denote them, unless he will have *red, white, and black* to be nouns. But what shall we say of--"the Red sea, the White sea, the Black sea;" or, with two capitals, "Red Sea, White Sea, Black Sea," and a thousand other similar terms, which are neither proper names unless they are written with capitals, nor written with capitals unless they are first judged to be proper names? The simple phrase, "the united states," has nothing of the nature of a proper name; but what is the character of the term, when written with two capitals, "the United States?" If we contend that it is not then a proper name, we make our country anonymous. And what shall we say to those grammarians who contend, that "*Heaven, Hell, Earth, Sun, and Moon*, are proper names;" and that, as such, they should be written with capitals? See *Churchill's Gram.*, p. 380.

OBS. 7.--It would seem that most, if not all, proper names had originally some common signification, and that very many of our ordinary words and phrases have been converted into proper names, merely by being applied to particular persons, places, or objects, and receiving the distinction of capitals. How many of the oceans, seas, lakes, capes, islands, mountains, states, counties, streets, institutions, buildings, and other things, which we constantly particularize, have no other proper names than such as are thus formed, and such as are still perhaps, in many instances, essentially appellative! The difficulties respecting these will be further noticed below. A proper noun is the name of some particular individual, group, or people; as, *Adam, Boston, the Hudson, the Azores, the Andes, the Romans, the Jews, the Jesuits, the Cherokees*. This is as good a definition as I can give of a proper noun or name. Thus we commonly distinguish the names of particular persons, places, nations, tribes, or sects, with capitals. Yet we name the sun, the moon, the equator, and many other particular objects, without a capital; for the word the may give a particular meaning to a common noun, without converting it into a proper name: but if we say *Sol*, for the sun, or *Luna*, for the moon, we write it with a capital. With some apparent inconsistency, we commonly write the word *Gentiles* with a capital, but *pagans, heathens, and negroes*, without: thus custom has marked these names with degradation. The names of the days of the week, and those of the months, however expressed, appear to me to partake of the nature of proper names, and to require capitals: as, *Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday*; or, as the Friends denominate them, *Firstday, Secondday, Thirdday, Fourthday, Fifthday, Sixthday, Seventhday*. So, if they will not use *January, February, &c.*, they should write as proper names their *Firstmonth, Secondmonth, &c.* The Hebrew names for the months, were also proper nouns: to wit, Abib, Zif, Sivan, Thamuz, Ab, Elul, Tisri, Marchesvan, Chisleu, Tebeth, Shebat, Adar; the year, with the ancient Jews, beginning, as ours once did, in March.

OBS. 8.--On Rule 5th, concerning *Titles of Honour*, it may be observed, that names of office or rank, however high, do not require capitals merely as such; for, when we use them alone in their ordinary sense, or simply place them in apposition with proper names, without intending any particular honour, we begin them with a small letter: as, "the emperor Augustus;"--"our mighty sovereign, Abbas Carascan;"--"David the king;"--"Tidal king of nations;"--"Bonner, bishop of London;"--"The sons of Eliphaz, the first-born you of Esau; duke Teman, duke Omar, duke Zepho, duke Kenaz, duke Korah, duke Gatam, and duke Amalek."--*Gen.*, xxxvi, 15. So, sometimes, in addresses in which even the greatest respect is intended to be shown: as, "O *sir*, we came indeed down at the first time to buy food."--*Gen.*, xliii, 20. "O my *lord*, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word in my *lord's* ears."--*Gen.*, xlv, 18. The Bible, which makes small account of worldly honours, seldom uses capitals under this rule; but, in some editions, we find "Nehemiah the

Tirshatha," and "Herod the *Tetrarch*," each with a needless capital. Murray, in whose illustrations the word *king* occurs early one hundred times, seldom honours his Majesty with a capital; and, what is more, in all this mawkish mentioning of royalty, nothing is said of it *that is worth knowing*. Examples: "The *king* and the queen had put on their robes."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 154. "The *king*, with his life-guard, has just passed through the village."--*Ib.*, 150. "The *king* of Great Britain's dominions."--*Ib.*, 45. "On a sudden appeared the *king*."--*Ib.*, 146. "Long live the *King*!"--*Ib.*, 146. "On which side soever the *king* cast his eyes."--*Ib.*, 156. "It is the *king* of Great Britain's."--*Ib.*, 176. "He desired to be their *king*."--*Ib.*, 181. "They desired him to be their *king*."--*Ib.*, 181. "He caused himself to be proclaimed *king*."--*Ib.*, 182. These examples, and thousands more as simple and worthless, are among the pretended quotations by which this excellent man, thought "to promote the cause of virtue, as well as of learning!"

OBS. 9.--On Rule 6th, concerning *One Capital for Compounds*, I would observe, that perhaps there is nothing more puzzling in grammar, than to find out, amidst all the diversity of random writing, and wild guess-work in printing, the true way in which the compound names of places should be written. For example: What in Greek was "*ho Areios Pagos*," the *Martial Hill*, occurs twice in the New Testament: once, in the accusative case, "*ton Areion Pagan*," which is rendered *Areopagus*; and once, in the genitive, "*tou Areiou Pagou*," which, in different copies of the English Bible is made *Mars' Hill*, *Mars' hill*, *Mars'-hill*, *Marshall*, *Mars Hill*, and perhaps *Mars hill*. But if *Mars* must needs be put in the possessive case, (which I doubt,) they are all wrong: for then it should be *Mars's Hill*; as the name *Campus Martins* is rendered "*Mars's Field*," in Collier's Life of Marcus Antoninus. We often use nouns adjectively; and *Areios* is an adjective: I would therefore write this name *Mars Hill*, as we write *Bunker Hill*. Again: *Whitehaven* and *Fairhaven* are commonly written with single capitals; but, of six or seven *towns* called *Newhaven* or *New Haven*, some have the name in one word and some in two. *Haven* means a *harbour*, and the words, *New Haven*, written separately, would naturally be understood of a harbour: the close compound is obviously more suitable for the name of a city or town. In England, compounds of this kind are more used than in America; and in both countries the tendency of common usage seems to be, to contract and consolidate such terms. Hence the British counties are almost all named by compounds ending with the word *shire*; as, Nottinghamshire, Derbyshire, Staffordshire, Leicestershire, Northamptonshire, Warwickshire, Worcestershire, &c. But the best books we have, are full of discrepancies and errors in respect to names, whether foreign or domestic; as, "*Ulswater* is somewhat smaller. The handsomest is *Derwentwater*."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 212. "*Ulswater*, a lake of England," &c. "*Derwent-Water*, a lake in Cumberland," &c.--*Univ. Gazetteer*, "*Ulleswater*, lake, Eng. situated partly in Westmoreland," &c.--*Worcester's Gaz.* "*Derwent Water*, lake, Eng. in Cumberland."--*Ibid*. These words, I suppose, should be written *Ullswater* and *Derwentwater*.

OBS. 10.--An affix, or termination, differs from a distinct word; and is commonly understood otherwise, though it may consist of the same letters and have the same sound. Thus, if I were to write *Stow Bridge*, it would be understood of a *bridge*; if *Stowbridge*, of a *town*: or the latter might even be the name of a *family*. So *Belleisle* is the proper name of a *strait*; and *Belle Isle* of several different *islands* in France and America. Upon this plain distinction, and the manifest inconvenience of any violation of so clear an analogy of the language, depends the propriety of most of the corrections which I shall offer under Rule 6th. But if the inhabitants of any place choose to call their town a creek, a river, a harbour, or a bridge, and to think it officious in other men to pretend to know better, they may do as they please. If between them and their correctors there lie a mutual charge of misnomer, it is for the literary world to determine who is right. Important names are sometimes acquired by mere accident. Those which are totally inappropriate, no reasonable design can have bestowed. Thus a fancied resemblance between the island of Aquidneck, in Narraganset Bay, and that of Rhodes, in the *Ægean Sea*, has at length given to a *state*, or *republic*, which lies *chiefly on the main land*, the absurd name of *Rhode Island*; so that now, to distinguish Aquidneck itself, geographers resort to the strange phrase, "*the Island of Rhode Island*."--*Balbi*. The official title of this little republic, is, "*the State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations*." But this name is not only too long for popular use, but it is doubtful in its construction and meaning. It is capable of being understood in four different ways. 1. A stranger to the fact, would not learn from this phrase, that the "Providence Plantations" are included in the "State of Rhode Island," but would naturally infer the contrary. 2. The phrase, "Rhode Island and Providence Plantations,"

may be supposed to mean "Rhode Island [Plantations] and Providence Plantations." 3. It may be understood to mean "Rhode Island and Providence [i.e., two] Plantations." 4. It may be taken for "Rhode Island" [i.e., as an island,] and the "Providence Plantations." Which, now, of all these did Charles the Second mean, when he gave the colony this name, with his charter, in 1663? It happened that he meant the last; but I doubt whether any man in the state, except perhaps some learned lawyer, can *parse* the phrase, with any certainty of its true construction and meaning. This old title can never be used, except in law. To write the popular name "*Rhodeisland*," as Dr. Webster has it in his *American Spelling-Book*, p. 121, would be some improvement upon it; but to make it *Rhodeland*, or simply *Rhode*, would be much more appropriate. As for *Rhode Island*, it ought to mean nothing but the island; and it is, in fact, *an abuse of language* to apply it otherwise. In one of his parsing lessons, Sanborn gives us for good English the following tautology: "*Rhode Island* derived its name from the *island of Rhode Island*."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 37. Think of that sentence!

OBS. 11.--On Rules 7th and 8th, concerning *Two Capitals for Compounds*, I would observe, with a general reference to those *compound terms* which designate particular places or things, that it is often no easy matter to determine, either from custom or from analogy, whether such common words as may happen to be embraced in them, are to be accounted parts of compound proper names and written with capitals, or to be regarded as appellatives, requiring small letters according to Rule 9th. Again the question may be, whether they ought not to be joined to the foregoing word, according to Rule 6th. Let the numerous examples under these four rules be duly considered: for usage, in respect to each of them, is diverse; so much so, that we not unfrequently find it contradictory, in the very same page, paragraph, or even sentence. Perhaps we may reach some principles of uniformity and consistency, by observing the several different kinds of phrases thus used.

1. We often add an adjective to an old proper name to make a new one, or to serve the purpose of distinction: as, New York, New Orleans, New England, New Bedford; North America, South America; Upper Canada, Lower Canada; Great Pedee, Little Pedee; East Cambridge, West Cambridge; Troy, West Troy. All names of this class require two capitals: except a few which are joined together; as *Northampton*, which is sometimes more analogically written *North Hampton*.
2. We often use the possessive case with some common noun after it; as, Behring's Straits, Baffin's Bay, Cook's Inlet, Van Diemen's Land, Martha's Vineyard, Sacket's Harbour, Glenn's Falls. Names of this class generally have more than one capital; and perhaps all of them should be written so, except such as coalesce; as, Gravesend, Moorestown, the Crowsnest.
3. We sometimes use two common nouns with *of* between them; as, the Cape of Good Hope, the Isle of Man, the Isles of Shoals, the Lake of the Woods, the Mountains of the Moon. Such nouns are usually written with more than one capital. I would therefore write "the Mount of Olives" in this manner, though it is not commonly found so in the Bible.
4. We often use an adjective and a common noun; as, the Yellow sea, the Indian ocean, the White hills, Crooked lake, the Red river; or, with two capitals, the Yellow Sea, the Indian Ocean, the White Hills, Crooked Lake, the Red River. In this class of names the adjective is the distinctive word, and always has a capital; respecting the other term, usage is divided, but seems rather to favour two capitals.
5. We frequently put an appellative, or common noun, before or after a proper name; as, New York city, Washington street, Plymouth county, Greenwich village. "The Carondelet canal extends from the city of New Orleans to the bayou St. John, connecting lake Pontchartrain with the Mississippi river."--*Balbi's Geog.* This is apposition. In phrases of this kind, the common noun often has a capital, but it seldom absolutely requires it; and in general a small letter is more correct, except in some few instances in which the common noun is regarded as a permanent part of the name; as in *Washington City*, *Jersey City*. The words *Mount*, *Cape*, *Lake*, and *Bay*, are now generally written with capitals when connected with their proper names; as, Mount Hope, Cape Cod, Lake Erie, Casco Bay. But they are not always so written, even in modern books; and in the Bible we read of "mount Horeb, mount Sinai, mount Zion, mount Olivet," and many others, always with a single capital.

OBS. 12.--In modern compound names, the hyphen is now less frequently used than it was a few years ago. They seldom, if ever, need it, unless they are employed as adjectives; and then there is a manifest propriety in inserting it. Thus the phrase, "the New London Bridge," can be understood only of a new bridge in London; and if we intend by it a bridge in New London, we must say, "the New-London Bridge." So "the New York Directory" is not properly a directory for New York, but a new directory for York. I have seen several books with titles which, for this reason, were evidently erroneous. With respect to the ancient Scripture names, of

this class, we find, in different editions of the Bible, as well as in other books, many discrepancies. The reader may see a very fair specimen of them, by comparing together the last two vocabularies of Walker's Key. He will there meet with an abundance of examples like these: "Uz'zen Shérâh, Uzzen-shérâh; Talitha Cúmi, Talithacúmi; Náthan Mélech, Nathan'-melech; A'bel Mehólath, Abel-mehólâh; Házêl Elpóni, Hazelepóni; Az'noth Tábor, Asnoth-tábor; Báal Ham'on, Baal-hámon; Hámon Gog, Ham'ongog; Báal Zébub, Bâal'zebub; Shéthar Boz'nâi, Shether-boz'nâi; Meródach Bal'adan, Merodach-bal'adan." All these glaring inconsistencies, and many more, has Dr. Webster restereotyped from Walker, in his octavo Dictionary! I see no more need of the hyphen in such names, than in those of modern times. They ought, in some instances, to be joined together without it; and, in others, to be written separately, with double capitals. But special regard should be had to the ancient text. The phrase, "Talitha, cumi,"--i. e., "Damsel, arise,"--is found in some Bibles, "Talitha-cumi;" but this form of it is no more correct than either of those quoted above. See *Mark*, v, 41st, in *Griesbach's Greek Testament*, where a comma divides this expression.

OBS. 13.--On Rule 10th, concerning *Personifications*, it may be well to observe, that not every noun which is the name of an object personified, must begin with a capital, but only such as have a resemblance to *proper nouns*; for the word *person* itself, or *persons*, or any other common noun denoting persons or a person, demands no such distinction. And proper names of persons are so marked, not with any reference to personality, but because they are *proper nouns*--or names of individuals, and not names of sorts. Thus, Æsop's viper and file are both personified, where it is recorded, "'What ails thee, fool?' says the *file* to the *viper*;" but the fable gives to these names no capitals, except in the title of the story. It may here be added, that, according to their definitions of personification, our grammarians and the teachers of rhetoric have hitherto formed no very accurate idea of what constitutes the figure. Lindley Murray says, "PERSONIFICATION [,] or PROSOPOPOEIA, is that figure by which we attribute *life* and *action* to *inanimate* objects."--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 346; *Duodecimo*, p. 211. Now this is all wrong, doubly wrong,--wrong in relation to what personification is, and wrong too in its specification of the objects which may be personified. For "*life and action*" not being peculiar to *persons*, there must be something else than these ascribed, to form the figure; and, surely, the objects which *Fancy* thinks it right to personify, are not always "*inanimate*." I have elsewhere defined the thing as follows: "*Personification* is a figure by which, in imagination, we ascribe intelligence and personality to unintelligent beings or abstract qualities."--*Inst.*, p. 234.

OBS. 14.--On Rule 11th, concerning *Derivatives*, I would observe, that not only the proper adjectives, to which this rule more particularly refers, but also nouns, and even verbs, derived from such adjectives, are frequently, if not generally, written with an initial capital. Thus, from *Greece*, we have *Greek*, *Greeks*, *Greekish*, *Greeklings*, *Grecise*, *Grecism*, *Grecian*, *Grecians*, *Grecianize*. So Murray, copying Blair, speaks of "*Latinised English*;" and, again, of style strictly "*English*, without *Scotticisms* or *Galicisms*."--*Mur. Gram.*, 8vo, p. 295; *Blair's Lect.*, pp. 93 and 94. But it is questionable, how far this principle respecting capitals ought to be carried. The examples in Dr. Johnson's quarto Dictionary exhibit the words, *gallicisms*, *anglicisms*, *hebrician*, *latinize*, *latinized*, *judaized*, and *christianized*, without capitals; and the words *Latinisms*, *Grecisms*, *Hebraisms*, and *Frenchified*, under like circumstances, with them. Dr. Webster also defines *Romanize*, "To *Latinize*; to conform to *Romish* opinions." In the examples of Johnson, there is a manifest inconsistency. Now, with respect to adjectives from proper names, and also to the nouns formed immediately from such adjectives, it is clear that they ought to have capitals: no one will contend that the words *American* and *Americans* should be written with a small *a*. With respect to *Americanism*, *Gallicism*, and other similar words, there may be some room to doubt. But I prefer a capital for these. And, that we may have a uniform rule to go by, I would not stop here, but would write *Americanize* and *Americanized* with a capital also; for it appears that custom is in favour of thus distinguishing nearly all verbs and participles of this kind, so long as they retain an obvious reference to their particular origin. But when any such word ceases to be understood as referring directly to the proper name, it may properly be written without a capital. Thus we write *jalap* from *Jalapa*, *hermetical* from *Hermes*, *hymeneal* from *Hymen*, *simony*, from *Simon*, *philippic* from *Philip*; the verbs, to *hector*, to *romance*, to *japan*, to *christen*, to *philippize*, to *galvanize*; and the adverbs *hermetically* and *jesuitically*, all without a capital: and perhaps *judaize*, *christianize*, and their derivatives, may join this class. Dr. Webster's octavo Dictionary mentions "the *prussic* acid" and "*prussian* blue," without a capital; and so does Worcester's.

OBS. 15.--On Rule 12th, concerning *I* and *O*, it may be observed, that although many who occasionally write, are ignorant enough to violate this, as well as every other rule of grammar, yet no printer ever commits blunders of this sort. Consequently, the few erroneous examples which will be exhibited for correction under it, will not be undesigned mistakes. Among the errors of books, we do not find the printing of the words *I* and *O* in small characters; but the confounding of *O* with the other interjection *oh*, is not uncommon even among grammarians. The latter has no concern with this rule, nor is it equivalent to the former, as a sign: *O* is a note of wishing, earnestness, and vocative address; but *oh* is, properly, a sign of sorrow, pain, or surprise. In the following example, therefore, a line from Milton is perverted:--

"*Oh* thou! that with surpassing glory crowned!" --*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 88.

OBS. 16.--On Rule 13th, concerning *Poetry*, it may be observed, that the principle applies only to regular versification, which is the common form, if not the distinguishing mark, of poetical composition. And, in this, the practice of beginning every line with a capital is almost universal; but I have seen some books in which it was whimsically disregarded. Such poetry as that of Macpherson's *Ossian*, or such as the common translation of the *Psalms*, is subjected neither to this rule, nor to the common laws of verse.

OBS. 17.--On Rule 14th, concerning *Examples, Speeches, and Quotations*, it may be observed, that the propriety of beginning these with a capital or otherwise, depends in some measure upon their form. One may suggest certain words by way of example, (as *see, saw, seeing, seen,*) and they will require no capital; or he may sometimes write one half of a sentence in his own words, and quote the other with the guillemets and no capital; but whatsoever is cited as being said with other relations of what is called *person*, requires something to distinguish it from the text into which it is woven. Thus Cobbett observes, that, "The French, in their Bible, say *Le Verbe*, where we say *The Word*."--*E. Gram.*, p. 21. Cobbett says *the whole* of this; but he here refers one short phrase to the French nation, and an other to the English, not improperly beginning each with a capital, and further distinguishing them by Italics. Our common Bibles make no use of the quotation points, but rely solely upon capitals and the common points, to show where any particular speech begins or ends. In some instances, the insufficiency of these means is greatly felt, notwithstanding the extraordinary care of the original writers, in the use of introductory phrases. Murray says, "When a quotation is brought in obliquely after a comma, a capital is unnecessary: as, 'Solomon observes, "that pride goes before destruction."'""--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 284. But, as the word '*that*' belongs not to Solomon, and the next word begins his assertion, I think we ought to write it, "Solomon observes, that, '*Pride goeth* before destruction.'" Or, if we do not mean to quote him literally, we may omit the guillemets, and say, "Solomon observes that pride goes before destruction."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

[Fist][The improprieties in the following examples are to be corrected orally by the learner, according to the formules given, or according to others framed from them with such slight changes as the several quotations may require. A correct example will occasionally be admitted for the sake of contrast, or that the learner may see the quoted author's inconsistency. It will also serve as a block over which stupidity may stumble and wake up. But a full explanation of what is intended, will be afforded in the Key.]

UNDER RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

"Many a reader of the bible knows not who wrote the acts of the apostles."--*G. B.*

[FORMULE OF CORRECTION.--Not proper, because the words, *bible, acts*, and *apostles*, here begin with small letters. But, according to Rule 1st, "When particular books are mentioned by their names, the chief words in their titles begin with capitals, and the other letters are small." Therefore, "Bible" should begin with

a capital B; and "Acts" and "Apostles," each with a large A.]

"The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, were written in the book of the chronicles."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: *Neh.*, xii, 23. "Are they not written in the book of the acts of Solomon?"--SCOTT, ALGER: *I Kings*, xi, 41. "Are they not written in the book of the Chronicles of the kings of Israel?"--ALGER: *I Kings*, xxii, 39. "Are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?"--SCOTT: *ib.*, ver. 45. "Which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms."--SCOTT: *Luke*, xxiv, 44. "The narrative of which may be seen in Josephus's History of the Jewish wars."--*Scott's Preface*, p. ix. "This history of the Jewish war was Josephus's first work, and published about A. D. 75."--*Note to Josephus*. "I have read," says Photius, 'the chronology of Justus of Tiberias.'"--*Ib.*, *Jos. Life*. "A philosophical grammar, written by James Harris, Esquire."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 34. "The reader is referred to Stroud's sketch of the slave laws."--*Anti-Slavery Mag.*, i, 25. "But God has so made the bible that it interprets itself."--*Ib.*, i, 78. "In 1562, with the help of Hopkins, he completed the psalter."--*Music of Nature*, p. 283. "Gardiner says this of *Sternhold*; of whom the universal biographical dictionary and the American encyclopedia affirm, that he died in 1549."--*Author*. "The title of a Book, to wit: 'English Grammar in familiar lectures,'" &c.--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 2. "We had not, at that time, seen Mr. Kirkham's 'Grammar in familiar Lectures.'"--*Ib.*, p. 3. "When you parse, you may spread the Compendium before you."--*Ib.*, p. 53. "Whenever you parse, you may spread the compendium before you."--*Ib.*, p. 113. "Adelung was the author of a grammatical and critical dictionary of the German language, and other works."--*Univ. Biog. Dict.* "Alley, William, author of 'the poor man's library,' and a translation of the Pentateuch, died in 1570."--*Ib.*

UNDER RULE II.--OF FIRST WORDS.

"Depart instantly: improve your time: forgive us our sins."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 61.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words *improve* and *forgive* begin with small letters. But, according to Rule 2nd, "The first word of every distinct sentence should begin with a capital." Therefore, "Improve" should begin with a capital I; and "Forgive," with a capital F.]

EXAMPLES: "Gold is corrupting; the sea is green; a lion is bold."--*Mur. Gram.*, p. 170; *et al.* Again: "It may rain; he may go or stay; he would walk; they should learn."--*Ib.*, p. 64; *et al.* Again: "Oh! I have alienated my friend; alas! I fear for life."--*Ib.*, p. 128; *et al.* Again: "He went from London to York;" "she is above disguise;" "they are supported by industry."--*Ib.*, p. 28; *et al.* "On the foregoing examples, I have a word to say. they are better than a fair specimen of their kind, our grammars abound with worse illustrations, their models of English are generally spurious quotations. few of their proof-texts have any just parentage, goose-eyes are abundant, but names scarce. who fathers the foundlings? nobody. then let their merit be nobody's, and their defects his who could write no better."--*Author*. "goose-eyes!" says a bright boy; "pray, what are they? does this Mr. Author make new words when he pleases? *dead-eyes* are in a ship, they are blocks, with holes in them, but what are goose-eyes in grammar?" ANSWER: "*goose-eyes* are quotation points, some of the Germans gave them this name, making a jest of their form, the French call them *guillemets*, from the name of their inventor."--*Author*. "*it* is a personal pronoun, of the third person singular."--*Comly's Gram.*, 12th Ed., p. 126. "*ourselves* is a personal pronoun, of the first person plural."--*Ib.*, 138. "*thee* is a personal pronoun, of the second person singular."--*Ib.*, 126. "*contentment* is a noun common, of the third person singular."--*Ib.*, 128. "*were* is a neuter verb, of the indicative mood, imperfect tense."--*Ib.*, 129.

UNDER RULE III.--OF DEITY.

"O thou dispenser of life! thy mercies are boundless."--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 449.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *dispenser* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 3d, "All names of the Deity, and sometimes their emphatic substitutes, should begin with capitals." Therefore,

"Dispenser" should here begin with a capital D.]

"Shall not the judge of all the earth do right?"--SCOTT: *Gen.*, xviii, 25. "And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 330. "It is the gift of him, who is the great author of good, and the Father of mercies."--*Ib.*, 287. "This is thy god that brought thee up out of Egypt."--SCOTT, ALGER: *Neh.*, ix, 18. "For the lord is our defence; and the holy one of Israel is our king."--See *Psalms* lxxxix, 18. "By making him the responsible steward of heaven's bounties."--*Anti-Slavery Mag.*, i, 29. "Which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day."--SCOTT, FRIENDS: *2 Tim.*, iv, 8. "The cries of them * * * entered into the ears of the Lord of sabaoth."--SCOTT: *James*, v, 4. "In Horeb, the deity revealed himself to Moses, as the eternal I am, the self-existent one; and, after the first discouraging interview of his messengers with Pharaoh, he renewed his promise to them, by the awful name, *jehovah*--a name till then unknown, and one which the Jews always held it a fearful profanation to pronounce."--*Author*. "And god spake unto Moses, and said unto him, I am the lord: and I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of god almighty; but by my name *jehovah* was I not known to them."--See [106] *Exod.*, vi, 2. "Thus saith the lord the king of Israel, and his redeemer the lord of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and besides me there is no god."--See *Isa.*, xliv, 6.

"His impious race their blasphemy renew'd, And nature's king through nature's optics view'd."--*Dryden*, p. 90.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF PROPER NAMES.

"Islamism prescribes fasting during the month *ramazan*."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 17.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *ramazan* here begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 4th, "Proper names, of every description, should always begin with capitals." Therefore, "Ramazan" should begin with a capital R. The word is also misspelled: it should rather be *Ramadan*.]

"Near mecca, in arabia, is *jebel nor*, or the mountain of light, on the top of which the mussulmans erected a mosque, that they might perform their devotions where, according to their belief, mohammed received from the angel gabriel the first chapter of the Koran."--*Author*. "In the kaaba at mecca, there is a celebrated block of volcanic basalt, which the mohammedans venerate as the gift of gabriel to abraham, but their ancestors once held it to be an image of remphan, or saturn; so 'the image which fell down from jupiter,' to share with diana the homage of the ephesians, was probably nothing more than a meteoric stone."--*Id.* "When the lycaonians, at lystra, took paul and barnabas to be gods, they called the former mercury, on account of his eloquence, and the latter jupiter, for the greater dignity of his appearance."--*Id.* "Of the writings of the apostolic fathers of the first century, but few have come down to us; yet we have in those of barnabas, clement of rome, hermas, ignatius, and polycarp, very certain evidence of the authenticity of the New Testament, and the New Testament is a voucher for the old."--*Id.*

"It is said by tatian, that theagenes of rhegium, in the time of cambyses, stesimbrotus the thracian, antimachus the colophonian, herodotus of halicarnassus, dionysius the olynthian, ephorus of cumæ, philochorus the athenian, metaclides and chamæleon the peripatetics, and zenodotus, aristophanes, callimachus, erates, eratosthenes, aristarchus, and apollodorus, the grammarians, all wrote concerning the poetry, the birth, and the age of homer." See *Coleridge's Introd.*, p. 57. "Yet, for aught that now appears, the life of homer is as fabulous as that of hercules; and some have even suspected, that, as the son of jupiter and alcmene, has fathered the deeds of forty other herculeses, so this unfathered son of critheis, themisto, or whatever dame--this melesigenes, mæonides, homer--the blind schoolmaster, and poet, of smyrna, chios, colophon, salamis, rhodes, argos, athens, or whatever place--has, by the help of lycurgus, solon, pisistratus, and other learned ancients, been made up of many poets or homers, and set so far aloft and aloof on old parnassus, as to become a god in the eyes of all greece, a wonder in those of all Christendom."--*Author*.

"Why so sagacious in your guesses? Your *effs*, and *tees*, and *arrs*, and *esses*?"--*Swift*.

UNDER RULE V.--OF TITLES.

"The king has conferred on him the title of duke."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 193.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *duke* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 5th, "Titles of office or honour, and epithets of distinction, applied to persons, begin usually with capitals." Therefore, "Duke" should here begin with a capital D.]

"At the court of queen Elizabeth."--*Murray's Gram.*; 8vo, p. 157; 12mo, p. 126; *Fisk's*, 115; *et al.* "The laws of nature are, truly, what lord Bacon styles his aphorisms, laws of laws."--*Murray's Key*, p. 260. "Sixtus the fourth was, if I mistake not, a great collector of books."--*Ib.*, p. 257. "Who at that time made up the court of king Charles the second."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 314. "In case of his majesty's dying without issue."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 181. "King Charles the first was beheaded in 1649."--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 45. "He can no more impart or (to use lord Bacon's word,) *transmit* convictions."--*Kirkham's Eloc.*, p. 220. "I reside at lord Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 176. "We staid a month at lord Lyttleton's, the ornament of his country."--*Ib.*, p. 177. "Whose prerogative is it? It is the king of Great Britain's;" "That is the duke of Bridgewater's canal;" "The bishop of Llandaff's excellent book;" "The Lord mayor of London's authority."--*Ib.*, p. 176. "Why call ye me lord, lord, and do not the things which I say?"--See GRIESBACH: *Luke*, vi, 46. "And of them he chose twelve, whom also he named apostles."--SCOTT: *Luke*, vi, 13. "And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, Hail, master; and kissed him."--See *the Greek: Matt.*, xxvi, 49. "And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent."--*Luke*, xvi, 30.

UNDER RULE VI.--OF ONE CAPITAL.

"Fall River, a village in Massachusetts, population 3431."--See *Univ. Gaz.*, p. 416.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the name *Fall River* is here written in two parts, and with two capitals. But, according to Rule 6th, "Those compound proper names which by analogy incline to a union of their parts without a hyphen, should be so written, and have but one capital." Therefore, *Fallriver*, as the name of a *town*, should be one word, and retain but one capital.]

"Dr. Anderson died at West Ham, in Essex, in 1808."--*Biog. Dict.* "Mad River, [the name of] two towns in Clark and Champaign counties, Ohio."--*Williams's Universal Gazetteer*. "White Creek, town of Washington county, N. York."--*Ib.* "Salt Creek, the name of four towns in different parts of Ohio."--*Ib.* "Salt Lick, a town of Fayette county, Pennsylvania."--*Ib.* "Yellow Creek, a town of Columbiana county, Ohio."--*Ib.* "White Clay, a hundred of New Castle county, Delaware."--*Ib.* "Newcastle, town and halfshire of Newcastle county, Delaware."--*Ib.* "Sing-Sing, a village of West Chester county, New York, situated in the town of Mount Pleasant."--*Ib.* "West Chester, a county of New York; also a town in Westchester county."--*Ib.* "West Town, a village of Orange county, New York."--*Ib.* "White Water, a town of Hamilton county, Ohio."--*Ib.* "White Water River, a considerable stream that rises in Indiana, and flowing southeasterly, unites with the Miami, in Ohio."--*Ib.* "Black Water, a village of Hampshire, in England, and a town in Ireland."--*Ib.* "Black Water, the name of seven different rivers in England, Ireland, and the United States."--*Ib.* "Red Hook, a town of Dutchess county, New York, on the Hudson."--*Ib.* "Kinderhook, a town of Columbia county, New York, on the Hudson."--*Ib.* "New Fane, a town of Niagara county, New York."--*Ib.* "Lake Port, a town of Chicot county, Arkansas."--*Ib.* "Moose Head Lake, the chief source of the Kennebeck, in Maine."--*Ib.* "Macdonough, a county of Illinois, population (in 1830) 2,959."--*Ib.*, p. 408. "Mc Donough, a county of Illinois, with a courthouse, at Macomb."--*Ib.*, p. 185. "Half-Moon, the name of two towns, in New York and Pennsylvania; also of two bays in the West Indies."--See *Worcester's Gaz.* "Le Boeuf, a town of Erie county, Pennsylvania, near a small lake of the same name."--*Ib.* "Charles City, James City, Elizabeth City, names of counties in Virginia, not cities, nor towns."--See *Univ. Gaz.* "The superior qualities of the waters of the Frome, here called Stroud water."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 223.

UNDER RULE VII.--TWO CAPITALS.

"The Forth rises on the north side of Benlomond, and runs easterly."--*Glas. Geog.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the name "*Benlomond*" is compounded under one capital, contrary to the general analogy of other similar terms. But, according to Rule 7th, "The compounding of a name under one capital should be avoided when the general analogy of other similar terms suggests a separation under two." Therefore, "Ben Lomond" should be written with two capitals and no hyphen.]

"The red granite of Ben-nevis is said to be the finest in the world."--*Ib.*, ii, 311. "Ben-more, in Perthshire, is 3,915 feet above the level of the sea."--*Ib.*, 313. "The height of Benclough is 2,420 feet."--*Ib.*. "In Sutherland and Caithness, are Ben Ormod, Ben Clibeg, Ben Grin, Ben Hope, and Ben Lugal."--*Ib.*, 311. "Benvracky is 2,756 feet high; Ben-ledi, 3,009; and Benvoirlich, 3,300."--*Ib.*, 313. "The river Dochart gives the name of Glendochart to the vale through which it runs."--*Ib.*, 314. "About ten miles from its source, the Tay diffuses itself into Lochdochart."--*Geog. altered.* LAKES:--"Lochard, Loch-Achray, Loch-Con, Loch-Doine, Loch-Katrine, Loch-Lomond, Loch-Voil."--*Scott's Lady of the Lake.* GLENS:--"Glenfinlas, Glen Fruin, Glen Luss, Ross-dhu, Leven-glen, Strath-Endrick, Strath-Gartney, Strath-Ire."--*Ib.* MOUNTAINS:--"Ben-an, Benharrow, Benledi, Ben-Lomond, Benvoirlich, Ben-venue, and sometimes Benvenue."--*Ib.* "Fenelon died in 1715, deeply lamented by all the inhabitants of the Low-countries."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 322. "And Pharaoh-nechoh made Eliakim, the son of Josiah, king."--SCOTT, FRIENDS: 2 *Kings*, xxiii, 34. "Those who seem so merry and well pleased, call her *Good Fortune*; but the others, who weep and wring their hands, *Bad-fortune*."--*Collier's Tablet of Cebes.*

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"When Joab returned, and smote Edom in the valley of salt."--SCOTT: *Ps.* lx, *title.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words *valley* and *salt* begin with small letters. But, according to Rule 8th, "When any adjective or common noun is made a distinct part of a compound proper name, it ought to begin with a capital." Therefore, "Valley" should here begin with a capital V, and "Salt" with a capital S.]

"Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill and said," &c.--SCOTT: *Acts*, xvii, 22. "And at night he went out, and abode in the mount that is called the mount of Olives."--*Luke*, xxi, 37. "Abgillus, son of the king of the Frisii, surnamed Prester John, was in the Holy land with Charlemagne."--*Univ. Biog. Dict.* "Cape Palmas, in Africa, divides the Grain coast from the Ivory coast."--*Dict. of Geog.*, p. 125. "The North Esk, flowing from Loch-lee, falls into the sea three miles north of Montrose."--*Ib.*, p. 232. "At Queen's ferry, the channel of the Forth is contracted by promontories on both coasts."--*Ib.*, p. 233. "The Chestnut ridge is about twenty-five miles west of the Alleghanies, and Laurel ridge, ten miles further west."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 65. "Washington City, the metropolis of the United States of America."--*W.'s Univ. Gaz.*, p. 380. "Washington city, in the District of Columbia, population (in 1830) 18,826."--*Ib.*, p. 408. "The loftiest peak of the white mountains, in new Hampshire, is called mount Washington."--*Author.* "Mount's bay, in the west of England, lies between the land's end and lizard point."--*Id.* "Salamis, an island of the Egean Sea, off the southern coast of the ancient Attica."--*Dict. of Geog.* "Rhodes, an island of the Egean sea, the largest and most easterly of the Cyclades."--*Ib.* "But he overthrew Pharaoh and his host in the Red sea."--BRUCE'S BIBLE: *Ps.* cxxxvi, 15. "But they provoked him at the sea, even at the Red sea."--SCOTT: *Ps.* cvi, 7.[107]

UNDER RULE IX.--OF APPOSITION.

"At that time, Herod the Tetrarch heard of the fame of Jesus."--ALGER: *Matt.*, xiv, 1.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word Tetrarch begins with a capital letter. But, according to Rule 8th, "When a common and a proper name are associated merely to explain each other, it is in general sufficient, if

the proper name begin with a capital, and the appellative, with a small letter." Therefore, "tetrarch" should here begin with a small *t*.]

"Who has been more detested than Judas the Traitor?"--*Author*. "St. Luke, the Evangelist, was a physician of Antioch, and one of the converts of St. Paul."--*Id*. "Luther, the Reformer, began his bold career by preaching against papal indulgences."--*Id*. "The Poet Lydgate was a disciple and admirer of Chaucer: he died in 1440."--*Id*. "The Grammarian Varro, 'the most learned of the Romans,' wrote three books when he was eighty years old."--*Id*. "John Despauter, the great Grammarian of Flanders, whose works are still valued, died in 1520."--*Id*. "Nero, the Emperor and Tyrant of Rome, slew himself to avoid a worse death."--*Id*. "Cicero the Orator, 'the Father of his Country,' was assassinated at the age of 64."--*Id*. "Euripides, the Greek Tragedian, was born in the Island of Salamis, B. C. 476."--*Id*. "I will say unto God my Rock, Why hast thou forgotten me?"--SCOTT: *Ps.* xlii, 9. "Staten Island, an island of New York, nine miles below New York City."--*Univ. Gaz.* "When the son of Atreus, King of Men, and the noble Achilles first separated."--*Coleridge's Introd.*, p. 83.

"Hermes, his Patron-God, those gifts bestow'd, Whose shrine with weaning lambs he wont to load." --POPE: *Odys.*, B. 19.

UNDER RULE X.--OF PERSONIFICATIONS.

"But wisdom is justified of all her children."--SCOTT, ALGER: *Luke*, vii, 35.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *wisdom* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 10th, "The name of an object personified, when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital." Therefore, "Wisdom" should here begin with a capital *W*.]

"Fortune and the church are generally put in the feminine gender."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 37. "Go to your natural religion; lay before her Mahomet, and his disciples."--*Blair's Rhetoric*, p. 157: see also *Murray's Gram.*, i, 347. "O death! where is thy sting? O grave! where is thy victory?"--*I Cor.*, xv, 55; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 348; *English Reader*, 31; *Merchant's Gram.*, 212. "Ye cannot serve God and Mammon."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Matt.*, vi, 24. "Ye cannot serve God and mammon."--*IIDEM: Luke*, xvi, 13. "This house was built as if suspicion herself had dictated the plan."--See *Key*. "Poetry distinguishes herself from prose, by yielding to a musical law."--See *Key*. "My beauteous deliverer thus uttered her divine instructions: 'My name is religion. I am the offspring of truth and love, and the parent of benevolence, hope, and joy. That monster, from whose power I have freed you, is called superstition: she is the child of discontent, and her followers are fear and sorrow.'"--See *Key*. "Neither hope nor fear could enter the retreats; and habit had so absolute a power, that even conscience, if religion had employed her in their favour, would not have been able to force an entrance."--See *Key*.

"In colleges and halls in ancient days, There dwelt a sage called discipline."--*Wayland's M. Sci.*, p. 368.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF DERIVATIVES.

"In English, I would have gallicisms avoided."--FELTON: *Johnson's Dict.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *gallicisms* here begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 11th, "Words derived from proper names, and having direct reference to particular persons, places, sects, or nations, should begin with capitals." Therefore, "Gallicisms" should begin with a capital *G*.]

"Sallust was born in Italy, 85 years before the christian era."--*Murray's Seq.*, p. 357. "Dr. Doddridge was not only a great man, but one of the most excellent and useful christians, and christian ministers."--*Ib.*, 319. "They corrupt their style with untutored anglicisms."--MILTON: in *Johnson's Dict.* "Albert of Stade, author of a

chronicle from the creation to 1286, a benedictine of the 13th century."--*Universal Biog. Dict.* "Graffio, a jesuit of Capua in the 16th century, author of two volumes on moral subjects."--*Ib.* "They frenchify and italianize words whenever they can."--See *Key*. "He who sells a christian, sells the grace of God."--*Anti-Slavery Mag.*, p. 77. "The first persecution against the christians, under Nero, began A. D. 64."--*Gregory's Dict.* "P. Rapin, the jesuit, uniformly decides in favour of the Roman writers."--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, ¶ 171. "The Roman poet and epicurean philosopher Lucretius has said," &c.--*Cohen's Florida*, p. 107. Spell "calvinistic, atticism, gothicism, epicurism, jesuitism, sabianism, socinianism, anglican, anglicism, anglicize, vandalism, gallicism, romanize."--*Webster's El. Spelling-Book*, 130-133. "The large ternate bat."--*Webster's Dict.* w. ROSSET; *Bolles's Dict.*, w. ROSET.

"Church-ladders are not always mounted best By learned clerks, and latinists profess'd."--*Cowper*.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

"Fall back, fall back; i have not room:--o! methinks i see a couple whom i should know."--*Lucian, varied*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *I*, which occurs three times, and the word *O*, which occurs once, are here printed in letters of the lower case.[108] But, according to Rule 12th, "The words *I* and *O* should always be capitals." Therefore, each should be changed to a capital, as often as it occurs.]

"Nay, i live as i did, i think as i did, i love you as i did; but all these are to no purpose: the world will not live, think, or love, as i do."--*Swift, varied*. "Whither, o! whither shall i fly? o wretched prince! o cruel reverse of fortune! o father Micipsa! is this the consequence of thy generosity?"--*Sallust, varied*. "When i was a child, i spake as a child, i understood as a child, i thought as a child; but when i became a man, i put away childish things."--*I Cor.*, xiii, 11, *varied*. "And i heard, but i understood not: then said i, o my Lord, what shall be the end of these things?"--*Dan.*, xii, 8, *varied*. "Here am i; i think i am very good, and i am quite sure i am very happy, yet i never wrote a treatise in my life."--*Few Days in Athens, varied*. "Singular, Vocative, *o master*; Plural, Vocative, *o masters*."--*Bicknell's Gram.*, p. 30.

"I, i am he; o father! rise, behold Thy son, with twenty winters now grown old!"--See *Pope's Odyssey*.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

"Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense, lie in three words--health, peace, and competence; but health consists with temperance alone, and peace, O Virtue! peace is all thy own." *Pope's Essay on Man, a fine London Edition*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the last three lines of this example begin with small letters. But, according to Rule 18th, "Every line in poetry, except what is regarded as making but one verse with the preceding line, should begin with a capital." Therefore, the words, "Lie," "But," and "And," at the commencement of these lines, should severally begin with the capitals L, B, and A.]

"Observe the language well in all you write, and swerve not from it in your loftiest flight. The smoothest verse and the exactest sense displease us, if ill English give offence: a barbarous phrase no reader can approve; nor bombast, noise, or affectation love. In short, without pure language, what you write can never yield us profit or delight. Take time for thinking, never work in haste; and value not yourself for writing fast." See *Dryden's Art of Poetry*:--*British Poets*, Vol. iii, p. 74.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

"The word *rather* is very properly used to express a small degree or excess of a quality: as, 'she is *rather* profuse in her expenses.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 47.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *she* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 14th, "The first word of a full example, of a distinct speech, or of a direct quotation, should begin with a capital." Therefore, the word "She" should here begin with a capital S.]

"Neither imports *not either*; that is, not one nor the other: as, 'neither of my friends was there.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 56. "When we say, 'he is a tall man,' 'this is a fair day,' we make some reference to the ordinary size of men, and to different weather."--*Ib.*, p. 47. "We more readily say, 'A million of men,' than 'a thousand of men.'"--*Ib.*, p. 169. "So in the instances, 'two and two are four;' 'the fifth and sixth volumes will complete the set of books.'"--*Ib.*, p. 124. "The adjective may frequently either precede or follow it [the verb]: as, 'the man is happy;' or, 'happy is the man:' 'The interview was *delightful*;' or, '*delightful* was the interview.'"--*Ib.*, p. 168. "If we say, 'he writes a pen,' 'they ran the river,' 'the tower fell the Greeks,' 'Lambeth is Westminster-abbey,' [we speak absurdly;] and, it is evident, there is a vacancy which must be filled up by some connecting word: as thus, 'He writes *with* a pen;' 'they ran *towards* the river;' 'the tower fell *upon* the Greeks;' 'Lambeth is *over against* Westminster-abbey.'"--*Ib.*, p. 118. "Let me repeat it;--he only is great, who has the habits of greatness."--*Murray's Key*, 241. "I say not unto thee, until seven times; but, until seventy times seven."--*See Matt.*, xviii, 22.

"The Panther smil'd at this; and when, said she, Were those first councils disallow'd by me?"--*Dryden*, p. 95.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF CHIEF WORDS.

"The supreme council of the nation is called the divan."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 360.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *divan* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 15th, "Other words of particular importance, and such as denote the principal subjects treated of, may be distinguished by capitals." Therefore, "Divan" should here begin with a capital D.]

"The British parliament is composed of kings, lords, and commons."--*Murray's Key*, p. 184. "A popular orator in the House of Commons has a sort of patent for coining as many new terms as he pleases."--*See Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 169; *Murray's Gram.*, 364. "They may all be taken together, as one name; as, the *house of commons*."--*Merchant's School Gram.*, p. 25. "Intrusted to persons in whom the parliament could confide."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 202. "For 'The Lords' house,' it were certainly better to say, 'The house of lords;' and, in stead of 'The commons' vote,' to say, 'The votes of the commons.'"--*See ib.*, p. 177, 4th *Amer. Ed.*; also *Priestley's Gram.*, p. 69. "The house of lords were so much influenced by these reasons."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 152; *Priestley's Gram.*, 188. "Rhetoricians commonly divide them into two great classes; figures of words, and figures of thought. The former, figures of words, are commonly called tropes."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 132. "Perhaps figures of imagination, and figures of passion, might be a more useful distribution."--*Ib.*, p. 133. "Hitherto we have considered sentences, under the heads of perspicuity, unity, and strength."--*Ib.*, p. 120.

"The word is then depos'd, and in this view, You rule the scripture, not the scripture you."--*Dryden*, p. 95.

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

"Be of good cheer: It is I; be not afraid."--*ALGER: Matt.*, xiv, 27.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *It* begins with a capital *I*, for which there appears to be neither rule nor reason. But, according to Rule 16th, "Capitals are improper wherever there is not some special rule or reason for their use." Therefore, 'it' should here begin with a small letter, as Dr. Scott has it.]

"Between passion and lying, there is not a Finger's breadth."--*Murray's Key*, p. 240. "Can our Solicitude alter the course, or unravel the intricacy, of human events?"--*Ib.*, p. 242. "The last edition was carefully compared

with the Original M. S."--*Ib.*, p. 239. "And the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews?"--ALGER: *Matt.*, xxvii, 11. "Let them be turned back for a reward of their shame, that say, Aha, Aha!"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Ps.*, lxx, 3. "Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame, that say unto me, Aha, aha!"--*IB.*: *Ps.*, xl, 15. "What think ye of Christ? whose Son is he? They say unto him, The Son of David. He saith unto them, How then doth David in Spirit call him Lord?"--SCOTT: *Matt.*, xxii, 42, 43. "Among all Things in the Universe, direct your Worship to the Greatest; And which is that? 'T is that Being which Manages and Governs all the Rest."--*Meditations of M. Aurelius Antoninus*, p. 76. "As for Modesty and Good Faith, Truth and Justice, they have left this wicked World and retired to Heaven: And now what is it that can keep you here?"--*Ib.*, p. 81.

"If Pulse of Terse, a Nation's Temper shows, In keen Iambics English Metre flows."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 151.

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"Come, gentle spring, Ethereal mildness, come."--*Gardiner's Music of Nature*, p. 411.

[FORMULES.--1. Not proper, because the word *spring* begins with a small letter. But, according to Rule 10th, "The name of an object personified, when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital." Therefore "Spring" should here begin with a capital S.

2. Not proper again, because the word *Ethereal* begins with a capital E, for which there appears to be neither rule nor reason. But, according to Rule 16th. "Capitals are improper whenever there is not some special rule or reason for their use." Therefore, "ethereal" should here begin with a small letter.]

As, "He is the Cicero of his age; he is reading the lives of the Twelve Cæsars."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 36. "In the History of Henry the fourth, by father Daniel, we are surprized at not finding him the great man."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 151. "In the history of Henry the fourth, by Father Daniel, we are *surprised* at not finding him the great man."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 172; *Ingersoll's*, 187; *Fisk's*, 99. "Do not those same poor peasants use the Lever and the Wedge, and many other instruments?"--*Murray*, 288; from *Harris*, 293. "Arithmetic is excellent for the gauging of Liquors; Geometry, for the measuring of Estates; Astronomy, for the making of Almanacks; and Grammar, perhaps, for the drawing of Bonds and Conveyances."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 295. "The wars of Flanders, written in Latin by Famianus Strada, is a book of some note."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 364. "William is a noun.--why? was is a verb.--why? a is an article.--why? very is an adverb.--why?" &c.--*Merchant's School Gram.*, p. 20. "In the beginning was the word, and that word was with God, and God was that word."--*Gwilt's Saxon Gram.*, p. 49. "The greeks are numerous in thessaly, macedonia, romelia, and albania."--*Balbi, varied*. "He is styled by the Turks, Sultan (Mighty) or Padishah (lord)."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 360. "I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; [109] O grave, I will be thy destruction."--SCOTT, ALGER, ET AL.: *Hosea*, xiii, 14. "Silver and Gold have I none; but such as I have, give I unto thee."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 321. "Return, we beseech thee, O God of Hosts, look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine."--*Ib.*, p. 342. "In the Attic Commonwealth, it was the privilege of every citizen to rail in public."--*Ib.*, p. 316. "They assert that, in the phrases, 'give me *that*,' '*this* is John's,' and '*such* were *some* of you,' the words in italics are pronouns: but that, in the following phrases, they are not pronouns; '*this* book is instructive,' '*some* boys are ingenious,' '*my* health is declining,' '*our* hearts are deceitful,' &c."--*Ib.*, p. 58. "And the coast bends again to the northwest, as far as Far Out head."--*Glasgow Geog.*, Vol. ii, p. 308. Dr. Webster, and other makers of spelling-books, very improperly write "sunday, monday, tuesday, wednesday, thursday, friday, saturday," without capitals.--See *Webster's Elementary Spelling-Book* p. 85. "The commander in chief of the Turkish navy is styled the capitan-pasha."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 360. "Shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the father of spirits, and live?"--SCOTT'S BIBLE: *Heb.*, xii, 9. "Shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of

Spirits, and live?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Heb.*, xii, 9. "He was more anxious to attain the character of a Christian hero."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 308. "Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is mount Zion."--*Psalms*, xlviii, 2. "The Lord is my Helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me."--SCOTT: *Heb.*, xiii, 6. "Make haste to help me, O LORD my Salvation."--SCOTT: *Ps.*, xxxviii, 22.

"The City, which Thou seest, no other deem Than great and glorious Rome, Queen of the Earth." *Harris's Hermes*, p. 49.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"That range of hills, known under the general name of mount Jura."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 110. "He rebuked the Red sea also, and it was dried up."--SCOTT: *Ps.*, cvi, 9. "Jesus went unto the mount of Olives."--*John*, viii, 1. "Milton's book, in reply to the *Defence of the king*, by Salmasius, gained him a thousand pounds from the parliament, and killed his antagonist with vexation."--See *Murray's Sequel*, 343. "Mandeville, sir John, an Englishman, famous for his travels, born about 1300, died in 1372."--*Biog. Dict.* "Ettrick pen, a mountain in Selkirkshire, Scotland, height 2,200 feet."--*Glasgow Geog.*, Vol. ii, p. 312. "The coast bends from Dungsbyhead in a northwest direction to the promontory of Dunnet head."--*Ib.*, p. 307. "Gen. Gaines ordered a detachment of near 300 men, under the command of Major Twiggs, to surround and take an Indian Village, called Fowl Town, about fourteen miles from fort Scott."--*Cohen's Florida*, p. 41. "And he took the damsel by the hand, and said unto her, Talitha Cumi."--ALGER: *Mark*, v, 4. "On religious subjects, a frequent recurrence of scripture-language is attended with peculiar force."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 318. "Contemplated with gratitude to their Author, the Giver of all Good."--*Ib.*, p. 289. "When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth."--*Ib.*, p. 171; *Fisk*, 98; *Ingersoll*, 186. "See the lecture on verbs, rule XV. note 4."--*Fisk's E. Gram.*, p. 117. "At the commencement of lecture II. I informed you that Etymology treats, 3dly, of derivation."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 171. "This VIII. lecture is a very important one."--*Ib.*, p. 113. "Now read the XI. and XII. lectures *four or five times over*."--*Ib.*, p. 152. "In 1752, he was advanced to the bench, under the title of lord Kames."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 331. "One of his maxims was, 'know thyself.'"--*Lempriere's Dict.*, n. *Chilo*. "Good master, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life?"--See *Matt.*, xix, 16. "His best known works, however, are 'anecdotes of the earl of Chatham,' 2 vols. 4to., 3 vols. 8vo., and 'biographical, literary, and political anecdotes of several of the most eminent persons of the present age; never before printed,' 3 vols. 8vo. 1797."--*Univ. Biog. Dict.*, n. *Almon*. "O gentle sleep, Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee?"--*Merchant's School Gram.*, p. 172. "O sleep, O gentle sleep, Nature's soft nurse," &c.--SINGER'S SHAK. *Sec. Part of Hen. IV*, Act iii. "Sleep, gentle sleep, Nature's soft nurse," &c.--*Dodd's Beauties of Shakspeare*, p. 129.

"And Peace, O, Virtue! Peace is all thy own."--*Pope's Works*, p. 379. "And peace, O virtue! peace is all thy own."--*Murray's Gram.*, ii, 16.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Fenelon united the characters of a nobleman and a Christian pastor. His book entitled 'An explication of the Maxims of the Saints concerning the interior life,' gave considerable offence to the guardians of orthodoxy."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 321. "When natural religion, who before was only a spectator, is introduced as speaking by the centurion's voice."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 157. "You cannot deny, that the great mover and author of nature constantly explaineth himself to the eyes of men, by the sensible intervention of arbitrary signs, which have no similitude, or connexion, with the things signified."--*Berkley's Minute Philosopher*, p. 169. "The name of this letter is double U, its form, that of a double V."--*Wilson's Essay on Gram.*, p. 19. "Murray, in his spelling book, wrote 'Charles-Town' with a Hyphen and two Capitals."--See p. 101. "He also wrote 'european' without a capital."--See p. 86. "They profess themselves to be pharisees, who are to be heard and not imitated."--*Calvin's Institutes, Ded.*, p. 55. "Dr. Webster wrote both 'Newhaven' and 'Newyork' with single capitals."--See his *American Spelling-Book*, p. 111. "Gayhead, the west point of Martha's Vineyard."--*Williams's Univ. Gaz.* Write "Craborchard, Eggharbor, Longisland, Perthamboy, Westhampton,

Littlecompton, Newpaltz, Crownpoint, Fellspoint, Sandyhook, Portpenn, Portroyal. Portobello, and Portorico."--*Webster's American Spelling-Book*, 127-140. Write the names of the months: "january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, december."--*Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book*, 21-40. Write the following names and words properly: "tuesday, wednesday, thursday, friday, saturday, saturn;--christ, christian, christmas, christendom, michaelmas, indian, bacchanals;--Easthampton, omega, johannes, aonian, levitical, deuteronomy, european."--*Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book*, *sundry places*.

"Eight Letters in some Syllables we find, And no more Syllables in Words are joined." *Brightland's Gram.*, p. 61.

CHAPTER II.**--OF SYLLABLES.**

A *Syllable* is one or more letters pronounced in one sound; and is either a word, as, *a*, *an*, *ant*; or a part of a word, as *di* in *dial*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds, or separate impulses of the voice; as, *gram-ma-ri-an*.

A word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; a word of two syllables, a *dissyllable*; a word of three syllables, a *trissyllable*; and a word of four or more syllables, a *polysyllable*.

Every vowel, except *w*, may form a syllable of itself; but the consonants belong to the vowels or diphthongs; and without a vowel no syllable can be formed.

DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

A *diphthong* is two vowels joined in one syllable; as, *ea* in *beat*, *ou* in *sound*. In *oe* or *æ*, old or foreign, the characters often unite.

A *proper diphthong* is a diphthong in which both the vowels are sounded; as, *oi* in *voice*, *ow* in *vow*.

An *improper diphthong* is a diphthong in which only one of the vowels is sounded; as, *oa* in *loaf*, *eo* in *people*.

A *triphthong* is three vowels joined in one syllable; as, *eau* in *beau*, *iew* in *view*, *oeu* in *manoeuvre*.

A *proper triphthong* is a triphthong in which all the vowels are sounded; as, *uoy* in *buoy*.

An *improper triphthong* is a triphthong in which only one or two of the vowels are sounded; as, *eau* in *beauty*, *iou* in *anxious*. The diphthongs in English are twenty-nine; embracing all but six of the thirty-five possible combinations of two vowels: *aa*, *ae*, *ai*, *ao*, *au*, *aw*, *ay*,--*ea*, *ee*, *ei*, *eo*, *eu*, *ew*, *ey*,--*ia*, *ie*, (*ii*,) *io*, (*iu*, *iw*, *iy*,)--*oa*, *oe*, *oi*, *oo*, *ou*, *ow*, *oy*,--*ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, (*uu*, *uw*,) *uy*.

Ten of these diphthongs, being variously sounded, may be either proper or improper; to wit, *ay*,--*ie*,--*oi*, *ou*, *ow*,--*ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uy*.

The proper diphthongs appear to be thirteen; *ay*,--*ia*, *ie*, *io*,--*oi*, *ou*, *ow*, *oy*,--*ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uy*: of which combinations, only three, *ia*, *io*, and *oy*, are invariably of this class.

The improper diphthongs are twenty-six; *aa*, *ae*, *ai*, *ao*, *au*, *aw*, *ay*,--*ea*, *ee*, *ei*, *eo*, *eu*, *ew*, *ey*,--*ie*,--*oa*, *oe*, *oi*, *oo*, *ou*, *ow*,--*ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uy*.

The only proper triphthong in English is *uoy*, as in *buoy*, *buoyant*, *buoyancy*; unless *uoi* in *quoit* may be considered a parallel instance.

The improper triphthongs are sixteen; *awe*, *aye*,--*eau*, *eou*, *ewe*, *eye*,--*ieu*, *iew*, *iou*,--*oeu*, *owe*,--*uai*, *uaw*, *uay*, *uea*, *uee*.

SYLLABICATION.

In dividing words into syllables, we are to be directed chiefly by the ear; it may however be proper to observe, as far as practicable, the following rules.

RULE I.--CONSONANTS.

Consonants should generally be joined to the vowels or diphthongs which they modify in utterance; as, *An-ax-ag'-o-ras*, *ap-os-tol'-i-cal*. [110]

RULE II.--VOWELS.

Two vowels, coming together, if they make not a diphthong, must be parted in dividing the syllables; as, *A-cka'-i-a*, *A-o'-ni-an*, *a-e'-ri-al*.

RULE III.--TERMINATIONS.

Derivative and grammatical terminations should generally be separated from the radical words to which they have been added; as, *harm-less*, *great-ly*, *connect-ed*: thus *count-er* and *coun-ter* are different words.

RULE IV.--PREFIXES.

Prefixes, in general, form separate syllables; as, *mis-place*, *out-ride*, *up-lift*: but if their own primitive meaning be disregarded, the case may be otherwise; thus, *re-create*, and *rec'-reate*, *re-formation*, and *ref-ormation*, are words of different import.

RULE V.--COMPOUNDS.

Compounds, when divided, should be divided into the simple words which compose them; as, *boat-swain*, *foot-hold*, *never-the-less*.

RULE VI.--LINES FULL.

At the end of a line, a word may be divided, if necessary; but a syllable must never be broken.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The doctrine of English syllabication is attended with some difficulties; because its purposes are various, and its principles, often contradictory. The old rules, borrowed chiefly from grammars of other languages, and still retained in some of our own, are liable to very strong objections. [111] By aiming to divide on the vowels, and to force the consonants, as much as possible, into the beginning of syllables, they often pervert or misrepresent our pronunciation. Thus Murray, in his *Spelling-Book*, has "*gra-vel*, *fi-nish*, *me-lon*, *bro-ther*, *bo-dy*, *wi-dow*, *pri-son*, *a-va-rice*, *e-ve-ry*, *o-ran-ges*, *e-ne-my*, *me-di-cine*, *re-pre-sent*, *re-so-lu-tion*," and a multitude of other words, divided upon a principle by which the young learner can scarcely fail to be led into error respecting their sounds. This method of division is therefore particularly reprehensible in such books as are designed to teach the true pronunciation of words; for which reason, it has been generally abandoned in our modern spelling-books and dictionaries: the authors of which have severally aimed at some sort of compromise between etymology and pronunciation; but they disagree so much, as to the manner of effecting it, that no two of them will be found alike, and very few, if any, entirely consistent with themselves.

OBS. 2.--The object of syllabication may be any one of the following four; 1. To enable a child to read unfamiliar words by spelling them; 2. To show the derivation or composition of words; 3. To exhibit the exact pronunciation of words; 4. To divide words properly, when it is necessary to break them at the ends of lines.

With respect to the first of these objects, Walker observes, "When a child has made certain advances in reading, but is ignorant of the sound of many of the longer words, it may not be improper to lay down the common general rule to him, that a consonant between two vowels must go to the latter, and that two consonants coming together must be divided. *Farther than this it would be absurd to go with a child.*"--Walker's *Principles*, No. 539. Yet, as a caution be it recorded, that, in 1833, an itinerant lecturer from the South, who made it his business to teach what he calls in his title-page, "An *Abridgment* of Walker's Rules on the Sounds of the Letters,"--an *Abridgment*, which, he says in his preface, "will be found to contain, it is believed, all the important rules that are established by Walker, and to carry his principles *farther* than he himself has *done*"--befooled the Legislature of Massachusetts, the School Committee and Common Council of Boston, the professor of elocution at Harvard University, and many other equally wise men of the east, into the notion that English pronunciation could be conveniently taught to children, in "four or five days," by means of some three or four hundred rules of which the following is a specimen: "RULE 282. When a single consonant is preceded by a vowel under the preantepenultimate accent, and is followed by a vowel that is succeeded by a consonant, it belongs to the accented vowel."--*Mulkey's Abridgment of Walker's Rules*, p. 34.

OBS. 3.--A grosser specimen of literary quackery, than is the publication which I have just quoted, can scarcely be found in the world of letters. It censures "the principles laid down and illustrated by Walker," as "so elaborate and so verbose as to be wearisome to the scholar and useless to the child;" and yet declares them to be, "for the most part, the true rules of pronunciation, according to the analogy of the language."--*Mulkey's Preface*, p. 3. It professes to be an abridgement and simplification of those principles, especially adapted to the wants and capacities of children; and, at the same time, imposes upon the memory of the young learner twenty-nine rules for syllabication, similar to that which I have quoted above; whereas Walker himself, with all his verbosity, expressly declares it "*absurd*," to offer more than one or two, and those of the very simplest character. It is to be observed that the author teaches nothing but the elements of reading; nothing but the sounds of letters and syllables; nothing but a few simple fractions of the great science of grammar: and, for this purpose, he would conduct the learner through the following particulars, and have him remember them all: 1. *Fifteen distinctions* respecting the "classification and organic formation of the letters." 2. *Sixty-three rules* for "the sounds of the vowels, according to their relative positions." 3. *Sixty-four explanations* of "the different sounds of the diphthongs." 4. *Eighty-nine rules* for "the sounds of the consonants, according to position." 5. *Twenty-three heads*, embracing a hundred and fifty-six principles of accent. 6. *Twenty-nine "rules* for dividing words into syllables." 7. *Thirty-three "additional principles;"* which are thrown together promiscuously, because he could not class them. 8. *Fifty-two pages* of "irregular Words," forming particular exceptions to the foregoing rules. 9. *Twenty-eight pages* of notes extracted from Walker's Dictionary, and very prettily called "The Beauties of Walker." All this is Walker simplified for children!

OBS. 4.--Such is a brief sketch of Mulkey's system of orthoëpy; a work in which "he claims to have devised what has heretofore been a *desideratum*--a mode by which children in our common schools may be taught *the rules* for the pronunciation of their mother tongue."--*Preface*, p. 4. The faults of the book are so exceedingly numerous, that to point them out, would be more toil, than to write an accurate volume of twice the size. And is it possible, that a system like this could find patronage in the metropolis of New England, in that proud centre of arts and sciences, and in the proudest halls of learning and of legislation? Examine the gentleman's credentials, and take your choice between the adoption of his plan, as a great improvement in the management of syllables, and the certain conclusion that great men may be greatly duped respecting them. Unless the public has been imposed upon by a worse fraud than mere literary quackery, the authorities I have mentioned did extensively patronize the scheme; and the Common Council of that learned city did order, November 14th, 1833, "That the School Committee be and they are hereby authorized to employ Mr. William Mulkey to give a course of Lectures on Orthoëpy *to the several instructors of the public schools*, and that the sum of five hundred dollars is hereby appropriated for that purpose, and that the same amount be withdrawn from the reserved fund."--See *Mulkey's Circular*.

OBS. 5.--Pronunciation is best taught to children by means of a good spelling-book; a book in which the words are arranged according to their analogies, and divided according to their proper sounds. Vocabularies,

dictionaries, and glossaries, may also be serviceable to those who are sufficiently advanced to learn how to use them. With regard to the first of the abovenamed purposes of syllabication, I am almost ready to dissent even from the modest opinion of Walker himself; for ignorance can only guess at the pronunciation of words, till positive instruction comes in to give assurance; and it may be doubted whether even the simple rule or rules suggested by Walker would not about as often mislead the young reader as correct him. With regard to the second purpose, that of showing the derivation or composition of words, it is plain, that etymology, and not pronunciation, must here govern the division; and that it should go no further than to separate the constituent parts of each word; as, *ortho-graphy*, *theo-logy*. But when we divide for the third purpose, and intend to show what is the pronunciation of a word, we must, if possible, divide into such syllabic sounds as will exactly recompose the word, when put together again; as, *or-thog-ra-phy*, *the-ol-o-gy*. This being the most common purpose of syllabication, perhaps it would be well to give it a general preference; and adopt it whenever we can, not only in the composing of spelling-books and dictionaries, but also in the dividing of words at the ends of lines.

OBS. 6.--Dr. Lowth says, "The best and easiest rule, for dividing the syllables in spelling, is, to divide them as they are naturally divided in a right pronunciation; without regard to the derivation of words, or the possible combination of consonants at the beginning of a syllable."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 5. And Walker approves of the principle, with respect to the third purpose mentioned above: "This," says that celebrated orthoëpist, "is the method adopted by those who would convey the whole sound, by giving distinctly every part; and, when this is the object of syllabication, Dr. Lowth's rule is certainly to be followed."--*Walker's Principles*,--No. 541. But this rule, which no one can apply till he has found out the pronunciation, will not always be practicable where that is known, and perhaps not always expedient where it is practicable. For example: the words *colonel*, *venison*, *transition*, *propitious*, cannot be so divided as to exhibit their pronunciation; and, in such as *acid*, *magic*, *pacify*, *legible*, *liquidate*, it may not be best to follow the rule, because there is some reasonable objection to terminating the first syllables of these words with *c*, *g*, and *q*, especially at the end of a line. The rule for terminations may also interfere with this, called "Lowth's;" as in *sizable*, *rising*, *dronish*.

OBS. 7.--For the dividing of words into syllables, I have given six rules, which are perhaps as many as will be useful. They are to be understood as general principles; and, as to the exceptions to be made in their application, or the settling of their conflicting claims to attention, these may be left to the judgement of each writer. The old principle of dividing by the eye, and not by the ear, I have rejected; and, with it, all but one of the five rules which the old grammarians gave for the purpose. "The divisions of the letters into syllables, should, unquestionably, be the same in written, as in spoken language; otherwise the learner is misguided, and seduced by false representations into injurious errors."--*Wilson's Essay on Gram.*, p. 37. Through the influence of books in which the words are divided according to their sounds, the pronunciation of the language is daily becoming more and more uniform; and it may perhaps be reasonably hoped, that the general adoption of this method of syllabication, and a proper exposition of the occasional errors of ignorance, will one day obviate entirely the objection arising from the instability of the principle. For the old grammarians urged, that the scholar who had learned their rules should "strictly conform to them; and that he should industriously avoid *that random Method of dividing by the Ear*, which is subject to mere jumble, as it must be continually fluctuating according to the various Dialects of different Countries."--*British Grammar*, p. 47.

OBS. 8.--The important exercise of oral spelling is often very absurdly conducted. In many of our schools, it may be observed that the teacher, in giving out the words to be spelled, is not always careful to utter them with what he knows to be their true sounds, but frequently accommodates his pronunciation to the known or supposed ignorance of the scholar; and the latter is still more frequently allowed to hurry through the process, without putting the syllables together as he proceeds; and, sometimes, without forming or distinguishing the syllables at all. Merely to pronounce a word and then name its letters, is an exceedingly imperfect mode of spelling; a mode in which far more is lost in respect to accuracy of speech, than is gained in respect to time. The syllables should not only be distinctly formed and pronounced, but pronounced as they are heard in the whole word; and each should be successively added to the preceding syllables, till the whole sound is formed by the reunion of all its parts. For example: *divisibility*. The scholar should say, "Dee I, de; Vee I Ess, viz,

de-viz; I, de-viz-e; Bee I Ell, bil, de-viz-e-bil; I, de-viz-e-bil-e; Tee Wy, te, de-viz-e-bil-e-te." Again: *chicanery*. "Cee Aitch I, she; Cee A, ka, she-ka; En E Ar, nur, she-ka-nur; Wy, she-ka-nur-e." One of the chief advantages of oral spelling, is its tendency to promote accuracy of pronunciation; and this end it will reach, in proportion to the care and skill with which it is conducted. But oral spelling should not be relied on as the sole means of teaching orthography. It will not be found sufficient. The method of giving out words for practical spelling on slates or paper, or of reading something which is to be written again by the learner, is much to be commended, as a means of exercising those scholars who are so far advanced as to write legibly. This is called, in the schools, *dictation*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN SYLLABICATION.

LESSON I.--CONSONANTS.

1. Correct the division of the following words of two syllables: "ci-vil, co-lour, co-py, da-mask, do-zen, e-ver, fea-ther, ga-ther, hea-ven, hea-vy, ho-ney, le-mon, li-nen, mea-dow, mo-ney, ne-ver, o-live, o-range, o-ther, phea-sant, plea-sant, pu-nish, ra-ther, rea-dy, ri-ver, ro-bin, scho-lar, sho-vel, sto-mach, ti-mid, whe-ther."--*Murray's Spelling-Book*, N. Y., 1819, p. 43-50.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the *v* in *ci-vil*, the *l* in *co-lour*, the *p* in *co-py*, &c., are written with the following vowel, but spoken with that which precedes. But, according to Rule 1st, "Consonants should generally be joined to the vowels or diphthongs which they modify in utterance." Therefore, these words should be divided thus: *civ-il, col-our, cop-y, &c.*]

2. Correct the division of the following words of three syllables: "be-ne-fit, ca-bi-net, ca-nis-ter, ca-ta-logue, cha-rac-ter, cha-ri-ty, co-vet-ous, di-li-gence, di-mi-ty, e-le-phant, e-vi-dent, e-ver-green, fri-vo-lous, ga-ther-ing, ge-ne-rous, go-vern-ess, go-vern-or, ho-nes-ty, ka-len-dar, la-ven-der, le-ve-ret, li-be-ral, me-mo-ry, mi-nis-ter, mo-dest-ly, no-vel-ty, no-bo-dy, pa-ra-dise, po-ver-ty, pre-sent-ly, pro-vi-dence, pro-per-ly, pri-son-er, ra-ven-ous, sa-tis-fy, se-ve-ral, se-pa-rate, tra-vel-ler, va-ga-bond;--con-si-der, con-ti-nue, de-li-ver, dis-co-ver, dis-fi-gure, dis-ho-nest, dis-tri-bute, in-ha-bit, me-cha-nic, what-e-ver;--re-com-mend, re-fu-gee, re-pri-mand."--*Murray: ib.*, p. 67-83.

3. Correct the division of the following words of four syllables: "ca-ter-pil-lar, cha-ri-ta-ble, di-li-gent-ly, mi-se-ra-ble, pro-fit-a-ble, to-le-ra-ble;--be-ne-vo-lent, con-si-der-ate, di-mi-nu-tive, ex-pe-ri-ment, ex-tra-va-gant, in-ha-bi-tant, no-bi-li-ty, par-ti-cu-lar, pros-pe-ri-ty, ri-di-cu-lous, sin-ce-ri-ty;--de-mon-stra-tion, e-du-ca-tion, e-mu-la-tion, e-pi-de-mic, ma-le-fac-tor, ma-nu-fac-ture, me-mo-ran-dum, mo-de-ra-tor, pa-ra-ly-tic, pe-ni-ten-tial, re-sig-na-tion, sa-tis-fac-tion, se-mi-co-lon."--*Murray: ib.*, p. 84-87.

4. Correct the division of the following words of five syllables: "a-bo-mi-na-ble, a-po-the-ca-ry, con-sid-e-ra-ble, ex-pla-na-to-ry, pre-pa-ra-to-ry;--a-ca-de-mi-cal, cu-ri-o-si-ty, ge-o-gra-phi-cal, ma-nu-fac-to-ry, sa-tis-fac-to-ry, me-ri-to-ri-ous;--cha-rac-te-ris-tic, e-pi-gram-ma-tic, ex-pe-ri-ment-al, po-ly-syl-la-ble, con-sid-e-ra-tion." --*Murray: ib.*, p. 87-89.

5. Correct the division of the following proper names: "He-len, Leo-nard, Phi-lip, Ro-bert, Ho-race, Tho-mas;--Ca-ro-line, Ca-tha-rine, Da-ni-el, De-bo-rah, Do-ro-thy, Fre-de-rick, I-sa-bel, Jo-na-than, Ly-di-a, Ni-cho-las, O-li-ver, Sa-mu-el, Si-me-on, So-lo-mon, Ti-mo-thy, Va-len-tine;--A-me-ri-ca, Bar-tho-lo-mew, E-li-za-beth, Na-tha-ni-el, Pe-ne-lo-pe, The-o-phi-lus."--*Murray: ib.*, p. 98-101.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

1. Correct the division of the following words, by Rule 1st: "cap-rice, es-teem, dis-es-teem, ob-lige;--az-ure, mat-ron, pat-ron, phal-anx, sir-en, trait-or, trench-er, barb-er, burn-ish, garn-ish, tarn-ish, varn-ish, mark-et, musk-et, pamph-let;--brave-ry, knave-ry, siave-ry, eve-ning, scene-ry, bribe-ry, nice-ty, chi-cane-ry, ma-chine-ry, im-age-ry;-- as-y-lum, hor-i-zon,--fi-nan-cier, he-ro-ism,--sar-don-yx, scur-ril-ous,-- com-e-di-an, post-e-ri-or."--*Webster's Spelling-Books*.
2. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 2d: "oy-er, fol-io, gen-ial, gen-ius, jun-ior, sa-tiate, vi-tiate;--am-bro-sia, cha-mel-ion, par-hel-ion, con-ven-ient, in-gen-ious, om-nis-cience, pe-cul-iar, so-cia-ble, par-tial-i-ty, pe-cun-ia-ry;--an-nun-ciate, e-nun-ciate, ap-pre-ciate, as-so-ciate, ex-pa-tiate, in-gra-tiate, in-i-tiate, li-cen-tiate, ne-go-tiate, no-vi-ciate, of-fi-ciate, pro-pi-tiate, sub-stan-tiate."--*Webster: Old Spelling-Book*, 86-91; *New*, 121-128.
3. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 3d: "dres-ser, has-ty, pas-try, sei-zure, rol-ler, jes-ter, wea-ver, vam-per, han-dy, dros-sy, glos-sy, mo-ver, mo-ving, oo-zy, ful-ler, trus-ty, weigh-ty, noi-sy, drow-sy, swar-thy."--*Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book*. Again: "eas-tern, full-y, pull-et, rill-et, scan-ty, nee-dy."--*Webster*.
4. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 4th: "aw-ry,"--*Webster's Old Book*, 52; "ath-wart,"--*Ib.*, 93; "pros-pect-ive,"--*Ib.*, 66; "pa-renth-e-sis,"--*Ib.*, 93; "res-ist-i-bil-ity,"--*Webster's New Book*, 93; "hem-is-pher-ic,"--*Ib.*, 130; "mo-nos-tich, he-mis-tick," [112]--*Walker's Dict.*, 8vo; *Cobb*, 33; "tow-ards,"--*Cobb*, 48.
5. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 5th: "E'n-gland,"--*Murray's Spelling-Book*, p. 100; "a-no-ther,"--*Ib.*, 71; "a-noth-er,"--*Emerson*, 76; "Be-thes-da, Beth-a-ba-ra,"--*Webster*, 141; *Cobb*, 159.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

1. Correct the division of the following words, according to their derivation: "ben-der, bles-sing, bras-sy, chaf-fy, chan-ter, clas-per, craf-ty, cur-dy, fen-der, fil-my, fus-ty, glas-sy, graf-ter, gras-sy, gus-ty, ban-ded, mas-sy, mus-ky, rus-ty, swel-ling, tel-ler, tes-ted, thrif-ty, ves-ture."--*Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book*.
2. Correct the division of the following words, so as to give no wrong notion of their derivation and meaning: "barb-er, burn-ish, brisk-et, cank-er, chart-er, cuck-oo, furn-ish, garn-ish, guil-ty, hank-er, lust-y, port-al, tarn-ish, test-ate, test-y, trait-or, treat-y, varn-ish, vest-al, di-urn-al, e-tern-al, in-fern-al, in-tern-al, ma-tern-al, noc-turn-al, pa-tern-al."--*Webster's Elementary Spelling-Book*.
3. Correct the division of the following words, so as to convey no wrong idea of their pronunciation: "ar-mo-ry, ar-te-ry, butch-er-y, cook-e-ry, eb-o-ny, em-e-ry, ev-e-ry, fel-o-ny, fop-pe-ry, flip-pe-ry, gal-le-ry, his-to-ry, liv-e-ry. lot-te-ry, mock-e-ry, mys-te-ry, nun-ne-ry, or-re-ry, pil-lo-ry, quack-e-ry, sor-ce-ry, witch-e-ry."--*Ib.*, 41-42.
4. Correct the division of the following words, and give to *n* before *k* the sound of *ng*: "ank-le, bask-et, blank-et, buck-le, cack-le, crank-le, crink-le, east-er, fick-le, freck-le, knuck-le, mark-et, monk-ey, port-ress, pick-le, poult-ice, punch-eon, qua-drant, qua-drate, squa-dron, rank-le, shack-le, sprink-le, tink-le, twink-le, wrink-le."--*Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book*.
5. Correct the division of the following words, with a proper regard to Rules 1st and 3d: "a-scribe, bland-ish, bran-chy, clou-dy, dus-ty, drea-ry, eve-ning, faul-ty, fil-thy, fros-ty, gau-dy, gloo-my, heal-thy, hear-ken, hear-ty, hoa-ry, lea-ky, loung-er, mar-shy, migh-ty, mil-ky, naugh-ty, pas-sing, pit-cher, rea-dy, roc-ky, spee-dy, stea-dy, stor-my, thirs-ty, thor-ny, trus-ty, ves-try, wes-tern, weal-thy."--*Emerson's Spelling-Book*, 17-44.

CHAPTER III.**--OF WORDS.**

A *Word* is one or more syllables spoken or written as the sign of some idea, or of some manner of thought. Words are distinguished as *primitive* or *derivative*, and as *simple* or *compound*. The former division is called their *species*; the latter, their *figure*.

A *primitive* word is one that is not formed from any simpler word in the language; as, *harm, great, connect*.

A *derivative* word is one that is formed from some simpler word in the language; as, *harmless, greatly, connected, disconnect, unconnected*.

A *simple* word is one that is not compounded, not composed of other words; as, *watch, man, house, tower, never, the, less*.

A *compound* word is one that is composed of two or more simple words; as, *watchman, watchhouse, watchtower, nevertheless*.

Permanent compounds are consolidated; as, *bookseller, schoolmaster*: others, which may be called temporary compounds, are formed by the hyphen; as, *good-natured, negro-merchant*.

RULES FOR THE FIGURE OF WORDS.**RULE I.--COMPOUNDS.**

Words regularly or analogically united, and commonly known as forming a compound, should never be needlessly broken apart. Thus, *steamboat, railroad, red-hot, well-being, new-coined*, are preferable to the phrases, *steam boat, rail road, red hot, well being, new coined*; and *toward us* is better than the old phrase, *to us ward*.

RULE II.--SIMPLES.

When the simple words would only form a regular phrase, of the same meaning, the compounding of any of them ought to be avoided. Thus, the compound *instead* is not to be commended, because the simple phrase, *in stead of*, is exactly like the other phrases, *in lieu of, in place of, in room of*, in which we write no compound.

RULE III.--THE SENSE.

Words otherwise liable to be misunderstood, must be joined together or written separately, as the sense and construction may happen to require. Thus, a *glass house* is a house made of glass, but a *glasshouse* is a house in which glass is made; so a *negro merchant* is a coloured trader, but a *negro-merchant* is a man who buys and sells negroes.

RULE IV.--ELLIPSES.

When two or more compounds are connected in one sentence, none of them should be split to make an ellipsis of half a word. Thus, "*six or seventeen*" should not be said for "*sixteen or seventeen*;" nor ought we to say, "*calf, goat, and sheepskins*" for "*calfskins, goatskins, and sheepskins*" In the latter instance, however, it might be right to separate all the words; as in the phrase, "*soup, coffee, and tea houses*."--*Liberator*, x, 40.

RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

When the parts of a compound do not fully coalesce, as *to-day*, *to-night*, *to-morrow*; or when each retains its original accent, so that the compound has more than one, or one that is movable, as *first-born*, *hanger-on*, *laughter-loving*, *garlic-eater*, *butterfly-shell*, the hyphen should be inserted between them.

RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

When a compound has but one accented syllable in pronunciation, as *watchword*, *statesman*, *gentleman*, and the parts are such as admit of a complete coalescence, no hyphen should be inserted between them. Churchill, after much attention to this subject, writes thus: "The practical instruction of the *countinghouse* imparts a more thorough knowledge of *bookkeeping*, than all the fictitious transactions of a mere *schoolbook*, however carefully constructed to suit particular purposes."--*New Gram.*, p. vii. But *counting-house*, having more stress on the last syllable than on the middle one, is usually written with the hyphen; and *book-keeping* and *school-book*, though they may not need it, are oftener so formed than otherwise.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Words are the least parts of significant language; that is, of language significant in each part; for, to syllables, taken merely as syllables, no meaning belongs. But, to a word, signification of some sort or other, is essential; there can be no word without it; for a sign or symbol must needs represent or signify something. And as I cannot suppose words to represent external things, I have said "A *Word* is one or more syllables spoken or written as the sign of some *idea*." But of *what* ideas are the words of our language significant? Are we to say, "Of *all* ideas;" and to recognize as an English word every syllable, or combination of syllables, to which we know a meaning is attached? No. For this, in the first place, would confound one language with another; and destroy a distinction which must ever be practically recognized, till all men shall again speak one language. In the next place, it would compel us to embrace among our words an infinitude of terms that are significant only of *local* ideas, such as men any where or at any time may have had concerning any of the individuals they have known, whether persons, places, or things. But, however important they may be in the eyes of men, the names of particular persons, places, or things, because they convey only particular ideas, do not properly belong to what we call *our language*. Lexicographers do not collect and define proper names, because they are beyond the limits of their art, and can be explained only from history. I do not say that proper names are to be excluded from grammar; but I would show wherein consists the superiority of general terms over these. For if our common words did not differ essentially from proper names, we could demonstrate nothing in science: we could not frame from them any general or affirmative proposition at all; because all our terms would be particular, and not general; and because every individual thing in nature must necessarily be for ever itself only, and not another.

OBS. 2.--Our common words, then, are the symbols neither of external particulars, nor merely of the sensible ideas which external particulars excite in our minds, but mainly of those general or universal ideas which belong rather to the intellect than to the senses. For intellection differs from sensation, somewhat as the understanding of a man differs from the perceptive faculty of a brute; and language, being framed for the reciprocal commerce of human minds, whose perceptions include both, is made to consist of signs of ideas both general and particular, yet without placing them on equal ground. Our general ideas--that is, our ideas conceived as common to many individuals, existing in any part of time, past, present, or future--such, for example, as belong to the words *man*, *horse*, *tree*, *cedar*, *wave*, *motion*, *strength*, *resist*--such ideas, I say, constitute that most excellent significance which belongs to words primarily, essentially, and immediately; whereas, our particular ideas, such as are conceived only of individual objects, which are infinite in number and ever fleeting, constitute a significance which belongs to language only secondarily, accidentally, and mediately. If we express the latter at all, we do it either by proper names, of which but very few ever become generally known, or by means of certain changeable limitations which are added to our general terms; whereby language, as Harris observes, "without wandering into infinitude, contrives how to denote things infinite."--*Hermes*, p. 345. The particular manner in which this is done, I shall show hereafter, in Etymology, when I come to treat of articles and definitives.

OBS. 3.--If we examine the structure of proper names, we shall find that most of them are compounds, the parts of which have, in very many instances, some general signification. Now a complete phrase commonly conveys some particular notion or conception of the mind; but, in this case, the signification of the general terms is restricted by the other words which are added to them. Thus *smith* is a more general term than *goldsmith*; and *goldsmith* is more general than a *goldsmith*; a *goldsmith*, than the *goldsmith*; the *goldsmith*, than one *Goldsmith*; one *Goldsmith*, than Mr. *Goldsmith*; Mr. *Goldsmith*, than Oliver *Goldsmith*. Thus we see that the simplest mode of designating particular persons or objects, is that of giving them *proper names*; but proper names must needs be so written, that they may be known as proper names, and not be mistaken for common terms. I have before observed, that we have some names which are both proper and common; and that these should be written with capitals, and should form the plural regularly. It is surprising that the *Friends*, who are in some respects particularly scrupulous about language, should so generally have overlooked the necessity there is, of *compounding* their numerical names of the months and days, and writing them uniformly with capitals, as proper names. For proper names they certainly are, in every thing but the form, whenever they are used without the article, and without those other terms which render their general idea particular. And the compound form with a capital, is as necessary for *Firstday*, *Secondday*, *Thirdday*, &c., as for *Sunday*, *Monday*, *Tuesday*, &c. "The first day of the week,"--"The seventh day of the month,"--"The second month of summer,"--"The second month in the year," &c., are good English phrases, in which any compounding of the terms, or any additional use of capitals, would be improper; but, for common use, these phrases are found too long and too artificial. We must have a less cumbersome mode of specifying the months of the year and the days of the week. What then? Shall we merely throw away the terms of particularity, and, without substituting in their place the form of proper names, apply general terms to particular thoughts, and insist on it that this is right? And is not this precisely what is done by those who reject as heathenish the ordinary names of the months and days, and write "*first day*," for *Sunday*, in stead of "the first day of the week;" or "*second month*," for *February*, in stead of "the second month in the year;" and so forth? This phraseology may perhaps be well understood by those to whom it is familiar, but still it is an abuse of language, because it is inconsistent with the common acceptation of the terms. Example: "The departure of a ship will take place *every sixth day* with punctuality."--*Philadelphia Weekly Messenger*. The writer of this did not mean, "*every Friday*;" and it is absurd for the *Friends* so to understand it, or so to write, when that is what they mean.

OBS. 4.--In the ordinary business of life, it is generally desirable to express our meaning as briefly as possible; but legal phraseology is always full to the letter, and often redundant. Hence a merchant will write, "Nov. 24, 1837," or, "11 mo. 24th, 1837;" but a conveyancer will have it, "On the twenty-fourth day of November, one thousand eight hundred and thirty-seven;"--or, perhaps, "On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and thirty-seven." Accordingly we find that, in common daily use, all the names of the months, except *March*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, are abbreviated; thus, *Jan.*, *Feb.*, *Apr.*, *Aug.*, *Sept.*, *Oct.*, *Nov.*, *Dec.* And sometimes even the Arabic number of the year is made yet shorter; as '37 for 1837; or 1835-6-7, for 1835, 1836, and 1837. In like manner, in constructing tables of time, we sometimes denote the days of the week by the simple initials of their names; as, S. for Sunday, M. for Monday, &c. But, for facility of abbreviation, the numerical names, whether of the months or of the days, are perhaps still more convenient. For, if we please, we may put the simple Arabic figures for them; though it is better to add *d.* for *day*, and *mo.* for *month*: as, 1 d., 2 d., 3 d., &c.;--1 mo., 2 mo., 3 mo., &c.;--or more compactly thus: 1d., 2d., 3d., &c.;--1mo., 2mo., 3mo., &c. But, take which mode of naming we will, our ordinary expression of these things should be in neither extreme, but should avoid alike too great brevity and too great prolixity; and, therefore, it is best to make it a general rule in our literary compositions, to use the full form of proper names for the months and days, and to denote the years by Arabic figures written in full.

OBS. 5.--In considering the nature of words, I was once a little puzzled with a curious speculation, if I may not term it an important inquiry, concerning the *principle of their identity*. We often speak of "*the same words*," and of "*different words*;" but wherein does the sameness or the difference of words consist? Not in their pronunciation; for the same word may be differently pronounced; as, *p=at'ron* or *p=a'tron*, *m=at'ron* or

m=a'tron. Not in their orthography; for the same word may be differently spelled; as, *favour* or *favor*, *music* or *musick*, *connexion* or *connection*. Not in their form of presentation; for the same word may be either spoken or written; and speech and writing present what we call *the same words*, in two ways totally different. Not in their meaning; for the same word may have different meanings, and different words may signify precisely the same thing. This sameness of words, then, must consist in something which is to be reconciled with great diversity. Yet every word is itself, and not an other: and every word must necessarily have some property peculiar to itself, by which it may be easily distinguished from every other. Were it not so, language would be unintelligible. But it *is* so; and, therefore, to mistake one word for an other, is universally thought to betray great ignorance or great negligence, though such mistakes are by no means of uncommon occurrence. But that the question about the identity of words is not a very easy one, may appear from the fact, that the learned often disagree about it in practice; as when one grammarian will have *an* and *a* to be two words, and an other will affirm them to be only different forms of one and the same word.

OBS. 6.--Let us see, then, if amidst all this diversity we can find that principle of sameness, by which a dispute of this kind ought to be settled. Now, although different words do generally differ in orthography, in pronunciation, and in meaning, so that an entire sameness implies one orthography, one pronunciation, and one meaning; yet some diversity is allowed in each of these respects, so that a sign differing from an other only in one, is not therefore a different word, or a sign agreeing with an other only in one, is not therefore the same word. It follows thence, that the principle of verbal identity, the principle which distinguishes every word from every other, lies in neither extreme: it lies in a narrower compass than in all three, and yet not singly in any one, but jointly in any two. So that signs differing in any two of these characteristics of a word, are different words; and signs agreeing in any two, are the same word. Consequently, if to any difference either of spelling or of sound we add a difference of signification everybody will immediately say, that we speak or write different words, and not the same: thus *dear*, beloved, and *deer*, an animal, are two such words as no one would think to be the same; and, in like manner, *use*, advantage, and *use*, to employ, will readily be called different words. Upon this principle, *an* and *a* are different words; yet, in conformity to old usage, and because the latter is in fact but an abridgement of the former, I have always treated them as one and the same article, though I have nowhere expressly called them the same word. But, to establish the principle above named, which appears to me the only one on which any such question can be resolved, or the identity of words be fixed at all, we must assume that every word has one right pronunciation, and only one; one just orthography, and only one; and some proper signification, which, though perhaps not always the same, is always a part of its essence. For when two words of different meaning are spelled or pronounced alike, not to maintain the second point of difference, against the double orthography or the double pronunciation of either, is to confound their identity at once, and to prove by the rule that two different words are one and the same, by first absurdly making them so.

OBS. 7.--In no part of grammar is usage more unsettled and variable than in that which relates to the *figure of words*. It is a point of which modern writers have taken but very little notice. Lily, and other ancient Latin grammarians, reckoned both species and figure among the grammatical accidents of nearly all the different parts of speech; and accordingly noticed them, in their Etymology, as things worthy to be thus made distinct topics, like numbers, genders, cases, moods, tenses, &c. But the manner of compounding words in Latin, and also in Greek, is always by consolidation. No use appears to have been made of the *hyphen*, in joining the words of those languages, though the name of the mark is a Greek compound, meaning "*under one*." The compounding of words is one principal means of increasing their number; and the arbitrariness with which that is done or neglected in English, is sufficient of itself to make the number of our words a matter of great uncertainty. Such terms, however, having the advantage of explaining themselves in a much greater degree than others, have little need of definition; and when new things are formed, it is very natural and proper to give them new names of this sort: as, *steamboat*, *railroad*. The propriety or impropriety of these additions to the language, is not to be determined by dictionaries; for that must be settled by usage before any lexicographer will insert them. And so numerous, after all, are the discrepancies found in our best dictionaries, that many a word may have its day and grow obsolete, before a nation can learn from them the right way of spelling it; and many a fashionable thing may go entirely out of use, before a man can thus determine how to

name it. *Railroads* are of so recent invention that I find the word in only one dictionary; and that one is wrong, in giving the word a hyphen, while half our printers are wrong, in keeping the words separate because *Johnson* did not compound them. But is it not more important, to know whether we ought to write *railroad*, or *rail-road*, or *rail road*, which we cannot learn from any of our dictionaries, than to find out whether we ought to write *rocklo*, or *roquelo*, or *roquelaure*, or *roquelaure*, which, in some form or other, is found in them all? The duke of Roquelaure is now forgotten, and his cloak is out of fashion.

OBS. 8.--No regular phrase, as I have taught in the second rule above, should be needlessly converted into a compound word, either by tacking its parts together with the hyphen, or by uniting them without a hyphen; for, in general, a phrase is one thing, and a word is another: and they ought to be kept as distinct as possible.[113] But, when a whole phrase takes the relation of an *adjective*, the words must be compounded, and the hyphen becomes necessary; as, "An inexpressibly apt *bottle-of-small-beer* comparison."--*Peter Pindar*. The occasions for the compounding of words, are in general sufficiently plain, to any one who knows what is intended to be said; but, as we compound words, sometimes with the hyphen, and sometimes without, there is no small difficulty in ascertaining when to use this mark, and when to omit it. "Some settled rule for the use of the hyphen on these occasions, is much wanted. Modern printers have a strange predilection for it; using it on almost every possible occasion. Mr. L. Murray, who has only three lines on the subject, seems inclined to countenance this practice; which is, no doubt, convenient enough for those who do not like trouble. His words are: 'A Hyphen, marked thus - is employed in connecting compounded words: as, Lap-dog, tea-pot, pre-existence, self-love, to-morrow, mother-in-law.' Of his six examples, *Johnson*, our only acknowledged standard, gives the first and third without any separation between the syllables, *lapdog*, *preexistence*; his second and fifth as two distinct words each, *tea pot*, *to morrow*; and his sixth as three words, *mother in law*: so that only his fourth has the sanction of the lexicographer. There certainly can be no more reason for putting a hyphen after the common prefixes, than before the common affixes, *ness*, *ly*, and the rest."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 374.

OBS. 9.--Again: "While it would be absurd, to sacrifice the established practice of all good authors to the ignorance of such readers [as could possibly mistake for a diphthong the two contiguous vowels in such words as *preexistence*, *cooperate*, and *reenter*]; it would unquestionably be advantageous, to have some principle to guide us in that labyrinth of words, in which the hyphen appears to have been admitted or rejected arbitrarily, or at hap-hazard. Thus, though we find in *Johnson*, *alms-basket*, *alms-giver*, with the hyphen; we have *almsdeed*, *almshouse*, *almsman*, without: and many similar examples of an unsettled practice might be adduced, sufficient to fill several pages. In this perplexity, is not the pronunciation of the words the best guide? In the English language, every word of more than one syllable is marked by an accent on some particular syllable. Some very long words indeed admit a secondary accent on *another* syllable; but still this is much inferior, and leaves one leading accent prominent: as in *expos'tulatory*. Accordingly, when a compound has but one accented syllable in pronunciation, as *night'cap*, *bed'stead*, *broad'sword*, the two words have coalesced completely into one, and no hyphen should be admitted. On the other hand, when each of the radical words has an accent, as *Chris'tian-name'*, *broad'-shoul'dered*, I think the hyphen should be used. *Good'-na'tured* is a compound epithet with two accents, and therefore requires the hyphen: in *good nature*, *good will*, and similar expressions, *good* is used simply as an adjective, and of course should remain distinct from the noun. Thus, too, when a noun is used adjectively, it should remain separate from the noun it modifies; as, a *gold ring*, a *silver buckle*. When two numerals are employed to express a number, without a conjunction between them, it is usual to connect them by a hyphen; as, *twenty-five*, *eighty-four*: but when the conjunction is inserted, the hyphen is as improper as it would be between other words connected by the conjunction. This, however, is a common abuse; and we often meet with *five-&twenty*, *six-&thirty*, and the like."--*Ib.*, p. 376. Thus far *Churchill*: who appears to me, however, too hasty about the hyphen in compound numerals. For we write *one hundred*, *two hundred*, *three thousand*, &c., without either hyphen or conjunction; and as *five-and-twenty* is equivalent to *twenty-five*, and virtually but one word, the hyphen, if not absolutely necessary to the sense, is certainly not so very improper as he alleges. "*Christian name*" is as often written without the hyphen as with it, and perhaps as accurately.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN THE FIGURE, OR FORM, OF WORDS.

UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"Professing to imitate Timon, the man hater."--*Goldsmith's Rome*, p. 161.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the compound term *manhater* is here made two words. But, according to Rule 1st, "Words regularly or analogically united, and commonly known as forming a compound, should never be needlessly broken apart." Therefore, *manhater* should be written as one word.]

"Men load hay with a pitch fork."--*Webster's New Spelling-Book*, p. 40. "A pear tree grows from the seed of a pear."--*Ib.*, p. 33. "A tooth brush is good to brush your teeth."--*Ib.*, p. 85. "The mail is opened at the post office."--*Ib.*, p. 151. "The error seems to me two fold."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 230. "To pre-engage means to engage before hand."--*Webster's New Spelling-Book*, p. 82. "It is a mean act to deface the figures on a mile stone."--*Ib.*, p. 88. "A grange is a farm and farm house."--*Ib.*, p. 118. "It is no more right to steal apples or water melons, than money."--*Ib.*, p. 118. "The awl is a tool used by shoemakers, and harness makers."--*Ib.*, p. 150. "Twenty five cents are equal to one quarter of a dollar."--*Ib.*, p. 107. "The blowing up of the Fulton at New York was a terrible disaster."--*Ib.*, p. 54. "The elders also, and the bringers up of the children, sent to Jehu."--SCOTT: *2 Kings*, x, 5. "Not with eye service, as men pleasers."--*Bickersteth, on Prayer*, p. 64. "A good natured and equitable construction of cases."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 138. "And purify your hearts, ye double minded."--*Gurney's Portable Evidences*, p. 115. "It is a mean spirited action to steal; i. e. to steal is a mean spirited action."--*Grammar of Alex. Murray, the schoolmaster*, p. 124. "There is, indeed, one form of orthography which is a kin to the subjunctive mood of the Latin tongue."--*Booth's Introd. to Dict.*, p. 71. "To bring him into nearer connexion with real and everyday life."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 459. "The common place, stale declamation of its revilers would be silenced."--*Ib.*, i, 494. "She formed a very singular and unheard of project."--*Goldsmith's Rome*, p. 160. "He had many vigilant, though feeble talented, and mean spirited enemies."--ROBERTS VAUX: *The Friend*, Vol. vii, p. 74. "These old fashioned people would level our psalmody," &c.--*Music of Nature*, p. 292. "This slow shifting scenery in the theatre of harmony."--*Ib.*, p. 398. "So we are assured from Scripture it self."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 300. "The mind, being disheartened, then betakes its self to trifling."--*R. Johnson's Pref. to Gram. Com.* "Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them."--*Beacon*, p. 115: SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS: *John*, xx, 23. "Tarry we our selves how we will."--*Walker's English Particles*, p. 161. "Manage your credit so, that you need neither swear your self, nor want a voucher."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 33. "Whereas song never conveys any of the above named sentiments."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 424. "I go on horse back."--*Guy's Gram.*, p. 54. "This requires *purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words."--*Adam's Gram.*, p. 242; *Gould's*, 234. "May the Plough share shine."--*White's Eng. Verb.*, p. 161. "Which way ever we consider it."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 83.

"Where e'er the silent (e) a Place obtains, The Voice foregoing, Length and softness gains." --*Brightland's Gr.*, p. 15.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLES.

"It qualifies any of the four parts of speech abovenamed."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 83.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because *abovenamed* is here unnecessarily made a compound. But, according to Rule 2d, "When the simple words would only form a regular phrase, of the same meaning, the compounding of any of them ought to be avoided." Therefore, *above* and *named* should here have been written as two words.]

"After awhile they put us out among the rude multitude."--*Fox's Journal*. Vol. i, p. 169. "It would be ashamed,

if your mind should falter and give in."--*Collier's Meditations of Antoninus*, p. 94. "They stared awhile in silence one upon another."--*Rasselas*, p. 73. "After passion has for awhile exercised its tyrannical sway."--*Murray's Gram.*, ii, 135 and 267. "Though set within the same general-frame of intonation."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 339. "Which do not carry any of the natural vocal-signs of expression."--*Ib.*, p. 329. "The measurable constructive-powers of a few associable constituents."--*Ib.*, p. 343. "Before each accented syllable or emphatic monosyllabic-word."--*Ib.*, p. 364. "One should not think too favourably of oneself."--See *Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 154. "Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 355. "I judge not my own self, for I know nothing of my own self."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 84. "Though they were in such a rage, I desired them to tarry awhile."--*Josephus*, Vol. v, p. 179. "A instead of *an* is now used before words beginning with *a* long."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 31. "John will have earned his wages the next new-year's day."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 82. "A new-year's-gift is a present made on the first day of the year."--See *Johnson, Walker, Webster, et al.* "When he sat on the throne, distributing new-year's-gifts."--*STILLINGFLEET, in Johnson's Dict.* "St. Paul admonishes Timothy to refuse old-wives'-fables."--*Author.* "The world, take it altogether, is but one."--*Collier's Antoninus*, B. vii, Sec. 9. "In writings of this stamp we must accept of sound instead of sense."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 298. "A male-child, A female-child, Male-descendants, Female-descendants."--*Goldsbury's C. S. Gram.*, p. 13; *Rev. T. Smith's Gram.*, p. 15. "Male-servants, Female-servants. Male-relations, Female-relations."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 15.

"Reserved and cautious, with no partial aim, My muse e'er sought to blast another's fame."--*Lloyd*, p. 162.

UNDER RULE III.--THE SENSE.

"Our discriminations of this matter have been but four footed instincts."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 291.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the term *four footed* is made two words, as if the instincts were four and footed. But, according to Rule 3d, "Words otherwise liable to be misunderstood, must be joined together, or written separately, as the sense and construction may happen to require." Therefore, *four-footed*, as it here means *quadruped*, or *having four feet*, should be one word.]

"He is in the right, (says Clytus,) not to bear free born men at his table."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. ii, p. 128. "To the short seeing eye of man, the progress may appear little."--*The Friend*, Vol. ix, p. 377. "Knowledge and virtue are, emphatically, the stepping stone to individual distinction."--*Town's Analysis*, p. 5. "A tin peddler will sell tin vessels as he travels."--*Webster's New Spelling-Book*, p. 44. "The beams of a wood-house are held up by the posts and joists."--*Ib.*, p. 39. "What you mean by *future tense adjective*, I can easily understand."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. ii, p. 450. "The town has been for several days very well behaved."--*Spectator*, No. 532. "A *rounce* is the handle of a printing press."--*Webster's Dict.*; also *El. Spelling-Book*, p. 118. "The phraseology we call *thee and thouing* is not in so common use with us, as the *tutoyant* among the French."--*Walker's Dict.*, w. *Thy*. "Hunting, and other out door sports, are generally pursued."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 227. "Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS: *Matt.*, xi, 28. "God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son to save it."--*Barclay's Works*, i, p. 71. See SCOTT'S BIBLE: *John*, iii, 16. "Jehovah is a prayer hearing God: Nineveh repented, and was spared."--*N. Y. Observer*, Vol. x, p. 90. "These are well pleasing to God, in all ranks and relations."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 73. "Whosoever cometh any thing near unto the tabernacle."--*Numb.*, xvii, 13. "The words coalesce, when they have a long established association."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 169. "Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will go in to them."--OLD BIBLE: *Ps.*, cxviii, 19. "He saw an angel of God coming into him."--See *Acts*, x, 3. "The consequences of any action are to be considered in a two fold light."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 108. "We commonly write two fold, three fold, four fold, and so on up to ten fold, without a hyphen; and, after that, we use one."--*Author.* See *Matt.*, xiii, 8. "When the first mark is going off, he cries *turn!* the glass holder answers *done!*"--*Bowditch's Nav.*, p. 128. "It is a kind of familiar shaking hands with all the vices."--*Maturin's Sermons*, p. 170. "She is a good natured woman;" "James is self opinionated;" "He is broken hearted."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 147. "These three examples apply to the *present tense* construction only."--*Ib.*, p. 65. "So that it was like a game of hide and go seek."--*Edward's First Lessons*

in Grammar, p. 90.

"That lowliness is young ambition's ladder, Whereto the climber upward turns his face."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 97.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF ELLIPSES.

"This building serves yet for a school and a meeting-house."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the compound word *schoolhouse* is here divided to avoid a repetition of the last half. But, according to Rule 4th, "When two or more compounds are connected in one sentence, none of them should be split to make an ellipsis of half a word." Therefore, "*school*" should be "*schoolhouse*;" thus, "This building serves yet for a *schoolhouse* and a meeting-house."]

"Schoolmasters and mistresses of honest friends [are] to be encouraged."--*N. E. Discipline*, p. xv. "We never assumed to ourselves a faith or worship-making-power."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 83. "Pot and pearl ashes are made from common ashes."--*Webster's New Spelling-Book*, p. 69. "Both the ten and eight syllable verses are iambics."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 121. "I say to myself, thou, he says to thy, to his self; &c."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.*, Vol. ii p. 121. "Or those who have esteemed themselves skilful, have tried for the mastery in two or four horse chariots."--*Zenobia*, Vol. i, p. 152. "I remember him barefooted and headed, running through the streets."--*Castle Rackrent*, p. 68. "Friends have the entire control of the school and dwelling-houses."--*The Friend*, Vol. vii, p. 231. "The meeting is held at the first mentioned place in the first month, at the last in the second, and so on."--*Ib.*, p. 167. "Meetings for worship are held at the same hour on first and fourth days."--*Ib.*, p. 230. "Every part of it, inside and out, is covered with gold leaf."--*Ib.*, p. 404. "The Eastern Quarterly Meeting is held on the last seventh day in second, fifth, eighth, and eleventh month."--*Ib.*, p. 87. "Trenton Preparative Meeting is held on the third fifth day in each month, at ten o'clock; meetings for worship at the same hour on first and fifth days."--*Ib.*, p. 231. "Ketch, a vessel with two masts, a main and mizzen-mast."--*Webster's Dict.*, "I only mean to suggest a doubt, whether nature has enlisted herself as a Cis or Trans-Atlantic partisan?"--*Jefferson's Notes*, p. 97. "By large hammers, like those used for paper and fullingmills, they beat their hemp."--MORTIMER: *in Johnson's Dict.* "Ant-hill, or Hillock, *n. s.* The small protuberances of earth, in which ants make their nests."--*Ib.* "It became necessary to substitute simple indicative terms called *pro-names* or *nouns*."--*Enclytica*, p. 16.

"Obscur'd, where highest woods, impenetrable To star or sun-light, spread their umbrage broad."--*Milton*.

UNDER RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

"*Evilthinking*; a noun, compounded of the noun *evil* and the imperfect participle *thinking*; singular number;" &c.--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 180.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *evilthinking*, which has more than one accented syllable, is here compounded without the hyphen. But, according to Rule 5th, "When the parts of a compound do not fully coalesce, or when each retains its original accent, so that the compound has more than one, or one that is movable, the hyphen should be inserted between them." Therefore, the hyphen should be used in this word; thus, *evil-thinking*.]

"*Evilspeaking*; a noun, compounded of the noun *evil* and the imperfect participle *speaking*."--*Ib.* "I am a tall, broadshouldered, impudent, black fellow."--SPECTATOR: *in Johnson's Dict.* "Ingratitude! thou marblehearted fiend."--SHAK.: *ib.* "A popular licence is indeed the manyheaded tyranny."--SIDNEY: *ib.* "He from the manypeopled city flies."--SANDYS: *ib.* "He manylanguage nations has surveyed."--POPE: *ib.* "The horsecucumber is the large green cucumber, and the best for the table."--MORTIMER: *ib.* "The bird of night did sit, even at noonday, upon the market-place."--SHAK.: *ib.* "These make a general gaoldelivery of souls,

not for punishment."--SOUTH: *ib.* "Thy air, thou other goldbound brow, is like the first."--SHAK.: *ib.* "His person was deformed to the highest degree; flatnosed, and blobberlipped."--L'ESTRANGE: *ib.* "He that defraudeth the labourer of his hire, is a bloodshedder."--ECCLUS., xxxiv, 22: *ib.* "Bloodyminded, *adj.* from *bloody* and *mind*. Cruel; inclined to blood-shed."--See *Johnson's Dict.* "Bluntwitted lord, ignoble in demeanour."--SHAK.: *ib.* "A young fellow with a bobwig and a black silken bag tied to it."--SPECTATOR: *ib.* "I have seen enough to confute all the boldfaced atheists of this age."--BRAMHALL: *ib.* "Before milkwhite, now purple with love's wound."--SHAK: *ib.* "For what else is a redhot iron than fire? and what else is a burning coal than redhot wood?"--NEWTON: *ib.* "Pollevis is a large swelling, inflammation, or imposthume in the horse's poll, or nape of the neck just between the ears."--FARRIER: *ib.*

"Quick-witted, brazenfac'd, with fluent tongues, Patient of labours, and dissembling wrongs."--DRYDEN: *ib.*

UNDER RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

"From his fond parent's eye a tear-drop fell."--*Snelling's Gift for Scribblers*, p. 43.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the word *tear-drop*, which has never any other than a full accent on the first syllable, is here compounded with the hyphen. But, according to Rule 6th, "When a compound has but one accented syllable in pronunciation, and the parts are such as admit of a complete coalescence, no hyphen should be inserted between them." Therefore, *teardrop* should be made a close compound.]

"How great, poor jack-daw, would thy sufferings be!"--*Ib.*, p. 29. "Placed like a scare-crow in a field of corn."--*Ib.*, p. 39. "Soup for the alms-house at a cent a quart."--*Ib.*, p. 23. "Up into the watch-tower get, and see all things despoiled of fallacies."--DONNE: *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Lattice*. "In the day-time she sitteth in a watchtower, and flieth most by night."--BACON: *ib.*, w. *Watchtower*. "In the daytime Fame sitteth in a watch-tower, and flieth most by night."--ID.: *ib.*, w. *Daytime*. "The moral is the first business of the poet, as being the ground-work of his instruction."--DRYDEN: *ib.*, w. *Moral*. "Madam's own hand the mouse-trap baited."--PRIOR: *ib.*, w. *Mouse-trap*. "By the sinking of the air-shaft the air hath liberty to circulate."--RAY: *ib.*, w. *Airshaft*. "The multiform and amazing operations of the air-pump and the loadstone."--WATTS: *ib.*, w. *Multiform*. "Many of the fire-arms are named from animals."--*Ib.*, w. *Musket*. "You might have trussed him and all his apparel into an eel-skin."--SHAK.: *ib.*, w. *Truss*. "They may serve as land-marks to shew what lies in the direct way of truth."--LOCKE: *ib.*, w. *Landmark*. "A pack-horse is driven constantly in a narrow lane and dirty road."--*Id. ib.*, w. *Lane*. "A mill-horse, still bound to go in one circle."--SIDNEY: *ib.*, w. *Mill-horse*. "Of singing birds they have linnets, goldfinches, ruddocks, Canary-birds, black-birds, thrushes, and divers others."--CAREW: *ib.*, w. *Goldfinch*. "Of singing birds, they have linnets, gold-finches, blackbirds, thrushes, and divers others."--ID.: *ib.*, w. *Blackbird*. "Of singing birds, they have linnets, gold-finches, ruddocks, canary birds, blackbirds, thrushes, and divers other."--ID.: *ib.*, w. *Canary bird*. "Cartrage, or Cartridge, a case of paper or parchment filled with gun-powder."--*Johnson's Dict.*, 4to.

"Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night, The time of night when Troy was set on fire, The tune when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs howl." SHAKSPEARE: *ib.*, w. *Silent*.

"The time when screech-owls cry, and bandogs howl." IDEM.: *ib.*, w. *Bandog*.

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS IN THE FIGURE OF WORDS.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"They that live in glass-houses, should not throw stones."--*Old Adage*. "If a man profess Christianity in any manner or form soever."--*Watts*, p. 5. "For Cassius is a weary of the world."--SHAKSPEARE: *in Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 67. "By the coming together of more, the chains were fastened on."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 223. "Unto the carrying away of Jerusalem captive in the fifth month."--*Jer.*, i, 3. "And the goings forth of the

border shall be to Zedad."--*Numbers*, xxxiv, 8. "And the goings out of it shall be at Hazar-enan."--*Ib.*, ver. 9. "For the taking place of effects, in a certain particular series."--*Dr. West, on Agency*, p. 39. "The letting go of which was the occasion of all that corruption."--*Dr. J. Owen*. "A falling off at the end always hurts greatly."--*Blair's Lect.*, p. 126. "A falling off at the end is always injurious."--*Jamieson's Rhetoric*, p. 127. "As all holdings forth were courteously supposed to be trains of reasoning."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.*, Vol. i, p. 333. "Whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting."--*Micah*, v, 2. "Some times the adjective becomes a substantive."--*Bradley's Gram.*, p. 104. "It is very plain, I consider man as visited a new."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 331. "Nor do I any where say, as he falsely insinuates."--*Ib.*, p. 331. "Every where, any where, some where, no where."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 55. "The world hurries off a pace, and time is like a rapid river."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 58. "But to now model the paradoxes of ancient skepticism."--*Brown's Estimate*, Vol. i, p. 102. "The south east winds from the ocean invariably produce rain."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 369. "North west winds from the high lands produce cold clear weather."--*Ib.* "The greatest part of such tables would be of little use to English men."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 155. "The ground floor of the east wing of Mulberry street meeting house was filled."--*The Friend*, vii, 232. "Prince Rupert's Drop. This singular production is made at the glass houses."--*Red Book*, p. 131.

"The lights and shades, whose well accorded strife Gives all the strength and colour of our life." --*Murray's Gram.*, p. 54; *Fisk's*, 65.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"In the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah did Zimri reign seven days in Tirzah."--*1 Kings*, xvi, 15. "In the thirty and first year of Asa king of Judah, began Omri to reign over Israel."--*Ib.*, xvi, 23. "He cannot so deceive himself as to fancy that he is able to do a rule of three sum."--*Foreign Quarterly Review*. "The best cod are those known under the name of Isle of Shoals dun fish."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 26. "The soldiers, with down cast eyes, seemed to beg for mercy."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. ii, p. 142. "His head was covered with a coarse worn out piece of cloth."--*Ib.*, p. 124. "Though they had lately received a reinforcement of a thousand heavy armed Spartans."--*Ib.*, p. 38. "But he laid them by unopened; and, with a smile, said, 'Business to morrow.'"--*Ib.*, p. 7. "Chester monthly meeting is held at Moore's town, the third day following the second second day."--*The Friend*, Vol. vii, p. 124. "Eggharbour monthly meeting is held the first second day."--*Ib.*, p. 124. "Little Egg Harbour Monthly Meeting is held at Tuckerton on the second fifth day in each month."--*Ib.*, p. 231. "At three o'clock, on first day morning the 24th of eleventh month, 1834," &c.--*Ib.*, p. 64. "In less than one-fourth part of the time usually devoted."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 4. "The pupil will not have occasion to use it one-tenth part as much."--*Ib.*, p. 11. "The painter dips his paint brush in paint, to paint the carriage."--*Ib.*, p. 28. "In an ancient English version of the New-Testament."--*Ib.*, p. 74. "The little boy was bare headed."--*Red Book*, p. 36. "The man, being a little short sighted, did not immediately know him."--*Ib.*, p. 40. "Picture frames are gilt with gold."--*Ib.*, p. 44. "The park keeper killed one of the deer."--*Ib.*, p. 44. "The fox was killed near the brick kiln."--*Ib.*, p. 46. "Here comes Esther, with her milk pail."--*Ib.*, p. 50. "The cabinet maker would not tell us."--*Ib.*, p. 60. "A fine thorn hedge extended along the edge of the hill."--*Ib.*, p. 65. "If their private interests should be ever so little affected."--*Ib.*, p. 73. "Unios are fresh water shells, vulgarly called fresh water clams."--*Ib.*, p. 102.

"Did not each poet mourn his luckless doom, Jostled by pedants out of elbow room."--*Lloyd*, p. 163.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"The captive hovers a-while upon the sad remains."--PRIOR: in *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Hover*. "Constantia saw that the hand writing agreed with the contents of the letter."--ADDISON: *ib.*, w. *Hand*. "They have put me in a silk night-gown, and a gaudy fool's cap."--ID.: *ib.*, w. *Nightgown*. "Have you no more manners than to rail at Hocus, that has saved that clod-pated, numskull'd ninnyhammer of yours from ruin, and all his family?"--ARBUTHNOT: *ib.*, w. *Ninnyhammer*. "A noble, that is, six, shillings and eightpence, is, and usually hath been paid."--BACON: *ib.*, w. *Noble*. "The king of birds thick feather'd and with full-summed

wings, fastened his talons east and west."--HOWELL: *ib.*, w. *Full-summed*. "To morrow. This is an idiom of the same kind, supposing *morrow* to mean originally *morning*: as, *to night, to day*."--*Johnson's Dict.*, 4to. "To-day goes away and to-morrow comes."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Go*, No. 70. "Young children, who are try'd in Go carts, to keep their steps from sliding."--PRIOR: *ib.*, w. *Go-cart*. "Which, followed well, would demonstrate them but goes backward."--SHAK.: *ib.*, w. *Goer*. "Heaven's golden winged herald late he saw, to a poor Galilean virgin sent."--CRASHAW: *ib.*, w. *Golden*. "My penthouse eye-brows and my shaggy beard offend your sight."--DRYDEN: *ib.*, w. *Penthouse*. "The hungry lion would fain have been dealing with good horse-flesh."--L'ESTRANGE: *ib.*, w. *Nag*. "A broad brimmed hat ensconced each careful head."--*Snelling's Gift*, p. 63. "With harsh vibrations of his three stringed lute."--*Id.*, p. 42. "They magnify a hundred fold an author's merit."--*Id.*, p. 14. "I'll nail them fast to some oft opened door."--*Id.*, p. 10. "Glossed over only with a saint-like show, still thou art bound to vice."--DRYDEN: in *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Gloss*. "Take of aqua-fortis two ounces, of quick-silver two drachms."--BACON: *ib.*, w. *Charge*. "This rainbow never appears but when it rains in the sun-shine."--NEWTON: *ib.*, w. *Rainbow*.

"Not but there are, who merit other palms; Hopkins and Stern hold glad the heart with Psalms." *British Poets*, Lond., 1800, Vol. vi, p. 405.

CHAPTER IV.**--OF SPELLING.**

Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters. This important art is to be acquired rather by means of the spelling-book or dictionary, and by observation in reading, than by the study of written rules; because what is proper or improper, depends chiefly upon usage.

The orthography of our language is attended with much uncertainty and perplexity: many words are variously spelled by the best scholars, and many others are not usually written according to the analogy of similar words. But to be ignorant of the orthography of such words as are spelled with uniformity, and frequently used, is justly considered disgraceful.

The following rules may prevent some embarrassment, and thus be of service to those who wish to be accurate.

RULES FOR SPELLING.**RULE I.--FINAL F, L, OR S.**

Monosyllables ending in *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant; as *staff*, *mill*, *pass--muff*, *knell*, *gloss--off*, *hiss*, *puss*.

EXCEPTIONS.--The words *clef*, *if*, and *of*, are written with single *f*; and *as*, *gas*, *has*, *was*, *yes*, *his*, *is*, *this*, *us*, *pus*, and *thus*, with single *s*. So *bul*, for the flounder; *nul*, for *no*, in law; *sol*, for *sou* or *sun*; and *sal*, for *salt*, in chemistry, have but the single *l*.

OBS.--Because *sal*, *salis*, in Latin, doubles not the *l*, the chemists write *salify*, *salifiable*, *salification*, *saliferous*, *saline*, *salinous*, *saliniform*, *salifying*, &c., with single *l*, contrary to Rule 3d. But in *gas* they ought to double the *s*; for this is a word of their own inventing. Neither have they any plea for allowing it to form *gases* and *gaseous* with the *s* still single; for so they make it violate two general rules at once. If the singular cannot now be written *gass*, the plural should nevertheless be *gasses*, and the adjective should be *gasseous*, according to Rule 3d.

RULE II.--OTHER FINALS.

Words ending in any other consonant than *f*, *l*, or *s*, do not double the final letter; as, *mob*, *nod*, *dog*, *sum*, *sun*, *cup*, *cur*, *cut*, *fix*, *whiz*.

EXCEPTIONS.--We double the consonant in *abb*, *ebb*, *add*, *odd*, *egg*, *jagg*, *ragg*, *inn*, *err*, *burr*, *purr*, *butt*, *buzz*, *fuzz*, *yarr*, and some proper names. But we have also *ab* (*from*) and *ad* (*to*) for prefixes; and *jag*, *rag*, *in*, *bur*, and *but*, are other words that conform to the rule.

RULE III.--DOUBLING.

Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, when they end with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, or by a vowel after *qu*, double their final consonant before an additional syllable that begins with a vowel: as, *rob*, *robbed*, *robber*; *fop*, *foppish*, *foppery*; *squat*, *squatter*, *squatting*; *thin*, *thinner*, *thinnest*; *swim*, *swimmer*, *swimming*; *commit*, *committeth*, *committing*, *committed*, *committer*, *committees*; *acquit*, *acquittal*, *acquittance*, *acquitted*, *acquitting*, *acquitteth*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. X final, being equivalent to *ks*, is never doubled: thus, from *mix*, we have *mixed*, *mixing*, and *mixer*. 2. When the derivative retains not the accent of the root, the final consonant is not always doubled: as, *prefer'*, *preference*, *preferable*; *refer'*, *reference*, *referable*, or *refer'rible*; *infer'*, *inference*, *inferable*, or *infer'rible*; *transfer'*, a *trans'fer*, *trans'ferable*, or *transfer'rible*. 3. But letters doubled in Latin, are usually doubled in English, without regard to accent, or to any other principle: as, *Britain*, *Britan'nic*, *Britannia*; *appeal*, *appel'lant*; *argil*, *argil'laus*, *argilla'ceous*; *cavil*, *cav'illous*, *cavilla'tion*; *excel'*, *ex'cellent*, *ex'cellence*; *inflame'*, *inflam'mable*, *inflamma'tion*. See Observations 13 and 14, p. 199.

RULE IV.--NO DOUBLING.

A final consonant, when it is not preceded by a single vowel, or when the accent is not on the last syllable, should remain single before an additional syllable: as, *toil*, *toiling*; *oil*, *oily*; *visit*, *visited*; *differ*, *differing*; *peril*, *perilous*; *viol*, *violist*; *real*, *realize*, *realist*; *dial*, *dialing*, *dialist*; *equal*, *equalize*, *equality*; *vitriol*, *vitriolic*, *vitriolate*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. The final *l* of words ending in *el*, must be doubled before an other vowel, lest the power of the *e* be mistaken, and a syllable be lost: as, *travel*, *traveller*; *duel*, *duellist*; *revel*, *revelling*; *gravel*, *gravelly*; *marvel*, *marvellous*. Yet the word *parallel*, having three Ells already, conforms to the rule in forming its derivatives; as, *paralleling*, *paralleled*, and *unparalleled*. 2. Contrary to the preceding rule, the preterits, participles, and derivative nouns, of the few verbs ending in *al*, *il*, or *ol*, unaccented,--namely, *equal*, *rival*, *vial*, *marshal*, *victual*, *cavil*, *pencil*, *carol*, *gambol*, and *pistol*,--are usually allowed to double the *l*, though some dissent from the practice: as, *equalled*, *equalling*; *rivalled*, *rivalling*; *cavilled*, *cavilling*, *caviller*; *carolled*, *carolling*, *caroller*. 3. When *ly* follows *l*, we have two Ells of course, but in fact no doubling: as, *real*, *really*; *oral*, *orally*; *cruel*, *cruelly*; *civil*, *civilly*; *cool*, *coolly*; *wool*, *woolly*. 4. Compounds, though they often remove the principal accent from the point of duplication, always retain the double letter: as, *wit'snapper*, *kid'napper*, [114] *grass'hopper*, *duck'-legged*, *spur'galled*, *hot'spurred*, *broad'-brimmed*, *hare'-lipped*, *half-witted*. So, *compromitted* and *manumitted*; but *benefited* is different.

RULE V.--FINAL CK.

Monosyllables and English verbs end not with *c*, but take *ck* for double *c*; as, *rack*, *wreck*, *rock*, *attack*: but, in general, words derived from the learned languages need not the *k*, and common use discards it; as, *Italic*, *maniac*, *music*, *public*.

EXCEPTIONS.--The words *arc*, part of a circle; *orc*, the name of a fish; *lac*, a gum or resin; and *sac*, or *soc*, a privilege, in old English law, are ended with *c* only. *Zinc* is, perhaps, better spelled *zink*; *marc*, *mark*; *disc*, *disk*; and *talc*, *talck*.

RULE VI.--RETAINING.

Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double before any additional termination, not beginning with the same letter; [115] as in the following derivatives: *wooer*, *seeing*, *blissful*, *oddly*, *gruffly*, *equally*, *shelly*, *hilly*, *stiffness*, *illness*, *stillness*, *shrillness*, *fellness*, *smallness*, *drollness*, *freeness*, *grassless*, *passless*, *carelessness*, *recklessness*, *embarrassment*, *enfeoffment*, *agreement*, *agreeable*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. Certain irregular derivatives in *d* or *t*, from verbs ending in *ee*, *ll*, or *ss*, (as *fled* from *flee*, *sold* from *sell*, *told* from *tell*, *dwelt* from *dwell*, *spelt* from *spell*, *spilt* from *spill*, *shalt* from *shall*, *wilt* from *will*, *blest* from *bless*, *past* from *pass*,) are exceptions to the foregoing rule. 2. If the word *pontiff* is properly spelled with two Effs, its eight derivatives are also exceptions to this rule; for they are severally spelled with one; as, *pontific*, *pontifical*, *pontificate*, &c. 3. The words *skillful*, *skillfully*, *willful*, *willfully*, *chillness*, *tallness*, *dullness*, and *fullness*, have generally been allowed to drop the second *l*, though all of them might well be made to conform to the general rule, agreeably to the orthography of Webster.

RULE VII.--RETAINING.

Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double in all derivatives formed from them by means of prefixes: as, *see, foresee; feoff, enfeoff; pass, repass; press, depress; miss, amiss; call, recall; stall, forestall; thrall, inthrall; spell, misspell; tell, foretell; sell, undersell; add, superadd; snuff, besnuff; swell, overswell.*

OBSERVATION.--The words *enroll, unroll, miscall, befall, befell, bethrall, reinstall, disinthrall, fulfill, and twibill*, are very commonly written with one *l*, and made exceptions to this rule; but those authors are in the right who retain the double letter.

RULE VIII.--FINAL LL.

Final *ll* is peculiar to monosyllables and their compounds, with the few derivatives formed from such roots by prefixes; consequently, all other words that end in *l*, must be terminated with a single *l*: as, *cabal, logical, appal, excel, rebel, refel, dispel, extol, control, mogul, jackal, rascal, damsel, handsel, tinsel, tendril, tranquil, gambol, consul.*

OBSERVATION.--The words *annul, until, distil, extil, and instil*, are also properly spelled with one *l*; for the monosyllables *null, till, and still* are not really their roots, but rather derivatives, or contractions of later growth. Webster, however, prefers *distill, extill, and instill* with *ll*; and some have been disposed to add the other two.

RULE IX.--FINAL E.

The final *e* of a primitive word, when this letter is mute or obscure, is generally omitted before an additional termination beginning with a vowel: as, *remove, removal; rate, ratable; force, forcible; true, truism; rave, raving; sue, suing; eye, eying; idle, idling; centre, centring.*

EXCEPTIONS.--1. Words ending in *ce* or *ge*, retain the *e* before *able* or *ous*, to preserve the soft sounds of *c* and *g*: as, *trace, traceable; change, changeable; outrage, outrageous.* 2. So, from *shoe*, we write *shoeing*, to preserve the sound of the root; from *hoe, hoeing*, by apparent analogy; and, from *singe, singeing*; from *swinge, swingeing*; from *tinge, tingeing*; that they may not be confounded with *singing, swinging, and tinging.* 3. To compounds and prefixes, as *firearms, forearm, anteact, viceagent*, the rule does not apply; and final *ee* remains double, by Rule 6th, as in *disagreeable, disagreeing.*

RULE X.--FINAL E.

The final *e* of a primitive word is generally retained before an additional termination beginning with a consonant: as, *pale, paleness; edge, edgeless; judge, judgeship; lodge, lodgement; change, changeful; infringe, infringement.*

EXCEPTIONS.--1. When the *e* is preceded by a vowel, it is sometimes omitted; as in *duly, truly, awful, argument*; but much more frequently retained; as in *dueness, trueness, blueness, bluely, rueful, dueful, shoeless, eyeless.* 2. The word *wholly* is also an exception to the rule, for nobody writes it *wholely*. 3. Some will have *judgment, abridgment, and acknowledgment*, to be irreclaimable exceptions; but I write them with the *e*, upon the authority of Lowth, Beattie, Ainsworth, Walker, Cobb, Chalmers, and others: the French "*jugement, judgement*," always retains the *e*.

RULE XI.--FINAL Y.

The final *y* of a primitive word, when preceded by a consonant, is generally changed into *i* before an additional termination: as, *merry, merrier, merriest, merrily, merriment; pity, pitied, pities, pitiest, pitiless,*

pitiful, pitiable; contrary, contrariness, contrarily.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. This rule applies to derivatives, but not to compounds: thus, we write *merciful*, and *mercy-seat*; *penniless*, and *pennyworth*; *scurviness*, and *scurvy-grass*; &c. But *ladyship* and *goodyship*, being unlike *secretarish* and *suretish*; *handicraft* and *handiwork*, [116] unlike *handygripe* and *handystroke*; *babyship* and *babyhood*, unlike *stateliness* and *likelihood*; the distinction between derivatives and compounds, we see, is too nice a point to have been always accurately observed. 2. Before *ing* or *ish*, the *y* is retained to prevent the doubling of *i*: as, *pity*, *pitying*; *baby*, *babyish*. 3. Words ending in *ie*, dropping the *e* by Rule 9th, change the *i* into *y*, for the same reason: as, *die*, *dying*; *vie*, *vying*; *lie*, *lying*.

RULE XII--FINAL Y.

The final *y* of a primitive word, when preceded by a vowel, should not be changed into *i* before any additional termination: as, *day*, *days*; *key*, *keys*; *guy*, *guys*; *valley*, *valleys*; *coy*, *coyly*; *cloy*, *cloys*, *cloyed*; *boy*, *boyish*, *boyhood*; *annoy*, *annoyer*, *annoyance*; *joy*, *joyless*, *joyful*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. From *lay*, *pay*, *say*, and *stay*, are formed *laid*, *paid*, *said*, and *staid*; but the regular words, *layed*, *payed*, *stayed*, are sometimes used. 2. *Raiment*, contracted from *arrayment*, is never written with the *y*. 3. *Daily* is more common than the regular form *dayly*; but *gayly*, *gayety*, and *gayness*, are justly superseding *gaily* and *gaiety*.

RULE XIII.--IZE AND ISE.

Words ending in *ize* or *ise* sounded alike, as in *wise* and *size*, generally take the *z* in all such as are essentially formed by means of the termination; and the *s* in monosyllables, and all such as are essentially formed by means of prefixes: as, *gormandise*, *apologize*, *brutalize*, *canonize*, *pilgrimize*, *philosophize*, *cauterize*, *anathematize*, *sympathize*, *disorganize*, with *z*; [117] *rise*, *arise*, *disguise*, *advise*, *devise*, *supervise*, *circumcise*, *despise*, *surmise*, *surprise*, *comprise*, *compromise*, *enterprise*, *presurmise*, with *s*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. *Advertise*, *catechise*, *chastise*, *criticise*, [118] *exercise*, *exorcise*, and *merchandise*, are most commonly written with *s* and *size*, *assize*, *capsize*, *analyze*, *overprize*, *detonize*, and *recognize*, with *z*. How many of them are real exceptions to the rule, it is difficult to say. 2. *Prise*, a thing taken, and *prize*, to esteem; *apprise*, to inform, and *apprise*, to *value*, or *appraise*, are often written either way, without this distinction of meaning, which some wish to establish. 3. The want of the foregoing rule has also made many words *variable*, which ought, unquestionably, to conform to the general principle.

RULE XIV.--COMPOUNDS.

Compounds generally retain the orthography of the simple words which compose them: as, *wherein*, *horseman*, *uphill*, *shellfish*, *knee-deep*, *kneedgrass*, *kneading-trough*, *innkeeper*, *skylight*, *plumtree*, *mandrill*.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. In permanent compounds, or in any derivatives of which, they are not the *roots*, the words *full* and *all* drop one *l*; as, *handful*, *careful*, *fulfil*, *always*, *although*, *withal*; in temporary compounds, they retain both; as, *full-eyed*, *chock-full*, [119] *all-wise*, *save-all*. 2. So the prefix *mis*, (if from *miss*, to err,) drops one *s*; but it is wrong to drop them both, as in Johnson's "*mispell*" and "*mispend*," for *misspell* and *misspend*. 3. In the names of days, the word *mass* also drops one *s*; as, *Christmas*, *Candlemas*, *Lammas*. 4. The possessive case often drops the apostrophe; as in *herdsman*, *kitesfoot*. 5. One letter is dropped, if three of the same kind come together: as, *Rosshire*, *chaffinch*; or else a hyphen is used: as, *Ross-shire*, *ill-looking*, *still-life*. 6. *Chilblain*, *welcome*, and *welfare*, drop one *l*. 7. *Pastime* drops an *s*. 8. *Shepherd*, *wherever*, and *whosever*, drop an *e*; and *wherefore* and *therefore* assume one.

RULE XV.--USAGE.

Any word for the spelling of which we have no rule but usage, is written wrong if not spelled according to the usage which is most common among the learned: as, "The brewer grinds his malt before he *brues* his beer."--*Red Book*, p. 38.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The foregoing rules aim at no wild and impracticable reformation of our orthography; but, if carefully applied, they will do much to obviate its chief difficulties. Being made variable by the ignorance of some writers and the caprice of others, our spelling is now, and always has been, exceedingly irregular and unsettled. Uniformity and consistency can be attained in no other way, than by the steady application of rules and principles; and these must be made as few and as general as the case will admit, that the memory of the learner may not be overmatched by their number or complexity. Rules founded on the analogy of similar words, and sanctioned by the usage of careful writers, must be taken as our guides; because common practice is often found to be capricious, contradictory, and uncertain. That errors and inconsistencies abound, even in the books which are proposed to the world as *standards* of English orthography, is a position which scarcely needs proof. It is true, to a greater or less extent, of all the spelling-books and dictionaries that I have seen, and probably of all that have ever been published. And as all authors are liable to mistakes, which others may copy, general rules should have more weight than particular examples to the contrary. "The right spelling of a word may be said to be that which agrees the best with its pronunciation, its etymology, and with the analogy of the particular class of words to which it belongs."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 647.

OBS. 2.--I do not deny that great respect is due to the authority of our lexicographers, or that great improvement was made in the orthography of our language when Dr. Johnson put his hand to the work. But sometimes one man's authority may offset an other's; and he that is inconsistent with himself, destroys his own: for, surely, his example cannot be paramount to his principles. Much has been idly said, both for and against the adoption of Johnson's Dictionary, or Webster's, as *the criterion* of what is right or wrong in spelling; but it would seem that no one man's learning is sufficiently extensive, or his memory sufficiently accurate, to be solely relied on to furnish a *standard* by which we may in all cases be governed. Johnson was generally right; but, like other men, he was sometimes wrong. He erred sometimes in his *principles*, or in their application; as when he adopted the *k* in such words as *rhetorick*, and *demoniack*; or when he inserted the *u* in such words as *governour*, *warriour*, *superiour*. Neither of these modes of spelling was ever generally adopted, in any thing like the number of words to which he applied them; or ever will be; though some indiscreet compilers are still zealously endeavouring to impose them upon the public, as the true way of spelling. He also erred sometimes *by accident*, or *oversight*; as when he spelled thus: "*recall* and *miscal*, *inthrall* and *bethral*, *windfall* and *downfal*, *laystall* and *thumbstal*, *waterfall* and *overfal*, *molehill* and *dunghil*, *windmill* and *twibil*, *uphill* and *downhil*." This occasional excision of the letter *l* is reprehensible, because it is contrary to general analogy, and because both letters are necessary to preserve the sound, and show the derivation of the compound. Walker censures it as a "ridiculous irregularity," and lays the blame of it on the "*printers*," and yet does not venture to correct it! See Johnson's Dictionary, first American edition, quarto; Walker's Pronouncing Dictionary, under the word *Dunghil*; and his Rhyming Dictionary, Introd., p. xv.

OBS. 3.--"Dr. Johnson's Dictionary" has been represented by some as having "nearly fixed the external form of our language." But Murray, who quotes this from Dr. Nares, admits, at the same time, that, "The orthography of a great number of English words, is far from being uniform, even amongst writers of distinction."--*Gram.*, p. 25. And, after commending this work of Johnson's, as A STANDARD, from which, "it is earnestly to be hoped, that no author will henceforth, on light grounds, be tempted to innovate," he adds, "This Dictionary, however, contains some orthographical inconsistencies which ought to be rectified: such as, *immovable*, *moveable*; *chastely*, *chastness*; *fertileness*, *fertily*; *sliness*, *slyly*; *fearlessly*, *fearlesness*; *needlessness*, *needlesly*."--*Ib.* In respect to the final *ck* and *our*, he also *intentionally departs from THE STANDARD which he thus commends*; preferring, in that, the authority of *Walker's Rhyming Dictionary*, from which he borrowed his rules for spelling. For, against the use of *k* at the end of words from the learned languages, and against the *u* in many words in which Johnson used it, we have the authority, not only of

general usage now, but of many grammarians who were contemporary with Johnson, and of more than a dozen lexicographers, ancient or modern, among whom is Walker himself. In this, therefore, Murray's practice is right, and his commended standard dictionary, wrong.

OBS. 4.--Of words ending in *or* or *our*, we have about three hundred and twenty; of which not more than forty can now with any propriety be written with the latter termination. Aiming to write according to the best usage of the present day, I insert the *u* in so many of these words as now seem most familiar to the eye when so written; but I have no partiality for any letters that can well be spared; and if this book should ever, by any good fortune, happen to be reprinted, after *honour*, *labour*, *favour*, *behaviour*, and *endeavour*, shall have become as unfashionable as *authour*, *errour*, *terroure*, and *emperour*, are now, let the proof-reader strike out the useless letter not only from these words, but from all others which shall bear an equally antiquated appearance.

OBS. 5.--I have suggested the above-mentioned imperfections in *Dr. Johnson's* orthography, merely to justify the liberty which I take of spelling otherwise; and not with any view to give a preference to that of *Dr. Webster*, who is now contending for the honour of having furnished a more correct *standard*. For the latter author, though right in some things in which the former was wrong, is, on the whole, still more erroneous and inconsistent. In his various attempts at reformation in our orthography, he has spelled many hundreds of words in such a variety of ways, that he knows not at last which of them is right, and which are wrong. But in respect to *definitions*, he has done good service to our literature; nor have his critics been sufficiently just respecting what they call his "innovations." See Cobb's Critical Review of the Orthography of Webster. To omit the *k* from such words as *publick*, or the *u* from such as *superiour*, is certainly *no innovation*; it is but ignorance that censures the general practice, under that name. The advocates for Johnson and opponents of Webster, who are now so zealously stickling for the *k* and the *u* in these cases, ought to know that they are contending for what was obsolete, or obsolescent, when Dr. Johnson was a boy.

OBS. 6.--I have before observed that some of the grammarians who were contemporary with Johnson, did not adopt his practice respecting the *k* or the *u*, in *publick*, *critick*, *errour*, *superiour*, &c. And indeed I am not sure there were any who did. Dr. Johnson was born in 1709, and he died in 1784. But Brightland's Grammar, which was written during the reign of Queen Anne, who died in 1714, in treating of the letter C, says, "If in any Word the harder Sound precedes (*e*), (*i*), or (*y*), (*k*) is either added or put in its Place; as, *Skill*, *Skin*, *Publick*: And tho' the additional (*k*) in the foregoing Word be an *old Way* of Spelling, yet it is now very justly left off, as being a superfluous Letter; for (*c*) at the End is always hard."--Seventh Edition, Lond., 1746, p. 37.

OBS. 7.--The three grammars of Ash, Priestley, and Lowth, all appeared, in their first editions, about one time; all, if I mistake not, in the year 1763; and none of these learned doctors, it would seem, used the mode of spelling now in question. In Ash, of 1799, we have such orthography as this: "Italics, public, domestic, our traffic, music, quick; error, superior, warrior, authors, honour, humour, favour, behaviour." In Priestley, of 1772: "Iambics, dactyls, dactylic, anapæstic, monosyllabic, electric, public, critic; author, emperor's, superior; favour, labours, neighbours, laboured, vigour, endeavour; meagre, hillock, bailiwick, bishoprick, control, travelling." In Lowth, of 1799: "Comic, critic, characteristic, domestic; author, *favor*, *avored*, *endeavored*, *alledging*, foretells." Now all these are words in the spelling of which Johnson and Webster contradict each other; and if they are not all right, surely they would not, on the whole, be made more nearly right, by being conformed to either of these authorities exclusively. For THE BEST USAGE is the ultimate rule of grammar.

OBS. 8.--The old British Grammar, written before the American Revolution, and even before "*the learned Mr. Samuel Johnson*" was doctorated, though it thus respectfully quotes that great scholar, does not follow him in the spelling of which I am treating. On the contrary, it abounds with examples of words ending in *ic* and *or*, and not in *ick* and *our*, as he wrote them; and I am confident, that, from that time to this, the former orthography has continued to be *more common than his*. Walker, the orthoëpist, who died in 1807, yielded the point respecting the *k*, and ended about four hundred and fifty words with *c* in his Rhyming Dictionary; but he thought it more of an innovation than it really was. In his Pronouncing Dictionary, he says, "It has been a

custom, *within these twenty years*, to omit the *k* at the end of words, when preceded by *c*. This has introduced a *novelty* into the language, which is that of ending a word with an unusual letter," &c. "This omission of *k* is, however, too general to be counteracted, even by the authority of Johnson; but it is to be hoped it will be confined to words from the learned languages."-- *Walker's Principles of Pronunciation*, No. 400. The tenth edition of Burn's Grammar, dated 1810, says, "It has become customary to omit *k* after *c* at the end of dissyllables and trisyllables, &c. as *music*, *arithmetic*, *logic*; but the *k* is retained in monosyllables; as, *back*, *deck*, *rick*, &c."--P. 25. James Buchanan, of whose English Syntax there had been five American editions in 1792, added no *k* to such words as *didactic*, *critic*, *classic*, of which he made frequent use; and though he wrote *honour*, *labour*, and the like, with *u*, as they are perhaps most generally written now, he inserted no *u* in *error*, *author*, or any of those words in which that letter would now be inconsistent with good taste.

OBS. 9.--Bicknell's Grammar, of 1790, treating of the letter *k*, says, "And for the same reason we have *dropt* it at the end of words after *c*, which is there always hard; as in *publick*, *logick*, &c. which are more elegantly written *public*, *logic*."--Part ii, p. 13. Again: "It has heretofore joined with *c* at the end of words; as *publick*, *logick*; but, as before observed, being there quite superfluous, it is now left out"--*Ib.*, p. 16. Horne Tooke's orthography was also agreeable to the rule which I have given on this subject. So is the usage of David Booth: "Formerly a *k* was added, as, *rustick*, *politick*, *Arithmetick*, &c. but this is now in disuse."--*Booth's Introd. to Dict.*, Lond., 1814, p. 80.

OBS. 10.--As the authors of many recent spelling-books--Cobb, Emerson, Burhans, Bolles, Sears, Marshall, Mott, and others--are now contending for this "*superfluous letter*," in spite of all the authority against it, it seems proper briefly to notice their argument, lest the student be misled by it. It is summed up by one of them in the following words: "In regard to *k* after *c* at the end of words, it may be sufficient to say, that its omission has never been attempted, except in a *small portion* of the cases *where* it occurs; and that it tends to an erroneous pronunciation of derivatives, as in *mimick*, *mimicking*, where, if the *k* were omitted, it would read *mimicing*; and as *c* before *i* is always sounded like *s*, it must be pronounced *mimising*. Now, since it is never omitted in monosyllables, *where* it most frequently occurs, as in *block*, *clock*, &c., and *can be in a part only* of polysyllables, it is thought better to preserve it in all cases, by *which* we have one general rule, in place of several irregularities and exceptions that must follow its partial omission."--*Bolles's Spelling-Book*, p. 2. I need not tell the reader that these two sentences evince great want of care or skill in the art of grammar. But it is proper to inform him, that we have in our language eighty-six monosyllables which end with *ck*, and from them about fifty compounds or derivatives, which of course keep the same termination. To these may be added a dozen or more which seem to be of doubtful formation, such as *huckaback*, *pickapack*, *gimcrack*, *ticktack*, *picknick*, *barrack*, *knapsack*, *hollyhock*, *shamrock*, *hammock*, *hillock*, *hammock*, *bullock*, *roebuck*. But the verbs on which this argument is founded are only six; *attack*, *ransack*, *traffick*, *frolick*, *mimick*, and *physick*; and these, unquestionably, must either be spelled with the *k*, or must assume it in their derivatives. Now that useful class of words which are generally and properly written with final *c*, are about *four hundred and fifty* in number, and are all of them either adjectives or nouns of regular derivation from the learned languages, being words of more than one syllable, which have come to us from Greek or Latin roots. But what has the doubling of *c* by *k*, in our native monosyllables and their derivatives, to do with all these words of foreign origin? For the reason of the matter, we might as well double the *l*, as our ancestors did, in *naturall*, *temporall*, *spirituall*, &c.

OBS. 11.--The learner should observe that some letters incline much to a duplication, while some others are doubled but seldom, and some, never. Thus, among the vowels, *ee* and *oo* occur frequently; *aa* is used sometimes; *ii*, never--except in certain Latin words, (wherein the vowels are separately uttered,) such as *Horatii*, *Veii*, *iidem*, *genii*. Again, the doubling of *u* is precluded by the fact that we have a distinct letter called *Double-u*, which was made by joining two *Vees*, or two *Ues*, when the form for *u* was *v*. So, among the consonants, *f*, *l*, and *s*, incline more to duplication, than any others. These letters are double, not only at the end of those monosyllables which have but one vowel, as *staff*, *mill*, *pass*; but also under some other circumstances. According to general usage, final *f* is doubled after a single vowel, in almost all cases; as in *bailiff*, *caitiff*, *plaintiff*, *midriff*, *sheriff*, *tariff*, *mastiff*; yet not in *calif*, which is perhaps better written *caliph*.

Final *l*, as may be seen by Rule 8th, admits not now of a duplication like this; but, by the exceptions to Rule 4th, it is frequently doubled when no other consonant would be; as in *travelling*, *grovelling*; unless, (contrary to the opinion of Lowth, Walker, and Webster,) we will have *fillipping*, *gossipping*, and *worshipping*, to be needful exceptions also.

OBS. 12.--Final *s* sometimes occurs single, as in *alas*, *atlas*, *bias*; and especially in Latin words, as *virus*, *impetus*; and when it is added to form plurals, as *verse*, *verses*: but this letter, too, is generally doubled at the end of primitive words of more than one syllable; as in *carcass*, *compass*, *cuirass*, *harass*, *trespass*, *embarrass*. On the contrary, the other consonants are seldom doubled, except when they come under Rule 3d. The letter *p*, however, is commonly doubled, in some words, even when it forms a needless exception to Rule 4th; as in the derivatives from *fillip*, *gossip*, and perhaps also *worship*. This letter, too, was very frequently doubled in Greek; whence we have, from the name of Philip of Macedon, the words *Philippic* and *Philippize*, which, if spelled according to our rule for such derivatives, would, like *galloped* and *galloper*, *siruped* and *sirupy*, have but one *p*. We find them so written in some late dictionaries. But if *fillipped*, *gossipped*, and *worshipped*, with the other derivatives from the same roots, are just and necessary exceptions to Rule 4th, (which I do not admit,) so are these; and for a much stronger reason, as the classical scholar will think. In our language, or in words purely English, the letters *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, *q*, *v*, *w*, *x*, and *y*, are, properly speaking, never doubled. Yet, in the forming of *compounds*, it may possibly happen, that two Aitches, two Kays, or even two Double-ues or Wies, shall come together; as in *withhold*, *brickkiln*, *slowworm*, *bayyarn*.

OBS. 13.--There are some words--as those which come from *metal*, *medal*, *coral*, *crystal*, *argil*, *axil*, *cavil*, *tranquil*, *pupil*, *papil*--in which the classical scholar is apt to violate the analogy of English derivation, by doubling the letter *l*, because he remembers the *ll* of their foreign roots, or their foreign correspondents. But let him also remember, that, if a knowledge of etymology may be shown by spelling metallic, metalliferous, metallography, metallurgic, metallurgist, metallurgy, medallic, medallion, crystallize, crystalline, argillous, argillaceous, axillar, axillary, cavillous, cavillation, papillate, papillous, papillary, tranquillity, and pupillary, with double *l*, ignorance of it must needs be implied in spelling metaline, metalist, metaloid, metaloidal, medalist, coralaceous, coraline, coralite, coralinite, coraloid, coraloidal, crystalite, argilite, argilitic, tranquilize, and pupilage, in like manner. But we cannot well double the *l* in the former, and not in the latter words. Here is a choice of difficulties. Etymology must govern orthography. But what etymology? our own, or that which is foreign? If we say, both, they disagree; and the mere English scholar cannot know when, or how far, to be guided by the latter. If a Latin diminutive, as *papilla* from *papula* or *papa*, *pupillus* from *pupus*, or *tranquillus* from *trans* and *quietus*, happen to double an *l*, must we forever cling to the reduplication, and that, in spite of our own rules to the contrary? Why is it more objectionable to change *pupillaris* to *pupillary*, than *pupillus* to *pupil*? or, to change *tranquillitas* to *tranquility*, than *tranquillus* to *tranquil*? And since *papilous*, *pupilage*, and *tranquilize* are formed from the English words, and not directly from the Latin, why is it not as improper to write them with double *l*, as to write *perilous*, *vassalage*, and *civilize*, in the same manner?

OBS. 14.--If the practice of the learned would allow us to follow the English rule here, I should incline to the opinion, that all the words which I have mentioned above, ought to be written with single *l*. Ainsworth exhibits the Latin word for *coral* in four forms, and the Greek word in three. Two of the Latin and two of the Greek have the *l* single; the others double it. He also spells "*coraliticus*" with one *l*, and defines it "A sort of white marble, called *coraline*." [120] The Spaniards, from whose *medalla*, we have *medal*; whose *argil*[121] is *arcilla*, from the Latin *argilla*; and to whose *cavilar*, Webster traces *cavil*; in all their derivatives from these Latin roots, *metallum*, metal--*coralium*, *corallium*, *curalium*, or *corallum*, coral--*crystallus* or *crystallum*, crystal--*pupillus*, pupil--and *tranquillus*, tranquil--follow their own rules, and write mostly with single *l*: as, *pupilero*, a teacher; *metalico*, metallic; *corolina* (fem.) coraline; *cristalino*, crystalline; *crystalizar*, crystalize; *traquilizar*, tranquilize; and *tranquilidad*, tranquility. And if we follow not ours, when or how shall the English scholar ever know why we spell as we do? For example, what can he make of the orthography of the following words, which I copy from our best dictionaries: equip', eq'uiPAGE; wor'ship, wor'shipper;--peril, perilous; cavil, cavillous;[122]--libel, libellous; quarrel, quarrelous;--opal, opaline; metal,

metalline;[123]--coral, coralliform; crystal, crystalform;--dial, dialist; medal, medallist;--rascal, rascalion; medal, medallion;--moral, moralist, morality; metal, metallist, metallurgy;--civil, civilize, civility; tranquil, tranquillize, tranquillity;--novel, novelism, novelist, novelize; grovel, grovelling, grovelled, groveller?

OBS. 15.--The second clause of Murray's or Walker's 5th Rule for spelling, gives only a single *l* to each of the derivatives above named.[124] But it also treats in like manner many hundreds of words in which the *l* must certainly be doubled. And, as neither "the Compiler," nor any of his copiers, have paid any regard to their own principle, neither their doctrine nor their practice can be of much weight either way. Yet it is important to know to what words the rule is, or is not, applicable. In considering this vexatious question about the duplication of *l*, I was at first inclined to admit that, whenever final *l* has become single in English by dropping the second *l* of a foreign root, the word shall resume the *ll* in all derivatives formed from it by adding a termination beginning with a vowel; as, *beryllus*, *beryl*, *berylline*. This would, of course, double the *l* in nearly all the derivatives from *metal*, *medal*, &c. But what says Custom? She constantly doubles the *l* in most of them; but wavers in respect to some, and in a few will have it single. Hence the difficulty of drawing a line by which we may abide without censure. *Pu'pillage* and *pu'pillary*, with *ll*, are according to *Walker's Rhyming Dictionary*; but Johnson spells them *pu'pilage* and *pu'pilary*, with single *l*; and Walker, in his *Pronouncing Dictionary*, has *pupilage* with one *l*, and *pupillary* with two. Again: both Johnson's and the *Pronouncing Dictionary*, give us *medallist* and *metallist* with *ll*, and are sustained by Webster and others; but Walker, in his *Rhyming Dictionary*, writes them *medalist* and *metalist*, with single *l*, like *dialist*, *formalist*, *cabalist*, *herbalist*, and twenty other such words. Further: Webster doubles the *l* in all the derivatives of *metal*, *medal*, *coral*, *axil*, *argil*, and *papil*; but writes it single in all those of *crystal*, *cavil*, *pupil*, and *tranquil*--except *tranquillity*.

OBS. 16.--Dr. Webster also attempts, or pretends, to put in practice the hasty proposition of Walker, to spell with single *l* all derivatives from words ending in *l* not under the accent. "No letter," says Walker, "seems to be more frequently doubled improperly than *l*. Why we should write *libelling*, *levelling*, *revelling*, and yet *offering*, *suffering*, *reasoning*, I am totally at a loss to determine; and, unless *l* can give a better plea than any other letter in the alphabet, for being doubled in this situation, I must, in the style of Lucian, in his trial of the letter *T*, declare for an expulsion."--*Rhyming Dict.*, p. x. This rash conception, being adopted by some men of still less caution, has wrought great mischief in our orthography. With respect to words ending in *el*, it is a good and sufficient reason for doubling the *l*, that the *e* may otherwise be supposed servile and silent. I have therefore made this termination a general exception to the rule against doubling. Besides, a large number of these words, being derived from foreign words in which the *l* was doubled, have a second reason for the duplication, as strong as that which has often induced these same authors to double that letter, as noticed above. Such are *bordel*, *chapel*, *duel*, *fardel*, *gabel*, *gospel*, *gravel*, *lamel*, *label*, *libel*, *marvel*, *model*, *novel*, *parcel*, *quarrel*, and *spinel*. Accordingly we find, that, in his work of expulsion, Dr. Webster has not unfrequently contradicted himself, and conformed to usage, by doubling the *l* where he probably intended to write it single. Thus, in the words *bordeller*, *chapellany*, *chapelling*, *gospellary*, *gospeller*, *gravelly*, *lamellate*, *lamellar*, *lamellarly*, *lamelliform*, and *spinellane*, he has written the *l* double, while he has grossly corrupted many other similar words by forbearing the reduplication; as, *traveler*, *groveling*, *duelist*, *marvelous*, and the like. In cases of such difficulty, we can never arrive at uniformity and consistency of practice, unless we resort to *principles*, and such principles as can be made intelligible to the *English* scholar. If any one is dissatisfied with the rules and exceptions which I have laid down, let him study the subject till he can furnish the schools with better.

OBS. 17.--We have in our language a very numerous class of adjectives ending in *able* or *ible*, as *affable*, *arable*, *tolerable*, *admissible*, *credible*, *infallible*, to the number of nine hundred or more. In respect to the proper form and signification of some of these, there occurs no small difficulty. *Able* is a common English word, the meaning of which is much better understood than its origin. Horne Tooke supposes it to have come from the Gothic noun *abal*, signifying *strength*; and consequently avers, that it "has nothing to do with the Latin adjective *habilis*, *fit*, or *able*, from which our etymologists erroneously derive it."--*Diversions of Purley*, Vol. ii, p. 450. This I suppose the etymologists will dispute with him. But whatever may be its true derivation,

no one can well deny that *able*, as a suffix, belongs most properly, if not exclusively, to *verbs*; for most of the words formed by it, are plainly a sort of verbal adjectives. And it is evident that this author is right in supposing that English words of this termination, like the Latin verbals in *bilis*, have, or ought to have, such a signification as may justify the name which he gives them, of "*potential passive adjectives*;" a signification in which the English and the Latin derivatives exactly correspond. Thus *dis'soluble* or *dissolv'able* does not mean *able to dissolve*, but *capable of being dissolved*; and *divisible* or *dividable* does not mean *able to divide*, but *capable of being divided*.

OBS. 18.--As to the application of this suffix to nouns, when we consider the signification of the words thus formed, its propriety may well be doubted. It is true, however, that nouns do sometimes assume something of the nature of verbs, so as to give rise to adjectives that are of a participial character; such, for instance, as *sainted*, *bigoted*, *conceited*, *gifted*, *tufted*. Again, of such as *hard-hearted*, *good-natured*, *cold-blooded*, we have an indefinite number. And perhaps, upon the same principle, the formation of such words as *actionable*, *companionable*, *exceptionable*, *marketable*, *merchantable*, *pasturable*, *treasonable*, and so forth, may be justified, if care be taken to use them in a sense analogous to that of the real verbals. But, surely, the meaning which is commonly attached to the words *amicable*, *changeable*, *fashionable*, *favourable*, *peaceable*, *reasonable*, *pleasurable*, *seasonable*, *suitable*, and some others, would never be guessed from their formation. Thus, *suitable* means *fitting* or *suited*, and not *able to suit*, or *capable of being suited*.

OBS. 19.--Though all words that terminate in *able*, used as a suffix, are properly reckoned derivatives, rather than compounds, and in the former class the separate meaning of the parts united is much less regarded than in the latter; yet, in the use of words of this formation, it would be well to have some respect to the general analogy of their signification as stated above; and not to make derivatives of the same fashion convey meanings so very different as do some of these. Perhaps it is from some general notion of their impropriety, that several words of this doubtful character have already become obsolete, or are gradually falling into disuse: as, *accustomable*, *chanceable*, *concordable*, *conusable*, *customable*, *behoovable*, *leisurable*, *medicinable*, *personable*, *powerable*, *razorable*, *shapable*, *semblable*, *vengeable*, *veritable*. Still, there are several others, yet currently employed, which might better perhaps, for the same reason, give place to more regular terms: as, *amicable*, for *friendly* or *kind*; *charitable*, for *benevolent* or *liberal*; *colourable*, for *apparent* or *specious*; *peaceable*, for *peaceful* or *unhostile*; *pleasurable*, for *pleasing* or *delightful*; *profitable*, for *gainful* or *lucrative*; *sociable*, for *social* or *affable*; *reasonable*, for *rational* or *just*.

OBS. 20.--In respect to the orthography of words ending in *able* or *ible*, it is sometimes difficult to determine which of these endings ought to be preferred; as whether we ought to write *tenable* or *tenible*, *reversable* or *reversible*, *addable* or *addible*. In Latin, the termination is *bilis*, and the preceding vowel is determined by the *conjugation* to which the verb belongs. Thus, for verbs of the first conjugation, it is *a*; as, from *arare*, to plough, *arabilis*, *arable*, tillable. For the second conjugation, it is *i*; as, from *doc=ere*, to teach, *docibilis*, or *docilis*, *docible* or *docile*, teachable. For the third conjugation, it is *i*; as, from *vend=ere*, to sell, *vendibilis*, *vendible*, salable. And, for the fourth conjugation, it is *i*; as, from *sepelire*, to bury, *sepelib~ilis*, *sep'elible*, [125] buriable. But from *solvo* and *volvo*, of the third conjugation, we have *ubilis*, *uble*; as, *solubilis*, *sol'uble*, solvable or solvable; *volubilis*, *vol'uble*, rollable. Hence the English words, *rev'oluble*, *res'oluble*, *irres'oluble*, *dis'soluble*, *indis'soluble*, and *insol'uble*. Thus the Latin verbals in *bilis*, are a sufficient guide to the orthography of all such words as are traceable to them; but the mere English scholar cannot avail himself of this aid; and of this sort of words we have a much greater number than were ever known in Latin. A few we have borrowed from the French: as, *tenable*, *capable*, *preferable*, *convertible*; and these we write as they are written in French. But the difficulty lies chiefly in those which are of English growth. For some of them are formed according to the model of the Latin verbals in *ibilis*; as *forcible*, *coercible*, *reducible*, *discernible*; and others are made by simply adding the suffix *able*; as *traceable*, *pronounceable*, *manageable*, *advisable*, *returnable*. The last are purely English; and yet they correspond in form with such as come from Latin verbals in *abilis*.

OBS. 21.--From these different modes of formation, with the choice of different roots, we have sometimes

two or three words, differing in orthography and pronunciation, but conveying the same meaning; as, *divis'ible* and *divi'dable*, *des'picable* and *despi'sable*, *refer'able* and *refer'rible*, *mis'cible* and *mix'able*, *dis'soluble*, *dissol'vible*, and *dissol'vable*. Hence, too, we have some words which seem to the mere English scholar to be spelled in a very contradictory manner, though each, perhaps, obeys the law of its own derivation; as, *peaceable* and *forcible*, *impierceable* and *coercible*, *marriageable* and *corrigible*, *damageable* and *eligible*, *changeable* and *tangible*, *chargeable* and *frangible*, *fencible* and *defensible*, *preferable* and *referrible*, *conversable* and *reversible*, *defendable* and *descendible*, *amendable* and *extendible*, *bendable* and *vendible*, *dividable* and *corrodible*, *returnable* and *discernible*, *indispensable* and *responsible*, *advisable* and *fusible*, *respectable* and *compatible*, *delectable* and *collectible*, *taxable* and *flexible*.

OBS. 22.--The American editor of the *Red Book*, to whom all these apparent inconsistencies seemed real blunders, has greatly exaggerated this difficulty in our orthography, and charged Johnson and Walker with having written all these words and many more, in this contradictory manner, "*without any apparent reason!*" He boldly avers, that, "The perpetual contradictions of the same or like words, *in all the books*, show that the authors had no distinct ideas of what is right, and what is wrong;" and ignorantly imagines, that, "The use of *ible* rather than *able*, *in any case*, originated in the necessity of keeping the soft sound of *c* and *g*, in the derivatives; and if *ible* was confined to that use, it would be an easy and simple rule."--*Red Book*, p. 170. Hence, he proposes to write *peacible* for *peaceable*, *tracible* for *traceable*, *changible* for *changeable*, *managible* for *manageable*; and so for all the rest that come from words ending in *ce* or *ge*. But, whatever advantage there might be in this, his "easy and simple rule" would work a revolution for which the world is not yet prepared. It would make *audible audable*, *fallible fallable*, *feasible feasable*, *terrible terrable*, *horrible horrrable*, &c. No tyro can spell in a worse manner than this, even if he have no rule at all. And those who do not know enough of Latin grammar to profit by what I have said in the preceding observation, may console themselves with the reflection, that, in spelling these difficult words entirely by guess, they will not miss the way more than some have done who pretended to be critics. The rule given by John Burn, for *able* and *ible*, is less objectionable; but it is rendered useless by the great number of its exceptions.

OBS. 23.--As most of the rules for spelling refer to the final letters of our primitive words, it may be proper for the learner to know and remember, that not all the letters of the alphabet can assume that situation, and that some of them terminate words much more frequently than others. Thus, in Walker's Rhyming Dictionary, the letter *a* ends about 220 words; *b*, 160; *c*, 450; *d*, 1550; *e*, 7000; *f*, 140; *g*, 280; *h*, 400; *i*, 29; *j*, none; *k*, 550; *l*, 1900; *m*, 550; *n*, 3300; *o*, 200; *p*, 450; *q*, none; *r*, 2750; *s*, 3250; *t*, 3100; *u*, 14; *v*, none; *w*, 200; *x*, 100; *y*, 5000; *z*, 5. We have, then, three consonants, *j*, *q*, and *v*, which never end a word. And why not? With respect to *j* and *v*, the reason is plain from their history. These letters were formerly identified with *i* and *u*, which are not terminational letters. The vowel *i* ends no pure English word, except that which is formed of its own capital *I*; and the few words which end with *u* are all foreign, except *thou* and *you*. And not only so, the letter *j* is what was formerly called *i consonant*; and *v* is what was called *u consonant*. But it was the initial *i* and *u*, or the *i* and *u* which preceded an other vowel, and not those which followed one, that were converted into the consonants *j* and *v*. Hence, neither of these letters ever ends any English word, or is ever doubled. Nor do they unite with other consonants before or after a vowel: except that *v* is joined with *r* in a few words of French origin, as *livre*, *manoeuvre*; or with *l* in some Dutch names, as *Watervleit*. *Q* ends no English word, because it is always followed by *u*. The French termination *que*, which is commonly retained in *pique*, *antique*, *critique*, *opaque*, *oblique*, *burlisque*, and *grotesque*, is equivalent to *k*; hence we write *packet*, *lackey*, *checker*, *risk*, *mask*, and *mosk*, rather than *paquet*, *laquey*, *chequer*, *risque*, *masque*, and *mosque*. And some authors write *burlesk* and *grotesk*, preferring *k* to *que*.

OBS. 24.--Thus we see that *j*, *q*, and *v*, are, for the most part, initial consonants only. Hence there is a harshness, if not an impropriety, in that syllabication which some have recently adopted, wherein they accommodate to the ear the division of such words as *maj-es-ty*, *proj-ect*, *traj-ect*, *--eq-ui-ty*, *liq-ui-date*, *ex-cheq-uer*. But *v*, in a similar situation, has now become familiar; as in *ev-er-y*, *ev-i-dence*: and it may also stand with *l* or *r*, in the division of such words as *solv-ing* and *serv-ing*. Of words ending in *ive*, Walker exhibits four hundred and fifty--exactly the same number that he spells with *ic*. And Horne Tooke, who

derives *ive* from the Latin *ivus*, (q. d. *vis*.) and *ic* from the Greek [Greek: *ikos*], (q. d. [Greek: *ischus*]) both implying *power*, has well observed that there is a general correspondence of meaning between these two classes of adjectives--both being of "a potential active signification; as *purgative*, *vomitive*, *operative*, &c.; *cathartic*, *emetic*, *energetic*, &c."--*Diversions of Purley*, Vol. ii, p. 445. I have before observed, that Tooke spelled all this latter class of words without the final *k*; but he left it to Dr. Webster to suggest the reformation of striking the final *e* from the former.

OBS. 25.--In Dr. Webster's "Collection of Essays and *Fugitiv Peeeces*," published in 1790, we find, among other equally ingenious improvements of our orthography, a general omission of the final *e* in all words ending in *ive*, or rather of all words ending in *ve*, preceded by a short vowel; as, "*primitiv*, *derivativ*, *extensiv*, *positiv*, *deserv*, *twelv*, *proov*, *luv*, *hav*, *giv*, *liv*." This mode of spelling, had it been adopted by other learned men, would not only have made *v* a very frequent final consonant, but would have placed it in an other new and strange predicament, as being subject to reduplication. For he that will write *hav*, *giv*, and *liv*, must also, by a general rule of grammar, write *havving*, *givving*, and *livving*. And not only so, there will follow also, in the solemn style of the Bible, a change of *givist*, *livest*, *giveth*, and *liveth*, into *givvest*, *livvest*, *givveth*, and *livveth*. From all this it may appear, that a silent final *e* is not always quite so useless a thing as some may imagine. With a levity no less remarkable, does the author of the *Red Book* propose at once two different ways of reforming the orthography of such words as *pierceable*, *manageable*, and so forth; in one of which, the letter *j* would be brought into a new position, and subjected sometimes to reduplication. "It would be a useful improvement to change this *c* into *s*, and *g* into *j*;" as, *piersable*, *manajable*, &c. "Or they might assume *i*;" as, *piercibe*, *managible*, &c.--*Red Book*, p. 170. Now would not this "useful improvement" give us such a word as *allejjable*? and would not one such monster be more offensive than all our present exceptions to Rule 9th? Out upon all such tampering with orthography!

OBS. 26.--If any thing could arrest the folly of innovators and dabbling reformers, it would be the history of former attempts to effect improvements similar to theirs. With this sort of history every one would do well to acquaint himself, before he proceeds to disfigure words by placing their written elements in any new predicament. If the orthography of the English language is ever reduced to greater regularity than it now exhibits, the reformation must be wrought by those who have no disposition either to exaggerate its present defects, or to undertake too much. Regard must be had to the origin, as well as to the sounds, of words. To many people, all silent letters seem superfluous; and all indirect modes of spelling, absurd. Hence, as the learner may perceive, a very large proportion of the variations and disputed points in spelling, are such as refer to the silent letters, which are retained by some writers and omitted by others. It is desirable that such as are useless and irregular should be always omitted; and such as are useful and regular always retained. The rules which I have laid down as principles of discrimination, are such as almost every reader will know to be generally true, and agreeable to present usage, though several of them have never before been printed in any grammar. Their application will strike out some letters which are often written, and retain some which are often omitted; but, if they err on either hand, I am confident they err less than any other set of rules ever yet formed for the same purpose. Walker, from whom Murray borrowed his rules for spelling, declares for an expulsion of the second *l* from *traveller*, *gambolled*, *grovelling*, *equalling*, *cavilling*, and all similar words; seems more willing to drop an *l* from *illness*, *stillness*, *shrillness*, *fellness*, and *drollness*, than to retain both in *smallness*, *tallness*, *chillness*, *dullness*, and *fullness*; makes it one of his orthographical aphorisms, that, "Words taken into composition often drop those letters which were superfluous in their simples; as, *Christmas*, *dunghil*, *handful*;" and, at the same time, chooses rather to restore the silent *e* to the ten derivatives from *move* and *prove*, from which Johnson dropped it, than to drop it from the ten similar words in which that author retained it! And not only so, he argues against the principle of his own aphorism; and says, "It is certainly to be feared that, if this pruning of our words of all the superfluous letters, as they are called, should be much farther indulged, we shall quickly antiquate our most respectable authors, and irreparably maim our language."--*Walker's Rhyming Dict.*, p. xvii.

OBS. 27.--No attempt to subject our orthography to a system of phonetics, seems likely to meet with general favour, or to be free from objection, if it should. For words are not mere sounds, and in their *orthography*

more is implied than in *phonetics*, or *phonography*. Ideographic forms have, in general, the advantage of preserving the identity, history, and lineage of words; and these are important matters in respect to which phonetic writing is very liable to be deficient. Dr. Johnson, about a century ago, observed, "There have been many schemes offered for the emendation and settlement of our orthography, which, like that of other nations, being formed by chance, or according to the fancy of the earliest writers in rude ages, was at first very various and uncertain, and [is] as yet sufficiently irregular. Of these reformers some have endeavoured to accommodate orthography better to the pronunciation, without considering that this is to measure by a shadow, to take that for a model or standard which is changing while they apply it. Others, less absurdly indeed, but with equal unlikelihood of success, have endeavoured to proportion the number of letters to that of sounds, that every sound may have its own character, and every character a single sound. Such would be the orthography of a new language to be formed by a synod of grammarians upon principles of science. But who can hope to prevail on nations to change their practice, and make all their old books useless? or what advantage would a new orthography procure equivalent to the confusion and perplexity of such an alteration?"--*Johnson's Grammar before Quarto Dict.*, p. 4.

OBS. 28.--Among these reformers of our alphabet and orthography, of whose schemes he gives examples, the Doctor mentions, first, "*Sir Thomas Smith*, secretary of state to Queen Elizabeth, a man of real learning, and much practised in grammatical disquisitions;" who died in 1597;--next, "*Dr. Gill*, the celebrated master of St. Paul's School in London;" who died in 1635;--then, "*Charles Butler*, a man who did not want an understanding which might have qualified him for better employment;" who died in 1647;--and, lastly, "*Bishop Wilkins*, of Chester, a learned and ingenious critic, who is said to have proposed his scheme, without expecting to be followed;" he died in 1672.

OBS. 29.--From this time, there was, so far as I know, no noticeable renewal of such efforts, till about the year 1790, when, as it is shown above on page 134 of my Introduction, *Dr. Webster*, (who was then only "*Noah Webster, Jun.*, attorney at law,") attempted to spell all words as they are spoken, without revising the alphabet--a scheme which his subsequent experience before many years led him to abandon. Such a reformation was again attempted, about forty years after, by an other young lawyer, the late lamented *Thomas S. Grimke*, of South Carolina, but with no more success. More recently, phonography, or phonetic writing, has been revived, and to some extent spread, by the publications of *Isaac Pitman*, of Bath, England, and of *Dr. Andrew Comstock*, of Philadelphia. The system of the former has been made known in America chiefly by the lectures and other efforts of *Andrews and Boyle*, of *Dr. Stone*, a citizen of Boston, and of *E. Webster*, a publisher in Philadelphia.

OBS. 30.--The pronunciation of words being evidently as deficient in regularity, in uniformity, and in stability, as is their orthography, if not more so, cannot be conveniently made the measure of their written expression. Concerning the principle of writing and printing by sounds alone, a recent writer delivers his opinion thus: "Let me here observe, as something not remote from our subject, but, on the contrary, directly bearing upon it, that I can conceive no [other] method of so effectually defacing and barbarizing our English tongue, no [other] scheme that would go so far to empty it, practically at least and for us, of all the hoarded wit, wisdom, imagination, and history which it contains, to cut the vital nerve which connects its present with the past, as the introduction of the scheme of 'phonetic spelling,' which some have lately been zealously advocating among us; the principle of which is, that all words should be spelt according as they are sounded, that the writing should be, in every case, subordinated to the speaking. The tacit assumption that it ought so to be, is the pervading error running through the whole system."--*R. C. Trench, on the Study of Words*, p. 177.

OBS. 31.--The phonographic system of stenography, tachygraphy, or short-hand writing, is, I incline to believe, a very great improvement upon the earlier methods. It is perhaps the most reliable mode of taking down speeches, sermons, or arguments, during their delivery, and reporting them for the press; though I cannot pronounce upon this from any experience of my own in the *practice* of the art. And it seems highly probable, if it has not been fully proved, that children may at first be taught to read more readily, and with better articulation, from phonetic print, or *phonotypy*, as it has been called, than from books that exhibit words

in their current or established orthography. But still it is questionable whether it is not best for them to learn each word at first by its peculiar or ideographic form--the form in which they must ultimately learn to read it, and which indeed constitutes its only *orthography*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN SPELLING.

UNDER RULE I.--OF FINAL F, L, OR S.

"He wil observe the moral law, in hiz conduct."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 320.

[FORMULES--1. Not proper, because the word "wil" is here spelled with one *l*. But, according to Rule 1st, "Monosyllables ending in *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant." Therefore, this *l* should be doubled; thus, *will*.

2. Not proper again, because the word "hiz" is here spelled with *z*. But, according to the exceptions to Rule 1st, "The words *as*, *gas*, *has*, *was*, *yes*, *his*, &c., are written with single *s*." Therefore, this *z* should be *s*; thus, *his*.]

"A clif is a steep bank, or a precipitous rock."--See *Rhyming Dict*. "A needy man's budget is ful of schemes."--*Old Adage*. "Few large publications in this country wil pay a printer."--*Noah Webster's Essays*, p. x. "I shal, with cheerfulness, resign my other papers to oblivion."--*Ib.*, p. x. "The proposition waz suspended til the next session of the legislature."--*Ib.*, p. 362. "Tenants for life wil make the most of lands for themselves."--*Ib.*, p. 366. "While every thing iz left to lazy negroes, a state wil never be wel cultivated."--*Ib.*, p. 367. "The heirs of the original proprietors stil hold the soil."--*Ib.*, p. 349. "Say my annual profit on money loaned shal be six per cent."--*Ib.*, p. 308. "No man would submit to the drudgery of business, if he could make money az fast by lying stil."--*Ib.*, p. 310. "A man may az wel feed himself with a bodkin, az with a knife of the present fashion."--*Ib.*, p. 400. "The clothes wil be ill washed, the food wil be badly cooked; and you wil be ashamed of your wife, if she iz not ashamed of herself."--*Ib.*, p. 404. "He wil submit to the laws of the state, while he iz a member of it."--*Ib.*, p. 320. "But wil our sage writers on law forever think by tradition?"--*Ib.*, p. 318. "Some stil retain a sovereign power in their territories."--*Ib.*, p. 298. "They sel images, prayers, the sound of bells, remission of sins, &c."--*Perkins's Theology*, p. 401. "And the law had sacrifices offered every day for the sins of al the people."--*Ib.*, p. 406. "Then it may please the Lord, they shal find it to be a restorative."--*Ib.*, p. 420. "Perdition is repentance put of til a future day."--*Old Maxim*. "The angels of God, which wil good and cannot wil evil, have nevertheless perfect liberty of wil."--*Perkins's Theology*, p. 716. "Secondly, this doctrine cuts off the excuse of al sin."--*Ib.*, p. 717. "Knel, the sound of a bell rung at a funeral."--*Johnson and Walker*.

"If gold with dros or grain with chaf you find, Select--and leave the chaf and dros behind."--*Author*.

UNDER RULE II.--OF OTHER FINALS.

"The mobb hath many heads, but no brains."--*Old Maxim*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "mobb" is here spelled with double *b*. But, according to Rule 2d, "Words ending in any other consonant than *f*, *l*, or *s*, do not double the final letter." Therefore, this *b* should be single: thus, *mob*.]

"Clamm, to clog with any glutinous or viscous matter."--*Johnson's Dict*. "Whurr, to pronounce the letter *r* with too much force."--*Ib.* "Flipp, a mixed liquor, consisting of beer and spirits sweetened."--*Ib.* "Glynn, a hollow between two mountains, a glen."--*Churchill's Grammar*, p. 22. "Lamm, to beat soundly with a cudgel or bludgeon."--*Walker's Dict*. "Bunn, a small cake, a simnel, a kind of sweet bread."--See *ib.* "Brunett, a

woman with a brown complexion."--*Ib.* and *Johnson's Dict.* "Wad'sett, an ancient tenure or lease of land in the Highlands of Scotland."--*Webster's Dict.* "To dodd sheep, is to cut the wool away about their tails."--*Ib.* "In aliquem arietare, CIC. To run full but at one."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 95. "Neither your policy nor your temper would permitt you to kill me."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 427. "And admitt none but his own offspring to fulfill them."--*Ib.*, i, 437. "The summ of all this Dispute is, that some make them Participles," &c.--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 352. "As, the *whistling* of winds, the *buz* and *hum* of insects, the *hiss* of serpents, the *crash* of falling timber."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 129; *Adam's Lat. Gram.*, p. 247; *Gould's*, 238. "Vann, to winnow, or a fan for winnowing."--*Walker's Rhyming Dict.* "Creatures that buz, are very commonly such as will sting."--*Author* "Begg, buy, or borrow; butt beware how you find."--*Id.* "It is better to have a house to lett, than a house to gett."--*Id.* "Let not your tongue cutt your throat."--*Old Precept.* "A little witt will save a fortunate man."--*Old Adage.* "There is many a slipp 'twixt the cup and the lipp."--*Id.* "Mothers' darlings make but milksopp heroes."--*Id.* "One eye-witness is worth tenn hearsays."--*Id.*

"The judge shall jobb, the bishop bite the town, And mighty dukes pack cards for half a crown."--POPE: in *Joh. Dict.*, w. *Pack*.

UNDER RULE III.--OF DOUBLING.

"Friz, to curl; frized, curled; frizing, curling."--*Webster's Dict.*, 8vo. Ed. of 1829.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the words "*frized*" and "*frizing*" are here spelled with the single *z*, of their primitive *friz*. But, according to Rule 3d, "Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, when they end with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double their final consonant before an additional syllable that begins with a vowel." Therefore, this *z* should be doubled; thus, *frizzed*, *frizzing*.]

"The commercial interests served to foster the principles of Whigism."--*Payne's Geog.*, Vol. ii, p. 511. "Their extreme indolence shuned every species of labour."--*Robertson's Amer.*, Vol. i, p. 341. "In poverty and stripedness they attend their little meetings."--*The Friend*, Vol. vii, p. 256. "In guiding and controlling[126] the power you have thus obtained."--*Abbott's Teacher*, p. 15. "I began, Thou beganest, He began; We began, You began, They began."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 92. "Why does *began* change its ending; as, I began, Thou beganest?"--*Ib.*, p. 93. "Truth and conscience cannot be controled by any methods of coercion."--*Hints on Toleration*, p. xvi. "Dr. Webster noded, when he wrote 'knit, kniter, and knittingneedle' without doubling the *t*."--See *El. Spelling-Book*, 1st Ed., p. 136. "A wag should have wit enough to know when other wags are quizing him."--*G. Brown*. "Bon'y, handsome, beautiful, merry."--*Walker's Rhyming Dict.* "Coquetish, practicing coquetry; after the manner of a jilt."--*Webster's Dict.* "Potage, a species of food, made of meat and vegetables boiled to softness in water."--See *ib.* "Potager, from potage, a porringer, a small vessel for children's food."--See *ib.*, and *Worcester's*. "Compromit, compromised, compromising; manumit, manumitted, manumitting."--*Webster*. "Inferible; that may be inferred or deduced from premises."--*Red Book*, p. 228. "Acids are either solid, liquid, or gaseous."--*Gregory's Dict.*, art. *Chemistry*. "The spark will pass through the interrupted space between the two wires, and explode the gases."--*Ib.* "Do we sound *gases* and *gaseous* like *cases* and *caseous*? No: they are more like *glasses* and *osseous*."--*G. Brown*. "I shall not need here to mention *Swiming*, when he is of an age able to learn."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 12. "Why do lexicographers spell *thinnish* and *mannish* with two Ens, and *dimish* and *ramish* with one Em, each?"--See *Johnson* and *Webster*. "*Gas* forms the plural regularly, *gases*."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 38. "Singular, Gas; Plural, Gases."--*S. W. Clark's Gram.*, p. 47. "These are contractions from *sheded*, *bursted*."--*Hiley's Grammar*, p. 45. "The Present Tense denotes what is occuring at the present time."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 36, and p. 61. "The verb ending in *eth* is of the solemn or antiquated style; as, he loveth, he walketh, he runeth."--*P. Davis's Gram.*, p. 34.

"Thro' freedom's sons no more remonstrance rings, Degrading nobles and controlling kings."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 292.

UNDER RULE IV.--NO DOUBLING.

"A bigotted and tyrannical clergy will be feared."--*Brown's Estimate*, Vol. ii, p. 78.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the final *t* of *bigot* is here doubled in "*bigotted*." But, according to Rule 4th, "A final consonant, when it is not preceded by a single vowel, or when the accent is not on the last syllable, should remain single before an additional syllable." Therefore, this *t* should be single; thus, *bigoted*.]

"Jacob worshipped his Creator, leaning on the top of his staff."--*Key in Merchant's Gram.*, p. 185. "For it is all marvelously destitute of interest."--*Merchant's Criticisms*. "As, box, boxes; church, churches; lash, lashes; kiss, kisses; rebus, rebusses."--*Murray's Gram.*, 12mo, p. 42. "Gossiping and lying go hand in hand."--*Old Maxim*. "The substance of the Criticisms on the Diversions of Purley was, with singular industry, gossipped by the present precious secretary of war, in Payne the bookseller's shop."--See *Key*. "Worship makes worshipped, worshipper, worshipping; gossip, gossipped, gossipper, gossiping; fillip, fillipped, fillipper, fillipping."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 72. "I became as fidgetty as a fly in a milk-jug."--*Blackwood's Mag.*, Vol. xl, p. 674. "That enormous error seems to be rivetted in popular opinion."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 364. "Whose mind iz not biassed by personal attachments to a sovereign."--*Ib.*, p. 318. "Laws against usury originated in a bigotted prejudice against the Jews."--*Ib.*, p. 315. "The most criticcal period of life iz usually between thirteen and seventeen."--*Ib.*, p. 388. "Generallissimo, the chief commander of an army or military force."--See *El. Spelling-Book*, p. 93. "Tranquillize, to quiet, to make calm and peaceful."--*Ib.*, p. 133. "Pommeled, beaten, bruised; having pommels, as a sword or dagger."--*Webster and Chalmers*. "From what a height does the jeweler look down upon his shoemaker!"--*Red Book*, p. 108. "You will have a verbal account from my friend and fellow traveler."--*Ib.*, p. 155. "I observe that you have written the word *counseled* with one *l* only."--*Ib.*, p. 173. "They were offended at such as combatted these notions."--*Robertson's America*, Vol. ii, p. 437. "From libel, come libeled, libeler, libeling, libelous; from grovel, groveled, groveler, groveling; from gravel, graveled and graveling."--See *Webster's Dict.* "Wooliness, the state of being woolly."--*Ib.* "Yet he has spelled chappelling, bordeller, medallist, metalline, metallist, metallize, clavellated, &c. with *ll*, contrary to his rule."--*Cobb's Review of Webster*, p. 11. "Again, he has spelled cancelation and snively with single *l*, and cupellation, pannellation, wittolly, with *ll*."--*Ib.* "Oilly, fatty, greasy, containing oil, glib."--*Rhyming Dict.* "Medallist, one curious in medals; Metallist, one skilled in metals."--*Johnson, Webster, Worcester, Cobb, et al.* "He is benefitted."--*Town's Spelling-Book*, p. 5. "They traveled for pleasure."--*S. W. Clark's Gram.*, p. 101.

"Without you, what were man? A groveling herd, In darkness, wretchedness, and want enchain'd." --*Beattie's Minstrel*, p. 40.

UNDER RULE V.--OF FINAL CK.

"He hopes, therefore, to be pardoned by the critick."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*critick*" is here spelled with a final *k*. But, according to Rule 5th, "Monosyllables and English verbs end not with *c*, but take *ck* for double *c*; as, rack, wreck, rock, attack: but, in general, words derived from the learned languages need not the *k*, and common use discards it." Therefore, this *k* should be omitted; thus, *critic*.]

"The leading object of every publick speaker should be to persuade."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 153. "May not four feet be as poetick as five; or fifteen feet, as poetick as fifty?"--*Ib.*, p. 146. "Avoid all theatrical trick and mimicry, and especially all scholastick stiffness."--*Ib.*, p. 154. "No one thinks of becoming skilled in dancing, or in musick, or in mathematicks, or logick, without long and close application to the subject."--*Ib.*, p. 152. "Caspar's sense of feeling, and susceptibility of metallick and magnetick excitement were also very extraordinary."--*Ib.*, p. 238. "Authorship has become a mania, or, perhaps I should say, an epidemick."--*Ib.*, p. 6. "What can prevent this republick from soon raising a literary standard?"--*Ib.*, p. 10. "Courteous reader, you may think me garrulous upon topicks quite foreign to the subject before me."--*Ib.*, p. 11. "Of the Tonick, Subtonick, and Atoniek elements."--*Ib.*, p. 15. "The subtonick elements are inferiour to the tonicks in all the emphatick and elegant purposes of speech."--*Ib.*, p. 32. "The nine atonicks, and the three abrupt subtonicks

cause an interruption to the continuity of the syllabick impulse."--*Ib.*, p. 37. "On scientific principles, conjunctions and prepositions are but one part of speech."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 120. "That some inferior animals should be able to mimic human articulation, will not seem wonderful."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 2.

"When young, you led a life monastick, And wore a vest ecelesiastick; Now, in your age, you grow fantastick."--*Johnson's Dict.*

UNDER RULE VI.--OF RETAINING.

"Fearlessness, exemption from fear, intrepidity."--*Johnson's Dict.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*fearlessness*" is here allowed to drop one *s* of *fearless*. But, according to Rule 6th, "Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double before any additional termination not beginning with the same letter." Therefore, the other *s* should be inserted; thus, *fearlessness*.]

"Dreadlessness; fearlessness, intrepidity, undauntedness."--*Johnson's Dict.* "Regardlessly, without heed; Regardlessness, heedlessness, inattention."--*Ib.* "Blamelessly, innocently; Blamlessness, innocence."--*Ib.* "That is better than to be flattered into pride and carelessness."--TAYLOR: *Joh. Dict.* "Good fortunes began to breed a proud recklessness in them."--SIDNEY: *ib.* "See whether he lazily and listlessly dreams away his time."--LOCKE: *ib.* "It may be, the palate of the soul is indisposed by listlessness or sorrow."--TAYLOR: *ib.* "Pitilessly, without mercy; Pitilessness, unmercifulness."--*Johnson.* "What say you to such as these? abominable, accordable, agreeable, &c."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. ii, p. 432. "Artlessly; naturally, sincerely, without craft."--*Johnson.* "A chilness, or shivering of the body, generally precedes a fever."--*Murray's Key*, p. 167. "Smalness; littleness, minuteness, weakness."--*Rhyming Dict.* "Gall-less, a. free from gall or bitterness."--*Webster's Dict.* "Talness; height of stature, upright length with comparative slenderness."--See *Johnson et al.* "Wilful; stubborn, contumacious, perverse, inflexible."--*Id.* "He guided them by the skilfulness of his hands."--*Psal.* lxxviii, 72. "The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof."--*Murray's Key*, p. 172. "What is now, is but an amasment of imaginary conceptions."--GLANVILLE: *Joh. Dict.* "Embarrassment; perplexity, entanglement."--See *Littleton's Dict.* "The second is slothfulness, whereby they are performed slackly and carelessly."--*Perkins's Theology*, p. 729. "Instalment; induction into office; part of a large sum of money, to be paid at a particular time."--See *Johnson's Dict.* "Inthralment; servitude, slavery."--*Ib.*

"I, who at some times spend, at others spare, Divided between carelessness and care."--*Pope.*

UNDER RULE VII.--OF RETAINING.

"Shall, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 88; *Ingersoll's*, 136; *Fisk's*, 78; *Jaudon's*, 59; *A. Flint's*, 42; *Wright's*, 90; *Bullions's*, 32.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*foretels*" does not here retain the double *l* of *tell*. But, according to Rule 7th, "Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double in all derivatives formed from them by means of prefixes." Therefore, the other *l* should be inserted; thus, *foretells*.]

"There are a few compound irregular verbs, as *befal*, *bespeak*, &c."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 46. "That we might frequently recal it to our memory."--*Calvin's Institutes*, p. 112. "The angels exercise a constant solicitude that no evil befall us."--*Ib.*, p. 107. "Inthral; to enslave, to shackle, to reduce to servitude."--*Walker's Dict.* "He makes resolutions, and fulfils them by new ones."--*Red Book*, p. 138. "To enrol my humble name upon the list of authors on Elocution."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 12. "Forestal; to anticipate, to take up beforehand."--*Walker's Rhym. Dict.* "Miscal; to call wrong, to name improperly."--*Johnson.* "Bethral; to enslave, to reduce to bondage."--See *id.* "Befal; to happen to, to come to pass."--*Rhym. Dict.* "Unrol; to open what is rolled or convolved."--*Johnson.* "Counterrol; to keep copies of accounts to prevent frauds."--See *id.*

"As Sisyphus uprols a rock, which constantly overpowers him at the summit."--*Author*. "Unwel; not well, indisposed, not in good health."--See *Red Book*, p. 336. "Undersel; to defeat by selling for less, to sell cheaper than an other."--See *id.*, p. 332. "Inwal; to enclose or fortify with a wall."--See *id.*, p. 295. "Twibil; an instrument with two bills, or with a point and a blade; a pickaxe, a mattock, a halberd, a battle-axe."--See *Dict*. "What you miscal their folly, is their care."--*Dryden*. "My heart will sigh when I miscal it so."--*Shakspeare*. "But if the arrangement recal one set of ideas more readily than another."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 130.

"'Tis done; and since 'tis done, 'tis past recal; And since 'tis past recal, must be forgotten."--*Dryden*.

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF FINAL LL.

"The righteous is taken away from the evill to come."--*Perkins's Works*, p. 417.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*evill*" is here written with final *ll*. But, according to Rule 8th, "Final *ll* is peculiar to monosyllables and their compounds, with the few derivatives formed from such roots by prefixes; consequently, all other words that end in *l*, must be terminated with a single *l*." Therefore, one *l* should be here omitted; thus, *evil*.]

"Patroll; to go the rounds in a camp or garrison, to march about and observe what passes."--*Webster's Amer. Dict.*, 8vo. "Marshall; the chief officer of arms, one who regulates rank and order."--See *Bailey's Dict*. "Weevill; a destructive grub that gets among corn."--See *Rhym. Dict*. "It much excells all other studies and arts."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 217. "It is essentiall to all magnitudes, to be in one place."--*Perkins's Works*, p. 403. "By nature I was thy vassall, but Christ hath redeemed me."--*Ib.*, p. 404. "Some, being in want, pray for temporall blessings."--*Ib.*, p. 412. "And this the Lord doth, either in temporall or spirituall benefits."--*Ib.*, p. 415. "He makes an idoll of them, by setting his heart on them."--*Ib.*, p. 416. "This triall by desertion serveth for two purposes."--*Ib.*, p. 420. "Moreover, this destruction is both perpetuall and terrible."--*Ib.*, p. 726. "Giving to severall men several gifts, according to his good pleasure."--*Ib.*, p. 731. "Untill; to some time, place, or degree, mentioned."--See *Red Book*, p. 330. "Annul; to make void, to nullify, to abrogate, to abolish." "Nitric acid combined with argill, forms the nitrate of argill."--*Gregory's Dict.*, art. *Chemistry*.

"Let modest Foster, if he will, excell Ten Metropolitans in preaching well."--*Pope*, p. 414.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINAL E.

"Adjectives ending in *able* signify capacity; as, *comfortable*, *tenable*, *improvable*."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 33.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*improveable*" here retains the final *e* of *improve*. But, according to Rule 9th, "The final *e* of a primitive word is generally omitted before an additional termination beginning with a vowel." Therefore, this *e* should be omitted; thus, *improvable*.]

"Their mildness and hospitality are ascribeable to a general administration of religious ordinances."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 336. "Retrench as much as possible without obscuring the sense."--*James Brown's Amer. Gram.*, 1821, p. 11. "Changeable, subject to change; Unchangeable, immutable."--*Walker's Rhym. Dict*. "Tameable, susceptible of taming; Untameable, not to be tamed."--*Ib.* "Reconcilable, Unreconcilable, Reconcilableness; Irreconcilable, Irreconcilably, Irreconcilableness."--*Johnson's Dict*. "We have thought it most adviseable to pay him some little attention."--*Merchants Criticisms*. "Proveable, that may be proved; Reprovable, blameable, worthy of reprehension."--*Walker's Dict*. "Moveable and Immovable, Moveably and Immovably, Moveables and Removal, Moveableness and Improvableness, Unremoveable and Unimprovable, Unremoveably and Removable, Proveable and Approvable, Irreproveable and Reprovable, Unreproveable and Improvable, Unimproveableness and Improvably."--*Johnson's Dict*. "And with this cruelty you are chargeable in some measure yourself."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 94. "Mothers would certainly resent it, as judging it proceeded from a low opinion of the genius of their sex."--*British Gram.*, Pref., p. xxv.

"Titheable, subject to the payment of tithes; Saleable, vendible, fit for sale; Loseable, possible to be lost; Sizeable, of reasonable bulk or size."--*Walker's Rhyming Dict.* "When he began this custom, he was puleing and very tender."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 8.

"The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables, Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd."--*Shak.*

UNDER RULE X.--OF FINAL E.

"Diversly; in different ways, differently, variously."--*Rhym. Dict.*, and *Webster's*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*Diversly*" here omits the final *e* of its primitive word, *diverse*. But, according to Rule 10th, "The final *e* of a primitive word is generally retained before an additional termination beginning with a consonant." Therefore, this *e* should be retained; thus, *Diversely*.]

"The event thereof contains a wholesome instruction."--*Bacon's Wisdom of the Ancients*, p. 17. "Whence Scaliger falsly concluded that articles were useless."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 94. "The child that we have just seen is wholesomly fed."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 187. "Indeed, falshood and legerdemain sink the character of a prince."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 5. "In earnest, at this rate of managment, thou usest thyself very coarsly."--*Ib.*, p. 19. "To give them an arrangment and diversity, as agreeable as the nature of the subject would admit"--*Murray's Pref. to Ex.*, p. vi. "Alger's Grammar is only a trifling enlargment of Murray's little Abridgment."--*Author*. "You ask whether you are to retain or omit the mute *e* in the word judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, lodgment, adjudgment, and prejudgment."--*Red Book*, p. 172. "Fertileness, fruitfulness; Fertily, fruitfully, abundantly."--*Johnson's Dict.* "Chastly, purely, without contamination; Chastness, chastity, purity."--*Ib.*, and *Walker's*. "Rhymster, *n.* One who makes rhymes; a versifier; a mean poet."--*Johnson and Webster*. "It is therefore an heroical achievment to dispossess this imaginary monarch."--*Berkley's Minute Philos.*, p. 151. "Whereby, is not meant the Present Time, as he imagins, but the Time Past."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 344 "So far is this word from affecting the noun, in regard to its definitness, that its own character of definitness or indefinitness, depends upon the name to which it is prefixed."--*Webster's Philosophical Gram.*, p. 20.

"Satire, by wholesome Lessons, wou'd reclaim, And heal their Vices to secure their Fame." --*Brightland's Gr.*, p. 171.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF FINAL Y.

"Solon's the veryest fool in all the play."--*Dryden, from Persius*, p. 475.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*veryest*" here retains the final *y* of its primitive *very*. But, according to Rule 13th, "The final *y* of a primitive word, when preceded by a consonant, is generally changed into *i* before an additional termination." Therefore, this *y* should be changed to *i*; thus, *veriest*.]

"Our author prides himself upon his great slyness and shrewdness."--*Merchant's Criticisms*. "This tense, then, implys also the signification of *Debeo*."--*B. Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 300. "That may be apply'd to a Subject, with respect to something accidental."--*Ib.*, p. 133. "This latter accompanys his Note with a distinction."--*Ib.*, p. 196. "This Rule is defective, and none of the Annotators have sufficiently supply'd it."--*Ib.*, p. 204. "Though the fancy'd Supplement of Sanctius, Scioppius, Vossius, and Mariangelus, may take place."--*Ib.*, p. 276. "Yet as to the commutableness of these two Tenses, which is deny'd likewise, they are all one."--*Ib.*, p. 311. "Both these Tenses may represent a Futurity implied by the dependence of the Clause."--*Ib.*, p. 332. "Cry, cries, crying, cried, crier, decrial; Shy, shyder, shyest, shyly, shyness; Fly, flies, flying, flier, high-flier; Sly, slyder, slyest, slyly, slyness; Spy, spies, spying, spied, espial; Dry, drier, driest, dryly, dryness."--*Cobb's Dict.* "Cry, cried, crying, crier, cryer, decried, decrier, decrial; Shy, shyly, shily, shyness, shiness; Fly, flier, flyer, high-flyer; Sly, slily, slyly, sliness, slyness; Ply, plyer, plying, pliers, complied, compiler; Dry, drier,

dryer, dryly, dryness."--*Webster's Dict.*, 8vo. "Cry, crier, decrier, decrial; Shy, shily, shyly, shiness, shyness; Fly, flier, flyer, high-flier; Sly, slily, slyly, sliness, slyness; Ply, pliers, plyers, plying, complier; Dry, drier, dryer, dryly, dryness."--*Chalmers's Abridgement of Todd's Johnson*. "I would sooner listen to the thrumming of a dandyzette at her piano."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 24. "Send her away; for she cryeth after us."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 140. "IVYED, *a.* Overgrown with ivy."--*Todd's Dict.*, and *Webster's*.

"Some dryly plain, without invention's aid, Write dull receipts how poems may be made."--*Pope*.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF FINAL Y.

"The gaiety of youth should be tempered by the precepts of age."--*Mur. Key*, p. 175.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*gaiety*" does not here retain the final y of the primitive word *gay*. But, according to Rule 12th, "The final y of a primitive word, when preceded by a vowel, should not be changed into *i* before an additional termination." Therefore, this y should be retained; thus, *gayety*.]

"In the storm of 1703, two thousand stacks of chimnies were blown down, in and about London."--See *Red Book*, p. 112. "And the vexation was not abated by the hacknied plea of haste."--*Ib.*, p. 142. "The fourth sin of our daies is lukewarmness."--*Perkins's Works*, p. 725. "God hates the workers of iniquity, and destroies them that speak lies."--*Ib.*, p. 723. "For, when he laies his hand upon us, we may not fret."--*Ib.*, p. 726. "Care not for it; but if thou maiest be free, choose it rather."--*Ib.*, p. 736. "Alexander Severus saith, 'He that buieth, must sell: I will not suffer buyers and sellers of offices.'"--*Ib.*, p. 737. "With these measures fell in all monied men."--SWIFT: *Johnson's Dict.* "But rattling nonsense in full vollies breaks."--POPE: *ib.*, *w. Volley*. "Vallies are the intervals betwixt mountains."--WOODWARD: *ib.* "The Hebrews had fifty-two journies or marches."--*Wood's Dict.* "It was not possible to manage or steer the gallies thus fastened together."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. ii, p. 106. "Turkies were not known to naturalists till after the discovery of America."--See *Gregory's Dict.* "I would not have given it for a wilderness of monkies."--See *Key*. "Men worked at embroidery, especially in abbies."--*Constable's Miscellany*, Vol. xxi, p. 101. "By which all purchasers or mortgagees may be secured of all monies they lay out."--TEMPLE: *Johnson's Dict.* "He would fly to the mines and the gallies for his recreation."--SOUTH: *Ib.*

"Here pullies make the pond'rous oak ascend."--GAY: *ib.*

-----"You need my help, and you say, Shylock, we would have monies."--SHAKSPEARE: *ib.*

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF IZE AND ISE.

"Will any able writer authorise other men to revise his works?"--*Author*.

[FORMULES.--1. Not proper, because the word "*authorise*" is here written with *s* in the last syllable, in stead of *z*. But, according to Rule 13th, "Words ending in *ize* or *ise* sounded alike, as in *wise* and *size*, generally take the *z* in all such as are essentially formed by means of the termination." Therefore, this *s* should be *z*; thus, *authorize*.

2. Not proper again, because the word "*revize*" is here written with *z* in the last syllable, in lieu of *s*. But, according to Rule 13th, "Words ending in *ize* or *ise* sounded alike, as in *wise* and *size*, generally take the *s*, in monosyllables, and all such as are essentially formed by means of prefixes." Therefore, this *z* should be *s*; thus, *revise*.]

"It can be made as strong and expressive as this Latinised English."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 295. "Governed by the success or the failure of an enterprize."--*Ib.*, Vol. ii, pp. 128 and 259. "Who have patronised the cause of justice against powerful oppressors."--*Ib.*, pp. 94 and 228; *Merchant*, p. 199. "Yet custom authorises this use

of it."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 148. "They surprize myself, * * * and I even think the writers themselves will be surprized."--*Ib.*, Pref., p. xi. "Let the interest rize to any sum which can be obtained."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 310. "To determin what interest shall arize on the use of money."--*Ib.*, p. 313. "To direct the popular councils and check a rizing opposition."--*Ib.*, p. 335. "Five were appointed to the immediate exercize of the office."--*Ib.*, p. 340. "No man ever offers himself [as] a candidate by advertizing."--*Ib.*, p. 344. "They are honest and economical, but indolent, and destitute of enterprize."--*Ib.*, p. 347. "I would however advise you to be cautious."--*Ib.*, p. 404. "We are accountable for whatever we patronise in others."--*Murray's Key*, p. 175. "After he was baptised, and was solemnly admitted into the office."--*Perkins's Works*, p. 732. "He will find all, or most of them, comprized in the Exercises."--*British Gram.*, Pref., p. v. "A quick and ready habit of methodising and regulating their thoughts."--*Ib.*, p. xviii. "To tyrannise over the time and patience of his reader."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. iii. "Writers of dull books, however, if patronised at all, are rewarded beyond their deserts."--*Ib.*, p. v. "A little reflection, will show the reader the propriety and the *reason* for emphasising the words marked."--*Ib.*, p. 163. "The English Chronicle contains an account of a surprizing cure."--*Red Book*, p. 61. "Dogmatise, to assert positively; Dogmatizer, an asserter, a magisterial teacher."--*Chalmers's Dict.* "And their inflections might now have been easily analysed."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 113. "Authorize, disauthorise, and unauthorized; Temporize, contemporise, and extemporize."--*Walkers Dict.* "Legalize, equalise, methodise, sluggardize, womanise, humanize, patronise, cantonize, gluttonise, epitomise, anatomize, phlebotomise, sanctuarise, characterize, synonymise, recognise, detonize, colonise."--*Ibid.*

"This BEAUTY Sweetness always must comprize, Which from the Subject, well express'd will rise."
--*Brightland's Gr.*, p. 164.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"The glory of the Lord shall be thy rereward."--COMMON BIBLES: *Isa.*, lviii, 8.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the compound word "*rereward*" has not here the orthography of the two simple words *rear* and *ward*, which compose it. But, according to Rule 14th, "Compounds generally retain the orthography of the simple words which compose them." And, the accent being here unfixed, a hyphen is proper. Therefore, this word should be spelled thus, *rear-ward*.]

"A mere vaunt-courier to announce the coming of his master."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 49. "The parti-coloured shutter appeared to come close up before him."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 233. "When the day broke upon this handfull of forlorn but dauntless spirits."--*Ib.*, p. 245. "If, upon a plumbtree, peaches and apricots are ingrafted, no body will say they are the natural growth of the plumbtree."--*Berkley's Minute Philos.*, p. 45. "The channel between Newfoundland and Labrador is called the Straits of Bellisle."--*Worcester's Gaz.* "There being nothing that more exposes to Headach." [127]--*Locke, on Education*, p. 6. "And, by a sleep, to say we end the heartach."--SHAK.: in *Joh. Dict.* "He that sleeps, feels not the toothach."--ID., *ibid.* "That the shoe must fit him, because it fitted his father and granfather."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 431. "A single word, misspelt, in a letter, is sufficient to show, that you have received a defective education."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 3. "Which mistatement the committee attributed to a failure of memory."--*Professors' Reasons*, p. 14. "Then he went through the Banqueting-House to the scaffold."--*Smollett's England*, Vol. iii, p. 345. "For the purpose of maintaining a clergyman and skoolmaster."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 355. "They however knew that the lands were claimed by Pennsylvania."--*Ib.*, p. 357. "But if you ask a reason, they immediately bid farewell to argument."--*Red Book*, p. 80. "Whom resist stedfast in the faith."--SCOTT: 1 *Peter*, v, 9. "And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine."--*Acts*, ii, 42. "Beware lest ye also fall from your own stedfastness."--2 *Peter*, iii, 17. "*Galliot*, or *galliot*, a Dutch vessel, carrying a main-mast and a mizen-mast."--*Web. Dict.* "Infinitive, to overflow; Preterit, overflowed; Participle, overflown."--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, (1818,) p. 61. "After they have misspent so much precious Time."--*British Gram.*, p. xv. "Some say, two *handsfull*; some, two *handfulls*; and others, two *handfull*."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 106. "Lapfull, as much as the lap can contain."--*Webster's Octavo Dict.*

"Darefull, full of defiance."-- *Walker's Rhym. Dict.* "The road to the blissfull regions, is as open to the peasant as to the king."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 167. "Mis-spel is *mis-spell* in every Dictionary which I have seen."--*Barnes's Red Book*, p. 303. "Downfal; ruin, calamity, fall from rank or state."--*Johnson's Dict.* "The whole legislature likewise acts az a court."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 340. "It were better a milstone were hanged about his neck."--*Perkins's Works*, p. 731. "Plum-tree, a tree that produces plums; Hog-plumbtree, a tree."--*Webster's Dict.* "Trisyllables ending in *re* or *le*, accent the first syllable."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 238.

"It happen'd on a summer's holiday, That to the greenwood shade he took his way." --*Churchill's Gr.*, p. 135.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF USAGE.

"Nor are the modes of the Greek tongue more uniform."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 112.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*modes*" is here written for *moods*, which is more common among the learned, and usually preferred by Murray himself. But, according to Rule 15th, "Any word for the spelling of which we have no rule but usage, is written wrong if not spelled according to the usage which is most common among the learned." Therefore, the latter form should be preferred; thus, *moods*, and not *modes*.]

"If we analyze a conjunctive preterite, the rule will not appear to hold."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 118. "No landholder would have been at that expence."--*Ib.*, p. 116. "I went to see the child whilst they were putting on its cloaths."--*Ib.*, p. 125. "This stile is ostentatious, and doth not suit grave writing."--*Ib.*, p. 82. "The king of Israel, and Jehosophat the king of Judah, sat each on his throne."--*Mur. Gram.*, p. 165, *twice*; *Merchant's*, 89; *Churchill's*, 300. "The king of Israel, and Jehosaphat the king of Judah, sat each on his throne."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 90; *Harrison's*, 99; *Churchill's*, 138; *Wright's*, 148. "Lisias, speaking of his friends, promised to his father, never to abandon them."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. ii, pp. 121 and 253. "Some, to avoid this errour, run into it's opposite."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 199. "Hope, the balm of life, soothes us under every misfortune."--*Merchants Key*, p. 204. "Any judgement or decree might be heerd and reversed by the legislature."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 340. "A pathetic harang wil skreen from punishment any knave."--*Ib.*, p. 341. "For the same reezon, the wimen would be improper judges."--*Ibid.* "Every person iz indulged in worshipping az he pleezes."--*Ib.*, p. 345. "Most or all teechers are excluded from genteel company."--*Ib.*, p. 362. "The Kristian religion, in its purity, iz the best institution on erth."--*Ib.*, p. 364. "Neether clergymen nor human laws hav the leest authority over the conscience."--*Ib.*, p. 363. "A gild is a society, fraternity, or corporation."--*Red Book*, p. 83. "Phillis was not able to unty the knot, and so she cut it."--*Ib.*, p. 46. "An aker of land is the quantity of one hundred and sixty perches."--*Ib.*, p. 93. "Oker is a fossil earth combined with the oxid of some metal."--*Ib.*, p. 96. "*Genii*, when denoting ærial spirits; *Geniuses*, when signifying persons of genius."--*Mur.'s Gram.*, i, p. 42. "*Genii*, when denoting æriel spirits; *Geniuses*, when signifying persons of genius."--*Frost's Gram.*, p. 9. "*Genius*, Plu. *geniuses*, men of wit; but *genii*, ærial beings."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 18. "Aerisius, king of Argos, had a beautiful daughter, whose name was Danæ."--*Classic Tales*, p. 109. "Phæton was the son of Apollo and Clymene."--*Ib.*, p. 152. "But, after all, I may not have reached the intended Gaol."--*Buchanan's Syntax*, Pref., p. xxvii. "'Pitticus was offered a large sum.' Better: 'A large sum was offered to Pitticus.'"--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 187. "King Missipsi charged his sons to respect the senate and people of Rome."--*See ib.*, p. 161. "For example: Gallileo invented the telescope."--*Ib.*, pp. 54 and 67. "Cathmor's warriours sleep in death."--*Ib.*, p. 54. "For parsing will enable you to detect and correct errours in composition."--*Ib.*, p. 50.

"O'er barren mountains, o'er the flow'ry plain, Extends thy uncontroul'd and boundless reign."--*Dryden*.

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS IN SPELLING.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"A bad author deserves better usage than a bad critick."--POPE: *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Former*. "Produce a single passage superiour to the speech of Logan, a Mingo chief, delivered to Lord Dunmore, when governour of Virginia."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 247. "We have none synonymous to supply its place."--*Jamieson's Rhetoric*, p. 48. "There is a probability that the effect will be accelerated."--*Ib.*, p. 48. "Nay, a regard to sound hath controuled the public choice."--*Ib.*, p. 46. "Though learnt from the uninterrupted use of gutterel sounds."--*Ib.*, p. 5. "It is by carefully filing off all roughness and inequaleties, that languages, like metals, must be polished."--*Ib.*, p. 48. "That I have not mispent my time in the service of the community."--*Buchanan's Syntax*, Pref., p. xxviii. "The leaves of maiz are also called blades."--*Webster's El. Spelling-Book*, p. 43. "Who boast that they know what is past, and can foretel what is to come."--*Robertson's Amer.*, Vol. i, p. 360. "Its tasteless dullness is interrupted by nothing but its perplexities."--*Abbott's Teacher*, p. 18. "Sentences constructed with the Johnsonian fullness and swell."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 130. "The privilege of escaping from his prefatory dullness and prolixity."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. iv. "But in poetry this characteristick of dulness attains its full growth."--*Ib.*, p. 72. "The leading characteristick consists in an increase of the force and fullness."--*Ib.*, p. 71. "The character of this opening fulness and feebler vanish."--*Ib.*, p. 31. "Who, in the fullness of unequalled power, would not believe himself the favourite of heaven?"--*Ib.*, p. 181. "They marr one another, and distract him."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 433. "Let a deaf worshipper of antiquity and an English prosodist settle this."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 140. "This phillipic gave rise to my satirical reply in self-defence."--*Merchant's Criticisms*. "We here saw no inuendoes, no new sophistry, no falsehoods."--*Ib.* "A witty and humourous vein has often produced enemies."--*Murray's Key*, p. 173. "Cry holla! to thy tongue, I pr'ythee: it curvetts unseasonably."--*Shak.* "I said, in my slyest manner, 'Your health, sir.'"--*Blackwood's Mag.*, Vol. xl, p. 679. "And attornies also travel the circuit in pursute of business."--*Red Book*, p. 83. "Some whole counties in Virginia would hardly sel for the valu of the dets du from the inhabitants."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 301. "They were called the court of assistants, and exercized all powers legislativ and judicial."--*Ib.*, p. 340. "Arithmetic is excellent for the guaging of liquors."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 288. "Most of the inflections may be analysed in a way somewhat similar."--*Ib.*, p. 112.

"To epithets allots emphatic state, Whilst principals, ungrac'd, like lacquies wait." --*C. Churchill's Ros.*, p. 8.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"Hence it [less] is a privative word, denoting destitution; as, fatherless, faithless, pennyless."--*Webster's Dict.*, w. *Less*. "Bay; red, or reddish, inclining to a chesnut color."--*Same*. "To mimick, to imitate or ape for sport; a mimic, one who imitates or mimics."--*Ib.* "Counterroil, a counterpart or copy of the rolls; Counterrolment, a counter account."--*Ib.* "Millenium, the thousand years during which Satan shall be bound."--*Ib.* "Millenial, pertaining to the millenium, or to a thousand years."--*Ib.* "Thralldom; slavery, bondage, a state of servitude."--See *Johnson's Dict.* "Brier, a prickly bush; Briery, rough, prickly, full of briers; Sweetbriar, a fragrant shrub."--See *Johnson, Walker, Chalmers, Webster, and others*. "Will, in the second and third Persons, barely foretels."--*British Gram.*, p. 132. "And therefor there is no Word false, but what is distinguished by Italics."--*Ib.*, Pref., p. v. "What should be repeted is left to their Discretion."--*Ib.*, p. iv. "Because they are abstracted or seperated from material Substances."--*Ib.*, p. ix. "All Motion is in Time, and therefor, where-ever it exists, implies Time as its Concommitant."--*Ib.*, p. 140. "And illiterate grown persons are guilty of blameable spelling."--*Ib.*, Pref., p. xiv. "They wil always be ignorant, and of ruf uncivil manners."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 346. "This fact wil hardly be beleeved in the northern states."--*Ib.*, p. 367. "The province however waz harrassed with disputes."--*Ib.*, p. 352. "So little concern haz the legislature for the interest of lerning."--*Ib.*, p. 349. "The gentlemen wil not admit that a skoolmaster can be a gentleman."--*Ib.*, p. 362. "Such absurd qui-pro-quoos cannot be too strenuously avoided."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 205. "When we say, 'a man looks slyly;' we signify, that he assumes a sly look."--*Ib.*, p. 339. "Peep; to look through a crevice; to look narrowly, closely, or slyly."--*Webster's Dict.* "Hence the confession has become a hacknied proverb."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 110. "Not to mention the more ornamental parts of guilding, varnish, &c."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 20. "After this system of self-interest had been rivetted."--*Brown's Estimate*, Vol. ii, p. 136. "Prejudice might have prevented the cordial approbation of a bigotted Jew."--SCOTT: *on Luke*, x.

"All twinkling with the dew-drop sheen, The briar-rose fell in streamers green."--*Lady of the Lake*, p. 16.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"The infinitive mode has commonly the sign *to* before it."--*Harrison's Gram.*, p. 25. "Thus, it is advisable to write *singeing*, from the verb to *singe*, by way of distinction from *singing*, the participle of the verb to *sing*."--*Ib.*, p. 27. "Many verbs form both the preterite tense and the preterite participle irregularly."--*Ib.*, p. 28. "Much must be left to every one's taste and judgment."--*Ib.*, p. 67. "Verses of different lengths intermixed form a Pindarick poem."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 44. "He'll surprize you."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 88. "Unequalled archer! why was this concealed?"--*KNOWLES: ib.*, p. 102. "So gaily curl the waves before each dashing prow."--*BYRON: ib.*, p. 104. "When is a diphthong called a proper diphthong?"--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 11. "How many *ss* would goodness then end with? Three."--*Ib.*, p. 33. "Q. What is a triphthong? A. A triphthong is the union of three vowels, pronounced in like manner."--*Bacon's Gram.*, p. 7. "The verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken separately."--*Ib.*, p. 47. "The cubic foot of matter which occupies the center of the globe."--*Cardell's Gram.*, 18mo, p. 47. "The wine imbibes oxigen, or the acidifying principle, from the air."--*Ib.*, p. 62. "Charcoal, sulphur, and niter, make gun powder."--*Ib.*, p. 90. "It would be readily understood, that the thing so labeled, was a bottle of Madeira wine."--*Ib.*, p. 99. "They went their ways, one to his farm, an other to his merchandize."--*Ib.*, p. 130. "A diphthong is the union of two vowels, sounded by a single impulse of the voice."--*Russell's Gram.*, p. 7. "The professors of the Mahommedan religion are called Mussulmans."--*Maltby's Gram.*, p. 73. "This shews that *let* is not a sign of the imperative mood, but a real verb."--*Ib.*, p. 51. "Those preterites and participles, which are first mentioned in the list, seem to be the most eligible."--*Ib.*, p. 47. "Monosyllables, for the most part, are compared by *er* and *est*; and dyssyllables by *more* and *most*."--*Ib.*, p. 19. "This termination, added to a noun, or adjective, changes it into a verb: as *modern*, to *modernise*; a *symbol*, to *symbolize*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 24. "An Abridgment of Murray's Grammar, with additions from Webster, Ash, Tooke, and others."--*Maltby's title-page*. "For the sake of occupying the room more advantagously, the subject of Orthography is merely glanced at."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 5. "So contended the accusers of Gallileo."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, 12mo, 1839, p. 380. "Murray says, 'They were *traveling past* when *we* met them.'"--*Peirce, ib.*, p. 361. "They fulfil the only purposes for which they are designed."--*Ib.*, p. 359. "On the fulfillment of the event."--*Ib.*, p. 175. "Fullness consists in expressing every idea."--*Ib.*, p. 291. "Consistently with fulness and perspicuity."--*Ib.*, p. 337. "The word *verriest* is a gross corruption; as, 'He is the *verriest* fool on earth.'"--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 202. "The sound will recal the idea of the object."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 142. "Formed for great enterprizes."--*Bullions's Prin. of E. Gram.*, p. 153. "The most important rules and definitions are printed in large type, *italicised*."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 3. "HAMLETTED, *a*. Accustomed to a hamlet; countrified."--*Bolles's Dict.*, and *Chalmers's*. "Singular, *spoonful, cup-full, coach-full, handful*; plural, *spoonfuls, cup-fulls, coach-fulls, handfuls*."--*Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 27.

"Between Superlatives and following Names, OF, by Grammatick Right, a Station claims." --*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 146.

CHAPTER V.

--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

[Fist][The student ought to be able to answer with readiness, and in the words of the book, all the following questions on grammar. And if he has but lately commenced the study, it may be well to require of him a general rehearsal of this kind, before he proceeds to the correction of any part of the false grammar quoted in the foregoing chapters. At any rate, he should be master of so many of the definitions and rules as precede the part which he attempts to correct; because this knowledge is necessary to a creditable performance of the exercise. But those who are very quick at reading, may perform it *tolerably*, by consulting the book at the time, for what they do not remember. The answers to these questions will embrace all the main text of the work; and, if any further examination be thought necessary, extemporaneous questions may be framed for the purpose.]

LESSON I.--GRAMMAR.

1. What is the name, or title, of this book? 2. What is Grammar? 3. What is an English Grammar? 4. What is English Grammar, in itself? and what knowledge does it imply? 5. If grammar is the art of reading, writing, and speaking, define these actions. What is it, *to read*? 6. What is it, *to write*? 7. What is it, *to speak*? 8. How is grammar to be taught, and by what means are its principles to be made known? 9. What is a perfect definition? 10. What is an example, as used in teaching? 11. What is a rule of grammar? 12. What is an exercise? 13. What was language at first, and what is it now? 14. Of what two kinds does the composition of language consist? and how do they differ? 15. What are the least parts of language? 16. What has discourse to do with sentences? or sentences, with points? 17. In extended compositions, what is the order of the parts, upwards from a sentence? 18. What, then, is the common order of literary division, downwards, throughout? 19. Are all literary works divided exactly in this way? 20. How is Grammar divided? 21. Of what does Orthography treat? 22. Of what does Etymology treat? 23. Of what does Syntax treat? 24. Of what does Prosody treat?

PART FIRST, ORTHOGRAPHY.

LESSON II.--LETTERS.

1. Of what does Orthography treat? 2. What is a letter? 3. What is an elementary sound of human voice, or speech? 4. What name is given to the sound of a letter? and what epithet, to a letter not sounded? 5. How many letters are there in English? and how many sounds do they represent? 6. In what does a knowledge of the letters consist? 7. What variety is there in the letters? and how are they always the same? 8. What different sorts of types, or styles of letters, are used in English? 9. What are the names of the letters in English? 10. What are their names in both numbers, singular and plural? 11. Into what general classes are the letters divided? 12. What is a vowel? 13. What is a consonant? 14. What letters are vowels? and what, consonants? 15. When are *w* and *y* consonants? and when, vowels? 16. How are the consonants divided? 17. What is a semivowel? 18. What is a mute? 19. What letters are reckoned semivowels? and how many of these are aspirates? 20. What letters are called liquids? and why? 21. What letters are reckoned mutes? and which of them are imperfect mutes?

LESSON III.--SOUNDS.

1. What is meant, when we speak of the powers of the letters? 2. Are the sounds of a language fewer than its words? 3. How are different vowel sounds produced? 4. What are the vowel sounds in English? 5. How may these sounds be modified in the formation of syllables? 6. Can you form a word upon each by means of an *f*?

7. Will you try the series again with a *p*? 8. How may the vowel sounds be written? and how uttered when they are not words? 9. Which of the vowel sounds form words? and what of the rest? 10. How many and what are the consonant sounds in English? 11. In what series of words may all these sounds be heard? 12. In what series of words may each of them be heard two or three times? 13. What is said of the sounds of *j* and *x*? 14. What is said of the sounds of *c* and *g*? 15. What is said of *sc*, or *s* before *c*? 16. What, of *ce*, *ci*, and *ch*? 17. What sounds has the consonant *g*? 18. In how many different ways can the letters of the alphabet be combined? 19. What do we derive from these combinations of sounds and characters?

LESSON IV.--CAPITALS.

1. What characters are employed in English? 2. Why should the different sorts of letters be kept distinct? 3. What is said of the slanting strokes in Roman letters? 4. For what purpose are *Italics* chiefly used? 5. In preparing a manuscript, how do we mark these things for the printer? 6. What distinction of form belongs to each of the letters? 7. What is said of small letters? and why are capitals used? 8. What things are commonly exhibited wholly in capitals? 9. How many rules for capitals are given in this book? and what are their titles? 10. What says Rule 1st of *books*? 11. What says Rule 2d of *first words*? 12. What says Rule 3d of *names of Deity*? 13. What says Rule 4th of *proper names*? 14. What says Rule 5th of *titles*? 15. What says Rule 6th of *one capital*? 16. What says Rule 7th of *two capitals*? 17. What says Rule 8th of *compounds*? 18. What says Rule 9th of *apposition*? 19. What says Rule 10th of *personifications*? 20. What says Rule 11th of *derivatives*? 21. What says Rule 12th of *I and O*? 22. What says Rule 13th of *poetry*? 23. What says Rule 14th of *examples*? 24. What says Rule 15th of *chief words*? 25. What says Rule 16th of *needless capitals*?

[Now turn to the first chapter of Orthography, and correct the improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules.]

LESSON V.--SYLLABLES.

1. What is a syllable? 2. Can the syllables of a word be perceived by the ear? 3. Under what names are words classed according to the number of their syllables? 4. Which of the letters can form syllables of themselves? and which cannot? 5. What is a diphthong? 6. What is a proper diphthong? 7. What is an improper diphthong? 8. What is a triphthong? 9. What is a proper triphthong? 10. What is an improper triphthong? 11. How many and what are the diphthongs in English? 12. How many and which of these are so variable in sound that they may be either proper or improper diphthongs? 13. How many and what are the proper diphthongs? 14. How many and what are the improper diphthongs? 15. Are proper triphthongs numerous in our language? 16. How many and what are the improper triphthongs? 17. What guide have we for dividing words into syllables? 18. How many special rules of syllabication are given in this book? and what are their titles, or subjects? 19. What says Rule 1st of *consonants*? 20. What says Rule 2d of *vowels*? 21. What says Rule 3d of *terminations*? 22. What says Rule 4th of *prefixes*? 23. What says Rule 5th of *compounds*? 24. What says Rule 6th of *lines full*?

[Now turn to the second chapter of Orthography, and correct the improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules.]

LESSON VI.--WORDS.

1. What is a word? 2. How are words distinguished in regard to *species* and *figure*? 3. What is a primitive word? 4. What is a derivative word? 5. What is a simple word? 6. What is a compound word? 7. How do permanent compounds differ from others? 8. How many rules for the figure of words are given in this book? and what are their titles, or subjects? 9. What says Rule 1st of *compounds*? 10. What says Rule 2d of *simples*? 11. What says Rule 3d of *the sense*? 12. What says Rule 4th of *ellipses*? 13. What says Rule 5th of *the hyphen*? 14. What says Rule 6th of *no hyphen*?

[Now turn to the third chapter of Orthography, and correct the improprieties there quoted for the practical

application of these rules.]

LESSON VII.--SPELLING.

1. What is spelling? 2. How is this art to be acquired? and why so? 3. Why is it difficult to learn to spell accurately? 4. Is it then any disgrace to spell words erroneously? 5. What benefit may be expected from the rules for spelling? 6. How many rules for spelling are given in this book? and what are their titles, or subjects? 7. What says Rule 1st of *final f, l, or s*? 8. Can you mention the principal exceptions to this rule? 9. What says Rule 2d of *other finals*? 10. Are there any exceptions to this rule? 11. What says Rule 3d of the *doubling* of consonants? 12. Under what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 13. What says Rule 4th *against the doubling* of consonants? 14. Under what four heads are the apparent exceptions to this Rule noticed? 15. What says Rule 5th of *final ck*? 16. What monosyllables, contrary to this rule, end with *c* only? 17. What says Rule 6th of the *retaining* of double letters before affixes? 18. Under what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 19. What says Rule 7th of the *retaining* of double letters after prefixes? 20. What observation is made respecting exceptions to this rule?

LESSON VIII.--SPELLING.

21. What says Rule 8th of *final ll*, and of *final l single*? 22. What words does this rule claim, which might seem to come under Rule 7th? and why? 23. What says Rule 9th of *final e omitted*? 24. Under what three heads are the exceptions, real or apparent, here noticed? 25. What says Rule 10th of *final e retained*? 26. Under what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 27. What says Rule 11th of *final y changed*? 28. Under what three heads are the limits and exceptions to this rule noticed? 29. What says Rule 12th of *final y unchanged*? 30. Under what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 31. What says Rule 13th of the terminations *ize* and *ise*? 32. Under what three heads are the apparent exceptions to this rule noticed? 33. What says Rule 14th of *compounds*? 34. Under what seven heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 35. What says Rule 15th of *usage*, as a law of spelling?

[Now turn to the fourth chapter of Orthography, and correct the improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules and their exceptions.]

CHAPTER VI.

--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

[Fist] [The following examples of false orthography are inserted here, and not explained in the general Key, that they may be corrected by the pupil *in writing*. Some of the examples here quoted are less inaccurate than others, but all of them, except a few shown in contrast, are, in some respect or other, erroneous. It is supposed, that every student who can answer the questions contained in the preceding chapter, will readily discern wherein the errors lie, and be able to make the necessary corrections.]

EXERCISE I.--CAPITALS.

"Alexander the great killed his friend Clitus."--*Harrison's Gram.*, p. 68. "The words in italics are parsed in the same manner."--*Maltby's Gram.*, p. 69. "It may be read by those who do not understand latin."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 262. "A roman *s* being added to a word in italics or small capitals."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 215. "This is not simply a gallicism, but a corruption of the French *on*; itself a corruption."--*Ib.*, p. 228. "The Gallicism, '*it is me*,' is perpetually striking the ear in London."--*Ib.*, p. 316. "'Almost nothing,' is a common Scotticism, equally improper: it should be, 'scarcely any thing.'"--*Ib.*, p. 333. "To use *learn* for *teach*, is a common Scotticism, that ought to be carefully avoided."--See *ib.*, p. 261. "A few observations on the subjunctive mood as it appears in our English bible."--*Wilcox's Gram.*, p. 40. "The translators of the bible, have confounded two tenses, which in the original are uniformly kept distinct."--*Ib.*, p. 40. "More like heaven on earth, than the holy land would have been."--*Anti-Slavery Mag.*, Vol. i, p. 72. "There is now extant a poetical composition, called the golden verses of Pythagoras."--*Lempriere's Dict.* "Exercise of the Mind upon Theorems of Science, like generous and manly Exercise of the Body, tends to call forth and strengthen Nature's original Vigour."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 295. "O that I could prevail on Christians to melt down, under the warm influence of brotherly love, all the distinctions of methodists, independents, baptists, anabaptists, arians, trinitarians, unitarians, in the glorious name of christians."--KNOX: *Churchill's Gram.*, p. 173. "Pythagoras long ago remarked, 'that ability and necessity dwell near each other.'"--*Student's Manual*, p. 285.

"The Latin Writers Decency neglect, But modern Readers challenge more Respect." --*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 172.

EXERCISE II.--SYLLABLES.

1. Correct *Bolles*, in the division of the following words: "Del-ia, Jul-ia, Lyd-ia, heigh-ten, pat-ron, ad-roit, worth-y, fath-er, fath-er-ly, mar-chi-o-ness, i-dent-ic-al, out-ra-ge-ous, ob-nox-i-ous, pro-di-gi-ous, tre-mend-ous, ob-liv-i-on, pe-cul-i-ar."--*Revised Spelling-Book*: New London, 1831.

2. Correct *Sears*, in the division of the following words: "A-quil-a, hear-ty, drea-ry, wor-my, hai-ry, thor-ny, phil-os-o-phy, dis-cov-e-ry, re-cov-e-ry, ad-diti-on, am-biti-on, au-spici-ous, fac-titi-ous, fla-giti-ous, fru-iti-on, sol-stiti-al, ab-o-liti-on."--*Standard Spelling-Book*: "New Haven," 1826.

3. Correct *Bradley*, in the division of the following words: "Jes-ter, rai-ny, forg-e-ry, fin-e-ry, spic-e-ry, brib-e-ry, groc-e-ry, chi-can-e-ry, fer-riage, line-age, cri-ed, tri-ed, sù-ed, slic-ed, forc-ed, pledg-ed, sav-ed, dup-ed, strip-ed, touch-ed, trounc-ed."--*Improved Spelling-Book*: Windsor, 1815.

4. Correct *Burhans*, in the division of the following words: "Boar-der, brigh-ten, cei-ling, frigh-ten, glea-ner, lea-kage, suc-ker, mos-sy, fros-ty, twop-ence, pu-pill-ar-y, crit-i-call-y, gen-er-all-y, lit-er-all-y, log-i-call-y, trag-i-call-y, ar-ti-fici-al, po-liti-call-y, sloth-full-y, spite-full-y, re-all-y, sui-ta-ble, ta-mea-ble, flumm-er-y, nesc-i-ence, shep-her-dess, trav-ell-er, re-pea-ter, re-pressi-on, suc-cessi-on, un-lear-ned."--*Critical*

Pronouncing Spelling-Book: [128] Philadelphia, 1823.

5. Correct *Marshall*, in the division of the following words: "Trench-er, trunch-eon, dros-sy, glos-sy, glas-sy, gras-sy, dres-ses, pres-ses, cal-ling, chan-ging, en-chan-ging, con-ver-sing, mois-ture, join-ture, qua-drant, qua-drate, trans-gres-sor, dis-es-teem."--*New Spelling-Book*: New York, 1836.

6. Correct *Emerson*, in the division of the following words: "Dus-ty mis-ty, mar-shy, mil-ky, wes-tern, stor-my, nee-dy, spee-dy, drea-ry, fros-ty, pas-sing, roc-ky, bran-chy, bland-ish, pru-dish, eve-ning, a-noth-er."--*National Spelling-Book*: Boston, 1828.

"Two Vowels meeting, each with its full Sound, Always to make Two Syllables are bound."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 64.

EXERCISE III.--FIGURE OF WORDS.

"I was surprised by the return of my long lost brother."--*Parker's Exercises in English Composition*, p. 5.

"Such singular and unheard of clemency cannot be passed over by me in silence."--*Ib.*, p. 10. "I perceive my whole system excited by the potent stimulus of sun-shine."--*Ib.*, p. 11. "To preserve the unity of a sentence, it is sometimes necessary to employ the case absolute, instead of the verb and conjunction."--*Ib.*, p. 17.

"Severity and hard hearted opinions accord with the temper of the times."--*Ib.*, p. 18. "That poor man was put into the mad house."--*Ib.*, p. 22. "This fellow must be put into the poor house."--*Ib.*, p. 22. "I have seen the breast works and other defences of earth, that were thrown up."--*Ib.*, p. 24. "Cloven footed animals are enabled to walk more easily on uneven ground."--*Ib.*, p. 25. "Self conceit blasts the prospects of many a youth."--*Ib.*, p. 26. "Not a moment should elapse without bringing some thing to pass."--*Ib.*, p. 36. "A school master decoyed the children of the principal citizens into the Roman camp."--*Ib.*, p. 39. "The pupil may now write a description of the following objects. A school room. A steam boat. A writing desk. A dwelling house. A meeting house. A paper mill. A grist mill. A wind mill."--*Ib.*, p. 45. "Every metaphor should be founded on a resemblance which is clear and striking; not far fetched, nor difficult to be discovered."--*Ib.*, p. 49. "I was reclining in an arbour overhung with honey suckle and jessamine of the most exquisite fragrance."--*Ib.*, p. 51.

"The author of the following extract is speaking of the slave trade."--*Ib.*, p. 60. "The all wise and benevolent Author of nature has so framed the soul of man, that he cannot but approve of virtue."--*Ib.*, p. 74. "There is something of self denial in the very idea of it."--*Ib.*, p. 75. "Age therefore requires a well spent youth to render it happy."--*Ib.*, p. 76. "Pearl-ash requires much labour in its extraction from ashes."--*Ib.*, p. 91. "*Club*, or *crump*, *footed*, *Loripes*; *Rough*, or *leather*, *footed*, *Plumipes*."--*Ainsworth's Dict.*

"The honey-bags steal from the humble bees, And for night-tapers crop their waxen thighs." --SHAK.: *Joh.'s Dict.*, w. *Glowworm*.

"The honeybags steal from the bumblebees, And for night tapers crop their waxen thighs." --SHAK.: *Joh.'s Dict.*, w. *Humblebee*.

"The honey bags steal from the humble-bees, And, for night tapers crop their waxen thighs." --*Dodd's Beauties of Shak.*, p. 51.

EXERCISE IV.--SPELLING.

"His antichamber, and room of audience, are little square chambers wainscoted."--ADDISON: *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Antechamber*. "Nobody will deem the quicksighted amongst them to have very enlarged views of ethicks."--LOCKE: *Ib.*, w. *Quicksighted*. "At the rate of this thick-skulled blunderhead, every plow-jobber shall take upon him to read upon divinity."--L'ESTRANGE: *Ib.*, m. *Blunderhead*. "On the topmast, the yards, and boltsprit would I flame distinctly."--SHAK.: *Ib.*, w. *Bowsprit*. "This is the tune of our catch plaid by the picture of nobody."--ID.: *Ib.*, w. *Nobody*. "Thy fall hath left a kind of blot to mark the fulfraught man."--ID.:

Ib., w. *Fulfraught*. "Till blinded by some Jack o'Lanthorn sprite."--*Snelling's Gift*, p. 62. "The beauties you would have me eulogise."--*Ib.*, p. 14. "They rail at me--I gaily laugh at them."--*Ib.*, p. 13. "Which the king and his sister had intrusted to him withall."--*Josephus*, Vol. v, p. 143. "The terms of these emotions are by no means synonymous."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 336. "Lillied, *adj.* Embellished with lilies."--*Chalmers's Dict.* "They seize the compendious blessing without exertion and without reflexion."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 428. "The first cry that rouses them from their torpours, is the cry that demands their blood."--*Ib.*, p. 433. "It meets the wants of elementary schools and deserves to be patronised."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 5. "Whose attempts were paralysed by the hallowed sound."--*Music of Nature*, p. 270. "It would be an amusing investigation to analyse their language."--*Ib.*, p. 200. "It is my father's will that I should take on me the hostess-ship of the day."--*SHAK.: in Johnson's Dict.* "To retain the full apprehension of them undiminish."--*Phil. Museum.*, Vol. i, p. 458. "The ayes and noes were taken in the House of Commons."--*Anti-Slavery Mag.*, Vol. i, p. 11. "Derivative words are formed by adding letters or syllables to primitives."--*Davenport's Gram.*, p. 7. "The minister never was thus harrassed himself."--*Nelson, on Infidelity*, p. 6. "The most vehement politician thinks himself unbiassed in his judgment."--*Ib.*, p. 17. "Mistress-ship, *n.* Female rule or dominion."--*Webster's Dict.*

"Thus forced to kneel, thus groveling to embrace, The scourge and ruin of my realm and race." --POPE: *Ash's Gram.*, p. 83.

EXERCISE V.--MIXED ERRORS.

"The quince tree is of a low stature; the branches are diffused and crooked."--MILLER: *Johnson's Dict.* "The greater slow worm, called also the blindworm, is commonly thought to be blind, because of the littleness of his eyes."--GREW: *ib.* "Oh Hocus! where art thou? It used to go in another guess manner in thy time."--ARBUTHNOT: *ib.* "One would not make a hotheaded crackbrained coxcomb forward for a scheme of moderation."--ID.: *ib.* "As for you, colonel huff-cap, we shall try before a civil magistrate who's the greatest plotter."--DRYDEN: *ib.*, w. *Huff*. "In like manner, Actions co-alesce with their Agents, and Passions with their Patients."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 263. "These Sentiments are not unusual even with the Philosopher now a days."--*Ib.*, p. 350. "As if the Marble were to fashion the Chizzle, and not the Chizzle the Marble."--*Ib.*, p. 353. "I would not be understood, in what I have said, to undervalue Experiment."--*Ib.*, p. 352. "How therefore is it that they approach nearly to Non-Entity's?"--*Ib.*, p. 431. "Gluttonise, modernise, epitomise, barbarise, tyrannise."--*Churchill's Gram.*, pp. 31 and 42. "Now fair befall thee and thy noble house!"--*SHAK.: ib.*, p. 241. "Nor do I think the error above-mentioned would have been so long indulged," &c.--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 4. "The editor of the two editions above mentioned was pleased to give this little manuel to the public," &c.--*Ib.*, p. 7. "A Note of Admiration denotes a modelation of the voice suited to the expression."--*Ib.*, p. 16. "It always has some respect to the power of the agent; and is therefore properly stiled the potential mode."--*Ib.*, p. 29. "Both these are supposed to be synonomous expressions."--*Ib.*, p. 105. "An expence beyond what my circumstances admit."--DODDRIDGE: *ib.*, p. 138. "There are four of them: the *Full-Point*, or *Period*; the *Colon*; the *Semi-Colon*; the *Comma*."--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, N. Y., 1818, p. 77. "There are many men, who have been at Latin-Schools for years, and who, at last, cannot write six sentences in English correctly."--*Ib.*, p. 39. "But, figures of rhetoric are edge tools, and two edge tools too."--*Ib.*, p. 182. "The horse-chesnut grows into a goodly standard."--MORTIMER: *Johnson's Dict.* "Whereever *if* is to be used."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 175.

"Peel'd, patch'd, and pyebald, linsey-woolsey brothers." --POPE: *Joh. Dict.*, w., *Mummer*.

"Peel'd, patch'd, and piebald, linsey-woolsey brothers." --ID.: *ib.*, w. *Piebald*.

EXERCISE VI.--MIXED ERRORS.

"Pied, *adj.* [from *pie*.] Variegated; partycoloured."--*Johnson's Dict.* "Pie, [*pica*, Lat.] A magpie; a party-coloured bird."--*Ib.* "Gluy, *adj.* [from *glue*.] Viscous; tenacious; glutinous."--*Ib.* "Gluey, *a.* Viscous, glutinous. Glueyness, *n.* The quality of being gluey."--*Webster's Dict.* "Old Euclio, seeing a crow-scrat[129]

upon the muck-hill, returned in all haste, taking it for an ill sign."--BURTON: *Johnson's Dict.* "Wars are begun by hairbrained[130] dissolute captains."--ID.: *ib.* "A carot is a well known garden root."--*Red Book*, p. 60. "Natural philosophy, metaphysicks, ethicks, history, theology, and politicks, were familiar to him."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 209. "The words in Italicks and capitals, are emphatick."--*Ib.*, p. 210. "It is still more exceptionable; Candles, Cherrys, Figs, and other sorts of Plumbs, being sold by Weight, and being Plurals."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 135. "If the End of Grammar be not to save that Trouble, and Expence of Time, I know not what it is good for."--*Ib.*, p. 161. "*Caulce*, Sheep Penns, or the like, has no Singular, according to Charisius."--*Ib.*, p. 194. "These busibodies are like to such as reade bookes with intent onely to spie out the faults thereof"--*Perkins's Works*, p. 741. "I think it every man's indispensible duty, to do all the service he can to his country."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 4. "Either fretting it self into a troublesome Excess, or flaging into a downright want of Appetite."--*Ib.*, p. 23. "And nobody would have a child cramed at breakfast."--*Ib.*, p. 23. "Judgeship and judgment, lodgable and alledgeable, alledgement and abridgment, lodgment and infringement, enlargement and acknowledgment."--*Webster's Dict.*, 8vo. "Huckster, *n. s.* One who sells goods by retail, or in small quantities; a pedler."--*Johnson's Dict.*

"He seeks bye-streets, and saves th' expensive coach." --GAY: *ib.*, w. *Mortgage*.

"He seeks by-streets, and saves th' expensive coach." --GAY: *ib.*, w. *By-street*.

EXERCISE VII.--MIXED ERRORS.

"Boys like a warm fire in a wintry day."--*Webster's El. Spelling-Book*, p. 62. "The lilly is a very pretty flower."--*Ib.*, p. 62. "The potatoe is a native plant of America."--*Ib.*, p. 60. "An anglicism is a peculiar mode of speech among the English."--*Ib.*, p. 136. "Black berries and raspberries grow on briars."--*Ib.*, p. 150. "You can broil a beef steak over the coals of fire."--*Ib.*, p. 38. "Beef-steak, *n.* A steak or slice of beef for broiling."--*Webster's Dict.* "Beef'steak, *s.* a slice of beef for broiling."--*Treasury of Knowledge*. "As he must suffer in case of the fall of merchandize, he is entitled to the corresponding gain if merchandize rises."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 258. "He is the worshipper of an hour, but the worldling for life."--*Maturin's Sermons*, p. 424. "Slyly hinting something to the disadvantage of great and honest men."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 329. "'Tis by this therefore that I Define the Verb; namely, that it is a Part of Speech, by which something is apply'd to another, as to its Subject."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 255. "It may sometimes throw a passing cloud over the bright hour of gaiety."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 178. "To criticize, is to discover errors; and to crystalize implies to freeze or congele."--*Red Book*, p. 68. "The affectation of using the preterite instead of the participle, is peculiarly aukward; as, he has came."--*Priestley's Grammar*, p. 125. "They are moraly responsible for their individual conduct."--*Cardell's El. Gram.*, p. 21. "An engine of sixty horse power, is deemed of equal force with a team of sixty horses."--*Red Book*, p. 113. "This, at fourpence per ounce, is two shillings and fourpence a week, or six pounds, one shining and four pence a year."--*Ib.*, p. 122. "The tru meening of *parliament* iz a meeting of barons or peers."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 276. "Several authorities seem at leest to favor this opinion."--*Ib.*, p. 277. "That iz, az I hav explained the tru primitiv meening of the word."--*Ib.*, p. 276. "The lords are peers of the relm; that iz, the ancient prescriptiv judges or barons."--*Ib.*, p. 274.

"Falshood is folly, and 'tis just to own The fault committed; this was mine alone." --*Pope, Odys.*, B. xxii, l. 168.

EXERCISE VIII--MIXED ERRORS.

"A second verb so nearly synonymous with the first, is at best superfluous."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 332. "Indicate it, by some mark opposite [to] the word misspelt."--*Abbott's Teacher*, p. 74. "And succesfully controlling the tendencies of mind."--*Ib.*, p. 24. "It [the Monastick Life] looks very like what we call Childrens-Play."--[LESLIE'S] *Right of Tythes*, p. 236. "It seems rather lik Playing of Booty, to Please those Fools and Knaves."--*Ib.*, Pref., p. vi. "And first I Name Milton, only for his Name, lest the Party should say,

that I had not Cousider'd his Performance against Tythes."--*Ib.*, p. iv. "His Fancy was too Predominant for his Judgment. His Talent lay so much in Satyr that he hated Reasoning."--*Ib.*, p. iv. "He has thrown away some of his Railery against Tythes, and the Church then underfoot."--*Ib.*, p. v. "They Vey'd with one another in these things."--*Ib.*, p. 220. "Epamanondas was far the most accomplished of the Thebans."--*Cooper's New Gram.*, p. 27. "Whoever and Whichever, are thus declined. Sing. and Plur. *nom.* whoever, *poss.* whosoever, *obj.* whomever. Sing. and Plur. *nom.* whichever, *poss.* whosoever, *obj.* whichever."--*Ib.*, p. 38. "WHEREEVER, *adv.* [where and ever.] At whatever place."--*Webster's Dict.* "They at length took possession of all the country south of the Welch mountains."--*Dobson's Comp. Gram.*, p. 7. "Those Britains, who refused to submit to the foreign yoke, retired into Wales."--*Ib.*, p. 6. "Religion is the most chearful thing in the world."--*Ib.*, p. 43. "Two means the number two compleatly, whereas *second* means only the last of two, and so of all the rest."--*Ib.*, p. 44. "Now send men to Joppa, and call for one Simon, whose sirname is Peter."--*Ib.*, p. 96. (See *Acts*, x, 5.) "In French words, we use *enter* instead of *inter*; as, entertain, enterlace, enterprize."--*Ib.*, p. 101. "Amphiology, i. e. a speech of uncertain or doubtful meaning."--*Ib.*, p. 103. "Surprize; as, hah! hey day! what! strange!"--*Ib.*, p. 109. "Names of the letters: ai bee see dee ee ef jee aitch eye jay kay el em en o pee cue ar ess tee you voe double u eks wi zed."--*Rev. W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 3.

"I, O, and U, at th' End of Words require, The silent (e), the same do's (va) desire." --*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 15.

EXERCISE IX.--MIXED ERRORS.

"And is written for *eacend*, adding, ekeing."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.*, Vol. i, p. 222. "The Hindus have changed *ai* into *e*, sounded like *e* in *where*."--*Ib.*, Vol. ii, p. 121. "And therefor I would rather see the cruelest usurper than the mildest despot."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 430. "Sufficiently distinct to prevent our marveling."--*Ib.*, i, 477. "Possessed of this preheminece he disregarded the clamours of the people."--*Smollett's England*, Vol. iii, p. 222. "He himself, having communicated, administered the sacrament to some of the bye-standers."--*Ib.*, p. 222. "The high fed astrology which it nurtured, is reduced to a skeleton on the leaf of an almanac."--*Cardell's Gram.*, p. 6. "Fulton was an eminent engineer: he invented steam boats."--*Ib.*, p. 30. "Then, in comes the benign latitude of the doctrine of goodwill."--*SOUTH: in Johnson's Dict.* "Being very lucky in a pair of long lanthorn-jaws, he wrung his face into a hideous grimace."--*SPECTATOR: ib.* "Who had lived almost four-and-twenty years under so politick a king as his father."--*BACON: ib., w. Lowness.* "The children will answer; John's, or William's, or whose ever it may be."--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 32. "It is found tolerably easy to apply them, by practising a little guess work."--*Cardell's Gram.*, p. 91. "For between which two links could speech makers draw the division line?"--*Ib.*, p. 50. "The wonderful activity of the rope dancer who stands on his head."--*Ib.*, p. 56. "The brilliancy which the sun displays on its own disk, is sun shine."--*Ib.*, p. 63. "A word of three syllables is termed a trisyllable."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 23; *Coar's*, 17; *Jaudon's*, 13; *Comly's*, 8; *Cooper's, New Gr.*, 8; *Kirkham's*, 20; *Picket's*, 10; *Alger's*, 12; *Blair's*, 1; *Guy's*, 2; *Bolles's Spelling-Book*, 161. See *Johnson's Dict.* "A word of three syllables is termed a trissyllable."--*British Gram.*, p. 33; *Comprehensive Gram.*, 23; *Bicknell's*, 17; *Allen's*, 31; *John Peirce's*, 149; *Lennie's*, 5; *Maltby's*, 8; *Ingersoll's*, 7; *Bradley's*, 66; *Davenport's*, 7; *Bucke's*, 16; *Bolles's Spelling-Book*, 91. See *Littleton's Lat. Dict.* (1.) "Will, in the first Persons, promises or threatens: But in the second and third Persons, it barely foretells."--*British Gram.*, p. 132. (2.) "Will, in the first Persons, promises or threatens; but in the second and third Persons, it barely foretells."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 41. (3.) "Will, in the first person, promises, engages, or threatens. In the second and third persons, it merely foretels."--*Jaudon's Gram.*, p. 59. (4.) "Will, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 41. (5.) "Will, in the first person singular and plural, intimates resolution and promising; in the second and third person, only foretels."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 88; *Ingersoll's*, 136; *Fisk's*, 78; *A. Flint's*, 42; *Bullions's*, 32; *Hamlin's*, 41; *Cooper's Murray*, 50. [Fist] *Murray's Second Edition* has it "foretells." (6.) "Will, in the first person singular and plural, expresses resolution and promising. In the second and third persons it only foretells."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 38; *E. Devis's*, 51; *Lennie's*, 22. (7.) "Will, in the first person, promises. In the second and third persons, it simply foretels."--*Maltby's Gram.*, p. 24. (8.) "Will, in the first person implies

resolution and promising; in the second and third, it foretells."--*Cooper's New Gram.*, p. 51. (9.) "Will, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens."--*Adam's Lat. and Eng. Gram.*, p. 83. (10.) "In the first person shall *foretels*, and will *promises* or *threatens*; but in the second and third persons *will* foretels, and *shall* promises or threatens."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 65.

"If Mævius scribble in Apollo's spight, There are who judge still worse than he can write."--*Pope*.

EXERCISE X.--MIXED ERRORS.

"I am liable to be charged that I latinize too much."--*DRYDEN*: in *Johnson's Dict.* "To mould him platonically to his own idea."--*WOTTON*: *ib.* "I will marry a wife as beautiful as the houries, and as wise as Zobeide."--*Murray's E. Reader*, p. 148. "I will marry a wife, beautiful as the Houries."--*Wilcox's Gram.*, p. 65. "The words in italics are all in the imperative mood."--*Maltby's Gram.*, p. 71. "Words Italicised, are emphatick, in various degrees."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 173. "Wherever two gg's come together, they are both hard."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 5. "But these are rather silent (*o*)'s than obscure (*u*)'s."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 19. "That can be Guest at by us, only from the Consequences."--*Right of Tythes*, p. viii. "He says he was glad that he had Baptized so few; And asks them, Were ye Baptized in the Name of Paul?"--*Ib.*, p. ix. "Therefor he Charg'd the Clergy with the Name of Hirelings."--*Ib.*, p. viii. "On the fourth day before the first second day in each month."--*The Friend*, Vol. vii, p. 230. "We are not bound to adhere for ever to the terms, or to the meaning of terms, which were established by our ancestors."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 140. "O! learn from him to station quick eyed Prudence at the helm."--*Frosts El. of Gram.*, p. 104. "It pourtrays the serene landscape of a retired village."--*Music of Nature*, p. 421. "By stating the fact, in a circumlocutory manner."--*Booth's Introd. to Dict.*, p. 33. "Time as an abstract being is a non-entity."--*Ib.*, p. 29. "From the difficulty of analysing the multiplied combinations of words."--*Ib.*, p. 19. "Drop those letters that are superfluous, as: handful, foretel."--*Cooper's Plain & Pract. Gram.*, p. 10. "*Shall*, in the first person, simply foretells."--*Ib.*, p. 51. "And the latter must evidently be so too, or, at least, cotemporary, with the act."--*Ib.*, p. 60. "The man has been traveling for five years."--*Ib.*, p. 77. "I shall not take up time in combatting their scruples."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 320. "In several of the chorusses of Euripides and Sophocles, we have the same kind of lyric poetry as in Pindar."--*Ib.*, p. 398. "Until the Statesman and Divine shall unite their efforts in *forming* the human mind, rather than in loping its excressences, after it has been neglected."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 26. "Where conviction could be followed only by a bigotted persistence in error."--*Ib.*, p. 78. "All the barons were entitled to a seet in the national council, in right of their baronys."--*Ib.*, p. 260. "Some knowledge of arithmetic is necessary for every lady."--*Ib.*, p. 29. "Upon this, [the system of chivalry,] were founded those romances of night-errantry."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 374. "The subject is, the atchievements of Charlemagne and his Peers, or Paladins."--*Ib.*, p. 374. "Aye, aye; this slice to be sure outweighs the other."--*Blair's Reader*, p. 31. "In the common phrase, *good-bye*, *bye* signifies *passing*, *going*. The phrase signifies, a good going, a prosperous passage, and is equivalent to *farewell*."--*Webster's Dict.* "Good-by, *adv.*--a contraction of *good be with you*--a familiar way of bidding farewell."--*See Chalmers's Dict.* "Off he sprung, and did not so much as stop to say good bye to you."--*Blair's Reader*, p. 16. "It no longer recals the notion of the action."--*Barnard's Gram.*, p. 69.

"Good-nature and good-sense must ever join; To err, is human; to forgive, divine."--*Pope, Ess. on Crit.*

EXERCISE XI.--MIXED ERRORS.

"The practices in the art of carpentry are called planeing, sawing, mortising, scribing, moulding, &c."--*Blair's Reader*, p. 118. "With her left hand, she guides the thread round the spindle, or rather round a spole which goes on the spindle."--*Ib.*, p. 134. "Much suffring heroes next their honours claim."--*POPE: Johnson's Dict., w. Much.* "Vein healing verven, and head purging dill."--*SPENSER: ib., w. Head.* "An, in old English, signifies *if*; as, '*an* it please your honor.'"--*Webster's Dict.* "What, then, was the moral worth of these renounced

leaders?"--*M'Irvine's Lect.*, p. 460. "Behold how every form of human misery is met by the self denying diligence of the benevolent."--*Ib.*, p. 411. "Reptiles, bats, and doleful creatures--jackalls, hyenas, and lions--inhabit the holes, and caverns, and marshes of the desolate city."--*Ib.*, p. 270. "ADAYS, *adv.* On or in days; as, in the phrase, now *adays*."--*Webster's Dict.* "REFEREE, one to whom a thing is referred; TRANSFERREE, the person to whom a transfer is made."--*Ib.* "The Hospitallers were an order of knights who built a hospital at Jerusalem for pilgrims."--*Ib.* "GERARD, Tom, or Tung, was the institutor and first grand master of the knights hospitalers: he died in 1120."--*Biog. Dict.* "I had a purpose now to lead our many to the holy land."--SHAK.: *in Johnson's Dict.* "He turned their heart to hate his people, to deal subtilly with his servants."--*Psalms*, cv, 25. "In Dryden's ode of Alexander's Feast, the line, '*Faln, faln, faln, faln,*' represents a gradual sinking of the mind."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. ii, p. 71. "The first of these lines is marvelously nonsensical."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 117. "We have the nicely chiseled forms of an Apollo and a Venus, but it is the same cold marble still."--*Christian Spect.*, Vol. viii, p. 201. "Death waves his mighty wand and paralyses all."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 35. "Fear God. Honor the patriot. Respect virtue."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 216. "Pontius Pilate being Governour of Judea, and Herod being Tetrarch of Galilee."--*Ib.*, p. 189. See *Luke*, iii, 1. "AUCTIONEER, *n. s.* The person that manages an auction."--*Johnson's Dict.* "The earth put forth her primroses and days-eyes, to behold him."--HOWEL: *ib.* "*Musselman*, not being a compound of *man*, is *musselmans* in the plural."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 9. "The absurdity of fatiguing them with a needless heap of grammar rules."--*Burgh's Dignity*, Vol. i, p. 147. "John was forced to sit with his arms a kimbo, to keep them asunder."--ARBUTHNOT: *Joh. Dict.* "To set the arms a kimbo, is to set the hands on the hips, with the elbows projecting outward."--*Webster's Dict.* "We almost uniformly confine the inflexion to the last or the latter noun."--*Maunder's Gram.*, p. 2. "This is all souls day, fellows! Is it not?"--SHAK.: *in Joh. Dict.* "The english physicians make use of troy-weight."--*Johnson's Dict.* "There is a certain number of ranks allowed to dukes, marquisses, and earls."--PEACHAM: *ib.*, w. *Marquis*.

"How could you chide the young good natur'd prince, And drive him from you with so stern an air."
--ADDISON: *ib.*, w. *Good*, 25.

EXERCISE XII.--MIXED ERRORS.

"In reading, every appearance of sing-song should be avoided."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 75. "If you are thoroughly acquainted with the inflexions of the verb."--*Ib.*, p. 53. "The preterite of *read* is pronounced *red*."--*Ib.*, p. 48. "Humility opens a high way to dignity."--*Ib.*, p. 15. "What is intricate must be unraveled."--*Ib.*, p. 275. "Roger Bacon invented gun powder, A. D. 1280."--*Ib.*, p. 277. "On which ever word we lay the emphasis."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 243; 12mo, p. 195. "Each of the leaders was apprized of the Roman invasion."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 123. "If I say, 'I galloped from Islington to Holloway;' the verb is intransitive: if, 'I galloped my horse from Islington to Holloway;' it is transitive."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 238. "The reasonableness of setting a part one day in seven."--*The Friend*, Vol. iv, p. 240. "The promoters of paper money making reprobated this act."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 196. "There are five compound personal pronouns, which are derived from the five simple personal pronouns by adding to some of their cases the syllable *self*; as, my-self, thy-self, him-self, her-self, it-self."--*Perley's Gram.*, p. 16. "Possessives, my-own, thy-own, his-own, her-own, its-own, our-own, your-own, their-own."--*Ib.*, *Declensions*. "Thy man servant and thy maid servant may rest, as well as thou."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 160. "How many right angles has an acute angled triangle?"--*Ib.*, p. 220. "In the days of Jorum, king of Israel, flourished the prophet Elisha."--*Ib.*, p. 148. "In the days of Jorum, king of Israel, Elisha, the prophet flourished."--*Ib.*, p. 133. "Lodgable, *a.* Capable of affording a temporary abode."--*Webster's Octavo Dict.*--"Win me into the easy hearted man."--*Johnson's Quarto Dict.* "And then to end life, is the same as to dye."--*Milnes's Greek Gram.*, p. 176. "Those usurping hectors who pretend to honour without religion, think the charge of a lie a blot not to be washed out but by blood."--SOUTH: *Joh. Dict.* "His gallies attending him, he pursues the unfortunate."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 91. "This cannot fail to make us shy of yielding our assent."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 117. "When he comes to the Italicised word, he should give it such a definition as its connection with the sentence may require."--*Claggett's Expositor*, p. vii. "Learn to distil from your lips all the honies of persuasion."--*Adams's Rhetoric*, Vol. i, p. 31. "To instill ideas of disgust and abhorrence against the Americans."--*Ib.*, ii, 300.

"Where prejudice has not acquired an uncontrolled ascendancy."--*Ib.*, i, 31. "The uncontrollable propensity of his mind was undoubtedly to oratory."--*Ib.*, i, 100. "The Brutus is a practical commentary upon the dialogues and the orator."--*Ib.*, i, 120. "The oratorical partitions are a short elementary compendium."--*Ib.*, i, 130. "You shall find hundreds of persons able to produce a crowd of good ideas upon any subject, for one that can marshall them to the best advantage."--*Ib.*, i, 169. "In this lecture, you have the outline of all that the whole course will comprize."--*Ib.*, i, 182. "He would have been stopped by a hint from the bench, that he was traveling out of the record."--*Ib.*, i, 289. "To tell them that which should befall them in the last days."--*Ib.*, ii, 308. "Where all is present, there is nothing past to recal."--*Ib.*, ii, 358. "Whose due it is to drink the brimfull cup of God's eternal vengeance."--*Law and Grace*, p. 36.

"There, from the dead, centurions see him rise, See, but struck down with horrible surprize!"--*Savage*.

"With seed of woes my heart brimful is charged."--SIDNEY: *Joh. Dict.*

"Our legions are brimful, our cause is ripe."--SHAKSPEARE: *ib.*

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different parts of speech, with their classes and modifications.

The *Parts of Speech* are the several kinds, or principal classes, into which words are divided by grammarians.

Classes, under the parts of speech, are the particular sorts into which the several kinds of words are subdivided.

Modifications are inflections, or changes, in the terminations, forms, or senses, of some kinds of words.

CHAPTER I.**--PARTS OF SPEECH.**

The Parts of Speech, or sorts of words, in English, are ten; namely, the Article, the Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Participle, the Adverb, the Conjunction, the Preposition, and the Interjection.

1. THE ARTICLE.

An Article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification: as, *The* air, *the* stars; *an* island, *a* ship.

2. THE NOUN.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned: as, *George*, *York*, *man*, *apple*, *truth*.

3. THE ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality: as, A *wise* man; a *new* book. You *two* are *diligent*.

4. THE PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun: as, The boy loves *his* book; *he* has long lessons, and *he* learns *them* well.

5. THE VERB.

A Verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*: as, I *am*, I *rule*, I *am ruled*; I *love*, thou *lovest*, he *loves*.

6. THE PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb: thus, from the verb *rule*, are formed three participles, two simple and one compound; as, 1. *ruling*, 2. *ruled*, 3. *having ruled*.

7. THE ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner: as, They are *now here*, studying *very diligently*.

8. THE CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected: as, "Thou *and* he are happy, *because* you are good."--*L. Murray*.

9. THE PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun; as, The paper lies *before* me *on* the desk.

10. THE INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of the mind: as, *Oh! alas! ah! poh! pshaw! avault! aha! hurrah!*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The first thing to be learned in the study of this the second part of grammar, is the distribution of the words of the language into those principal sorts, or classes, which are denominated *the Parts of Speech*. This is a matter of some difficulty. And as no scheme which can be adopted, will be in all cases so plain that young beginners will not occasionally falter in its application, the teacher may sometimes find it expedient to refer his pupils to the following simple explanations, which are designed to aid their first and most difficult steps.

How can we know to what class, or part of speech, any word belongs? By learning the definitions of the ten parts of speech, and then observing how the word is written, and in what sense it is used. It is necessary also to observe, so far as we can, with what other words each particular one is capable of making sense.

1. Is it easy to distinguish an ARTICLE? If not always easy, it is generally so: *the, an, and a*, are the only English words called articles, and these are rarely any thing else. Because *an* and *a* have the same import, and are supposed to have the same origin, the articles are commonly reckoned two, but some count them as three.

2. How can we distinguish a NOUN? By means of the article before it, if there is one; as, *the house, an apple, a book*; or, by adding it to the phrase, "*I mentioned*;" as, "*I mentioned peace*;"--"*I mentioned war*;"--"*I mentioned slumber*." Any word which thus makes complete sense, is, in that sense, a noun; because a noun is the *name* of any thing which can thus be mentioned *by a name*. Of English nouns, there are said to be as many as twenty-five or thirty thousand.

3. How can we distinguish an ADJECTIVE? By putting a noun after it, to see if the phrase will be sense. The noun *thing*, or its plural *things*, will suit almost any adjective; as, A *good* thing--A *bad* thing--A *little* thing--A *great* thing--*Few* things--*Many* things--*Some* things--*Fifty* things. Of adjectives, there are perhaps nine or ten thousand.

4. How can we distinguish a PRONOUN? By observing that its noun repeated makes the same sense. Thus, the example of the pronoun above, "The boy loves *his* book; *he* has long lessons, and *he* learns *them* well,"--very clearly means, "The boy loves *the boy's* book; *the boy* has long lessons, and *the boy* learns *those lessons* well." Here then, by a disagreeable repetition of two nouns, we have the same sense without any pronoun; but it is obvious that the pronouns form a better mode of expression, because they prevent this awkward repetition. The different pronouns in English are twenty-four; and their variations in declension are thirty-two: so that the number of *words* of this class, is fifty-six.

5. How can we distinguish a VERB? By observing that it is usually the principal word in the sentence, and that without it there would be no assertion. It is the word which expresses what is affirmed or said of the person or thing mentioned; as, "*Jesus wept*."--"*Felix trembled*."--"*The just shall live by faith*." It will make sense when inflected with the pronouns; as, I *write*, thou *writ'st*, he *writes*; we *write*, you *write*, they *write*.--I *walk*, thou *walkst*, he *walks*; we *walk*, you *walk*, they *walk*. Of English verbs, some recent grammarians compute the number at eight thousand; others formerly reckoned them to be no more than four thousand three hundred.[131]

6. How can we distinguish a PARTICIPLE? By observing its derivation from the verb, and then placing it after *to be* or *having*; as, To be *writing*, Having *written*--To be *walking*, Having *walked*--To be *weeping*, Having *wept*--To be *studying*, Having *studied*. Of simple participles, there are twice as many as there are of simple or radical verbs; and the possible compounds are not less numerous than the simples, but they are

much less frequently used.

7. How can we distinguish an ADVERB? By observing that it answers to the question, *When? Where? How much?* or *How?*--or serves to ask it; as, "He spoke fluently." *How* did he speak? *Fluently*. This word *fluently* is therefore an adverb: it tells *how* he spoke. Of adverbs, there are about two thousand six hundred; and four fifths of them end in *ly*.

8. How can we distinguish a CONJUNCTION? By observing what words or terms it joins together, or to what other conjunction it corresponds; as, "*Neither wealth nor honor can heal a wounded conscience.*"--*Dillwyn's Ref.*, p. 16. Or, it may be well to learn the whole list at once: *And, as, both, because, even, for, if, that, then, since, seeing, so: Or, nor, either, neither, than, though, although, yet, but, except, whether, lest, unless, save, provided, notwithstanding, whereas*. Of conjunctions, there are these twenty-nine in common use, and a few others now obsolete.

9. How can we distinguish a PREPOSITION? By observing that it will govern the pronoun *them*, and is not a verb or a participle; as, *About them--above them--across them--after them--against them--amidst them--among them--around them--at them--Before them--behind them--below them--beneath them--beside them--between them--beyond them--by them--For them--from them--In them--into them, &c.* Of the prepositions, there are about sixty now in common use.

10. How can we distinguish an INTERJECTION? By observing that it is an independent word or sound, uttered earnestly, and very often written with the note of exclamation; as *Lo! behold! look! see! hark! hush! hist! mum!* Of interjections, there are sixty or seventy in common use, some of which are seldom found in books.

OBS. 2.--An accurate knowledge of words, and of their changes, is indispensable to a clear discernment of their proper combinations in sentences, according to the usage of the learned. Etymology, therefore, should be taught before syntax; but it should be chiefly taught by a direct analysis of entire sentences, and those so plainly written that the particular effect of every word may be clearly distinguished, and the meaning, whether intrinsic or relative, be discovered with precision. The parts of speech are usually named and defined with reference to the use of words *in sentences*; and, as the same word not unfrequently stands for several different parts of speech, the learner should be early taught to make for himself the proper application of the foregoing distribution, without recurrence to a dictionary, and without aid from his teacher. He who is endeavouring to acquaint himself with the grammar of a language which he can already read and understand, is placed in circumstances very different from those which attend the school-boy who is just beginning to construe some sentences of a foreign tongue. A frequent use of the dictionary may facilitate the progress of the one, while it delays that of the other. English grammar, it is hoped, may be learned directly from this book alone, with better success than can be expected when the attention of the learner is divided among several or many different works.

OBS. 3.--Dr. James P. Wilson, in speaking of the classification of words, observes, "The *names* of the distributive parts should either express, distinctly, the influence, which each class produces on sentences; or some other characteristic trait, by which the respective species of words may be distinguished, without danger of confusion. It is at least probable, that no distribution, sufficiently minute, can ever be made, of the parts of speech, which shall be wholly free from all objection. Hasty innovations, therefore, and crude conjectures, should not be permitted to disturb that course of grammatical instruction, which has been advancing in melioration, by the unremitting labours of thousands, through a series of ages."--*Wilson's Essay on Gram.*, p. 66. Again: "The *number* of the parts of speech may be reduced, or enlarged, at pleasure; and the rules of syntax may be accommodated to such new arrangement. The best grammarians find it difficult, in practice, to distinguish, in some instances, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions; yet their effects are generally distinct. This inconvenience should be submitted to, since a less comprehensive distribution would be very unfavourable to a rational investigation of the meaning of English sentences."--*Ib.*, p. 68. Again: "As and so

have been also deemed substitutes, and resolved into other words. But if all abbreviations are to be restored to their primitive parts of speech, there will be a general revolution in the present systems of grammar; and the various improvements, which have sprung from convenience, or necessity, and been sanctioned by the usage of ancient times, must be retrenched, and anarchy in letters universally prevail."--*Ib.*, p. 114.

OBS. 4.--I have elsewhere sufficiently shown why *ten* parts of speech are to be preferred to any other number, in English; and whatever diversity of opinion there may be, respecting the class to which some particular words ought to be referred, I trust to make it obvious to good sense, that I have seldom erred from the course which is most expedient. 1. *Articles* are used with appellative nouns, sometimes to denote emphatically the species, but generally to designate individuals. 2. *Nouns* stand in discourse for persons, things, or abstract qualities. 3. *Adjectives* commonly express the concrete qualities of persons or things; but sometimes, their situation or number. 4. *Pronouns* are substitutes for names, or nouns; but they sometimes represent sentences. 5. *Verbs* assert, ask, or say something; and, for the most part, express action or motion. 6. *Participles* contain the essential meaning of their verbs, and commonly denote action, and imply time; but, apart from auxiliaries, they express that meaning either adjectively or substantively, and not with assertion. 7. *Adverbs* express the circumstances of time, of place, of degree, and of manner; the *when*, the *where*, the *how much*, and the *how*. 8. *Conjunctions* connect, sometimes words, and sometimes sentences, rarely phrases; and always show, either the manner in which one sentence or one phrase depends upon an other, or what connexion there is between two words that refer to a third. 9. *Prepositions* express the correspondent relations of things to things, of thoughts to thoughts, or of words to words; for these, if we speak truly, must be all the same in expression. 10. *Interjections* are either natural sounds or exclamatory words, used independently, and serving briefly to indicate the wishes or feelings of the speaker.

OBS. 5.--In the following passage, all the parts of speech are exemplified, and each is pointed out by the figure placed over the word:--

1 2 9 2 5 1 2 3 9 2 1 2 6 "The power of speech is a faculty peculiar to man; a faculty bestowed 9 4 9 4 3 2 9 1
3 8 7 3 on him by his beneficent Creator, for the greatest and most excellent 2 8 10 7 7 5 4 5 4 9 1 3 9 uses;
but, alas! how often do we pervert it to the worst of 2 purposes!"--See *Lowth's Gram.*, p. 1.

In this sentence, which has been adopted by Murray, Churchill, and others, we have the following parts of speech: 1. The words *the*, *a*, and *an*, are articles. 2. The words *power*, *speech*, *faculty*, *man*, *faculty*, *Creator*, *uses*, and *purposes*, are nouns. 3. The words *peculiar*, *beneficent*, *greatest*, *excellent*, and *worst*, are adjectives. 4. The words *him*, *his*, *we*, and *it*, are pronouns. 5. The words *is*, *do*, and *pervert*, are verbs. 6. The word *bestowed* is a participle. 7. The words *most*, *how*, and *often*, are adverbs. 8. The words *and* and *but* are conjunctions. 9. The words *of*, *on*, *to*, *by*, *for*, *to*, and *of*, are prepositions. 10. The word *alas!* is an interjection.

OBS. 6.--In speaking or writing, we of course bring together the different parts of speech just as they happen to be needed. Though a sentence of ordinary length usually embraces more than one half of them, it is not often that we find them *all* in so small a compass. Sentences sometimes abound in words of a particular kind, and are quite destitute of those of some other sort. The following examples will illustrate these remarks. (1) ARTICLES: "A square is less beautiful than *a* circle; and *the* reason seems to be, that *the* attention is divided among *the* sides and angles of *a* square, whereas *the* circumference of *a* circle, being *a* single object, makes one entire impression."--*Kames, Elements of Criticism*, Vol. i, p. 175. (2.) NOUNS: "A *number* of *things* destined for the same *use*, such as *windows*, *chairs*, *spoons*, *buttons*, cannot be too uniform; for, supposing their *figure* to be good, *utility* requires *uniformity*."--*Ib.*, i, 176. (3.) ADJECTIVES: "Hence nothing *just*, *proper*, *decent*, *beautiful*, *proportioned*, or *grand*, is *risible*."--*Ib.*, i, 229. (4.) PRONOUNS: "*I* must entreat the courteous reader to suspend *his* curiosity, and rather to consider *what* is written than *who* *they* are *that* write it."--*Addison, Spect.*, No. 556. (5.) VERBS: "The least consideration *will* *inform* us how easy it *is* to *put* an ill-natured construction upon a word; and what perverse turns and expressions *spring* from an evil temper. Nothing *can* be *explained* to him who *will* not *understand*, nor *will* any thing *appear* right to the unreasonable."--*Cecil*. (6.) PARTICIPLES: "The Scriptures are an authoritative voice, *reproving*, *instructing*,

and *warning* the world; and *declaring* the only means *ordained* and *provided for escaping* the awful penalties of sin."--G. B. (7.) ADVERBS: "The light of Scripture shines *steadily, purely, benignly, certainly, superlatively*."--Dr. S. H. Cox. (8.) CONJUNCTIONS: "Quietness and silence *both* become *and* befriend religious exercises. Clamour *and* violence often hinder, *but* never further, the work of God."--Henry's Exposition. (9.) PREPOSITIONS: "He has kept *among us*, in times of peace, standing armies, *without* the consent of our legislatures."--Dec. of Indep. (10.) INTERJECTIONS: "*Oh*, my dear strong-box! *Oh*, my lost guineas! *Oh*, poor, ruined, beggared old man! *Boo! hoo! hoo!*"--MOLIERE: *Burgh's Art of Speaking*, p. 266.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

Parsing is the resolving or explaining of a sentence, or of some related word or words, according to the definitions and rules of grammar. Parsing is to grammar what ciphering is to arithmetic.

A *Praxis* is a method of exercise, or a form of grammatical resolution, showing the learner how to proceed. The word is Greek, and literally signifies action, doing, practice, or formal use.

PRAXIS I--ETYMOLOGICAL.

In the first Praxis, it is required of the pupil--merely to distinguish and define the different parts of speech.

The definitions to be given in the First Praxis, are one, and only one, for each word, or part of speech. Thus:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The patient ox submits to the yoke, and meekly performs the labour required of him."

The is an article. 1.[132] An article is the word *the, an, or a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification.

Patient is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Ox is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Submits is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon*.

To is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

The is an article. 1. An article is the word *the, an, or a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification.

Yoke is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

And is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

Meekly is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Performs is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be, to act, or to be acted upon*.

The is an article. 1. An article is the word *the, an, or a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification.

Labour is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Required is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb.

Of is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

Him is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"A nimble tongue often trips. The rule of the tongue is a great attainment. The language of truth is direct and plain. Truth is never evasive. Flattery is the food of vanity. A virtuous mind loathes flattery. Vain persons are an easy prey to parasites. Vanity easily mistakes sneers for smiles. The smiles of the world are deceitful. True friendship hath eternal views. A faithful friend is invaluable. Constancy in friendship denotes a generous mind. Adversity is the criterion of friendship. Love and fidelity are inseparable. Few know the value of a friend till they lose him. Justice is the first of all moral virtues. Let justice hold, and mercy turn, the scale. A judge is guilty who connives at guilt. Justice delayed is little better than justice denied. Vice is the deformity of man. Virtue is a source of constant cheerfulness. One vice is more expensive than many virtues. Wisdom, though serious, is never sullen. Youth is the season of improvement."--*Dillwyn's Reflections*, pp. 4-27.

"Oh! my ill-chang'd condition! oh, my fate! Did I lose heaven for this?"--*Cowley's Davideis*.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"So prone is man to society, and so happy in it, that, to relish perpetual solitude, one must be an angel or a brute. In a solitary state, no creature is more timid than man; in society, none more bold. The number of offenders lessens the disgrace of the crime; for a common reproach is no reproach. A man is more unhappy in reproaching himself when guilty, than in being reproached by others when innocent. The pains of the mind are harder to bear than those of the body. Hope, in this mixed state of good and ill, is a blessing from heaven: the gift of prescience would be a curse. The first step towards vice, is to make a mystery of what is innocent: whoever loves to hide, will soon or late have reason to hide. A man who gives his children a habit of industry, provides for them better than by giving them a stock of money. Our good and evil proceed from ourselves: death appeared terrible to Cicero, indifferent to Socrates, desirable to Cato."--*Home's Art of Thinking*, pp. 26-53.

"O thou most high transcendent gift of age! Youth from its folly thus to disengage."--*Denham's Age*.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"Calm was the day, and the scene, delightful. We may expect a calm after a storm. To prevent passion is easier than to calm it."--*Murray's Ex.*, p. 5. "Better is a little with content, than a great deal with anxiety. A little attention will rectify some errors. Unthinking persons care little for the future."--See *ib.* "Still waters are commonly deepest. He laboured to still the tumult. Though he is out of danger, he is still afraid."--*Ib.* "Damp air is unwholesome. Guilt often casts a damp over our sprightliest hours. Soft bodies damp the sound much more than hard ones."--*Ib.* "The hail was very destructive. Hail, virtue! source of every good. We hail you as friends."--*Ib.*, p. 6. "Much money makes no man happy. Think much, and speak little. He has seen much of the world."--See *ib.* "Every being loves its like. We must make a like space between the lines. Behave like men. We are apt to like pernicious company."--*Ib.* "Give me more love, or more disdain."--*Carew*. "He loved Rachel more than Leah."--*Genesis*. "But how much that more is; he hath no distinct notion."--*Locke*.

"And my more having would be as a sauce To make me hunger more."--*Shakspeare*.

CHAPTER II.

--ARTICLES.

An Article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification: as, *The* air, *the* stars; *an* island, *a* ship.

An and *a*, being equivalent in meaning, are commonly reckoned *one and the same* article. *An* is used in preference to *a*, whenever the following word begins with a vowel sound; as, *An* art, *an* end, *an* heir, *an* inch, *an* ounce, *an* hour, *an* urn. *A* is used in preference to *an*, whenever the following word begins with a consonant sound; as, *A* man, *a* house, *a* wonder, *a* one, *a* yew, *a* use, *a* ewer. Thus the consonant sounds of *w* and *y*, even when expressed by other letters, require *a* and not *an* before them.

A common noun, when taken in its *widest sense*, usually admits no article: as, "A candid temper is proper for *man*; that is, for *all mankind*."--*Murray*.

In English, nouns without any article, or other definitive, are often used in a sense *indefinitely partitive*: as, "He took *bread*, and gave thanks."--*Acts*. That is, "*some bread*." "To buy *food* are thy servants come."--*Genesis*. That is, "*some food*." "There are *fishes* that have wings, and are not strangers to the airy region."--*Locke's Essay*, p. 322. That is, "*some fishes*."

"Words in which nothing but the *mere being* of any thing is implied, are used without articles: as, 'This is not *beer*, but *water*;' 'This is not *brass*, but *steel*.'"--See *Dr. Johnson's Gram.*, p. 5.

An or *a* before the genus, may refer to *a whole species*; and *the* before the species, may denote that whole species emphatically: as, "A *certain bird* is termed *the cuckoo*, from *the sound* which it emits."--*Blair*.

But *an* or *a* is commonly used to denote individuals as *unknown*, or as not specially distinguished from others: as, "I see *an object* pass by, which I never saw till now; and I say, 'There goes *a beggar* with *a long beard*.'"--*Harris*.

And *the* is commonly used to denote individuals as *known*, or as specially distinguished from others: as, "*The man* departs, and returns a week after; and I say, 'There goes *the beggar* with *the long beard*.'"--*Id*.

The article *the* is applied to nouns of either number: as, "*The man, the men*;" "*The good boy, the good boys*."

The is commonly required before adjectives that are used by ellipsis as nouns: as, "*The young* are slaves to novelty; *the old*, to custom."--*Ld. Kames*.

The article *an* or *a* implies *unity*, or *one*, and of course belongs to nouns of the singular number only; as, *A man*,--*An old man*,--*A good boy*.

An or *a*, like *one*, sometimes gives a collective meaning to an adjective of number, when the noun following is plural; as, *A few days*,--*A hundred men*,--*One hundred pounds sterling*.

Articles should be *inserted* as often as the sense requires them; as, "Repeat the preterit and [*the*] perfect participle of the verb *to abide*."--Error in *Merchant's American School Grammar*, p. 66.

Needless articles should be omitted; they seldom fail to pervert the sense: as, "*The Rhine, the Danube, the Tanais, the Po, the Wolga, the Ganges*, like many hundreds of similar *names*, rose not from any obscure jargon or irrational dialect."--Error in *Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.*, Vol. i, p. 327.

The articles can seldom be put *one for the other*, without gross impropriety; and of course either is to be preferred to the other, as it better suits the sense: as, "*The* violation of this rule never fails to hurt and displease a reader."--Error in *Blair's Lectures*, p. 107. Say, "A violation of this rule never fails to displease *the* reader."

CLASSES.

The articles are distinguished as the *definite* and the *indefinite*.

I. The *definite article* is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things; as, *The* boy, *the* oranges.

II. The *indefinite article* is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one; as, A boy, *an* orange.

MODIFICATIONS.[133]

The English articles have no modifications, except that *an* is shortened into *a* before the sound of a consonant; as, "In *an* epic poem, or *a* poem upon *an* elevated subject, *a* writer ought to avoid raising *a* simile on *a* low image."--*Ld. Kames*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--No other words are so often employed as the articles. And, by reason of the various and very frequent occasions on which these definitives are required, no words are oftener misapplied; none, oftener omitted or inserted erroneously. I shall therefore copiously illustrate both their *uses* and their *abuses*; with the hope that every reader of this volume will think it worth his while to gain that knowledge which is requisite to the true use of these small but important words. Some parts of the explanation, however, must be deferred till we come to Syntax.

OBS. 2.--With the attempts of Tooke, Dalton, Webster, Cardell, Fowle, Wells,[134] Weld, Butler Frazee, Perley, Mulligan, Pinneo, S. S. Greene, and other writers, to *degrade* the article from its ancient rank among the parts of speech, no judicious reader, duly acquainted with the subject, can, I think, be well pleased. An article is not properly an "*adjective*," as they would have it to be; but it is a word of a peculiar sort--a *customary index* to the sense of nouns. It serves not merely to show the extent of signification, in which nouns are to be taken, but is often the principal, and sometimes the only mark, by which a word is known to have the sense and construction of a noun. There is just as much reason to deny and degrade the Greek or French article, (or that of any other language,) as the English; and, if those who are so zealous to reform our *the*, *an*, and *a* into *adjectives*, cared at all to appear consistent in the view of Comparative or General Grammar, they would either set about a wider reformation or back out soon from the pettiness of this.

OBS. 3.--First let it be understood, that *an* or *a* is nearly equivalent in meaning to the numeral adjective *one*, but less emphatic; and that *the* is nearly equivalent in meaning to the pronominal adjective *that* or *those*, but less emphatic. On *some* occasions, these adjectives may well be substituted for the articles; but *not generally*. If the articles were generally equivalent to adjectives, or even if they were generally *like* them, they would *be* adjectives; but, that adjectives may occasionally supply their places, is no argument at all for confounding the two parts of speech. Distinctions must be made, where differences exist; and, that *a*, *an*, and *the*, do differ considerably from the other words which they most resemble, is shown even by some who judge "the distinctive name of *article* to be useless." See *Crombie's Treatise*, Chap. 2. The articles therefore must be distinguished, not only from adjectives, but from each other. For, though both are *articles*, each is an index *sui generis*; the one definite, the other indefinite. And as the words *that* and *one* cannot often be interchanged without a difference of meaning, so the definite article and the indefinite are seldom, if ever, interchangeable. To put one for the other, is therefore, in general, to put one *meaning* for an other: "A daughter of *a* poor man"--"*The* daughter of *the* poor man"--"A daughter of *the* poor man"--and, "*The* daughter of *a* poor man," are

four phrases which certainly have four different and distinct significations. This difference between the two articles may be further illustrated by the following example: "That Jesus was *a* prophet sent from God, is one proposition; that Jesus was *the* prophet, *the* Messiah, is an other; and, though he certainly was both *a* prophet and *the* prophet, yet *the* foundations of *the* proof of these propositions are separate and distinct."--*Watson's Apology*, p. 105.

OBS. 4.--Common nouns are, for the most part, names of large classes of objects; and, though what really constitutes the species must always be found entire in every individual, the several objects thus arranged under one general name or idea, are in most instances susceptible of such a numerical distribution as gives rise to an other form of the noun, expressive of plurality; as, *horse*, *horses*. Proper nouns in their ordinary application, are, for the most part, names of particular individuals; and as there is no plurality to a particular idea, or to an individual person or thing as distinguished from all others, so there is in general none to this class of nouns; and no room for *further restriction by articles*. But we sometimes divert such nouns from their usual signification, and consequently employ them with articles or in the plural form; as, "I endeavoured to retain it nakedly in my mind, without regarding whether I had it from *an Aristotle* or *a Zoilus*, *a Newton* or *a Descartes*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, Pref., p. 8. "It is not enough to have *Vitruviuses*, we must also have *Augustuses* to employ them."--*Bicknell's Gram.*, Part ii, p. 61.

"*A Daniel* come to judgment! yea, *a Daniel*!" --SHAK. *Shylock*.

"Great Homer, in *th' Achilles*, whom he drew, Sets not that one sole Person in our View." --*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 183.

OBS. 5.--The article *an* or *a* usually denotes one out of several or many; one of a sort of which there are more; any one of that name, no matter which. Hence its effect upon a particular name, or proper noun, is *directly the reverse* of that which it has upon a common noun. It varies and fixes the meaning of both; but while it restricts that of the latter, it enlarges that of the former. It reduces the general idea of the common noun to any one individual of the class: as, "*A man*;" that is, "*One man*, or *any man*." On the contrary, it extends the particular idea of the proper noun, and makes the word significant of a class, by supposing others to whom it will apply: as, "*A Nero*;" that is, "*Any Nero*, or *any cruel tyrant*." Sometimes, however, this article before a proper name, seems to leave the idea still particular; but, if it really does so, the propriety of using it may be doubted: as, "No, not by *a John the Baptist* risen from the dead."--*Henry's Expos.*, Mark, vi. "It was not solely owing to the madness and depravity of *a Tiberius*, *a Caligula*, *a Nero*, or *a Caracalla*, that a cruel and sanguinary spirit, in their day, was so universal."--*M'Irvine's Evid.*, p. 398.

OBS. 6.--With the definite article, the noun is applied, sometimes specifically, sometimes individually, but always *definitely*, always *distinctively*. This article is demonstrative. It marks either the particular individual, or the particular species,--or, (if the noun be plural,) some particular individuals of the species,--as being distinguished from all others. It sometimes refers to a thing as having been previously mentioned; sometimes presumes upon the hearer's familiarity with the thing; and sometimes indicates a limitation which is made by subsequent words connected with the noun. Such is the import of this article, that with it the singular number of the noun is often more comprehensive, and at the same time more specific, than the plural. Thus, if I say, "*The horse* is a noble animal," without otherwise intimating that I speak of some particular horse, the sentence will be understood to embrace collectively *that species* of animal; and I shall be thought to mean, "Horses are noble animals." But if I say, "*The horses* are noble animals," I use an expression so much more limited, as to include only a few; it must mean some particular horses, which I distinguish from all the rest of the species. Such limitations should be made, whenever there is occasion for them; but needless restrictions displease the imagination, and ought to be avoided; because the mind naturally delights in terms as comprehensive as they may be, if also specific. Lindley Murray, though not uniform in his practice respecting this, seems to have thought it necessary to use the plural in many sentences in which I should decidedly prefer the singular; as, "That *the learners* may have no doubts."--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 81. "The business will not be tedious to *the scholars*."--*Ib.*, 81. "For the information of *the learners*."--*Ib.*, 81. "It may afford instruction to

the learners."--*Ib.*, 110. "That this is the case, *the learners* will perceive by the following examples."--*Ib.*, 326. "Some knowledge of it appears to be indispensable to *the scholars.*"--*Ib.*, 335.

OBS. 7.--Proper names of a plural form and signification, are almost always preceded by the definite article; as, "*The Wesleys*,"--"*The twelve Cæsars*,"--"*All the Howards*." So the names of particular nations, tribes, and sects; as, *The Romans, the Jews, the Levites, the Stoics*. Likewise the plural names of mountains; as, *The Alps, the Apennines, the Pyrenees, the Andes*. Of plural names like these, and especially of such as designate tribes and sects, there is a very great number. Like other proper names, they must be distinguished from the ordinary words of the language, and accordingly they are always written with capitals; but they partake so largely of the nature of common nouns, that it seems doubtful to which class they most properly belong. Hence they not only admit, but require the article; while most other proper names are so definite in themselves, that the article, if put before them, would be needless, and therefore improper.

"*Nash, Rutledge, Jefferson*, in council great, And *Jay*, and *Laurens* oped the rolls of fate; *The Livingstons*, fair freedoms generous band, *The Lees, the Houstons*, fathers of the land."--*Barlow*.

OBS. 8.--In prose, the definite article is always used before names of rivers, unless the word *river*, be added; as, *The Delaware, the Hudson, the Connecticut*. But if the word *river* be added, the article becomes needless; as, *Delaware river, Hudson river, Connecticut river*. Yet there seems to be no impropriety in using both; as, *The Delaware river, the Hudson river, the Connecticut river*. And if the common noun be placed before the proper name, the article is again necessary; as, *The river Delaware, the river Hudson, the river Connecticut*. In the first form of expression, however, the article has not usually been resolved by grammarians as relating to the proper name; but these examples, and others of a similar character, have been supposed elliptical: as, "*The [river] Potomac*"--"*The [ship] Constitution*,"--"*The [steamboat] Fulton*." Upon this supposition, the words in the first and fourth forms are to be parsed alike; the article relating to the common noun, expressed or understood, and the proper noun being in apposition with the appellative. But in the second form, the apposition is reversed; and, in the third, the proper name appears to be taken adjectively. Without the article, some names of rivers could not be understood; as,

"No more *the Varus* and *the Atax* feel The lordly burden of the Latian keel."--*Rowe's Lucan*, B. i. l. 722.

OBS. 9.--The definite article is often used by way of eminence, to distinguish some particular individual emphatically, or to apply to him some characteristic name or quality: as, "*The Stagirite*,"--that is, Aristotle; "*The Psalmist*," that is, David; "*Alexander the Great*,"--that is, (perhaps,) Alexander the Great *Monarch*, or Great *Hero*. So, sometimes, when the phrase relates to a collective body of men: as, "*The Honourable, the Legislature*,"--"*The Honourable, the Senate*;"--that is, "*The Honourable Body, the Legislature*," &c. A similar application of the article in the following sentences, makes a most beautiful and expressive form of compliment: "These are the sacred feelings of thy heart, O Lyttleton, *the friend*."--*Thomson*. "The pride of swains Palemon was, *the generous* and *the rich*."--*Id*. In this last example, the noun *man* is understood after "*generous*," and again after "*rich*;" for, the article being an index to the noun, I conceive it to be improper ever to construe two articles as having reference to one unpeated word. Dr. Priestley says, "We sometimes repeat *the article*, when the epithet precedes the substantive; as He was met by *the worshipful the* magistrates."--*Gram.*, p. 148. It is true, we occasionally meet with such fulsome phraseology as this; but the question is, how is it to be explained? I imagine that the word *personages*, or something equivalent, must be understood after *worshipful*, and that the Doctor ought to have inserted a comma there.

OBS. 10.--In Greek, there is no article corresponding to our *an* or *a*, consequently *man* and *a man* are rendered alike; the word, [Greek: anthropos] may mean either. See, in the original, these texts: "There was *a man* sent from God," (*John*, i, 6,) and, "What is *man*, that thou art mindful of him?"--*Heb.*, ii, 6. So of other nouns. But the *definite* article of that language, which is exactly equivalent to our *the*, is a declinable word, making no small figure in grammar. It is varied by numbers, genders, and cases; so that it assumes more than twenty different forms, and becomes susceptible of six and thirty different ways of *agreement*. But this article

in English is perfectly simple, being entirely destitute of grammatical modifications, and consequently incapable of any form of grammatical agreement or disagreement--a circumstance of which many of our grammarians seem to be ignorant; since they prescribe a rule, wherein they say, it "*agrees*," "*may agree*," or "*must agree*," with its noun. Nor has the indefinite article any variation of form, except the change from *an* to *a*, which has been made for the sake of brevity or euphony.

OBS. 11.--As *an* or *a* conveys the idea of unity, of course it applies to no other than nouns of the singular number. *An eagle* is one eagle, and the plural word *eagles* denotes more than one; but what could possibly be meant by "*ans eagles*," if such a phrase were invented? Harris very strangely says, "The Greeks have no article correspondent to *an* or *a*, but *supply its place by a NEGATION of their article*. And even in English, where the article *a* cannot be used, as in plurals, *its force is exprest by the same NEGATION*."--Harris's *Hermes*, p. 218. What a sample of grammar is this! Besides several minor faults, we have here a *nonentity*, a NEGATION of the Greek article, made to occupy a place in language, and to express *force*! The force of what? Of a plural *an* or *a*,! of such a word as *ans* or *aes*! The error of the first of these sentences, Dr. Blair has copied entire into his eighth lecture.

OBS. 12.--The following rules of agreement, though found in many English grammars, are not only objectionable with respect to the sense intended, but so badly written as to be scarcely intelligible in any sense: 1. "The article *a* or *an* agrees with nouns in the singular number only, individually, or collectively: as, A Christian, an infidel, a score, a thousand." 2. "The definite article *the* may agree with nouns in the singular AND[135] plural number: as, The garden, the houses, the stars."--Murray's *Gram.*, 8vo, p. 170; 12mo, 139; Fish's *Murray*, 98; a *Teacher's*, 45. For the purpose of preventing any erroneous construction of the articles, these rules are utterly useless; and for the purpose of syntactical parsing, or the grammatical resolution of this part of speech, they are awkward and inconvenient. The syntax of the articles may be much better expressed in this manner: "*Articles relate to the nouns which they limit*," for, in English, the bearing of the articles upon other words is properly that of simple *relation*, or dependence, according to the sense, and not that of *agreement*, not a similarity of distinctive modifications.

OBS. 13.--Among all the works of earlier grammarians, I have never yet found a book which taught correctly the application of the two forms of the indefinite article *an* or *a*. Murray, contrary to Johnson and Webster, considers *a* to be the original word, and *an* the euphonic derivative. He says: "A becomes *an* before a vowel, and before a silent *h*. But if the *h* be sounded, the *a* only is to be used."--Murray's *Gram.*, p. 31. To this he adds, in a marginal note, "*A instead of an is now used before words beginning with u long. It is used before one. An must be used before words WHERE the h is not silent, if the accent is on the second syllable; as, an heroic action, an historical account*."--*Ib.* This explanation, clumsy as it is, in the whole conception; broken, prolix, deficient, and inaccurate as it is, both in style and doctrine; has been copied and copied from grammar to grammar, as if no one could possibly better it. Besides several other faults, it contains a palpable misuse of the article itself: "*the h*" which is specified in the second and fifth sentences, is the "*silent h*" of the first sentence; and this inaccurate specification gives us the two obvious solecisms of supposing, "*if the [silent] h be sounded*," and of locating "*words WHERE the [silent] h is not silent*!" In the word *humour*, and its derivatives, the *h* is silent, by all authority except Webster's; and yet these words require *a* and not *an* before them.

OBS. 14.--It is the *sound* only, that governs the form of the article, and not the *letter* itself; as, "Those which admit of the regular form, are marked with *an* R."--Murray's *Gram.*, p. 101. "A heroic poem, written by Virgil."--Webster's *Dict.* "Every poem of the kind has no doubt a historical groundwork."--Philological Museum, Vol. i, p. 457. "A poet must be a naturalist and a historian."--Coleridge's *Introduction*, p. 111. Before *h* in an unaccented syllable, either form of the article may be used without offence to the ear; and either may be made to appear preferable to the other, by merely aspirating the letter in a greater or less degree. But as the *h*, though ever so feebly aspirated has *something* of a consonant sound, I incline to think the article in this case ought to conform to the general principle: as, "A historical introduction has, generally, a happy effect to rouse attention."--Blair's *Rhet.*, p. 311. "He who would write heroic poems, should make his whole

life a heroic poem."--See *Life of Schiller*, p. 56. Within two lines of this quotation, the biographer speaks of "an heroic multitude!" The suppression of the sound of *h* being with Englishmen a very common fault in pronunciation, it is not desirable to increase the error, by using a form of the article which naturally leads to it. "How often do we hear *an air* metamorphosed into *a hair*, a *hat* into a *gnat*, and a *hero* into a *Nero*!"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 205. Thus: "Neither of them had that bold and adventurous ambition which makes a conqueror *an hero*."--*Bolingbroke, on History*, p. 174.

OBS. 15.--Some later grammarians are still more faulty than Murray, in their rules for the application of *an* or *a*. Thus Sanborn: "The vowels are *a, e, i, o,* and *u*. *An* should be used before words beginning with *any of these letters*, or with a silent *h*."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 11. "*An* is used before words beginning with *u* long or with *h* not silent, when the accent is on the second syllable; as, *an united* people, *an historical* account, *an heroic* action."--*Ib.*, p. 85. "*A* is used when the next word begins with a *consonant*; *an*, when it begins with a *vowel* or silent *h*."--*Ib.*, p. 129. If these rules were believed and followed, they would greatly multiply errors.

OBS. 16.--Whether the word *a* has been formed from *an*, or *an* from *a*, is a disputed point--or rather, a point on which our grammarians dogmatize differently. This, if it be worth the search, must be settled by consulting some genuine writings of the twelfth century. In the pure Saxon of an earlier date, the words *seldom occur*; and in that ancient dialect *an*, I believe, is used only as a declinable numerical adjective, and *a* only as a preposition. In the thirteenth century, both forms were in common use, in the sense now given them, as may be seen in the writings of Robert of Gloucester; though some writers of a much later date--or, at any rate, *one*, the celebrated Gawin Douglas, a Scottish bishop, who died of the plague in London, in 1522--constantly wrote *ane* for both *an* and *a*: as,

"Be not ouer studyous to spy *ane* mote in myn E, That in gour awin *ane* ferrye bot can not se." --*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 124.

"*Ane* uthir mache to him was socht and sperit; Bot thare was *nane* of all the rout that sterit." --*Ib.*, Vol. i, p. 160.

OBS. 17.--This, however, was a *Scotticism*; as is also the use of *ae* for *a*: Gower and Chaucer used *an* and *a* as we now use them. The Rev. J. M. McCulloch, in an English grammar published lately in Edinburgh, says, "*A* and *an* were originally *ae* and *ane*, and were probably used at first simply to convey the idea of unity; as, *ae* man, *ane* ox."--*Manual of E. Gram.*, p. 30. For this idea, and indeed for a great part of his book, he is indebted to Dr. Crombie; who says, "To signify unity, or one of a class, our forefathers employed *ae* or *ane*; as, *ae* man, *ane* ox."--*Treatise on Etym. and Synt.*, p. 53. These authors, like Webster, will have *a* and *an* to be *adjectives*. Dr. Johnson says, "*A*, an *article* set before nouns of the singular number; as, *a* man, *a* tree. This article has no plural signification. Before a word beginning with a vowel, it is written *an*; as, *an* ox, *an* egg; of which *a* is the contraction."--*Quarto Dict.*, w. *A*.

OBS. 18.--Dr. Webster says, "*A* is also an abbreviation of the Saxon *an* or *ane*, *one*, used before words beginning with an articulation; as, *a* table, *instead* of *an* table, or one table. *This is a modern change*; for, in Saxon, *an* was used before articulations as well as vowels; as, *an tid*, *a* time, *an gear*, *a* year."--*Webster's Octavo Dict.*, w. *A*. A modern change, indeed! By his own showing in other works, it was made long before the English language existed! He says, "*An*, therefore, is the original English adjective or ordinal number *one*; and was never written *a* until after the Conquest."--*Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 20; *Improved Gram.*, 14. "*The Conquest*," means the Norman Conquest, in 1066; but English was not written till the thirteenth century. This author has long been idly contending, that *an* or *a* is not an *article*, but an *adjective*; and that it is not properly distinguished by the term "*indefinite*." Murray has answered him well enough, but he will not be convinced.[136] See *Murray's Gram.*, pp. 34 and 35. If *a* and *one* were equal, we could not say, "*Such a one*,"--"*What a one*,"--"*Many a one*,"--"*This one thing*," and surely these are all good English, though *a* and *one* here admit no interchange. Nay, *a* is sometimes found before *one* when the latter is used adjectively; as, "There is no record in Holy Writ of the institution of *a one* all-controlling monarchy."--*Supremacy of the Pope*

Disproved, p. 9. "If not to a one Sole Arbitrator."--*Ib.*, p. 19.

OBS. 19.--*An* is sometimes a *conjunction*, signifying *if*; as, "Nay, *an* thou'lt mouthe, I'll rant as well as thou."--*Shak.* "An I have not ballads made on you all, and sung to fifty tunes, may a cup of sack be my poison."--*Id.*, *Falstaff*. "But, *an* it were to do again, I should write again."--*Lord Byron's Letters*. "But *an* it be a long part, I can't remember it."--SHAKESPEARE: *Burgh's Speaker*, p. 136.

OBS. 20.--In the New Testament, we meet with several such expressions as the following: "And his disciples were *an* *hungred*."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: *Matt*, xii, 1. "When he was *an* *hungred*."--*Ib.* xii, 3. "When he had need and was *an* *hungred*."--*Ib.* *Mark*, ii, 25. Alger, the improver of Murray's Grammar, and editor of the Pronouncing Bible, taking this *an* to be the indefinite article, and perceiving that the *h* is sounded in *hungred*, changed the particle to *a* in all these passages; as, "And his disciples were *a* *hungred*." But what sense he thought he had made of the sacred record, I know not. The Greek text, rendered word for word, is simply this: "And his disciples *hungred*." And that the sentences above, taken either way, are *not good English*, must be obvious to every intelligent reader. *An*, as I apprehend, is here a mere *prefix*, which has somehow been mistaken in form, and erroneously disjoined from the following word. If so, the correction ought to be made after the fashion of the following passage from Bishop M'Ilvaine: "On a certain occasion, our Saviour was followed by five thousand men, into a desert place, where they were *enhungred*."--*Lectures on Christianity*, p. 210.

OBS. 21.--The word *a*, when it does not denote one thing of a kind, is not an article, but a genuine *preposition*; being probably the same as the French *à*, signifying *to*, *at*, *on*, *in*, or *of*: as, "Who hath it? He that died *a* Wednesday."--*Shak.* That is, *on* Wednesday. So sometimes before plurals; as, "He carves *a* Sundays."--*Swift*. That is, *on* Sundays. "He is let out *a* nights."--*Id.* That is, *on* nights--like the following example: "A pack of rascals that walk the streets *on* nights."--*Id.* "He will knap the spears *a* pieces with his teeth."--*More's Antid.* That is, *in* pieces, or *to* pieces. So in the compound word *now-a-days*, where it means *on*; and in the proper names, Thomas *à* Becket, Thomas *à* Kempis, Anthony *à* Wood, where it means *at* or *of*.

"Bot certainly the daisit blude *now on dayis* Waxis dolf and dull throw myne unwieldy age."--*Douglas*.

OBS. 22.--As a preposition, *a* has now most generally become a *prefix*, or what the grammarians call an inseparable preposition; as in *abed*, in bed; *aboard*, on board; *abroad*, at large; *afire*, on fire; *afore*, in front; *afoul*, in contact; *aloft*, on high; *aloud*, with loudness; *amain*, at main strength; *amidst*, in the midst; *akin*, of kin; *ajar*, unfastened; *ahead*, onward; *afield*, to the field; *alee*, to the leeward; *anew*, of new, with renewal. "A-nights, he was in the practice of sleeping, &c.; but *a-days* he kept looking on the barren ocean, shedding tears."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.*, Vol. ii, p. 162. Compounds of this kind, in most instances, follow verbs, and are consequently reckoned adverbs; as, *To go astray*,--*To turn aside*,--*To soar aloft*,--*To fall asleep*. But sometimes the antecedent term is a noun or a pronoun, and then they are as clearly adjectives; as, "Imagination is like to work better upon sleeping men, than *men awake*."--*Lord Bacon*. "Man alive, did you ever make a *hornet afraid*, or catch a *weasel asleep*?" And sometimes the compound governs a noun or a pronoun after it, and then it is a preposition; as, "A bridge is laid *across* a river."--*Webster's Dict.*, "To break his bridge *athwart* the Hellespont."--*Bacon's Essays*.

"Where Ufens glides *along* the lowly lands, Or the black water of Pomptina stands."--*Dryden*.

OBS. 23.--In several phrases, not yet to be accounted obsolete, this old preposition *à* still retains its place as a separate word; and none have been more perplexing to superficial grammarians, than those which are formed by using it before participles in *ing*; in which instances, the participles are in fact governed by it: for nothing is more common in our language, than for participles of this form to be governed by prepositions. For example, "You have set the cask *a* leaking," and, "You have set the cask *to* leaking," are exactly equivalent, both in meaning and construction. "Forty and six years was this temple *in* building."--*John*, ii, 20. *Building* is not here a noun, but a participle; and *in* is here better than *a*, only because the phrase, *a building*, might be taken for an

article and a noun, meaning *an edifice*. [137] Yet, in almost all cases, other prepositions are, I think, to be preferred to *à*, if others equivalent to it can be found. Examples: "Lastly, they go about to apologize for the long time their book hath been *a coming out*:" i.e., *in coming out*.--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 179. "And, for want of reason, he falls *a railing*:" i.e., *to railing*.--*Ib.*, iii, 357. "That the soul should be this moment busy *a thinking*:" i.e., *at or in thinking*.--*Locke's Essay*, p. 78. "Which, once set *a going*, continue in the same steps:" i.e., *to going*.--*Ib.*, p. 284. "Those who contend for four per cent, have set men's mouths *a watering* for money:" i.e., *to watering*.--*LOCKE: in Johnson's Dict.* "An other falls *a ringing* a Pescennius Niger:" i.e., *to ringing*.--*ADDISON: ib.* "At least to set others *a thinking* upon the subject:" i.e., *to thinking*.--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 300. "Every one that could reach it, cut off a piece, and fell *a eating*:" i.e., *to eating*.--*Newspaper.* "To go *a mothering*, [138] is to visit parents on Midlent Sunday."--*Webster's Dict.*, w. *Mothering.* "Which we may find when we come *a fishing* here."--*Wotton.* "They go *a begging* to a bankrupt's door."--*Dryden.* "A hunting Chloë went."--*Prior.* "They burst out *a laughing*."--*M. Edgeworth.* In the last six sentences, *a* seems more suitable than any other preposition would be: all it needs, is an accent to distinguish it from the article; as, *à*.

OBS. 24.--Dr. Alexander Murray says, "To be *a-seeking*, is the relic of the Saxon to be *on* or *an* seeking. What are you *a-seeking*? is *different* from, What are you seeking? It means more fully *the going on* with the process."--*Hist. Europ. Lang.*, Vol. ii, p. 149. I disapprove of the hyphen in such terms as "*à seeking*," because it converts the preposition and participle into I know not what; and it may be observed, in passing, that the want of it, in such as "*the going on*," leaves us a loose and questionable word, which, by the conversion of the participle into a noun, becomes a nondescript in grammar. I dissent also from Dr. Murray, concerning the use of the preposition or prefix *a*, in examples like that which he has here chosen. After a *neuter verb*, this particle is unnecessary to the sense, and, I think, injurious to the construction. Except in poetry, which is measured by syllables, it may be omitted without any substitute; as, "I am *a walking*."--*Johnson's Dict.*, w. A. "He had one only daughter, and she lay *a dying*."--*Luke*, viii, 42. "In the days of Noah, while the ark was *a preparing*."--*1 Pet.*, iii, 20. "Though his unattentive thoughts be elsewhere *a wandering*."--*Locke's Essay*, p. 284. Say--"be wandering elsewhere;" and omit the *a*, in all such cases.

"And--when he thinks, good easy man, full surely His greatness is *a ripening*--nips his root."--*Shak.*

OBS. 25.--"A has a peculiar signification, denoting the proportion of one thing to an other. Thus we say, The landlord hath a hundred *a year*; the ship's crew gained a thousand pounds *a man*."--*Johnson's Dict.* "After the rate of twenty leagues *a day*."--*Addison.* "And corn was at two sesterces *a bushel*."--*Duncan's Cicero*, p. 82. Whether *a* in this construction is the article or the preposition, seems to be questionable. Merchants are very much in the habit of supplying its place by the Latin preposition *per*, by; as, "Board, at \$2 *per* week."--*Preston's Book-Keeping*, p. 44. "Long lawn, at \$12 *per* piece."--*Dilworth's*, p. 63. "Cotton, at 2s. 6d. *per* pound."--*Morrison's*, p. 75. "Exchange, at 12d. *per* livre."--*Jackson's*, p. 73. It is to be observed that *an*, as well as *a*, is used in this manner; as, "The price is one dollar *an* ounce." Hence, I think, we may infer, that this is not the old preposition *a*, but the article *an* or *a*, used in the distributive sense of *each* or *every*, and that the noun is governed by a preposition understood; as, "He demands a dollar *an* hour;" i. e., a dollar *for each* hour.--"He comes twice *a year*:" i. e., twice *in every* year.--"He sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand *a month* by courses:" (*1 Kings*, v, 14:) i. e., ten thousand, *monthly*; or, as our merchants say, "*per month*." Some grammarians have also remarked, that, "In mercantile accounts, we frequently see *a* put for *to*, in a very odd sort of way; as, 'Six bales marked 1 *a* 6.' The merchant means, 'marked *from* 1 to 6.' This is taken to be a relic of the Norman French, which was once the law and mercantile language of England; for, in French, *a*, with an accent, signifies *to* or *at*."--*Emmons's Gram.*, p. 73. Modern merchants, in stead of accenting the *a*, commonly turn the end of it back; as, @.

OBS. 26.--Sometimes a numeral word with the indefinite article--as *a few*, *a great many*, *a dozen*, *a hundred*, *a thousand*--denotes an aggregate of several or many taken collectively, and yet is followed by a plural noun, denoting the sort or species of which this particular aggregate is a part: as, "A few small fishes,"--"A great many mistakes,"--"A dozen bottles of wine,"--"A hundred lighted candles,"--"A thousand miles off."

Respecting the proper manner of explaining these phrases, grammarians differ in opinion. That the article relates not to the plural noun, but to the numerical word only, is very evident; but whether, in these instances, the words *few*, *many*, *dozen*, *hundred*, and *thousand*, are to be called nouns or adjectives, is matter of dispute. Lowth, Murray, and many others, call them *adjectives*, and suppose a peculiarity of construction in the article;--like that of the singular adjectives *every* and *one* in the phrases, "*Every* ten days,"--"*One* seven times more."--*Dan.*, iii, 19. Churchill and others call them *nouns*, and suppose the plurals which follow, to be always in the objective case governed by *of*, understood: as, "A few [of] years,"--"A thousand [of] doors;"--like the phrases, "A *couple of* fowls,"--"A *score of* fat bullocks."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 279. Neither solution is free from difficulty. For example: "There are a great many adjectives."--*Dr. Adam*. Now, if *many* is here a singular nominative, and the only subject of the verb, what shall we do with *are*? and if it is a plural adjective, what shall we do with *a* and *great*? Taken in either of these ways, the construction is anomalous. One can hardly think the word "*adjectives*" to be here in the objective case, because the supposed ellipsis of the word *of* cannot be proved; and if *many* is a noun, the two words are perhaps in apposition, in the nominative. If I say, "A *thousand men* are on their way," the men *are the thousand*, and the thousand *is nothing but the men*; so that I see not why the relation of the terms may not be that of *apposition*. But if *authorities* are to decide the question, doubtless we must yield it to those who suppose the whole numeral phrase to be taken *adjectively*; as, "Most young Christians have, in the course of *half a dozen* years, time to read a *great many* pages."--*Young Christian*, p. 6.

"For harbour at a *thousand doors* they knock'd; Not one of all *the thousand* but was lock'd."--*Dryden*.

OBS. 27.--The numeral words considered above, seem to have been originally adjectives, and such may be their most proper construction now; but all of them are susceptible of being construed as nouns, even if they are not such in the examples which have been cited. *Dozen*, or *hundred*, or *thousand*, when taken abstractly, is unquestionably a noun; for we often speak of *dozens*, *hundreds*, and *thousands*. *Few* and *many* never assume the plural form, because they have naturally a plural signification; and *a few* or *a great many* is not a collection so definite that we can well conceive of *fews* and *manies*; but both are sometimes construed substantively, though in modern English [139] it seems to be mostly by ellipsis of the noun. Example: "The praise of *the judicious few* is an ample compensation for the neglect of *the illiterate many*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 278. Dr. Johnson says, the word *many* is remarkable in Saxon for its frequent use. The following are some of the examples in which he calls it a substantive, or noun: "After him the rascal *many* ran."--*Spenser*. "O thou fond *many*."--*Shakspeare*. "A care-craz'd mother of a *many* children."--*Id.* "And for thy sake have I shed *many* a tear."--*Id.* "The vulgar and the *many* are fit only to be led or driven."--*South*. "He is liable to a great *many* inconveniences every moment of his life."--*Tillotson*. "Seeing a great *many* in rich gowns, he was amazed."--*Addison*.

"There parting from the king, the chiefs divide, And wheeling east and west, before their *many* ride."--*Dryden*.

OBS. 28.--"On the principle here laid down, we may account for a peculiar use of the article with the adjective *few*, and some other diminutives. In saying, 'A *few* of his adherents remained with him;' we insinuate, that they constituted a number sufficiently important to be formed into an aggregate: while, if the article be omitted, as, '*Few* of his adherents remained with him;' this implies, that he was nearly deserted, by representing them as individuals not worth reckoning up. A similar difference occurs between the phrases: 'He exhibited *a little* regard for his character;' and 'He exhibited *little* regard for his character.'"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 279. The word *little*, in its most proper construction, is an adjective, signifying *small*; as, "He was *little* of stature."--*Luke*. "Is it not a *little* one?"--*Genesis*. And in sentences like the following, it is also reckoned an adjective, though the article seems to relate to it, rather than to the subsequent noun; or perhaps it may be taken as relating to them both: "Yet *a little* sleep, *a little* slumber, *a little* folding of the hands to sleep."--*Prov.*, vi, 10; xxiv, 33. But by a common ellipsis, it is used as a noun, both with and without the article; as, "A *little* that a righteous man hath, is better than the riches of many wicked."--*Psalms*, xxxvii, 16. "Better is *little* with the fear of the Lord, than great treasure and trouble therewith."--*Prov.*, xv, 16. "He that

despiseth little things, shall perish by *little* and *little*."--*Ecclesiasticus*. It is also used adverbially, both alone and with the article *a*; as, "The poor sleep *little*."--*Otway*. "Though they are *a little* astringent."--*Arbuthnot*. "When he had gone *a little* farther thence."--*Mark*, i, 19. "Let us vary the phrase [in] *a very little*" [degree].--*Kames*, Vol. ii, p. 163.

OBS. 29.--"As it is the nature of the articles to limit the signification of a word, they are applicable only to words expressing ideas capable of being individualized, or conceived of as single things or acts; and nouns implying a general state, condition, or habit, must be used without the article. It is not vaguely therefore, but on fixed principles, that the article is omitted, or inserted, in such phrases as the following: 'in terror, in fear, in dread, in haste, in sickness, in pain, in trouble; in *a* fright, in *a* hurry, in *a* consumption; *the* pain of his wound was great; her son's dissipated life was *a* great trouble to her.'"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 127.

OBS. 30.--Though *the*, *an*, and *a*, are the only articles in our language, they are far from being the only definitives. Hence, while some have objected to the peculiar distinction bestowed upon these little words, firmly insisting on throwing them in among the common mass of adjectives; others have taught, that the definitive adjectives--I know not how many--such as, *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *any*, *other*, *some*, *all*, *both*, *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*--"are much more properly articles than any thing else."--*Hermes*, p. 234. But, in spite of this opinion, it has somehow happened, that these definitive adjectives have very generally, and very absurdly, acquired the name of *pronouns*. Hence, we find Booth, who certainly excelled most other grammarians in learning and acuteness, marvelling that the *articles* "were ever separated from the class of *pronouns*." To all this I reply, that *the*, *an*, and *a*, are worthy to be distinguished as *the only articles*, because they are not only used with much greater *frequency* than any other definitives, but are specially restricted to the limiting of the signification of nouns. Whereas the other definitives above mentioned are very often used to supply the place of their nouns; that is, to represent them understood. For, in general, it is only by ellipsis of the noun after it, and not as the representative of a noun going before, that any one of these words assumes the appearance of a pronoun. Hence, they are not pronouns, but adjectives. Nor are they "more properly articles than any thing else;" for, "if the essence of an article be to define and ascertain" the meaning of a noun, this very conception of the thing necessarily supposes the noun to be used with it.

OBS. 31.--The following example, or explanation, may show what is meant by definitives. Let the general term be *man*, the plural of which is *men*: *A man*--one unknown or indefinite; *The man*--one known or particular; *The men*--some particular ones; *Any man*--one indefinitely; *A certain man*--one definitely; *This man*--one near; *That man*--one distant; *These men*--several near; *Those men*--several distant; *Such a man*--one like some other; *Such men*--some like others; *Many a man*--a multitude taken singly; *Many men*--an indefinite multitude taken plurally; *A thousand men*--a definite multitude; *Every man*--all or each without exception; *Each man*--both or all taken separately; *Some man*--one, as opposed to none; *Some men*--an indefinite number or part; *All men*--the whole taken plurally; *No men*--none of the sex; *No man*--never one of the race.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS II--ETYMOLOGICAL.

In the Second Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and to explain the ARTICLES as definite or indefinite.

The definitions to be given in the Second Praxis, are two for an article, and one for a noun, an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle, an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The task of a schoolmaster laboriously prompting and urging an indolent class, is worse than his who drives lazy horses along a sandy road."--*G. Brown*.

The is the definite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

Task is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Of is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

A is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite article is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one.

Schoolmaster is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Laboriously is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Prompting is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb.

And is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

Urging is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb.

An is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite article is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one.

Indolent is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Class is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Is is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

Worse is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Than is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

He is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

Who is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

Drives is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

Lazy is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Horses is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

Along is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

A is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite article is *an* or *a*, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any particular one.

Sandy is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Road is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The Honourable, the Corporation of the city, granted the use of the common council chamber, for holding the Convention; generously adding the privilege of occupying the rotunda, or the new court-room, if either would better suit the wishes of the committee."--*Journal of Literary Convention*, N. Y., 1830.

"When the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; the genus for a species, or a species for the genus; the singular number for the plural, or the plural for the singular; and, in general, when any thing less, or any thing more, is put for the precise object meant; the figure is called a Synecdoche."--See *Blair's Rhet.*, p. 141.

"The truth is, a representative, as an individual, is on a footing with other people; but, as a representative of a State, he is invested with a share of the sovereign authority, and is so far a governor of the people."--See *Webster's Essays*, p. 50.

"Knowledge is the fruit of mental labour--the food and the feast of the mind. In the pursuit of knowledge, the greater the excellence of the subject of inquiry, the deeper ought to be the interest, the more ardent the investigation, and the dearer to the mind the acquisition of the truth."--*Keith's Evidences*, p. 15.

"Canst thou, O partial Sleep! give thy repose To the wet seaboy in an hour so rude?"--*Shakspeare*.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"Every family has a master; (or a mistress--I beg the ladies' pardon;) a ship has a master; when a house is to be built, there is a master; when the highways are repairing, there is a master; every little school has a master: the continent is a great school; the boys are numerous, and full of roguish tricks; and there is no master. The boys in this great school play truant, and there is no person to chastise them."--See *Webster's Essays*, p. 128.

"A man who purposely rushes down a precipice and breaks his arm, has no right to say, that surgeons are an evil in society. A legislature may unjustly limit the surgeon's fee; but the broken arm must be healed, and a surgeon is the only man to restore it."--See *ib.*, p. 135.

"But what new sympathies sprung up immediately where the gospel prevailed! It was made the duty of the whole Christian community to provide for the stranger, the poor, the sick, the aged, the widow, and the orphan."--*M'Ilvaine's Evi.*, p. 408.

"In the English language, the same word is often employed both as a noun and as a verb; and sometimes as an adjective, and even as an adverb and a preposition also. Of this, *round* is an example."--See *Churchill's Gram.*, p. 24.

"The old oaken bucket, the iron-bound bucket, The moss-covered bucket, arose from the well."--*Woodworth*.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"Most of the objects in a natural landscape are beautiful, and some of them are grand: a flowing river, a spreading oak, a round hill, an extended plain, are delightful; and even a rugged rock, and a barren heath,

though in themselves disagreeable, contribute by contrast to the beauty of the whole."--See *Kames's El. of Crit.*, i, 185.

"An animal body is still more admirable, in the disposition of its several parts, and in their order and symmetry: there is not a bone, a muscle, a blood-vessel, a nerve, that hath not one corresponding to it on the opposite side; and the same order is carried through the most minute parts."--See *ib.*, i, 271. "The constituent parts of a plant, the roots, the stem, the branches, the leaves, the fruit, are really different systems, united by a mutual dependence on each other."--*Ib.*, i, 272.

"With respect to the form of this ornament, I observe, that a circle is a more agreeable figure than a square, a globe than a cube, and a cylinder than a parallelopipedon. A column is a more agreeable figure than a pilaster; and, for that reason, it ought to be preferred, all other circumstances being equal. An other reason concurs, that a column connected with a wall, which is a plain surface, makes a greater variety than a pilaster."--See *ib.*, ii, 352.

"But ah! what myriads claim the bended knee! Go, count the busy drops that swell the sea."--*Rogers*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING ARTICLES.

LESSON I.--ADAPT THE ARTICLES.

"Honour is an useful distinction in life."--*Milnes's Greek Grammar*, p. vii.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article *an* is used before *useful*, which begins with the sound of *yu*. But, according to a principle expressed on page 225th, "A is to be used whenever the following word begins with a consonant sound." Therefore, *an* should here be changed to *a*; thus, "Honour is *a* useful distinction in life."]

"No writer, therefore, ought to foment an humour of innovation."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 55. "Conjunctions require a situation between the things of which they form an union."--*Ib.*, p. 83. "Nothing is more easy than to mistake an *u* for an *a*."--*Tooke's Diversions*, i, 130. "From making so ill an use of our innocent expressions."--*Wm. Penn.* "To grant thee an heavenly and incorruptible crown of glory."--*Sewel's Hist., Ded.*, p. iv. "It in no wise follows, that such an one was able to predict."--*Ib.*, p. viii. "With an harmless patience they have borne most heavy oppressions,"--*Ib.*, p. x. "My attendance was to make me an happier man."--*Spect.*, No. 480. "On the wonderful nature of an human mind."--*Ib.*, 554. "I have got an hussy of a maid, who is most craftily given to this."--*Ib.*, No. 534. "Argus is said to have had an hundred eyes, some of which were always awake."--*Classic Stories*, p. 148. "Centiped, an hundred feet; centennial, consisting of a hundred years."--*Town's Analysis*, p. 19. "No good man, he thought, could be an heretic."--*Gilpin's Lives*, p. 72. "As, a Christian, an infidel, an heathen."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 50. "Of two or more words, usually joined by an hyphen."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 7. "We may consider the whole space of an hundred years as time present."--*BEATTIE: Murray's Gram.*, p. 69. "In guarding against such an use of meats and drinks."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 138. "Worship is an homage due from man to his Creator."--*Annual Monitor for 1836*. "Then, an eulogium on the deceased was pronounced."--*Grimshaw's U. S.*, p. 92. "But for Adam there was not found an help meet for him."--*Gen.*, ii, 20. "My days are consumed like smoke, and my bones are burned as an hearth."--*Psalms*, cii, 3. "A foreigner and an hired servant shall not eat thereof"--*Exod.*, xii, 45. "The hill of God is as the hill of Bashan; an high hill, as the hill of Bashan."--*Psalms*, lxxviii, 15. "But I do declare it to have been an holy offering, and such an one too as was to be once for all."--*Wm. Penn.* "An hope that does not make ashamed those that have it."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 15. "Where there is not an unity, we may exercise true charity."--*Ib.*, i, 96. "Tell me, if in any of these such an union can be found?"--*Brown's Estimate*, ii, 16.

"Such holy drops her tresses steeped, Though 'twas an hero's eye that weeped."--*Sir W. Scott*.

LESSON II.--INSERT ARTICLES.

"This veil of flesh parts the visible and invisible world."--*Sherlock*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article *the* is omitted before *invisible*, where the sense requires it. But, according to a suggestion on page 225th, "Articles should be inserted as often as the sense requires them." Therefore, *the* should be here supplied; thus, "This veil of flesh parts the visible and the invisible world."]

"The copulative and disjunctive conjunctions operate differently on the verb."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. ii, p. 286. "Every combination of a preposition and article with the noun."--*Ib.*, i, 44. "*Either* signifies, 'the one or the other;' *neither* imports *not either*, that is, 'not one nor the other.'"--*Ib.*, i, 56. "A noun of multitude may have a pronoun, or verb, agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 90. "Copulative conjunctions are, principally, and, as, both, because, for, if, that, then, since, &c."--See *ib.*, 28. "The two real genders are the masculine and feminine."--*Ib.*, 34. "In which a mute and liquid are represented by the same character, *th*."--*Music of Nature*, p. 481. "They said, John Baptist hath sent us unto thee."--*Luke*, vii, 20. "They indeed remember the names of abundance of places."--*Spect.*, No. 474. "Which created a great dispute between the young and old men."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. ii, p. 127. "Then shall be read the Apostles' or Nicene Creed."--*Com. Prayer*, p. 119. "The rules concerning the perfect tenses and supines of verbs are Lily's."--*King Henry's Gram.*, p. iv. "It was read by the high and the low, the learned and illiterate."--*Johnson's Life of Swift*. "Most commonly, both the pronoun and verb are understood."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. viii. "To signify the thick and slender enunciation of tone."--*Knight, on the Greek Alph.*, p. 9. "The difference between a palatal and guttural aspirate is very small."--*Ib.*, p. 12. "Leaving it to waver between the figurative and literal sense."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 154. "Whatever verb will not admit of both an active and passive signification."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 31. "*The* is often set before adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree."--*Ib.*, p. 15; *Kirkham's Gram.*, 66. "Lest any should fear the effect of such a change upon the present or succeeding age of writers."--*Fowle's Common School Gram.*, p. 5. "In all these measures, the accents are to be placed on even syllables; and every line is, in general, more melodious, as this rule is more strictly observed."--*L. Murray's Octavo Gram*, p. 256; *Jamieson's Rhet.*, 307. "How many numbers do nouns appear to have? Two, the singular and plural."--*Smith's New Gram.*, p. 8. "How many persons? Three persons--the first, second, and third."--*Ib.*, p. 10. "How many cases? Three--the nominative, possessive and objective."--*Ib.*, p. 12.

"Ah! what avails it me, the flocks to keep, Who lost my heart while I preserv'd sheep." POPE'S WORKS: *British Poets*, Vol. vi, p. 309: Lond., 1800.

LESSON III.--OMIT ARTICLES.

"The negroes are all the descendants of Africans."--*Morse's Geog.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article *the* before *descendants*, is useless to the construction, and injurious to the sense. But, according to a principle on page 225th, "Needless articles should be omitted; they seldom fail to pervert the sense." Therefore, *the* should be here omitted; thus, "The negroes are all *descendants* of Africans."]

"A Sybarite was applied as a term of reproach to a man of dissolute manners."--*Morse's Ancient Geog.*, p. 4. "The original signification of knave was a boy."--*Webster's El. Spell.*, p. 136. "The meaning of these will be explained, for the greater clearness and precision."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 58. "What Sort of a Noun is Man? A Noun Substantive common."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 166. "Is *what* ever used as three kinds of a pronoun?"--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 117. "They delighted in the having done it, as well as in the doing of it."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 344. "Both the parts of this rule are exemplified in the following

sentences."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 174. "He has taught them to hope for another and a better world."--*S. L. Knapp*. "It was itself only preparatory to a future, a better, and perfect revelation."--*Keith's Evid.*, p. 23. "Es then makes another and a distinct syllable."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 17. "The eternal clamours of a selfish and a factious people."--*Brown's Estimate*, i, 74. "To those whose taste in Elocution is but a little cultivated."--*Kirkham's Eloc.*, p. 65. "They considered they had but a Sort of a Gourd to rejoice in."--*Bennet's Memorial*, p. 333. "Now there was but one only such a bough, in a spacious and shady grove."--*Bacon's Wisdom*, p. 75. "Now the absurdity of this latter supposition will go a great way towards the making a man easy."--*Collier's Antoninus* p. 131. "This is true of the mathematics, where the taste has but little to do."--*Todd's Student's Manual*, p. 331. "To stand prompter to a pausing, yet a ready comprehension."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 251. "Such an obedience as the yoked and the tortured negro is compelled to yield to the whip of the overseer."--*Chalmers's Sermon*, p. 90. "For the gratification of a momentary and an unholy desire."--*Wayland's Mor. Sci.*, p. 288. "The body is slenderly put together; the mind a rambling sort of a thing."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 26. "The only nominative to the verb, is, *the officer*."--*Murray's Gram.*, ii, 22. "And though in the general it ought to be admitted, &c."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 376. "Philosophical writing admits of a polished, a neat, and elegant style."--*Ib.*, p. 367. "But notwithstanding this defect, Thomson is a strong and a beautiful describer."--*Ib.*, p. 405. "So should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved."--SHAK.: *Hen.* v.

"Who felt the wrong, or fear'd it, took the alarm, Appeal'd to Law, and Justice lent her arm."--*Pope*, p. 406.

LESSON IV.--CHANGE ARTICLES.

"To enable us to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word."--*Bucke's Gr.*, p. 52.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article *the* is used to limit the meaning of "repetition," or "too frequent repetition," where *a* would better suit the sense. But, according to a principle on page 225th, "The articles can seldom be put one for the other, without gross impropriety; and either is of course to be preferred to the other, as it better suits the sense." Therefore, "*the*" should be *a*, which, in this instance, ought to be placed after the adjective; thus, "To enable us to avoid *too frequent a repetition* of the same word."]

"The former is commonly acquired in the third part of the time."--*Burn's Gram.*, p. xi. "Sometimes the adjective becomes a substantive, and has another adjective joined to it: as, 'The chief good.'"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, i, 169. "An articulate sound is the sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech."--*Ib.*, i, 2; *Lowth's Gram.*, 2; *T. Smith's*, 5. "Tense is the distinction of time: there are six tenses."--*Maunder's Gram.*, p. 6. "In this case, the ellipsis of the last article would be improper."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 218. "Contrast has always the effect to make each of the contrasted objects appear in the stronger light."--*Ib.*, i, 349; *Blair's Rhet.*, p. 167. "These remarks may serve to shew the great importance of the proper use of the article."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 12; *Murray's*, i, 171. "'Archbishop Tillotson,' says an author of the History of England, 'died in this year.'"--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 107. "Pronouns are used instead of substantives, to prevent the too frequent repetition of them."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 22. "*That*, as a relative, seems to be introduced to save the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*."--*Ib.*, p. 23. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 28. "*That* is often used as a relative, to prevent the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 109; *L. Murray's*, i, 53; *Hiley's*, 84. "His knees smote one against an other."--*Logan's Sermons*. "They stand now on one foot, then on another."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 259. "The Lord watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another."--*Gen.*, xxxi, 49. "Some have enumerated ten [parts of speech], making a participle a distinct part."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 29. "Nemesis rides upon an Hart, because a Hart is a most lively Creature."--*Bacon's Wisdom*, p. 50. "The transition of the voice from one vowel of the diphthong to another."--*Wilson's Essay on Gram.*, p. 29. "So difficult it is to separate these two things from one another."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 92. "Without the material breach of any rule."--*Ib.*, p. 101. "The great source of a loose style, in opposition to precision, is the injudicious use of those words termed synonymous."--*Ib.*, p. 97. "The great source of a loose style, in opposition to precision, is the injudicious use of the words termed

synonymous."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 302. "Sometimes one article is improperly used for another."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 197.

"Satire of sense, alas! can Sporus feel? Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel?"--*Pope*, p. 396.

LESSON V.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"He hath no delight in the strength of an horse."--*Maturin's Sermons*, p. 311. "The head of it would be an universal monarch."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 98. "Here they confound the material and formal object of faith."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 57. "The Irish and Scottish Celtic are one language; the Welsh, Cornish, and Armorican, are another."--*Dr. Murray's Hist.*, Vol. ii, p. 316. "In an uniform and perspicuous manner."--*Ib.*, i, 49. "SCRIPTURE, *n.* Appropriately, and by way of distinction, the books of the Old and New Testament; the Bible."--*Webster's Dict.* "In two separate volumes, entitled the Old and the New Testaments."--*Wayland's Mor. Sci.*, p. 139. "The Scriptures of the Old and New Testament contain a revelation."--*Ib.* "Q has ever an u after it; which is not sounded in words derived from the French."--*Wilson's Essay*, p. 32. "What should we say of such an one? That he is regenerate? No."--*Hopkins's Prim. Ch.*, p. 22. "Some grammarians subdivide vowels into the simple and the compound."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 8. "Emphasis has been further distinguished into the weaker and stronger emphasis."--*Ib.*, i, 244. "Emphasis has also been divided into superior and the inferior emphasis."--*Ib.*, i, 245, "Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or nouns which they represent, in gender, number, and person."--*Merchant's Gram.*, pp. 86, 111, and 130. "The adverb *where*, is often improperly used, for the relative pronoun and preposition."--*Ib.*, 94. "The termination *ish* imports diminution, or lessening the quality."--*Ib.*, 79. "In this train all their verses proceed: the one half of the line always answering to the other."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 384. "To an height of prosperity and glory, unknown to any former age."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 352. "HWILC, who, which, such as, such an one, is declined as follows."--*Gwilt's Saxon Gram.*, p. 15. "When a vowel precedes y, an s only is required to form a plural."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 40. "He is asked what sort of a word each is, whether a primitive, derivative, or compound."--*British Gram.*, p. vii. "It is obvious, that neither the 2d, 3d, nor 4th chapter of Matthew is the first; consequently, there are not *four first* chapters."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 306. "Some thought, which a writer wants art to introduce in its proper place."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 109. "Groves and meadows are most pleasing in the spring."--*Ib.*, p. 207. "The conflict between the carnal and spiritual mind, is often long."--*Gurney's Port. Ev.*, p. 146. "A Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful."--*Burke's Title-page*.

"Silence, my muse! make not these jewels cheap, Exposing to the world too large an heap."--*Waller*, p. 113.

CHAPTER III.

--NOUNS.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned: as, *George, York, man, apple, truth.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--All words and signs taken *technically*, (that is, independently of their meaning, and merely as things spoken of,) are *nouns*; or, rather, are *things* read and construed *as nouns*; because, in such a use, they temporarily assume the *syntax* of nouns: as, "For this reason, I prefer *contemporary* to *cotemporary*."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 175; *Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 368. "I and J were formerly expressed by the same character; as were U and V."--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 3. "*Us* is a personal pronoun."--*Murray*. "*Th* has two sounds."--*Ib.* "The '*s*' cannot be a contraction of *his*, because '*s*' is put to *female* [feminine] nouns; as, *Woman's beauty, the Virgin's delicacy*."--*Dr. Johnson's Gram.* "*Their* and *theirs* are the possessives likewise of *they*, when *they* is the plural of *it*."--*Ib.* "Let B be a *now* or instant."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 103. "In such case, I say that the instant B is the end of the time A B."--*Ib.*, 103. "A is sometimes a noun: as, a great A."--*Todd's Johnson*. "Formerly *sp* was cast in a piece, as *st's* are now."--*Hist. of Printing*, 1770. "I write to others than he will perhaps include in his *we*."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 455. "Here are no fewer than eight *ands* in one sentence."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 112; *Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 319. "Within this wooden *O*;" i. e., circle.--*Shak.*

OBS. 2.--In parsing, the learner must observe the sense and use of each word, and class it accordingly. Many words commonly belonging to other parts of speech are occasionally used as nouns; and, since it is the manner of its use, that determines any word to be of one part of speech rather than of another, whatever word is used directly as a noun, must of course be parsed as such.

1. Adjectives made nouns: "The *Ancient* of days did sit."--*Bible*. "Of the *ancients*."--*Swift*. "For such *impertinents*."--*Steele*. "He is an *ignorant* in it."--*Id.* "In the luxuriance of an unbounded *picturesque*."--*Jamieson*. "A source of *the sublime*;" i. e., of sublimity.--*Burke*. "The vast *immense* of space:" i. e., immensity.--*Murray*. "There is none his *like*."--*Job*, xli, 33. "A *little* more than a *little*, is by *much* too *much*."--*Shakspeare*. "And gladly make *much* of that entertainment."--*Sidney*. "A covetous man makes *the most* of what he has."--*L'Estrange*. "It has done *enough* for me."--*Pope*. "He had *enough* to do."--*Bacon*.

"*All* withers here; who *most* possess, are losers by their gain, Stung by full proof, that bad at best, life's idle *all* is vain." --*Young*.

"Nor grudge I thee *the much* the Grecians give, Nor murm'ring take *the little* I receive." --*Dryden*.

2. Pronouns made nouns: "A love of seeing the *what* and *how* of all about him."--STORY'S LIFE OF FLAXMAN: *Pioneer*, Vol. i, p. 133. "The nameless *HE*, whose nod is Nature's birth."--*Young*, Night iv. "I was wont to load my *she* with knacks."--*Shak. Winter's Tale*. "Or any *he*, the proudest of thy sort."--*Shak.* "I am the happiest *she* in Kent."--*Steele*. "The *shes* of Italy."--*Shak.* "The *hes* in birds."--*Bacon*. "We should soon have as many *hes* and *shes* as the French."--*Cobbet's E. Gram.*, Para. 42. "If, for instance, we call a nation a *she*, or the sun a *he*."--*Ib.*, Para. 198. "When I see many *its* in a page, I always tremble for the writer."--*Ib.*, Para. 196. "Let those two questionary petitioners try to do this with their *whos* and their *whiches*."--SPECT: *Ash's Gr.*, p. 131.

"Such mortal drugs I have; but Mantua's law Is death to any *he* that utters them."--*Shak.*

3. Verbs made nouns: "Avaunt all attitude, and *stare*, and *start* theatric."--*Cowper*. "A *may-be* of mercy is sufficient."--*Bridge*. "Which *cuts* are reckoned among the fractures."--*Wiseman*. "The officer erred in granting

a *permit*."--"Feel darts and charms, *attracts* and flames."--*Hudibras*. "You may know by the falling off of the *come*, or sprout."--*Mortimer*. "And thou hast talk'd of *sallies* and *retires*."--*Shak*.

"For all that else did come, were sure to fail; Yet would he further none, but for *avail*."--*Spenser*.

4. Participles made nouns: "For the *producing* of real happiness."--*Crabb*. "For the *crying* of the poor and the *sighing* of the needy, I will arise."--*Bible*. "Surely the *churning* of milk bringeth forth butter, and the *wringing* of the nose bringeth forth blood; so the *forcing* of wrath bringeth forth strife."--*Prov.*, xxx, 33. "*Reading*, *writing*, and *ciphering*, are indispensable to civilized man."--"Hence was invented the distinction between *doing* and *permitting*."--*Calvin's Inst.*, p. 131. "Knowledge of the *past* comes next."--*Hermes*, p. 113. "I am my *beloved's*, and his desire is toward me."--*Sol. Song*, vii, 10. "Here's--a simple *coming-in* for one man."--*Shak*.

"What are thy rents? What are thy *comings-in*? O Ceremony, show me but thy worth."--*Id*.

5. Adverbs made nouns: "In these cases we examine the *why*, the *what*, and the *how* of things."--*L'Estrange*. "If a point or *now* were extended, each of them would contain within itself infinite other points or *nows*."--*Hermes*, p. 101. "The *why* is plain as way to parish church."--*Shak*. "'Tis Heaven itself that points out an *hereafter*."--*Addison*. "The dread of a *hereafter*."--*Fuller*. "The murmur of the deep *amen*."--*Sir W. Scott*. "For their *whereabouts* lieth in a mystery."--*Book of Thoughts*, p. 14. Better: "Their *whereabout* lieth," or, "Their *whereabouts* lie," &c.

"Bid them farewell, Cordelia, though unkind; Thou lovest *here*, a better *where* to find."--*Shak*.

6. Conjunctions made nouns: "The *if*, which is here employed, converts the sentence into a supposition."--*Blair's Rhet*. "Your *if* is the only peacemaker; much virtue is in *if*."--*Shak*.

"So his Lordship decreed with a grave solemn tone, Decisive and clear, without one *if* or *but*-- That whenever the Nose put his spectacles on, By daylight or candlelight--Eyes should be shut."--*Cowper*.

7. Prepositions made nouns: "O, not like me; for mine's beyond *beyond*."--*Shakspeare: Cymb.*, iii, 2. "I. e., her longing is *further than beyond*; beyond any thing that desire can be said to be beyond."--*Singer's Notes*. "You whirled them to the back of *beyont* to look at the auld Roman camp."--*Antiquary*, i, 37.

8. Interjections or phrases made nouns: "Come away from all the *lo-heres*! and *lo-theres*!"--*Sermon*. "Will cuts him short with a '*What then*?'--*Addison*. "With *hark* and *whoop*, and wild *halloo*."--*Scott*. "And made a *pish* at chance and sufferance."--*Shak*.

"A single look more marks th' internal wo, Than all the windings of the lengthen'd *oh*."--*Lloyd*.

CLASSES.

Nouns are divided into two general classes; *proper* and *common*. I. A *proper noun* is the name of some particular individual, or people, or group; as, *Adam*, *Boston*, the *Hudson*, the *Romans*, the *Azores*, the *Alps*.

II. A *common noun* is the name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or things; as, *Beast*, *bird*, *fish*, *insect*,--*creatures*, *persons*, *children*.

The particular classes, *collective*, *abstract*, and *verbal*, or *participial*, are usually included among common nouns. The name of a thing *sui generis* is also called common.

1. A *collective noun*, or *noun of multitude*, is the name of many individuals together; as, *Council*, *meeting*,

committee, flock.

2. An *abstract noun* is the name of some particular quality considered apart from its substance; as, *Goodness, hardness, pride, frailty.*

3. A *verbal* or *participial noun* is the name of some action, or state of being; and is formed from a verb, like a participle, but employed as a noun: as, "The *triumphing* of the wicked is short."--*Job*, xx, 5.

4. A thing *sui generis*, (i. e., *of its own peculiar kind*;) is something which is distinguished, not as an individual of a species, but as a sort by itself, without plurality in either the noun or the sort of thing; as, *Galvanism, music, geometry.*

OBS. 1.--Through the influence of an article, a proper name sometimes acquires the import of a common noun: as, "He is *the Cicero* of his age;" that is, *the great orator*. "Many a *fiery Alp*;" that is, *high volcanic mountain*. "Such is the following application of famous names; a Solomon for a wise man, a Croesus for a rich man, a Judas for a traitor, a Demosthenes for an orator, and a Homer for a poet."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 326.

"Consideration, like an angel, came, And whipp'd *th' offending Adam* out of him."--*Shak.*

OBS. 2.--A common noun, with the definite article before it, sometimes becomes proper: as, *The Park; the Strand; the Gharmel; the Downs; the United States.*

OBS. 3.--The common name of a thing or quality personified, often becomes proper; our conception of the object being changed by the figure of speech: as, "My power," said *Reason*, "is to advise, not to compel."--*Johnson*. "Fair *Peace* her olive branch extends." For such a word, the form of parsing should be like this: "*Peace* is a *common noun, personified proper*; of the third person, singular number, feminine gender, and nominative case." Here the construction of the word as a proper noun, and of the *feminine gender*, is the result of the personification, and contrary to the literal usage.

MODIFICATIONS.

Nouns have modifications of four kinds; namely, *Persons, Numbers, Genders, and Cases.*

PERSONS.

Persons, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish the speaker, the hearer, and the person or thing merely spoken of.

There are three persons; the *first*, the *second*, and the *third*.

The *first person* is that which denotes the speaker or writer; as, "*I Paul* have written it."

The *second person* is that which denotes the hearer, or the person addressed; as, "*Robert*, who did this?"

The *third person* is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of; as, "*James* loves his book."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The distinction of persons is founded on the different relations which the objects mentioned in any discourse may bear to the discourse itself. The speaker or writer, being the mover and maker of the communication, of course stands in the nearest or *first* of these relations. The hearer or hearers, being

personally present and directly addressed, evidently sustain the next or *second* of these relations; this relation is also that of the reader, when he peruses what is addressed to himself in print or writing. Lastly, whatsoever or whosoever is merely mentioned in the discourse, bears to it that more remote relation which constitutes the *third* person. The distinction of persons belongs to nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied, either by peculiarity of form or construction, or by inference from the principles of concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are like their subjects, in person.

OBS. 2.--Of the persons, numbers, genders, cases, and some other grammatical modifications of words, it should be observed that they belong not exclusively to any one part of speech, but jointly and equally, to two or three. Hence, it is necessary that our *definitions* of these things be such as will apply to each of them in full, or under all circumstances; for the definitions ought to be as general in their application as are the things or properties defined. Any person, number, gender, case, or other grammatical modification, is really but one and the same thing, in whatever part of speech it may be found. This is plainly implied in the very nature of every form of syntactical agreement; and as plainly contradicted in one half, and probably more, of the definitions usually given of these things.

OBS. 3.--Let it be understood, that *persons, in grammar*, are not *words*, but mere forms, relations, or modifications of words; that they are things, thus named by a *figure*; things of the neuter gender, and not living souls. But persons, in common parlance, or in ordinary life, are *intelligent beings*, of one or the other sex. These objects, different as they are in their nature, are continually confounded by the makers of English grammars: as, "The *first* person is *the person who speaks*."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 17. So Bicknell, of London: "The *first* person speaks of *himself*; as, *I John take thee Elizabeth*. The *second* person has the speech directed to *him*, and is supposed to be present; as, *Thou Harry art a wicked fellow*. The *third* person is spoken of, or described, and supposed to be *absent*; as, *That Thomas is a good man*. And in the same manner the plural pronouns are used, when more than one are spoken of."--*Bicknell's Grammatical Wreath*, p. 50. "The person speaking is the first person; the person spoken to, the second; and the person spoken of, the third."--*Russell's Gram.*, p. 16. "The first person is the speaker."--*Parker & Fox's Gram.*, Part i, p. 6. "Person is that, which distinguishes a noun, that speaks, one spoken to, or one spoken about."--*S. B. Hall's Gram.*, p. 6. "A noun that speaks!" A noun "spoken to!" If ever one of Father Hall's nouns shall speak for itself, or answer when "spoken to," will it not reprove him? And how can the *first* person be "the person WHO speaks," when every word of this phrase is of the *third* person? Most certainly, *it is not* HE, nor any one of his sort. If any body can boast of being "*the first person in grammar*," I pray, *Who* is it? Is it not *I*, even *I*? Many grammarians say so. But nay: such authors know not what the first person in grammar is. The Rev. Charles Adams, with infinite absurdity, makes the three persons in grammar to be never any thing but *three nouns*, which hold a confabulation thus: "Person is defined to be *that* which distinguishes a *noun that speaks, one spoken to, or one spoken of*. The *noun* that speaks [,] is the first person; as, *I, James*, was present. The *noun* that is spoken to, is the second person; as, *James*, were you present? The *noun* that is spoken of is the third person; as, *James* was present."--*Adams's System of English Gram.*, p. 9. What can be a greater blunder, than to call the first person of a verb, of a pronoun, or even of a noun, "*the noun that speaks*?" What can be more absurd than are the following assertions? "*Nouns are in the first person when speaking*. Nouns are *of* the second person when *addressed* or *spoken to*."--*O. C. Felton's Gram.*, p. 9.

OBS. 4.--An other error, scarcely less gross than that which has just been noticed, is the very common one of identifying the three grammatical persons with certain *words*, called personal pronouns: as, "*I* is the first person, *thou* the second, *he, she* or *it*, the third."--*Smith's Productive Gram.*, p. 53. "*I* is the first person, singular. *Thou* is the second person, singular. *He, she*, or *it*, is the third person, singular. *We* is the first person, plural. *Ye* or *you* is the second person, plural. *They* is the third person, plural."--*L. Murray's Grammar*, p. 51; *Ingersoll's*, 54; *D. Adams's*, 37; *A. Flint's*, 18; *Kirkham's*, 98; *Cooper's*, 34; *T. H. Miller's*, 26; *Hull's*, 21; *Frost's*, 13; *Wilcox's*, 18; *Bacon's*, 19; *Alger's*, 22; *Maltby's*, 19; *Perley's*, 15; *S. Putnam's*, 22. Now there is no more propriety in affirming, that "*I is the first person*," than in declaring that *me, we, us, am, ourselves, we think, I write*, or any other word or phrase of the first person, *is* the first person. Yet Murray has given us no other definitions or explanations of the persons than the foregoing erroneous assertions; and, if I mistake not,

all the rest who are here named, have been content to define them only as he did. Some others, however, have done still worse: as, "There are *three* personal pronouns; so called, because they denote the three persons, *who* are the subjects of a discourse, viz. 1st. *I*, *who* is the person *speaking*; 2d *thou*, *who* is spoken to; 3d *he, she, or it*, *who* is spoken of, and their plurals, *we, ye or you, they*."--*Bingham's Accidence*, 20th Ed., p. 7. Here the two kinds of error which I have just pointed out, are jumbled together. It is impossible to write *worse English* than this! Nor is the following much better: "Of the personal pronouns there are five, viz. *I*, in the first person, speaking; *Thou*, in the second person, spoken to; and *He, she, it*, in the third person, spoken of."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 25.

OBS. 5.--In *written* language, the *first person* denotes the writer or author; and the *second*, the reader or person addressed: except when the writer describes not himself, but some one else, as uttering to an other the words which he records. This exception takes place more particularly in the writing of dialogues and dramas; in which the first and second persons are abundantly used, not as the representatives of the author and his reader, but as denoting the fictitious speakers and hearers that figure in each scene. But, in discourse, the grammatical persons may be changed without a change of the living subject. In the following sentence, the three grammatical persons are all of them used with reference to one and the same individual: "Say ye of *Him* whom the Father hath sanctified and sent into the world, *Thou blasphemest*, because *I said I am* the Son of God?"--*John*, x, 36.

OBS. 6.--The speaker seldom refers to himself *by name*, as the speaker; and, of the objects which there is occasion to name in discourse, but comparatively few are such as can ever be supposed to speak. Consequently, *nouns* are rarely used in the first person; and when they do assume this relation, a pronoun is commonly associated with them: as, "*I John*,"--"*We Britons*." These words I conceive to agree throughout, in person, number, gender, and case; though it must be confessed, that agreement like this is not always required between words in apposition. But some grammarians deny the first person to nouns altogether; others, with much more consistency, ascribe it; [140] while very many are entirely silent on the subject. Yet it is plain that both the doctrine of concords, and the analogy of general grammar, require its admission. The reason of this may be seen in the following examples: "*Themistocles ad te veni*." "*I Themistocles have come to you*."--*Grant's Latin Gram.*, p. 72. "*Adsum Troius Æneas*."--*Virgil*. "*Romulus Rex regia arma offero*."--*Livy*. "*Annibal peto pacem*."--*Id*. "*Callopius recensui*."--*See Terence's Comedies, at the end*. "*Paul, an apostle, &c., unto Timothy, my own son in the faith*."--*1 Tim.*, i, 2. Again, if the word *God* is of the second person, in the text, "*Thou, God, seest me*," why should any one deny that *Paul* is of the first person, in this one? "*I Paul have written it*."--*Philemon*, 19. Or this? "The salutation by the hand of *me Paul*."--*Col.*, iv, 18. And so of the plural: "Of *you builders*."--*Acts*, iv, 11. "Of *us the apostles*."--*2 Pet.*, iii, 2. How can it be pretended, that, in the phrase, "*I Paul*," *I* is of the first person, as denoting the speaker, and *Paul*, of some other person, as denoting something or somebody that is *not* the speaker? Let the admirers of Murray, Kirkham, Ingersoll, R. C. Smith, Comly, Greenleaf, Parkhurst, or of any others who teach this absurdity, answer.

OBS. 7.--As, in the direct application of what are called Christian names, there is a kind of familiarity, which on many occasions would seem to indicate a lack of proper respect; so in a frequent and familiar use of the second person, as it is the placing of an other in the more intimate relation of the hearer, and one's self in that of the speaker, there is a sort of assumption which may seem less modest and respectful than to use the third person. In the following example, the patriarch Jacob uses both forms; applying the term *servant* to himself, and to his brother Esau the term *lord*: "Let *my lord*, I pray *thee*, pass over before *his servant*: and *I* will lead on softly."--*Gen.*, xxxiii, 14. For when a speaker or writer does not choose to declare himself in the *first* person, or to address his hearer or reader in the *second*, he speaks of both or either in the *third*. Thus Moses relates what *Moses* did, and Cæsar records the achievements of *Cæsar*. So Judah humbly beseeches Joseph: "Let *thy servant* abide in stead of the lad a bondman to *my lord*."--*Gen.*, xlv, 33. And Abraham reverently intercedes with God: "Oh! let not *the Lord* be angry, and I will speak."--*Gen.*, xviii, 30. And the Psalmist prays: "*God* be merciful unto us, and bless us; and cause *his* face to shine upon us."--*Ps.*, lxxvii, 1. So, on more common occasions:--

"As will the rest, so *willeth Winchester*."--*Shak*.

"Richard of York, how *fares* our dearest *brother*?"--*Id.*[141]

OBS. 8.--When inanimate things are spoken to, they are *personified*; and their names are put in the second person, because by the figure the objects are *supposed* to be capable of hearing: as, "What ailed thee, *O thou sea*, that thou fleddest? *thou Jordan*, that thou wast driven back? *Ye mountains*, that ye skipped like rams; and *ye little hills*, like lambs? Tremble, *thou earth*, at the presence of the Lord, at the presence of the God of Jacob."--*Psalms*, cxiv, 5-7.

NUMBERS.

Numbers, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish unity and plurality.

There are two numbers; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular number* is that which denotes but one; as, "The *boy learns*."

The *plural number* is that which denotes more than one; as, "The *boys learn*."

The plural number of *nouns* is regularly formed by adding *s* or *es* to the singular: as, *book, books; box, boxes; sofa, sofas; hero, heroes*.

When the singular ends in a sound which will unite with that of *s*, the plural is generally formed by adding *s* only, and the number of syllables is not increased: as, *pen, pens; grape, grapes*.

But when the sound of *s* cannot be united with that of the primitive word, the regular plural adds *s* to final *e*, and *es* to other terminations, and forms a separate syllable: as, *page, pages; fox, foxes*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The distinction of numbers serves merely to show whether we speak of one object, or of more. In some languages, as the Greek and the Arabic, there is a *dual* number, which denotes *two*, or a *pair*; but in ours, this property of words, or class of modifications, extends no farther than to distinguish unity from plurality, and plurality from unity. It belongs to nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied, either by peculiarity of form, or by inference from the principles of concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are like their subjects, in number.

OBS. 2.--The most common way of forming the plural of English nouns, is that of simply adding to them an *s*; which, when it unites with a sharp consonant, is always sharp, or hissing; and when it follows a vowel or a flat mute, is generally flat, like *z*: thus, in the words, *ships, skiffs, pits, rocks, depths, lakes, gulfs*, it is sharp; but in *seas, lays, rivers, hills, ponds, paths, rows, webs, flags*, it is flat. The terminations which always make the regular plural in *es*, with increase of syllables, are twelve; namely, *ce, ge, ch* soft, *che* soft, *sh, ss, s, se, x, xe, z*, and *ze*: as in *face, faces; age, ages; torch, torches; niche, niches; dish, dishes; kiss, kisses; rebus, rebuses; lens, lenses; chaise, chaises; corpse, corpses; nurse, nurses; box, boxes; axe, axes; phiz, phizzes; maze, mazes*. All other endings readily unite in sound either with the sharp or with the flat *s*, as they themselves are sharp or flat; and, to avoid an increase of syllables, we allow the final *e* mute to remain mute after that letter is added: thus, we always pronounce as monosyllables the words *babes, blades, strifes, tithes, yokes, scales, names, canes, ropes, shores, plates, doves*, and the like.

OBS. 3.--Though the irregular plurals of our language appear considerably numerous when brought together, they are in fact very few in comparison with the many thousands that are perfectly simple and regular. In

some instances, however, usage is various in writing, though uniform in speech; an unsettlement peculiar to certain words that terminate in vowels: as, *Rabbis*, or *rabbies*; *octavos*, or *octavoes*; *attornies*, or *attorneys*. There are also some other difficulties respecting the plurals of nouns, and especially respecting those of foreign words; of compound terms; of names and titles; and of words redundant or deficient in regard to the numbers. What is most worthy of notice, respecting all these puzzling points of English grammar, is briefly contained in the following observations.

OBS. 4.--It is a general rule of English grammar, that all singular nouns ending with a vowel preceded by an other vowel, shall form the plural by simply assuming an *s*: as, *Plea, pleas*; *idea, ideas*; *hernia, hernias*; *bee, bees*; *lie, lies*; *foe, foes*; *shoe, shoes*; *cue, cues*; *eye, eyes*; *folio, folios*; *bamboo, bamboos*; *cuckoo, cuckoos*; *embryo, embryos*; *bureau, bureaus*; *purlieu, purlieus*; *sou, sous*; *view, views*; *straw, straws*; *play, plays*; *key, keys*; *medley, medleys*; *viceroy, viceroys*; *guy, guys*. To this rule, the plurals of words ending in *quy*, as *alloquies, colloquies, obloquies, soliloquies*, are commonly made exceptions; because many have conceived that the *u*, in such instances, is a mere appendage to the *q*, or is a consonant having the power of *w*, and not a vowel forming a diphthong with the *y*. All other deviations from the rule, as *monies* for *moneys*, *allies* for *alleys*, *vallies* for *valleys*, *chimnies* for *chimneys*, &c., are now usually condemned as errors. See Rule 12th for Spelling.

OBS. 5.--It is also a general principle, that nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, change the *y* into *i*, and add *es* for the plural, without increase of syllables: as, *fly, flies*; *ally, allies*; *city, cities*; *colony, colonies*. So nouns in *i*, (so far as we have any that are susceptible of a change of number,) form the plural regularly by assuming *es*: as, *alkali, alkalies*; *salmagundi, salinagundies*. Common nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, are numerous; and none of them deviate from the foregoing rule of forming the plural: thus, *duty, duties*. The termination added is *es*, and the *y* is changed into *i*, according to the general principle expressed in Rule 11th for Spelling. But, to this principle, or rule, some writers have supposed that *proper nouns* were to be accounted exceptions. And accordingly we sometimes find such names made plural by the mere addition of an *s*; as, "How come the *Pythagoras*'s, [it should be, *the Pythagorases*,] the *Aristotles*, the *Tullys*, the *Livys*, to appear, even to us at this distance, as stars of the first magnitude in the vast fields of ether?"--*Burgh's Dignity*, Vol. i, p. 131. This doctrine, adopted from some of our older grammars, I was myself, at one period, inclined to countenance; (see *Institutes of English Grammar*, p. 33, at the bottom;) but further observation having led me to suspect, there is more *authority* for changing the *y* than for retaining it, I shall by-and-by exhibit some examples of this change, and leave the reader to take his choice of the two forms, or principles.

OBS. 6.--The vowel *a*, at the end of a word, (except in the questionable term *huzza*, or when silent, as in *guinea*,) has always its Italian or middle sound, as heard in the interjection *aha!* a sound which readily unites with that of *s* flat, and which ought, in deliberate speech, to be carefully preserved in plurals from this ending: as, *Canada, the Canadas*; *cupola, cupolas*; *comma, commas*; *anathema, anathemas*. To pronounce the final *a* flat, as *Africay* for *Africa*, is a mark of vulgar ignorance.

OBS. 7.--The vowel *e* at the end of a word, is generally silent; and, even when otherwise, it remains single in plurals from this ending; the *es*, whenever the *e* is vocal, being sounded *eez*, or like the word *ease*: as, *apostrophe, apostrophes*; *epitome, epitomes*; *simile, similes*. This class of words being anomalous in respect to pronunciation, some authors have attempted to reform them, by changing the *e* to *y* in the singular, and writing *ies* for the plural: as, *apostrophy, apostrophies*; *epitomy, epitomies*; *simily, similies*. A reformation of some sort seems desirable here, and this has the advantage of being first proposed; but it is not extensively adopted, and perhaps never will be; for the vowel sound in question, is not exactly that of the terminations *y* and *ies*, but one which seems to require *ee*--a stronger sound than that of *y*, though similar to it.

OBS. 8.--For nouns ending in open *o* preceded by a consonant, the regular method of forming the plural seems to be that of adding *es*; as in *bilboes, umboes, buboes, calicoes, moriscoes, gambadoes, barricadoes, fumadoes, carbonadoes, tornadoes, bravadoes, torpedoes, innuendoes, viragoes, mangoes, embargoes, cargoes, potargoes, echoes, buffaloes, volcanoes, heroes, negroes, potatoes, manifestoes, mulattoes, stilettoes*,

woes. In words of this class, the *e* appears to be useful as a means of preserving the right sound of the *o*; consequently, such of them as are the most frequently used, have become the most firmly fixed in this orthography. In practice, however, we find many similar nouns very frequently, if not uniformly, written with *s* only; as, *cantos*, *juntos*, *grottos*, *solos*, *quartos*, *octavos*, *duodecimos*, *tyros*. So that even the best scholars seem to have frequently doubted which termination they ought to regard as the *regular* one. The whole class includes more than one hundred words. Some, however, are seldom used in the plural; and others, never. *Wo* and *potato* are sometimes written *woe* and *potatoe*. This may have sprung from a notion, that such as have the *e* in the plural, should have it also in the singular. But this principle has never been carried out; and, being repugnant to derivation, it probably never will be. The only English appellatives that are established in *oe*, are the following fourteen: seven monosyllables, *doe*, *foe*, *roe*, *shoe*, *sloe*, *soe*, *toe*; and seven longer words, *rockdoe*, *aloe*, *felloe*, *canoe*, *misletoe*, *tiptoe*, *diploe*. The last is pronounced *dip'-lo-e* by Worcester; but Webster, Bolles, and some others, give it as a word of two syllables only.[142]

OBS. 9.--Established exceptions ought to be enumerated and treated as exceptions; but it is impossible to remember how to write some scores of words, so nearly alike as *fumadoes* and *grenados*, *stilettoes* and *palmettos*, if they are allowed to differ in termination, as these examples do in Johnson's Dictionary. Nay, for lack of a rule to guide his pen, even Johnson himself could not remember the orthography of the common word *mangoes* well enough to *copy* it twice without inconsistency. This may be seen by his example from King, under the words *mango* and *potargo*. Since, therefore, either termination is preferable to the uncertainty which must attend a division of this class of words between the two; and since *es* has some claim to the preference, as being a better index to the sound; I shall make no exceptions to the principle, that common nouns ending in *o* preceded by a consonant take *es* for the plural. Murray says, "*Nouns which end in o have sometimes es added, to form the plural; as, cargo, echo, hero, negro, manifesto, potato, volcano, wo: and sometimes only s; as, folio, nuncio, punctilio, seraglio.*"--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 40. This amounts to nothing, unless it is to be inferred from his *examples*, that others like them in form are to take *s* or *es* accordingly; and this is what I teach, though it cannot be said that Murray maintains the principle.

OBS. 10.--Proper names of *individuals*, strictly used as such, have no plural. But when several persons of the same name are spoken of, the noun becomes in some degree common, and admits of the plural form and an article; as, "*The Stuarts, the Cæsars.*"--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 41. These, however, may still be called *proper nouns*, in parsing; because they are only inflections, peculiarly applied, of certain names which are indisputably such. So likewise when such nouns are used to denote character: as, "*Solomons*, for wise men; *Neros*, for tyrants."--*Ib.* "Here we see it becomes a doubt which of the two *Herculeses*, was the monster-queller."--*Notes to Pope's Dunciad*, iv, 492. The proper names of *nations*, *tribes*, and *societies*, are generally plural; and, except in a direct address, they are usually construed with the definite article: as, "*The Greeks, the Athenians, the Jews, the Jesuits.*" But such words may take the singular form with the indefinite article, as often as we have occasion to speak of an individual of such a people; as, "*A Greek, an Athenian, a Jew, a Jesuit.*" These, too, may be called *proper nouns*; because they are national, patrial, or tribal names, each referring to some place or people, and are not appellatives, which refer to actual sorts or kinds, not considered local.

OBS. 11.--Proper names, when they form the plural, for the most part form it regularly, by assuming *s* or *es* according to the termination: as, *Carolina*, the *Carolinas*; *James*, the *Jameses*. And those which are only or chiefly plural, have, or ought to have, such terminations as are proper to distinguish them as plurals, so that the form for the singular may be inferred: as, "*The Tungaoses occupy nearly a third of Siberia.*"--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 379. Here the singular must certainly be *a Tungaose*. "The principal tribes are the *Pawnees*, the *Arrapahoes*, and the *Cumanches*, who roam through the regions of the Platte, the Arkansaw, and the Norte."--*Ib.*, p. 179. Here the singulars may be supposed to be *a Pawnee*, *an Arrapaho*, and *a Cumanche*. "The Southern or Floridian family comprised the *Cherokees*, *Creeks*, *Chickasaws*, *Choctaws*, *Seminoles*, and *Natchez*."--*Ib.*, p. 179. Here all are regular plurals, except the last; and this probably ought to be *Natchezes*, but Jefferson spells it *Natches*, the singular of which I do not know. Sometimes foreign words or foreign terminations have been improperly preferred to our own; which last are more intelligible, and therefore better:

as, *Esquimaux*, to *Esquimaus*; *Knistenaux*, to *Knistenaus*, or *Crees*; *Sioux*, to *Sious*, or *Dahcotahs*; *Iroquois*, to *Iroquoys*, or *Hurons*.

OBS. 12.--Respecting the plural of nouns ending in *i*, *o*, *u*, or *y*, preceded by a consonant, there is in present usage much uncertainty. As any vowel sound may be uttered with an *s*, many writers suppose these letters to require for plurals strictly regular, the *s* only; and to take *es* occasionally, by way of exception. Others, (perhaps with more reason,) assume, that the most usual, regular, and proper endings for the plural, in these instances, are *ies*, *oes*, and *ues*: as, *alkali*, *alkalies*; *halo*, *haloes*; *gnu*, *gnues*; *enemy*, *enemies*. This, I think, is right for common nouns. How far proper names are to be made exceptions, because they are proper names, is an other question. It is certain that some of them are not to be excepted: as, for instance, *Alleghany*, the *Alleghanies*; *Sicily*, the *Two Sicilies*; *Ptolemy*, the *Ptolemies*; *Jehu*, the *Jehues*. So the names of tribes; as, The *Missouries*, the *Otoes*, the *Winnebagoes*. Likewise, the *houries* and the *harpies*; which words, though not strictly proper names, are often written with a capital as such. Like these are *rabbies*, *cadies*, *mufties*, *sophies*, from which some writers omit the *e*. Johnson, Walker, and others, write *gipsy* and *gipsies*; Webster, now writes *Gipsey* and *Gipseys*; Worcester prefers *Gypsy*, and probably *Gypsies*: Webster once wrote the plural *gypsies*; (see his *Essays*, p. 333;) and Johnson cites the following line:--

"I, near yon stile, three sallow *gypsies* met."--*Gay*.

OBS. 13.--Proper names in *o* are commonly made plural by *s* only. Yet there seems to be the same reason for inserting the *e* in these, as in other nouns of the same ending; namely, to prevent the *o* from acquiring a short sound. "I apprehend," says Churchill, "it has been from an erroneous notion of proper names being unchangeable, that some, feeling the necessity of obviating this mispronunciation, have put an apostrophe between the *o* and the *s* in the plural, in stead of an *e*; writing *Cato's*, *Nero's*; and on a similar principle, *Ajax's*, *Venus's*; thus using the possessive case singular for the nominative or objective plural. Harris says very properly, 'We have our *Marks* and our *Antonies*: *Hermes*, B. 2, Ch. 4; for which those would have given us *Mark's* and *Antony's*."--*New Gram.*, p. 206. Whatever may have been the motive for it, such a use of the apostrophe is a gross impropriety. "In this quotation, ['From the *Socrates's*, the *Plato's*, and the *Confucius's* of the age,'] the proper names should have been pluralized like common nouns; thus, From the *Socrateses*, the *Platoes*, and the *Confuciuses* of the age."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 126; *Bullions's*, 142.

OBS. 14.--The following are some examples of the plurals of proper names, which I submit to the judgement of the reader, in connexion with the foregoing observations: "The Romans had their plurals *Marci* and *Antonii*, as we in later days have our *Marks* and our *Anthonies*."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 40. "There seems to be more reason for such plurals, as the *Ptolemies*, *Scipios*, *Catos*: or, to instance in more modern names, the *Howards*, *Pelhams*, and *Montagues*."--*Ib.*, 40. "Near the family seat of the *Montgomeries* of Coil's-field."--*Burns's Poems*, Note, p. 7. "Tryphon, a surname of one of the *Ptolemies*."--*Lempriere's Dict.* "Sixteen of the *Tuberos*, with their wives and children, lived in a small house."--*Ib.* "What are the *Jupiters* and *Junos* of the heathens to such a God?"--*Burgh's Dignity*, i, 234. "Also when we speak of more than one person of the same name; as, the *Henries*, the *Edwards*."--*Cobbetts E. Gram.*, ¶ 40. "She was descended from the *Percies* and the *Stanleys*."--*Loves of the Poets*, ii, 102. "Naples, or the *Two Sicilies*."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 273. The word *India*, commonly makes the plural *Indies*, not *Indias*; and, for *Ajaxes*, the poets write *Ajaces*. But Richard Hiley says, "Proper nouns, when pluralized, follow the same rules as common nouns; as, *Venus*, the *Venuses*; *Ajax*, the *Ajaxes*; *Cato*, the *Catoes*; *Henry*, the *Henries*."--*Hiley's E. Gram.*, p. 18.

"He ev'ry day from King to King can walk, Of all our *Harries*, all our *Edwards* talk."--*Pope's Satires*, iv.

OBS. 15.--When a name and a title are to be used together in a plural sense, many persons are puzzled to determine whether the name, or the title, or both, should be in the plural form. For example--in speaking of two young ladies whose family name is Bell--whether to call them the *Miss Bells*, the *Misses Bell*, or the *Misses Bells*. To an inquiry on this point, a learned editor, who prefers the last, lately gave his answer thus: "There are two young ladies; of course they are 'the Misses.' Their name is Bell; of course there are two

'Bells.' Ergo, the correct phrase, in speaking of them, is--'the Misses Bells.'--*N. Y. Com. Adv.* This puts the words in apposition; and there is no question, that it is *formally* correct. But still it is less agreeable to the ear, less frequently heard, and less approved by grammarians, than the first phrase; which, if we may be allowed to assume that the two words may be taken together as a sort of compound, is correct also. Dr. Priestley says, "When a name has a title prefixed to it, as *Doctor, Miss, Master, &c.*, the plural termination affects only the latter of the two words; as, 'The two *Doctor Nettletons*'--'The two *Miss Thomsons*;' though a strict analogy would plead for the alteration of the former word, and lead us to say, 'The two *Doctors Nettleton*'--'The two *Misses Thomson*.'"--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 59. The following quotations show the opinions of some other grammarians: "Two or more nouns in concordance, and forming one complex name, or a name and a title, have the plural termination annexed to the last only; as, 'The *Miss Smiths*'--'The three *Doctor Simpsons*'--'The two *Master Wigginses*.' With a few exceptions, and those not parallel to the examples just given, we almost uniformly, in complex names, confine the inflection to the last or the latter noun."--*Dr. Crombie*. The foregoing opinion from Crombie, is quoted and seconded by Maunder, who adds the following examples: "Thus, Dr. Watts: 'May there not be *Sir Isaac Newtons* in every science?'--'You must not suppose that the world is made up of *Lady Aurora Granvilles*.'"--*Maunder's Gram.*, p. 2.

OBS. 16.--These writers do not seem to accord with W. L. Stone, the editor above quoted, nor would his reasoning apply well to several of their examples. Yet both opinions are right, if neither be carried too far. For when the words are in apposition, rather than in composition, the first name or title must be made plural, if it refers to more than one: as, "The *Misses Bell and Brown*,"--"The *Messrs. Lambert and Son*,"--"The *Lords Calthorpe and Erskine*,"--"The *Lords Bishops* of Durham and St. David's,"--"The *Knights Hospitalers*,"--"The *Knights Templars*,"--"The *Knights Baronets*." But this does not prove the other construction, which varies the last word only, to be irregular; and, if it did, there is abundant authority for it. Nor is that which varies the first only, to be altogether condemned, though Dr. Priestley is unquestionably wrong respecting the "*strict analogy*" of which he speaks. The joining of a plural title to one singular noun, as, "*Misses Roy*,"--"The *Misses Bell*,"--"The two *Misses Thomson*," produces a phrase which is in itself the *least analogous* of the three; but, "*The Misses Jane and Eliza Bell*," is a phrase which nobody perhaps will undertake to amend. It appears, then, that each of these forms of expression may be right in some cases; and each of them may be wrong, if improperly substituted for either of the others.

OBS. 17.--The following statements, though erroneous in several particulars, will show the opinions of some other grammarians, upon the foregoing point: "Proper nouns have the plural only when they refer to a race or family; as, *The Campbells*; or to several persons of the same name; as, *The eight Henrys*; *the two Mr. Sells*; *the two Miss Browns*; or, without the numeral, *the Miss Roys*. But in addressing letters in which both or all are equally concerned, and also when the names are different, we pluralize the *title*, (Mr. or Miss,) and write, *Misses Brown*; *Misses Roy*; *Messrs.* (for *Messieurs*, Fr.) Guthrie and Tait."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 7. "If we wish to distinguish the *unmarried* from the *married* Howards, we call them *the Miss Howards*. If we wish to distinguish these Misses from other Misses, we call them the *Misses Howard*."--*Fowle's Gram.* "To distinguish several persons of the same name and family from others of a different name and family, the *title*, and not the *proper name*, is varied to express the distinction; as, the *Misses Story*, the *Messrs. Story*. The elliptical meaning is, the Misses and Messrs, *who are named* Story. To distinguish *unmarried* from *married* ladies, the *proper name*, and not the *title*, should be varied; as, the *Miss Clarks*. When we mention more than one person of different names, the title should be expressed before each; as, *Miss Burns*, *Miss Parker*, and *Miss Hopkinson*, were present."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 79. In the following examples from Pope's Works, the last word only is varied: "He paragon himself to two *Lord Chancellors* for law."--Vol. iii, p. 61. "Yearly panegyrics upon the *Lord Mayors*."--*Ib.*, p. 83.

"Whence hapless Monsieur much complains at Paris Of wrongs from Duchesses and *Lady Maries*."--*Dunciad*, B. ii, L 135.

OBS. 18.--The following eleven nouns in *f*, change the *f* into *v* and assume *es* for the plural: *sheaf*, *sheaves*; *leaf*, *leaves*; *loaf*, *loaves*; *leaf*, *beeves*; *thief*, *thieves*; *calf*, *calves*; *half*, *halves*; *elf*, *elves*; *shelf*, *shelves*; *self*,

selves; wolf, wolves. Three others in *fe* are similar: *life, lives; knife, knives; wife, wives.* These are specific exceptions to the general rule for plurals, and not a series of examples coming under a particular rule; for, contrary to the instructions of nearly all our grammarians, there are more than twice as many words of the same endings, which take *s* only: as, *chiefs, kerchiefs, handkerchiefs, mischiefs, beliefs, misbeliefs, reliefs, bassreliefs, briefs, feifs, griefs, clefs, semibreves, oafs, waifs, coifs, gulfs, hoofs, roofs, proofs, reproofs, woofs, califs, turfs, scarfs, dwarfs, wharfs, fifes, strifes, safes.* The plural of *wharf* is sometimes written *wharves*; but perhaps as frequently, and, if so, more accurately, *wharfs.* Examples and authorities: "*Wharf, wharfs.*"--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 80; *Ward's*, 24; *Goar's*, 26; *Lennie's*, 7; *Bucke's*, 39. "There were not in London so many *wharfs*, or *keys*, for the landing of merchants' goods."--CHILD: in *Johnson's Dict.* "The *wharfs* of Boston are also worthy of notice."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 37. "Between banks thickly clad with dwelling-houses, manufactories, and *wharfs.*"--*London Morn. Chronicle*, 1833. Nouns in *ff* take *s* only; as, *skiffs, stuffs, gaffs.* But the plural of *staff* has hitherto been generally written *staves*; a puzzling and useless anomaly, both in form and sound: for all the compounds of *staff* are regular; as, *distaffs, whipstuffs, tipstuffs, flagstuffs, quarterstuffs*; and *staves* is the regular plural of *stave*, a word now in very common use with a different meaning, as every cooper and every musician knows. *Staffs* is now sometimes used; as, "I saw the husbandmen bending over their *staffs.*"--*Lord Carnarvon.* "With their *staffs* in their hands for very age."--*Hope of Israel*, p. 16. "To distinguish between the two *staffs.*"--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 43. In one instance, I observe, a very excellent scholar has written *selves* for *selves*, but the latter is the established plural of *self*:

"Self-love would cease, or be dilated, when We should behold as many *selves* as men."--*Waller's Poems*, p. 55.

OBS. 19.--Of nouns purely English, the following thirteen are the only simple words that form distinct plurals not ending in *s* or *es*, and four of these are often regular: *man, men; woman, women; child, children; brother, brethren or brothers; ox, oxen; goose, geese; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; louse, lice; mouse, mice; die, dice or dies; penny, pence or pennies; pea, pease or peas.* The word *brethren* is now applied only to fellow-members of the same church or fraternity; for sons of the same parents we always use *brothers*; and this form is sometimes employed in the other sense. *Dice* are spotted cubes for gaming; *dies* are stamps for coining money, or for impressing metals. *Pence*, as *six pence*, refers to the amount of money in value; *pennies* denotes the coins themselves. "We write *peas*, for two or more individual seeds; but *pease*, for an indefinite number in quantity or bulk."--*Webster's Dict.* This last anomaly, I think, might well enough "be spared; the sound of the word being the same, and the distinction to the eye not always regarded." Why is it not as proper, to write an order for "a bushel of *peas*," as for "a bushel of *beans*?" "*Peas* and *beans* may be severed from the ground before they be quite dry."--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, ¶ 31.

OBS. 20.--When a compound, ending with any of the foregoing irregular words, is made plural, it follows the fashion of the word with which it ends: as, *Gentleman, gentlemen; bondwoman, bondwomen; foster-child, foster-children; solan-geese, solan-geese; eyetooth, eyeteeth; woodlouse, woodlice*; [143] *dormouse, dormice; half-penny, halfpence, half-pennies.* In this way, these irregularities extend to many words; though some of the metaphorical class, as *kite's-foot, colts-foot, bear's-foot, lion's-foot*, being names of plants, have no plural. The word *man*, which is used the most frequently in this way, makes more than seventy such compounds. But there are some words of this ending, which, not being compounds of *man*, are regular: as, *German, Germans; Turcoman, Turcomans; Mussulman, Mussulmans; talisman, talismans; leman, lemans; caiman, caimans.*

OBS. 21.--Compounds, in general, admit but one variation to form the plural, and that must be made in the principal word, rather than in the adjunct; but where the terms differ little in importance, the genius of the language obviously inclines to a variation of the last only. Thus we write *fathers-in-law, sons-in-law, knights-errant, courts-martial, cousins-german, hangers-on, comings-in, goings-out, goings-forth*, varying the first; and *manhaters, manstealers, manslayers, maneaters, mandrills, handfuls, spoonfuls, mouthfuls, pailfuls, outpourings, ingatherings, downsitings, overflowings*, varying the last. So, in many instances, when there is a less intimate connexion of the parts, and the words are written with a hyphen, if not separately, we choose to vary the latter or last: as, *fellow-servants, queen-consorts, three-per-cents, he-goats, she-bears,*

jack-a-dandies, jack-a-lanterns, piano-fortes. The following mode of writing is irregular in two respects; first, because the words are separated, and secondly, because both are varied: "Is it unreasonable to say with John Wesley, that '*men buyers* are exactly on a level with *men stealers*'?"--GOODELL'S LECT. II: *Liberator*, ix, 65. According to analogy, it ought to be: "*Manbuyers* are exactly on a level with *manstealers*." J. W. Wright alleges, that, "The phrase, 'I want two *spoonfuls* or *handfuls*,' though common, is improperly constructed;" and that, "we should say, 'Two *spoons* or *hands full*.'"--*Philos. Gram.*, p. 222. From this opinion, I dissent: both authority and analogy favour the former mode of expressing the plural of such quantities.

OBS. 22.--There is neither difficulty nor uncertainty respecting the proper forms for the plurals of compound nouns in general; but the two irregular words *man* and *woman* are often varied at the beginning of the looser kind of compounds, contrary to what appears to be the general analogy of similar words. Of the propriety of this, the reader may judge, when I shall have quoted a few examples: "Besides their *man-servants* and their *maid-servants*."--*Nehemiah*, vii, 67. "And I have oxen and asses, flocks, and *men-servants*, and *women-servants*."--*Gen.*, xxxii, 5. "I gat me *men-singers*, and *women-singers*, and the delights of the sons of men."--*Ecclesiastes*, ii, 8. "And she brought forth a *man-child*, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron."--*Rev.*, xii, 5.--"Why have ye done this, and saved the *men-children* alive?"--*Exod.*, i, 18. Such terms as these, if thought objectionable, may easily be avoided, by substituting for the former part of the compound the separate adjective *male* or *female*; as, *male child, male children*. Or, for those of the third example, one might say, "*singing men* and *singing women*," as in *Nehemiah*, vii, 67; for, in the ancient languages, the words are the same. Alger compounds "*singing-men* and *singing-women*."

OBS. 23.--Some foreign compound terms, consisting of what are usually, in the language from which they come, distinct words and different parts of speech, are made plural in English, by the addition of *e* or *es* at the end. But, in all such cases, I think the hyphen should be inserted in the compound, though it is the practice of many to omit it. Of this odd sort of words, I quote the following examples from Churchill; taking the liberty to insert the hyphen, which he omits: "*Ave-Maries, Te-Deums, camera-obscuras, agnus-castuses, habeas-corpuses, scire-faciases, hiccius-docchiuses, hocus-pocuses, ignis-fatuuses, chef-d'oeuvres, congé-d'élires, flower-de-luces, louis-d'-ores, tête-à-têtes*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 62.

OBS. 24.--Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural. For, as there ought to be no word, or inflection of a word, for which we cannot conceive an appropriate meaning or use, it follows that whatever is of such a species that it cannot be taken in any plural sense, must naturally be named by a word which is singular only: as, *perry, cider, coffee, flax, hemp, fennel, tallow, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, meekness, eloquence*. But there are some things, which have in fact neither a comprehensible unity, nor any distinguishable plurality, and which may therefore be spoken of in either number; for the distinction of unity and plurality is, in such instances, merely verbal; and, whichever number we take, the word will be apt to want the other: as, *dregs, or sediment; riches, or wealth; pains, or toil; ethics, or moral philosophy; politics, or the science of government; belles-lettres, or polite literature*. So *darkness*, which in English appears to have no plural, is expressed in Latin by *tenebræ*, in French by *ténèbres*, which have no singular. It is necessary that every noun should be understood to be of one number or the other; for, in connecting it with a verb, or in supplying its place by a pronoun, we must assume it to be either singular or plural. And it is desirable that singulars and plurals should always abide by their appropriate forms, so that they may be thereby distinguished with readiness. But custom, which regulates this, as every thing else of the like nature, does not always adjust it well; or, at least, not always upon principles uniform in themselves and obvious to every intellect.

OBS. 25.--Nouns of multitude, when taken collectively, generally admit the regular plural form; which of course is understood with reference to the individuality of the whole collection, considered as one thing; but, when taken distributively, they have a plural signification without the form; and, in this case, their plurality refers to the individuals that compose the assemblage. Thus, a *council*, a *committee*, a *jury*, a *meeting*, a *society*, a *flock*, or a *herd*, is singular; and the regular plurals are *councils, committees, juries, meetings, societies, flocks, herds*. But these, and many similar words, may be taken plurally without the *s*, because a collective noun is the name of many individuals together. Hence we may say, "The *council were*

unanimous."--"The *committee* are in consultation."--"The *jury* were unable to agree."--"The *meeting* have shown their discretion."--"The *society* have settled their dispute."--"The *flock* are widely scattered."--"The whole *herd* were drowned in the sea." The propriety of the last example seems questionable; because *whole* implies unity, and *were drowned* is plural. Where a purer concord can be effected, it may be well to avoid such a construction, though examples like it are not uncommon: as, "Clodius was acquitted by *a corrupt jury*, that had palpably taken shares of money before *they* gave their verdict."--Bacon. "And the whole multitude of the people *were* praying without, at the time of incense."--Luke, i, 10.

OBS. 26.--Nouns have, in some instances, a unity or plurality of meaning, which seems to be directly at variance with their form. Thus, *cattle*, for beasts of pasture, and *pulse*, for peas and beans, though in appearance singulars only, are generally, if not always, plural; and *summons*, *gallows*, *chintz*, *series*, *superficies*, *molasses*, *suds*, *hunks*, *jakes*, *trapes*, and *corps*, with the appearance of plurals, are generally, if not always, singular. Dr. Webster says that *cattle* is of both numbers; but wherein the oneness of cattle can consist, I know not. The Bible says, "God made--*cattle* after their kind."--Gen., i, 25. Here *kind* is indeed singular, as if *cattle* were a natural genus of which one must be *a cattle*; as *sheep* are a natural genus of which one is *a sheep*: but whether properly expressed so or not, is questionable; perhaps it ought to be, "and cattle after their *kinds*." Dr. Gillies says, in his History of Greece, "*cattle* was regarded as the most convenient measure of value." This seems to me to be more inaccurate and unintelligible, than to say, "*Sheep* was regarded as the most convenient measure of value." And what would this mean? *Sheep* is not singular, unless limited to that number by some definitive word; and *cattle* I conceive to be incapable of any such limitation.

OBS. 27.--Of the last class of words above cited, some may assume an additional *es*, when taken plurally; as, *summonses*, *gallowses*, *chintses*: the rest either want the plural, or have it seldom and without change of form. *Corps*, a body of troops, is a French word, which, when singular, is pronounced *c=ore*, and when plural, *c=ores*. But *corpse*, a dead body, is an English word, pronounced *k~orps*, and making the plural in two syllables, *corpses*. *Summonses* is given in Cobb's Dictionary as the plural of *summons*; but some authors have used the latter with a plural verb: as, "But Love's first *summons* seldom *are* obey'd."--Waller's Poems, p. 8. Dr. Johnson says this noun is from the verb *to summon*; and, if this is its origin, the singular ought to be *a summon*, and then *summons* would be a regular plural. But this "singular noun with a plural termination," as Webster describes it, more probably originated from the Latin verb *submoneas*, used in the writ, and came to us through the jargon of law, in which we sometimes hear men talk of "*summonsing* witnesses." The authorities for it, however, are good enough; as, "This present *summons*."--SHAK.: Joh. Dict. "This *summons* he resolved to disobey."--FELL: *ib.* *Chints* is called by Cobb a "substantive plural" and defined as "cotton cloths, made in India;" but other lexicographers define it as singular, and Worcester (perhaps more properly) writes it *chintz*. Johnson cites Pope as speaking of "*a charming chints*," and I have somewhere seen the plural formed by adding *es*. "Of the Construction of single Words, or *Serieses* of Words."--Ward's Gram., p. 114. Walker, in his Elements of Elocution, makes frequent use of the word "*serieses*," and of the phrase "*series of serieses*." But most writers, I suppose, would doubt the propriety of this practice; because, in Latin, all nouns of the fifth declension, such as *caries*, *congeries*, *series*, *species*, *superficies*, make their nominative and vocative cases alike in both numbers. This, however, is no rule for writing English. Dr. Blair has used the word *species* in a plural sense; though I think he ought rather to have preferred the regular English word *kinds*: "The higher *species* of poetry seldom *admit* it."--Rhet., p. 403. *Specie*, meaning hard money, though derived or corrupted from *species*, is not the singular of that word; nor has it any occasion for a plural form, because we never speak of *a specie*. The plural of *gallows*, according to Dr. Webster, is *gallowses*; nor is that form without other authority, though some say, *gallows* is of both numbers and not to be varied: "*Gallowses* were occasionally put in order by the side of my windows."--Leigh Hunt's Byron, p. 369.

"Who would not guess there might be hopes, The fear of *gallowses* and ropes, Before their eyes, might reconcile Their animosities a while?"--Hudibras, p. 90.

OBS. 28.--Though the plural number is generally derived from the singular, and of course must as generally imply its existence, we have examples, and those not a few, in which the case is otherwise. Some nouns,

because they signify such things as nature or art has made plural or double; some, because they have been formed from other parts of speech by means of the plural ending which belongs to nouns; and some, because they are compounds in which a plural word is principal, and put last, are commonly used in the plural number only, and have, in strict propriety, no singular. Though these three classes of plurals may not be perfectly separable, I shall endeavour to exhibit them in the order of this explanation.

1. Plurals in meaning and form: *analects, annals*,[144] *archives, ashes, assets, billiards, bowels, breeches, calends, cates, chops, clothes, compasses, crants, eaves, embers, estovers, forceps, giblets, goggles, greaves, hards or hurds, hemorrhoids, ides, matins, nippers, nones, obsequies, orgies*,[145] *piles, pincers or pinchers, pliers, reins, scissors, shears, skittles, snuffers, spectacles, teens, tongs, trowsers, tweezers, umbles, vespers, victuals*.

2. Plurals by formation, derived chiefly from adjectives: *acoustics, aeronautics, analytics, bitters, catoptrics, commons, conics, credentials, delicates, dioptrics, economics, ethics, extraordinaries, filings, fives, freshes, glanders, gnomonics, goods, hermeneutics, hustings, hydrodynamics, hydrostatics, hydraulics, hysterics, inwards, leavings, magnetics, mathematics, measles, mechanics, mnemonics, merils, metaphysics, middlings, movables, mumps, nuptials, optics, phonics, phonetics, physics*,[146] *pneumatics, poetics, politics, riches, rickets, settlings, shatters, skimmings, spherics, staggers, statics, statistics, stays, strangles, sundries, sweepings, tactics, thanks, tidings, trappings, vives, vitals, wages*,[147] *withers, yellows*.

3. Plurals by composition: *backstairs, cocklestairs, firearms*,[148] *headquarters, hotcockles, spatterdashes, self-affairs*. To these may be added the Latin words, *aborigines, antipodes, antes, antoeci, amphiscii, anthropophagi, antiscii, ascii, literati, fauces, regalia*, and *credenda*, with the Italian *vermicelli*, and the French *belles-lettres* and *entremets*.

OBS. 29.--There are several nouns which are set down by some writers as wanting the singular, and by others as having it. Of this class are the following: *amends*,[149] *ancients, awns, bots, catacombs, chives, cloves, cresses, dogsears, downs, dregs*,[150] *entrails, fetters, fireworks, greens, gyves, hatches, intestines, lees*,[151] *lungs, malanders, mallows, moderns, oats, orts, pleiads, premises, relics, remains, shackles, shambles*,[152] *stilts, stairs, tares, vetches*. The fact is, that these words have, or ought to have, the singular, as often as there is any occasion to use it; and the same may, in general terms, be said of other nouns, respecting the formation of *the plural*. [153] For where the idea of unity or plurality comes clearly before the mind, we are very apt to shape the word accordingly, without thinking much about the authorities we can quote for it.

OBS. 30.--In general, where both numbers exist in common use, there is some palpable oneness or individuality, to which the article *a* or *an* is applicable; the nature of the species is found entire in every individual of it; and a multiplication of the individuals gives rise to plurality in the name. But the nature of a mass, or of an indefinite multitude taken collectively, is not found in individuals as such; nor is the name, whether singular, as *gold*, or plural, as *ashes*, so understood. Hence, though every noun must be of one number or the other, there are many which have little or no need of both. Thus we commonly speak of *wheat, barley, or oats*, collectively; and very seldom find occasion for any other forms of these words. But chaffers at the corn-market, in spite of Cobbett,[154] will talk about *wheats* and *barleys*, meaning different kinds[155] or qualities; and a gardener, if he pleases, will tell of an *oat*, (as does Milton, in his *Lycidas*,) meaning a single seed or plant. But, because *wheat* or *barley* generally means that sort of grain in mass, if he will mention a single kernel, he must call it a *grain of wheat* or a *barleycorn*. And these he may readily make plural, to specify any particular number; as, *five grains of wheat*, or *three barleycorns*.

OBS. 31.--My chief concern is with general principles, but the illustration of these requires many particular examples--even far more than I have room to quote. The word *amends* is represented by Murray and others, as being singular as well as plural; but Webster's late dictionaries exhibit *amend* as singular, and *amends* as plural, with definitions that needlessly differ, though not much. I judge "*an amends*" to be bad English; and prefer the regular singular, *an amend*. The word is of French origin, and is sometimes written in English with

a needless final *e*; as, "But only to make a kind of honourable *amende* to God."--*Rollin's Ancient Hist.*, Vol. ii, p. 24. The word *remains* Dr. Webster puts down as plural only, and yet uses it himself in the singular: "The creation of a Dictator, even for a few months, would have buried every *remain* of freedom."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 70. There are also other authorities for this usage, and also for some other nouns that are commonly thought to have no singular; as, "But Duelling is unlawful and murderous, a *remain* of the ancient Gothic barbarity."--*Brown's Divinity*, p. 26. "I grieve with the old, for so many additional inconveniences, more than their small *remain* of life seemed destined to undergo."--POPE: in *Joh. Dict.* "A disjunctive syllogism is one whose major *premise* is disjunctive."--*Hedge's Logic*. "Where should he have this gold? It is some poor fragment, some slender *ort* of his remainder."--SHAK.: *Timon of Athens*.

OBS. 32.--There are several nouns which are usually alike in both numbers. Thus, *deer, folk, fry, gentry, grouse, hose, neat, sheep, swine, vermin*, and *rest*, (i. e. *the rest*, the others, the residue,) are regular singulars, but they are used also as plurals, and that more frequently. Again, *alms, aloes, bellows, means, news, odds, shambles*, and *species*, are proper plurals, but most of them are oftener construed as singulars. *Folk* and *fry* are collective nouns. *Folk* means *people*; *a folk, a people*: as, "The ants are *a people* not strong;"--"The conies are but *a feeble folk*."--*Prov.*, xxx, 25, 26. "He laid his hands on a few sick *folk*, and healed *them*."--*Mark*, vi, 5. *Folks*, which ought to be the plural of *folk*, and equivalent to *peoples*, is now used with reference to a plurality of individuals, and the collective word seems liable to be entirely superseded by it. A *fry* is a swarm of young fishes, or of any other little creatures living in water: so called, perhaps, because their motions often make the surface *fry*. Several such swarms might properly be called *fries*; but this form can never be applied to the individuals, without interfering with the other. "So numerous *was the fry*."--*Cowper*. "The *fry betake themselves* to the neighbouring pools."--*Quarterly Review*. "You cannot think more contemptuously of *these gentry* than *they* were thought of by the true prophets."--*Watson's Apology*, p. 93. "*Grouse, a heathcock*."--*Johnson*.

"The 'squires in scorn will fly the house For better game, and look for *grouse*."--*Swift*.

"Here's an English tailor, come hither for stealing out of *a French hose*."--*Shak*. "He, being in love, could not see to garter his *hose*."--*Id*. Formerly, the plural was *hosen*: "Then these men were bound, in their coats, their *hosen*, and their hats."--*Dan.*, iii, 21. Of *sheep*, Shakspeare has used the regular plural: "Two hot *sheeps*, marry!"--*Love's Labour Lost*, Act ii, Sc. 1.

"Who both by his calf and his lamb will be known, May well kill *a neat* and *a sheep* of his own."--*Tusser*.

"His droves of asses, camels, herds of *neat*, And flocks of *sheep*, grew shortly twice as great."--*Sandys*.

"As a jewel of gold in *a swine's* snout."--*Prov.*, xi, 22. "A herd of *many swine*, feeding."--*Matt.*, viii, 30. "An idle person only lives to spend his time, and eat the fruits of the earth, like a *vermin* or a wolf."--*Taylor*. "The head of a wolf, dried and hanged up, will scare away *vermin*."--*Bacon*. "Cheslip, *a small vermin* that lies under stones or tiles."--SKINNER: in *Joh. and in Web. Dict.* "This is flour, the *rest* is bran."--"And the *rest* were blinded."--*Rom.*, xi, 7. "The poor beggar hath a just demand of *an alms*."--*Swift*. "Thine *alms* are come up for a memorial before God."--*Acts*, x, 4. "The draught of air performed the function of *a bellows*."--*Robertson's Amer.*, ii, 223. "As the *bellows* do."--*Bicknell's Gram.*, ii, 11. "The *bellows* are burned."--*Jer.*, vi, 29. "Let *a gallows* be made."--*Esther*, v, 14. "*Mallows* are very useful in medicine."--*Wood's Dict.* "News," says Johnson, "is without the singular, unless it be considered as singular."--*Dict.* "So *is good news* from a far country."--*Prov.*, xxv, 25. "Evil *news* rides fast, while good *news* baits."--*Milton*. "When Rhea heard *these news*, she fled."--*Raleigh*. "News were brought to the queen."--*Hume's Hist.*, iv, 426. "The *news* I bring are afflicting, but the consolation with which *they* are attended, ought to moderate your grief."--*Gil Blas*, Vol. ii, p. 20. "Between these two cases there are great *odds*."--*Hooker*. "Where the *odds* is considerable."--*Campbell*. "Determining on which side the *odds* lie."--*Locke*. "The greater are the *odds* that he mistakes his author."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 1. "Though thus *an odds* unequally they meet."--*Rowe's Lucan*, B. iv, l. 789. "Preëminent by so much *odds*."--*Milton*. "To

make a *shambles* of the parliament house."--*Shak*. "The earth has been, from the beginning, a great *Aceldama*, a *shambles* of blood."--*Christian's Vade-Mecum*, p. 6. "A *shambles*" sounds so inconsistent, I should rather say, "A *shamble*." Johnson says, the etymology of the word is *uncertain*; Webster refers it to the Saxon *scamel*: it means a *butcher's stall*, a *meat-market*; and there would seem to be no good reason for the *s*, unless more than one such place is intended. "Who sells his subjects to the *shambles* of a foreign power."--*Pitt*. "A special idea is called by the schools a *species*."--*Watts*. "He intendeth the care of *species*, or common natures."--*Brown*. "ALOE, (al~o) *n.*; *plu.* ALOES."--*Webster's Dict.*, and *Worcester's*. "But it was *aloe* itself to lose the reward."--*Tupper's Crock of Gold*, p. 16.

"But high in amphitheatre above, *His* arms the everlasting *aloes* threw." --*Campbell*, G. of W., ii, 10.

OBS. 33.--There are some nouns, which, though really regular in respect to possessing the two forms for the two numbers, are not free from irregularity in the manner of their application. Thus *means* is the regular plural of *mean*; and, when the word is put for mediocrity, middle point, place, or degree, it takes both forms, each in its proper sense; but when it signifies things instrumental, or that which is used to effect an object, most writers use *means* for the singular as well as for the plural:[156] as, "By *this means*"--"By *those means*," with reference to one mediating cause; and, "By *these means*,"--"By *those means*," with reference to more than one. Dr. Johnson says the use of *means* for *mean* is not very grammatical; and, among his examples for the true use of the word, he has the following: "Pamela's noble heart would needs gratefully make known the valiant *mean* of her safety."--*Sidney*. "Their virtuous conversation was a *mean* to work the heathens' conversion."--*Hooker*. "Whether his wits should by that *mean* have been taken from him."--*Id.* "I'll devise a *mean* to draw the Moor out of the way."--*Shak*. "No place will please me so, no *mean* of death."--*Id.* "Nature is made better by no *mean*, but nature makes that *mean*."--*Id.* Dr. Lowth also questioned the propriety of construing *means* as singular, and referred to these same authors as authorities for preferring the regular form. Buchanan insists that *means* is right in the plural only; and that, "The singular should be used as perfectly analogous; by *this mean*, by *that mean*."--*English Syntax*, p. 103. Lord Kames, likewise, appears by his practice to have been of the same opinion: "Of *this* the child must be sensible intuitively, for it has no other *mean* of knowledge."--*Elements of Criticism*, Vol. i, p. 357. "And in both the same *mean* is employed."--*Ib.* ii, 271. Caleb Alexander, too, declares "*this means*," "*that means*," and "*a means*," to be "ungrammatical."--*Gram.*, p. 58. But common usage has gone against the suggestions of these critics, and later grammarians have rather confirmed the irregularity, than attempted to reform it.

OBS. 34.--Murray quotes sixteen good authorities to prove that *means* may be singular; but whether it *ought* to be so or not, is still a disputable point. Principle is for the regular word *mean*, and good practice favours the irregularity, but is still divided. Cobbett, to the disgrace of grammar, says, "*Mean*, as a noun, is *never used in the singular*. It, like some other words, has broken loose from all principle and rule. By universal consent, it is *become always a plural*, whether used with *singular or plural* pronouns and articles, or not."--*E. Gram.*, p. 144. This is as ungrammatical, as it is untrue. Both *mean* and *means* are sufficiently authorized in the singular: "The prospect which by *this mean* is opened to you."--*Melmoth's Cicero*. "Faith in this doctrine never terminates in itself, but is a *mean*, to holiness as an end."--*Dr. Chalmers, Sermons*, p. v. "The *mean* of basely affronting him."--*Brown's Divinity*, p. 19. "They used every *mean* to prevent the re-establishment of their religion."--*Dr Jamieson's Sacred Hist.*, i, p. 20. "As a necessary *mean* to prepare men for the discharge of that duty."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 153. "Greatest is the power of a *mean*, when its power is least suspected."--*Tupper's Book of Thoughts*, p. 37. "To the deliberative orator the reputation of unsullied virtue is not only useful, as a *mean* of promoting his general influence, it is also among his most efficient engines of persuasion, upon every individual occasion."--*J. Q. Adams's Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory*, i, 352. "I would urge it upon you, as the most effectual *mean* of extending your respectability and usefulness in the world."--*Ib.*, ii, 395. "Exercise will be admitted to be a necessary *mean* of improvement."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 343. "And by *that means* we have now an early prepossession in their favour."--*Ib.*, p. 348. "To abolish all sacrifice by revealing a better *mean* of reconciliation." --*Keith's Evidences*, p. 46. "As a *mean* of destroying the distinction." --*Ib.*, p. 3. "Which however is by no *mean* universally the case."--*Religious World Displayed*, Vol. iii, p. 155.

OBS. 35.--Again, there are some nouns, which, though they do not lack the regular plural form, are sometimes used in a plural sense without the plural termination. Thus *manner* makes the plural *manners*, which last is now generally used in the peculiar sense of behaviour, or deportment, but not always: it sometimes means methods, modes, or ways; as, "At sundry times and in divers *manners*."--*Heb.*, i, 1. "In the *manners* above mentioned."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 100. "There be three *manners* of trials in England."--COWELL: *Joh. Dict.*, w. *Jury*. "These two *manners* of representation."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 15. "These are the three primary modes, or *manners*, of expression."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 83. "In arrangement, too, various *manners* suit various styles."--*Campbell's Phil. of Rhet.*, p. 172. "Between the two *manners*."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 35. "Here are three different *manners* of asserting."--*Barnard's Gram.*, p. 59. But *manner* has often been put for *sorts*, without the *s*; as, "The tree of life, which bare *twelve manner* of fruits."--*Rev.*, xxii, 2. "All *manner* of men assembled here in arms."--*Shak.* "All *manner* of outward advantages."--*Atterbury*. Milton used *kind* in the same way, but not very properly; as, "All *kind* of living creatures."--*P. Lost*, B. iv, l. 286. This irregularity it would be well to avoid. *Manners* may still, perhaps, be proper for modes or ways; and *all manner*, if allowed, must be taken in the sense of a collective noun; but for *sorts*, *kinds*, *classes*, or *species*, I would use neither the plural nor the singular of this word. The word *heathen*, too, makes the regular plural *heathens*, and yet is often used in a plural sense without the *s*; as, "Why do the *heathen* rage?"--*Psalms*, ii, 1. "Christianity was formerly propagated among the *heathens*."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 217. The word *youth*, likewise, has the same peculiarities.

OBS. 36.--Under the present head come names of fishes, birds, or other things, when the application of the singular is extended from the individual to the species, so as to supersede the plural by assuming its construction: as, Sing. "A great *fish*."--*Jonah*, i, 17. Plur. "For the multitude of *fishes*."--*John*, xxi, 6. "A very great multitude of *fish*."--*Ezekiel*, xlvii, 9.[157] The name of the genus being liable to this last construction, men seem to have thought that the species should follow; consequently, the regular plurals of some very common names of fishes are scarcely known at all. Hence some grammarians affirm, that *salmon*, *mackerel*, *herring*, *perch*, *tench*, and several others, are alike in both numbers, and ought never to be used in the plural form. I am not so fond of honouring these anomalies. Usage is here as unsettled, as it is arbitrary; and, if the expression of plurality is to be limited to either form exclusively, the regular plural ought certainly to be preferred. But, *for fish taken in bulk*, the singular form seems more appropriate; as, "These vessels take from thirty-eight to forty-five quintals of *cod* and *pollock*, and six thousand barrels of *mackerel*, yearly."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 28.

OBS. 37.--The following examples will illustrate the unsettled usage just mentioned, and from them the reader may judge for himself what is right. In quoting, at second-hand, I generally think it proper to make double references; and especially in citing authorities after Johnson, because he so often gives the same passages variously. But he himself is reckoned good authority in things literary. Be it so. I regret the many proofs of his fallibility. "Hear you this Triton of the *minnows*?"--*Shak.* "The shoal of *herrings* was of an immense extent."--*Murray's Key*, p. 185. "Buy my *herring* fresh."--SWIFT: *in Joh. Dict.* "In the fisheries of Maine, *cod*, *herring*, *mackerel* *alewives*, *salmon*, and other *fish*, are taken."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 23. "MEASE, *n*. The quantity of 500; as, a *mease* of *herrings*."--*Webster's Dict.* "We shall have plenty of *mackerel* this season."--ADDISON: *in Joh. Dict.* "*Mackarel* is the same in both numbers. Gay has improperly *mackarels*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 208. "They take *salmon* and *trouts* by groping and tickling them under the bellies."--CAREW: *in Joh. Dict.* "The pond will keep *trout* and *salmon* in their seasonable plight."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Trout*. "Some *fish* are preserved fresh in vinegar, as *turbot*."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Turbot*. "Some *fish* are boiled and preserved fresh in vinegar, as *tunny* and *turbot*."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Tunny*. "Of round *fish*, there are *brit*, *sprat*, *barn*, *smelts*."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Smelt*. "For *sprats* and *spurlings* for your house."--TUSSEE: *ib.*, w. *Spurling*. "The coast is plentifully stored with *pilchards*, *herrings*, and *haddock*."--CAREW: *ib.*, w. *Haddock*. "The coast is plentifully stored with round *fish*, *pilchard*, *herring*, *mackerel*, and *cod*."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Herring*. "The coast is plentifully stored with *shellfish*, *sea-hedgehogs*, *scallops*, *pilcherd*, *herring*, and *pollock*."--*Id.*, *ib.*, w. *Pollock*. "A *roach* is a *fish* of no great reputation for his dainty taste. It is noted that *roaches* recover strength and grow a fortnight after spawning."--WALTON: *ib.*, w. *Roach*. "A friend of mine stored a pond of three or four acres with *carps* and *tench*."--HALE: *ib.*, w. *Carp*. "Having stored a very great pond with *carps*, *tench*, and other

pond-fish, and only put in two small *pikes*, this pair of tyrants in seven years devoured the whole."--*Id.*, *ib.*, *w. Tench*. "Singular, *tench*; plural, *tenches*."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 78. "The polar bear preys upon *seals*, *fish*, and the carcasses of *whales*."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 172. "*Trouts* and *salmons* swim against the stream."--*BACON: Ward's Gram.*, p. 130.

"'Tis true no *turbots* dignify my boards, But *gudgeons*, *flounders*, what my Thames affords."--*Pope*.

OBS. 38.--From the foregoing examples it would seem, if fish or fishes are often spoken of without a regular distinction of the grammatical numbers, it is not because the words are not susceptible of the inflection, but because there is some difference of meaning between the mere name of the sort and the distinct modification in regard to number. There are also other nouns in which a like difference may be observed. Some names of building materials, as *brick*, *stone*, *plank*, *joist*, though not destitute of regular plurals, as *bricks*, *stones*, *planks*, *joists*, and not unadapted to ideas distinctly singular, as *a brick*, *a stone*, *a plank*, *a joist*, are nevertheless sometimes used in a plural sense without the *s*, and sometimes in a sense which seems hardly to embrace the idea of either number; as, "Let us make *brick*, and burn *them* thoroughly."--*Gen.*, xi, 3. "And they had *brick* for *stone*."--*Ib.* "The tale of *bricks*."--*Exod.*, v, 8 and 18. "Make *brick*."--*Ib.*, v, 16. "From your *bricks*."--*Ib.*, v, 19. "Upon altars of *brick*."--*Isaiah*. lxy, 3. "The *bricks* are fallen down."--*Ib.*, ix, 10. The same variety of usage occurs in respect to a few other words, and sometimes perhaps without good reason; as, "Vast numbers of sea *fowl* frequent the rocky cliffs."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 231. "Bullocks, sheep, and *fowls*."--*Ib.*, p. 439. "*Cannon* is used alike in both numbers."--*Everest's Gram.*, p. 48. "*Cannon* and *shot* may be used in the singular or plural sense."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 37. "The column in the Place Vendome is one hundred and thirty-four feet high, and is made of the brass of the *cannons* taken from the Austrians and Prussians."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 249. "As his *cannons* roar."--*Dryden's Poems*, p. 81. "Twenty *shot* of his greatest cannon."--*CLARENDON: Joh. Dict.* "Twenty *shots*" would here, I think, be more proper, though the word is not made plural when it means *little balls of lead*. "And *cannons* conquer armies."--*Hudibras*, Part III, Canto iii, l. 249.

"Healths to both kings, attended with the roar Of *cannons* echoed from th' affrighted shore."--*Waller*, p. 7.

OBS. 39.--Of foreign nouns, many retain their original plural; a few are defective; and some are redundant, because the English form is also in use. Our writers have laid many languages under contribution, and thus furnished an abundance of irregular words, necessary to be explained, but never to be acknowledged as English till they conform to our own rules.

1. Of nouns in *a*, *saliva*, spittle, and *scoria*, dross, have no occasion for the plural; *lamina*, a thin plate, makes *laminae*; *macula*, a spot, *maculae*; *minutia*, a little thing, *minutiae*; *nebula*, a mist, *nebulae*; *siliqua*, a pod, *siliquae*. *Dogma* makes *dogmas* or *dogmata*; *exanthema*, *exanthemas* or *exanthemata*; *miasm* or *miasma*, *miasms* or *miasmata*; *stigma*, *stigmas* or *stigmata*.

2. Of nouns in *um*, some have no need of the plural; as, *bdellium*, *decorum*, *elysium*, *equilibrium*, *guaiacum*, *laudanum*, *odium*, *opium*, *petroleum*, *serum*, *viaticum*. Some form it regularly; as, *asylums*, *compendiums*, *craniums*, *emporiums*, *encomiums*, *forums*, *frustums*, *lustrums*, *mausoleums*, *museums*, *pendulums*, *nostrums*, *rostrums*, *residuums*, *vacuums*. Others take either the English or the Latin plural; as, *desideratums* or *desiderata*, *mediums* or *media*, *menstruums* or *menstrua*, *memorandums* or *memoranda*, *spectrums* or *spectra*, *speculums* or *specula*, *stratums* or *strata*, *succedaneums* or *succedanea*, *trapeziums* or *trapezia*, *vinculums* or *vincula*. A few seem to have the Latin plural only: as, *arcanum*, *arcana*; *datum*, *data*; *effluvium*, *effluvia*; *erratum*, *errata*; *scholium*, *scholia*.

3. Of nouns in *us*, a few have no plural; as, *asparagus*, *calamus*, *mucus*. Some have only the Latin plural, which usually changes *us* to *i*; as, *alumnus*, *alumni*; *androgynus*, *androgyni*; *calculus*, *calculi*; *dracunculus*, *dracunculi*; *echinus*, *echini*; *magus*, *magi*. But such as have properly become English words, may form the plural regularly in *es*; as, *chorus*, *choruses*: so, *apparatus*, *bolus*, *callus*, *circus*, *fetus*, *focus*, *fucus*, *fungus*,

hiatus, ignoramus, impetus, incubus, isthmus, nautilus, nucleus, prospectus, rebus, sinus, surplus. Five of these make the Latin plural like the singular; but the mere English scholar has no occasion to be told which they are. *Radius* makes the plural *radii* or *radiuses*. *Genius* has *genii*, for imaginary spirits, and *geniuses*, for men of wit. *Genus*, a sort, becomes *genera* in Latin, and *genuses* in English. *Denarius* makes, in the plural, *denarii* or *denariuses*.

4. Of nouns in *is*, some are regular; as, *trellis, trellises*: so, *annolis, butteris, caddis, dervis, iris, marquis, metropolis, portcullis, proboscis*. Some seem to have no need of the plural; as, *ambergris, aqua-fortis, arthritis, brewis, crasis, elephantiasis, genesis, orris, siriasis, tennis*. But most nouns of this ending follow the Greek or Latin form, which simply changes *is* to *=es*: as, *amanuensis, amanuenses; analysis, analyses; antithesis, antitheses; axis, axes; basis, bases; crisis, crises; diæresis, diæreses; diesis, dieses; ellipsis, ellipses; emphasis, emphases; fascis, fascies; hypothesis, hypotheses; metamorphosis, metamorphoses; oasis, oases; parenthesis, parentheses; phasis, phases; praxis, praxes; synopsis, synopses; synthesis, syntheses; syrtis, syrtes; thesis, theses*. In some, however, the original plural is not so formed; but is made by changing *is* to *-ides*; as, *aphis, aphides; apsis, apsides; ascaris, ascarides; bolis, bolides; cantharis, cantharides; chrysalis, chrysalides; ephemeris, ephemerides; epidermis, epidermides*. So *iris* and *proboscis*, which we make regular; and perhaps some of the foregoing may be made so too. Fisher writes *Praxises* for *praxes*, though not very properly. See his *Gram*, p. v. *Eques*, a Roman knight, makes *equites* in the plural.

5. Of nouns in *x*, there are few, if any, which ought not to form the plural regularly, when used as English words; though the Latins changed *x* to *ces*, and *ex* to *ices*, making the *i* sometimes long and sometimes short: as, *apex, apices*, for *apexes*; *appendix, appendices*, for *appendixes*; *calix, calices*, for *calixes*; *calx, calces*, for *calxes*; *calyx, calyces*, for *calyxes*; *caudex, caudices*, for *caudexes*; *cicatrix, cicatrices*, for *cicatrixes*; *helix, helices*, for *helixes*; *index, indices*, for *indexes*; *matrix, matrices*, for *matrixes*; *quincunx, quincunces*, for *quincunxes*; *radix, radices*, for *radixes*; *varix, varices*, for *varixes*; *vertex, vertices*, for *vertexes*; *vortex, vortices*, for *vortexes*. Some Greek words in *x* change that letter to *ges*; as, *larynx, larynges*, for *larinxes*; *phalanx, phalanges*, for *phalanxes*. *Billet-doux*, from the French, is *billets-doux* in the plural.

6. Of nouns in *on*, derived from Greek, the greater part always form the plural regularly; as, *etymons, gnomons, ichneumons, myrmidons, phlegmons, trigons, tetragons, pentagons, hexagons, heptagons, octagons, enneagons, decagons, hendecagons, dodecagons, polygons*. So *trihedrons, tetrahedrons, pentahedrons, &c.*, though some say, these last may end in *dra*, which I think improper. For a few words of this class, however, there are double plurals in use; as, *automata* or *atomatons*, *criteria* or *criterions*, *parhelia* or *parhelions*; and the plural of *phenomenon* appears to be always *phenomena*.

7. The plural of *legumen* is *legumens* or *legumina*; of *stamen*, *stamens* or *stamina*: of *cherub*, *cherubs* or *cherubim*; of *seraph*, *seraphs* or *seraphim*; of *beau*, *beaus* or *beaux*; of *bandit*, *bandits* or *banditti*. The regular forms are in general preferable. The Hebrew plurals *cherubim* and *seraphim*, being sometimes mistaken for singulars, other plurals have been formed from them; as, "And over it the *cherubims* of glory."--*Heb.* ix, 5. "Then flow one of the *seraphims* unto me."--*Isaiah*, vi, 6. Dr. Campbell remarks: "We are authorized, both by use and by analogy, to say either *cherubs* and *seraphs*, according to the English idiom, or *cherubim* and *seraphim*, according to the oriental. The former suits better the familiar, the latter the solemn style. I shall add to this remark," says he, "that, as the words *cherubim* and *seraphim* are plural, the terms *cherubims* and *seraphims*, as expressing the plural, are quite improper."--*Phil. of Rhet.*, p. 201.

OBS. 40.--When other parts of speech become nouns, they either want the plural, or form it regularly,[158] like common nouns of the same endings; as, "His affairs went on at *sixes* and *sevens*."--*Arbuthnot*. "Some mathematicians have proposed to compute by *twoes*; others, by *fours*; others, by *twelves*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 81. "Three *fourths*, nine *tenths*."--*Ib.*, p. 230. "Time's *takings* and *leavings*."--*Barton*. "The *yeas* and *nays*."--*Newspaper*. "The *ays* and *noes*."--*Ib.* "Oes and *spangles*."--*Bacon*. "The *ins* and the *outs*."--*Newspaper*.--"We find it more safe against *outs* and *doubles*."--*Printer's Gram*. "His *ands* and his *ors*."--*Mott*. "One of the *buts*."--*Fowle*. "In raising the mirth of *stupidis*."--*Steele*. "Eatings, drinkings, wakings,

sleepings, walkings, talkings, sayings, doings--all were for the good of the public; there was not such a thing as a secret in the town."--LANDON: *Keepsake*, 1833. "Her innocent *forsooths* and *yesses*."--*Spect.*, No. 266.

"Henceforth my wooing mind shall be expressed In russet *yeas* and honest kersey *noes*." --SHAK. See *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Kersey*.

GENDERS.

Genders, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish objects in regard to sex.

There are three genders; the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

The *masculine gender* is that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind; as, *man, father, king*.

The *feminine gender* is that which denotes persons or animals of the female kind; as, *woman, mother, queen*.

The *neuter gender* is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female; as, *pen, ink, paper*.

Hence, names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine; and names of things inanimate, literally, neuter.

Masculine nouns make regular feminines, when their termination is changed to *ess*: as, *hunter, huntress; prince, princess; lion, lioness*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The different genders in grammar are founded on the natural distinction of sex in animals, and on the absence of sex in other things. In English, they belong only to nouns and pronouns; and to these they are usually applied, not arbitrarily, as in some other languages, but agreeably to the order of nature. From this we derive a very striking advantage over those who use the gender differently, or without such rule; which is, that our pronouns are easy of application, and have a fine effect when objects are personified. Pronouns are of the same gender as the nouns for which they stand.

OBS. 2.--Many nouns are equally applicable to both sexes; as, *cousin, friend, neighbour, parent, person, servant*. The gender of these is usually determined by the context; and they are to be called masculine or feminine accordingly. To such words, some grammarians have applied the unnecessary and improper term *common gender*. Murray justly observes, "There is no such gender belonging to the language. The business of parsing can be effectually performed, without having recourse to a *common gender*."--*Gram.*, 8vo. p. 39. The term is more useful, and less liable to objection, as applied to the learned languages; but with us, whose genders *distinguish objects in regard to sex*, it is plainly a solecism.

OBS. 3.--A great many of our grammars define gender to be "*the distinction of sex*," and then speak of a *common gender*, in which the two sexes are left *undistinguished*; and of the *neuter gender*, in which objects are treated as being of *neither sex*. These views of the matter are obviously inconsistent. Not genders, or a gender, do the writers undertake to define, but "gender" as a whole; and absurdly enough, too; because this whole of gender they immediately distribute into certain *other genders*, into genders of gender, or kinds of gender, and these not compatible with their definition. Thus Wells: "Gender is *the distinction* of objects, with regard to sex. There are four genders;--the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *common*, and the *neuter*."--*School Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 49. [Those] "Nouns which are applicable *alike to both sexes*, are of the *common gender*."--*Ib.* This then is manifestly no gender under the foregoing definition, and the term *neuter* is made somewhat less appropriate by the adoption of a third denomination before it. Nor is there less absurdity in the phraseology with which Murray proposes to avoid the recognition of the *common gender*: "Thus we may say,

Parents is a noun of the *masculine and feminine* gender; *Parent*, if doubtful, is of the *masculine or feminine* gender; and *Parent*, if the gender is known by the construction, is of the gender so ascertained."--*Gram.*, 8vo, p. 39. According to this, we must have *five genders*, exclusive of that which is called *common*; namely, the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *neuter*, the *androgynal*, and the *doubtful*.

OBS. 4.--It is plain that many writers on grammar have had but a confused notion of what a gender really is. Some of them, confounding gender with sex, deny that there are more than two genders, because there are only two sexes. Others, under a like mistake, resort occasionally, (as in the foregoing instance,) to an *androgynal*, and also to a *doubtful* gender: both of which are more objectionable than the *common gender* of the old grammarians; though this *common* "distinction with regard to sex," is, in our language, confessedly, no distinction at all. I assume, that there are in English the three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter, and no more; and that every noun and every pronoun must needs be of some gender; consequently, of some one of these three. A gender is, literally, a sort, a kind, a sex. But genders, *in grammar*, are attributes of words, rather than of persons, or animals, or things; whereas sexes are attributes, not of words, but of living creatures. He who understands this, will perceive that the absence of sex in some things, is as good a basis for a grammatical distinction, as the presence or the difference of it in others; nor can it be denied, that the neuter, according to my definition, is a gender, is a distinction "in regard to sex," though it does not embrace either of the sexes. There are therefore three genders, and only three.

OBS. 5.--Generic names, even when construed as masculine or feminine, often virtually include both sexes; as, "Hast thou given *the horse* strength? hast thou clothed *his* neck with thunder? Canst thou make *him* afraid as a grasshopper? the glory of *his* nostrils is terrible."--*Job*, xxxix, 19. "Doth *the hawk* fly by thy wisdom, and stretch *her* wings toward the south? Doth *the eagle* mount up at thy command, and make *her* nest on high?"--*Ib.*, ver. 26. These were called, by the old grammarians, *epicene* nouns--that is, *supercommon*; but they are to be parsed each according to the gender of the pronoun which is put for it.

OBS. 6.--The gender of words, in many instances, is to be determined by the following principle of universal grammar. Those terms which are equally applicable to both sexes, (if they are not expressly applied to females,) and those plurals which are known to include both sexes, should be called masculine in parsing; for, in all languages, the masculine gender is considered the most worthy,[159] and is generally employed when both sexes are included under one common term. Thus *parents* is always masculine, and must be represented by a masculine pronoun, for the gender of a word is a property indivisible, and that which refers to the male sex, always takes the lead in such cases. If one say, "Joseph took *the young child and his mother* by night, and fled with *them* into Egypt," the pronoun *them* will be masculine; but let "*his*" be changed to *its*, and the plural pronoun that follows, will be feminine. For the feminine gender takes precedence of the neuter, but not of the masculine; and it is not improper to speak of a young child without designating the sex. As for such singulars as *parent*, *friend*, *neighbour*, *thief*, *slave*, and many others, they are feminine when expressly applied to any of the female sex; but otherwise, masculine.

OBS. 7.--Nouns of multitude, when they convey the idea of unity or take the plural form, are of the neuter gender; but when they convey the idea of plurality without the form, they follow the gender of the individuals which compose the assemblage. Thus a *congress*, a *council*, a *committee*, a *jury*, a *sort*, or a *sex*, if taken collectively, is neuter; being represented in discourse by the neuter pronoun *it*: and the formal plurals, *congresses*, *councils*, *committees*, *juries*, *sorts*, *sexes*, of course, are neuter also. But, if I say, "The committee disgraced *themselves*," the noun and pronoun are presumed to be masculine, unless it be known that I am speaking of a committee of females. Again: "The *fair sex*, whose task is not to mingle in the labours of public life, have *their* own part assigned *them* to act."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 132. Here *sex*, and the three pronouns which have that word for their antecedent, are all feminine. Again: "*Each sex*, dressing *themselves* in the clothes of the other."--*Wood's Dictionary*, v. *Feast of Purim*. Here *sex*, and the pronoun which follows, are masculine; because, the male sex, as well as the female, is here spoken of plurally.

OBS. 8.--To *persons*, of every description, known or unknown, real or imaginary, we uniformly ascribe

sex.[160] But, as personality implies intelligence, and sex supposes some obvious difference, a *young child* may be spoken of with distinction of sex or without, according to the notion of the speaker; as, "I went to see the *child* whilst they were putting on *its cloaths*."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 125. "Because the *child* has no idea of any nurse besides *his* own."--*Ib.*, p. 153. To *brute animals* also, the same distinction is generally applied, though with less uniformity. Some that are very small, have a gender which seems to be merely occasional and figurative; as, "Go to the *ant*, thou sluggard; consider *her* ways, and be wise."--*Prov.*, vi, 6. "The *spider* taketh hold with *her* hands, and is in kings' palaces."--*Prov.*, xxx, 28. So the *bee* is usually made feminine, being a little creature of admirable industry and economy. But, in general, irrational creatures whose sex is unknown, or unnecessary to be regarded, are spoken of as neuter; as, "And it became a *serpent*; and Moses fled from before *it*. And the Lord said unto Moses, Put forth thine hand, and take *it* by the tail. And he put forth his hand and caught *it*, and *it* became a rod in his hand."--*Exod.*, iv, 3, 4. Here, although the word *serpent* is sometimes masculine, the neuter pronoun seems to be more proper. So of some imaginary creatures: as, "*Phenix*, the fowl which is said to exist single, and to rise again from *its* own ashes."--*Webster's Dict.* "So shall the *Phoenix* escape, with no stain on *its* plumage."--*Dr. Bartlett's Lect.*, p. 10.

OBS. 9.--But this liberty of representing animals as of no sex, is often carried to a very questionable extent; as, "The *hare* sleeps with *its* eyes open."--*Barbault*. "The *hedgehog*, as soon as *it* perceives *itself* attacked, rolls *itself* into a kind of ball, and presents nothing but *its* prickles to the foe."--*Blair's Reader*, p. 138. "The *panther* is a ferocious creature: like the tiger *it* seizes *its* prey by surprise."--*Ib.*, p. 102. "The *leopard*, in *its* chace of prey, spares neither man nor beast."--*Ib.*, p. 103. "If a man shall steal an *ox*, or a *sheep*, and kill *it*, or sell *it*."--*Exod.*, xxii, 1. "A *dog* resists *its* instinct to run after a hare, because *it* recollects the beating *it* has previously received on that account. The *horse* avoids the stone at which *it* once has stumbled."--*Spurzheim, on Education*, p. 3. "The *racehorse* is looked upon with pleasure; but it is the *warhorse*, that carries grandeur in *its* idea."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 30.

OBS. 10.--The sexes are distinguished *by words*, in four different ways. First, by the use of different terminations: as, *Jew, Jewess; Julius, Julia; hero, heroine*. Secondly, by the use of entirely different names: as, *Henry, Mary; king, queen*. Thirdly, by compounds or phrases including some distinctive term: as, *Mr. Murray, Mrs. Murray; Englishman, Englishwoman; grandfather, grandmother; landlord, landlady; merman, mermaid; servingman, servingmaid; man-servant, maid-servant; schoolmaster, schoolmistress; school-boy, school-girl; peacock, peahen; cock-sparrow, hen-sparrow; he-goat, she-goat; buck-rabbit, doe-rabbit; male elephant, female elephant; male convicts, female convicts*. Fourthly, by the pronouns *he, his, him*, put for nouns masculine; and *she, her, hers*, for nouns feminine: as, "Ask *him* that fleeth, and *her* that escapeth, and say, What is done?"--*Jer.*, xlviii, 19.

"O happy *peasant*! Oh unhappy *bard*! *His* the mere tinsel, *hers* the rich reward."--*Cowper*.

OBS. 11.--For feminine nouns formed by inflection, the regular termination is *ess*; but the manner in which this ending is applied to the original or masculine noun, is not uniform:--

1. In some instances the syllable *ess* is simply added: as, *accuser, accuseress; advocate, advocatess; archer, archeress; author, authoress; avenger, avengeress; barber, barberess; baron, baroness; canon, canoness; cit, cittest; [161] coheir, coheiress; count, countess; deacon, deaconess; demon, demoness; diviner, divineress; doctor, doctoress; giant, giantess; god, goddess; guardian, guardianess; Hebrew, Hebrewess; heir, heiress; herd, herdess; hermit, hermitess; host, hostess; Jesuit, Jesuitess; Jew, Jewess; mayor, mayoress; Moabite, Moabitess; monarch, monarchess; pape, papess; or, pope, popess; patron, patroness; peer, peeress; poet, poetess; priest, priestess; prior, prioress; prophet, prophetess; regent, regentess; saint, saintess; shepherd, shepherdess; soldier, soldieress; tailor, tailoress; viscount, viscountess; warrior, warrioress*.

2. In other instances, the termination is changed, and there is no increase of syllables: as, *abbot, abbess; actor, actress; adulator, adulatress; adulterer, adulteress; adventurer, adventuress; advoutrer, advoutress; ambassador, ambassadress; anchorite, anchoress; or, anachoret, anachoreess; arbiter, arbitress; auditor,*

auditress; benefactor, benefactress; caterer, cateress; chanter, chantress; cloisterer, cloisteress; commander, commandress; conductor, conductress; creator, creatress; demander, demandress; detractor, detractress; eagle, eagless; editor, editress; elector, electress; emperor, emperess, or empress; emulator, emulatress; enchanter, enchantriss; exactor, exactress; fautor, fautress; fornicator, fornicatress; fosterer, fosteress, or fostress; founder, foundress; governor, governess; huckster, huckstress; or, hucksterer, hucksteress; idolater, idolatress; inhabiter, inhabitress; instructor, instructress; inventor, inventress; launderer, launderess, or laundress; minister, ministress; monitor, monitress; murderer, murderess; negro, negress; offender, offendress; ogre, ogress; porter, portress; progenitor, progenitress; protector, protectress; proprietor, proprietress; pythonist, pythoness; seamster, seamstress; solicitor, solicitress; songster, songstress; sorcerer, sorceress; suitor, suitress; tiger, tigress; traitor, traitress; victor, victress; votary, votaress.

3. In a few instances the feminine is formed as in Latin, by changing *or* to *rix*; but some of these have also the regular form, which ought to be preferred: as, *adjutor, adjutrix; administrator, administratrix; arbitrator, arbitratrice; coadjutor, coadjutrix; competitor, competitress, or competitrix; creditor, creditrix; director, directress, or directrix; executor, executress, or executrix; inheritor, inheritress, or inheritrix; mediator, mediatrix, or mediatrix; orator, oratress, or oratrix; rector, rectress, or rectrix; spectator, spectatress, or spectatrix; testator, testatrix; tutor, tutoress, or tutress, or tutrix; deserter, desertress, or desertrice, or desertrix.*

4. The following are irregular words, in which the distinction of sex is chiefly made by the termination: *amorous, amorosa: archduke, archduchess; chamberlain, chambermaid; duke, duchess; gaffer, gammer; goodman, goody; hero, heroine; landgrave, landgravine; margrave, margravine; marquis, marchioness; palsgrave, palsgravine; sakeret, sakerhawk; sewer, sewster; sultan, sultana; czar, czarina; tyrant, tyranness; widower, widow.*

OBS. 12.--The proper names of persons almost always designate their sex; for it has been found convenient to make the names of women different from those of men. We have also some appellatives which correspond to each other, distinguishing the sexes by their distinct application to each: as, *bachelor, maid; beau, belle; boy, girl; bridegroom, bride; brother, sister; buck, doe; boar, sow; bull, cow; cock, hen; colt, filly; dog, bitch; drake, duck; earl, countess; father, mother; friar, nun; gander, goose; grandsire, grandam; hart, roe; horse, mare; husband, wife; king, queen; lad, lass; lord, lady; male, female; man, woman; master, mistress; Mister, Missis; (Mr., Mrs. :) milter, spawner; monk, nun; nephew, niece; papa, mamma; rake, jilt; ram, ewe; ruff, reeve; sire, dam; sir, madam; sloven, slut; son, daughter; stag, hind; steer, heifer; swain, nymph; uncle, aunt; wizard, witch; youth, damsel; young man, maiden.*

OBS. 13.--The people of a particular country are commonly distinguished by some name derived from that of their country; as, *Americans, Africans, Egyptians, Russians, Turks*. Such words are sometimes called *gentile names*. There are also adjectives, of the same origin, if not the same form, which correspond with them. "Gentile names are for the most part considered as masculine, and the feminine is denoted by the gentile adjective and the noun *woman*: as, a *Spaniard*, a *Spanish woman*; a *Pole*, or *Polander*, a *Polish woman*. But, in a few instances, we always use a compound of the adjective with *man* or *woman*: as, an *Englishman*, an *Englishwoman*; a *Welshman*, a *Welshwoman*; an *Irishman*, an *Irishwoman*; a *Frenchman*, a *Frenchwoman*; a *Dutchman*, a *Dutchwoman*: and in these cases the adjective is employed as the collective noun; as, *the Dutch, the French, &c.* A *Scotchman*, and a *Scot*, are both in use; but the latter is not common in prose writers: though some employ it, and these generally adopt the plural, *Scots*, with the definite article, as the collective term."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 70.

OBS. 14.--The names of things without life, used literally, are always of the neuter gender: as, "When Cleopatra fled, Antony pursued her in a five-oared galley; and, coming along side of her *ship*, entered *it* without being seen by her."--*Goldsmith's Rome*, p. 160. "The *sun*, high as *it* is, has *its* business assigned; and so have the stars."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 138. But inanimate objects are often represented figuratively as having sex. Things remarkable for power, greatness, or sublimity, are spoken of as masculine; as, the *sun*,

time, death, sleep, fear, anger, winter, war. Things beautiful, amiable, or prolific, are spoken of as feminine; as, a *ship*, the *moon*, the *earth*, *nature*, *fortune*, *knowledge*, *hope*, *spring*, *peace*. Figurative gender is indicated only by the personal pronouns of the singular number: as, "When we say of the *sun*, *He* is setting; or of a *ship*, *She* sails well."--*L. Murray*. For these two objects, the *sun* and a *ship*, this phraseology is so common, that the literal construction quoted above is rarely met with.

OBS. 15.--When any inanimate object or abstract quality is distinctly personified, and presented to the imagination in the character of a living and intelligent being, there is necessarily a change of the gender of the word; for, whenever personality is thus ascribed to what is literally neuter, there must be an assumption of one or the other sex: as, "*The Genius of Liberty* is awakened, and springs up; *she* sheds her divine light and creative powers upon the two hemispheres. A great *nation*, astonished at seeing *herself* free, stretches *her* arms from one extremity of the earth to the other, and embraces the first nation that became so."--*Abbé Fauchet*. But there is an inferior kind of personification, or of what is called such, in which, so far as appears, the gender remains neuter: as, "The following is an instance of personification and apostrophe united: 'O *thou sword* of the Lord! how long will it be ere *thou* be quiet? put *thyself* up into *thy* scabbard, rest, and be still! How can *it* be quiet, seeing the Lord hath given *it* a charge against Askelon, and against the sea-shore? there hath he appointed *it*.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 348. See *Jer.*, xlvii, 6.

OBS. 16.--If what is called personification, does not always imply a change of gender and an ascription of sex, neither does a mere ascription of sex to what is literally of no sex, necessarily imply a personification; for there may be sex without personality, as we see in brute animals. Hence the gender of a brute animal personified in a fable, may be taken literally as before; and the gender which is figuratively ascribed to the *sun*, the *moon*, or a *ship*, is merely metaphorical. In the following sentence, *nature* is animated and made feminine by a metaphor, while a lifeless object bearing the name of *Venus*, is spoken of as neuter: "Like that conceit of old, which declared that the *Venus of Gnidus* was not the work of Praxiteles, since *nature herself* had concreted the boundary surface of *its* beauty."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. xxv.

OBS. 17.--"In personifications regard must be had to propriety in determining the gender. Of most of the passions and moral qualities of man the ancients formed deities, as they did of various other things: and, when these are personified, they are usually made male or female, according as they were gods or goddesses in the pagan mythology. The same rule applies in other cases: and thus the planet Jupiter will be masculine; Venus, feminine: the ocean, *Oce=anus*, masculine: rivers, months, and winds, the same: the names of places, countries, and islands, feminine."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 71.

OBS. 18.--These suggestions are worthy of consideration, but, for the gender which ought to be adopted in personifications, there seems to be no absolute general rule, or none which English writers have observed with much uniformity. It is well, however, to consider what is most common in each particular case, and abide by it. In the following examples, the sex ascribed is not that under which these several objects are commonly figured; for which reason, the sentences are perhaps erroneous:--

"*Knowledge* is proud that *he* has learn'd so much; *Wisdom* is humble that *he* knows no more."--*Cowper*.

"But hoary *Winter*, unadorned and bare, Dwells in the dire retreat, and freezes there; There *she* assembles all her blackest storms, And the rude hail in rattling tempests forms."--*Addison*.

"*Her* pow'r extends o'er all things that have breath, A cruel tyrant, and *her* name is *Death*."--*Sheffield*.

CASES.

Cases, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish the relations of nouns or pronouns to other words.

There are three cases; the *nominative*, the *possessive*, and the *objective*.

The *nominative case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb: as, The *boy* runs; *I* run.

The subject of a finite verb is that which answers to *who* or *what* before it; as, "The boy runs."--*Who* runs? "The *boy*." *Boy* is therefore here in the *nominative case*.

The *possessive case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the relation of property: as, The *boy's* hat; *my* hat.

The possessive case of nouns is formed, in the singular number, by adding to the nominative *s* preceded by an *apostrophe*; and, in the plural, when the nominative ends in *s*, by adding an *apostrophe only*: as, singular, *boy's*; plural, *boys'*;--sounded alike, but written differently.

The *objective case* is that form or state of a noun or pronoun which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition: as, I know the *boy*, having seen *him* at *school*; and he knows *me*.

The object of a verb, participle, or preposition, is that which answers to *whom* or *what* after it; as, "I know the *boy*."--I know *whom*? "The *boy*." *Boy* is therefore here in the *objective case*.

The nominative and the objective of nouns, are always alike in form, being distinguishable from each other only by their place in a sentence, or by their simple dependence according to the sense.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The cases, in grammar, are founded on the different relations under which things are represented in discourse; and from which the words acquire correspondent relations; or connexions and dependences according to the sense. In Latin, there are six cases; and in Greek, five. Consequently, the nouns and pronouns of those languages, and also their adjectives and participles, (which last are still farther inflected by the three genders,) are varied by many different terminations unknown to our tongue. In English, those modifications or relations which we call cases, belong only to nouns and pronouns; nor are there ever more than three. Pronouns are not necessarily like their antecedents in case.

OBS. 2.--Because the infinitive mood, a phrase, or a sentence, may in some instances be made the subject of a verb, so as to stand in that relation in which the nominative case is most commonly found; very many of our grammarians have deliberately represented all terms used in this manner, as being "*in the nominative case*:" as if, to sustain any one of the relations which are usually distinguished by a particular case, must necessarily constitute that modification itself. Many also will have participles, infinitives, phrases, and sentences, to be occasionally "*in the objective case*:" whereas it must be plain to every reader, that they are, all of them, *indeclinable* terms; and that, if used in any relation common to nouns or pronouns, they assume that office, as participles, as infinitives, as phrases, or as sentences, and not as *cases*. They no more take the nature of cases, than they become nouns or pronouns. Yet Nixon, by assuming that *of*, with the word governed by it, constitutes a *possessive case*, contrives to give to participles, and even to the infinitive mood, *all three of the cases*. Of the infinitive, he says, "An examination of the first and second methods of parsing this mood, must naturally lead to the inference that *it is a substantive*; and that, if it has the nominative case, it must also have the possessive and objective cases of a substantive. The fourth method proves its [capacity of] being in the possessive case: thus, 'A desire *to learn*;' that is, '*of learning*.' When it follows a participle, or a verb, as by the fifth or [the] seventh method, it is in the objective case. Method sixth is analogous to the Case Absolute of a substantive."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 83. If the infinitive mood is really a *declinable substantive*, none of our grammarians have placed it in the right chapter; except that bold contemner of all grammatical and literary authority, Oliver B. Peirce. When will the cause of learning cease to have assailants and underminers among those who profess to serve it? Thus every new grammarist, has some grand absurdity or other, peculiar to himself; and what can be more gross, than to talk of English infinitives and participles as being in the

possessive case?

OBS. 3.--It was long a subject of dispute among the grammarians, what number of cases an English noun should be supposed to have. Some, taking the Latin language for their model, and turning certain phrases into cases to fill up the deficits, were for having *six* in each number; namely, the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative. Others, contending that a case in grammar could be nothing else than a terminational inflection, and observing that English nouns have but one case that differs from the nominative in form, denied that there were more than two, the nominative and the possessive. This was certainly an important question, touching a fundamental principle of our grammar; and any erroneous opinion concerning it, might well go far to condemn the book that avouched it. Every intelligent teacher must see this. For what sense could be made of parsing, without supposing an objective case to nouns? or what propriety could there be in making the words, *of*, and *to*, and *from*, govern or compose three different cases? Again, with what truth can it be said, that nouns have *no cases* in English? or what reason can be assigned for making more than three?

OBS. 4.--Public opinion is now clear in the decision, that it is *expedient* to assign to English nouns three cases, and no more; and, in a matter of this kind, what is expedient for the purpose of instruction, is right. Yet, from the works of our grammarians, may be quoted every conceivable notion, right or wrong, upon this point. Cardell, with Tooke and Gilchrist on his side, contends that English nouns have *no cases*. Brightland averred that they have neither cases nor genders.[162] Buchanan, and the author of the old British Grammar, assigned to them *one* case only, the possessive, or genitive. Dr. Adam also says, "In English, nouns have *only one case*, namely, the genitive, or possessive case."--*Latin and Eng. Gram.*, p. 7. W. B. Fowle has two cases, but rejects the word *case*: "We use the simple term *agent* for a *noun that acts*, and *object* for the object of an action."--*Fowle's True Eng. Gram.*, Part II, p. 68. Spencer too discards the word *case*, preferring "*form*," that he may merge in one the nominative and the objective, giving to nouns *two* cases, but neither of these. "Nouns have *two Forms*, called the *Simple* and [the] *Possessive*."--*Spencer's E. Gram.*, p. 30. Webber's Grammar, published at Cambridge in 1832, recognizes but *two* cases of nouns, declaring the objective to be "altogether superfluous."--P. 22. "Our substantives have no more cases than two."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 14. "A Substantive doth not properly admit of more than two cases: the Nominative, and the Genitive."--*Ellen Devis's Gram.*, p. 19. Dr. Webster, in his Philosophical Grammar, of 1807, and in his Improved Grammar, of 1831, teaches the same doctrine, but less positively. This assumption has also had the support of Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, Ash, Bicknell, Fisher, Dalton, and our celebrated Lindley Murray.[163] In Child's or Latham's English Grammar, 1852, it is said, "The cases in the present English are three:--1. Nominative; 2. Objective; 3. Possessive." But this seems to be meant of pronouns only; for the next section affirms, "The *substantives* in English have *only two* out of the three cases."--See pp. 79 and 80. Reckless of the current usage of grammarians, and even of self-consistency, both author and reviser will have no objective case of nouns, because this is like the nominative; yet, finding an objective set after "the adjective *like*," they will recognize it as "*a dative* still existing in English!"--See p. 156. Thus do they forsake their own enumeration of cases, as they had before, in all their declensions, forsaken the new order in which they had at first so carefully set them!

OBS. 5.--For the *true* doctrine of *three* cases, we have the authority of Murray, in his later editions; of Webster, in his "Plain and Comp. Grammar, grounded on *True Principles*," 1790; also in his "Rudiments of English Grammar," 1811; together with the united authority of Adams, Ainsworth, Alden, Alger, Bacon, Barnard, Bingham, Burr, Bullions, Butler, Churchill, Chandler, Cobbett, Cobbin, Comly, Cooper, Crombie, Davenport, Davis, Fisk, A. Flint, Frost, Guy, Hart, Hiley, Hull, Ingersoll, Jaudon, Kirkham, Lennie, Mack, McCulloch, Maunder, Merchant, Nixon, Nutting, John Peirce, Perley, Picket, Russell, Smart, R. C. Smith, Rev. T. Smith, Wilcox, and I know not how many others.

OBS. 6.--Dearborn, in 1795, recognized *four* cases: "the nominative, the possessive, the objective, and the absolute."--*Columbian Gram.*, pp. 16 and 20. Charles Bucke, in his work misnamed "A Classical Grammar of the English Language," published in London in 1829, asserts, that, "Substantives in English do not vary their

terminations;" yet he gives them *four* cases; "the nominative, the genitive, the accusative, and the vocative." So did Allen, in a grammar much more classical, dated, London, 1813. Hazen, in 1842, adopted "four cases; namely, the nominative, the possessive, the objective, and the independent."--*Hazen's Practical Gram.*, p. 35. Mulligan, since, has chosen these four: "Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative."--*Structure of E. Lang.*, p. 185. And yet his case after *to* or *for* is not "*dative*," but "*accusative*!"--*Ib.*, p. 239. So too, Goodenow, of Maine, makes the cases four: "the *subjective*, [164] the *possessive*, the *objective*, and the *absolute*."--*Text-Book*, p. 31. Goldsbury, of Cambridge, has also four: "the Nominative, the Possessive, the Objective, and the Vocative."--*Com. S. Gram.*, p. 13. Three other recent grammarians,--Wells, of Andover,--Weld, of Portland,--and Clark, of Bloomfield, N. Y.,--also adopt "*four cases*;--the *nominative*, the *possessive*, the *objective*, and the *independent*."--*Wells's Gram.*, p. 57; *Weld's*, 60; *Clark's*, 49. The first of these gentlemen argues, that, "Since a noun or pronoun, used *independently*, cannot at the same time be employed as 'the subject of a verb,' there is a manifest impropriety in regarding it as a *nominative*." It might as well be urged, that a nominative after a verb, or in apposition with an other, is, for this reason, not a *nominative*. He also cites this argument: "'Is there not as much difference between the *nominative* and [the] *independent* case, as there is between the *nominative* and [the] *objective*? If so, why class them together as *one* case?'"--*S. R. Hall*."--*Wells's School Gram.*, p. 51. To this I answer, No. "The nominative is that case which *primely denotes the name* of any person or thing;" (*Burn's Gram.*, p. 36;) and *this only* it is, that can be absolute, or independent, in English. This scheme of four cases is, in fact, a grave innovation. As authority for it, Wells cites Felton; and bids his readers, "See also Kennion, Parkhurst, Fowle, Flint, Goodenow, Buck, Hazen, Goldsbury, Chapin, S. Alexander, and P. Smith."--Page 57. But is the fourth case of these authors *the same* as his? Is it a case which "has usually the nominative form," but admits occasionally of "*me*" and "*him*," and embraces objective nouns of "*time, measure, distance, direction, or place*?" No. Certainly one half of them, and probably more, give little or no countenance to *such* an independent case as he has adopted. Parkhurst admitted but three cases; though he thought *two others* "might be an improvement." What Fowle has said in support of Wells's four cases, I have sought with diligence, and not found. Felton's "independent case" is only what he absurdly calls, "*The noun or pronoun addressed*."--Page 91. Bucke and Goldsbury acknowledge "*the nominative case absolute*;" and none of the twelve, so far as I know, admit any objective word, or what others call objective, to be independent or absolute, except perhaps Goldsbury.

OBS. 7.--S. R. Hall, formerly principal of the Seminary for Teachers at Andover, (but no great grammarian,) in 1832, published a manual, called "The Grammatical Assistant;" in which he says, "There are *at least five cases*, belonging to English nouns, differing as much from *each* other, as the cases of Latin and Greek nouns. They may be called Nominative, Possessive, Objective, Independent and Absolute."--P. 7. O. B. Peirce will have both nouns and pronouns to be used in *five cases*, which he thus enumerates: "Four simple cases; the Subjective, Possessive, Objective, and the Independent; and the Twofold case."--*Gram.*, p. 42. But, on page 56th, he speaks of a "twofold *subjective* case," "the twofold *objective* case," and shows how the *possessive* may be twofold also; so that, without taking any of the Latin cases, or even all of Hall's, he really recognizes as many as seven, if not eight. Among the English grammars which assume all the *six cases* of the Latin Language, are Burn's, Coar's, Dilworth's, Mackintosh's, Mennye's, Wm. Ward's, and the "Comprehensive Grammar," a respectable little book, published by Dobson of Philadelphia, in 1789, but written by somebody in England.

OBS. 8.--Of the English grammars which can properly be said to be *now in use*, a very great majority agree in ascribing to nouns three cases, and three only. This, I am persuaded, is the best number, and susceptible of the best defence, whether we appeal to authority, or to other argument. The disputes of grammarians make no small part of the *history of grammar*; and in submitting to be guided by their decisions, it is proper for us to consider what *degree of certainty* there is in the rule, and what difference or concurrence there is among them: for, the teaching of any other than the best opinions, is not the teaching of science, come from what quarter it may. On the question respecting the objective case of nouns, Murray and Webster *changed sides with each other*; and that, long after they first appeared as grammarians. Nor was this the only, or the most important instance, in which the different editions of the works of these two gentlemen, present them in opposition, both to themselves and to each other. "What cases are there in English? The *nominative*, which usually stands

before a verb; as, the *boy* writes: The *possessive*, which takes an *s* with a *comma*, and denotes property; as, *John's hat*: The *objective*, which follows a verb or preposition; as, he honors *virtue*, or it is an honor to *him*."--*Webster's Plain and Comp. Gram., Sixth Edition*, 1800, p. 9. "But for convenience, the two positions of nouns, one *before*, the other *after* the verb, are called *cases*. There are then three cases, the *nominative*, *possessive*, and *objective*."--*Webster's Rudiments of Gram.*, 1811, p. 12. "In English therefore names have two cases only, the *nominative* or simple name, and the *possessive*."--*Webster's Philosoph. Gram.*, 1807, p. 32: also his *Improved Gram.*, 1831, p. 24.

OBS. 9.--Murray altered his opinion after the tenth or eleventh edition of his duodecimo Grammar. His instructions stand thus: "In English, substantives have but two cases, the nominative, and [the] possessive or genitive."--*Murray's Gram. 12mo, Second Edition*, 1796, p. 35. "For the assertion, that there are in English but two cases of nouns, and three of pronouns, we have the authority of Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, &c. *names which are sufficient* to decide this point."--*Ib.*, p. 36. "In English, substantives have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--*Murray's Gram., 12mo, Twenty-third Edition*, 1816, p. 44. "The author of this work *long doubted* the propriety of assigning to English substantives an *objective case*: but a renewed critical examination of the subject; an examination to which he was prompted by the extensive and increasing demand for the grammar, has produced in his mind *a full persuasion*, that the nouns of our language are entitled to this comprehensive objective case."--*Ib.*, p. 46. If there is any credit in changing one's opinions, it is, doubtless, in changing them for the better; but, of all authors, a grammarian has the most need critically to examine his subject before he goes to the printer. "This case was adopted in the *twelfth edition* of the Grammar."--*Murray's Exercises*, 12mo, N. Y., 1818, p. viii.

OBS. 10.--The *possessive case* has occasioned no less dispute than the objective. On this vexed article of our grammar, custom has now become much more uniform than it was a century ago; and public opinion may be said to have settled most of the questions which have been agitated about it. Some individuals, however, are still dissatisfied. In the first place, against those who have thought otherwise, it is determined, by infinite odds of authority, that there *is such a case*, both of nouns and of pronouns. Many a common reader will wonder, who can have been ignorant enough to deny it. "The learned and sagacious Wallis, to whom every English grammarian owes a tribute of reverence, calls this modification of the noun an *adjective possessive*; I think, with no more propriety than he might have applied the same to the Latin genitive."--*Dr. Johnson's Gram.*, p. 5. Brightland also, who gave to *adjectives* the name of *qualities*, included all possessives among them, calling them "*Possessive Qualities*, or *Qualities of Possession*."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 90.

OBS. 11.--This exploded error, William S. Cardell, a few years ago, republished as a novelty; for which, among other pretended improvements of a like sort, he received the ephemeral praise of some of our modern literati. William B. Fowle also teaches the same thing. See his *Common School Gram.*, Part II, p. 104. In Felch's Grammar, too, published in Boston in 1837, an attempt is made, to revive this old doctrine; but the author takes no notice of any of the above-named authorities, being probably ignorant of them all. His *reasoning* upon the point, does not appear to me to be worthy of a detailed answer.[165] That the possessive case of nouns is not an adjective, is demonstrable; because it may have adjectives of various kinds, relating to it: as, "*This old man's daughter*."--*Shak.* It may also govern an other possessive; as, "*Peter's wife's mother*."--*Bible*. Here the former possessive is governed by the latter; but, if both were adjectives, they would both relate to the noun *mother*, and so produce a confusion of ideas. Again, nouns of the possessive case have a distinction of number, which adjectives have not. In gender also, there lies a difference. Adjectives, whenever they are varied by gender or number, *agree with their nouns* in these respects. Not so with possessives; as, "In the *Jews' religion*."--*Gal.*, i. 13. "The *children's bread*."--*Mark*, vii, 27. "Some *men's sins*."--*1 Tim.*, v, 24. "Other *men's sins*."--*Ib.*, ver. 22.

OBS. 12.--Secondly, general custom has clearly determined that the possessive case of *nouns* is always to be written *with an apostrophe*: except in those few instances in which it is not governed singly by the noun following, but so connected with an other that both are governed jointly; as, "*Cato the Censor's doctrine*,"--"*Sir Walter Scott's Works*,"--"*Beaumont and Fletcher's Plays*." This custom of using the

apostrophe, however, has been opposed by many. Brightland, and Buchanan, and the author of the British Grammar, and some late writers in the Philological Museum, are among those who have successively taught, that the possessive case should be formed *like the nominative plural*, by adding *s* when the pronunciation admits the sound, and *es* when the word acquires an additional syllable. Some of these approve of the apostrophe, and others do not. Thus Brightland gives some examples, which are contrary to his rule, adopting that strange custom of putting the *s* in Roman, and the name in Italic; "as, King *Charles's Court*, and St. *James's Park*."--*Gram. of the English Tongue*, p. 91.

OBS. 13.--"The genitive case, in my opinion," says Dr. Ash, "might be much more properly formed by adding *s*, or when the pronunciation requires it, *es*, without an Apostrophe: as, *men, mens; Ox, Oxes; Horse, Horses; Ass, Asses*."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 23. "To write *Ox's, Ass's, Fox's*, and at the same time pronounce it *Oxes, Asses, Foxes*, is such a departure from the original formation, at least in writing, and such an inconsistent use of the Apostrophe, as cannot be equalled perhaps in any other language."--*Ib.* Lowth, too, gives some countenance to this objection: "It [i.e., '*God's grace*'] was formerly written '*Godis grace*;' we now always shorten it with an apostrophe; often *very improperly*, when we are obliged to pronounce it fully; as, '*Thomas's book*,' that is, '*Thomas's book*,' not '*Thomas his book*,' as it is commonly supposed."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 17. Whatever weight there may be in this argument, the objection has been overruled by general custom. The convenience of distinguishing, even to the eye alone, the numbers and cases of the noun, is found too great to be relinquished. If the declension of English nouns is ever to be amended, it cannot be done in this way. It is understood by every reader, that the *apostrophic s* adds a syllable to the noun, whenever it will not unite with the sound in which the nominative ends; as, *torch's*, pronounced *torchiz*.

"Yet time ennobles or degrades each line; It brightened *Craggs's*, and may darken thine."--*Pope*.

OBS. 14.--The English possessive case unquestionably originated in that form of the Saxon genitive which terminates in *es*, examples of which may be found in almost any specimen of the Saxon tongue: as, "On *Herodes dagum*,"--"In *Herod's days*;"--"Of *Aarones dothrum*,"--"Of *Aaron's daughters*."--*Luke*, i, 5. This ending was sometimes the same as that of the plural; and both were changed to *is* or *ys*, before they became what we now find them. This termination added a syllable to the word; and Lowth suggests, in the quotation above, that the apostrophe was introduced to shorten it. But some contend, that the use of this mark originated in a mistake. It appears from the testimony of Brightland, Johnson, Lowth, Priestley, and others, who have noticed the error in order to correct it, that an opinion was long entertained, that the termination '*s*' was a contraction of the word *his*. It is certain that Addison thought so; for he expressly says it, in the 135th number of the Spectator. Accordingly he wrote, in lieu of the regular possessive, "My paper is *Ulysses his* bow."--*Guardian*, No. 98. "Of *Socrates his* rules of prayer."--*Spect.*, No. 207. So Lowth quotes Pope: "By young *Telemachus his* blooming years."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 17.[166] There is also one late author who says, "The '*s*' is a contraction of *his*, and was formerly written in full; as, William Russell *his* book."--*Goodenow's Gram.*, p. 32. This is undoubtedly bad English; and always was so, however common may have been the erroneous notion which gave rise to it. But the apostrophe, whatever may have been its origin, is now the acknowledged distinctive mark of the possessive case of English nouns. The application of the '*s*', frequently to feminines, and sometimes to plurals, is proof positive that it is *not a contraction* of the pronoun *his*; as,

"Now Jove suspends his golden scales in air, Weighs the *men's* wits against the *Lady's* hair." --*Pope*, R. of L., C. v, l. 72.

OBS. 15.--Many of the old grammarians, and Guy, Pinneo, and Spencer, among the moderns, represent the regular formation of the possessive case as being the same in both numbers, supposing generally in the plural an abbreviation of the word by the omission of the second or syllabic *s*. That is, they suppose that such terms as *eagles' wings, angels' visits*, were written for *eagles's wings, angels's visits*, &c. This odd view of the matter accounts well enough for the fashion of such plurals as *men's, women's, children's*, and makes them regular. But I find no evidence at all of the fact on which these authors presume; nor do I believe that the regular possessive plural was ever, in general, a syllable longer than the nominative. If it ever had been so, it

would still be easy to prove the point, by citations from ancient books. The general principle then is, that *the apostrophe forms the possessive case, with an s in the singular, and without it in the plural*; but there are some exceptions to this rule, on either hand; and these must be duly noticed.

OBS. 16.--The chief exceptions, or irregularities, in the formation of the possessive *singular*, are, I think, to be accounted mere poetic licenses; and seldom, if ever, to be allowed in prose. Churchill, (closely copying Lowth,) speaks of them thus: "In poetry the *s* is frequently omitted after proper names ending in *s* or *x* as, 'The wrath of *Peleus*' son.' *Pope*. This is scarcely allowable in prose, though instances of it occur: as, '*Moses*' minister.' *Josh.*, i, 1. '*Phinehas*' wife.' *1 Sam.*, iv, 19. 'Festus came into *Felix*' room.' *Acts*, xxiv, 27. It was done in prose evidently to avoid the recurrence of a sibilant sound at the end of two following syllables; but this may as readily be obviated by using the preposition *of*, which is now commonly substituted for the possessive case in most instances."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 215. In Scott's Bible, Philadelphia, 1814, the texts here quoted are all of them corrected, thus: "*Moses's* minister,"--"*Phinehas's* wife,"--"*Felix's* room." But the phrase, "for *conscience* sake," (*Rom.*, xiii, 5,) is there given without the apostrophe. Alger prints it, "for *conscience*' sake," which is better; and though not regular, it is a common form for this particular expression. Our common Bibles have this text: "And the weaned child shall put his hand on the *cockatrice*' den."--*Isaiah*, xi, 8. Alger, seeing this to be wrong, wrote it, "on the *cockatrice-den*."--*Pronouncing Bible*. Dr. Scott, in his Reference Bible, makes this possessive regular, "on the *cockatrice's* den." This is right. The Vulgate has it, "*in caverna reguli*;" which, however, is not classic Latin. After *z* also, the poets sometimes drop the *s*: as,

"Sad was the hour, and luckless was the day, When first from *Shiraz*' walls I bent my way."--*Collins*.

OBS. 17.--A recent critic, who, I think, has not yet learned to speak or write the possessive case of *his own name* properly, assumes that the foregoing occasional or poetical forms are the only true ones for the possessive singular of such words. He says, "When the name *does end* with the sound of *s* or *z*, (no matter what letter represents the sound,) the possessive form *is made* by annexing only an apostrophe."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 44. Agreeably to this rule, he letters his work, "*Peirce's Grammar*," and condemns, as bad English, the following examples and all others like them: "James *Otis's* letters, General *Gates's* command, General *Knox's* appointment, Gov. *Meigs's* promptness, Mr. *Williams's* oration, The *witness's* deposition."--*Ib.*, p. 60. It is obvious that this gentleman's doctrine and criticism are as contrary to the common practice of all good authors, as they are to the common grammars, which he ridicules. Surely, such expressions as, "*Harris's* Hermes, *Philips's* Poems, *Prince's* Bay, *Prince's* Island, *Fox's* Journal, King *James's* edict, a *justice's* warrant, *Sphinx's* riddle, the *lynx's* beam, the *lass's* beauty," have authority enough to refute the cavil of this writer; who, being himself wrong, falsely charges the older grammarians, that, "their theories vary from the principles of the language correctly spoken or written."--*Ib.*, p. 60. A much more judicious author treats this point of grammar as follows: "When the possessive noun is singular, and terminates with an *s*, another *s* is requisite after it, and the apostrophe must be placed between the two; as, '*Dickens's* works,'--'*Harris's* wit.'"--*Day's Punctuation, Third London Edition*, p. 136. The following example, too, is right: "I would not yield to be your *house's* guest."--*Shakespeare*.

OBS. 18.--All *plural* nouns that differ from the singular without ending in *s*, form the possessive case in the same manner as the singular: as, *man's*, *men's*; *woman's*, *women's*; *child's*, *children's*; *brother's*, *brothers' or brethren's*; *ox's*, *oxen's*; *goose*, *geese's*. In two or three words which are otherwise alike in both numbers, the apostrophe ought to follow the *s* in the plural, to distinguish it from the singular: as, the *sheep's* fleece, the *sheeps'* fleeces; a *neat's* tongue, *neats'* tongues; a *deer's* horns, a load of *deers'* horns.

OBS. 19.--Dr. Ash says, "Nouns of the plural number that end in *s*, will not very properly admit of the genitive case."--*Ash's Gram.*, p. 54. And Dr. Priestley appears to have been of the same opinion. See his *Gram.*, p. 69. Lowth too avers, that the sign of the possessive case is "never added to the plural number ending in *s*."--*Gram.*, p. 18. Perhaps he thought the plural sign must involve an other *s*, like the singular. This however is not true, neither is Dr. Ash's assertion true; for the New Testament speaks as properly of "the *soldiers'* counsel," as of the "*centurion's* servant;" of "the scribes that were of the *Pharisees'* part," as of

"*Paul's sister's* son." It would appear, however, that the possessive plural is less frequently used than the possessive singular; its place being much oftener supplied by the preposition *of* and the objective. We cannot say that either of them is absolutely necessary to the language; but they are both worthy to be commended, as furnishing an agreeable variety of expression.

"Then shall *man's* pride and dulness comprehend His *actions', passions', being's* use and end."--*Pope*.

OBS. 20.--The apostrophe was introduced into the possessive case, at least for the singular number, in some part of the seventeenth century. Its adoption for the plural, appears to have been later: it is not much used in books a hundred years old. In Buchanan's "Regular English Syntax," which was written, I know not exactly when, but near the middle of the eighteenth century, I find the following paragraph: "We have certainly a Genitive Plural, though there has been no Mark to distinguish it. The Warriors Arms, i. e. the Arms of the Warriors, is as much a Genitive Plural, as the Warrior's Arms, for the Arms of the Warrior is a Genitive Singular. To distinguish this Genitive Plural, especially to Foreigners, we might use the Apostrophe reversed, thus, the Warrior`s Arms, the Stone`s End, for the End of the Stones, the Grocer`s, Taylor`s, Haberdasher`s, &c. Company; for the Company of Grocers, Taylors, &c. The Surgeon`s Hall, for the Hall of the Surgeons; the Rider`s Names, for the Names of the Riders; and so of all Plural Possessives."--See *Buchan. Synt.*, p. 111. Our present form of the possessive plural, being unknown to this grammarian, must have had a later origin; nor can it have been, as some imagine it was, an abbreviation of a longer and more ancient form.

OBS. 21.--The apostrophic *s* has often been added to nouns *improperly*; the words formed by it not being intended for the possessive singular, but for the nominative or objective plural. Thus we find such authors as Addison and Swift, writing *Jacobus's* and *genius's*, for *Jacobuses* and *geniuses*; *idea's*, *toga's*, and *tunica's*, for *ideas*, *togas*, and *tunicas*; *enamorado's* and *virtuoso's*, for *enamoratoes* and *virtuosoes*. Errors of this kind, should be carefully avoided.

OBS. 22.--The apostrophe and *s* are sometimes added to mere characters, to denote plurality, and not the possessive case; as, two *a's*, three *b's*, four *9's*. These we cannot avoid, except by using the *names* of the things: as, two *Aes*, three *Bees*, four *Nines*. "Laced down the sides with little *c's*."--*Steele*. "Whenever two *gg's* come together, they are both hard."--*Buchanan*. The names of *c* and *g*, plural, are *Cees* and *Gees*. Did these authors *know* the words, or did they not? To have learned the *names* of the letters, will be found on many occasions a great convenience, especially to critics. For example: "The pronunciation of these two consecutive *s's* is hard."--*Webber's Gram.*, p. 21. Better: "*Esses*." "*S* and *x*, however, are exceptions. They are pluralized by adding *es* preceded by a hyphen [-], as the *s-es*; the *x-es*."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 40. Better, use the *names*, *Ess* and *Ex*, and pluralize thus: "the *Esses*; the *Exes*."

"Make *Q's* of answers, to waylay What th' other party's like to say." --*Hudibras*, P. III, C. ii, l. 951.

Here the cipher is to be read *Kues*, but it has not the meaning of this name merely. It is put either for the plural of *Q.*, a *Question*, like *D. D.'s*, (read *Dee-Dees*,) for *Doctors of Divinity*; or else, more erroneously, for *cues*, the plural of *cue*, a turn which the next speaker catches.

OBS. 23.--In the following example, the apostrophe and *s* are used to give the sound of a *verb's* termination, to words which the writer supposed were not properly verbs: "When a man in a soliloquy reasons with himself, and *pro's* and *con's*, and weighs all his designs."--*Congreve*. But here, "*proes* and *cons*," would have been more accurate. "We put the ordered number of *m's* into our composing-stick."--*Printer's Gram*. Here "*Ems*" would have done as well. "All measures for *folio's* and *quarto's*, should be made to *m's* of the English body; all measures for *octavo's*, to *Pica m's*."--*Ibid*. Here regularity requires, "*folios*, *quarto'es*, *octavo'es*," and "*pica Ems*." The verb *is*, when contracted, sometimes gives to its nominative the same form as that of the possessive case, it not being always spaced off for distinction, as it may be; as,

"A *wit's* a feather, and a chief a rod; An honest *man's* the noblest work of God." --*Pope*, on *Man*, Ep. iv, l.

247.

OBS. 24.--As the *objective case of nouns* is to be distinguished from the nominative, only by the sense, relation, and position, of words in a sentence, the learner must acquire a habit of attending to these several things. Nor ought it to be a hardship to any reader to understand that which he thinks worth reading. It is seldom possible to mistake one of these cases for the other, without a total misconception of the author's meaning. The nominative denotes the agent, actor, or doer; the person or thing that is made the subject of an affirmation, negation, question, or supposition: its place, except in a question, is commonly *before* the verb. The objective, when governed by a verb or a participle, denotes the person on whom, or the thing on which, the action falls and terminates: it is commonly placed *after* the verb, participle, or preposition, which governs it. Nouns, then, by changing places, may change cases: as, "*Jonathan loved David*;" "*David loved Jonathan*." Yet the case depends not entirely upon position; for any order in which the words cannot be misunderstood, is allowable: as, "*Such tricks hath strong imagination*."--*Shak*. Here the cases are known, because the meaning is plainly this: "*Strong imagination hath such tricks*." "*To him give all the prophets witness*."--*Acts*, x, 43. This is intelligible enough, and more forcible than the same meaning expressed thus: "*All the prophets give witness to him*." The *order* of the words never can affect the explanation to be given of them in parsing, unless it change the sense, and form them into a different sentence.

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

The declension of a noun is a regular arrangement of its numbers and cases. Thus:--

EXAMPLE I.--FRIEND.

Sing. Nom. friend, Plur. Nom. friends, Poss. friend's, Poss. friends', Obj. friend; Obj. friends.

EXAMPLE II.--MAN.

Sing. Nom. man, Plur. Nom. men, Poss. man's, Poss. men's, Obj. man; Obj. men.

EXAMPLE III.--FOX.

Sing. Nom. fox, Plur. Nom. foxes, Poss. fox's, Poss. foxes', Obj. fox; Obj. foxes.

EXAMPLE IV.--FLY.

Sing. Nom. fly, Plur. Nom. flies, Poss. fly's, Poss. flies', Obj. fly; Obj. flies.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS III.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

In the Third Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the ARTICLES and NOUNS.

The definitions to be given in the Third Praxis, are two for an article, six for a noun, and one for an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle, an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The writings of Hannah More appear to me more praiseworthy than Scott's."

The is the definite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

Writings is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

Of is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

Hannah More is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, feminine gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the name of some particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The feminine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the female kind. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

Appear is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

To is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

Me is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

More is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Praiseworthy is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

Than is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

Scott's is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and possessive case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the name of some particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The possessive case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the relation of property.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The virtue of Alexander appears to me less vigorous than that of Socrates. Socrates in Alexander's place I can readily conceive: Alexander in that of Socrates I cannot. Alexander will tell you, he can subdue the world: it was a greater work in Socrates to fulfill the duties of life. Worth consists most, not in great, but in good actions."--*Kames's Art of Thinking*, p. 70.

"No one should ever rise to speak in public, without forming to himself a just and strict idea of what suits his own age and character; what suits the subject, the hearers, the place, the occasion."--*Blair's Rhetoric*, p. 260.

"In the short space of little more than a century, the Greeks became such statesmen, warriors, orators, historians, physicians, poets, critics, painters, sculptors, architects, and, last of all, philosophers, that one can hardly help considering that golden period, as a providential event in honour of human nature, to show to what perfection the species might ascend."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 417.

"Is genius yours? Be yours a glorious end, Be your king's, country's, truth's, religion's friend."--*Young*.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"He that is called in the Lord, being a servant, is the Lord's freeman: likewise also, he that is called, being free, is Christ's servant."--*1 Cor.*, vii, 22.

"What will remain to the Alexanders, and the Cæsars, and the Jenghizes, and the Louises, and the Charleses, and the Napoleons, with whose 'glories' the idle voice of fame is filled?"--*J. Dymond*. "Good sense, clear ideas, perspicuity of language, and proper arrangement of words and thoughts, will always command attention."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 174.

"A mother's tenderness and a father's care are nature's gifts for man's advantage.--Wisdom's precepts form the good man's interest and happiness."--*Murray's Key*, p. 194.

"A dancing-school among the Tuscaroras, is not a greater absurdity than a masquerade in America. A theatre, under the best regulations, is not essential to our happiness. It may afford entertainment to individuals; but it is at the expense of private taste and public morals."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 86.

"Where dancing sunbeams on the waters played, And verdant alders form'd a quivering shade."--*Pope*.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"I have ever thought that advice to the young, unaccompanied by the routine of honest employments, is like an attempt to make a shrub grow in a certain direction, by blowing it with a bellows."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 247.

"The Arabic characters for the writing of numbers, were introduced into Europe by Pope Sylvester II, in the eleventh century."--*Constable's Miscellany*.

"Emotions raised by inanimate objects, trees, rivers, buildings, pictures, arrive at perfection almost instantaneously; and they have a long endurance, a second view producing nearly the same pleasure with the first."--*Kames's Elements*, i, 108.

"There is great variety in the same plant, by the different appearances of its stem, branches, leaves, blossoms, fruit, size, and colour; and yet, when we trace that variety through different plants, especially of the same kind, there is discovered a surprising uniformity."--*Ib.*, i, 273.

"Attitude, action, air, pause, start, sigh, groan, He borrow'd, and made use of as his own."--*Churchill*.

"I dread thee, fate, relentless and severe, With all a poet's, husband's, father's fear!"--*Burns*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF NOUNS.

LESSON I.--NUMBERS.

"All the ablest of the Jewish Rabbis acknowledge it."--*Wilson's Heb. Gram.*, p. 7.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word *Rabbi* is here made plural by the addition of *s* only. But, according to Observation 12th on the Numbers, nouns in *i* ought rather to form the plural in *ies*. The capital *R*, too, is not necessary. Therefore, *Rabbis* should be *rabbies*, with *ies* and a small *r*.]

"Who has thoroughly imbibed the system of one or other of our Christian rabbis."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 378. "The seeming singularitys of reason soon wear off."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 47. "The chiefs and arikis or priests have the power of declaring a place or object taboo."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 460. "Among the various tribes of this family, are the Pottawatomes, the Sacs and Foxes, or Saukis and Ottogamis."--*Ib.*, p. 178. "The Shawnees, Kickapoos, Menomonies, Miamis and Delawares, are of the same region."--*Ib.*, p. 178. "The Mohegans and Abenakis belonged also to this family."--*Ib.*, p. 178. "One tribe of this family, the Winnebagos, formerly resided near lake Michigan."--*Ib.*, p. 179. "The other tribes are the Ioways, the Otoes, the Missouris, the Quapaws."--*Ib.*, p. 179. "The great Mexican family comprises the Aztecs, Toltecs, and Tarascos."--*Ib.*, p. 179. "The Mulattoes are born of negro and white parents; the Zambos, of Indians and negroes."--*Ib.*, p. 165. "To have a place among the Alexanders, the Cæsars, the Lewis', or the Charles', the scourges and butchers of their fellow-creatures."--*Burgh's Dignity*, i, 132. "Which was the notion of the Platonic Philosophers and Jewish rabbii."--*Ib.*, p. 248. "That they should relate to the whole body of virtuosos."--*Gobbett's E. Gram.*, ¶ 212. "What thank have ye? for sinners also love those that love them."--*Luke*, vi, 32. "There are five ranks of nobility; dukes, marquesses, earls, viscounts, and barons."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 228. "Acts, which were so well known to the two Charles's."--*Payne's Geog.*, ii, 511. "Court Martials are held in all parts, for the trial of the blacks."--*Observer*, No. 458. "It becomes a common noun, and may have a plural number; as, the two *Davids*; the two *Scipios*, the two *Pompies*."--*Staniford's Gram.*, p. 8. "The food of the rattlesnake is birds, squirrels, hare, rats, and reptiles."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 177. "And let fowl multiply in the earth."--*Genesis*, i, 22. "Then we reached the hill-side where eight buffalo were grazing."--*Martineau's Amer.*, i, 202. "*Corset*, *n.* a pair of bodice for a woman."--*Worcester's Dict.*, 12mo. "As the *be's*; the *ce's*, the *dobleu's*."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 40. "Simplicity is the means between ostentation and rusticity."--*Pope's Pref. to Homer*. "You have disguised yourselves like tipstaves."--*Gil Blas*, i, 111. "But who, that hath any taste, can endure the incessant quick returns of the *also's*, and the *likewise's*, and the *moreover's*, and the *however's*, and the *notwithstanding's*?"--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 439.

"Sometimes, in mutual sly disguise, Let Aye's seem No's, and No's seem Aye's."--*Gay*, p. 431.

LESSON II.--CASES.

"For whose name sake, I have been made willing."--*Wm. Penn.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the noun *name*, which is here meant for the possessive case singular, has not the true form of that case. But, according to a principle on page 258th, "The possessive case of nouns is formed, in the singular number, by adding to the nominative *s* preceded by an apostrophe; and, in the plural, when the nominative ends in *s*, by adding an apostrophe only." Therefore, name should be *name's*; thus, "For whose *name's* sake, I have been made willing."]

"Be governed by your conscience, and never ask anybodies leave to be honest."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 105. "To overlook nobodies merit or misbehaviour."--*Ib.*, p. 9. "And Hector at last fights his way to the stern of Ajax' ship."--*Coleridge's Introd.*, p. 91. "Nothing is lazier, than to keep ones eye upon words without heeding their meaning."--*Philological Museum*, i, 645. "Sir William Joneses division of the day."--*Ib.*, *Contents*. "I need only refer here to Vosses excellent account of it."--*Ib.*, i, 465. "The beginning of Stesichoruses palinode has been preserved."--*Ib.*, i, 442. "Though we have Tibulluses elegies, there is not a word in them about Glycera."--*Ib.*, p. 446. "That Horace was at Thaliarchuses country-house."--*Ib.*, i, 451. "That Sisypuses foot-tub should have been still in existence."--*Ib.*, i, 468. "How every thing went on in Horace's closet, and in

Mecenas antechamber."--*Ib.*, i, 458. "Who, for elegant brevities sake, put a participle for a verb."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 42. "The countries liberty being oppressed, we have no more to hope."--*Ib.*, p. 73. "A brief but true account of this peoples' principles."--*Barclay's Pref.* "As, the Church's Peace, or the Peace of the Church; Virgil's Eneid, or the Eneid of Virgil"--*British Gram.*, p. 93. "As, Virgil's Æneid, for the Æneid of Virgil; the Church's Peace, for the Peace of the Church."--*Buchanan's Syntax*, p. 18. "Which, with Hubner's Compend, and Wells' Geographia Classica, will be sufficient."--*Burgh's Dignity*, i, 155. "Witness Homer's speaking horses, scolding goddesses, and Jupiter enchanted with Venus' girdle."--*Ib.*, i, 184. "Dr. Watts' Logic may with success be read and commented on to them."--*Ib.*, p. 156. "Potter's Greek, and Kennet's Roman Antiquities, Strauchius' and Helvicus' Chronology."--*Ib.*, p. 161. "Sing. Alice' friends, Felix' property; *Plur.* The Alices' friends, The Felixes' property."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 46. "Such as Bacchus'es company,"--"at Bacchus'es festivals."--*Ainsworth's Dict.*, w. *Thyrsus*. "Burn's inimitable *Tam o'Shanter* turns entirely upon such a circumstance."--*Scott's Lay, Notes*, p. 201. "Nominative, Men. Genitive, Mens. Objective, Men."--*Cutler's Gram.*, p. 20. "Mens Happiness or Misery is most part of their own making."--*Locke, on Education*, p. 1. "That your Sons Cloths be never made strait, especially about the Breast."--*Ib.*, p. 15. "Childrens Minds are narrow and weak."--*Ib.*, p. 297. "I would not have little Children much tormented about Punctilio's, or Niceties of Breeding."--*Ib.*, p. 90. "To fill his Head with suitable Idea's."--*Ib.*, p. 113. "The Burgusdiscius's and the Scheiblers did not swarm in those Days, as they do now."--*Ib.*, p. 163. "To see the various ways of dressing--a calve's head!"--*Shenstone, Brit. Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 143.

"He puts it on, and for decorum sake Can wear it e'en as gracefully as she."--*Cowper's Task*.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Simon the witch was of this religion too."--*Bunyan's P. P.*, p. 123.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the feminine name *witch* is here applied to a man. But, according to the doctrine of genders, on page 254th, "Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine;" &c. Therefore, *witch* should be *wizard*; thus, "Simon the *wizard*," &c.]

"Mammodis, n. Coarse, plain India muslins."--*Webster's Dict.* "Go on from single persons to families, that of the Pompeyes for instance."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 142. "By which the ancients were not able to account for phænomenas."--*Bailey's Ovid*, p. vi. "After this I married a wife who had lived at Crete, but a Jew by birth."--*Josephus's Life*, p. 194. "The very heathen are inexcusable for not worshipping him."--*Student's Manual*, p. 328. "Such poems as Camoen's *Lusiad*, Voltaire's *Henriade*, &c."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 422. "My learned correspondent writes a word in defence of large scarves."--*SPECT.*: in *Joh. Dict.* "The forerunners of an apoplexy are dulness, vertigos, tremblings."--*ARBUTHNOT: ib.* "*Vertigo* changes the *o* into *~in=es*, making the plural *vertig~in=es*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 59. "*Noctambulo* changes the *o* into *=on=es*, making the plural *noctambul=on=es*."--*Ib.*, p. 59. "What shall we say of noctambulos?"--*ARBUTHNOT: in Joh. Dict.* "In the curious fretwork of rocks and grottos."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 220. "*Wharf* makes the plural *wharves*."--*Smith's Gram.*, p. 45; *Merchant's*, 29; *Picket's*, 21; *Frost's*, 8. "A few cent's worth of maccaroni supplies all their wants."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 275. "C sounds hard, like *k*, at the end of a word or syllables."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 4. "By which the virtuosi try The magnitude of every lie."--*Hudibras*. "Quartos, octavos, shape the lessening pyre."--*Pope's Dunciad*, B. i, l. 162. "Perching within square royal rooves."--*SIDNEY: in Joh. Dict.* "Similies should, even in poetry, be used with moderation."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 166. "Similies should never be taken from low or mean objects."--*Ib.*, p. 167. "It were certainly better to say, 'The house of lords,' than 'the Lord's house.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 177. "Read your answers. Unit figure? 'Five.' Ten's? 'Six.' Hundreds? 'Seven.'"--*Abbott's Teacher*, p. 79. "Alexander conquered Darius' army."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 58. "Three days time was requisite, to prepare matters."--*Brown's Estimate*, ii, 156. "So we say that Ciceros stile and Sallusts, were not one, nor Cesars and Livies, nor Homers and Hesiodus, nor Herodotus and Theucidides, nor Euripides and Aristophanes, nor Erasmus and Budeus stiles."--*Puttenham's Arte of English Poesie*, iii, 5. "*Lex* (i.e. *legs*) is no other than our ancestors past participle *læg*, laid down."--*Tooke's Diversions*, ii, 7. "Achaia's sons at Ilium slain for the Atridæ' sake."--*Cowper's*

Iliad. "The corpse[167] of half her senate manure the fields of Thessaly."--*Addison's Cato.*

"Poisoning, without regard of fame or fear: And spotted corpse are frequent on the bier."--*Dryden.*

CHAPTER IV.

--ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality: as, A *wise* man; a *new* book. You *two* are *diligent*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Adjectives have been otherwise called attributes, attributives, qualities, adnouns; but none of these names is any better than the common one. Some writers have classed adjectives with verbs; because, with a neuter verb for the copula, they often form logical predicates: as, "*Vices are contagious*." The Latin grammarians usually class them with nouns; consequently their nouns are divided into nouns substantive and nouns adjective. With us, substantives are nouns; and adjectives form a part of speech by themselves. This is generally acknowledged to be a much better distribution. Adjectives cannot with propriety be called *nouns*, in any language; because they are not *the names* of the qualities which they signify. They must be *added* to nouns or pronouns in order to make sense. But if, in a just distribution of words, the term "*adjective nouns*" is needless and improper, the term "*adjective pronouns*" is, certainly, not less so: most of the words which Murray and others call by this name, are not pronouns, but adjectives.

OBS. 2.--The noun, or substantive, is a *name*, which makes sense of itself. The adjective is an adjunct to the noun or pronoun. It is a word added to denote quality, situation, quantity, number, form, tendency, or whatever else may characterize and distinguish the thing or things spoken of. Adjectives, therefore, are distinguished *from* nouns by their *relation* to them; a relation corresponding to that which qualities bear to things: so that no part of speech is more easily discriminated than the adjective. Again: English adjectives, as such, are all indeclinable. When, therefore, any words usually belonging to this class, are found to take either the plural or the possessive form, like substantive nouns, they are to be parsed as nouns. To abbreviate expression, we not unfrequently, in this manner, convert adjectives into nouns. Thus, in grammar, we often speak of *nominatives*, *possessives*, or *objectives*, meaning nouns or pronouns of the nominative, the possessive, or the objective case; of *positives*, *comparatives*, or *superlatives*, meaning adjectives of the positive, the comparative, or the superlative degree; of *infinitives*, *subjunctives*, or *imperatives*, meaning verbs of the infinitive, the subjunctive, or the imperative mood; and of *singulars*, *plurals*, and many other such things, in the same way. So a man's *superiors* or *inferiors* are persons superior or inferior to himself. His *bettors* are persons better than he. *Others* are any persons or things distinguished from some that are named or referred to; as, "If you want enemies, excel *others*; if you want friends, let *others* excel you."--*Lacon*. All adjectives thus taken substantively, become *nouns*, and ought to be parsed as such, unless this word *others* is to be made an exception, and called a "*pronoun*."

"Th' event is fear'd; should we again provoke Our *stronger*, some worse way his wrath may find." --*Milton*, *P. L.*, B. ii, l. 82.

OBS. 3.--Murray says, "Perhaps the words *former* and *latter* may be properly ranked amongst the demonstrative pronouns, *especially in many of their applications*. The following sentence may serve as an example: 'It was happy for the state, that Fabius continued in the command with Minutius: the *former's* phlegm was a check upon the *latter's* vivacity.'"--*Gram.*, 8vo, p. 57. This I take to be bad English. *Former* and *latter* ought to be adjectives only; except when *former* means *maker*. And, if not so, it is too easy a way of multiplying pronouns, to manufacture two out of one single anonymous sentence. If it were said, "The deliberation of *the former* was a seasonable chock upon the fiery temper of *the latter*" the words *former* and *latter* would seem to me not to be pronouns, but adjectives, each relating to the noun *commander* understood after it.

OBS. 4.--The sense and relation of words in sentences, as well as their particular form and meaning, must be considered in parsing, before the learner can say, with certainty, to what class they belong. Other parts of speech, and especially nouns and participles, by a change in their construction, may become adjectives. Thus, to denote the material of which a thing is formed, we very commonly make the name of the substantive an adjective to that of the thing: as, A *gold chain*, a *silver spoon*, a *glass pitcher*, a *tin basin*, an *oak plank*, a *basswood slab*, a *whalebone rod*. This construction is in general correct, whenever the former word may be predicated of the latter; as, "The chain is gold."--"The spoon is silver." But we do not write *gold beater* for *goldbeater*, or *silver smith* for *silversmith*; because the beater is not gold, nor is the smith silver. This principle, however, is not universally observed; for we write *snowball*, *whitewash*, and many similar compounds, though the ball is snow and the wash is white; and *linseed oil*, or *Newark cider*, may be a good phrase, though the former word cannot well be predicated of the latter. So in the following examples: "Let these *conversation* tones be the foundation of public pronunciation."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 334. "A *muslin* flounce, made very full, would give a very agreeable *flirtation* air."--POPE: *Priestley's Gram.*, p. 79.

"Come, calm Content, serene and sweet, O gently guide my *pilgrim* feet To find thy *hermit* cell."--*Barbault*.

OBS. 5.--Murray says, "Various nouns placed before other nouns assume the nature of adjectives: as, sea fish, wine vessel, corn field, meadow ground, &c."--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 48. This is, certainly, very lame instruction. If there is not palpable error in all his examples, the propriety of them all is at least questionable; and, to adopt and follow out their principle, would be, to tear apart some thousands of our most familiar compounds. "*Meadow ground*" may perhaps be a correct phrase, since the ground is meadow; it seems therefore preferable to the compound word meadow-ground. What he meant by "*wine vessel*" is doubtful: that is, whether a ship or a cask, a flagon or a decanter. If we turn to our dictionaries, Webster has *sea-fish* and *wine-cask* with a hyphen, and *cornfield* without; while Johnson and others have *corn-field* with a hyphen, and *seafish* without. According to the rules for the figure of words, we ought to write them *seafish*, *winecask*, *cornfield*. What then becomes of the thousands of "adjectives" embraced in the "&c." quoted above?

OBS. 6.--The pronouns *he* and *she*, when placed before or prefixed to nouns merely to denote their gender, appear to be used adjectively; as, "The male or *he* animals offered in sacrifice."--*Wood's Dict.*, w. *Males*. "The most usual term is *he* or *she*, *male* or *female*, employed as an adjective: as, a *he bear*, a *she bear*; a *male elephant*, a *female elephant*."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 69. Most writers, however, think proper to insert a hyphen in the terms here referred to: as, *he-bear*, *she-bear*, the plurals of which are *he-bears* and *she-bears*. And, judging by the foregoing rule of predication, we must assume that this practice only is right. In the first example, the word *he* is useless; for the term "*male animals*" is sufficiently clear without it. It has been shown in the third chapter, that *he* and *she* are sometimes used as nouns; and that, as such, they may take the regular declension of nouns, making the plurals *hes* and *shes*. But whenever these words are used adjectively to denote gender, whether we choose to insert the hyphen or not, they are, without question, indeclinable, like other adjectives. In the following example, Sanborn will have *he* to be a noun in the *objective* case; but I consider it rather, to be an adjective, signifying *masculine*:

"(*Philosophy*, I say, and call it *He*; For, whatsoe'er the painter's fancy be, It a male-virtue seems to me.)"--*Cowley*, Brit. Poets, Vol. ii, p. 54.

OBS. 7.--Though verbs give rise to many adjectives, they seldom, if ever, become such by a mere change of construction. It is mostly by assuming an additional termination, that any verb is formed into an adjective: as in *teachable*, *moveable*, *oppressive*, *diffusive*, *prohibitory*. There are, however, about forty words ending in *ate*, which, without difference of form, are either verbs or adjectives; as, *aggregate*, *animate*, *appropriate*, *articulate*, *aspirate*, *associate*, *complicate*, *confederate*, *consummate*, *deliberate*, *desolate*, *effeminate*, *elate*, *incarnate*, *intimate*, *legitimate*, *moderate*, *ordinate*, *precipitate*, *prostrate*, *regenerate*, *reprobate*, *separate*, *sophisticate*, *subordinate*. This class of adjectives seems to be lessening. The participials in *ed*, are superseding some of them, at least in popular practice: as, *contaminated*, for *contaminate*, defiled; *reiterated*, for *reiterate*, repeated; *situated*, for *situate*, placed; *attenuated*, for *attenuate*, made thin or slender. *Devote*,

exhaust, and some other verbal forms, are occasionally used by the poets, in lieu of the participial forms, *devoted*, *exhausted*, &c.

OBS. 8.--Participles, which have naturally much resemblance to this part of speech, often drop their distinctive character, and become adjectives. This is usually the case whenever they stand immediately *before* the nouns to which they relate; as, A *pleasing* countenance, a *piercing* eye, an *accomplished* scholar, an *exalted* station. Many participial adjectives are derivatives formed from participles by the negative prefix *un*, which reverses the meaning of the primitive word; as, *undisturbed*, *undivided*, *unenlightened*. Most words of this kind differ of course from participles, because there are no such verbs as *to undisturb*, *to undivide*, &c. Yet they may be called participial adjectives, because they have the termination, and embrace the form, of participles. Nor should any participial adjective be needlessly varied from the true orthography of the participle: a distinction is, however, observed by some writers, between *past* and *passed*, *staid* and *stayed*; and some old words, as *drunken*, *stricken*, *shotten*, *rotten*, now obsolete as participles, are still retained as adjectives. This sort of words will be further noticed in the chapter on participles.

OBS. 9.--Adverbs are generally distinguished from adjectives, by the form, as well as by the construction, of the words. Yet, in instances not a few, the same word is capable of being used both adjectively and adverbially. In these cases, the scholar must determine the part of speech, by the construction alone; remembering that adjectives belong to nouns or pronouns only; and adverbs, to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs, only. The following examples from Scripture, will partially illustrate this point, which will be noticed again under the head of syntax: "Is your father well?"--*Gen.*, xliii, 27. "Thou hast well said."--*John*, iv, 17. "He separateth very friends."--*Prov.*, xvii, 9. "Esaias is *very* bold."--*Rom.*, x, 20. "For a pretence, ye make *long* prayer."--*Matt.*, xxiii, 14. "They that tarry *long* at the wine."--*Prov.*, xxiii, 30. "It had not *much* earth."--*Mark*, iv, 5. "For she loved *much*."--*Luke*, vii, 47.

OBS. 10.--Prepositions, in regard to their *construction*, differ from adjectives, almost exactly as active-transitive participles differ syntactically from adjectives: that is, in stead of being mere adjuncts to the words which follow them, they govern those words, and refer back to some other term; which, in the usual order of speech, stands before them. Thus, if I say, "A spreading oak," *spreading* is an adjective relating to oak; if, "A boy spreading hay," *spreading* is a participle, governing *hay*, and relating to *boy*, because the boy is the agent of the action. So, when Dr. Webster says, "The *off* horse in a team," *off* is an adjective, relating to the noun *horse*; but, in the phrase, "A man *off* his guard," *off* is a preposition, showing the relation between *man* and *guard*, and governing the latter. The following are other examples: "From the *above* speculations."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 194. "An *after* period of life."--MARSHALL: in *Web. Dict.* "With some other of the *after* Judaical rites."--*Right of Tythes*, p. 86. "Whom this *beneath* world doth embrace and hug."--*Shak.* "Especially is *over* exertion made."--*Journal of Lit. Conv.*, p. 119. "To both the *under* worlds."--*Hudibras*. "Please to pay to A. B. the amount of the *within* bill." Whether properly used or not, the words *above*, *after*, *beneath*, *over*, *under*, and *within*, are here unquestionably made *adjectives*; yet every scholar knows, that they are generally prepositions, though sometimes adverbs.

CLASSES.

Adjectives may be divided into six classes; namely, *common*, *proper*, *numeral*, *pronominal*, *participial*, and *compound*.

I. A *common adjective* is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation; as, *Good*, *bad*, *peaceful*, *warlike*--*eastern*, *western*, *outer*, *inner*.

II. A *proper adjective* is an adjective formed from a proper name; as, *American*, *English*, *Platonic*, *Genoese*.

III. A *numeral adjective* is an adjective that expresses a definite number; as, *One*, *two*, *three*, *four*, *five*, *six*, &c.

IV. A *pronominal adjective* is a definitive word which may either accompany its noun, or represent it understood; as, "*All* join to guard what *each* desires to gain."--*Pope*. That is, "*All men* join to guard what *each man* desires to gain."

V. A *participial adjective* is one that has the form of a participle, but differs from it by rejecting the idea of time; as, "An *amusing* story,"--"A *lying* divination."

VI. A *compound adjective* is one that consists of two or more words joined together, either by the hyphen or solidly; as, *Nut-brown*, *laughter-loving*, *four-footed*; *threefold*, *lordlike*, *lovesick*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--This distribution of the adjectives is no less easy to be applied, than necessary to a proper explanation in parsing. How many adjectives there are in the language, it is difficult to say; none of our dictionaries profess to exhibit all that are embraced in some of the foregoing classes. Of the Common Adjectives, there are probably not fewer than six thousand, exclusive of the common nouns which we refer to this class when they are used adjectively. Walker's Rhyming Dictionary contains five thousand or more, the greater part of which may be readily distinguished by their peculiar endings. Of those which end in *ous*, as *generous*, there are about 850. Of those in *y* or *ly*, as *shaggy*, *homely*, there are about 550. Of those in *ive*, as *deceptive*, there are about 400. Of those in *al*, as *autumnal*, there are about 550. Of those in *ical*, as *mechanical*, there are about 350. Of those in *able*, as *valuable*, there are about 600. Of those in *ible*, as *credible*, there are about 200. Of those in *ent*, as *different*, there are about 300. Of those in *ant*, as *abundant*, there are about 170. Of those in *less*, as *ceaseless*, there are about 220. Of those in *ful*, as *useful*, there are about 130. Of those in *ory*, as *explanatory*, there are about 200. Of those in *ish*, as *childish*, there are about 100. Of those in *ine*, as *masculine*, there are about 70. Of those in *en*, as *wooden*, there are about 50. Of those in *some*, as *quarrelsome*, there are about 30. These sixteen numbers added together, make 4770.

OBS. 2.--The Proper Adjectives are, in many instances, capable of being converted into declinable nouns: as, *European*, a *European*, the *Europeans*; *Greek*, a *Greek*, the *Greeks*; *Asiatic*, an *Asiatic*, the *Asiatics*. But with the words *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Scotch*, *Welsh*, *Irish*, and in general all such as would acquire an additional syllable in their declension, the case is otherwise. The gentile noun has frequently fewer syllables than the adjective, but seldom more, unless derived from some different root. Examples: *Arabic*, an *Arab*, the *Arabs*; *Gallic*, a *Gaul*, the *Gauls*; *Danish*, a *Dane*, the *Danes*; *Moorish*, a *Moor*, the *Moors*; *Polish*, a *Pole*, or *Polander*, the *Poles*; *Swedish*, a *Swede*, the *Swedes*; *Turkish*, a *Turk*, the *Turks*. When we say, *the English*, *the French*, *the Dutch*, *the Scotch*, *the Welsh*, *the Irish*,--meaning, *the English people*, *the French people*, &c., many grammarians conceive that *English*, *French*, &c., are *indeclinable nouns*. But in my opinion, it is better to reckon them *adjectives*, relating to the noun *men* or *people* understood. For if these words are nouns, so are a thousand others, after which there is the same ellipsis; as when we say, *the good*, *the great*, *the wise*, *the learned*. [168] The principle would involve the inconvenience of multiplying our nouns of the singular form and a plural meaning, indefinitely. If they are nouns, they are, in this sense, plural only; and, in an other, they are singular only. For we can no more say, *an English*, *an Irish*, or *a French*, for *an Englishman*, *an Irishman*, or *a Frenchman*; than we can say, *an old*, *a selfish*, or *a rich*, for *an old man*, *a selfish man*, or *a rich man*. Yet, in distinguishing the *languages*, we call them *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Scotch*, *Welsh*, *Irish*; using the words, certainly, in no plural sense; and preferring always the line of adjectives, where the gentile noun is different: as, *Arabic*, and not *Arab*; *Danish*, and not *Dane*; *Swedish*, and not *Swede*. In this sense, as well as in the former, Webster, Chalmers, and other modern lexicographers, call the words *nouns*; and the reader will perceive, that the objections offered before do not apply here. But Johnson, in his two quarto volumes, gives only two words of this sort, *English* and *Latin*; and both of these he calls *adjectives*: "ENGLISH, *adj*. Belonging to England; hence English [169] is the language of England." The word *Latin*, however, he makes a noun, when it means a schoolboy's exercise; for which usage he quotes, the following inaccurate example from Ascham: "He shall not use the common order in schools for making of *Latins*."

OBS. 3.--Dr. Webster gives us explanations like these: "CHINESE, *n. sing. and plu.* A native of China; also the language of China."--"JAPANESE, *n.* A native of Japan; or the language of the inhabitants."--"GENOESE, *n. pl.* the people of Genoa in Italy. *Addison.*"--"DANISH, *n.* The language of the Danes."--"IRISH, *n.* 1. A native of Ireland. 2. The language of the Irish; the Hiberno-Celtic." According to him, then, it is proper to say, *a Chinese, a Japanese, or an Irish*; but not, *a Genoese*, because he will have this word to be plural only! Again, if with him we call a native of Ireland *an Irish*, will not more than one be *Irishes*? [170] If a native of Japan be *a Japanese*, will not more than one be *Japaneses*? In short, is it not plain, that the words, *Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese, Maltese, Genoese, Milanese*, and all others of like formation, should follow one and the same rule? And if so, what is that rule? Is it not this;--that, like *English, French, &c.*, they are always *adjectives*; except, perhaps, when they denote *languages*? There may possibly be some real authority from usage, for calling a native of China *a Chinese*,--of Japan *a Japanese*,--&c.; as there is also for the regular plurals, *Chineses, Japaneses, &c.*; but is it, in either case, good and sufficient authority? The like forms, it is acknowledged, are, on some occasions, mere adjectives; and, in modern usage, we do not find these words inflected, as they were formerly. Examples: "The *Chinese* are by no means a cleanly people, either in person or dress."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 415. "The *Japanese* excel in working in copper, iron, and steel."--*Ib.*, p. 419. "The *Portuguese* are of the same origin with the Spaniards."--*Ib.*, p. 272. "By whom the undaunted *Tyrolese* are led."--*Wordsworth's Poems*, p. 122. Again: "Amongst the *Portugueses*, 'tis so much a Fashion, and Emulation, amongst their Children, to *learn to Read, and Write*, that they cannot hinder them from it."--*Locke, on Education*, p. 271. "The *Malteses* do so, who harden the Bodies of their Children, and reconcile them to the Heat, by making them go stark Naked."--*Idem, Edition of 1669*, p. 5. "CHINESE, *n. s.* Used elliptically for the language and people of China: plural, *Chineses*. *Sir T. Herbert.*"--*Abridgement of Todd's Johnson*. This is certainly absurd. For if *Chinese* is used *elliptically* for the people of China, it is an *adjective*, and does not form the plural, *Chineses*: which is precisely what I urge concerning the whole class. These plural forms ought not to be imitated. Horne Tooke quotes some friend of his, as saying, "No, I will never descend with him beneath even *a Japanese*: and I remember what Voltaire remarks of *that country*."--*Diversions of Purley*, i, 187. In this case, he ought, unquestionably, to have said--"beneath even *a native of Japan*;" because, whether *Japanese* be a noun or not, it is absurd to call *a Japanese*, "*that country*." Butler, in his *Hudibras*, somewhere uses the word *Chineses*; and it was, perhaps, in his day, common; but still, I say, it is contrary to analogy, and therefore wrong. Milton, too, has it:

"But in his way lights on the barren plains Of Sericana, where Chineses [171] drive With sails and wind their cany waggons light." --*Paradise Lost*, B. iii, l. 437.

OBS. 4.--The Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds, namely, *cardinal, ordinal, and multiplicative*: each kind running on in a series indefinitely. Thus:--

1. *Cardinal*; One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen, twenty, twenty-one, twenty-two, &c.

2. *Ordinal*; First, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c.

3. *Multiplicative*; Single or alone, double or twofold, triple or threefold, quadruple or fourfold, quintuple or fivefold, sextuple or sixfold, septuple or sevenfold, octuple or eightfold, &c. But high terms of this series are seldom used. All that occur above decuple or tenfold, are written with a hyphen, and are usually of round numbers only; as, thirty-fold, sixty-fold, hundred-fold.

OBS. 5.--A cardinal numeral denotes the whole number, but the corresponding ordinal denotes only the last one of that number, or, at the beginning of a series, the first of several or many. Thus: "*One* denotes simply the number *one*, without any regard to more; but *first* has respect to more, and so denotes only the first one of a greater number; and *two* means the number *two* completely; but *second*, the last one of *two*: and so of all the

rest."--*Burn's Gram.*, p. 54. A cardinal number answers to the question, "*How many?*" An ordinal number answers to the question, "*Which one?*" or, "*What one?*" All the ordinal numbers, except *first*, *second*, *third*, and the compounds of these, as *twenty-first*, *twenty-second*, *twenty-third*, are formed directly from the cardinal numbers by means of the termination *th*. And as the primitives, in this case, are many of them either compound words, or phrases consisting of several words, it is to be observed, that the addition is made to the last term only. That is, of every compound ordinal number, the last term only is ordinal in form. Thus we say, *forty-ninth*, and not *fortieth-ninth*; nor could the meaning of the phrase, *four hundred and fiftieth*, be expressed by saying, *fourth hundredth and fiftieth*; for this, if it means any thing, speaks of three different numbers.

OBS. 6.--Some of the numerals are often used as *nouns*; and, as such, are regularly declined: as, *Ones*, *twos*, *threes*, *fours*, *fives*, &c. So, *Fifths*, *sixths*, *sevenths*, *eighths*, *ninths*, *tenths*, &c. "The *seventy's* translation."--*Wilson's Hebrew Gram.*, p. 32. "I will not do it for *forty's* sake."--*Gen.*, xviii, 29. "I will not destroy it for *twenty's* sake."--*Ib.*, ver. 31. "For *ten's* sake."--*Ib.*, ver. 32. "They sat down in ranks, by *hundreds*, and by *fifties*."--*Mark*, vi, 40. "There are *millions* of truths that a man is not concerned to know."--*Locke*. With the compound numerals, such a construction is less common; yet the denominator of a fraction may be a number of this sort: as, seven *twenty-fifths*. And here it may be observed, that, in stead of the ancient phraseology, as in 1 Chron., xxiv, 17th, "The *one and twentieth* to Jachin, the *two and twentieth* to Gamul, the *three and twentieth* to Delaiah, the *four and twentieth* to Maaziah," we now generally say, *the twenty-first*, *the twenty-second*, &c.; using the hyphen in all compounds till we arrive at *one hundred*, or *one hundredth*, and then first introducing the word *and*; as, *one hundred and one*, or *one hundred and first*, &c.

OBS. 7.--The Pronominal Adjectives are comparatively very few; but frequency of use gives them great importance in grammar. The following words are perhaps all that properly belong to this class, and several of these are much oftener something else: *All*, *any*, *both*, *certain*, *divers*, *each*, *either*, *else*, *enough*, *every*, *few*, *fewer*, *fewest*, *former*, *first*, *latter*, *last*, *little*, *less*, *least*, *many*, *more*, *most*, *much*, *neither*, *no* or *none*, *one*, *other*, *own*, *only*, *same*, *several*, *some*, *such*, *sundry*, *that*, *this*, *these*, *those*, *what*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *which*, *whichever*, *whichever*. [172] Of these forty-six words, seven are always singular, if the word *one* is not an exception; namely, *each*, *either*, *every*, *neither*, *one*, *that*, *this*: and nine or ten others are always plural, if the word *many* is not an exception; namely, *both*, *divers*, *few*, *fewer*, *fewest*, *many*, *several*, *sundry*, *these*, *those*. All the rest, like our common adjectives, are applicable to nouns of either number. *Else*, *every*, *only*, *no*, and *none*, are definitive words, which I have thought proper to call pronominal adjectives, though only the last can now with propriety be made to represent its noun understood. "Nor has Vossius, or *any else* that I know of, observed it."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 279. Say, "or any *one* else." Dr. Webster explains this word *else* thus: "ELSE, *a.* or *pron.* [Sax. *elles*] Other; one or something *beside*; as, Who *else* is coming?"--*Octavo Dict.* "Each and *every* of them," is an old phrase in which *every* is used pronominally, or with ellipsis of the word to which it refers; but, in common discourse, we now say, *every one*, *every man*, &c., never using the word *every* alone to suggest its noun. *Only* is perhaps most commonly an adverb; but it is still in frequent use as an adjective; and in old books we sometimes find an ellipsis of the noun to which it belongs; as, "Neither are they the *only* [verbs] in which it is read."--*Johnson's Grammatical Commentaries*, p. 373. "But I think he is the *only* [one] of these Authors."--*Ib.*, p. 193. *No* and *none* seem to be only different forms of the same adjective; the former being used before a noun expressed, and the latter when the noun is understood, or not placed after the adjective; as, "For *none* of us liveth to himself, and *no* man dieth to himself."--*Romans*, xiv, 7. *None* was anciently used for *no* before all words beginning with a vowel sound; as, "They are sottish children; and they have *none* understanding."--*Jeremiah*, iv, 22. This practice is now obsolete. *None* is still used, when its noun precedes it; as,

"Fools! who from hence into the notion fall, That *vice* or *virtue* there is *none* at all."--*Pope*.

OBS. 8.--Of the words given in the foregoing list as pronominal adjectives, about one third are sometimes used *adverbially*. They are the following: *All*, when it means *totally*; *any*, for *in any degree*; *else*, meaning *otherwise*; *enough*, signifying *sufficiently*; *first*, for *in the first place*; *last*, for *in the last place*; *little*, for *in a small degree*; *less*, for *in a smaller degree*; *least*, for *in the smallest degree*; *much*, for *in a great degree*;

more, for in a greater degree; most, for in the greatest degree; no, or none, for in no degree; only, for singly, merely, barely; what, for in what degree, or in how great a degree.[173] To these may perhaps be added the word *other*, when used as an alternative to *somehow*; as, "*Somehow or other* he will be favoured."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 89. Here *other* seems to be put for *otherwise*; and yet the latter word would not be agreeable in such a sentence. "*Somewhere or other*," is a kindred phrase equally common, and equally good; or, rather, equally irregular and puzzling. Would it not be better, always to avoid both, by saying, in their stead, "*In some way or other*,"--"*In someplace or other*?" In the following examples, however, *other* seems to be used for *otherwise*, without such a connection: "How is THAT used, *other* than as a Conjunction?"--*Ainsworth's Gram.*, p. 88.

"Will it not be receiv'd that they have done 't? --Who dares receive it *other*?"--SHAK.: *Joh. Dict.*, w. *Other*.

OBS. 9.--*All* and *enough*, *little* and *much*, *more* and *less*, sometimes suggest the idea of quantity so abstractly, that we can hardly consider them as adjuncts to any other words; for which reason, they are, in this absolute sense, put down in our dictionaries as *nouns*. If nouns, however, they are never inflected by cases or numbers; nor do they in general admit the usual adjuncts or definitives of nouns.[174] Thus, we can neither say, *the all*, for *the whole*, nor *an enough*, for *a sufficiency*. And though *a little*, *the more*, and *the less*, are common phrases, the article does not here prove the following word to be a noun; because the expression may either be elliptical, or have the construction of an adverb: as, "Though *the more* abundantly I love you, *the less* I be loved."--2 *Cor.*, xii, 15. Dr. Johnson seems to suppose that the partitive use of these words makes them nouns; as, "They have *much of the poetry* of Mæcænas, but *little of his liberality*."--DRYDEN: in *Joh. Dict.* Upon this principle, however, adjectives innumerable would be made nouns; for we can just as well say, "*Some of the poetry*,"--"*Any of the poetry*,"--"*The best of Poetry*," &c. In all such expressions, the name of the thing divided, is understood in the partitive word; for a part of any thing must needs be of the same species as the whole. Nor was this great grammarian sufficiently attentive to adjuncts, in determining the parts of speech. *Nearly all*, *quite enough*, *so little*, *too much*, *vastly more*, *rather less*, and an abundance of similar phrases, are familiar to every body; in none of which, can any of these words of quantity, however abstract, be very properly reckoned nouns; because the preceding word is an adverb, and adverbs do not relate to any words that are literally nouns. All these may also be used partitively; as, "*Nearly all of us*."

OBS. 10.--The following are some of Dr. Johnson's "*nouns*;" which, in connexion with the foregoing remarks, I would submit to the judgement of the reader: "'Then shall we be news-crammed.'--'*All* the better; we shall be the more remarkable.'"--SHAK.: in *Joh. Dict.* "*All* the fitter, Lentulus; our coming is not for salutation; we have business."--BEN JONSON: *ib.* "'Tis *enough* for me to have endeavoured the union of my country.'"--TEMPLE: *ib.* "Ye take too *much* upon you."--NUMBERS: *ib.* "The fate of love is such, that still it sees too *little* or too *much*."--DRYDEN: *ib.* "He thought not *much* to clothe his enemies."--MILTON: *ib.* "There remained not so *much* as one of them."--*Ib.*, *Exod.*, xiv, 28. "We will cut wood out of Lebanon, as *much* as thou shalt need."--*Ib.*, 2 *Chronicles*. "The matter of the universe was created before the flood; if any *more* was created, then there must be as *much* annihilated to make room for it."--BURNET: *ib.* "The Lord do so, and much *more*, to Jonathan."--1 SAMUEL: *ib.* "They that would have *more* and *more*, can never have *enough*; no, not if a miracle should interpose to gratify their avarice."--L'ESTRANGE: *ib.* "They gathered some *more*, some *less*."--EXODUS: *ib.* "Thy servant knew nothing of this, *less* or *more*."--1 SAMUEL: *ib.* The first two examples above, Johnson explains thus: "That is, '*Every thing is the better*.'--'*Every thing is the fitter*.'"--*Quarto Dict.* The propriety of this solution may well be doubted; because the similar phrases, "*So much* the better,"--"*None* the fitter," would certainly be perverted, if resolved in the same way: *much* and *none* are here, very clearly, adverbs.

OBS. 11.--Whatever disposition may be made of the terms cited above, there are instances in which some of the same words can hardly be any thing else than nouns. Thus *all*, when it signifies *the whole*, or *every thing*, may be reckoned a noun; as, "Our *all* is at stake, and irretrievably lost, if we fail of success."--Addison. "A torch, snuff and *all*, goes out in a moment, when dipped in the vapour."--Id. "The first blast of wind laid it flat on the ground; nest, eagles, and *all*."--L'Estrange.

"Finding, the wretched *all* they here can have, But present food, and but a future grave."--*Prior*.

"And will she yet debase her eyes on me; On me, whose *all* not equals Edward's moiety?"--*Shak*.

"Thou shalt be *all* in *all*, and I in thee, Forever; and in me all whom thou lov'st."--*Milton*.

OBS. 12.--There are yet some other words, which, by their construction alone, are to be distinguished from the pronominal adjectives. *Both*, when it stands as a correspondent to *and*, is reckoned a conjunction; as, "For *both* he that sanctifieth, *and* they who are sanctified, are all of one."--*Heb.*, ii, 11. But, in sentences like the following, it seems to be an adjective, referring to the nouns which precede: "Language and manners are *both* established by the usage of people of fashion."--*Amer. Chesterfield*, p. 83. So *either*, corresponding to *or*, and *neither*, referring to *nor*, are conjunctions, and not adjectives. *Which* and *what*, with their compounds, *whichever* or *whicheversoever*, *whatever* or *whatsoever*, though sometimes put before nouns as adjectives, are, for the most part, relative or interrogative pronouns. When the noun is used after them, they are adjectives; when it is omitted, they are pronouns: as, "There is a witness of God, *which* witness gives true judgement."--*I. Penington*. Here the word *witness* might be omitted, and *which* would become a relative pronoun. Dr. Lowth says, "*Thy, my, her, our, your, their*, are pronominal adjectives."--*Gram.*, p. 23. This I deny; and the reader may see my reasons, in the observations upon the declension of pronouns.

OBS. 13.--The words *one* and *other*, besides their primitive uses as adjectives, in which they still remain without inflection, are frequently employed as nouns, or as substitutes for nouns; and, in this substantive or pronominal character, they commonly have the regular declension of nouns, and are reckoned such by some grammarians; though others call them indefinite pronouns, and some, (among whom are Lowth and Comly,) leave them with the pronominal adjectives, even when they are declined in both numbers. Each of them may be preceded by either of the articles; and so general is the signification of the former, that almost any adjective may likewise come before it: as, *Any one, some one, such a one, many a one, a new one, an old one, an other one, the same one, the young ones, the little ones, the mighty ones, the wicked one, the Holy One, the Everlasting One*. So, like the French *on*, or *l'on*, the word *one*, without any adjective, is now very frequently used as a general or indefinite term for any man, or any person. In this sense, it is sometimes, unquestionably, to be preferred to a personal pronoun applied indefinitely: as, "Pure religion, and undefiled before God and the Father, is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep *himself* [better, *one's self*] unspotted from the world."--*James*, i, 27. But, as its generality of meaning seems to afford a sort of covering for egotism, some writers are tempted to make too frequent a use of it. Churchill ridicules this practice, by framing, or anonymously citing, the following sentence: "If *one* did but dare to abide by *one's* own judgement, *one's* language would be much more refined; but *one* fancies *one's* self obliged to follow, wherever the many choose to lead *one*."--See *Churchill's Gram.*, p. 229. Here every scholar will concur with the critic in thinking, it would be better to say: "If *we* did but dare to abide by *our* own judgement, *our* language would be much more refined; but *we* fancy *ourselves* obliged to follow wherever the many choose to lead *us*."--See *ib*.

OBS. 14.--Of the pronominal adjectives the following distribution has been made: "*Each, every*, and *either*, are called *distributives*; because, though they imply all the persons or things that make up a number, they consider them, not as one whole, but as taken separately. *This, that, former, latter, both, neither*, are termed *demonstratives*; because they point out precisely the subjects to which they relate. *This* has *these* for its plural; *that* has *those*. *This* and *that* are frequently put in opposition to each other; *this*, to express what is nearer in place or time; *that*, what is more remote. *All, any, one, other, some, such*, are termed *indefinite*. *Another* is merely *other* in the singular, with the indefinite article not kept separate from it.[175] *Other*, when not joined with a noun, is occasionally used both in the possessive case, and in the plural number: as,

"Teach me to feel *an other's* wo, to hide the fault I see; That mercy I to *others* show, that mercy show to me."--*Pope*.

Each other and *one another*, when used in conjunction, may be termed *reciprocals*; as they are employed to

express a reciprocal action; the former, between two persons or things; the latter, *between*[176] more than two. The possessive cases of the personal pronouns have been also ranked under the head of pronominal adjectives, and styled possessives; but for this I see no good reason."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 76.

OBS. 15.--The reciprocal terms *each other* and *one an other* divide, according to some mutual act or interchangeable relation, the persons or things spoken of, and are commonly of the singular number only. *Each other*, if rightly used, supposes two, and only two, to be acting and acted upon reciprocally; *one an other*, if not misapplied, supposes more than two, under like circumstances, and has an indefinite reference to all taken distributively: as, "Brutus and Aruns killed *each other*." That is, *Each combatant* killed *the other*. "The disciples were commanded to love *one an other*, and to be willing to wash *one an other's* feet." That is, *All* the disciples were commanded to love *mutually*; for both terms, *one* and *other*, or *one disciple* and *an other disciple*, must be here understood as taken indefinitely. The reader will observe, that the two terms thus brought together, if taken substantively or pronominally in parsing, must be represented as being of *different cases*; or, if we take them adjectively the noun, which is twice to be supplied, will necessarily be so.

OBS. 16.--Misapplications of the foregoing reciprocal terms are very frequent in books, though it is strange that phrases so very common should not be rightly understood. Dr. Webster, among his explanations of the word *other*, has the following: "Correlative to *each*, and applicable to *any number* of individuals."--*Octavo Dict.* "*Other* is used as a substitute for a noun, and in this use has the plural number and the sign of the possessive case."--*Ib.* Now it is plain, that the word *other*, as a "correlative to *each*," may be so far "a substitute for a noun" as to take the form of the possessive case singular, and perhaps also the plural; as, "Lock'd in *each other's* arms they lay." But, that the objective *other*, in any such relation, can convey a plural idea, or be so loosely applicable--"to *any number* of individuals," I must here deny. If it were so, there would be occasion, by the foregoing rule, to make it plural in form; as, "The ambitious strive to excel *each others*." But this is not English. Nor can it be correct to say of more than two, "They all strive to excel *each other*." Because the explanation must be, "*Each* strives to excel *other*;" and such a construction of the word *other* is not agreeable to modern usage. *Each other* is therefore not equivalent to *one an other*, but nearer perhaps to *the one the other*: as, "The two generals are independent *the one of the other*."--*Voltaire's Charles XII*, p. 67. "And these are contrary *the one to the other*."--*Gal.*, v, 17. "The necessary connexion *of the one with the other*."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 304. The latter phraseology, being definite and formal, is now seldom used, except the terms be separated by a verb or a preposition. It is a literal version of the French *l'un l'autre*, and in some instances to be preferred to *each other*; as,

"So fellest foes, whose plots have broke their sleep, To take *the one the other*, by some chance."--*Shak.*

OBS. 17.--The Greek term for the reciprocals *each other* and *one an other*, is a certain plural derivative from [Greek: *allos*], *other*; and is used in three cases, the genitive, [Greek: *allælon*], the dative, [Greek: *allælois*], the accusative, [Greek: *allælois*]: these being all the cases which the nature of the expression admits; and for all these we commonly use the *objective*;--that is, we put *each* or *one* before the objective *other*. Now these English terms, taken in a reciprocal sense, seldom, if ever, have any plural form; because the article in *one an other* admits of none; and *each other*, when applied to two persons or things, (as it almost always is,) does not require any. I have indeed seen, in some narrative, such an example as this: "The two men were ready to cut *each others' throats*." But the meaning could not be, that each was ready to cut "*others' throats*;" and since, between the two, there was but one throat for *each* to cut, it would doubtless be more correct to say, "*each other's throat*." So Burns, in touching a gentler passion, has an inaccurate elliptical expression:

"'Tis when a youthful, loving, modest pair, In *others' arms*, breathe out the tender tale." --*Cotter's Sat. Night*.

He meant, "In *each other's arms*;" the apostrophe being misplaced, and the metre improperly allowed to exclude a word which the sense requires. Now, as to the plural of *each other*, although we do not use the objective, and say of many, "They love *each others*," there appear to be some instances in which the possessive plural, *each others'*, would not be improper; as, "Sixteen ministers, who meet weekly at *each*

other's houses."--*Johnson's Life of Swift*. Here the singular is wrong, because the governing noun implies a plurality of owners. "The citizens of different states should know *each others* characters."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 35. This also is wrong, because no possessive sign is used. Either write, "*each others' characters*," or say, "*one an other's character*."

OBS. 18.--*One* and *other* are, in many instances, terms relative and partitive, rather than reciprocal; and, in this use, there seems to be an occasional demand for the plural form. In French, two parties are contrasted by *les uns--les autres*; a mode of expression seldom, if ever imitated in English. Thus: "Il les séparera *les uns* d'avec *les autres*." That is, "He shall separate them *some* from *others*;"--or, literally, "*the ones* from *the others*." Our version is: "He shall separate them *one from an other*."--*Matt.*, xxv, 32. Beza has it: "Separabit eos *alteros ab alteris*." The Vulgate: "Separabit eos *ab invicem*." The Greek: "[Greek: Aphoriei autous ap allælon]." To separate many "*one from an other*," seems, literally, to leave none of them together; and this is not, "as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats." To express such an idea with perfect propriety, in our language, therefore, we must resort to some other phraseology. In Campbell's version, we read: "And *out of them* he will separate *the good from the bad*, as a shepherd separateth *the* sheep from the goats." Better, perhaps, thus: "And he shall separate them, *the righteous from the wicked*, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats."

OBS. 19.--Dr. Bullions says, "*One* and *other* refer to the singular only."--*Eng. Gram.*, p. 98. Of *ones* and *others* he takes no notice; nor is he sufficiently attentive to usage in respect to the roots. If there is any absurdity in giving a *plural* meaning to the singulars *one* and *other*, the following sentences need amendment: "*The one* preach Christ of contention; but *the other*, of love."--*Philippians*, i, 16. Here "*the one*" is put for "the one *class*," and "*the other*" for "the other *class*;" the ellipsis in the first instance not being a very proper one. "The confusion arises, when *the one* will put *their* sickle into *the other's* harvest."--LESLEY: in *Joh. Dict.* This may be corrected by saying, "*the one party*," or, "*the one nation*," in stead of "*the one*." "It is clear from Scripture, that Antichrist shall be permitted to work false miracles, and that they shall so counterfeit the true, that it will be hard to discern *the one* from *the other*."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 93. If in any ease we may adopt the French construction above, "*the ones* from the *others*," it will be proper here. Again: "I have seen *children* at a table, who, whatever was there, never asked for any thing, but contentedly took what was given them: and, at an other place, I have seen *others* cry for every thing they saw; they must be served out of every dish, and that first too. What made this vast difference, but this: That *one* was accustomed to have what *they* called or cried for; *the other* to go without it?"--*Locke, on Education*, p. 55. Here, (with *were* for *was*.) the terms of contrast ought rather to have been, *the ones--the others*; *the latter--the former*; or, *the importunate--the modest*. "Those nice shades, by which *virtues and vices* approach *each one another*."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 350. This expression should be any thing, rather than what it is. Say, "By which *virtue* and *vice* approach *each other*." Or: "By which certain virtues and vices *approximate--blend--become difficult of distinction*."

OBS. 20.--"Most authors have given the name of *pronoun adjectives*, ['pronouns adjective,' or 'pronominal adjectives,'] to *my, mine; our, ours; thy, thine; your, yours; his, her, hers; their, theirs*: perhaps because they are followed by, or refer to, some substantive [expressed or understood after them]. But, were they adjectives, they must either express the quality of their substantive, or limit its extent: adjectives properly so called, do the first; definitive pronouns do the last. All adjectives [that are either singular or plural,] agree with their substantives in *number*; but I can say, 'They are *my books*:' *my* is singular, and *books* plural; therefore *my* is not an adjective. Besides, *my* does not express the *quality* of the books, but only ascertains the possessor, the same as the genitive or substantive does, to which it is similar. Examples: 'They are *my books*;'--'They are *John's books*;' &c."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 108.

OBS. 21.--To the class of Participial Adjectives, should be referred all such words as the following: (1.) The simple participles made adjectives by position; as, "A *roaring* lion,"--"A *raging* bear,"--"A *brawling* woman,"--"A *flattering* mouth,"--"An *understanding* heart,"--"Burning coals,"--"The *hearing* ear, and the *seeing* eye."--*Bible*. "A *troubled* fountain,"--"A *wounded* spirit,"--"An *appointed* time."--*Ib.* (2.) Words of a participial appearance, formed from nouns by adding *ed*; as, "The eve thy *sainted* mother died."--*W. Scott*.

"What you write of me, would make me more *conceited*, than what I scribble myself."--*Pope*. (3.) Participles, or participial adjectives, reversed in sense by the prefix *un*; as, *unaspiring*, *unavailing*, *unbelieving*, *unbattered*, *uninjured*, *unbefriended*. (4.) Words of a participial form construed elliptically, as if they were nouns; as, "Among the *dying* and the dead."--"The *called* of Jesus Christ."--*Rom.*, i, 6. "Dearly *beloved*, I beseech you."--*I Pet.*, ii, 11. "The *redeemed* of the Lord shall return."--*Isaiah*, li, 11. "They talk, to the grief of thy *wounded*."--*Psalms*, lxi, 26: *Margin*.

OBS. 22.--In the text, *Prov.*, vii, 26, "She hath cast down many wounded," *wounded* is a participle; because the meaning is, "*many men wounded*," and not, "*many wounded men*." Our Participial Adjectives are exceedingly numerous. It is not easy to ascertain how many there are of them; because almost any simple participle may be set before a noun, and thus become an adjective: as,

"Where *smiling* spring its earliest visit paid, And *parting* summer's *ling'ring* blooms delay'd."--*Goldsmith*.

OBS. 23.--Compound Adjectives, being formed at pleasure, are both numerous and various. In their formation, however, certain analogies may be traced: (1.) Many of them are formed by joining an adjective to its noun, and giving to the latter the participial termination *ed*; as, *able-bodied*, *sharp-sighted*, *left-handed*, *full-faced*, *flat-nosed*, *thick-lipped*, *cloven-footed*, *high-heeled*. (2.) In some, two nouns are joined, the latter assuming *ed*, as above; as, *bell-shaped*, *hawk-nosed*, *eagle-sighted*, *lion-hearted*, *web-footed*. (3.) In some, the object of an active participle is placed before it; as, *money-getting*, *time-serving*, *self-consuming*, *cloud-compelling*, *fortune-hunting*, *sleep-disturbing*. (4.) Some, embracing numerals, form a series, though it is seldom carried far; as, *one-legged*, *two-legged*, *three-legged*, *four-legged*. So, *one-leaved*, *two-leaved*, *three-leaved*, *four-leaved*: or, perhaps better as Webster will have them, *one-leafed*, *two-leafed*, &c. But, upon the same principle, *short-lived*, should be *short-lifed*, and *long-lived*, *long-lifed*. (5.) In some, there is a combination of an adjective and a participle; as, *noble-looking*, *high-sounding*, *slow-moving*, *thorough-going*, *hard-finished*, *free-born*, *heavy-laden*, *only-begotten*. (6.) In some, we find an adverb and a participle united; as, *ever-living*, *ill-judging*, *well-pleasing*, *far-shooting*, *forth-issuing*, *back-sliding*, *ill-trained*, *down-trodden*, *above-mentioned*. (7.) Some consist of a noun and a participle which might be reversed with a preposition between them; as, *church-going*, *care-crazed*, *travel-soiled*, *blood-bespotted*, *dew-sprinkled*. (8.) A few, and those inelegant, terminate with a preposition; as, *unlooked-for*, *long-looked-for*, *unthought-of*, *unheard-of*. (9.) Some are phrases of many words, converted into one part of speech by the hyphen; as, "Where is the *ever-to-be-honoured* Chaucer?"--*Wordsworth*.

"And, with *God-only-knows-how-gotten* light, Informs the nation what is wrong or right." --*Snelling's Gift for Scribblers*, p. 49.

OBS. 24.--Nouns derived from compound adjectives, are generally disapproved by good writers; yet we sometimes meet with them: as, *hard-heartedness*, for hardness of heart, or cruelty; *quick-sightedness*, for quickness of sight, or perspicacity; *worldly-mindedness*, for devotion to the world, or love of gain; *heavenly-mindedness*, for the love of God, or true piety. In speaking of ancestors or descendants, we take the noun, *father*, *mother*, *son*, *daughter*, or *child*; prefix the adjective *grand*; for the second generation; *great*, for the, third; and then, sometimes, repeat the same, for degrees more remote: as, *father*, *grandfather*, *great-grandfather*, *great-great-grandfather*. "What would my *great-grandmother* say, thought I, could she know that thou art to be chopped up for fuel to warm the frigid fingers of her *great-great-great-granddaughters*!"--*T. H. Bayley*.

MODIFICATIONS.

Adjectives have, commonly, no modifications but the forms of *comparison*. Comparison is a variation of the adjective, to express quality in different degrees: as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*; *soft*, *softer*, *softest*.

There are three degrees of comparison; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive degree* is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple form: as, "An elephant is *large*; a mouse, *small*; a lion, *fierce*, *active*, *bold*, and *strong*."

The *comparative degree* is that which is *more* or *less* than something contrasted with it: as, "A whale is *larger* than an elephant; a mouse is a much *smaller* animal than a rat."

The *superlative degree* is that which is *most* or *least* of all included with it: as, "The whale is the *largest* of the animals that inhabit this globe; the mouse is the *smallest* of all beasts."--*Dr. Johnson*.

Those adjectives whose signification does not admit of different degrees, cannot be compared; as, *two*, *second*, *all*, *every*, *immortal*, *infinite*.

Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs; as, *fruitful*, *more fruitful*, *most fruitful*--*fruitful*, *less fruitful*, *least fruitful*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--"Some scruple to call the positive a degree of comparison; on the ground, that it does not imply either comparison, or degree. But no quality can exist, without existing in some degree: and, though the positive is very frequently used without reference to any other degree; as it is *the standard*, with which other degrees of the quality are compared, it is certainly an essential object of the comparison. While these critics allow only two degrees, we might in fact with more propriety say, that there are five: 1, the quality in its standard state, or positive degree; as *wise*: 2, in a higher state, or the comparative ascending; *more wise*: 3, in a lower, or the comparative descending; *less wise*: 4, in the highest state, or superlative ascending; *most wise*: 5, in the lowest state, or superlative descending; *least wise*. All grammarians, however, agree about the things themselves, and the forms used to express them; though they differ about the names, by which these forms should be called: and as those names are practically best, which tend least to perplex the learner, I see no good reason here for deviating from what has been established by long custom."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 231.

OBS. 2.--Churchill here writes plausibly enough, but it will be seen, both from his explanation, and from the foregoing definitions of the degrees of comparison, that there are but three. The comparative and the superlative may each be distinguishable into the ascending and the descending, as often as we prefer the adverbial form to the regular variation of the adjective itself; but this imposes no necessity of classing and defining them otherwise than simply as the comparative and the superlative. The assumption of two comparatives and two superlatives, is not only contrary to the universal practice of the teachers of grammar; but there is this conclusive argument against it--that the regular method of comparison has no degrees of diminution, and the form which has such degrees, is *no inflection* of the adjective. If there is any exception, it is in the words, *small*, *smaller*, *smallest*, and *little*, *less*, *least*. But of the smallness or littleness, considered abstractly, these, like all others, are degrees of increase, and not of diminution. *Smaller* is as completely opposite to *less small*, as *wiser* is to *less wise*. *Less* itself is a comparative descending, only when it diminishes some *other* quality: *less little*, if the phrase were proper, must needs be nearly equivalent to *greater* or *more*. Churchill, however, may be quite right in the following remark: "The comparative ascending of an adjective, and the comparative descending of an adjective expressing the opposite quality, are often considered synonymous, by those who do not discriminate nicely between ideas. But *less imprudent* does not imply precisely the same thing as *more prudent*; or *more brave*, the same as *less cowardly*."--*New Gram.*, p. 231.

OBS. 3.--The definitions which I have given of the three degrees of comparison, are new. In short, I know not whether any other grammarian has ever given what may justly be called a *definition*, of any one of them. Here, as in most other parts of grammar, loose *remarks*, ill-written and untrue assertions, have sufficed. The explanations found in many English grammars are the following: "The positive state expresses the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution; as, good, wise, great. The comparative degree increases or lessens the positive in signification; as, wiser, greater, less wise. The superlative degree increases or lessens

the positive to the highest or [the] lowest degree; as, wisest, greatest, least wise. The simple word, or positive, becomes [the] comparative by adding *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*, to the end of it. And the adverbs *more* and *most*, placed before the adjective, have the same effect; as, wise, *more* wise, *most* wise."--*Murray's Grammar*, 2d Ed., 1796, p. 47. If a man wished to select some striking example of bad writing--of thoughts ill conceived, and not well expressed--he could not do better than take the foregoing: provided his auditors knew enough of grammar to answer the four simple questions here involved; namely, What is the positive degree? What is the comparative degree? What is the superlative degree? How are adjectives regularly compared? To these questions I shall furnish *direct answers*, which the reader may compare with such as he can derive from the foregoing citation: the last two sentences of which Murray ought to have credited to Dr. Lowth; for he copied them literally, except that he says, "the adverbs *more* AND *most*," for the Doctor's phrase, "the adverbs *more* OR *most*." See the whole also in *Kirkham's Grammar*, p. 72; in *Ingersoll's*, p. 35; in *Alger's*, p. 21; in *Bacon's*, p. 18; in *Russell's*, p. 14; in *Hamlin's*, p. 22; in *J. M. Putnam's*, p. 33; in *S. Putnam's*, p. 20; in *R. C. Smith's*, p. 51; in *Rev. T. Smith's*, p. 20.

OBS. 4.--In the five short sentences quoted above, there are more errors, than can possibly be enumerated in ten times the space. For example: (1.) If one should say of a piece of iron, "It grows cold or hot very rapidly," *cold* and *hot* could not be in the "*positive state*," as they define it: because, either the "quality" or the "object," (I know not which,) is represented by them as "without any increase or diminution;" and this would not, in the present case, be true of either; for iron changes in bulk, by a change of temperature. (2.) What, in the first sentence, is erroneously called "the positive *state*," in the second and the third, is called, "the positive *degree*;" and this again, in the fourth, is falsely identified with "the simple *word*." Now, if we suppose the meaning to be, that "the positive state," "the positive degree," or "the simple word," is "without any increase or diminution;" this is expressly contradicted by three sentences out of the five, and implicitly, by one of the others. (3.) Not one of these sentences is *true*, in the most obvious sense of the words, if in any other; and yet the doctrines they were designed to teach, may have been, in general, correctly gathered from the examples. (4.) The phrase, "*positive in signification*," is not intelligible in the sense intended, without a comma after *positive*; and yet, in an armful of different English grammars which contain the passage, I find not one that has a point in that place. (5.) It is not more correct to say, that the comparative or the superlative degree, "increases or lessens the positive," than it would be to aver, that the plural number increases or lessens the singular, or the feminine gender, the masculine. Nor does the superlative mean, what a certain learned Doctor understands by it--namely, "*the greatest or least possible degree*." If it did, "the *thickest* parts of his skull," for example, would imply small room for brains; "the *thinnest*," protect them ill, if there were any. (6.) It is improper to say, "*The simple word becomes* [the] comparative by adding *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*." The thought is wrong; and nearly all the words are misapplied; as, *simple* for *primitive*, *adding* for *assuming*, &c. (7.) Nor is it very wise to say, "the adverbs *more* and *most*, placed before the adjective, *have the same effect*:" because it ought to be known, that the effect of the one is very different from that of the other! "*The same effect*," cannot here be taken for any effect previously described; unless we will have it to be, that these words, *more* and *most*, "become comparative by adding *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*, to the end of them:" all of which is grossly absurd. (8.) The repetition of the word *degree*, in saying, "The superlative *degree* increases or lessens the positive to the highest or lowest *degree*," is a disagreeable tautology. Besides, unless it involves the additional error of presenting the same word in different senses, it makes one degree swell or diminish an other *to itself*; whereas, in the very next sentence, this singular agency is forgotten, and a second equally strange takes its place: "The positive *becomes* the superlative by adding *st* or *est*, to the end of it;" i. e., to the end of *itself*. Nothing can be more ungrammatical, than is much of the language by which grammar itself is now professedly taught!

OBS. 5.--It has been almost universally assumed by grammarians, that the positive degree is *the only standard* to which the other degrees can refer; though many seem to think, that the superlative always implies or includes the comparative, and is consequently inapplicable when only two things are spoken of. Neither of these positions is involved in any of the definitions which I have given above. The reader may think what he will about these points, after observing the several ways in which each form may be used. In the phrases, "*greater than Solomon*,"--"*more than a bushel*,"--"*later than one o'clock*," it is not immediately obvious that

the positives *great*, *much*, and *late*, are the real terms of contrast. And how is it in the Latin phrases, "*Dulcior melle*, sweeter than honey,"--"*Præstantior auro*, better than gold?" These authors will resolve all such phrases thus: "*greater*, than Solomon *was great*,"--"*more*, than a bushel *is much*," &c. As the conjunction *than* never governs the objective case, it seems necessary to suppose an ellipsis of some verb after the noun which follows it as above; and possibly the foregoing solution, uncouth as it seems, may, for the English idiom, be the true one: as, "My Father is *greater than I*."--*John*, xiv, 28. That is, "My Father is greater *than I am*;"--or, perhaps, "than I am *great*." But if it appear that *some* degree of the same quality must always be contrasted with the comparative, there is still room to question whether this degree must always be that which we call the positive. Cicero, in exile, wrote to his wife: "Ego autem hoc *miserior* sum, quam tu, quæ es *miserrima*, quod ipsa calamitas communis est utriusque nostrum, sed culpa mea propria est."--*Epist. ad Fam.*, xiv, 3. "But in this I am *more wretched*, than thou, who art *most wretched*, that the calamity itself is common to us both, but the fault is all my own."

OBS. 6.--In my Institutes and First Lines of English Grammar, I used the following brief definitions: "The *comparative degree* is that which exceeds the positive; as, *harder*, *softer*, *better*." "The *superlative degree* is that which is not exceeded; as, *hardest*, *softest*, *best*." And it is rather for the sake of suggesting to the learner the peculiar *application* of each of these degrees, than from any decided dissatisfaction with these expressions, that I now present others. The first, however, proceeds upon the common supposition, that the comparative degree of a quality, ascribed to any object, must needs be contrasted with the positive in some other, or with the positive in the same at an other time. This idea may be plausibly maintained, though it is certain that the positive term referred to, is seldom, if ever, allowed to appear. Besides, the comparative or the superlative *may* appear, and in such a manner as to be, or seem to be, in the point of contrast. Thus: "Objects near our view are apt to be thought *greater than those of a larger size*, that are more remote."--*Locke's Essay*, p. 186. Upon the principle above, the explanation here must be, that the meaning is--"*greater than those of a larger size are thought great*." "The poor man that loveth Christ, is *richer than the richest man* in the world, that hates him."--*Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress*, p. 86. This must be "*richer than the richest man is rich*." The riches contemplated here, are of different sorts; and the comparative or the superlative of one sort, may be exceeded by either of these degrees of an other sort, though the same epithet be used for both. So in the following instances: "He that is *higher than the highest* regardeth; and there be *higher than they*."--*Eccl.*, v, 8. That is, "He that is higher than the highest *earthly dignitaries*, regardeth; and there are higher *authorities* than these." "*Fairer* than aught imagined else *fairest*."--*Pollok*. "*Sadder than saddest* night."--*Byron*. It is evident that the superlative degree is not, in general, that which *cannot be* exceeded, but that which, in the actual state of the things included, "*is not exceeded*." Again, as soon as any given comparative or superlative is, by a further elevation or intension of the quality, surpassed and exceeded, that particular degree, whatever it was, becomes merely positive; for the positive degree of a quality, though it commonly includes the very lowest measure, and is understood to exceed nothing, may at any time *equal* the very highest. There is no paradox in all this, which is not also in the following simple examples: "*Easier*, indeed, I was, but far from *easy*."--*Cowper's Life*, p. 50.

"Who canst the *wisest wiser* make, And babes *as wise* as they."--*Cowper's Poems*.

OBS. 7.--The relative nature of these degrees deserves to be further illustrated. (1.) It is plain, that the greatest degree of a quality in one thing, may be less than the least in an other; and, consequently, that the least degree in one thing, may be greater than the greatest in an other. Thus, the *heaviest* wood is *less heavy* than the *lightest* of the metals; and the *least valuable* of the metals is perhaps of *more value* than the *choicest* wood. (2.) The comparative degree may increase upon itself, and be repeated to show the gradation. Thus, a man may ascend into the air with a balloon, and rise *higher*, and *higher*, and *higher*, and *higher*, till he is out of sight. This is no uncommon form of expression, and the intension is from comparative to comparative. (3.) If a ladder be set up for use, one of its rounds will be *the highest*, and one other will be *the lowest*, or *least high*. And as that which is *highest*, is *higher* than all the rest, so every one will be *higher* than all below it. *The higher rounds*, if spoken of generally, and without definite contrast, will be those in the upper half; *the lower rounds*, referred to in like manner, will be those in the lower half, or those not far from the ground. *The*

highest rounds, or *the lowest*, if we indulge such latitude of speech, will be those near the top or the bottom; there being, absolutely, or in *strictness* of language, but *one* of each. (4.) If *the highest* round be removed, or left uncounted, the next becomes the *highest*, though not *so high* as the former. For every one is *the highest* of the number which it completes. All admit this, till we come to *three*. And, as the third is *the highest of the three*, I see not why the second is not properly *the highest of the two*. Yet nearly all our grammarians condemn this phrase, and prefer "*the higher of the two*." But can they give a *reason* for their preference? That the comparative degree is implied between the positive and the superlative, so that there must needs be three terms before the latter is applicable, is a doctrine which I deny. And if the second is *the higher of the two*, because it is *higher than the first*; is it not also *the highest of the two*, because it *completes the number*? (5.) It is to be observed, too, that as our ordinal numeral *first*, denoting the one which begins a series, and having reference of course to more, is an adjective of the superlative degree, equivalent to *foremost*, of which it is perhaps a contraction; so *last* likewise, though no numeral, is a superlative also. (6.) These, like other superlatives, admit of a looser application, and may possibly include more than one thing at the beginning or at the end of a series: as, "*The last years* of man are often helpless, like *the first*." (7.) With undoubted propriety, we may speak of *the first two*, *the last two*, *the first three*, *the last three*, &c.; but to say, *the two first*, *the two last*, &c., with this meaning, is obviously and needlessly inaccurate. "*The two first men* in the nation," may, I admit, be good English; but it can properly be meant only of *the two most eminent*. In specifying any part of a *series*, we ought rather to place the cardinal number after the ordinal. (8.) Many of the foregoing positions apply generally, to almost all adjectives that are susceptible of comparison. Thus, it is a common saying, "Take *the best first*, and *all* will be *best*." That is, remove that degree which is now superlative, and the epithet will descend to an other, "*the next best*."

OBS. 8.--It is a common assumption, maintained by almost all our grammarians, that the degrees which add to the adjective the terminations *er* and *est*, as well as those which are expressed by *more* and *most*, indicate an *increase*, or heightening, of the quality expressed by the positive. If such must needs be their import, it is certainly very improper, to apply them, as many do, to what can be only an approximation to the positive. Thus Dr. Blair: "Nothing that belongs to human nature, is *more universal* than the relish of beauty of one kind or other."--*Lectures*, p. 16. "In architecture, the Grecian models were long esteemed *the most perfect*."--*Ib.*, p. 20. Again: In his reprehension of Capernaum, the Saviour said, "It shall be *more tolerable* for the land of Sodom, in the day of judgement, than for thee."--*Matt.*, xi, 24. Now, although [Greek: anektoteron], *more tolerable*, is in itself a good comparative, who would dare infer from this text, that in the day of judgement Capernaum shall fare *tolerably*, and Sodom, *still better*? There is much reason to think, that the essential nature of these grammatical degrees has not been well understood by those who have heretofore pretended to explain them. If we except those few approximations to sensible qualities, which are signified by such words as *whitish*, *greenish*, &c., there will be found no actual measure, or inherent degree of any quality, to which the simple form of the adjective is not applicable; or which, by the help of intensive adverbs of a positive character, it may not be made to express; and that, too, without becoming either comparative or superlative, in the technical sense of those terms. Thus *very white*, *exceedingly white*, *perfectly white*, are terms quite as significant as *whiter* and *whitest*, if not more so. Some grammarians, observing this, and knowing that the Romans often used their superlative in a sense merely intensive, as *altissimus* for *very high*, have needlessly divided our English superlative into two, "*the definite*, and the *indefinite*;" giving the latter name to that degree which we mark by the adverb *very*, and the former to that which alone is properly called the superlative. Churchill does this: while, (as we have seen above,) in naming the degrees, he pretends to prefer "what has been established by long custom."--*New Gram.*, p. 231. By a strange oversight also, he failed to notice, that this doctrine interferes with his scheme of *five* degrees, and would clearly furnish him with *six*: to which if he had chosen to add the "*imperfect degree*" of Dr. Webster, (as *whitish*, *greenish*, &c.) which is recognized by Johnson, Murray, and others, he might have had *seven*. But I hope my readers will by-and-by believe there is *no need* of more than *three*.

OBS. 9.--The true nature of the Comparative degree is this: it denotes either some *excess* or some *relative deficiency* of the quality, when one thing or party is compared with an other, in respect to what is in both: as, "Because the foolishness of God is *wiser* than men; and the weakness of God is *stronger* than men."--*1 Cor.*,

i, 25. "Few languages are, in fact, *more copious* than the English."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 87. "Our style is *less compact* than that of the ancients."--*Ib.*, p. 88. "They are counted to him *less* than nothing and vanity."--*Isaiah*, xl, 17. As the comparatives in a long *series* are necessarily many, and some of them *higher* than others, it may be asked, "How can the comparative degree, in this case, be merely 'that which exceeds the positive?'" Or, as our common grammarians prompt me here to say, "May not the comparative degree increase or lessen *the comparative*, in signification?" The latter form of the question they may answer for themselves; remembering that the comparative *may advance from the comparative*, step by step, from the second article in the series to the utmost. Thus, three is a higher or greater number than two; but four is higher than three; five, than four; and so on, *ad infinitum*. My own form of the question I answer thus: "The *highest* of the *higher* is not *higher* than the rest are *higher*, but simply *higher* than they are *high*."

OBS. 10.--The true nature of the Superlative degree is this: it denotes, in a quality, *some extreme or unsurpassed extent*. It may be used either absolutely, as being without bounds; or relatively, as being confined within any limits we choose to give it. It is equally applicable to that which is naturally unsurpassable, and to that which stands within the narrowest limits of comparison. The *heaviest* of *three feathers* would scarcely be thought a *heavy* thing, and yet the expression is proper; because the weight, whatever it is, is relatively *the greatest*. The *youngest* of three persons, may not be *very young*; nor need we suppose the *oldest* in a whole college to have arrived at *the greatest conceivable age*. What then shall be thought of the explanations which our grammarians have given of this degree of comparison? That of Murray I have already criticised. It is ascribed to him, not upon the supposition that he invented it; but because common sense continues to give place to the authority of his name in support of it. Comly, Russell, Alger, Ingersoll, Greenleaf, Fisk, Merchant, Kirkham, T. Smith, R. C. Smith, Hall, Hiley, and many others, have copied it into their grammars, as being better than any definition they could devise. Murray himself unquestionably took it from some obscure pedagogue among the old grammarians. Buchanan, who long preceded him, has nearly the same words: "The Superlative increases or diminishes the Positive in Signification, to the highest or [the] lowest Degree of all."--*English Syntax*, p. 28. If this is to be taken for a grammatical definition, what definition shall grammar itself bear?

OBS. 11.--Let us see whether our later authors have done better. "The *superlative* expresses a quality in the greatest or [the] least *possible* degree; as, *wisest, coldest, least wise*."--*Webster's Old Gram.*, p. 13. In his later speculations, this author conceives that the termination *ish* forms the *first* degree of comparison; as, "Imperfect, *dankish*," Pos. *dank*, Comp. *danker*, Superl. *dankest*. "There are therefore *four* degrees of comparison."--*Webster's Philosophical Gram.* p. 65. "The *fourth* denotes the utmost or [the] least degree of a quality; as, *bravest, wisest, poorest, smallest*. This is called the *superlative* degree."--*Ib.*; also his *Improved Gram.*, 1831, p. 47. "This degree is called the Superlative degree, from its raising the amount of the quality above that of all others."--*Webber's Gram.*, 1832, p. 26. It is not easy to quote, from any source, a worse sentence than this; if, indeed, so strange a jumble of words can be called a sentence. "From its raising the amount," is in itself a vicious and untranslatable phrase, here put for "because it raises the amount;" and who can conceive of the superlative degree, as "raising the amount of the quality above that of all other qualities?" Or, if it be supposed to mean, "above the amount of all other *degrees*," what is this amount? Is it that of one and one, the *positive* and the *comparative* added numerically? or is it the sum of all the quantities which these may indicate? Perhaps the author meant, "above the amount of all other *amounts*." If none of these absurdities is here taught, nothing is taught, and the words are nonsense. Again: "The *superlative degree* increases or diminishes the positive to the highest or [the] lowest degree of which it is susceptible."--*Bucke's Classical Gram.*, p. 49. "The superlative degree is generally formed by adding *st* or *est* to the positive; and denotes *the greatest excess*."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 33. "The Superlative increases or diminishes the Signification of the Positive or Adjective, to a *very high* or a *very low* Degree."--*British Gram.*, p. 97. What *excess* of skill, or what *very high degree* of acuteness, have the *brightest* and *best* of these grammarians exhibited? There must be some, if their definitions are *true*.

OBS. 12.--The common assertion of the grammarians, that the superlative degree is not applicable to two *objects*, [177] is not only unsupported by any reason in the nature of things, but it is contradicted in practice by

almost every man who affirms it. Thus Maugher: "When only two persons or things are spoken of comparatively, to use the superlative is improper: as, 'Deborah, my dear, give those two boys a lump of sugar each; and let Dick's be the largest, because he spoke first.' This," says the critic, "should have been 'larger.'"--*Maugher's Gram.*, p. 4. It is true, the comparative *might* here have been used; but the superlative is clearer, and more agreeable to custom. And how can "*largest*" be wrong, if "*first*" is right? "Let Dick's be the *larger*, because he spoke *sooner*," borders too much upon a different idea, that of *proportion*; as when we say, "*The sooner the better*,"--"*The more the merrier*." So Blair: "When only two things are compared, the comparative degree should be used, and not the superlative."--*Practical Gram.*, p. 81. "A Trochee has the *first* syllable accented, and the *last* unaccented."--*Ib.*, p. 118. "An Iambus has the first syllable unaccented, and the *last* accented."--*Ibid.* These two examples are found also in *Jamieson's Rhetoric*, p. 305; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 253; *Kirkham's*, 219; *Bullions's*, 169; *Guy's*, 120; *Merchant's*, 166. So Hiley: "When *two* persons or things are compared, the *comparative* degree must be employed. When *three or more* persons or things are compared, the *superlative* must be used."--*Treatise on English Gram.*, p. 78. Contradiction in practice: "Thomas is *wiser* than his brothers."--*Ib.*, p. 79. Are not "*three or more persons*" here compared by "the comparative" *wiser*? "In an *Iambus* the *first* syllable is unaccented."--*Ib.*, p. 123. An iambus has but *two* syllables; and this author expressly teaches that "*first*" is "superlative."--*Ib.*, p. 21. So Sanborn: "The *positive* degree denotes the *simple* form of an adjective *without* any variation of meaning. The *comparative* degree increases or lessens the meaning of the *positive*, and denotes a comparison *between two* persons or things. The *superlative* degree increases or lessens the positive *to the greatest extent*, and denotes a comparison *between more than two* persons or things."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 30 and p. 86. These pretended definitions of the degrees of comparison embrace not only the absurdities which I have already censured in those of our common grammars, but several new ones peculiar to this author. Of the inconsistency of his doctrine and practice, take the following examples: "Which of two bodies, that move with the same velocity, will exercise the *greatest* power?"--*Ib.*, p. 93; and again, p. 203, "'I was offered a *dollar*;'--'A *dollar* was offered (to) *me*.' The *first* form should always be avoided."--*Ib.*, p. 127. "Nouns in apposition generally annex the sign of the possessive case to the *last*; as, 'For David my *servant's* sake.'--'John the *Baptist's* head.' *Bible*."--*Ib.*, p. 197.

OBS. 13.--So Murray: "We commonly say, 'This is the *weaker of the two*;' or, 'The *weakest of the two*;' [178] but the former is the regular mode of expression, because there are *only two* things compared."--*Octavo Gram.*, i, 167. What then of the following example: "Which of *those two persons* has *most* distinguished himself?"--*Ib.*, Key, ii, 187. Again, in treating of the adjectives *this* and *that*, the same hand writes thus: "*This* refers to the *nearest* person or thing, and *that* to the *most distant*: as, 'This man is *more intelligent* than *that*.' *This* indicates the *latter*, or *last* mentioned; *that*, the *former*, or *first* mentioned: as, 'Both wealth and poverty are temptations; *that* tends to excite pride, *this*, discontent.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 56. In the former part of this example, the superlative is twice applied where only two things are spoken of; and, in the latter, it is twice made equivalent to the comparative, with a like reference. The following example shows the same equivalence: "*This* refers to the *last* mentioned or *nearer* thing, *that* to the *first* mentioned or *more distant* thing."--*Webber's Gram.*, p. 31. So Churchill: "The superlative should not be used, when only two persons or things are compared."--*New Gram.*, p. 80. "In the *first* of these two sentences."--*Ib.*, p. 162; *Lowth*, p. 120. According to the rule, it should have been, "In the *former* of these two sentences;" but this would be here ambiguous, because *former* might mean *maker*. "When our sentence consists of two members, the *longest* should, generally, be the concluding one."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 117; and *Jamieson's*, p. 99. "The *shortest* member being placed *first*, we carry it *more readily* in our memory as we proceed to the second."--*Ib.*, & *Ib.* "Pray consider us, in this respect, as the *weakest* sex."--*Spect.*, No. 533. In this last sentence, the comparative, *weaker*, would perhaps have been better; because, not an absolute, but merely a comparative weakness is meant. So Latham and Child: "It is better, in speaking of only two objects, to use the comparative degree rather than the superlative, even, where we use the article *the*. *This is the better of the two*, is preferable to *this is the best of the two*."--*Elementary Gram.*, p. 155. Such is their rule; but very soon they forget it, and write thus: "In this case the relative refers to the *last* of the two."--*Ib.*, p. 163.

OBS. 14.--Hyperboles are very commonly expressed by comparatives or superlatives; as, "My *little finger* shall be *thicker* than my *father's loins*."--*1 Kings*, xii, 10. "Unto me, who am *less than the least* of all saints, is

this grace given."--*Ephesians*, iii, 8. Sometimes, in thus heightening or lowering the object of his conception, the writer falls into a catachresis, solecism, or abuse of the grammatical degrees; as, "Mustard-seed--which is *less than all the seeds* that be in the earth."--*Mark*, iv, 31. This expression is objectionable, because mustard-seed is a seed, and cannot be less than itself; though that which is here spoken of, may perhaps have been "*the least of all seeds*:" and it is the same Greek phrase, that is thus rendered in *Matt*, xiii, 32. Murray has inserted in his Exercises, among "unintelligible and inconsistent words and phrases," the following example from Milton:

"And, in the lowest deep, a lower deep Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide."--*Exercises*, p. 122.

For this supposed inconsistency, he proposes in his Key the following amendment:

"And, in the *lower* deep, *another* deep Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide."--*Key*, p. 254.

But, in an other part of his book, he copies from Dr. Blair the same passage, with commendation: saying, "The following sentiments of *Satan in Milton*, as strongly as they are described, *contain nothing* but what is *natural and proper*:"

'Me miserable! which way shall I fly Infinite wrath, and infinite despair? Which way I fly is Hell; myself am Hell; And in the lowest *depth*, a lower deep, Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide, To which the Hell I suffer seems a Heaven.' *P. Lost*, B. iv, l. 73." *Blair's Lectures*, p. 153; *Murray's Grammar*, p. 352.

OBS. 15.--Milton's word, in the fourth line above, is *deep*, and not *depth*, as these authors here give it: nor was it very polite in them, to use a phraseology which comes so near to saying, the devil was in the poet. Alas for grammar! accuracy in its teachers has become the most rare of all qualifications. As for Murray's correction above, I see not how it can please any one who chooses to think Hell a place of great depth. A descent into his "*lower deep*" and "*other deep*," might be a plunge less horrible than two or three successive slides in one of our western caverns! But Milton supposes the arch-fiend might descend to the lowest *imaginable* depth of Hell, and there be liable to a still further fall of more tremendous extent. Fall whither? Into the horrid and inconceivable profundity of the *bottomless pit*! What signifies it, to object to his language as "*unintelligible*" if it conveys his idea better than any other could? In no human conception of what is infinite, can there be any real exaggeration. To amplify beyond the truth, is here impossible. Nor is there any superlatation which can fix a limit to the idea of more and more in infinitude. Whatever literal absurdity there may be in it, the duplication seems greatly to augment what was even our greatest conception of the thing. Homer, with a like figure, though expressed in the positive degree, makes Jupiter threaten any rebel god, that he shall be thrown down from Olympus, to suffer the burning pains of the Tartarean gulf; not in the centre, but,

"As *deep* beneath th' infernal centre hurl'd, As from that centre to th' ethereal world." --*Pope's Iliad*, B. viii, l. 19.

REGULAR COMPARISON.

Adjectives are regularly compared, when the comparative degree is expressed by adding *er*, and the superlative, by adding *est* to them: as, Pos., *great*, Comp., *greater*, Superl., *greatest*; Pos., *mild*, Comp., *milder*, Superl., *mildest*.

In the variation of adjectives, final consonants are doubled, final *e* is omitted, and final *y* is changed to *i*, agreeably to the rules for spelling: as, *hot*, *hotter*, *hottest*; *wide*, *wider*, *widest*; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*.

The regular method of comparison belongs almost exclusively to monosyllables, with dissyllables ending in *w* or *y*, and such others as receive it and still have but one syllable after the accent: as, *fierce*, *fiercer*, *fiercest*;

narrow, narrower, narrowest; gloomy, gloomier, gloomiest; serene, serener, serenest; noble, nobler, noblest; gentle, gentler, gentlest.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS.

The two degrees of superiority may also be expressed with precisely the same import as above, by prefixing to the adjective the adverbs *more* and *most*: as, *wise, more wise, most wise; famous, more famous, most famous; amiable, more amiable, most amiable.*

The degrees of inferiority are expressed, in like manner, by the adverbs *less* and *least*: as, *wise, less wise, least wise; famous, less famous, least famous; amiable, less amiable, least amiable.* The regular method of comparison has, properly speaking, no degrees of this kind.

Nearly all adjectives that admit of different degrees, may be compared by means of the adverbs; but, for short words, the regular method is generally preferable: as, *quick, quicker, quickest*; rather than, *quick, more quick, most quick.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The genius of our language is particularly averse to the lengthening of long words by additional syllables; and, in the comparison of adjectives, *er* and *est* always add a syllable to the word, except it end in *le* after a mute. Thus, *free, freer, freest*, increases syllabically; but *ample, ampler, amplest*, does not. Whether any particular adjective admits of comparison or not, is a matter of reasoning from the sense of the term; by which method it shall be compared, is in some degree a matter of taste; though custom has decided that long words shall not be inflected, and for the shorter, there is generally an obvious bias in favour of one form rather than the other. Dr. Johnson says, "The comparison of adjectives is very uncertain; and being much regulated by commodiousness of utterance, or agreeableness of sound, is not easily reduced to rules. Monosyllables are commonly compared. Polysyllables, or words of more than two syllables, are seldom compared otherwise than by *more* and *most*. Dissyllables are seldom compared if they terminate in *full, less, ing, ous, ed, id, at, ent, ain, or ive.*"--*Gram. of the English Tongue*, p. 6. "When the positive contains but one syllable, the degrees are usually formed by adding *er* or *est*. When the positive contains two syllables, it is matter of taste which method you shall use in forming the degrees. The ear is, in this case, the best guide. But, when the positive contains more than two syllables, the degrees must be formed by the use of *more* and *most*. We may say, *tenderer* and *tenderest, pleasanter* and *pleasantest, prettier* and *prettiest*; but who could endure *delicater* and *delicatest*?"--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, p. 81. *Quiet, bitter, clever, sober*, and perhaps some others like them, are still regularly compared; but such words as *secretest, famousest, virtuouslest, powerfulest*, which were used by Milton, have gone out of fashion. The following, though not very commonly used, are perhaps allowable. "Yet these are the two *commonest* occupations of mankind."--*Philological Museum*, i, 431. "Their *pleasantest* walks throughout life must be guarded by armed men."--*Ib.*, i, 437. "Franklin possessed the rare talent of drawing useful lessons from the *commonest* occurrences."--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 323. "Unbidden guests are often *welcomest* when they are gone."--SHAK.: in *Joh. Dict.*

"There was a lad, th' *unluckiest* of his crew, Was still contriving something bad, but new."--KING: *ib.*

OBS. 2.--I make a distinction between the regular comparison by *er* and *est*, and the comparison by adverbs; because, in a grammatical point of view, these two methods are totally different: the meaning, though the same, being expressed in the one case, by an inflection of the adjective; and in the other, by a phrase consisting of two different parts of speech. If the placing of an adverb before an adjective is to be called a grammatical modification or variation of the latter word, we shall have many other degrees than those which are enumerated above. The words may with much more propriety be parsed separately, the degree being ascribed to the adverb--or, if you please, to both words, for both are varied in sense by the inflection of the former. The degrees in which qualities may exist in nature, are infinitely various; but the only degrees with

which the grammarian is concerned, are those which our variation of the adjective or adverb enables us to express--including, as of course we must, the state or sense of the primitive word, as one. The reasoning which would make the positive degree to be no degree, would also make the nominative case, or the *casus rectus* of the Latins, to be no case.

OBS. 3.--Whenever the adjective itself denotes these degrees, and is duly varied in form to express them, they properly belong to it; as, *worthy, worthier, worthiest*. (Though no apology can be made for the frequent error of confounding the *degree of a quality*, with the *verbal sign* which expresses it.) If an adverb is employed for this purpose, that also is compared, and the two degrees thus formed or expressed, are properly its own; as, *worthy, more worthy, most worthy*. But these same degrees may be yet otherwise expressed; as, *worthy, in a higher degree worthy, in the highest degree worthy*. Here also the adjective *worthy* is virtually compared, as before; but only the adjective *high* is grammatically modified. Again, we may form three degrees with several adverbs to each, thus: Pos., *very truly worthy*; Comp., *much more truly worthy*; Sup., *much the most truly worthy*. There are also other adverbs, which, though not varied in themselves like *much, more, most*, may nevertheless have nearly the same effect upon the adjective; as, *worthy, comparatively worthy, superlatively worthy*. I make these remarks, because many grammarians have erroneously parsed the adverbs *more* and *most, less* and *least*, as parts of the adjective.

OBS. 4.--Harris, in his *Hermes, or Philosophical Inquiry concerning Universal Grammar*, has very unceremoniously pronounced the doctrine of three degrees of comparison, to be *absurd*; and the author of the *British Grammar*, as he emotes the whole passage without offering any defence of that doctrine, seems to second the allegation. "Mr. Harris observes, that, 'There cannot well be more than two degrees; one to denote simple excess, and one to denote superlative. Were we indeed to introduce more degrees, we ought perhaps to introduce infinite, which is absurd. For why stop at a limited number, when in all subjects, susceptible of intension, the intermediate excesses are in a manner infinite? There are infinite degrees of *more white* between the first simple *white* and the superlative *whitest*; the same may be said of *more great, more strong, more minute, &c.* The doctrine of grammarians about *three* such degrees, which they call the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative, must needs be absurd; both because in their Positive there is no comparison at all, and because their Superlative is a Comparative as much as their Comparative itself.' *Hermes*, p. 197."--*Brit. Gram.*, p. 98. This objection is rashly urged. No comparison can be imagined without bringing together as many as two terms, and if the positive is one of these, it is a degree of comparison; though neither this nor the superlative is, for that reason, "*a Comparative*." Why we stop at three degrees, I have already shown: we have three *forms*, and only three.

OBS. 5.--"The termination *ish* may be accounted in some sort a degree of comparison, by which the signification is diminished below the positive, as *black, blackish*, or tending to blackness; *salt, saltish*, or having a little taste of salt:[179] they therefore admit of no comparison. This termination is seldom added but to words expressing sensible qualities, nor often to words of above one syllable, and is scarcely used in the solemn or sublime style."--*Dr. Johnson's Gram.* "The *first* [degree] denotes a slight degree of the quality, and is expressed by the termination *ish*; as, *reddish, brownish, yellowish*. This may be denominated the *imperfect* degree of the attribute."--*Dr. Webster's Improved Gram.*, p. 47. I doubt the correctness of the view taken above by Johnson, and dissent entirely from Webster, about his "*first degree* of comparison." Of adjectives in *ish* we have perhaps a hundred; but nine out of ten of them are derived clearly from *nouns*, as, *boyish, girlish*; and who can prove that *blackish, saltish, reddish, brownish, and yellowish*, are not also from the *nouns, black, salt, red, brown, and yellow*? or that "*a more reddish tinge,*"--"*a more saltish taste,*" are not correct phrases? There is, I am persuaded, no good reason for noticing this termination as constituting a degree of comparison. All "double comparisons" are said to be ungrammatical; but, if *ish* forms a degree, it is such a degree as may be compared again: as,

"And seem *more learnedish* than those That at a greater charge compose."--*Butler*.

OBS. 6.--Among the degrees of comparison, some have enumerated that of *equality*; as when we say, "It is *as*

sweet as honey." Here is indeed a comparison, but it is altogether in the *positive* degree, and needs no other name. This again refutes Harris; who says, that in the positive there is no comparison at all. But further: it is plain, that in this degree there may be comparisons of *inequality* also; as, "Molasses is *not so sweet* as honey."--"Civility is *not so slight* a matter as it is commonly thought."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 92. Nay, such comparisons may equal any superlative. Thus it is said, I think, in the Life of Robert Hall: "Probably no human being ever before suffered *so much* bodily pain." What a preëminence is here! and yet the form of the adjective is only that of the positive degree. "Nothing *so uncertain* as general reputation."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 50. "Nothing *so nauseous* as undistinguishing civility."--*Ib.*, p. 88. These, likewise, would be strong expressions, if they were correct English. But, to my apprehension, every such comparison of equality involves a solecism, when, as it here happens, the former term includes the latter. The word *nothing* is a general negative, and *reputation* is a particular affirmative. The comparison of equality between them, is therefore certainly improper: because *nothing* cannot be equal to *something*; and, reputation being something, and of course equal to itself, the proposition is evidently untrue. It ought to be, "Nothing *is more uncertain than* general reputation." This is the same as to say, "General reputation is *as uncertain as any thing* that can be named." Or else the former term should exempt the latter; as, "*Nothing else*"--or, "No *other* thing, is *so uncertain as* *this popular honour, public esteem, or 'general reputation.'*" And so of all similar examples.

OBS. 7.--In all comparisons, care must be taken to adapt the terms to the degree which is expressed by the adjective or adverb. The superlative degree requires that the object to which it relates, be one of those with which it is compared; as, "*Eve was the fairest* of women." The comparative degree, on the contrary, requires that the object spoken of be not included among those with which it is compared; as, "*Eve was fairer* than any of *her daughters*." To take the inclusive term here, and say, "*Eve was fairer* than any *woman*," would be no less absurd, than Milton's assertion, that "*Eve was the fairest of her daughters*:" the former supposes that she was *not a woman*; the latter, that she was *one of her own daughters*. But Milton's solecism is double; he makes Adam *one of his own sons*:--

"Adam the goodliest man of men since born His sons, the fairest of her daughters Eve."--*P. Lost*, B. iv, l. 324.

OBS. 8.--"Such adjectives," says Churchill, "as have in themselves a superlative signification, or express qualities not susceptible of degrees, do not properly admit either the comparative or [the] superlative form. Under this rule may be included *all adjectives with a negative prefix.*"--*New Gram.*, p. 80. Again: "As *immediate* signifies instant, present with regard to time, Prior should not have written '*more immediate.*' *Dr. Johnson.*"--*Ib.*, p. 233. "Hooker has *unaptest*; Locke, *more uncorrupted*; Holder, *more undeceivable*: for these the proper expressions would have been the opposite signs without the negation: *least apt, less corrupted, less deceivable.* Watts speaks of '*a most unpassable barrier.*' If he had simply said '*an unpassable barrier,*' we should have understood it at once in the strongest sense, as a barrier impossible to be surmounted: but, by attempting to express something more, he gives an idea of something less; we perceive, that his *unpassable* means *difficult to pass.* This is the mischief of the propensity to exaggeration; which, striving after strength, sinks into weakness."--*Ib.*, p. 234.

OBS. 9.--The foregoing remarks from Churchill appear *in general* to have been dictated by good sense; but, if his own practice is right, there must be some exceptions to his rule respecting the comparison of adjectives with a negative prefix; for, in the phrase "*less imprudent*," which, according to a passage quoted before, he will have to be different from "*more prudent*," he himself furnishes an example of such comparison. In fact, very many words of that class are compared by good writers: as, "Nothing is *more unnecessary.*"--*Lowth's Gram., Pref.*, p. v. "What is yet *more unaccountable.*"--ROGERS: in *Joh. Dict.* "It is hard to determine which is *most uneligible.*"--*Id., ib.* "Where it appears the *most unbecoming* and *unnatural.*"--ADDISON: *ib.* "Men of the best sense and of the *most unblemished* lives."--*Id., ib.* "March and September are the *most unsettled* and *unequable* of seasons."--BENTLEY: *ib.* "Barcelona was taken by a *most unexpected* accident."--SWIFT: *ib.* "The *most barren* and *unpleasant.*"--WOODWARD: *ib.* "O good, but *most unwise* patricians!"--SHAK.: *ib.* "*More unconstant* than the wind."--*Id., ib.* "We may say *more or less imperfect.*"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 168. "Some of those [passions] which act with the *most irresistible* energy upon the hearts of mankind, are

altogether omitted in the catalogue of Aristotle."--*Adams's Rhet.*, i, 380. "The wrong of him who presumes to talk of owning me, is *too unmeasured* to be softened by kindness."--*Channing, on Emancipation*, p. 52. "Which, we are sensible, are *more inconclusive* than the rest."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 319.

"Ere yet the salt of *most unrighteous* tears Had left the flushing in her galled eyes."--*Shak.*

OBS. 10.--Comparison must not be considered a general property of adjectives. It belongs chiefly to the class which I call common adjectives, and is by no means applicable to all of these. *Common adjectives*, or epithets denoting quality, are perhaps more numerous than all the other classes put together. Many of these, and a few that are pronominal, may be varied by comparison; and some *participial* adjectives may be compared by means of the adverbs. But adjectives formed from *proper names*, all the numerals, and most of the compounds, are in no way susceptible of comparison. All nouns used adjectively, as an *iron* bar, an *evening* school, a *mahogany* chair, a *South-Sea* dream, are also incapable of comparison. In the title of "His *Most Christian* Majesty," the superlative adverb is applied to a *proper adjective*; but who will pretend that we ought to understand by it "*the highest degree*" of Christian attainment? It might seem uncourtly to suggest that this is "an abuse of the king's English," I shall therefore say no such thing. Pope compares the word Christian, in the following couplet:--

"Go, purified by flames ascend the sky, My better and *more Christian* progeny."--*Dunciad*, B. i, l. 227.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly: *good, better, best; bad, evil, or ill, worse, worst; little, less, least; much, more, most; many, more, most.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In *English*, and also in *Latin*, most adjectives that denote *place* or *situation*, not only form the superlative irregularly, but are also either defective or redundant in comparison. Thus:

I. The following nine have more than one superlative: *far, farther, farthest, farmost, or farthestmost; near, nearer, nearest or next; fore, former, foremost or first; hind, hinder, hindmost or hindermost; in, inner, inmost or innermost; out, outer, or utter, outmost or utmost, outermost or uttermost; up, upper, upmost or uppermost; low, lower, lowest or lowermost; late, later or latter, latest or last.*

II. The following five want the positive: [*aft, adv.,*] *after, aftmost or aftermost; [forth, adv., formerly furth,[180]] further, furthest or furthestmost; hither, hithermost; nether, nethermost; under, undermost.*

III. The following want the comparative: *front, frontmost; rear, rearmost; head, headmost; end, endmost; top, topmost; bottom, bottommost; mid or middle, midst,[181] midmost or middlemost; north, northmost; south, southmost; east, eastmost; west, westmost; northern, northernmost; southern, southernmost; eastern, easternmost; western, westernmost.*

OBS. 2.--Many of these irregular words are not always used as adjectives, but oftener as nouns, adverbs, or prepositions. The sense in which they are employed, will show to what class they belong. The terms *fore* and *hind, front* and *rear, right* and *left, in* and *out, high* and *low, top* and *bottom, up* and *down, upper* and *under, mid* and *after*, all but the last pair, are in direct contrast with each other. Many of them are often joined in composition with other words; and some, when used as adjectives of place, are rarely separated from their nouns: as, *inland, outhouse, mid-sea, after-ages*. Practice is here so capricious, I find it difficult to determine whether the compounding of these terms is proper or not. It is a case about which he that inquires most, may perhaps be most in doubt. If the joining of the words prevents the possibility of mistaking the adjective for a preposition, it prevents also the separate classification of the adjective and the noun, and thus in some sense

destroys the former by making the whole a noun. Dr. Webster writes thus: "FRONTROOM, *n.* A room or apartment in the *forepart* of a house. BACKROOM, *n.* A room behind the *front room*, or in the *back part* of the house."--*Octavo Dict.* So of many phrases by which people tell of turning things, or changing the position of their parts; as, *inside out, outside in; upside down, downside up; wrong end foremost, but-end foremost; fore-part back, fore-end aft; hind side before, backside before.* Here all these contrasted particles seem to be adjectives of place or situation. What grammarians in general would choose to call them, it is hard to say; probably, many would satisfy themselves with calling the whole "*an adverbial phrase*,"--the common way of disposing of every thing which it is difficult to analyze. These, and the following examples from Scott, are a fair specimen of the uncertainty of present usage:

"The herds without a keeper strayed, The plough was in *mid-furrow* staid."--*Lady of the Lake.*

"The eager huntsman knew his bound, And in *mid chase* called off his hound."--*Ibidem.*

OBS. 3.--For the chief points of the compass, we have so many adjectives, and so many modes of varying or comparing them, that it is difficult to tell their number, or to know which to choose in practice. (1.) *North, south, east, and west,* are familiarly used both as nouns and as adjectives. From these it seems not improper to form superlatives, as above, by adding *most*; as, "From Aroar to Nebo, and the wild of *southmost* Abarim."--*Milton.* "There are no rivulets or springs in the island of Feror, the *westmost* of the Canaries."--*White's Nat. Hist.* (2.) These primitive terms may also be compared, in all three of the degrees, by the adverbs *farther* and *farthest*, or *further* and *furthest*; as, "Which is yet *farther west*."--*Bacon.* (3.) Though we never employ as separate words the comparatives *norther, souther, easter, wester,* we have *northerly, southerly, easterly, and westerly,* which seem to have been formed from such comparatives, by adding *ly*; and these four may be compared by the adverbs *more* and *most*, or *less* and *least*: as, "These hills give us a view of the *most easterly, southerly, and westerly* parts of England."--*GRAUNT: in Joh. Dict.* (4.) From these supposed comparatives likewise, some authors form the superlatives *northernmost, southernmost, easternmost, and westernmost*; as, "From the *westernmost* part of Oyster bay."--*Dr. Webster's Hist. U. S., p. 126.* "And three miles southward of the *southernmost* part of said bay."--*Trumbull's Hist. of Amer., Vol. i, p. 88.* "Pockanocket was on the *westernmost* line of Plymouth Colony."--*Ib., p. 44.* "As far as the *northernmost* branch of the said bay or river."--*Ib., p. 127.* The propriety of these is at least questionable; and, as they are neither very necessary to the language, nor recognized by any of our lexicographers, I forbear to approve them. (5.) From the four primitives we have also a third series of positives, ending in *ern*; as, *northern, southern, eastern, western.* These, though they have no comparatives of their own, not only form superlatives by assuming the termination *most*, but are sometimes compared, perhaps in both degrees, by a separate use of the adverbs: as, "*Southernmost, a. Furthest towards the south.*"--*Webster's Dict.* "Until it shall intersect the *northernmost* part of the thirty-first degree of north latitude."--*Articles of Peace.* "To the *north-westernmost* head of Connecticut river."--*Ib.* "Thence through the said lake to the *most north-western* point thereof."--*Ib.*

OBS. 4.--It may be remarked of the comparatives *former* and *latter* or *hinder, upper* and *under* or *nether, inner* and *outer* or *utter, after* and *hither*; as well as of the Latin *superior* and *inferior, anterior* and *posterior, interior* and *exterior, prior* and *ulterior, senior* and *junior, major* and *minor*; that they cannot, like other comparatives, be construed with the conjunction *than*. After all genuine English comparatives, this conjunction may occur, because it is the only fit word for introducing the latter term of comparison; but we never say one thing is *former* or *latter, superior* or *inferior, than* an other. And so of all the rest here named. Again, no real comparative or superlative can ever need an other superadded to it; but *inferior* and *superior* convey ideas that do not always preclude the additional conception of *more* or *less*: as, "With respect to high and low notes, pronunciation is still *more inferior* to singing."--*Kames, Elements of Criticism, Vol. ii, p. 73.* "The mistakes which the *most superior* understanding is apt to fall into."--*West's Letters to a Young Lady, p. 117.*

OBS. 5.--Double comparatives and double superlatives, being in general awkward and unfashionable, as well as tautological, ought to be avoided. Examples: "The Duke of Milan, and his *more braver* daughter, could

control thee."--*Shak., Tempest*. Say, "his *more gallant* daughter." "What in me was purchased, falls upon thee in a *more fairer* sort."--*Id., Henry IV*. Say, "*fairer*," or, "*more honest*;" for "*purchased*" here means *stolen*. "Changed to a *worser* shape thou canst not be."--*Id., Hen. VI*. Say, "a *worse* shape"--or, "an *uglier* shape." "After the *most straitest* sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee."--*Acts*, xxvi, 5. Say, "the *strictest* sect." "Some say he's mad; others, that *lesser* hate him, do call it valiant fury."--*Shak.* Say, "others, that hate him *less*." In this last example, *lesser* is used adverbially; in which construction it is certainly incorrect. But against *lesser* as an adjective, some grammarians have spoken with more severity, than comports with a proper respect for authority. Dr. Johnson says, "LESSER, *adj.* A barbarous corruption of *less*, formed by the vulgar from the habit of terminating comparatives in *er*; afterward adopted by poets, and then by writers of prose, till it has all the authority which a mode originally erroneous can derive from custom."--*Quarto Dict.* With no great fairness, Churchill quotes this passage as far as the semicolon, and there stops. The position thus taken, he further endeavours to strengthen, by saying, "*Worser*, though *not more barbarous*, offends the ear in a much greater degree, because it has not been so frequently used."--*New Gram.*, p. 232. Example: "And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the *lesser* light to rule the night."--*Gen.*, i, 16. Kirkham, after making an *imitation* of this passage, remarks upon it: "*Lesser* is as incorrect as *badder*, *gooder*, *worser*."--*Gram.*, p. 77. The judgement of any critic who is ignorant enough to say this, is worthy only of contempt. *Lesser* is still frequently used by the most tasteful authors, both in verse and prose: as, "It is the glowing style of a man who is negligent of *lesser* graces."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 189.

"Athos, Olympus, Ætna, Atlas, made These hills seem things of *lesser* dignity."--*Byron*.

OBS. 6.--The adjective *little* is used in different senses; for it contrasts sometimes with *great*, and sometimes with *much*. *Lesser* appears to refer only to size. Hence *less* and *lesser* are not always equivalent terms. *Lesser* means *smaller*, and contrasts only with *greater*. *Less* contrasts sometimes with *greater*, but oftener with *more*, the comparative of *much*; for, though it may mean *not so large*, its most common meaning is *not so much*. It ought to be observed, likewise, that *less* is not an adjective of *number*, [182] though not unfrequently used as such. It does not mean *fewer*, and is therefore not properly employed in sentences like the following: "In all verbs, there are no *less* than three things implied at once."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 81. "*Smaller* things than three," is nonsense; and so, in reality, is what the Doctor here says. *Less* is not the proper opposite to *more*, when *more* is the comparative of *many*: *few*, *fewer*, *fewest*, are the only words which contrast regularly with *many*, *more*, *most*. In the following text, these comparatives are rightly employed: "And to the *more* ye shall give the *more* inheritance, and to the *fewer* ye shall give the *less* inheritance."--*Numbers*, xxxiii, 54. But if writers will continue to use *less* for *fewer*, so that "*less cattle*," for instance, may mean "*fewer cattle*;" we shall be under a sort of *necessity* to retain *lesser*, in order to speak intelligibly: as, "It shall be for the sending-forth of oxen, and for the treading of *lesser* cattle."--*Isaiah*, vii, 25. I have no partiality for the word *lesser*, neither will I make myself ridiculous by flouting at its rudeness. "This word," says Webster, "is a corruption, but [it is] too well established to be discarded. Authors always write the *Lesser* Asia."--*Octavo Dict.* "By the same reason, may a man punish the *lesser* breaches of that law."--*Locke*. "When we speak of the *lesser* differences among the tastes of men."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 20. "In greater or *lesser* degrees of complexity."--*Burke, on Sublime*, p. 94. "The greater ought not to succumb to the *lesser*."--*Dillwyn's Reflections*, p. 128. "To such productions, *lesser* composers must resort for ideas."--*Gardiner's Music of Nature*, p. 413.

"The larger here, and there the *lesser* lambs, The new-fall'n young herd bleating for their dams."--*Pope*.

OBS. 7.--Our grammarians deny the comparison of many adjectives, from a false notion that they are already superlatives. Thus W. Allen: "Adjectives compounded with the Latin preposition *per*, are already superlative: as, *perfect*, *perennial*, *permanent*, &c."--*Elements of E. Gram.*, p. 52. In reply to this, I would say, that nothing is really superlative, in English, but what has the form and construction of the superlative; as, "The *most permanent* of all dyes." No word beginning with *per*, is superlative by virtue of this Latin prefix. "Separate spirits, which are beings that have *perfecter* knowledge and greater happiness than we, must needs have also a *perfecter* way of communicating their thoughts than we have."--*Locke's Essay*, B. ii, Ch. 24, §36. This mode of comparison is not now good, but it shows that *perfect* is no superlative. Thus Kirkham: "The *following*

adjectives, and *many others*, are *always in the superlative degree*; because, by expressing a quality in *the highest degree*, they carry in themselves a superlative signification: *chief, extreme, perfect, right, wrong, honest, just, true, correct, sincere, vast, immense, ceaseless, infinite, endless, unparalleled, universal, supreme, unlimited, omnipotent, all-wise, eternal.*" [183]--*Gram.*, p. 73. So the Rev. David Blair: "The words *perfect, certain, infinite, universal, chief, supreme, right, true, extreme, superior*, and some others, which express a perfect and superlative sense in themselves, do not admit of comparison."--*English Gram.*, p. 81. Now, according to Murray's definition, which Kirkham adopts, none of these words can be at all in the superlative degree. On the contrary, there are several among them, from which true superlatives are frequently and correctly formed. Where are the positives which are here supposed to be "*increased to the highest degree*?" Every real superlative in our language, except *best* and *worst, most* and *least, first* and *last*, with the still more irregular word *next*, is a derivative, formed from some other English word, by adding *est* or *most*; as, *truest, hindmost*. The propriety or impropriety of comparing the foregoing words, or any of the "*many others*" of which this author speaks, is to be determined according to their meaning, and according to the usage of good writers, and not by the dictation of a feeble pedant, or upon the supposition that if compared they would form "*double superlatives*."

OBS. 8.--*Chief* is from the French word *chef*, the *head*: *chiefest* is therefore no more a double superlative than *headmost*: "But when the *headmost* foes appeared."--*Scott*. Nor are *chief* and *chiefest* equivalent terms: "Doeg an Edomite, the *chiefest* of the herdsmen."--*1 Samuel*, xxi, 7. "The *chief* of the herdsmen," would convey a different meaning; it would be either the *leader* of the herdsmen, or the *principal part* of them. *Chiefest*, however, has often been used where *chief* would have been better; as, "He sometimes denied admission to the *chiefest* officers of the army."--*Clarendon*, let us look further at Kirkham's list of *absolute "superlatives."*

OBS. 9.--*Extreme* is from the Latin superlative *extremus*, and of course its literal signification is not really susceptible of increase. Yet *extremest* has been used, and is still used, by some of the very best writers; as, "They thought it the *extremest* of evils."--*Bacon*. "That on the sea's *extremest* border stood."--*Addison*. "How, to *extremest* thrill of agony."--*Pollok*, B. viii, l. 270. "I go th' *extremest* remedy to prove."--*Dryden*. "In *extremest* poverty."--*Swift*. "The hairy fool stood on th' *extremest* verge of the swift brook, augmenting it with tears."--*Shak*. "While the *extremest* parts of the earth were meditating submission."--*Atterbury*. "His writings are poetical to the *extremest* boundaries of poetry."--*Adams's Rhetoric*, i, 87. In prose, this superlative is not now very common; but the poets still occasionally use it, for the sake of their measure; and it ought to be noticed that the simple adjective is *not partitive*. If we say, for the first example, "the *extreme* of evils;" we make the word a *noun*, and do not convey exactly the same idea that is there expressed.

OBS. 10.--*Perfect*, if taken in its strictest sense, must not be compared; but this word, like many others which mean most in the positive, is often used with a certain latitude of meaning, which renders its comparison by the adverbs not altogether inadmissible; nor is it destitute of authority, as I have already shown. (See Obs. 8th, p. 280.) "From the first rough sketches, to the *more perfect* draughts."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 152. "The *most perfect*."--*Adams's Lect. on Rhet.*, i, 99 and 136; ii, 17 and 57; *Blair's Lect.*, pp. 20 and 399. "The *most beautiful and perfect* example of analysis."--*Lowth's Gram.*, *Pref.*, p. 10. "The plainest, *most perfect*, and most useful manual."--*Bullions's E. Gram.*, *Rev.*, p. 7. "Our sight is the *most perfect*, and the most delightful, of all our senses."--*Addison, Spect.*, No. 411; *Blair's Lect.*, pp. 115 and 194; *Murray's Gram.*, i, 322. Here Murray anonymously copied Blair. "And to render natives *more perfect* in the knowledge of it."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 171; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 366. Here Murray copied Campbell, the most accurate of all his masters. Whom did he copy when he said, "The phrases, *more perfect*, and *most perfect*, are improper?"--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 168. But if these are wrong, so is the following sentence: "No poet has ever attained a *greater perfection* than Horace."--*Blair's Lect.*, p. 398. And also this: "Why are we brought into the world *less perfect* in respect to our nature?"--*West's Letters to a Young Lady*, p. 220.

OBS. 11.--*Right* and *wrong* are not often compared by good writers; though we sometimes see such phrases as *more right* and *more wrong*, and such words as *rightest* and *wrongest*: "'Tis always in the *wrongest* sense."--*Butler*. "A method of attaining the *rightest* and greatest happiness."--*PRICE: Priestley's Gram.*, p. 78.

"It is no *more right* to steal apples, than it is to steal money."--*Webster's New Spelling-Book*, p. 118. There are equivalent expressions which seem preferable; as, *more proper, more erroneous, most proper, most erroneous*.

OBS. 12.--*Honest, just, true, correct, sincere*, and *vast*, may all be compared at pleasure. Pope's Essay on Criticism is *more correct* than any thing this modest pretender can write; and in it, he may find the comparative *juster*, the superlatives *justest, truest, sincerest*, and the phrases, "*So vast* a throng,"--"*So vast* is art:" all of which are contrary to his teaching. "*Unjuster* dealing is used in buying than in selling."--*Butler's Poems*, p. 163. "*Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero*."--*Cicero*. "I prefer the *unjustest* peace before the *justest* war."--*Walker's English Particles*, p. 68. The poet Cowley used the word *honestest*; which is not now very common. So Swift: "What *honester* folks never durst for their ears."--*The Yahoo's Overthrow*. So Jucius: "The *honestest* and ablest men."--*Letter XVIII*. "The sentence would be *more correct* in the following form."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 223. "Elegance is chiefly gained by studying the *correctest* writers."--*Holmes's Rhetoric*, p. 27. *Honest* and *correct*, for the sake of euphony, require the adverbs; as, *more honest, "most correct"*."--*Lowth's Gram., Pref.*, p. iv. *Vast, vaster, vastest*, are words as smooth, as *fast, faster, fastest*; and *more vast* is certainly as good English as *more just*: "Shall mortal man be *more just* than God?"--*Job*, iv, 17. "Wilt thou condemn him that is *most just*?"--*Ib.*, xxxiv, 17. "More wise, more learn'd, *more just*, more-everything."--*Pope*. *Universal* is often compared by the adverbs, but certainly with no reënforcement of meaning: as, "One of the *most universal* precepts, is, that the orator himself should feel the passion."--*Adams's Rhet.*, i, 379. "Though not *so universal*."--*Ib.*, ii, 311. "This experience is general, though not *so universal*, as the absence of memory in childhood."--*Ib.*, ii, 362. "We can suppose no motive which would *more universally* operate."--*Dr. Blair's Rhet.*, p. 55. "Music is known to have been *more universally* studied."--*Ib.*, p. 123. "We shall not wonder, that his grammar has been *so universally* applauded."--*Walker's Recommendation in Murray's Gram.*, ii, 306. "The pronoun *it* is the *most universal* of all the pronouns."--*Cutler's Gram.*, p. 66. Thus much for one half of this critic's twenty-two "*superlatives*." The rest are simply adjectives that are not susceptible of comparison: they are not "*superlatives*" at all. A man might just as well teach, that *good* is a superlative, and not susceptible of comparison, because "*there is none good but one*."

OBS. 13.--Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are expressed, simply relate to them, and have no modifications: except *this* and *that*, which form the plurals *these* and *those*; and *much, many*, and a few others, which are compared. Examples: "Whence hath *this* man *this* wisdom, and *these* mighty works?"--*Matt.*, xiii, 54. "But *some* man will say, How are the dead raised up? and with *what* body do they come?"--*I Cor.*, xv, 35. "The *first* man Adam was made a living soul; the *last* Adam was made a quickening spirit."--*Ib.*, 45. So, when one pronominal adjective "precedes an other, the former *must be taken* simply as an adjective;" as,

"Those suns are set. O rise *some other* such!" --*Cowper's Task*, B. ii, l. 252.

OBS. 14.--Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are not expressed, may be parsed as representing them in *person, number, gender*, and *case*; but those who prefer it, may supply the ellipsis, and parse the adjective, *simply as an adjective*. Example: "He threatens *many*, who injures *one*."--*Kames*. Here it may be said, "*Many* is a pronominal adjective, meaning *many persons*; of the third person, plural number, masculine gender, and objective case." Or those who will take the word simply as an adjective, may say, "*Many* is a pronominal adjective, of the positive degree, compared *many, more, most*, and relating to *persons* understood." And so of "*one*," which represents, or relates to, *person* understood. Either say, "*One* is a pronominal adjective, not compared," and give the *three definitions* accordingly; or else say, "One is a pronominal adjective, relating to *person* understood; of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and objective case," and give the *six definitions* accordingly.

OBS. 15.--*Elder* for *older*, and *eldest* for *oldest*, are still frequently used; though the ancient positive, *eld* for *old*, is now obsolete. Hence some have represented *old* as having a two-fold comparison; and have placed it, not very properly, among the irregular adjectives. The comparatives *elder* and *better*, are often used as *nouns*; so are the Latin comparatives *superior* and *inferior, interior* and *exterior, senior* and *junior, major* and *minor*:

as, The *elder's* advice,--One of the *elders*,--His *bettors*,--Our *superiors*,--The *interior* of the country,--A handsome *exterior*,--Your *seniors*,--My *juniors*,--A *major* in the army,--He is yet a *minor*. The word *other*, which has something of the nature of a comparative, likewise takes the form of a noun, as before suggested; and, in that form, the reader, if he will, may call it a noun: as, "What do ye more than *others*?"--*Bible*. "God in thus much is bounded, that the evil hath he left unto an *other*; and that *Dark Other* hath usurped the evil which Omnipotence laid down."--*Tupper's Book of Thoughts*, p. 45. Some call it a pronoun. But it seems to be pronominal, merely by ellipsis of the noun after it; although, unlike a mere adjective, it assumes the ending of the noun, to mark that ellipsis. Perhaps therefore, the best explanation of it would be this: "*Others* is a pronominal adjective, having the form of a noun, and put for *other men*; in the third person, plural number, masculine gender, and nominative case." The gender of this word varies, according to that of the contrasted term; and the case, according to the relation it bears to other words. In the following example, it is neuter and objective: "The fibres of this muscle act as those of *others*."--*Cheyne*. Here, "as *those of others*," means, "as the fibres of *other muscles*."

OBS. 16.--"Comparatives and superlatives seem sometimes to part with their relative nature, and only to retain their *intensive*, especially those which are formed by the superlative adverb *most*; as, 'A *most learned* man,'--'A *most brave* man;' i. e. not the bravest or the most learned man that ever was, but a man possessing bravery or learning in a very eminent degree."--See *Alexander Murray's Gram.*, p. 110. This use of the terms of comparison is thought by some not to be very grammatical.

OBS. 17.--Contractions of the superlative termination *est*, as *high'st* for *highest*, *bigg'st* for *biggest*, though sometimes used by the poets, are always inelegant, and may justly be considered grammatically improper. They occur most frequently in doggerel verse, like that of *Hudibras*; the author of which work, wrote, in his droll fashion, not only the foregoing monosyllables, but *learned'st* for *most learned*, *activ'st* for *most active*, *desperat'st* for *most desperate*, *epidemicat'st* for *most epidemical*, &c.

"And *th' activ'st* fancies share as loose alloys, For want of equal weight to counterpoise."--*Butler's Poems*.

"Who therefore finds the *artificial'st* fools Have not been chang'd i *th' cradle*, but the schools."--*Ib.*, p. 143.

OBS. 18.--Nouns used adjectively are not varied in number to agree with the nouns to which they relate, but what is singular or plural when used substantively, is without number when taken as an adjective: as, "One of the nine *sister* goddesses."--*Webster's Dict.*, w. *Muse*. "He has money in a *savings* bank." The latter mode of expression is uncommon, and the term *savings-bank* is sometimes compounded, but the hyphen does not really affect the nature of the former word. It is doubtful, however, whether a plural noun can ever properly assume the character of an adjective; because, if it is not then really the same as the possessive case, it will always be liable to be thought a false form of that case. What Johnson wrote "*fullers earth*" and "*fullers thistle*;" Chalmers has "*fullers earth*" and "*fuller's thistle*;" Webster, "*fuller's-earth*" and "*fuller's-thistle*;" Ainsworth, "*fuller's earth*" and "*fuller's thistle*;" Walker has only "*fullers-earth*;" Worcester, "*fuller's-earth*;" Cobb, "*fullers earth*;" the Treasury of Knowledge, "*fullers'-earth*." So unsettled is this part of our grammar, that in many such cases it is difficult cult to say whether we ought to use the apostrophe, or the hyphen, or both, or neither. To insert neither, unless we make a close compound, is to use a plural noun adjectively; which form, I think, is the most objectionable of all. See "*All souls day*,"--"*All-fools-day*,"--"*All-saints'-day*," &c., in the dictionaries. These may well be written "*All Souls' Day*" &c.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS IV.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

In the Fourth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of the ARTICLES, NOUNS, and ADJECTIVES.

The definitions to be given in the Fourth Praxis, are two for an article, six for a noun, three for an adjective, and one for a pronoun, a verb, a participle, an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The best and most effectual method of teaching grammar, is precisely that of which the careless are least fond: teach learnedly, rebuking whatsoever is false, blundering, or unmannerly."--*G. Brown.*

The is the definite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

Best is a common adjective, of the superlative degree; compared irregularly, *good*, *better*, *best*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The superlative degree is that which is *most* or *least* of all included with it.

And, is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in constructing, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

Most is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Effectual is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs; *effectual*, *more effectual*, *most effectual*; or, *effectual*, *less effectual*, *least effectual*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs.

Method is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person, is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

Of is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

Teaching is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb.

Grammar is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

Is is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

Precisely is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

That is a pronominal adjective, not compared; standing for *that method*, in the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case. [See OBS. 14th,] 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A pronominal adjective is a definitive word which may either accompany its noun or represent it understood. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

Of is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

Which is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

The is the definite article. 1. An article is the word *the*, *an*, or *a*, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite article is *the*, which denotes some particular thing or things.

Careless is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs; *careless*, *more careless*, *most careless*; or, *careless*, *less careless*, *least careless*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs.

Are is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

Least is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Fond is a common adjective, compared regularly, *fond*, *fonder*, *fondest*; but here made superlative by the adverb *least*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 8. The superlative degree is that which is *most* or *least* of all included with it.

Teach is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

Learnedly is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner.

Rebuking is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding *ing*, *d*, or *ed*, to the verb.

Whatsoever is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

Is is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies *to be*, *to act*, or *to be acted upon*.

False is a common adjective, of the positive degree; compared regularly, *false*, *falseer*, *falsest*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The positive degree is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple form.

Blundering is a participial adjective, compared by means of the adverbs; *blundering*, *more blundering*, *most blundering*; or, *blundering*, *less blundering*, *least blundering*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A participial adjective is one that has the form of a participle, but differs from it by rejecting the idea of time. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form,

are compared by means of adverbs.

Or is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so connected.

Unmannerly is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs; *unmannerly*, *more unmannerly*, *most unmannerly*; or, *unmannerly*, *less unmannerly*, *least unmannerly*. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The noblest and most beneficial invention of which human ingenuity can boast, is that of writing."--*Robertson's America*, Vol. II, p. 193.

"Charlemagne was the tallest, the handsomest, and the strongest man of his time; his appearance was truly majestic, and he had surprising agility in all sorts of manly exercises."--*Stories of France*, p. 19.

"Money, like other things, is more or less valuable, as it is less or more plentiful."--*Beanie's Moral Science*, p. 378.

"The right way of acting, is, in a moral sense, as much a reality, in the mind of an ordinary man, as the straight or the right road."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. Lang.*, i, 118.

"The full period of several members possesses most dignity and modulation, and conveys also the greatest degree of force, by admitting the closest compression of thought."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 79.

"His great master, Demosthenes, in addressing popular audiences, never had recourse to a similar expedient. He avoided redundancies, as equivocal and feeble. He aimed only to make the deepest and most efficient impression; and he employed for this purpose, the plainest, the fewest, and the most emphatic words."--*Ib.*, p. 68.

"The high eloquence which I have last mentioned, is always the offspring of passion. A man actuated by a strong passion, becomes much greater than he is at other times. He is conscious of more strength and force; he utters greater sentiments, conceives higher designs, and executes them with a boldness and felicity, of which, on other occasions, he could not think himself capable."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 236.

"His words bore sterling weight, nervous and strong, In manly tides of sense they roll'd along."--*Churchill*.

"To make the humble proud, the proud submit, Wiser the wisest, and the brave more brave."--*W. S. Landor*.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"I am satisfied that in this, as in all cases, it is best, safest, as well as most right and honorable, to speak freely and plainly."--*Channing's Letter to Clay*, p. 4.

"The gospel, when preached with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven, through the wonder-working power of God, can make the proud humble, the selfish disinterested, the worldly heavenly, the sensual pure."--*Christian Experience*, p. 399.

"I am so much the better, as I am the liker[184] the best; and so much the holier, as I am more conformable to

the holiest, or rather to Him who is holiness itself."--*Bp. Beneridge*.

"Whether any thing in Christianity appears to them probable, or improbable; consistent, or inconsistent; agreeable to what they should have expected, or the contrary; wise and good, or ridiculous and useless; is perfectly irrelevant."--*M'Irvine's Evidences*, p. 523.

"God's providence is higher, and deeper, and larger, and stronger, than all the skill of his adversaries; and his pleasure shall be accomplished in their overthrow, except they repent and become his friends."--*Cox, on Christianity*, p. 445.

"A just relish of what is beautiful, proper, elegant, and ornamental, in writing or painting, in architecture or gardening, is a fine preparation for the same just relish of these qualities in character and behaviour. To the man who has acquired a taste so acute and accomplished, every action wrong or improper must be highly disgusting: if, in any instance, the overbearing power of passion sway him from his duty, he returns to it with redoubled resolution never to be swayed a second time."--*Kames, Elements of Criticism*, Vol. i, p. 25.

"In grave Quintilian's copious work, we find The justest rules and clearest method join'd."--*Pope, on Crit.*

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"There are several sorts of scandalous tempers; some malicious, and some effeminate; others obstinate, brutish, and savage. Some humours are childish and silly; some, false, and others, scurrilous; some, mercenary, and some, tyrannical."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 52.

"Words are obviously voluntary signs: and they are also arbitrary; excepting a few simple sounds expressive of certain internal emotions, which sounds being the same in all languages, must be the work of nature: thus the unpremeditated tones of admiration are the same in all men."--*Kames, Elements of Crit.*, i, 347.

"A stately and majestic air requires sumptuous apparel, which ought not to be gaudy, nor crowded with little ornaments. A woman of consummate beauty can bear to be highly adorned, and yet shows best in a plain dress."--*Ib.*, p. 279. "Of all external objects a graceful person is the most agreeable. But in vain will a person attempt to be graceful, who is deficient in amiable qualities."--*Ib.*, p. 299.

"The faults of a writer of acknowledged excellence are more dangerous, because the influence of his example is more extensive; and the interest of learning requires that they should be discovered and stigmatized, before they have the sanction of antiquity bestowed upon them, and become precedents of indisputable authority."--*Dr. Johnson, Rambler*, Vol. ii, No. 93.

"Judges ought to be more learned than witty, more reverend than plausible, and more advised than confident; above all things, integrity is their portion and proper virtue."--*Bacon's Essays*, p. 145.

"The wisest nations, having the most and best ideas, will consequently have the best and most copious languages."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 408.

"Here we trace the operation of powerful causes, while we remain ignorant of their nature; but everything goes on with such regularity and harmony, as to give a striking and convincing proof of a combining directing intelligence."--*Life of W. Allen*, Vol. i, p. 170.

"The wisest, unexperienced, will be ever Timorous and loth, with novice modesty, Irresolute, unhardy, unadventurous."--*Milton*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF ADJECTIVES.

LESSON I.--DEGREES.

"I have the real excuse of the honestest sort of bankrupts."--*Cowley's Preface*, p. viii.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adjective *honestest* is harshly compared by *est*. But, according to a principle stated on page 283d concerning the regular degrees, "This method of comparison is to be applied only to monosyllables, and to dissyllables of a smooth termination, or such as receive it and still have but one syllable after the accent." Therefore, *honestest* should be *most honest*; thus, "I have real excuse of the *most honest* sort of bankrupts."]

"The honourablest part of talk, is, to give the occasion."--*Bacon's Essays*, p. 90. "To give him one of his own modestest proverbs."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 340. "Our language is now certainly properer and more natural, than it was formerly."--*Bp. Burnet*. "Which will be of most and frequentest use to him in the world."--*Locke, on Education*, p. 163. "The same is notified in the notablest places in the diocese."--*Whitgift*. "But it was the dreadfullest sight that ever I saw."--*Pilgrim's Progress*, p. 70. "Four of the ancientest, soberest, and discreetest of the brethren, chosen for the occasion, shall regulate it."--*Locke, on Church Gov.* "Nor can there be any clear understanding of any Roman author, especially of ancients, without this skill."--*Walker's Particles*, p. x. "Far the learnedest of the Greeks."--*Ib.*, p. 120. "The learner thou art, the humbler be thou."--*Ib.*, p. 228. "He is none of the best or honestest."--*Ib.*, p. 274. "The properest methods of communicating it to others."--*Burn's Gram.*, Prof, p. viii. "What heaven's great King hath powerfulest to send against us."--*Paradise Lost*. "Benedict is not the unhopfullest husband that I know."--*SHAK.: in Joh. Dict.* "That he should immediately do all the meanest and triflingest things himself."--*RAY: in Johnson's Gram.*, p. 6. "I shall be named among the famousest of women."--*MILTON'S Samson Agonistes: ib.* "Those have the inventivest heads for all purposes."--*ASCHAM: ib.* "The wretchedest are the contemners of all helps."--*BEN JONSON: ib.* "I will now deliver a few of the properest and naturallest considerations that belong to this piece."--*WOTTON: ib.* "The mortalest poisons practised by the West Indians, have some mixture of the blood, fat, or flesh of man."--*BACON: ib.* "He so won upon him, that he rendered him one of the faithfulest and most affectionate allies the Medes ever had."--*Rollin*, ii, 71. "'You see before you,' says he to him, 'the most devoted servant, and the faithfulest ally, you ever had.'"--*Ib.*, ii, 79. "I chose the flourishing'st tree in all the park."--*Cowley*. "Which he placed, I think, some centuries backwarder than Julius Africanus thought fit to place it afterwards."--*Bolingbroke, on History*, p. 53. "The Tiber, the notedest river of Italy."--*Littleton's Dict.*

"To fartherest shores the ambrosial spirit flies." --*Cutler's Gram.*, p. 140.

---"That what she wills to do or say, Seems wisest, virtuousest, discreetest, best." --*Milton*, B. viii, l. 550.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"During the three or four first years of its existence."--*Taylor's District School*, p. 27.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the cardinal numbers, *three* and *four* are put before the ordinal *first*. But, according to the 7th part of Obs. 7th, page 280th, "In specifying any part of a series, we ought to place the cardinal number after the ordinal." Therefore the words *three* and *four* should be placed after *first*; thus, "During the *first three* or *four* years of its existence."]

"To the first of these divisions, my ten last lectures have been devoted."--*Adams's Rhet.*, Vol. i, p. 391. "There are in the twenty-four states not less than sixty thousand common schools."--*Taylor's District School*, p. 38. "I know of nothing which gives teachers so much trouble as this want of firmness."--*Ib.*, p. 57. "I know of nothing that throws such darkness over the line which separates right from wrong."--*Ib.*, p. 58. "None need this purity and simplicity of language and thought so much as the common school instructor."--*Ib.*, p. 64. "I

know of no periodical that is so valuable to the teacher as the *Annals of Education*."--*Ib.*, p. 67. "Are not these schools of the highest importance? Should not every individual feel the deepest interest in their character and condition?"--*Ib.*, p. 78. "If instruction were made a profession, teachers would feel a sympathy for each other."--*Ib.*, p. 93. "Nothing is so likely to interest children as novelty and change."--*Ib.*, p. 131. "I know of no labour which affords so much happiness as that of the teacher's."--*Ib.*, p. 136. "Their school exercises are the most pleasant and agreeable of any that they engage in."--*Ib.*, p. 136. "I know of no exercise so beneficial to the pupil as that of drawing maps."--*Ib.*, p. 176. "I know of nothing in which our district schools are so defective as they are in the art of teaching grammar."--*Ib.*, p. 196. "I know of nothing so easily acquired as history."--*Ib.*, p. 206. "I know of nothing for which scholars usually have such an abhorrence, as composition."--*Ib.*, p. 210. "There is nothing in our fellow-men that we should respect with so much sacredness as their good name."--*Ib.*, p. 307. "Sure never any thing was so unbred as that odious man."--CONGREVE: *in Joh. Dict.* "In the dialogue between the mariner and the shade of the deceased."--*Philological Museum*, i, 466. "These master-works would still be less excellent and finish't"--*Ib.*, i, 469. "Every attempt to staylace the language of polisht conversation, renders our phraseology inelegant and clumsy."--*Ib.*, i, 678. "Here are a few of the unpleasant'st words that ever blotted paper."--SHAK.: *in Joh. Dict.* "With the most easy, undisobling transitions."--BROOME: *ib.* "Fear is, of all affections, the unaptest to admit any conference with reason."--HOOKER: *ib.* "Most chymists think glass a body more undestroyable than gold itself."--BOYLE: *ib.* "To part with unhack't edges, and bear back our barge undinted."--SHAK.: *ib.* "Erasmus, who was an unbigotted Roman Catholic, was transported with this passage."--ADDISON: *ib.* "There are no less than five words, with any of which the sentence might have terminated."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 397. "The one preach Christ of contention; but the other, of love."--*Philippians*, i, 16. "Hence we find less discontent and heart-burnings, than where the subjects are unequally burdened."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 56.

"The serpent, subtil'st beast of all the field, I knew; but not with human voice indu'd." --MILTON: *Joh. Dict.*, w. *Human*.

"How much more grievous would our lives appear, To reach th' eighth hundred, than the eightieth year?" --DENHAM: *B. P.*, ii, 244.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced one another at the same time."--*Lempriere's Dict.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase *one another* is here applied to two persons only, the words *an* and *other* being needlessly compounded. But, according to Observation 15th, on the Classes of Adjectives, *each other* must be applied to two persons or things, and *one another* to more than two. Therefore *one another* should here be *each other*; thus, "Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced *each other* at the same time."]

"Her two brothers were one after another turned into stone."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 194. "Nouns are often used as adjectives; as, A *gold-ring*, a *silver-cup*."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 14. "Fire and water destroy one another."--*Wanostrocht's Gram.*, p. 82. "Two negatives in English destroy one another, or are equivalent to an affirmative."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 94; *E. Devis's*, 111; *Mack's*, 147; *Murray's*, 198; *Churchill's*, 148; *Putnam's*, 135; *C. Adams's*, 102; *Hamlin's*, 79; *Alger's*, 66; *Fisk's*, 140; *Ingersoll's*, 207; and *many others*. "Two negatives destroy one another, and are generally equivalent to an affirmative."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 191; *Felton's*, 85. "Two negatives destroy one another and make an affirmative."--*J. Flint's Gram.*, p. 79. "Two negatives destroy one another, being equivalent to an affirmative."--*Frost's El. of E. Gram.*, p. 48. "Two objects, resembling one another, are presented to the imagination."--*Parker's Exercises in Comp.*, p. 47. "Mankind, in order to hold converse with each other, found it necessary to give names to objects."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 42. "Words are derived from each other[185] in various ways."--*Cooper's Gram.*, p. 108. "There are many other ways of deriving words from one another."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 131. "When several verbs

connected by conjunctions, succeed each other in a sentence, the auxiliary is usually omitted except with the first."--*Frost's Gram.*, p. 91. "Two or more verbs, having the same nominative case, and immediately following one another, are also separated by commas." [186]--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 270; *C. Adams's*, 126; *Russell's*, 113; and others. "Two or more adverbs immediately succeeding each other, must be separated by commas."--*Same Grammars*. "If, however, the members succeeding each other, are very closely connected, the comma is unnecessary."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 273; *Comly's*, 152; and others. "Gratitude, when exerted towards one another, naturally produces a very pleasing sensation in the mind of a grateful man."--*Mur.*, p. 287. "Several verbs in the infinitive mood, having a common dependence, and succeeding one another, are also divided by commas."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 153. "The several words of which it consists, have so near a relation to each other."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 268; *Comly's*, 144; *Russell's*, 111; and others. "When two or more verbs have the same nominative, and immediately follow one another, or two or more adverbs immediately succeed one another, they must be separated by commas."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 145. "Nouns frequently succeed each other, meaning the same thing."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 63. "And these two tenses may thus answer one another."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 322. "Or some other relation which two objects bear to one another."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 149. "That the heathens tolerated each other, is allowed."--*Gospel its own Witness*, p. 76. "And yet these two persons love one another tenderly."--*Murray's E. Reader*, p. 112. "In the six hundredth and first year."--*Gen.*, viii, 13. "Nor is this arguing of his but a reiterate clamour."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 250. "In severals of them the inward life of Christianity is to be found."--*Ib.*, iii, 272. "Though Alvarez, Despauterius, and other, allow it not to be Plural."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 169. "Even the most dissipate and shameless blushed at the sight."--*Lemp. Dict.*, w. *Antiochus*. "We feel a superior satisfaction in surveying the life of animals, than that of vegetables."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, 172. "But this man is so full fraughted with malice."--*Barclay's Works*, i11, 205. "That I suggest some things concerning the properest means."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 337.

"So hand in hand they pass'd, the loveliest pair That ever since in love's embraces met." --*Milton*, P. L., B., iv, l. 321.

"Aim at the high'est, without the high'est attain'd Will be for thee no sitting, or not long." --*Id.*, P. R., B. iv, l. 106.

CHAPTER V.

--PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun: as, The boy loves *his* book; *he* has long lessons, and *he* learns *them* well.

The pronouns in our language are twenty-four; and their variations are thirty-two: so that the number of *words* of this class, is fifty-six.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The word for which a pronoun stands, is called its *antecedent*, because it usually precedes the pronoun. But some have limited the term *antecedent* to the word represented by a *relative* pronoun. There can be no propriety in this, unless we will have every pronoun to be a relative, when it stands for a noun which precedes it; and, if so, it should be called something else, when the noun is to be found elsewhere. In the example above, *his* and *he* represent *boy*, and *them* represents *lessons*; and these nouns are as truly the antecedents to the pronouns, as any can be. Yet *his*, *he*, and *them*, in our most approved grammars, are not called relative pronouns, but personal.

OBS. 2.--Every pronoun may be explained as standing for the *name* of something, for the *thing itself* unnamed, or for a *former pronoun*; and, with the noun, pronoun, or thing, for which it stands, every pronoun must agree in person, number, and gender. The exceptions to this, whether apparent or real, are very few; and, as their occurrence is unfrequent, there will be little occasion to notice them till we come to syntax. But if the student will observe the use and import of pronouns, he may easily see, that some of them are put *substantively*, for nouns not previously introduced; some, *relatively*, for nouns or pronouns going before; some, *adjectively*, for nouns that must follow them in any explanation which can be made of the sense. These three modes of substitution, are very different, each from the others. Yet they do not serve for an accurate division of the pronouns; because it often happens, that a substitute which commonly represents the noun in one of these ways, will sometimes represent it in an other.

OBS. 3.--The pronouns *I* and *thou*, in their different modifications, stand immediately for persons that are, in general, sufficiently known without being named; (*I* meaning *the speaker*, and *thou*, *the hearer*;) their antecedents, or nouns, are therefore generally *understood*. The other personal pronouns, also, are sometimes taken in a general and demonstrative sense, to denote persons or things not previously mentioned; as, "*He* that hath knowledge, spareth his words."--*Bible*. Here *he* is equivalent to *the man*, or *the person*. "*The* care of posterity is most in *them* that have no posterity."--*Bacon*. Here *them* is equivalent to *those persons*. "How far do you call *it* to such a place?"--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 85. Here *it*, according to Priestley, is put for *the distance*. "For the priest's lips should keep knowledge, and *they* should seek the law at his mouth."--*Malachi*, ii, 7. Here *they* is put indefinitely for *men* or *people*. So *who* and *which*, though called relatives, do not always relate to a noun or pronoun going before them; for *who* may be a direct substitute for *what person*; and *which* may mean *which person*, or *which thing*; as, "And he that was healed, wist not *who* it was."--*John*, v, 13. That is, "*The man who* was healed, knew not *what person* it was." "I care not *which* you take; they are so much alike, one cannot tell *which* is *which*."

OBS. 4.--A pronoun with which a question is asked, usually stands for some person or thing unknown to the speaker; the noun, therefore, cannot occur before it, but may be used after it or in place of it. Examples: "In the grave, *who* shall give thee thanks?"--*Ps.*, vi, 5. Here the word *who* is equivalent to *what person*, taken interrogatively. "Which of you convinceth me of sin?"--*John*, viii, 46. That is, "*Which man* of you?" "Master, *what* shall we do?"--*Luke*, iii, 12. That is, "*What act*, or *thing*?" These solutions, however, convert *which* and *what* into *adjectives*: and, in fact, as they have no inflections for the numbers and cases, there is reason to think them at all times essentially such. We call them pronouns, to avoid the inconvenience of supposing and

supplying an infinite multitude of ellipses. But *who*, though often equivalent (as above) to an adjective and a noun, is never itself used adjectively; it is always a pronoun.

OBS. 5.--In respect to *who* or *whom*, it sometimes makes little or no difference to the sense, whether we take it as a demonstrative pronoun equivalent to *what person*, or suppose it to relate to an antecedent understood before it: as, "Even so the Son quickeneth *whom* he will."--*John*, v, 21. That is--"*what persons* he will," or, "*those persons* whom he will;" for the Greek word for *whom*, is, in this instance, plural. The former is a shorter explanation of the meaning, but the latter I take to be the true account of the construction; for, by the other, we make *whom* a double relative, and the object of two governing words at once. So, perhaps, of the following example, which Dr. Johnson cites under the word *who*, to show what he calls its "*disjunctive* sense:"--

"There thou tellst *of* kings, and *who* aspire; *Who* fall, *who* rise, *who* triumph, *who* do moan."--*Daniel*.

OBS. 6.--It sometimes happens that the real antecedent, or the term which in the order of the sense must stand before the pronoun, is not placed antecedently to it, in the order given to the words: as, "It is written, To *whom* he was not spoken of, *they* shall see; and they that have not heard, shall understand."--*Romans*, xv, 21. Here the sense is, "*They* to *whom* he was not spoken of, shall see." Whoever takes the passage otherwise, totally misunderstands it. And yet the same order of the words might be used to signify, "*They* shall see *to whom* (that is, *to what persons*) he was not spoken of." Transpositions of this kind, as well as of every other, occur most frequently in poetry. The following example is from an Essay on Satire, printed with Pope's Works, but written by one of his friends:--

"*Whose* is the crime, the scandal too be *theirs*; The knave and fool are their own libellers."--*J. Brown*.

OBS. 7.--The personal and the interrogative pronouns often stand in construction as the antecedents to other pronouns: as, "*He* also *that* is slothful in his work, is brother to *him that* is a great waster."--*Prov.*, xviii. 9. Here *he* and *him* are each equivalent to *the man*, and each is taken as the antecedent to the relative which follows it. "For both *he that* sanctifieth, and *they who* are sanctified, are all of one: for which cause, *he* is not ashamed to call *them* brethren."--*Heb.*, ii, 11. Here *he* and *they* may be considered the antecedents to *that* and *who*, of the first clause, and also to *he* and *them*, of the second. So the interrogative *who* may be the antecedent to the relative *that*; as, "*Who that* has any moral sense, dares tell lies?" Here *who*, being equivalent to *what person*, is the term with which the other pronoun agrees. Nay, an interrogative pronoun, (or the noun which is implied in it,) may be the antecedent to a *personal* pronoun; as, "*Who* hath first given to Him, and it shall be recompensed to *him* again?"--*Romans*, xi, 35. Here the idea is, "*What person* hath first given *any thing* to the Lord, so that it ought to be repaid *him*?" that is, "so that *the gift* ought to be recompensed from Heaven to *the giver*?" In the following example, the first pronoun is the antecedent to all the rest:--

"And *he that* never doubted of *his* state, *He* may perhaps--perhaps *he* may--too late."--*Cowper*.

OBS. 8.--So the personal pronouns of the *possessive* case, (which some call adjectives,) are sometimes represented by relatives, though less frequently than their primitives: as, "How different, O Ortogrul, is *thy* condition, *who* art doomed to the perpetual torments of unsatisfied desire!"--*Dr. Johnson*. Here *who* is of the second person, singular, masculine; and represents the antecedent pronoun *thy*: for *thy* is a pronoun, and not (as some writers will have it) an adjective. Examples like this, disprove the doctrine of those grammarians who say that *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, and their plurals, *our*, *your*, *their*, are adjectives. For, if they were mere adjectives, they could not thus be made antecedents. Examples of this construction are sufficiently common, and sufficiently clear, to settle that point, unless they can be better explained in some other way. Take an instance or two more: "And they are written for *our* admonition, upon *whom* the ends of the world are come."--*I Cor.*, x, 11.

"Be thou the first true merit to befriend; *His* praise is lost, *who* stays till all commend."--*Pope*.

CLASSES.

Pronouns are divided into three classes; *personal*, *relative*, and *interrogative*.

I. A *personal pronoun* is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is; as, "Whether *it*[187] were *I* or *they*, so *we* preach, and so *ye* believed."--*I Cor.*, xv, 11.

The simple personal pronouns are five: namely, *I*, of the first person; *thou*, of the second person; *he*, *she*, and *it*, of the third person.

The compound personal pronouns are also five: namely, *myself*, of the first person; *thyself*, of the second person; *himself*, *herself*, and *itself*, of the third person.

II. A *relative pronoun* is a pronoun that represents an antecedent word or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence; as, "No people can be great, *who* have ceased to be virtuous."--*Dr. Johnson*.

The relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *what*, *that*, *as*, and the compounds *whoever* or *whosoever*, *whichever* or *whichever*, *whatever* or *whatsoever*. [188]

What is a kind of *double relative*, equivalent to *that which* or *those which*; and is to be parsed, first as antecedent, and then as relative: as, "This is *what* I wanted; that is to say, *the thing which* I wanted."--*L. Murray*. III. An *interrogative pronoun* is a pronoun with which a question is asked; as, "*Who* touched my clothes?"--*Mark*, v, 30.

The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *what*; being the same in form as relatives.

Who demands a person's name; *which*, that a person or thing be distinguished from others; *what*, the name of a thing, or a person's occupation and character.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pronouns *I* and *myself*, *thou* and *thyself*, with their inflections, are literally applicable to persons only; but, *figuratively*, they represent brutes, or whatever else the human imagination invests with speech and reason. The latter use of them, though literal perhaps in every thing *but person*, constitutes the purest kind of personification. For example: "The *trees* went forth on a time to anoint a king over them: and they said unto the *olive-tree*, 'Reign *thou* over *us*.' But the *olive-tree* said unto them, 'Should *I* leave *my* fatness, wherewith by *me* they honour God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?'" See *Judges*, ix, from 8 to 16.

OBS. 2.--The pronouns *he* and *himself*, *she* and *herself*, with their inflections, are literally applicable to persons and to brutes, and to these only; if applied to lifeless objects, they animate them, and are figurative *in gender*, though literal perhaps in every other respect. For example: "A *diamond* of beauty and lustre, observing at *his* side in the same cabinet, not only many other gems, but even a *loadstone*, began to question the latter how *he* came there--*he*, *who* appeared to be no better than a mere flint, a sorry rusty-looking pebble, without the least shining quality to advance *him* to such honour; and concluded with desiring *him* to keep *his* distance, and to pay a proper respect to *his* superiors."--*Kames's Art of Thinking*, p. 226.

OBS. 3.--The pronoun *it*, as it carries in itself no such idea as that of personality, or sex, or life, is chiefly used with reference to things inanimate; yet the word is, in a certain way, applicable to animals, or even to persons; though it does not, in itself, present them as such. Thus we say, "*It* is *I*;"--"*It* was *they*;"--"*It* was *you*;"--"*It* was your *agent*;"--"*It* is your *bull* that has killed one of my oxen." In examples of this kind, the word *it* is simply demonstrative; meaning, *the thing or subject spoken of*. That subject, whatever it be in itself, may be introduced again after the verb, in any person, number, or gender, that suits it. But, as the verb agrees with the

pronoun *it*, the word which follows, can in no sense be made, as Dr. Priestley will have it to be, the *antecedent* to that pronoun. Besides, it is contrary to the nature of what is primarily demonstrative, to represent a preceding word of any kind. The Doctor absurdly says, "Not only things, but persons, may be the *antecedent* to this pronoun; as, *Who is it? Is it not Thomas?* i. e. *Who is the person? Is not he Thomas?*"--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 85. In these examples, the terms are transposed by interrogation; but that circumstance, though it may have helped to deceive this author and his copiers, affects not my assertion.

OBS. 4.--The pronoun *who* is usually applied only to persons. Its application to brutes or to things is improper, unless we mean to personify them. But *whose*, the possessive case of this relative, is sometimes used to supply the place of the possessive case, otherwise wanting, to the relative *which*. Examples: "The mutes are those consonants *whose* sounds cannot be protracted."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 9. "Philosophy, *whose* end is, to instruct us in the knowledge of nature."--*Ib.*, p. 54; *Campbell's Rhet.*, 421. "Those adverbs are compared *whose* primitives are obsolete."--*Adam's Latin Gram.*, p. 150. "After a sentence *whose* sense is complete in itself, a period is used."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 124. "We remember best those things *whose* parts are methodically disposed, and mutually connected."--*Beattie's Moral Science*, i, 59. "Is there any other doctrine *whose* followers are punished?"--ADDISON: *Murray's Gram.*, p. 54; *Lowth's*, p. 25.

"The question, *whose* solution I require, Is, what the sex of women most desire."--DRYDEN: *Lowth*, p. 25.

OBS. 5.--Buchanan, as well as Lowth, condemns the foregoing use of *whose*, except in grave poetry: saying, "This manner of *personification* adds an air of dignity to the higher and more solemn kind of poetry, but it is highly improper in the lower kind, or in prose."--*Buchanan's English Syntax*, p. 73. And, of the last two examples above quoted, he says, "It ought to be *of which*, in both places: i. e. The followers *of which*; the solution *of which*."--*Ib.*, p. 73. The truth is, that no personification is here intended. Hence it may be better to avoid, if we can, this use of *whose*, as seeming to imply what we do not mean. But Buchanan himself (stealing the text of an older author) has furnished at least one example as objectionable as any of the foregoing: "Prepositions are naturally placed betwixt the Words *whose* Relation and Dependence each of them is to express."--*English Syntax*, p. 90; *British Gram.*, p. 201. I dislike this construction, and yet sometimes adopt it, for want of another as good. It is too much, to say with Churchill, that "this practice is now discountenanced by all correct writers."--*New Gram.*, p. 226. Grammarians would perhaps differ less, if they would read more. Dr. Campbell commends the use of *whose* for *of which*, as an improvement suggested by good taste, and established by abundant authority. See *Philosophy of Rhetoric*, p. 420. "WHOSE, the possessive or genitive case of *who* or *which*; applied to persons or things."--*Webster's Octavo Dict.* "Whose is well authorized by good usage, as the possessive of *which*."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 69. "Nor is any language complete, *whose* verbs have not tenses."--*Harris's Hermes*.

"-----"Past and future, are the wings On *whose* support, harmoniously conjoined, Moves the great spirit of human knowledge."--MS." *Wordsworth's Preface to his Poems*, p. xviii.

OBS. 6.--The relative *which*, though formerly applied to persons and made equivalent to *who*, is now confined to brute animals and inanimate things. Thus, "Our Father *which* art in heaven," is not now reckoned good English; it should be, "Our Father *who* art in heaven." In this, as well as in many other things, the custom of speech has changed; so that what was once right, is now ungrammatical. The use of *which* for *who* is very common in the Bible, and in other books of the seventeenth century; but all good writers now avoid the construction. It occurs seventy-five times in the third chapter of Luke; as, "Joseph, *which* was the son of Heli, *which* was the son of Matthat," etc. etc. After a personal term taken by metonymy for a thing, *which* is not improper; as, "Of the particular *author which* he is studying."--*Gallaudet*. And as an interrogative or a demonstrative pronoun or adjective, the word *which* is still applicable to persons, as formerly; as, "*Which* of you all?"--"*Which* man of you all?"--"There arose a reasoning among them, *which* of them should be the greatest."--*Luke*, ix, 46. "Two fair twins--the puzzled Strangers, *which* is *which*, inquire."--*Tickell*.

OBS. 7.--If *which*, as a direct relative, is inapplicable to persons, *who* ought to be preferred to it in all

personifications: as,

"The seal is set. Now welcome thou dread power, Nameless, yet thus omnipotent, *which* here Walk'st in the shadow of the midnight hour." BYRON: *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, Cant, iv, st. 138.

What sort of personage is here imagined and addressed, I will not pretend to say; but it should seem, that *who* would be more proper than *which*, though less agreeable in sound before the word *here*. In one of his notes on this word, Churchill has fallen into a strange error. He will have *who* to represent a *horse*! and that, in such a sense, as would require *which* and not *who*, even for a person. As he prints the masculine pronoun in Italics, perhaps he thought, with Murray and Webster, that *which* must needs be "of the *neuter gender*." [189] He says, "In the following passage, *which* seems to be used *instead* of *who*:--

'Between two horses, *which* doth bear him best; I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment' SHAKS., 1 Hen. VI."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 226.

OBS. 8.--The pronoun *what* is usually applied to things only. It has a twofold relation, and is often used (by ellipsis of the noun) both as antecedent and as relative, in the form of a single word; being equivalent to *that which*, or *the thing which*,--*those which*, or *the things which*. In this double relation, *what* represents two cases at the same time: as, "He is ashamed of *what* he has done;" that is, "of *what* [*thing* or *action*] he has done;"--or, "of *that* [*thing* or *action*] *which* he has done." Here are two objectives. The two cases are sometimes alike, sometimes different; for either of them may be the nominative, and either, the objective. Examples: "The dread of censure ought not to prevail *over what* is proper."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. i, p. 252. "The public ear will not easily *bear what* is slovenly and incorrect."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 12. "He who buys *what* he does not need, will often need *what* he cannot buy."--*Student's Manual*, p. 290. "*What* is just, is honest; and again, *what* is honest, is just."--*Cicero*. "He that hath an ear, let him hear *what* the Spirit saith unto the churches."--*Rev.*, ii, 7, 11, 17, 29; iii, 6, 13, 22.

OBS. 9.--This pronoun, *what*, is usually of the singular number, though sometimes plural: as, "I must turn to the faults, or *what appear* such to me."--*Byron*. "All distortions and mimicries, as such, are *what raise* aversion instead of pleasure."--*Steele*. "Purified indeed from *what appear* to be its real defects."--*Wordsworth's Pref.*, p. xix. "Every single impression, made even by the same object, is distinguishable from *what* have gone before, and from *what* succeed."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. i, p. 107. "Sensible people express no thoughts but *what* make some figure."--*Ib.*, Vol. i, p. 399. The following example, which makes *what* both singular and plural at once, is a manifest solecism: "*What* has since followed *are* but natural consequences."--J. C. CALHOUN, *Speech in U. S. Senate*, March 4, 1850. Here *has* should be *have*; or else the form should be this: "What has since followed, *is* but a natural consequence."

OBS. 10.--The common import of this remarkable pronoun, *what*, is, as we see in the foregoing examples, twofold; but some instances occur, in which it does not appear to have this double construction, but to be simply declaratory; and many, in which the word is simply an adjective: as, "*What* a strange run of luck I have had to-day!"--*Columbian Orator*, p. 293. Here *what* is a mere adjective; and, in the following examples, a pronoun indefinite:--

"I tell thee *what*, corporal, I could tear her."--*Shak.*

"He knows *what's what*, and that's as high As metaphysic wit can fly."--*Hudibras*.

OBS. 11.--*What* is sometimes used both as an adjective and as a relative at the same time, and is placed before the noun which it represents; being equivalent to the adjective *any* or *all*, and the simple relative *who*, *which*[190] or *that*: as, "*What* money we had, was taken away." That is, "*All the* money *that* we had, was taken away." "*What* man but enters, dies." That is, "*Any* man *who* enters, dies." "It was agreed that *what* goods were aboard his vessels, should be landed."--*Mickle's India*, p. 89. "*What* appearances of worth afterwards

succeeded, were drawn from thence."--*Internal Policy of Great Britain*, p. 196. That is, "*All the appearances of worth, which afterwards succeeded.*"--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 93. Indeed, this pronoun does not admit of being construed after a noun, as a simple relative: none but the most illiterate ever seriously use it so. *What* put for *who* or *which*, is therefore a ludicrous vulgarism; as, "The aspiring youth *what* fired the Ephesian dome."--*Jester*. The word used as above, however, does not always preclude the introduction of a personal pronoun before the subsequent verb; as,[191]

"*What* god but enters yon forbidden field, Who yields assistance, or but wills to yield, Back to the skies with shame *he* shall be driven, Gash'd with dishonest wounds, the scorn of heaven."--*Pope's Homer*.

OBS. 12.--The compound *whatever* or *whatsoever* has the same peculiarities of construction as has the simpler word *what*: as, "Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, *Whatever* word, with a noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb."--*Adam's Latin Gram.*, p. 78. That is, "Any word *which* expresses," &c. "We will certainly do *whatsoever* thing goeth forth out of our own mouth."--*Jeremiah*, xlv, 17. That is--"any thing, or every thing, *which*." "*Whatever* sounds are difficult in pronunciation, are, in the same proportion, harsh and painful to the ear."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 121; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 325. "*Whatsoever* things were written aforetime, were written for our learning."--*Romans*, xv, 4. In all these examples, the word *whatever* or *whatsoever* appears to be used both adjectively and relatively. There are instances, however, in which the relation of this term is not twofold, but simple: as, "*Whatever* useful or engaging endowments we possess, virtue is requisite in order to their shining with proper lustre."--*English Reader*, p. 23. Here *whatever* is simply an adjective. "The declarations contained in them [the Scriptures] rest on the authority of God *himself*; and there can be no appeal from them to any other authority *whatsoever*."--*London Epistle*, 1836. Here *whatsoever* may be parsed either as an adjective relating to *authority*, or as an emphatic pronoun in apposition with its noun, like *himself* in the preceding clause. In this general explanatory sense, *whatsoever* may be applied to persons as well as to things; as, "I should be sorry if it entered into the imagination of *any person whatsoever*, that I was preferred to all other patrons."--*Duncan's Cicero*, p. 11. Here the word *whomsoever* might have been used.

OBS. 13.--But there is an other construction to be here explained, in which *whatever* or *whatsoever* appears to be a *double relative*, or a term which includes both antecedent and relative; as, "*Whatever* purifies, fortifies also the heart."--*English Reader*, p. 23. That is, "*All that purifies*--or, *Everything which purifies*--fortifies also the heart." "*Whatsoever* he doeth, shall prosper."--*Psal.*, i, 3. That is, "*All that he doeth*--or, *All the things which he doeth*--shall prosper." This construction, however, may be supposed elliptical. The Latin expression is, "*Omnia quæcumque faciet prosperabuntur.*"--*Vulgate*. The Greek is similar: [Greek: "Kai panta hosa an poiæi kateuodothæsetai."]--*Septuagint*. It is doubtless by some sort of ellipsis which familiarity of use inclines us to overlook, that *what*, *whatever*, and *whatsoever*, which are essentially adjectives, have become susceptible of this double construction as pronouns. But it is questionable what particular ellipsis we ought here to suppose, or whether any; and certainly, we ought always to avoid the supposing of an ellipsis, if we can.[192] Now if we say the meaning is, "Whatsoever *things* he doeth, shall prosper;" this, though analogous to other expressions, does not simplify the construction. If we will have it to be, "Whatsoever *things* he doeth, *they* shall prosper;" the pronoun *they* appears to be pleonastic. So is the word *it*, in the text, "*Whatsoever* he saith unto you, do *it*."--*John*, ii, 5. If we say the full phrase is, "*All things whatsoever* he doeth, shall prosper;" this presents, to an English ear, a still more obvious pleonasm. It may be, too, a *borrowed idiom*, found nowhere but in translations; as, "*All things whatsoever* ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive."--*Matt.*, xxi, 22. From these views, there seems to be some objection to any and every method of parsing the above-mentioned construction as *elliptical*. The learner may therefore say, in such instances, that *whatever* or *whatsoever* is a double relative, including both antecedent and relative; and parse it, first as antecedent, in connexion with the latter verb, and then as relative, in connexion with the former. But let him observe that the order of the verbs may be the reverse of the foregoing; as, "Ye are my friends, if ye *do whatsoever* I *command* you."--*John*, xv, 14. That is, according to the Greek, "If ye *do whatsoever* I *command to* you;" Though it would be better English to say, "If ye *do whatsoever* I *command you to do*." In the following example, however, it seems proper to recognize an ellipsis; nay, the omissions in the construction of

the last line, are as many as three or four;--

"Expatriate with glad step, and choose at will Whate'er bright spoils the florid earth contains, Whate'er the waters, or the liquid air."--*Akenside*.

OBS. 14.--As the simple word *who* differs from *which* and *what*, in being always a declinable pronoun; so its compounds differ from theirs, in being incapable of either of the double constructions above described. Yet *whoever* and *whoso* or *whosoever*, as well as *whichever* and *whichsoever*, *whatever* and *whatsoever*, derive, from the affix which is added, or from the peculiarity of their syntax, an unlimited signification--or a signification which is limited only by the following verb; and, as some general term, such as *any person*, or *all persons*, is implied as the antecedent, they are commonly connected with other words as if they stood for two cases at once: as, "*Whoever* seeks, shall find." That is, "*Any person who* seeks, shall find." But as the case of this compound, like that of the simple word *who*, *whose*, or *whom*, is known and determined by its form, it is necessary, in parsing, to treat this phraseology as being elliptical. The compounds of *who* do not, therefore, actually stand for two cases, though some grammarians affirm that they do.[193] Example: "The soldiers made proclamation, that they would sell the empire to *whoever* would purchase it at the highest price."--*Goldsmith's Rome*, p. 231. That is--"to *any man who* would purchase it." The affix *ever* or *soever* becomes unnecessary when the ellipsis is supplied; and this fact, it must be confessed, is a plausible argument against the supposition of an ellipsis. But the supposing of an antecedent understood, is here unavoidable; because the preposition *to* cannot govern the nominative case, and the word *whoever* cannot be an objective. And so in all other instances in which the two cases are different: as, "He bids *whoever* is athirst, to come."--*Jenks's Devotions*, p. 151. "Elizabeth publicly threatened, that she would have the head of *whoever* had advised it."--HUME: in *Priestley's Gram.*, p. 104.

OBS. 15.--If it is necessary in parsing to supply the antecedent to *whoever* or *whosoever*, when two *different* cases are represented, it is but analogous and reasonable to supply it also when two similar cases occur: as, "*Whoever* borrows money, *is bound* in conscience to repay it."--*Paley*. "*Whoever* is eager to find excuses for vice and folly, *will find* his own backwardness to practise them much diminished."--*Chapone*. "*Whoever* examines his own imperfections, *will cease* to be fastidious; *whoever* restrains humour and caprice, *will cease* to be squeamish."--*Crabb's Synonymes*. In all these examples, we have the word in the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and nominative case. And here it is most commonly found. It is always of the third person; and, though its number *may* be plural; its gender, feminine; its case, possessive or objective; we do not often use it in any of these ways. In some instances, the latter verb is attended with an other pronoun, which represents the same person or persons; as, "And *whosoever* will, let *him* take of the water of life freely."--*Rev.*, xxii, 17. The case of this compound relative always depends upon what follows it, and not upon what precedes; as, "Or ask of *whomsoever* he has taught."--*Cowper*. That is--"of *any person whom* he has taught." In the following text, we have the possessive plural: "*Whosesoever* sins ye remit, they are remitted unto *them*."--*John*, xx, 23. That is, "*Whatever persons'* sins."

OBS. 16.--In such phraseology as the following, there is a stiffness which ought to be avoided: "For *whomever* God loves, he loves *them* in Christ, and no otherways."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 215. Better: "For *all whom* God loves, he loves in Christ, and no *otherwise*." "When the Father draws, *whomever* he draws, may come."--*Penington*. Better: "When the Father draws, *all whom* he draws, (or, *every one whom* he draws.) may come." A modern critic of immense promise cites the following clause as being found in the Bible: "But he loveth *whomsoever* followeth after righteousness."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 72. It is lamentable to see the unfaithfulness of this gentleman's quotations. About half of them are spurious; and I am confident that this one is neither Scripture nor good English. The compound relative, being the subject of *followeth*, should be in the nominative case; for the object of the verb *loveth* is the antecedent *every one*, understood. But the idea may be better expressed, without any ellipsis, thus: "He loveth *every one who* followeth after righteousness." The following example from the same hand is also wrong, and the author's rule and reasoning connected with it, are utterly fallacious: "I will give the reward to *whomsoever* will apprehend the rogue."--*Ib.*, p. 256. Much better say, "*to any one who*;" but, if you choose the compound word, by all analogy, and all good authority, it

must here be *whoever* or *whosoever*. The shorter compound *whoso*, which occurs very frequently in the Bible, is now almost obsolete in prose, but still sometimes used by the poets. It has the same meaning as *whosoever*, but appears to have been confined to the nominative singular; and *whatso* is still more rare: as, "*Whoso diggeth a pit, shall fall therein.*"--*Prov.*, xxvi, 27.

"Which *whoso* tastes, can be enslaved no more."--*Cowper*.

"On their intended journey to proceed, And over night *whatso* thereto did need."--*Hubbard*.

OBS. 17.--The relative *that* is applied indifferently to persons, to brute animals, and to inanimate things. But the word *that* is not always a relative pronoun. It is sometimes a pronoun, sometimes an adjective, and sometimes a conjunction. I call it not a demonstrative pronoun and also a relative; because, in the sense in which Murray and others have styled it a "demonstrative adjective *pronoun*," it is a pronominal *adjective*, and it is better to call it so. (1.) It is a *relative pronoun* whenever it is equivalent to *who*, *whom*, or *which*: as, "There is not a *just man* upon earth, *that* doeth good, and sinneth not"--*Eccl.*, vii, 20. "It was diverse from all the *beasts that* were before it."--*Dan.*, vii, 7. "And he had a *name* written, *that* no man knew but he himself."--*Rev.*, xix, 12. (2.) It is a *pronominal adjective* whenever it relates to a noun expressed or understood after it: as, "Thus with violence shall *that* great *city*, Babylon, be thrown down."--*Rev.*, xviii, 21. "Behold *that* [thing] which I have seen."--*Eccl.*, v, 18. "And they said, 'What is *that*[194] [matter] to us? See thou to *that* [matter]."--*Matt.*, xxvii, 4. (3.) In its other uses, it is a *conjunction*, and, as such, it most commonly makes what follows it, the purpose, object, or final cause, of what precedes it: as, "I read *that* I may learn."--*Dr. Adam*. "Ye men of Athens, I perceive *that* in all things ye are too superstitious."--*St. Paul*. "Live well, *that* you may die well."--*Anon*. "Take heed *that* thou speak not to Jacob."--*Genesis*. "Judge not, *that* ye be not judged."--*Matthew*.

OBS. 18.--The word *that*, or indeed any other word, should never be so used as to leave the part of speech uncertain; as, "For in the day *that* thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die."--*Gen.*, ii, 17. Here *that* seems to be a relative *pronoun*, representing *day*, in the third person, singular, neuter; yet, in other respects, it seems to be a *conjunction*, because there is nothing to determine its case. Better: "For in the day *on which* thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die." This mongrel construction of the word *that*, were its justification possible, is common enough in our language to be made good English. But it must needs be condemned, because it renders the character of the term ambiguous, and is such a grammatical difficulty as puts the parser at a dead nonplus. Examples: (1.) "But *at the same time* THAT men are giving their orders, God on his part is likewise giving his."--*Rollin's Hist.*, ii, 106. Here the phrase, "*at the same time that*," is only equivalent to the adverb *while*; and yet it is incomplete, because it means, "*at the same time at which*," or, "*at the very time at which*." (2.) "The author of this work, *at the same time* THAT he has endeavoured to avoid a plan, *which may be* too concise or too extensive, defective in its parts or irregular in the disposition of them, has studied to render his *subject* sufficiently easy, intelligible, and *comprehensive*."--*Murray's Gram.*, *Introd.*, p. 1. This sentence, which is no unfair specimen of its author's original style, needs three corrections: 1. For "*at the same time that*," say *while*: 2. Drop the phrase, "*which may be*," because it is at least useless: 3. For "*subject*," read *treatise*, or *compilation*. You will thus have tolerable diction. Again: (3.) "The participles of active verbs *act upon objects* and govern them in the objective case, in the same manner *that* the verbs *do*, from which they are derived. A *participle* in the nature of an adjective, belongs or refers to *nouns* or *pronouns* in the same manner *that* adjectives do; and *when it will admit* the degrees of comparison, *it is called* a participial adjective."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 38. This is the style of a gentleman of no ordinary pretensions, one who thinks he has produced the best grammar that has ever appeared in our language. To me, however, his work suggests an abundance of questions like these; each of which would palpably involve him in a dilemma: What is here meant by "*objects*," the *words*, or the *things*? if the former, how are they acted upon? if the latter, how are they governed? If "*a participle is called an adjective*," which is it, an adjective, or a participle? If "*a participle refers to nouns or pronouns*," *how many* of these are required by the relation? When does a *participle* "admit the degrees of comparison?" How shall we parse the word *that* in the foregoing sentences?

OBS. 19.--The word *as*, though usually a conjunction or an adverb, has sometimes the construction of a relative pronoun, especially after *such*, *so many*, or *as many*; and, whatever the antecedent *noun* may be, this is the *only fit relative* to follow any of these terms in a restrictive sense. Examples: "We have been accustomed to repose on its veracity with *such* humble confidence *as* suppresses curiosity."--*Johnson's Life of Cowley*. "The malcontents made *such* demands *as* none but a tyrant could refuse."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, Let. 7. "The Lord added to the church daily *such* [persons] *as* should be saved."--*Acts*, ii, 47. "And *as many as* were ordained to eternal life, believed."--*Acts*, xiii, 48. "*As many as* I love, I rebuke and chasten."--*Rev.*, iii, 19. "Know ye not, that *so many* of us *as* were baptized into Jesus Christ, were baptized into his death?"--*Rom.*, vi, 3. "For *as many* of you *as* have been baptized into Christ, have put on Christ."--*Gal.*, iii, 27. "A syllable is *so many* letters *as* are spoken with one motion of the voice."--*Perley's Gram.*, p. 8. "The compound tenses are *such as* cannot be formed without an auxiliary verb."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 91. "Send him *such* books *as* will please him."--*Webster's Improved Gram.*, p. 37. "In referring to *such* a division of the day *as* is past, we use the imperfect."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 70. "Participles have *the same* government *as* the verbs from which they are derived."--*Ib.*, Rule xiv. "Participles have *the same* government *as* the verbs *have* from which they are derived."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 94. In some of these examples, *as* is in the nominative case, and in others, in the objective; in some, it is of the masculine gender, and in others, it is neuter; in some, it is of the plural number, and in others, it is singular: but in all, it is of the third person; and in all, its person, number, gender, and case, are as obvious as those of any invariable pronoun can be.

OBS. 20.--Some writers--(the most popular are Webster, Bullions, Wells, and Chandler--) imagine that *as*, in such sentences as the foregoing, can be made a conjunction, and not a pronoun, if we will allow them to consider the phraseology elliptical. Of the example for which I am indebted to him, Dr. Webster says, "As must be considered as the nominative to *will please*, or we must suppose an ellipsis of several words: as, 'Send him such books as *the books which* will please him, or as *those which* will please him.'"--*Improved Gram.*, p. 37. This pretended explanation must be rejected as an absurdity. In either form of it, *two* nominatives are idly imagined between *as* and its verb; and, I ask, of what is the first one the subject? If you say, "Of *are* understood," making the phrase, "such books *as the books are*," does not *as* bear the same relation to this new verb *are*, that is found in the pronoun *who*, when one says, "Tell him *who* you *are*?" If so, *as* is a pronoun still; so that, thus far, you gain nothing. And if you will have the whole explanation to be, "Send him such books *as the books are books which* will please him;" you multiply words, and finally arrive at nothing, but tautology and nonsense. Wells, not condescending to show his pupils what he would supply after this *as*, thinks it sufficient to say, the word is "followed by an ellipsis of one or more words required to complete the construction; as, 'He was the father of all such as [] handle the harp and organ.'"--*Gen.* 4: 21."--*Wells's School Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 164; 3d Ed., p. 172.

OBS. 21.--Chandler exhibits the sentence, "*These are not such as are worn*;" and, in parsing it, expounds the words *as* and *are*, thus; the crotchets being his, not mine: "*as....* is an *adverb*, connecting the two sentences in comparing them, [*It is a fault* of some, that they make *as* a pronoun, when, in a comparative sentence, it corresponds with *such*, and is immediately followed by a verb, as in the sentence now given. This is probably done *from an ignorance* of the real nominative to the verb. The sentence *should stand thus*: 'These (*perhaps* bonnets) are not such (bonnets) *as* (those bonnets) are (which are) worn.' Then] *are* is the substantive verb, third person, plural number, indicative mood, present tense, and agrees with the noun *bonnets*, understood."--*Chandler's Common School Gram.*, p. 162. All this bears the marks of shallow flippancy. No part of it is accurate. "*Are worn*," which the critic unwarrantably divides by his misplaced curves and uncouth impletions, is a passive verb, agreeing with the pronoun *as*. But the text itself is faulty, being unintelligible through lack of a noun; for, of things that *may be* "*worn*," there are a thousand different sorts. Is it not ridiculous, for a great grammarian to offer, as a model for parsing, what he himself, "*from an ignorance* of the real nominative," can only interpret with a "*perhaps*?" But the noun which this author supplies, the meaning which he guesses that he had, he here very improperly stows away within a pair of *crotchets*. Nor is it true, that "the sentence *should stand*" as above exhibited; for the tautological correction not only has the very extreme of awkwardness, but still makes *as* a pronoun, a nominative, belonging after *are*: so that the phrase, "*as are worn*," is only encumbered and perverted by the verbose addition made. So of an other example given

by this expounder, in which *as* is an objective: "He is exactly such a man *as* I saw."--*Chandler's Com. Sch. Gram.*, p. 163. Here *as* is the object of *saw*. But the author says, "The sentence, however, *should stand* thus: 'He is exactly such a man *as* that person *was* whom I saw.'"--*Ibid.* This inelegant alteration makes *as* a nominative dependent on *was*.

OBS. 22.--The use of *as* for a relative pronoun, is almost entirely confined to those connexions in which no other relative would be proper; hence few instances occur, of its absolute equivalence to *who*, *which*, or *that*, by which to establish its claim to the same rank. Examples like the following, however, go far to prove it, if proof be necessary; because *who* and *which* are here employed, where *as* is certainly now required by all good usage: "It is not only convenient, but absolutely needful, that there be certain meetings at certain places and times, *as* may best suit the convenience of *such*, *who* may be most particularly concerned in them."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 495. "Which, no doubt, will be found obligatory upon all *such*, *who* have a sense and feeling of the mind of the Spirit."--*Ib.*, i, p. 578. "Condemning or removing *such* things, *which* in themselves are evil."--*Ib.*, i, p. 511. In these citations, not only are *who* and *which* improperly used for *as*, but the *commas* before them are also improper, because the relatives are intended to be taken in a restrictive sense. "If there be *such that* walk disorderly now."--*Ib.*, i, p. 488. Here *that* ought to be *as*; or else *such* ought to be *persons*, or *those*. "When *such* virtues, *as which* still accompany the truth, are necessarily supposed to be wanting."--*Ib.*, i, p. 502. Here *which*, and the comma before *as*, should both be expunged. "I shall raise in their minds the same course of thought *as* has taken possession of my own."--*Duncan's Logic*, p. 61. "The pronoun must be in the same case *as* the antecedent would be *in*, if substituted for it."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 181. "The verb must therefore have the same construction *as* it has in the following sentence."--*Murray's Key*, p. 190. Here *as* is exactly equivalent to the relative *that*, and either may be used with equal propriety. We cannot avoid the conclusion, therefore, that, as the latter word is sometimes a conjunction and sometimes a pronoun, so is the former.

OBS. 23.--The relatives *that* and *as* have this peculiarity; that, unlike *whom* and *which*, they never follow the word on which their case depends; nor indeed can any simple relative be so placed, except it be governed by a preposition or an infinitive. Thus, it is said, (John, xiii, 29th,) "Buy those things *that* we have need *of*;" so we may say, "Buy such things *as* we have need *of*." But we cannot say, "Buy those things *of that* we have need;" or, "Buy such things *of as* we have need." Though we may say, "Buy those things *of which* we have need," as well as, "Buy those things *which* we have need *of*;" or, "Admit those persons of whom we have need," as well as, "Admit those persons *whom* we have need *of*." By this it appears that *that* and *as* have a closer connexion with their antecedents than the other relatives require: a circumstance worthy to have been better remembered by some critics. "Again, *that* and *as* are used rather differently. When *that* is used, the verb must be repeated; as, 'Participles *require* the same government, *that* their verbs *require*.'--'James *showed* the same credulity, *that* his minister *showed*.' But when *as* is used, the verb generally may, or may not be repeated; as, 'Participles *require* the same government *as* their verbs;' or, '*as* their verbs *require*.'--'James *showed* the same credulity as his minister;' or, '*as* his minister *showed*;' the second nominative *minister* being parsed as the nominative to the same verb *showed* understood."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 140.[195]

OBS. 24.--The terminating of a sentence with a preposition, or other small particle, is in general undignified, though perhaps not otherwise improper. Hence the above-named inflexibility in the construction of *that* and *as*, sometimes induces an ellipsis of the governing word designed; and is occasionally attended with some difficulty respecting the choice of our terms. Examples: "The answer is always in the same case *that* the interrogative word *is*."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 70. Here is a faulty termination; and with it a more faulty ellipsis. In stead of ending the sentence with *is in*, say, "The answer always *agrees in case with* the interrogative word." Again: "The relative is of the same person *with* the antecedent."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 101. This sentence is wrong, because the person of the relative is not really *identical with* the antecedent. "The relative is of the same person *as* the antecedent."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 154. Here the writer means--"*as* the antecedent *is of*." "A neuter verb becomes active, when followed by a noun of the same signification *with* its own."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 127. Here *same* is wrong, or else the last three words are useless. It would therefore be improper to say--"of the *same* signification *as* its own." The expression ought to be--"of a signification *similar to* its own."

"Ode is, *in Greek*, the same *with* song or hymn."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 396. *Song* being no Greek word, I cannot think the foregoing expression accurate, though one might say, "Ode is *identical with* song or hymn." Would it not be better to say, "Ode is the same *as* song or hymn?" That is, "Ode is, *literally*, the same *thing that* song or hymn *is*?" "Treatises of philosophy, ought not to be composed in the same style *with* orations."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 175. Here neither *with* nor *as* can be proper; because *orations* are not *a style*. Expunge *same*; and say--"in the style *of* orations."

OBS. 25.--Few writers are sufficiently careful in their choice and management of relatives. In the following instance, Murray and others violate a special rule of their own grammars, by using *whom* for *that* "after an adjective of the superlative degree:" "Modifying them according to the genius of that tongue, and the established practice of *the best* speakers and writers *by whom* it is used."--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 1; *Fisk's*, p. 11; *et al.* According to Priestley and himself, the great Compiler is here in an error. The rule is perhaps too stringent; but whoever teaches it, should keep it. If he did not like to say, "*the best* speakers and writers *that* it is used *by*," he ought to have said, "*the best* speakers and writers *that use it*." Or, rather, he ought to have said *nothing* after the word "writers;" because the whole relative clause is here weak and useless. Yet how many of the amenders of this grammar have not had perspicacity enough, either to omit the expression, or to correct it according to the author's own rule!

OBS. 26.--Relative pronouns are capable of being taken in two very different senses: the one, restrictive of the general idea suggested by the antecedent; the other, *resumptive* of that idea, in the full import of the term--or, in whatever extent the previous definitives allow. The distinction between these two senses, important as it is, is frequently made to depend solely upon the insertion or the omission of *a comma*. Thus, if I say, "Men who grasp after riches, are never satisfied;" the relative *who* is taken restrictively, and I am understood to speak *only of the avaricious*. But, if I say, "Men, who grasp after riches, are never satisfied;" by separating the terms *men* and *who*, I declare *all men* to be covetous and unsatisfied. For the former sense, the relative *that* is preferable to *who*; and I shall presently show why. This example, in the latter form, is found in Sanborn's Grammar, page 142d; but whether the author meant what he says, or not, I doubt. Like many other unskillful writers, he has paid little regard to the above-mentioned distinction; and, in some instances, his meaning cannot have been what his words declare: as, "A prism is a solid, whose sides are all parallelograms."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 142. This, as it stands, is no definition of a prism, but an assertion of two things; that a prism is a solid, and that all the sides of a solid are parallelograms. Erase the comma, and the words will describe the prism as a peculiar kind of solid; because *whose* will then be taken in the restrictive sense. This sense, however, may be conveyed even with a comma before the relative; as, "Some fictitious histories yet remain, *that* were composed during the decline of the Roman empire."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 374. This does not suggest that there are no other fictitious histories now extant, than such as were composed during the decline of the Roman empire; but I submit it to the reader, whether the word *which*, if here put for *that*, would not convey this idea.

OBS. 27.--Upon this point, many philologists are open to criticism; and none more so, than the recent author above cited. By his own plain showing, this grammarian has no conception of the difference of meaning, upon which the foregoing distinction is founded. What marvel, then, that he falls into errors, both of doctrine and of practice? But, if no such difference exists, or none that is worthy of a critic's notice; then the error is mine, and it is vain to distinguish between the restrictive and the resumptive sense of relative pronouns. For example: "The boy that desires to assist his companions, deserves respect."--*G. Brown*. "That boy, who desires to assist his companions, deserves respect."--*D. H. Sanborn*. According to my notion, these two sentences clearly convey two very different meanings; the relative, in the former, being restrictive, but, in the latter, resumptive of the sense of the antecedent. But of the latter example this author says, "The clause, 'who desires to assist his companions,' with the relative *who* at its head, *explains or tells what boy deserves respect*; and, like a conjunction, connects this clause to the noun *boy*."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 69. He therefore takes it in a restrictive sense, as if this sentence were exactly equivalent to the former. But he adds, "A relative pronoun is resolvable into a personal pronoun and a conjunction. The sentence would then read, 'That boy desires to assist his companions, *and* he deserves respect.' The relative pronoun governs the nearer verb, and the

antecedent the more distant one."--*Ib.*, p. 69. Now, concerning the restrictive relative, this doctrine of equivalence does not hold good; and, besides, the explanation here given, not only contradicts his former declaration of the sense he intended, but, with other seeming contradiction, joins the antecedent to the nearer verb, and the substituted pronoun to the more distant.

OBS. 28.--Again, the following principles of this author's punctuation are no less indicative of his false views of this matter: "RULE xiv.--Relative pronouns in the nominative or [*the*] objective case, are preceded by commas, when the clause which the relative *connects* [,] ends a sentence; as, 'Sweetness of temper is a quality, which reflects a lustre on every accomplishment'--B. Greenleaf." Self [-] denial is the sacrifice [,] which virtue must make.' [--*L. Murray.*] The comma is omitted before the relative, when the verb which the antecedent governs, follows the relative clause; as, 'He that suffers by imposture, has too often his virtue more impaired than his fortune.'--*Johnson.*" See *Sanborn's Analytical Gram.*, p. 269. Such are some of our author's principles--"the essence of modern improvements." His practice, though often wrong, is none the worse for contradicting these doctrines. Nay, his proudest boast is ungrammatical, though peradventure not the less believed: "*No [other] grammar in the language* probably contains so great a quantity of *condensed and* useful matter with so little superfluity."--*Sanborn's Preface*, p. v.

OBS. 29.--Murray's rule for the punctuation of relatives, (a rule which he chiefly copied from Lowth,) recognizes virtually the distinction which I have made above; but, in assuming that relatives "*generally*" require a comma before them, it erroneously suggests that the resumptive sense is more common than the restrictive. Churchill, on the contrary, as wrongly makes it an essential characteristic of *all* relatives, "to limit or explain the words to which they refer." See his *New Gram.*, p. 74. The fact is, that relatives are so generally restrictive, that not one half of them are thus pointed; though some that do restrict their antecedent, nevertheless admit the point. This may be seen by the first example given us by Murray: "Relative pronouns are connective words, and *generally* admit a comma before them: as, 'He preaches sublimely, who lives a sober, righteous, and pious life.' But when two members, or *phrases*, [say *clauses*,] are closely connected by a relative, restraining the general notion of the antecedent to a particular sense, *the comma should be omitted*: as, 'Self-denial is the sacrifice which virtue must make;' 'A man who is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent words that can be put together.' In the latter example, the assertion is not of 'a man in general,' but of 'a man who is of a detracting spirit;' and therefore *they* [say *the pronoun and its antecedent*] should not be separated."--*Murray's Gram.*, Octavo, p. 273; *Ingersoll's*, 285; *Comly's*, 152. This reasoning, strictly applied, would exclude the comma before *who* in the first example above; but, as the pronoun does not "closely" or immediately follow its antecedent, the comma is allowed, though it is not much needed. Not so, when the sense is resumptive: as, "The *additions*, which are very considerable, are chiefly *such as* are calculated to obviate objections." See *Murray's Gram.*, p. ix. Here the comma is essential to the meaning. Without it, *which* would be equivalent to *that*; with it, which is equivalent to *and they*. But this latter meaning, as I imagine, cannot be expressed by the relative *that*.

OBS. 30.--Into the unfortunate example which Sanborn took from Murray, I have inserted the comma for him; not because it is necessary or right, but because his rule requires it: "Self-denial is the sacrifice," &c. The author of "a complete system of grammar," might better contradict even Murray, than himself. But why was this text admired? and why have *Greene*, *Bullions*, *Hiley*, *Hart*, and others, also copied it? A sacrifice is something devoted and lost, for the sake of a greater good; and, if *Virtue sacrifice self-denial*, what will she do, but run into indulgence? The great sacrifice which she demands of men, is rather that of their *self-love*. Wm. E. Russell has it, "Self defence is the sacrifice which virtue must make!"--*Russell's Abridgement of Murray's Gram.*, p. 116. Bishop Butler tells us, "It is indeed *ridiculous* to assert, that *self-denial is essential to virtue and piety*; but it would have been nearer the truth, though not strictly the truth itself, to have said, that it is essential to discipline and improvement."--*Analogy of Religion*, p. 123.

OBS. 31.--The relative *that*, though usually reckoned equivalent to *who* or *which*, evidently differs from both, in being more generally, and perhaps more appropriately, taken in the restrictive sense. It ought therefore, for distinction's sake, to be preferred to *who* or *which*, whenever an antecedent not otherwise limited, is to be

restricted by the relative clause; as, "*Men that* grasp after riches, are never satisfied."--"I love *wisdom that* is gay and civilized."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 34. This phraseology leaves not the limitation of the meaning to depend solely upon the absence of a pause after the antecedent; because the relative *that* is seldom, if ever, used by good writers in any other than a restrictive sense. Again: "A man of a polite imagination is let into a great many pleasures *that* the vulgar are not capable of receiving."--*Addison, Spect.*, No. 411. Here, too, according to my notion, *that* is obviously preferable to *which*; though a great critic, very widely known, has taken some pains to establish a different opinion. The "many pleasures" here spoken of, are no otherwise defined, than as being such as "the vulgar are not capable of receiving." The writer did not mean to deny that the vulgar are capable of receiving a great many pleasures; but, certainly, if *that* were changed to *which*, this would be the meaning conveyed, unless the reader were very careful to avoid a pause where he would be apt to make one. I therefore prefer Addison's expression to that which Dr. Blair would substitute.

OBS. 32.--The style of Addison is more than once censured by Dr. Blair, for the frequency with which the relative *that* occurs in it, where the learned lecturer would have used *which*. The reasons assigned by the critic are these: "*Which* is a much more definitive word than *that*, being never employed in any other way than as a relative; whereas *that* is a word of many senses; sometimes a demonstrative pronoun, often a conjunction. In some cases we are indeed obliged to use *that* for a relative, in order to avoid the ungraceful repetition of *which* in the same sentence. But when we are laid under no necessity of this kind, *which* is always the preferable word, and certainly was so in this sentence: '*Pleasures which* the vulgar are not capable of receiving,' is much better than '*pleasures that* the vulgar are not capable of receiving.'"--*Blair's Rhetoric*, Lect. xx, p. 200. Now the facts are these: (1.) That *that* is the more definitive or restrictive word of the two. (2.) That the word *which* has as many different senses and uses as the word *that*. (3.) That not the repetition of *which* or *who* in a series of clauses, but a *needless change* of the relative, is ungraceful. (4.) That the necessity of using *that* rather than *which* or *who*, depends, not upon what is here supposed, but upon the different senses which these words usually convey. (5.) That as there is always some reason of choice, *that* is sometimes to be preferred; *which*, sometimes; and *who*, sometimes: as, "It is not the man *who* has merely taught, or *who* has taught long, or *who* is able to point out defects in authors, *that* is capable of enlightening the world in the respective sciences *which* have engaged his attention; but the man *who* has taught well."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 7.

OBS. 33.--Blair's *Rhetoric* consists of forty-seven lectures; four of which are devoted to a critical examination of the style of Addison, as exhibited in four successive papers of the *Spectator*. The remarks of the professor are in general judicious; but, seeing his work is made a common textbook for students of "Belles Lettres," it is a pity to find it so liable to reprehension on the score of inaccuracy. Among the passages which are criticised in the twenty-first lecture, there is one in which the essayist speaks of the effects of *novelty* as follows:

'It is this *which* bestows charms on a monster, and makes even the imperfections of nature please us. It is this *that* recommends variety, where the mind is every instant called off to something new, and the attention not suffered to dwell too long and waste itself on any particular object. It is this, likewise, *that* improves what is great or beautiful, and makes it afford the mind a double entertainment.'--*Spectator*, No. 412.

This passage is deservedly praised by the critic, for its "perspicuity, grace, and harmony;" but, in using different relatives under like circumstances, the writer has hardly done justice to his own good taste. Blair's remark is this: "His frequent use of *that*, instead of *which*, is another peculiarity of his style; but, on this occasion in particular, [it] cannot be much commended, as, 'It is this *which*,' seems, in every view, to be better than, 'It is this *that*,' three times repeated."--*Lect.* xxi, p. 207. What is here meant by "*every view*," may, I suppose, be seen in the corresponding criticism which is noticed in my last observation above; and I am greatly deceived, if, in this instance also, the relative *that* is not better than *which*, and more agreeable to polite usage. The direct relative which corresponds to the introductory pronoun *it* and *an other antecedent*, should, I think, be *that*, and not *who* or *which*: as, "It is not ye *that* speak."--*Matt.*, x, 20. "It is thou, Lord, *who* hast the hearts of all men in thy hands, *that* turnest the hearts of any to show me favour."--*Jenks's Prayers*, p. 278. Here *who* has reference to *thou* or *Lord* only; but *that* has some respect to the pronoun *it*, though it agrees in person and gender with *thou*. A similar example is cited at the close of the preceding observation; and I

submit it to the reader, whether the word *that*, as it there occurs, is not the *only fit* word for the place it occupies. So in the following examples: "There are *Words, which are not Verbs, that* signify actions and passions, and even things transient."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 100. "It is the universal taste of mankind, which is subject to no such changing modes, *that* alone is entitled to possess any authority."--*Blair's Rhetoric*, p. 286.

OBS. 34.--Sometimes the broad import of an antecedent is *doubly restricted*, first by one relative clause, and then by an other; as, "And all *that dwell upon the earth*, shall worship him, *whose names are not written in the book of life*."--*Rev.*, xiii, 8. "And then, like true Thames-Watermen, they abuse every man *that* passes by, *who* is better dressed than themselves."--*Brown's Estimate*, Vol. ii, p. 10. Here *and*, or *if he*, would be as good as "*who*;" for the connective only serves to carry the restriction into narrower limits. Sometimes the limit fixed by one clause is *extended* by an other; as, "There is no evil *that you may suffer*, or *that you may expect to suffer*, *which* prayer is not the appointed means to alleviate."--*Bickersteth, on Prayer*, p. 16. Here *which* resumes the idea of "*evil*," in the extent last determined; or rather, in that which is fixed by either clause, since the limits of both are embraced in the assertion. And, in the two limiting clauses, the same pronoun was requisite, on account of their joint relation; but the clause which assumes a different relation, is rightly introduced by a different pronoun. This is also the case in the following examples: "For there is no condemnation to those *that* are in Christ Jesus, *who* walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. i, p. 432. "I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast *that* carrieth her, *which* hath the seven heads and ten horns."--*Rev.*, xvii, 7. Here the restrictive sense is well expressed by one relative, and the resumptive by an other. When neither of these senses is intended by the writer, *any* form of the relative must needs be improper: as, "The greatest genius *which* runs through the arts and sciences, takes a kind of tincture from them, and falls unavoidably into imitation."--*Addison, Spect.*, No. 160. Here, as I suppose, *which* runs should be *in running*. What else can the author have meant?

OBS. 35.--Having now, as I imagine, clearly shown the difference between the restrictive and the resumptive sense of a relative pronoun, and the absolute necessity of making such a choice of words as will express that sense only which we intend; I hope the learner will see, by these observations, not merely that clearness requires the occasional use of each of our five relatives, *who*, *which*, *what*, *that*, and *as*; but that this distinction in the meaning, is a very common principle by which to determine what is, and what is not, good English. Thus *that* and *as* are appropriately our *restrictive* relatives, though *who* and *which* are sometimes used restrictively; but, in a *resumptive* sense, *who* or *which* is required, and required even after those terms which usually demand *that* or *as*: thus, "We are vexed at the unlucky chance, and go away dissatisfied. *Such* impressions, *which* ought not to be cherished, are a sufficient reason for excluding stories of that kind from the theatre."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 279. Here *which* is proper to the sense intended; but *such* requires *as*, when the latter term limits the meaning of the former. In sentences like the following, *who* or *which* may be used in lieu of *that*; whether with any advantage or not, the reader may judge: "You seize the critical moment *that* is favorable to emotion."--*Bair's Rhet.*, p. 321. "An historian *that* would instruct us, must know when to be concise."--*Ib.*, p. 359. "Seneca has been censured for the affectation *that* appears in his style."--*Ib.*, p. 367. "Such as the prodigies *that* attended the death of Julius Cæsar."--*Ib.*, p. 401. "By unfolding those principles *that* ought to govern the taste of every individual."--*Kames's Dedication to El. of Crit.* "But I am sure he has that *that* is better than an estate."--*Spect.*, No. 475. "There are two properties, *that* characterize and essentially distinguish relative pronouns."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 74. By these examples, it may be seen, that Dr. Blair often forgot or disregarded his own doctrine respecting the use of this relative; though he was oftener led, by the error of that doctrine, to substitute *which* for *that* improperly.

OBS. 36.--*Whether* was formerly used as an interrogative pronoun, in which sense it always referred to one of two things; as, "Ye fools and blind! for *whether* is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the gold?"--*Matt.*, xxiii, 17. This usage is now obsolete; and, in stead of it, we say, "*Which* is greater?" But as a disjunctive conjunction, corresponding to *or*, the word *whether* is still in good repute; as, "Resolve *whether* you will go or not."--*Webster's Dict.* In this sense of the term, some choose to call *whether* an *adverb*.

OBS. 37.--In the view of some writers, interrogative pronouns differ from relatives chiefly in this; that, as the subject referred to is unknown to the speaker, they do not relate to a *preceding* noun, but to something which is to be expressed in the answer to the question. It is certain that their *person*, *number*, and *gender*, are not regulated by an antecedent noun; but by what the speaker supposes or knows of a subject which may, or may not, agree with them in these respects: as, "*What* lies there?" Answer, "Two *men* asleep." Here *what*, standing for *what thing*, is of the third person, singular number, and neuter gender; but *men*, which is the term that answers to it, is of the third person, plural, masculine. There is therefore no necessary agreement between the question and the answer, in any of those properties in which a pronoun usually agrees with its noun. Yet some grammarians will have interrogatives to agree with these "*subsequents*," as relatives agree with their *antecedents*. The answer, it must be granted, commonly contains a noun, corresponding in some respects to the interrogative pronoun, and agreeing with it *in case*; but this noun cannot be supposed to control the interrogation, nor is it, in any sense, the word for which the pronoun stands. For every pronoun must needs stand for something that is uttered or conceived by the same speaker; nor can any question be answered, until its meaning is understood. Interrogative pronouns must therefore be explained as direct substitutes for such other terms as one might use in stead of them. Thus *who* means *what person*?

"*Who* taught that heav'n-directed spire to rise? *The Man of Ross*, each lisping babe replies."--*Pope*.

OBS. 38.--In the classification of the pronouns, and indeed in the whole treatment of them, almost all our English grammars are miserably faulty, as well as greatly at variance. In some forty or fifty, which I have examined on this point, the few words which constitute this part of speech, have more than twenty different modes of distribution. (1.) Cardell says, "There is but one kind of pronouns"--*Elements of Gram.*, p. 30. (2.) D. Adam's, Greenleaf, Nutting, and Weld, will have two kinds; "*personal* and *relative*." (3.) Dr. Webster's "Substitutes, or pronouns, are of two kinds:" the one, "called *personal*;" the other, without name or number. See his *Improved Gram.*, p. 24. (4.) Many have fixed upon three sorts; "*personal*, *relative*, and *adjective*;" with a subdivision of the last. Of these is Lindley Murray, in his late editions, with his amenders, Ainsworth, Alger, Bacon, Bullions, Fisk, A. Flint, Frost, Guy, Hall, Kirkham, Lennie, Merchant, Picket, Pond, and S. Putnam. (5.) Kirkham, however, changes the order of the classes; thus, "*personal*, *adjective*, and *relative*;" and, with ridiculous absurdity, makes *mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs* to be "*compounds*." (6.) Churchill adopts the plan of "*personal*, *relative*, and *adjective* pronouns;" and then destroys it by a valid argument. (7.) Comly, Wilcox, Wells, and Perley, have these three classes; "*personal*, *relative*, and *interrogative*;" and this division is right. (8.) Sanborn makes the following bull: "The *general* divisions of pronouns are *into personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, and *several sub-divisions*."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 91. (9.) Jaudon has these three kinds; "*personal*, *relative*, and *distributive*." (10.) Robbins, these; "*simple*, *conjunctive*, and *interrogative*." (11.) Lindley Murray, in his early editions, had these four; "*personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, and *adjective*." (12.) Bucke has these; "*personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, and *adjective*." (13.) Ingersoll, these; "*personal*, *adjective*, *relative*, and *interrogative*." (14.) Buchanan; "*personal*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, and *interrogative*." (15.) Coar; "*personal*, *possessive* or *pronominal adjectives*, *demonstrative*, and *relative*." (16.) Bicknell; "*personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, and *demonstrative*." (17.) Cobbett; "*personal*, *relative*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*." (18.) M'Culloch; "*personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, and *reciprocal*." (19.) Staniford has five; "*personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *definitive*, and *distributive*." (20.) Alexander, six; "*personal*, *relative*, *demonstrative*, *interrogative*, *definitive*, and *adjective*." (21.) Cooper, in 1828, had five; "*personal*, *relative*, *possessive*, *definite*, and *indefinite*." (22.) Cooper, in 1831, six; "*personal*, *relative*, *definite*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *possessive pronominal adjectives*." (23.) Dr. Crombie says: "Pronouns may be divided into *Substantive*, and *Adjective*; *Personal*, and *Impersonal*; *Relative*, and *Interrogative*." (24.) Alden has seven sorts; "*personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *distributive*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*." (25.) R. C. Smith has many kinds, and treats them so badly that nobody can count them. In respect to definitions, too, most of these writers are shamefully inaccurate, or deficient. Hence the filling up of their classes is often as bad as the arrangement. For instance, four and twenty of them will have interrogative pronouns to be relatives; but who that knows what a relative pronoun is, can coincide with them in opinion? Dr. Crombie thinks, "that interrogatives are strictly relatives;" and yet divides the two classes with his own hand!

MODIFICATIONS.

Pronouns have the same modifications as nouns; namely, *Persons, Numbers, Genders, and Cases*. Definitions universally applicable have already been given of all these things; it is therefore unnecessary to define them again in this place.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In the personal pronouns, most of these properties are distinguished by the words themselves; in the relative and the interrogative pronouns, they are ascertained chiefly by means of the antecedent and the verb. Interrogative pronouns, however, as well as the relatives *which, what, as*, and all the compounds of *who, which, and what*, are always of the third person. Even in etymological parsing, some regard must be had to the syntactical relations of words. By *modifications*, we commonly mean actual changes in the forms of words, by which their grammatical properties are inherently distinguished; but, in all languages, the distinguishable properties of words are somewhat more numerous than their actual variations of form; there being certain principles of universal grammar, which cause the person, number, gender, or case, of some words, to be inferred from their relation to others; or, what is nearly the same thing, from the sense which is conveyed by the sentence. Hence, if in a particular instance it happen, that some, or even all, of these properties, are without any index in the form of the pronoun itself, they are still to be ascribed in parsing, because they may be easily and certainly discovered from the construction. For example: in the following text, it is just as easy to discern the *genders* of the pronouns, as the *cases* of the nouns; and both are known and asserted to be what they are, upon principles of mere inference: "For what knowest *thou*, O *wife*, whether *thou* shalt save *thy husband*? or how knowest *thou*, O *man*, whether *thou* shalt save *thy wife*?"--*1 Cor.*, vii, 16. Again: "Who betrayed *her* companion? Not *I*."--*Murray's Key*, p. 211. Here *her* being of the feminine gender, it is the inference of every reader, that *who* and *I* are so too; but whether the word *companion* is masculine or feminine, is not so obvious.

OBS. 2.--The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, are equally applicable to both sexes; and should be considered masculine or feminine, according to the known application of them. [See *Levizac's French Gram.*, p. 73.] The speaker and the hearer, being present to each other, of course know the sex to which they respectively belong; and, whenever they appear in narrative or dialogue, we are told who they are. In *Latin*, an adjective or a participle relating to these pronouns, is varied to *agree* with them in *number, gender, and case*. This is a sufficient proof that *ego, I, and tu, thou*, are not destitute of gender, though neither the Latin words nor the English are themselves varied to express it:--

"*Miseræ hoc tamen unum Exequere, Anna, mihi: solam nam perfidus ille Te colere, arcanos etiam tibi credere sensus; Sola viri molles aditus et tempora nôras.*"--*Virgil*.

OBS. 3.--Many English grammarians, and Murray at their head, deny the first person of nouns, and the gender of pronouns of the first and second persons; and at the same time teach, that, "Pronouns must always agree with their antecedents, *and* the nouns for which they stand, in *gender, number, and person*:" (*Murray's Gr.*, 2d Ed., p. 111; *Rev. T. Smith's*, p. 60:) and further, with redundancy of expression, that, "The relative is of the same person *with* the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it accordingly."--*Same*. These quotations form Murray's fifth rule of syntax, as it stands in his early editions.[196] In some of his revisings, the author erased the word *person* from the former sentence, and changed *with* to *as* in the latter. But other pronouns than relatives, agree with their nouns in person; so that his first alteration was not for the better, though Ingersoll, Kirkham, Alger, Bacon, J. Greenleaf, and some others, have been very careful to follow him in it. And why did he never discern, that the above-named principles of his etymology are both of them contradicted by this rule of his syntax, and one of them by his rule as it now stands? It is manifest, that no two words can possibly *agree* in any property which belongs not to both. Else what *is* agreement? Nay, no two things in nature, can in any wise agree, accord, or be alike, but by having some quality or accident in common. How strange a contradiction then is this! And what a compliment to learning, that it is still found in well-nigh all our

grammars!

OBS. 4.--If there were truth in what Murray and others affirm, that "Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he, she, it,*" [197] no two words could ever agree in gender; because there can be no such agreement between any two of the words here mentioned, and the assertion is, that gender has respect to no others. But, admitting that neither the author nor the numerous copiers of this false sentence ever meant to deny that gender has respect to *nouns*, they do deny that it has respect to any other *pronouns* than these; whereas I affirm that it ought to be recognized as a property of *all* pronouns, as well as of all nouns. Not that the gender of either is in all instances invariably fixed by the *forms* of the particular words; but there is in general, if not in every possible case, some principle of grammar, on which the gender of any noun or pronoun in a sentence may be readily ascertained. Is it not plain, that if we know who speaks or writes, who hears or is addressed, we know also the gender of the pronouns which are applied to these persons? The poet of The Task looked upon his mother's picture, and expressed his tender recollections of a deceased parent by way of *address*; and will any one pretend, that the pronouns which he applied to himself and to her, are either of the same gender, or of no gender? If we take neither of these assumptions, must we not say, they are of different genders? In this instance, then, let the parser call those of the first person, masculine; and those of the second, feminine:--

"My mother! when *I* learned that *thou* wast dead, Say, wast *thou* conscious of the tears *I* shed?"--Cowper.

OBS. 5.--That the pronouns of the first and second persons are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, is perfectly certain; but whether they can or cannot be neuter, is a question difficult to be decided. To things inanimate they are applied only *figuratively*; and the question is, whether the figure always necessarily changes the gender of the antecedent noun. We assume the general principle, that the noun and its pronoun are always of the same gender; and we know that when inanimate objects are personified in the third person, they are usually represented as masculine or feminine, the gender being changed by the figure. But when a lifeless object is spoken to in the second person, or represented as speaking in the first, as the pronouns here employed are in themselves without distinction of gender, no such change can be proved by the mere words; and, if we allow that it would be needless to *imagine* it where the words do not prove it, the gender of these pronouns must in such cases be neuter, because we have no ground to think it otherwise. Examples: "And Jesus answered and said unto *it*, [the barren *figtree*,] No man eat fruit of *thee* hereafter forever."--Mark, xi, 14. "O *earth*, cover not *thou* my blood."--Job, xvi, 18. "O *thou sword* of the Lord, how long will it be ere *thou* be quiet?"--Jeremiah, xlvii, 6. In these instances, the objects addressed do not appear to be figuratively invested with the attribute of sex. So likewise with respect to the first person. If, in the following example, *gold*

t, "I am inclined to concur in opinion with Dr. Crombie, whose words I take the liberty to use, 'That, *for the sake of euphony*, the gerund is sometimes found governing the genitive of the patient, or *subject* [say *object*] of the action, is unquestionable: thus, *studio videndi patrum vestrorum*. [That is, literally, *By a desire of seeing of your fathers*.] But I recollect no example, where the gerund is joined with a possessive adjective, or genitive of a noun substantive, where the person is not the patient, but the agent; as, *dicendum meum, ejus dicendum, cujus dicendum*. [That is, *my speaking, his speaking, whose speaking*.] In truth, these phraseologies appear to me, not only repugnant to the idiom of the language, but also unfavourable to precision and perspicuity."--Grant's *Latin Gram.*, 8vo, p. 236.

OBS. 44.--Of that particular distinction between the participle and the participial noun, which depends on the insertion or omission of the article and the preposition *of*, a recent grammarian of considerable merit adopts the following views: "This double nature of the participle has led to much irregularity in its use. Thus we find, 'indulging which,' 'indulging *of* which,' '*the* indulging which,' and '*the* indulging *of* which,' used indiscriminately. Lowth very properly instructs us, either to use both the article and the preposition with the participle; as, '*the* indulging *of* which:' or to reject both; as, 'indulging which:' thus keeping the verbal and substantive forms distinct. But he is wrong, as Dr. Crombie justly remarks, in considering these two modes of expression as perfectly similar. Suppose I am told, 'Bloomfield spoke warmly of the pleasure he had *in*

hearing Fawcet: I understand at once, that the eloquence of Fawcet gave Bloomfield great pleasure. But were it said, 'Bloomfield spoke warmly of the pleasure he had *in the hearing of* Fawcet: I should be led to conclude merely that the orator was within hearing, when the poet spoke of the pleasure he felt from something, about which I have no information. Accordingly Dr. Crombie suggests as a general rule, conducive at least to perspicuity, and perhaps to elegance; that, when the noun connected with the participle is active, or doing something, the article should be inserted before the participle, and the preposition after it; and, when the noun is passive, or represents the object of an action, both the article and the preposition should be omitted:[425] agreeably to the examples just adduced. It is true, that when the noun following the participle denotes something incapable of the action the participle expresses, no mistake can arise *from using* either form: as, 'The middle condition seems to be the most advantageously situate for *the gaining of* wisdom. Poverty turns our thoughts too much upon *the supplying of* our wants; and riches, upon *enjoying* our superfluities.' *Addison, Spect.*, 464. Yet I cannot think it by any means a commendable practice, thus to jumble together different forms; and indeed it is certainly better, as *the two modes of expression have different significations*, to confine each to its distinct and proper use, agreeably to Dr. Crombie's rule, even when no mistake could arise *from interchanging* them."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 319.

OBS. 45.--The two modes of expression which these grammarians would thus apply constantly to different uses, on the supposition that they have always different significations, *are the same* that Lindley Murray and his copyists suppose to be *generally equivalent*, and concerning which it is merely admitted by the latter, that they do "*not in every instance convey the same meaning.*" (See Obs. 27th above.) If Dr. Lowth considered them "*as perfectly similar,*" he was undoubtedly very wrong in this matter: though not more so than these gentlemen, who resolve to interpret them as being perfectly and constantly dissimilar. Dr. Adam says, "There are, both in Latin and [in] English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that *frequently* they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English, have the article *always*[426] prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Detector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted *with reading* Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted *with the reading of* Cicero."--*Lat. and Eng. Gram.*, p. 142. "Gerunds are so called because they, as it were, signify the thing *in gerendo*, (anciently written *gerundo*,) *in doing*; and, along with the action, convey an idea of the agent."--*Grant's Lat. Gram.*, p. 70; *Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 353. "*The reading of Cicero,*" does not necessarily signify an action of which Cicero is the agent, as Crombie, Churchill, and Hiley choose to expound it; and, since the gerundive construction of words in *ing* ought to have a definite reference to the agent or subject of the action or being, one may perhaps amend even some of their own phraseology above, by preferring the participial noun: as, "No mistake can arise *from the using of* either form."--"And riches [turn our thoughts too much] *upon the enjoying of* our superfluities."--"Even when no mistake could arise *from the interchanging of* them." Where the agent of the action plainly appears, the gerundive form is to be preferred on account of its brevity; as, "By *the observing of* truth, you will command respect;" or, "By *observing* truth, &c."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 189. Here the latter phraseology is greatly preferable, though this author did not perceive it. "I thought nothing was to be done by me before *the giving of* you thanks."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 63. Say,--"before *giving* you thanks;" for otherwise the word *thanks* has no proper construction, the pronoun alone being governed by *of*--and here again is an error; for "*you*" ought to be the object of *to*.

OBS. 46.--In Hiley's Treatise, a work far more comprehensive than the generality of grammars, "the *established principles and best usages of the English*" Participle are so adroitly summed up, as to occupy only two pages, one in Etymology, and an other in Syntax. The author shows how the participle differs from a verb, and how from an adjective; yet he neither makes it a separate part of speech, nor tells us with what other it ought to be included. In lieu of a general rule for the parsing of *all participles*, he presents the remark, "Active transitive participles, like their verbs, govern the objective case; as, 'I am desirous of *hearing him*;' '*Having praised them*, he sat down.'"--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 93. This is a rule by which one may parse the *few objectives* which are governed by participles; but, for the usual construction of *participles themselves*, it is no rule at all; neither does the grammar, full as it is, contain any. "*Hearing*" is here governed by *of*, and "*Having praised*" relates to *he*; but this author teaches neither of these facts, and the former he expressly contradicts by

his false definition of a preposition. In his first note, is exhibited, in two parts, the false and ill-written rule which Churchill quotes from Crombie. (1.) "When the noun, *connected with the participle*, is *active or doing* something, the *participle must have* an article before it, and the preposition *of* after it; as, 'In the *hearing of* the philosopher;' or, 'In the philosopher's *hearing*;' 'By the *preaching of* Christ;' or, 'By Christ's *preaching*.' In these instances," says Hiley, "the words *hearing* and *preaching* are *substantives*." If so, he ought to have corrected this rule, which twice calls them *participles*; but, in stead of doing that, he blindly adds, by way of alternative, two examples which expressly contradict what the rule asserts. (2.) "But when the noun represents the *object of an action*, the article and the preposition *of* must be *omitted*; as, 'In *hearing* the philosopher.'"--*Ib.*, p. 94. If this principle is right, my second note below, and most of the corrections under it, are wrong. But I am persuaded that the adopters of this rule did not observe how common is the phraseology which it condemns; as, "For if *the casting-away of them be the reconciling of the world*, what shall *the receiving of them* be, but life from the dead?"--*Rom.*, xi, 15. Finally, this author rejects the *of* which most critics insert when a possessive precedes the verbal noun; justifies and prefers the mixed or double construction of the participle; and, consequently, neither wishes nor attempts to distinguish the participle from the verbal noun. Yet he does not fail to repeat, with some additional inaccuracy, the notion, that, "What do you think of my *horse's running*? is different to [say *from*,] What do you think of my *horse running*?"--*Ib.*, p. 94.

OBS. 47.--That English books in general, and the style of even our best writers, should seldom be found exempt from errors in the construction of participles, will not be thought wonderful, when we consider the multiplicity of uses to which words of this sort are put, and the strange inconsistencies into which all our grammarians have fallen in treating this part of syntax. It is useless, and worse than useless, to teach for grammar any thing that is not true; and no doctrine can be true of which one part palpably oversets an other. What has been taught on the present topic, has led me into a multitude of critical remarks, designed both for the refutation of the principles which I reject, and for the elucidation and defence of those which are presently to be summed up in notes, or special rules, for the correction of false syntax. If my decisions do not agree with the teaching of our common grammarians, it is chiefly because these authors contradict themselves. Of this sort of teaching I shall here offer but one example more, and then bring these strictures to a close: "When present participles are preceded by an article, or pronoun adjective, they become nouns, and must not be followed by objective pronouns, or nouns without a preposition; as, *the reading of many books wastes the health*. But such nouns, like all others, may be used without an article, being sufficiently discovered by the following preposition; as, *he was sent to prepare the way, by preaching of repentance*. Also an article, or pronoun adjective, may precede a clause, used as a noun, and commencing with a participle; as, *his teaching children was necessary*."--*Dr. Wilson's Syllabus of English Gram.*, p. xxx. Here the last position of the learned doctor, if it be true, completely annuls the first; or, if the first be true, the last must needs be false. And, according to Lowth, L. Murray, and many others, the second is as bad as either. The bishop says, concerning this very example, that by the use of the preposition *of* after the participle *preaching*, "the phrase is rendered *obscure and ambiguous*: for the obvious meaning of it, in its present form, is, 'by preaching *concerning* repentance, or on that subject;' whereas the sense intended is, 'by publishing the covenant of repentance, and declaring repentance to be a condition of acceptance with God.'"--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 82. "It ought to be, 'by *the preaching of* repentance;' or, by *preaching* repentance."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 193.

NOTES TO RULE XX.

NOTE I.--Active participles have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived; the preposition *of*, therefore, should never be used after the participle, when the verb does not require it. Thus, in phrases like the following, *of* is improper: "Keeping *of* one day in seven;"--"By preaching *of* repentance;"--"They left beating *of* Paul."

NOTE II.--When a transitive participle is converted into a noun, *of* must be inserted to govern the object following; as, "So that there was *no withstanding of* him."--*Walker's Particles*. p. 252. "The cause of their salvation doth not so much arise from *their embracing of* mercy, as from *God's exercising of* it"--*Penington's*

Works, Vol. ii, p. 91. "Faith is *the receiving of* Christ with the whole soul."--*Baxter*. "In *thy pouring-out of* thy fury upon Jerusalem."--*Ezekiel*, ix, 8.

NOTE III.--When the insertion of the word *of*, to complete the conversion of the transitive participle into a noun, produces ambiguity or harshness, some better phraseology must be chosen. Example: "Because the action took *place prior to the taking place of* the other past action."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 140. Here the words *prior* and *place* have no regular construction; and if we say, "*prior to the taking of place of* the other," we make the jumble still worse. Say therefore, "Because the action took place *before* the other past action;"--or, "Because the action took place *previously* to the other past action."

NOTE IV.--When participles become nouns, their adverbs should either become adjectives, or be taken as parts of such nouns, written as compound words: or, if neither of these methods be agreeable, a greater change should be made. Examples of error: 1. "*Rightly* understanding a sentence, depends very much on a knowledge of its grammatical construction."--*Comly's Gram.*, 12th Ed., p. 8. Say, "*The right* understanding *of* a sentence," &c. 2. "Elopement is a running away, or private departure."--*Webster's El. Spelling-Book*, p. 102. Write "*running-away*" as one word. 3. "If they [Milton's descriptions] have any *faults*, it is their *alluding too frequently* to matters of learning, and to fables of antiquity."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 451. Say, "If they have any *fault*, it is *that they allude* too frequently," &c.

NOTE V.--When the participle is followed by an adjective, its conversion into a noun appears to be improper; because the construction of the adjective becomes anomalous, and its relation doubtful: as, "When we speak of '*ambition's being restless*' or, '*a disease's being deceitful*.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 346; *Kirkham's*, p. 224. This ought to be, "When we speak of *ambition as being restless*, or a *disease as being deceitful*;" but Dr. Blair, from whom the text originally came, appears to have written it thus: "When we speak of *ambition's being restless*, or a *disease being deceitful*."--LECT. xvi, p. 155. This is *inconsistent with itself*; for one noun is possessive, and the other, objective. NOTE VI.--When a compound participle is converted into a noun, the hyphen seems to be necessary, to prevent ambiguity; but such compound nouns are never elegant, and it is in general better to avoid them, by some change in the expression. Example: "Even as *the being healed* of a wound, presupposeth the plaster or salve: but not, on the contrary; for the application of the plaster presupposeth not *the being healed*."--*Barclays Works*, Vol. i, p. 143. The phrase, "*the being healed*" ought to mean only, *the creature healed*; and not, *the being-healed*, or *the healing received*, which is what the writer intended. But the simple word *healing* might have been used in the latter sense; for, in participial nouns, the distinction of *voice* and of *tense* are commonly disregarded.

NOTE VII.--A participle should not be used where the infinitive mood, the verbal noun, a common substantive, or a phrase equivalent, will better express the meaning. Examples: 1. "But *placing* an accent on the second syllable of these words, would entirely derange them."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 239. Say rather, "But, *to place* an accent--But *the placing of* an accent--or, But an *accent placed* on the second syllable of these words, would entirely derange them." 2. "To require *their being* in that case."--*Ib.*, Vol. ii, p. 21. Say, "To require *them* to be in that case." 3. "She regrets not having read it."--*West's Letters*, p. 216. Say, "She regrets *that she has not* read it." Or, "She *does not regret that she has* read it." For the text is equivocal, and admits either of these senses.

NOTE VIII.--A participle used for a nominative after *be*, *is*, *was*, &c., produces a construction which is more naturally understood to be a compound form of the verb; and which is therefore not well adapted to the sense intended, when one tells what something is, was, or may be. Examples: 1. "Whose business *is shoeing* animals."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 365. Say, "Whose business *it is, to shoe* animals;"--or, "Whose business is *the shoeing of* animals." 2. "This *was in fact converting* the deposit to his own use."--*Murray's Key*, ii, p. 200. Say rather, "This was in fact *a converting of* the deposit to his own use."--*Ib.*

NOTE IX.--Verbs of *preventing* should be made to govern, not the participle in *ing*, nor what are called substantive phrases, but the objective case of a noun or pronoun; and if a participle follow, it ought to be

governed by the preposition *from*: as, "But the admiration due to so eminent a poet, must not *prevent us from remarking* some other particulars in which he has failed."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 438. Examples of error: 1. "I endeavoured to prevent *letting him* escape"--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 150. Say,--"to prevent *his escape*." 2. "To prevent *its being connected* with the nearest noun."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 367. Say, "To prevent *it from* being connected," &c. 3. "To prevent *it bursting* out with open violence."--*Robertson's America*, Vol. ii, p. 146. Say, "To prevent *it from* bursting out," &c. 4. "To prevent *their injuring or murdering* of others."--*Brown's Divinity*, p. 26. Say rather, "To prevent *them from* injuring or murdering *others*."

NOTE X.--In the use of participles and of verbal nouns, the leading word in sense should always be made the leading or governing word in the construction; and where there is reason to doubt whether the possessive case or some other ought to come before the participle, it is better to reject both, and vary the expression. Examples: "Any person may easily convince himself of the truth of this, by listening to *foreigners conversing* in a language [which] he does not understand."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 361. "It is a relic of the ancient *style abounding* with negatives."--*Ib.*, p. 367. These forms are right; though the latter might be varied, by the insertion of "*which abounds*" for "*abounding*." But the celebrated examples before cited, about the "*lady holding up* her train," or the "*lady's holding up* her train,"--the "*person dismissing* his servant," or the "*person's dismissing* his servant,"--the "*horse running* to-day," or the "*horse's running* to-day,"--and many others which some grammarians suppose to be interchangeable, are equally bad in both forms.

NOTE XI.--Participles, in general, however construed, should have a clear reference to the proper subject of the being, action, or passion. The following sentence is therefore faulty: "By *establishing* good laws, our peace is secured."--*Russell's Gram.*, p. 88; *Folker's*, p. 27. Peace not being the *establisser* of the laws, these authors should have said, "By *establishing* good laws, *we* secure our peace." "*There will be no danger of spoiling* their faces, or of *gaining* converts."--*Murray's Key*, ii, p. 201. This sentence is to me utterly unintelligible. If the context were known, there might possibly be some sense in saying, "*They will be in no danger of spoiling* their faces," &c. "The law is annulled, in the very *act of its being made*."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 267. "The *act of MAKING* a law," is a phrase intelligible; but, "the *act of its BEING MADE*," is a downright solecism--a positive absurdity.

NOTE XII.--A needless or indiscriminate use of participles for nouns, or of nouns for participles, is inelegant, if not improper, and ought therefore to be avoided. Examples: "*Of* denotes possession or *belonging*."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 118; *Ingersoll's*, 71. "The preposition *of*, frequently implies possession, property, or *belonging to*."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 137. Say, "*Of* frequently denotes possession, or *the relation of property*." "England perceives the folly *of the denying* of such concessions."--*Nixon's Parser*, p. 149. Expunge *the* and the last *of*, that *denying* may stand as a participle.

NOTE XIII.--Perfect participles being variously formed, care should be taken to express them agreeably to the best usage, and also to distinguish them from the preterits of their verbs, where there is any difference of form. Example: "It would be well, if all writers who endeavour to be accurate, would be careful to avoid a corruption at present so prevalent, of saying, *it was wrote*, for, *it was written*; *he was drove*, for, *he was driven*; *I have went*, for, *I have gone*, &c., in all which instances a verb is absurdly used to supply the proper participle, without any necessity from the want of such word."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 186.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XX.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--EXPUNGE OF.

"In forming of his sentences, he was very exact."--*Error noticed by Murray*, Vol. i, p. 194.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition *of* is used after the participle *forming*, whose verb does not

require it. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 20th, "Active participles have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived; the preposition *of*, therefore, should not be used after the participle, when the verb does not require it." Therefore, *of* should be omitted; thus, "In forming his sentences, he was very exact."]

"For not believing of which I condemn them"--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 354. "To prohibit his hearers from reading of that book."--*Ib.*, i, 223. "You will please them exceedingly, in crying down of ordinances."--MITCHELL: *ib.*, i, 219. "The war-wolf subsequently became an engine for casting of stones,"--*Constable's Miscellany*, xxi, 117. "The art of dressing of hides and working in leather was practised."--*Ib.*, xxi, 101. "In the choice they had made of him, for restoring of order."--*Rollin's Hist.*, ii, 37. "The Arabians exercised themselves by composing of orations and poems."--*Sale's Koran*, p. 17. "Behold, the widow-woman was there gathering of sticks."--*1 Kings*, xvii, 10. "The priests were busied in offering of burnt-offerings."--*2 Chron.*, xxxv, 14. "But Asahel would not turn aside from following of him."--*2 Sam.*, ii, 21. "He left off building of Ramah, and dwelt in Tirzah."--*1 Kings*, xv, 21. "Those who accuse us of denying of it, belie us."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 280. "And breaking of bread from house to house."--*Ib.*, i, 192. "Those that set about repairing of the walls."--*Ib.*, i, 459. "And secretly begetting of divisions."--*Ib.*, i, 521. "Whom he had made use of in gathering of his church."--*Ib.*, i, 535. "In defining and distinguishing of the acceptions and uses of those particles."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 12.

"In punishing of this, we overthrow The laws of nations, and of nature too."--*Dryden*, p. 92.

UNDER NOTE II.--ARTICLES REQUIRE OF.

"The mixing them makes a miserable jumble of truth and fiction."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 357. "The same objection lies against the employing statues."--*Ib.*, ii, 358. "More efficacious than the venting opulence upon the Fine Arts."--*Ib.*, Vol. i, p. viii. "It is the giving different names to the same object."--*Ib.*, ii, 19. "When we have in view the erecting a column."--*Ib.*, ii, 56. "The straining an elevated subject beyond due bounds, is a vice not so frequent."--*Ib.*, i, 206. "The cutting evergreens in the shape of animals is very ancient."--*Ib.*, ii, 327. "The keeping juries, without meet, drink or fire, can be accounted for only on the same idea."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 301. "The writing the verbs at length on his slate, will be a very useful exercise."--*Beck's Gram.*, p. 20. "The avoiding them is not an object of any moment."--*Sheridan's Lect.*, p. 180. "Comparison is the increasing or decreasing the Signification of a Word by degrees."--*British Gram.*, p. 97. "Comparison is the Increasing or Decreasing the Quality by Degrees."--*Buchanan's English Syntax*, p. 27. "The placing a Circumstance before the Word with which it is connected, is the easiest of all Inversion."--*Ib.*, p. 140. "What is emphasis? It is the emitting a stronger and fuller sound of voice," &c.--*Bradley's Gram.*, p. 108. "Besides, the varying the terms will render the use of them more familiar."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 25. "And yet the confining themselves to this true principle, has misled them!"--*Horne Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 15. "What is here commanded, is merely the relieving his misery."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 417. "The accumulating too great a quantity of knowledge at random, overloads the mind instead of adorning it."--*Formey's Belles-Lettres*, p. 5. "For the compassing his point."--*Rollin's Hist.*, ii, 35. "To the introducing such an inverted order of things."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 95. "Which require only the doing an external action."--*Ib.*, p. 185. "The imprisoning my body is to satisfy your wills."--*GEO. FOX: Sewel's Hist.*, p. 47. "Who oppose the conferring such extensive command on one person."--*Duncan's Cicero*, p. 130. "Luxury contributed not a little to the enervating their forces."--*Sale's Koran*, p. 49. "The keeping one day of the week for a sabbath."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 202. "The doing a thing is contrary to the forbearing of it."--*Ib.*, i, 527. "The doubling the Sigma is, however, sometimes regular."--*Knight, on the Greek Alphabet*, p. 29. "The inserting the common aspirate too, is improper."--*Ib.*, p. 134. "But in Spenser's time the pronouncing the *ed* seems already to have been something of an archaism."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 656. "And to the reconciling the effect of their verses on the eye."--*Ib.*, i, 659. "When it was not in their power to hinder the taking the whole."--*Brown's Estimate*, ii, 155. "He had indeed given the orders himself for the shutting the gates."--*Ibid.* "So his whole life was a doing the will of the Father."--*Penington*, iv, 99. "It signifies the suffering or receiving the action expressed."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 37. "The pretended crime therefore was the

declaring himself to be the Son of God."--*West's Letters*, p. 210. "Parsing is the resolving a sentence into its different parts of speech."--*Beck's Gram.*, p. 26.

UNDER NOTE II.--ADJECTIVES REQUIRE OF.

"There is no expecting the admiration of beholders."--*Baxter*. "There is no hiding you in the house."--*Shakspeare*. "For the better regulating government in the province of Massachusetts."--*British Parliament*. "The precise marking the shadowy boundaries of a complex government."--*J. Q. Adams's Rhet.*, Vol. ii, p. 6. "[This state of discipline] requires the voluntary foregoing many things which we desire, and setting ourselves to what we have no inclination to."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 115. "This amounts to an active setting themselves against religion."--*Ib.*, p. 264. "Which engaged our ancient friends to the orderly establishing our Christian discipline."--*N. E. Discip.*, p. 117. "Some men are so unjust that there is no securing our own property or life, but by opposing force to force."--*Brown's Divinity*, p. 26. "An Act for the better securing the Rights and Liberties of the Subject."--*Geo. III*, 31st. "Miraculous curing the sick is discontinued."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 137. "It would have been no transgressing the apostle's rule."--*Ib.*, p. 146. "As far as consistent with the proper conducting the business of the House."--*Elmore, in Congress*, 1839. "Because he would have no quarrelling at the just condemning them at that day."--*Law and Grace*, p. 42. "That transferring this natural manner--will ensure propriety."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 372. "If a man were porter of hell-gate, he should have old turning the key."--*Macbeth*, Act ii, Sc. 3.

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES REQUIRE OF.

"So very simple a thing as a man's wounding himself."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 97; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 317. "Or with that man's avowing his designs."--*Blair*, p. 104; *Murray*, p. 308; *Parker and Fox, Part III*, p. 88. "On his putting the question."--*Adams's Rhet.*, Vol. ii, p. 111. "The importance of teachers' requiring their pupils to read each section many times over."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 169. "Politeness is a kind of forgetting one's self in order to be agreeable to others."--*Ramsay's Cyrus*. "Much, therefore, of the merit, and the agreeableness of epistolary writing, will depend on its introducing us into some acquaintance with the writer."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 370; *Mack's Dissertation in his Gram.*, p. 175. "Richard's restoration to respectability, depends on his paying his debts."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 176. "Their supplying ellipses where none ever existed; their parsing words of sentences already full and perfect, as though depending on words understood."--*Ib.*, p. 375. "Her veiling herself and shedding tears," &c., "her upbraiding Paris for his cowardice," &c.--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 433. "A preposition may be known by its admitting after it a personal pronoun, in the objective case."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 28; *Alger's*, 14; *Bacon's*, 10; *Merchant's*, 18; and others. "But this forms no just objection to its denoting time."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 65. "Of men's violating or disregarding the relations which God has placed them in here."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 164. "Success, indeed, no more decides for the right, than a man's killing his antagonist in a duel."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 295. "His reminding them."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 123. "This mistake was corrected by his preceptor's causing him to plant some beans."--*Ib.*, p. 235. "Their neglecting this was ruinous."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 82. "That he was serious, appears from his distinguishing the others as 'finite.'"--*Felch's Gram.*, p. 10. "His hearers are not at all sensible of his doing it."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 119.

UNDER NOTE III.--CHANGE THE EXPRESSION.

"An allegory is the saying one thing, and meaning another; a double-meaning or dilogy is the saying only one thing, but having two in view."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 461. "A verb may generally be distinguished, by its making sense with any of the personal pronouns, or the word *to* before it."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 28; *Alger's*, 13; *Bacon's*, 10; *Comly's*, and many others. "A noun may, in general, be distinguished by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of itself."--*Merchant's Gram.*, p. 17; *Murray's*, 27; &c. "An Adjective may usually be known by its making sense with the addition of the word *thing*: as, a *good thing*; a *bad thing*."--*Same Authors*. "It is seen in the objective case, from its denoting the object affected by the act of leaving."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 44. "It is seen in the possessive case, from its denoting the *possessor* of

something."--*Ibid.* "The name man is caused by the adname *whatever* to be twofold subjective case, from its denoting, of itself, one person as the subject of the two remarks."--*Ib.*, p. 56. "When, as used in the last line, is a connective, from its joining that line to the other part of the sentence."--*Ib.*, p. 59. "From their denoting reciprocation."--*Ib.*, p. 64. "To allow them the making use of that liberty."--*Sale's Koran*, p. 116. "The worst effect of it is, the fixing on your mind a habit of indecision."--*Todd's Student's Manual*, p. 60. "And you groan the more deeply, as you reflect that there is no shaking it off."--*Ib.*, p. 47. "I know of nothing that can justify the having recourse to a Latin translation of a Greek writer."--*Coleridge's Introduction*, p. 16. "Humour is the making others act or talk absurdly."--*Hazlitt's Lectures*. "There are remarkable instances of their not affecting each other."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 150. "The leaving Cæsar out of the commission was not from any slight."--*Life of Cicero*, p. 44. "Of the receiving this toleration thankfully I shall say no more."--*Dryden's Works*, p. 88. "Henrietta was delighted with Julia's working lace so very well."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 255. "And it is from their representing each two different words that the confusion has arisen."--*Booth's Introd.*, p. 42. "Æschylus died of a fracture of his skull, caused by an eagle's letting fall a tortoise on his head."--*Biog. Dict.* "He doubted their having it."--*Felch's Comp. Gram.*, p. 81. "The making ourselves clearly understood, is the chief end of speech."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 68. "There is no discovering in their countenances, any signs which are the natural concomitants of the feelings of the heart."--*Ib.*, p. 165. "Nothing can be more common or less proper than to speak of a *river's emptying itself*."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 186. "Our not using the former expression, is owing to this."--*Bullions's E. Gram.*, p. 59.

UNDER NOTE IV.--DISPOSAL OF ADVERBS.

"To this generally succeeds the division, or the laying down the method of the discourse."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 311. "To the pulling down of strong holds."--*2 Cor.*, x, 4. "Can a mere buckling on a military weapon infuse courage?"--*Brown's Estimate*, i, 62. "Living expensively and luxuriously destroys health."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 234. "By living frugally and temperately, health is preserved."--*Ibid.* "By living temperately, our health is promoted."--*Ib.*, p. 227. "By the doing away of the necessity."--*The Friend*, xiii, 157. "He recommended to them, however, the immediately calling of the whole community to the church."--*Gregory's Dict.*, w. *Ventriloquism*. "The separation of large numbers in this manner certainly facilitates the reading them rightly."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 303. "From their merely admitting of a twofold grammatical construction."--*Philol. Museum*, i, 403. "His gravely lecturing his friend about it."--*Ib.*, i, 478. "For the blotting out of sin."--*Gurney's Evidences*, p. 140. "From the not using of water."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 189. "By the gentle dropping in of a pebble."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 125. "To the carrying on a great part of that general course of nature."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 127. "Then the not interposing is so far from being a ground of complaint."--*Ib.*, p. 147. "The bare omission, or rather the not employing of what is used."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 180; *Jamieson's*, 48. "Bringing together incongruous adverbs is a very common fault."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 329. "This is a presumptive proof of its not proceeding from them."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 186. "It represents him in a character to which the acting unjustly is peculiarly unsuitable."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 372. "They will aim at something higher than merely the dealing out of harmonious sounds."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 65. "This is intelligible and sufficient; and going farther seems beyond the reach of our faculties."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 147. "Apostrophe is a turning off from the regular course of the subject."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 348; *Jamieson's Rhet.*, 185. "Even Isabella was finally prevailed upon to assent to the sending out a commission to investigate his conduct."--*Life of Columbus*. "For the turning away of the simple shall slay them."--*Prov.*, i, 32.

"Thick fingers always should command Without the stretching out the hand."--*King's Poems*, p. 585.

UNDER NOTE V.--PARTICIPLES WITH ADJECTIVES.

"Is there any Scripture speaks of the light's being inward?"--*Barclay's Works*, i, 367. "For I believe not the being positive therein essential to salvation."--*Ib.*, iii, 330. "Our not being able to act an uniform right part without some thought and care."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 122. "Upon supposition of its being reconcileable with the constitution of nature."--*Ib.*, p. 128. "Upon account of its not being discoverable by reason or

experience."--*Ib.*, p. 170. "Upon account of their being unlike the known course of nature."--*Ib.*, p. 171. "Our being able to discern reasons for them, gives a positive credibility to the history of them."--*Ib.*, p. 174. "From its not being universal."--*Ib.*, p. 175. "That they may be turned into the passive participle in *dus* is no decisive argument in favour of their being passive."--*Grant's Lat. Gram.*, p. 233. "With the implied idea of St. Paul's being then *absent* from the Corinthians."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 123. "On account of its becoming gradually weaker, until it finally dies away into silence."--*Ib.*, p. 32. "Not without the author's being fully aware."--*Ib.*, p. 84. "Being witty out of season, is one sort of folly."--*Sheffield's Works*, ii. 172. "Its being generally susceptible of a much stronger evidence."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 102. "At least their being such rarely enhanceth our opinion, either of their abilities or of their virtues."--*Ib.*, p. 162. "Which were the ground of our being one."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 513. "But they may be distinguished from it by their being intransitive."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 60. "To distinguish the higher degree of our persuasion of a thing's being possible."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 234.

"His being idle, and dishonest too, Was that which caus'd his utter overthrow."--*Tobitt's Gram.*, p. 61.

UNDER NOTE VI.--COMPOUND VERBAL NOUNS.

"When it denotes being subjected to the exertion of another."--*Booth's Introd.*, p. 37. "In a passive sense, it signifies being subjected to the influence of the action."--*Felch's Comp. Gram.*, p. 60. "The being abandoned by our friends is very deplorable."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, i, 181. "Without waiting for their being attacked by the Macedonians."--*Ib.*, ii, 97. "In progress of time, words were wanted to express men's being connected with certain conditions of fortune."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 135. "Our being made acquainted with pain and sorrow, has a tendency to bring us to a settled moderation."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 121. "The chancellor's being attached to the king secured his crown; The general's having failed in this enterprise occasioned his disgrace; John's having been writing a long time had wearied him."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 66; *Sanborn's*, 171; *Cooper's*, 96; *Ingersoll's*, 46; *Fisk's*, 83; and others. "The sentence should be, 'John's having been writing a long time has wearied him.'"--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 186. "Much depends on this rule's being observed."--*Murray's Key*, ii, 195. "He mentioned a boy's having been corrected for his faults; The boy's having been corrected is shameful to him."--*Alger's Gram.*, p. 65; *Merchant's*, 93. "The greater the difficulty of remembrance is, and the more important the being remembered is to the attainment of the ultimate end."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 90. "If the parts in the composition of similar objects were always in equal quantity, their being compounded would make no odds."--*Ib.*, p. 65. "Circumstances, not of such importance as that the scope of the relation is affected by their being known."--*Ib.*, p. 379. "A passive verb expresses the receiving of an action or the being acted upon; as, 'John is beaten'"--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 16. "So our Language has another great Advantage, namely its not being diversified by Genders."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 20. "The having been slandered is no fault of Peter."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 82. "Without being Christ's friends, there is no being justified."--*William Penn.* "Being accustomed to danger, begets intrepidity, i.e. lessens fear."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 112. "It is, not being affected so and so, but acting, which forms those habits."--*Ib.*, p. 113. "In order to our being satisfied of the truth of the apparent paradox."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 164. "Tropes consist in a word's being employed to signify something that is different from its original and primitive meaning."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 132; *Jamieson's*, 140; *Murray's Gram.*, 337; *Kirkham's*, 222. "A Trope consists in a word's being employed," &c.--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 133. "The scriptural view of our being saved from punishment."--*Gurney's Evidences*, p. 124. "To submit and obey, is not a renouncing a being led by the Spirit."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 542.

UNDER NOTE VII.--PARTICIPLES FOR INFINITIVES, &C.

"Teaching little children is a pleasant employment."--*Bartlett's School Manual*, ii, 68. "Denying or compromising principles of truth is virtually denying their divine Author."--*Reformer*, i, 34. "A severe critic might point out some expressions that would bear being retrenched."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 206. "Never attempt prolonging the pathetic too much."--*Ib.*, p. 323. "I now recollect having mentioned a report of that nature."--*Whiting's Reader*, p. 132. "Nor of the necessity which there is for their being restrained in them."--*Butler's*

Analogy, p. 116. "But doing what God commands, because he commands it, is obedience, though it proceeds from hope or fear."--*Ib.*, p. 124. "Simply closing the nostrils does not so entirely prevent resonance."--*Music of Nature*, p. 484. "Yet they absolutely refuse doing so."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 264. "But Artaxerxes could not refuse pardoning him."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, i, 173. "Doing them in the best manner is signified by the name of these arts."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 360. "Behaving well for the time to come, may be insufficient."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 198. "The compiler proposed publishing that part by itself."--*Dr. Adam, Rom. Antiq.*, p. v. "To smile upon those we should censure, is bringing guilt upon ourselves."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 108. "But it would be doing great injustice to that illustrious orator to bring his genius down to the same level."--*Ib.*, p. 28. "Doubting things go ill, often hurts more than to be sure they do."--*Beauties of Shak.*, p. 203. "This is called straining a metaphor."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 150; *Murray's Gram.*, i, 341. "This is what Aristotle calls giving manners to the poem."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 427. "The painter's being entirely confined to that part of time which he has chosen, deprives him of the power of exhibiting various stages of the same action."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 195. "It imports retrenching all superfluities, and pruning the expression."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 94; *Jamieson's*, 64; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 301; *Kirkham's*, 220. "The necessity for our being thus exempted is further apparent."--*West's Letters*, p. 40. "Her situation in life does not allow of her being genteel in every thing."--*Ib.*, p. 57. "Provided you do not dislike being dirty when you are invisible."--*Ib.*, p. 58. "There is now an imperious necessity for her being acquainted with her title to eternity."--*Ib.*, p. 120. "Discarding the restraints of virtue, is misnamed ingenuousness."--*Ib.*, p. 105. "The legislature prohibits opening shop of a Sunday."--*Ib.*, p. 66. "To attempt proving that any thing is right."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 256. "The comma directs making a pause of a second in duration, or less."--*Ib.*, p. 280. "The rule which directs putting other words into the place of it, is wrong."--*Ib.*, p. 326. "They direct calling the specifying adjectives or adnames adjective pronouns."--*Ib.*, p. 338. "William dislikes attending court."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 82. "It may perhaps be worth while remarking that Milton makes a distinction."--*Philological Museum*, i, 659. "Professing regard, and acting differently, discover a base mind."--*Murray's Key*, p. 206; *Bullions's E. Gram.*, pp. 82 and 112; *Lennie's*, 58. "Professing regard and acting indifferently, discover a base mind."--*Weld's Gram., Improved Edition*, p. 59. "You have proved beyond contradiction, that acting thus is the sure way to procure such an object."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 92.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--PARTICIPLES AFTER BE, IS, &C.

"Irony is expressing ourselves in a manner contrary to our thoughts."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 353; *Kirkham's*, 225; *Goldsbury's*, 90. "Irony is saying one thing and meaning the reverse of what that expression would represent."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 303. "An Irony is dissembling or changing the proper signification of a word or sentence to quite the contrary."--*Fisher's Gram.*, p. 151. "Irony is expressing ourselves contrary to what we mean."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 280. "This is in a great Measure delivering their own Compositions."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. xxvi. "But purity is using rightly the words of the language."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 59. "But the most important object is settling the English quantity."--*Walker's Key*, p. 17. "When there is no affinity, the transition from one meaning to another is taking a very wide step."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 293. "It would be losing time to attempt further to illustrate it."--*Ib.*, p. 79. "This is leaving the sentence too bare, and making it to be, if not nonsense, hardly sense."--*Cobbett's Gram.*, ¶220. "This is requiring more labours from every private member."--*West's Letters*, p. 120. "Is not this using one measure for our neighbours, and another for ourselves?"--*Ib.*, p. 200. "Is it not charging God foolishly, when we give these dark colourings to human nature?"--*Ib.*, p. 171. "This is not enduring the cross as a disciple of Jesus Christ, but snatching at it like a partizan of Swift's Jack."--*Ib.*, p. 175. "What is Spelling? It is combining letters to form syllables and words."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 18. "It is choosing such letters to compose words," &c.--*Ibid.* "What is Parsing? (1.) It is describing the nature, use, and powers of words."--*Ib.*, pp. 22 and 192. (2.) "For parsing is describing the words of a sentence as they are used."--*Ib.*, p. 10. (3.) "Parsing is only describing the nature and relations of words as they are used."--*Ib.*, p. 11. (4.) "Parsing, let the pupil understand and remember, is describing facts concerning words; or representing them in their offices and relations as they are."--*Ib.*, p. 34. (5.) "Parsing is resolving and explaining words according to the rules of grammar."--*Ib.*, p. 326. (6.) "Parsing a word, remember, is enumerating and describing its various relations and qualities, and its grammatical relations to other words in the sentence."--*Ib.*, p. 325. (7.) "For parsing a

word is enumerating and describing its various properties and relations *to the sentence*."--*Ib.*, p. 326. (8.) "Parsing a noun is telling of what person, number, gender, and case, it is; and also telling all its grammatical relations in a sentence with respect to other words."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 16. (9.) "Parsing any part of speech is telling all its properties and relations."--*Ibid.* (10.) "Parsing is resolving a sentence into its elements."--*Fowler's E. Gram.*, 1850, §588. "The highway of the righteous is, departing from evil."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 168. "Besides, the first step towards exhibiting truth should be removing the veil of error."--*Ib.*, p. 377. "Punctuation is dividing sentences and the words of sentences, by pauses."--*Ib.*, p. 280. "Another fault is using the preterimperfect *shook* instead of the participle *shaken*"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 259. "Her employment is drawing maps."--*Alger's Gram.*, p. 65. "Going to the play, according to his notion, is leading a sensual life, and exposing ones self to the strongest temptations. This is begging the question, and therefor requires no answer."--*Formey's Belles-Lettres*, p. 217. "It is overvaluing ourselves to reduce every thing to the narrow measure of our capacities."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 193; *Ingersoll's*, 199. "What is vocal language? It is speaking; or expressing ideas by the human voice."--*Sanders, Spelling-Book*, p. 7.

UNDER NOTE IX.--VERBS OF PREVENTING.

"The annulling power of the constitution prevented that enactment's becoming a law."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 267. "Which prevents the manner's being brief."--*Ib.*, p. 365. "This close prevents their bearing forward as nominatives."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 153. "Because this prevents its growing drowzy."--*Formey's Belles-Lettres*, p. 5. "Yet this does not prevent his being great."--*Ib.*, p. 27. "To prevent its being insipid."--*Ib.*, p. 112. "Or whose interruptions did not prevent its being continued."--*Ib.*, p. 167. "This by no means prevents their being also punishments."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 123. "This hinders not their being also, in the strictest sense, punishments."--*Ibid.*, "The noise made by the rain and wind prevented their being heard."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. i, p. 118. "He endeavoured to prevent its taking effect."--*Ib.*, i, 128. "So sequestered as to prevent their being explored."--*West's Letters*, p. 62. "Who prevented her making a more pleasant party."--*Ib.*, p. 65. "To prevent our being tossed about by every wind of doctrine."--*Ib.*, p. 123. "After the infirmities of age prevented his bearing his part of official duty."--*Religious World*, ii, 193. "To prevent splendid trifles passing for matters of importance."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 310. "Which prevents his exerting himself to any good purpose."--*Beattie's Moral Science*, i, 146. "The want of the observance of this rule, very frequently prevents our being punctual in our duties."--*Student's Manual*, p. 65. "Nothing will prevent his being a student, and his possessing the means of study."--*Ib.*, p. 127. "Does the present accident hinder your being honest and brave?"--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 51. "The e is omitted to prevent two es coming together."--*Fowle's Gram.*, p. 34. "A pronoun is used for or in place of a noun.--to prevent repeating the noun."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 13. "Diversity in the style relieves the ear, and prevents it being tired with the too frequent recurrence of the rhymes."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 166. "Diversity in the style relieves the ear, and prevents its being tired," &c.--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 362. "Timidity and false shame prevent our opposing vicious customs."--*Murray's Key*, ii, 236; *Sanborn's Gram.*, 171; *Merchant's*, 205. "To prevent their being moved by such."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 155. "Some obstacle or impediment, that prevents its taking place."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 38. "Which prevents our making a progress towards perfection."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 4. "This method of distinguishing words, must prevent any regular proportion of time being settled."--*Ib.*, p. 67. "That nothing but affectation can prevent its always taking place."--*Ib.*, p. 78. "This did not prevent John's being acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated Duke of Normandy."--HENRY: *Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 182; his *Improved Gram.*, 130; *Sanborn's Gram.*, 189; *Fowler's*, 8vo, 1850, p. 541.

UNDER NOTE X.--THE LEADING WORD IN SENSE.

"This would preclude the possibility of a *nouns'* or any other word's ever being in the possessive case."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 338. "A great part of our pleasure arises from the plan or story being well conducted."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 18, "And we have no reason to wonder at this being the case."--*Ib.*, p. 249. "She objected only, as Cicero says, to Oppianicus having two sons by his present wife."--*Ib.*, p. 274. "The Britons being subdued by the Saxons, was a necessary consequence of their having called in these Saxons, to their assistance."--*Ib.*, p. 329. "What he had there said, concerning the Saxons expelling the Britons, and changing

the customs, the religion, and the language of the country, is a clear and good reason for our present language being Saxon rather than British."--*Ib.*, p. 230. "The only material difference between them, besides the one being short and the other being prolonged, is, that a metaphor always explains itself by the words that are connected with it."--*Ib.*, p. 151; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 342. "The description of Death's advancing to meet Satan, on his arrival."--*Rush, on the Voice*, p. 156. "Is not the bare fact of God being the witness of it, sufficient ground for its credibility to rest upon?"--*Chalmers, Sermon*, p. 288. "As in the case of one entering upon a new study."--*Beattie's Moral Science*, i, 77. "The manner of these affecting the copula is called the imperative mode."--BP. WILKINS: *Lowth's Gram.*, p. 43. "We are freed from the trouble, by our nouns having no diversity of endings."--*Buchanan's Syntax*, p. 20. "The Verb is rather indicative of the actions being *doing*, or *done*, than *the time when*, but indeed the ideas are undistinguishable."--*Booth's Introd.*, p. 69. "Nobody would doubt of this being a sufficient proof."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 66. "Against the doctrine here maintained, of conscience being, as well as reason, a natural faculty."--*Beattie's M. Sci.*, i, 263. "It is one cause of the Greek and English languages being much more easy to learn, than the Latin."--*Bucke's Classical Gram.*, p. 25. "I have not been able to make out a solitary instance of such being the fact."--*Liberator*, x, 40. "An angel's forming the appearance of a hand, and writing the king's condemnation on the wall, checked their mirth, and filled them with terror."--*Wood's Dict.*, w. *Belshazzar*. "The prisoners' having attempted to escape, aroused the keepers."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 357. "I doubt not, in the least, of this having been one cause of the multiplication of divinities in the heathen world."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 155. "From the general rule he lays down, of the verbs being the parent word of all language."--*Diversions of Purley*, Vol. i, p. 227. "He was accused of himself being idle."--*Felch's Comp. Gram.*, p. 52. "Our meeting is generally dissatisfied with him so removing."--*Wm. Edmondson*. "The spectacle is too rare of men's deserving solid fame while not seeking it."--*Prof. Bush's Lecture on Swedenborg*. "What further need was there of an other priest rising?"--See *Key*.

UNDER NOTE XI.--REFERENCE OF PARTICIPLES.

"Viewing them separately, different emotions are produced."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 344. "But leaving this doubtful, another objection occurs."--*Ib.*, ii, 358. "Proceeding from one particular to another, the subject grew under his hand."--*Ib.*, i, 27. "But this is still an interruption, and a link of the chain broken."--*Ib.*, ii, 314. "After some days hunting, Cyrus communicated his design to his officers."--*Rollin*, ii, 66. "But it is made, without the appearance of making it in form."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 358. "These would have had a better effect disjoined thus."--*Ib.*, p. 119; *Murray's Gram.*, i, 309. "An improper diphthong has but one of the vowels sounded."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 9; *Alger's*, 12; *Merchant's*, 9; *Smith's*, 118; *Ingersoll's*, 4. "And being led to think of both together, my view is rendered unsteady."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 95; *Murray's Gram.*, 302; *Jamieson's Rhet.*, 66. "By often doing the same thing, it becomes habitual."--*Murray's Key*, p. 257. "They remain with us in our dark and solitary hours, no less than when surrounded with friends and cheerful society."--*Ib.*, p. 238. "Besides shewing what is right, the matter may be further explained by pointing out what is wrong."--*Lowth's Gram.*, *Pref.*, p. viii. "The former teaches the true pronunciation of words, comprising accent, quantity, emphasis, pause, and tone."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 235. "Persons may be reprov'd for their negligence, by saying; 'You have taken great care indeed.'"--*Ib.*, i, 354. "The words preceding and following it, are in apposition to each other."--*Ib.*, ii, p. 22. "Having finished his speech, the assembly dispersed."--*Cooper's Pract. Gram.*, p. 97. "Were the voice to fall at the close of the last line, as many a reader is in the habit of doing."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 101. "The misfortunes of his countrymen were but negatively the effects of his wrath, by depriving them of his assistance."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 299. "Taking them as nouns, this construction may be explained thus."--*Grant's Latin Gram.*, p. 233. "These have an active signification, those which come from neuter verbs being excepted."--*Ib.*, p. 233. "From the evidence of it not being universal."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 84. "And this faith will continually grow, by acquainting ourselves with our own nature."--*Channing's Self-Culture*, p. 33. "Monosyllables ending with any consonant but *f*, *l*, or *s*, and preceded by a single vowel, never double the final consonant; excepting *add*, *ebb*," &c.--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 23; *Picket's*, 10; *Merchant's*, 13; *Ingersoll's*, 8; *Fisk's*, 44; *Blair's*, 7. "The relation of being the object of the action is expressed by the change of the Noun *Maria* to *Mariam*"--*Booth's Introd.*, p. 38. "In analyzing a proposition, it is first to be divided into its logical subject and predicate."--*Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Gram.*, p. 254. "In analyzing a simple sentence, it should first be resolved into its logical subject and logical

predicate."--*Wells's School Gram.*, 113th Ed., p. 189.

UNDER NOTE XII.--OF PARTICIPLES AND NOUNS.

"The discovering passions instantly at their birth, is essential to our well being."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 352. "I am now to enter on considering the sources of the pleasures of taste."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 28. "The varieties in using them are, indeed many."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 319. "Changing times and seasons, removing and setting up kings, belong to Providence alone."--*Ib.*, *Key*, ii, p. 200. "Adhering to the partitions seemed the cause of France, accepting the will that of the house of Bourbon."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 246. "Another source of darkness in composing is, the injudicious introduction of technical words and phrases."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 247. "These are the rules of grammar, by the observing of which, you may avoid mistakes."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 192; *Merchant's*, 93; *Fisk's*, 135; *Ingersoll's*, 198. "By the observing of the rules you may avoid mistakes."--*Alger's Gram.*, p. 65. "By the observing of these rules he succeeded."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 82. "Being praised was his ruin."--*Ibid.* "Deceiving is not convincing."--*Ibid.* "He never feared losing a friend."--*Ibid.* "Making books is his amusement."--*Alger's Gram.*, p. 65. "We call it declining a noun."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 22. "Washington, however, pursued the same policy of neutrality, and opposed firmly, taking any part in the wars of Europe."--*Hall and Baker's School Hist.*, p. 294. "The following is a note of Interrogation, or asking a question (?)."--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 132. "The following is a note of Admiration, or expressing wonder (!)."--*Ib.* "Omitting or using the article *a* forms a nice distinction in the sense."--*Murray's Gram.*, ii, 284. "Placing the preposition before the word it governs is more graceful."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 150. "Assistance is absolutely necessary to their recovery, and retrieving their affairs."--*Butler's Analogy*, p. 197. "Which termination, [*ish*,] when added to adjectives, imports diminution, or lessening the quality."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 131; *Kirkham's*, 172. "After what is said, will it be thought refining too much to suggest, that the different orders are qualified for different purposes?"--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 114. "Who has nothing to think of but killing time."--*West's Letters*, p. 58. "It requires no nicety of ear, as in the distinguishing of tones, or measuring time."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 65. "The *Possessive Case* denotes possession, or belonging to."--*Hall's Gram.*, p. 7.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"Garcilasso was master of the language spoke by the Incas."--*Robertson's Amer.*, ii, 459. "When an interesting story is broke off in the middle."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 244. "Speaking of Hannibal's elephants drove back by the enemy."--*Ib.*, ii, 32. "If Du Ryer had not wrote for bread, he would have equalled them."--*Formey's Belles-Lettres*, p. 166. "Pope describes a rock broke off from a mountain, and hurling to the plain."--*Kames*, ii, 106. "I have wrote *or* have written, Thou hast wrote *or* hast written. He hath *or* has wrote, *or* hath *or* has written;" &c.--*Dr. Ash's Gram.*, p. 47; *Maltby's*, 47. "This was spoke by a pagan."--*Webster's Improved Gram.*, p. 174. "But I have chose to follow the common arrangement."--*Ib.*, p. 10. "The language spoke in Bengal."--*Ib.*, p. 78. "And sound Sleep thus broke off, with suddain Alarms, is apt enough to discompose any one."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 32. "This is not only the Case of those Open Sinners, before spoke of."--*Right of Tythes*, p. 26. "Some Grammarians have wrote a very perplexed and difficult doctrine on Punctuation."--*Ensell's Gram.*, p. 340. "There hath a pity arose in me towards thee."--*Sewel's Hist., fol.*, p. 324. "Abel is the only man that has underwent the awful change of death."--*Juvenile Theatre*, p. 4.

"Meantime, on Afric's glowing sands, Smote with keen heat, the Trav'ler stands."--*Union Poems*, p. 88.

CHAPTER VIII.

--ADVERBS.

The syntax of an Adverb consists in its simple relation to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or whatever else it qualifies; just as the syntax of an English Adjective, (except in a few instances,) consists in its simple relation to a noun or a pronoun.

RULE XXI.--ADVERBS.

Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs: as, "Any passion that *habitually* discomposes our temper, or unfits us for *properly* discharging the duties of life, has *most certainly* gained a *very* dangerous ascendancy."--*Blair*.

"*How* bless'd this happy hour, should he appear, Dear to us all, to me *supremely* dear!"--*Pope's Homer*.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

The adverbs *yes*, *ay*, and *yea*, expressing a simple affirmation, and the adverbs *no* and *nay*, expressing a simple negation, are always independent. They generally answer a question, and are equivalent to a whole sentence. Is it clear, that they ought to be called adverbs? *No*. "Can honour set to a leg? *No*. Or an arm? *No*. Or take away the grief of a wound? *No*. Honour hath no skill in surgery then? *No*."--*SHAK.: First Part of Hen. IV*, Act v, 1.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

The word *amen*, which is commonly called an adverb, is often used independently at the beginning or end of a declaration or a prayer; and is itself a prayer, meaning, *So let it be*: as, "Surely, I come quickly. *Amen*: Even so, come Lord Jesus."--*Rev.*, xxii, 20. When it does not stand thus alone, it seems in general to be used substantively; as, "The strangers among them stood on Gerizim, and echoed *amen* to the blessings."--*Wood's Dict.* "These things saith the *Amen*."--*Rev.*, iii, 14

EXCEPTION THIRD.

An adverb before a preposition seems sometimes to relate to the latter, rather than to the verb or participle to which the preposition connects its object; as, "This mode of pronunciation runs *considerably beyond* ordinary discourse."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 334. "Yea, *all along* the times of the apostasy, this was the thing that preserved the witnesses."--*Penington's Works*, Vol. iv, p. 12. [See Obs. 8th on Rule 7th.]

"*Right against* the eastern gate, Where the great sun begins his state."--*Milton, L'Allegro*.

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

The words *much*, *little*, *far*, and *all*, being originally adjectives, are sometimes preceded by the negative *not*, or (except the last) by such an adverb as *too*, *how*, *thus*, *so*, or *as*, when they are taken substantively; as, "*Not all* that glitters, is gold."--"*Too much* should not be offered at once."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 140. "*Thus far* is consistent."--*Ib.*, p. 161. "*Thus far* is right."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 101.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XXI.

OBS. 1.--On this rule of syntax, Dr. Adam remarks, "Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify *substantives*;" and gives Latin examples of the following import: "Homer *plainly* an orator."--"*Truly* Metellus;"--"*To-morrow*

morning." But this doctrine is not well proved by such imperfect phrases, nor can it ever be very consistently admitted, because it destroys the characteristic difference between an adjective and an adverb. *To-morrow* is here an adjective; and as for *truly* and *plainly*, they are not such words as can make sense with nouns. I therefore imagine the phrases to be elliptical: "*Verè Metellus*," may mean, "*This is truly Metellus*;" and "*Homerus planè orator*," "*Homer was plainly an orator*." So, in the example, "*Behold an Israelite indeed*," the true construction seems to be, "*Behold, here is indeed an Israelite*;" for, in the Greek or Latin, the word *Israelite* is a nominative, thus: "*Ecce verè Israëlitæ*."--*Beza*; also *Montanus*. "[Greek: *Ide alæthos 'Israaelitæs*]."--*Greek Testament*. *Behold* appears to be here an interjection, like *Ecce*. If we make it a transitive verb, the reading should be, "*Behold a true Israelite*;" for the text does not mean, "*Behold indeed an Israelite*." At least, this is not the meaning in our version. W. H. Wells, citing as authorities for the doctrine, "*Bullions, Allen and Cornwell, Brace, Butler, and Webber*," has the following remark: "There are, however, certain forms of expression in which *adverbs* bear a special relation to *nouns* or *pronouns*; as, '*Behold I, even I, do bring a flood of waters*.'--*Gen. 6: 17*. '*For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power*.'--*1 Thes. 1: 5*."--*Wells's School Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 156; late Ed., 168. And again, in his *Punctuation*, we find this: "When, however, the intervening word is an *adverb*, the comma is more commonly omitted; as, '*It is labor only* which gives a relish to pleasure.'"--*Ib.*, p. 176. From all this, the doctrine receives no better support than from Adam's suggestion above considered. The word "*only*" is often an *adjective*, and wherever its "special relation" is to a noun or a pronoun, it can be nothing else. "*Even*," when it introduces a word repeated with emphasis, is a *conjunction*.

OBS. 2.--When participles become nouns, their adverbs are not unfrequently left standing with them in their original relation; as, "*For the fall and rising again of many in Israel*."--*Luke*, ii, 34. "*To denote the carrying forward of the action*."--*Barnard's Gram.*, p. 52. But in instances like these, the *hyphen* seems to be necessary. This mark would make the terms *rising-again* and *carrying-forward* compound nouns, and not participial nouns with adverbs relating to them.

"There is no *flying hence*, nor *tarrying here*."--*Shak., Macbeth*.

"What! in ill thoughts again? men must endure Their *going hence*, ev'n as their *coming hither*."--*Id.*

OBS. 3.--Whenever any of those words which are commonly used adverbially, are made to relate directly to nouns or pronouns, they must be reckoned *adjectives*, and parsed by Rule 9th. Examples: "*The above verbs*."--*Dr. Adam*. "*To the above remarks*."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 318. "*The above instance*."--*Ib.*, p. 442. "*After the above partial illustration*."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Lang.*, ii, 62. "*The above explanation*."--*Cobbett's Gram.*, ¶ 22. "*For very age*."--*Zech.*, viii, 4. "*From its very greatness*."--*Phil. Museum*, i, 431. "*In his then situation*."--*Johnson's Life of Goldsmith*. "*This was the then state of Popery*."--*Id., Life of Dryden*, p. 185. "*The servant becomes the master of his once master*."--*Shillitoe*. "*Time when* is put in the ablative, time how long is put in the accusative."--*Adam's Lat. Gram.*, p. 201; *Gould's*, 198. "*Nouns signifying the time when or how long, may be put in the objective case without a preposition*."--*Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.*, p. 24. "*I hear the far-off curfew sound*."--*Milton*. "*Far on the thither side*."--*Book of Thoughts*, p. 58. "*My hither way*."--"*Since my here remain in England*."--*Shak.* "*But short and seldom truce*."--*Fell*. "*An exceeding knave*."--*Pope*. "*According to my sometime promise*."--*Zenobia*, i, 176. "*Thine often infirmities*."--*Bible*. "*A far country*."--*Ib.* "*No wine*,"--"*No new thing*,"--"*No greater joy*."--*Ib.* "*Nothing else*."--*Blair*. "*Tomorrow noon*."--*Scott*. "*Calamity enough*."--*Tr. Sallust*. "*For thou only art holy*."--*Rev.*, xv, 4.

OBS. 4.--It is not my design to justify any uncouth substitution of adverbs for adjectives; nor do I affirm that all the foregoing examples are indisputably good English, though most of them are so; but merely, that the words, when they are thus used, are *adjectives*, and not adverbs. Lindley Murray, and his copyists, strongly condemn some of these expressions, and, by implication, most or all of them; but both he and they, as well as others, have repeatedly employed at least one of the very models they censure. They are too severe on all those which they specify. Their objections stand thus; "*Such expressions* as the following, though not destitute of authority, are *very inelegant*, and do not suit the idiom of our language; 'The then ministry,' for, 'the

ministry of that time;' 'The *above* discourse,' for, 'the preceding discourse.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 198; *Crombie's*, 294; *Ingersoll's*, 206. "The following phrases are also exceptionable: 'The *then* ministry;' 'The *above* argument.'"--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 190. "Adverbs used as adjectives, as, 'The *above* statement;' 'The *then* administration;' should be avoided."--*Barnard's Gram.*, p. 285. "When and *then* must not be used for nouns and pronouns; thus, 'Since *when*,' 'since *then*,' 'the *then* ministry,' ought to be, 'Since *which time*,' 'since *that time*,' 'the ministry of *that period*.'"--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 96. Dr. Priestley, from whom Murray derived many of his critical remarks, noticed these expressions; and, (as I suppose,) *approvingly*; thus, "Adverbs are often put for adjectives, agreeably to the idiom of the Greek tongue: [as,] 'The action was *amiss*.'"--'The *then* ministry.'--'The idea is *alike* in both.'--Addison. 'The *above* discourse.'--Harris."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 135. Dr. Johnson, as may be seen above, thought it not *amiss* to use *then* as Priestley here cites it; and for such a use of *above*, we may quote the objectors themselves: "To support the *above* construction."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, p. 149; *Ingersoll's*, p. 238. "In all the *above* instances."--*Mur.*, p. 202; *Ing.*, 230. "To the *above* rule."--*Mur.*, p. 270; *Ing.*, 283. "The same as the *above*."--*Mur.*, p. 66; *Ing.*, 46. "In such instances as the *above*."--*Mur.*, p. 24; *Ing.*, 9; *Kirkham*, 23.[427]

OBS. 5.--When words of an adverbial character are used after the manner of *nouns*, they must be parsed as nouns, and not as adverbs; as, "The Son of God--was not *yea* and *nay*, but in him was *yea*."--*Bible*. "For a great *while* to come."--*Ib.* "On this *perhaps*, this *peradventure* infamous for lies."--*Young*. "From the extremest *upward* of thine head."--*Shak.* "There are *upwards* of fifteen millions of inhabitants."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 266. "Information has been derived from *upwards* of two hundred volumes."--*Worcester's Hist.*, p. v. "An eternal *now* does always last"--*Cowley*. "Discourse requires an animated *no*."--*Cowper*. "Their hearts no proud *hereafter* swelled."--*Sprague*. An adverb after a preposition is used substantively, and governed by the preposition; though perhaps it is not necessary to call it a common noun: as, "For *upwards* of thirteen years."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. xvi. "That thou mayst curse me them *from thence*."--*Numb.*, xxiii, 27. "Yet for *once* we'll try."--*Dr. Franklin*. But many take such terms together, calling them "*adverbial phrases*." Allen says, "Two adverbs sometimes come together; as, 'Thou hast kept the good wine *until now*.'"--*Gram.*, p. 174. But *until* is here more properly a preposition, governing *now*.

OBS. 6.--It is plain, that when words of an adverbial form are used either adjectively or substantively, they cannot be parsed by the foregoing rule, or explained as having the ordinary relation of *adverbs*; and if the unusual relation or character which they thus assume, be not thought sufficient to fix them in the rank of adjectives or nouns, the parser may describe them as adverbs used adjectively, or substantively, and apply the rule which their assumed construction requires. But let it be remembered, that adverbs, as such, neither relate to nouns, nor assume the nature of cases: but express the time, place, degree, or manner, of actions or qualities. In some instances in which their construction may seem not to be reconcilable with the common rule, there may be supposed an ellipsis of a verb or a participle:[428] as, "From Monday to Saturday *inclusively*."--*Webster's Dict.* Here, the Doctor ought to have used a comma after *Saturday*; for the adverb relates, not to that noun, but to the word *reckoned*, understood. "It was well said by Roscommon, '*too faithfully is pedantically*.'"--*Com. Sch. Journal*, i, 167. This saying I suppose to mean, "*To do a thing too faithfully*, is, *to do it pedantically*." "And, [*I say*] *truly*, if they had been mindful of that country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned."--*Heb.*, xi, 15.

OBS 7.--To abbreviate expressions, and give them vivacity, verbs of self-motion (such as *go*, *come*, *rise*, *get*, &c.) are sometimes suppressed, being suggested to the mind by an emphatic adverb, which seems to be put *for the verb*, but does in fact relate to it understood; as,

"I'll *hence* to London, on a serious matter."--*Shak.* Supply "*go*."

"I'll *in*. I'll *in*. Follow your friend's counsel. I'll *in*."--*Id.* Supply "*get*."

"Away, old man; give me thy hand; *away*."--*Id.* Supply "*come*."

"Love hath wings, and will *away*"--*Waller*. Supply "*fly*."

"*Up, up*, Glentarkin! rouse thee, ho!"--*Scott*. Supply "*spring*."

"Henry the Fifth is crowned; *up*, vanity!" Supply "*stand*."

"*Down*, royal state! all you sage counsellors, *hence*!"--*Shak*. Supply "*fall*," and "*get you*."

"But *up*, and enter now into full bliss."--*Milton*. Supply "*rise*."

OBS. 8.--We have, on some occasions, a singular way of expressing a transitive action imperatively, or emphatically, by adding the preposition *with* to an adverb of direction; as, *up with it*, *down with it*, *in with it*, *out with it*, *over with it*, *away with it*, and the like; in which construction, the adverb seems to be used elliptically as above, though the insertion of the verb would totally enervate or greatly alter the expression. Examples: "She *up with* her fist, and took him on the face."--*Sydney*, in *Joh. Dictionary*. "Away with him!"--*Acts*, xxi, 36. "Away with such a fellow from the earth."--*Ib.*, xxii, 22. "The calling of assemblies I cannot *away with*"--*Isaiah*, i, 13. "*Hence with* denial vain, and coy excuse."--*Milton's Comus*. Ingersoll says, "Sometimes a whole phrase is used as an interjection, and we call such *interjectional phrases*: as, *out upon him!*--*away with him!*--*Alas, what wonder!* &c."--*Conversations on Gram.*, p. 79. This method of lumping together several different parts of speech under the notion of one, and calling the whole an "*adverbial phrase*," a "*substantive phrase*," or an "*interjectional phrase*," is but a forced put, by which some grammarians would dodge certain difficulties which they know not how to meet. It is directly repugnant to the idea of *parsing*; for the parser ever deals with the parts of speech as such, and not with whole phrases in the lump. The foregoing adverbs when used imperatively, have some resemblance to interjections; but, in some of the examples above cited, they certainly are not used in this manner.

OBS. 9.--A *conjunctive adverb* usually relates to two verbs at the same time, and thus connects two clauses of a compound sentence; as, "And the rest will I set in order *when* I come,"--*1 Cor.*, xi, 34. Here *when* is a conjunctive adverb of time, and relates to the two verbs *will set* and *come*; the meaning being, "And the rest will I set in order *at the time at which* I come." This adverb *when* is often used erroneously in lieu of a nominative after *is*, to which construction of the word, such an interpretation as the foregoing would not be applicable; because the person means to tell, not *when*, but *what*, the thing is, of which he speaks: as, "Another cause of obscurity is *when* the structure of the sentence is too much complicated, or too artificial; or *when* the sense is too long suspended by parentheses."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 246. Here the conjunction *that* would be much better than *when*, but the sentence might advantageously spare them both; thus, "An other cause of obscurity is too much *complication*, too artificial *a structure* of the sentence, or too long *a suspension* of the sense by *parenthesis*."

OBS. 10.--For the *placing* of adverbs, no definite general rule can be given; yet is there no other part of speech so liable to be misplaced. Those which relate to adjectives, or to other adverbs, with very few exceptions, immediately precede them; and those which belong to compound verbs, are commonly placed after the first auxiliary; or, if they be emphatical, after the whole verb. Those which relate to simple verbs, or to simple participles, are placed sometimes before and sometimes after them. Examples are so very common, I shall cite but one: "A man may, in respect to grammatical purity, speak *unexceptionably*, and yet speak *obscurely*, or *ambiguously*; and though we cannot say, that a man may speak *properly*, and at the same time speak *unintelligibly*, yet this last case falls *more naturally* to be considered as an offence against perspicuity, than as a violation of propriety."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 239.

OBS. 11.--Of the infinitive verb and its preposition *to*, some grammarians say, that they must never be separated by an adverb. It is true, that the adverb is, in general, more elegantly placed before the preposition than after it; but, possibly, the latter position of it may sometimes contribute to perspicuity, which is more essential than elegance: as, "If any man refuse *so to implore*, and *to so receive* pardon, let him die the

death."--*Fuller, on the Gospel*, p. 209. The latter word *so*, if placed like the former, might possibly be understood in a different sense from what it now bears. But perhaps it would be better to say. "If any man refuse so to implore, and *on such terms* to receive pardon, let him die the death." "Honour teaches us *properly* to respect ourselves."--*Murray's Key*, ii, 252. Here it is not quite clear, to which verb the adverb "*properly*" relates. Some change of the expression is therefore needful. The right to place an adverb sometimes between *to* and its verb, should, I think, be conceded to the poets: as,

"Who dared *to nobly stem* tyrannic pride."--BURNS: *C. Sat. N.*

OBS. 12.--The adverb *no* is used independently, only when it is equivalent to a whole sentence. This word is sometimes an adverb of *degree*; and as such it has this peculiarity, that it can relate only to comparatives: as, "*No more*,"--"*No better*,"--"*No greater*,"--"*No sooner*." When *no* is set before a noun, it is clearly an *adjective*, corresponding to the Latin *nullus*; as, "*No clouds, no vapours intervene*."--*Dyer*. Dr. Johnson, with no great accuracy, remarks, "It seems an *adjective* in these phrases, *no longer, no more, no where*; though sometimes it may be so commodiously changed to *not*, that it seems an adverb; as, 'The days are yet *no* shorter.'"--*Quarto Dict.* And his first example of what he calls the "*adverb NO*" is this: "'Our courteous Antony, Whom ne'er the word of *no* woman heard speak.' SHAKESPEARE."--*Ibid.* Dr. Webster says, "When it precedes *where*, as in *no where*, it may be considered as adverbial, though originally an adjective."--*Octavo Dict.* The truth is, that *no* is an adverb, whenever it relates to an adjective; an adjective, whenever it relates to a noun; and a noun, whenever it takes the relation of a case. Thus, in what Johnson cites from Shakspeare, it is a noun, and not an adverb; for the meaning is, that a woman never heard Antony speak the word of *no*--that is, of *negation*. And there ought to be a comma after this word, to make the text intelligible. To read it thus: "*the word of no woman*," makes *no* an adjective. So, to say, "There are *no abler critics* than these," is a very different thing from saying, "There are *critics no abler* than these;" because *no* is an adjective in the former sentence, and an adverb in the latter. *Somewhere, nowhere, anywhere, else-where*, and *everywhere*, are adverbs of place, each of which is composed of the noun *where* and an *adjective*; and it is absurd to write a part of them as compound words, and the rest as phrases, as many authors do.

OBS. 13.--In some languages, the more negatives one crowds into a sentence, the stronger is the negation; and this appears to have been formerly the case in English, or in what was anciently the language of Britain: as, "He *never* yet *no* vilanie *ne* sayde in alle his lif unto *no* manere wight."--*Chaucer*. "*Ne I ne wol non* reherce, yef that I may."--*Id.* "Give *not* me counsel; *nor* let *no* comforter delight mine ear."--*Shakspeare*. "She *cannot* love, *nor* take *no* shape *nor* project of affection."--*Id.* Among people of education, this manner of expression has now become wholly obsolete; though it still prevails, to some extent, in the conversation of the vulgar. It is to be observed, however, that the *repetition* of an independent negative word or clause yet strengthens the negation; as, "*No, no, no*."--"*No, never*."--"*No, not for an hour*."--*Gal.*, ii, 5. "There is *none* righteous, *no, not* one."--*Rom.*, iii, 10. But two negatives in the same clause, if they have any bearing on each other, destroy the negation, and render the meaning weakly affirmative; as, "*Nor* did they *not* perceive their evil plight."--*Milton*. That is, they *did* perceive it. "His language, though inelegant, is *not ungrammatical*;" that is, it is grammatical."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 198. The term *not only*, or *not merely*, being a correspondent to *but* or *but also*, may be followed by an other negative without this effect, because the two negative words have no immediate bearing on each other; as, "Your brother is *not only not* present, and *not* assisting in prosecuting your injuries, *but* is now actually with Verres."--*Duncan's Cicero*, p. 19. "In the latter we have *not merely nothing*, to denote what the point should be; *but no* indication, that any point at all is wanting."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 373. So the word *nothing*, when taken positively for nonentity, or that which does not exist, may be followed by an other negative; as,

"First, seat him somewhere, and derive his race, Or else conclude that *nothing* has *no* place."--*Dryden*, p. 95.

OBS. 14.--The common rule of our grammars, "Two negatives, in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative," is far from being *true* of all possible examples. A sort of informal exception to it, (which is mostly confined to conversation,) is made by a familiar transfer of the word *neither* from the

beginning of the clause to the end of it; as, "But here is *no* notice taken of that *neither*"--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 336. That is, "But *neither* is *any* notice here taken of that." Indeed a negation may be repeated, by the same word or others, as often as we please, if no two of the terms in particular contradict each other; as, "He will *never* consent, *not* he, *no*, *never*, *nor* I *neither*." "He will *not* have time, *no*, *nor* capacity *neither*."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 103. "Many terms and idioms may be common, which, nevertheless, have *not* the general sanction, *no*, *nor* even the sanction of those that use them."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 160; *Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 358. And as to the equivalence spoken of in the same rule, such an expression as, "He did *not* say *nothing*," is in fact only a vulgar solecism, take it as you will; whether for, "He did *not* say *anything*," or for, "He *did* say *something*." The latter indeed is what the contradiction amounts to; but double negatives must be shunned, whenever they *seem* like blunders. The following examples have, for this reason, been thought objectionable; though Allen says, "Two negatives destroy each other, or *elegantly* form an affirmation."--*Gram.*, p. 174.

-----"Nor knew I *not* To be both will and deed created free." --*Milton, P. L.*, B. v., l. 548.

"Nor doth the moon *no* nourishment exhale From her moist continent to higher orbs." --*Ib.*, B. v, l. 421.

OBS. 15.--Under the head of *double negatives*, there appears in our grammars a dispute of some importance, concerning the adoption of *or* or *nor*, when any other negative than *neither* or *nor* occurs in the preceding clause or phrase: as, "We will *not* serve thy gods, *nor* worship the golden image."--*Dan.*, iii., 18. "Ye have *no* portion, *nor* right, *nor* memorial in Jerusalem."--*Neh.*, ii, 20. "There is *no* painsworthy difficulty *nor* dispute about them."--*Horne Tooke, Div.*, Vol. i, p. 43. "So as *not* to cloud that principal object, *nor* to bury it."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 115; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 322. "He did *not* mention Leonora, *nor* her father's death."--*Murray's Key*, p. 264. "Thou canst *not* tell whence it cometh, *nor* whither it goeth."--*Ib.*, p. 215. The form of this text, in John iii, 8th. is--"But canst not tell whence it cometh, *and* whither it goeth;" which Murray inserted in his exercises as bad English. I do not see that the copulative *and* is here ungrammatical; but if we prefer a disjunctive, ought it not to be *or* rather than *nor*? It appears to be the opinion of some, that in all these examples, and in similar instances innumerable, *nor* only is proper. Others suppose, that *or* only is justifiable; and others again, that either *or* or *nor* is perfectly correct. Thus grammar, or what should be grammar, differs in the hands of different men! The principle to be settled here, must determine the correctness or incorrectness of a vast number of very common expressions. I imagine that none of these opinions is warrantable, if taken in all that extent to which each of them has been, or may be, carried.

OBS. 16.--It was observed by Priestley, and after him by Lindley Murray, from whom others again have copied the remark: "Sometimes the particles *or* and *nor*, may, either of them, be used with nearly equal propriety; [as.] 'The king, whose character was not sufficiently vigorous, *nor* decisive, assented to the measure.'--*Hume*. *Or* would perhaps have been better, but *nor* seems to repeat the negation in the former part of the sentence, and therefore gives more emphasis to the expression."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 138; *Murray's*, i, 212; *Ingersoll's*, 268; *R. C. Smith's*, 177. The conjunction *or* might doubtless have been used in this sentence, but *not with the same meaning* that is now conveyed; for, if that connective had been employed, the adjective *decisive* would have been qualified by the adverb *sufficiently*, and would have seemed only an alternative for the former epithet, *vigorous*. As the text now stands, it not only implies a distinction between vigour of character and decision of character, but denies the latter to the king absolutely, the former, with qualification. If the author had meant to suggest such a distinction, and also to qualify his denial of both, he ought to have said--"not sufficiently vigorous, *nor sufficiently* decisive." With this meaning, however, he might have used *neither* for *not*; or with the former, he might have used *or* for *nor*, had he transposed the terms--"was not decisive, *or sufficiently* vigorous."

OBS. 17.--In the tenth edition of John Burn's Practical Grammar, published at Glasgow, in 1810, are the following suggestions: "It is not uncommon to find the conjunctions *or* and *nor* used indiscriminately; but if there be any real distinction in the proper application of them, it is to be wished that it were settled. It is attempted thus:--Let the conjunction *or* be used simply to connect the members of a sentence, or to mark

distribution, opposition, or choice, without any preceding negative particle; and *nor* to mark the subsequent part of a negative sentence, with some negative particle in the preceding part of it. Examples of OR: 'Recreation of one kind *or* other is absolutely necessary to relieve the body *or* mind from too constant attention to labour or study.'--'After this life, succeeds a state of rewards *or* punishments.'--'Shall I come to you with a rod, *or* in love?' Examples of NOR: 'Let no man be too confident, *nor* too diffident of his own abilities.'--'Never calumniate any man, *nor* give the least encouragement to calumniators.'--'There is *not* a Christian duty to which providence has not annexed a blessing, *nor* any affliction for which a remedy is not provided.' If the above distinction be just, the following passage seems to be faulty:

'Seasons return, but *not* to me returns Day, *or* the sweet approach of ev'n *or* morn, *Or* sight of vernal bloom, *or* summer's rose, *Or* flocks, *or* herds, *or* human face divine.' *Milton, P. L.*, B. iii, l. 40.--"*Burn's Gr.*, p. 108.

OBS. 18.--T. O. Churchill, whose *Grammar* first appeared in London in 1823, treats this matter thus: "As *or* answers to *either*, *nor*, a compound of *not or* [*ne or*] by contraction, answers to *neither*, a similar compound of *not either* [*ne either*]. The latter however does not constitute that double use of the negative, in which one, agreeably to the principles of philosophical grammar, destroys the other; for a part of the first word, *neither*, cannot be understood before the second, *nor*: and for the same reason a part of it could not be understood before *or*, which is sometimes improperly used in the second clause; while the whole of it, *neither*, would be obviously improper before *or*. On the other hand, when *not* is used in the first clause, *nor* is improper in the second; since it would involve the impropriety of understanding *not* before a compound of *not* [*or ne*] with *or*. 'I shall *not* attempt to convince, *nor* to persuade you.'--'What will you *not* attempt?'--'To convince, *nor* to persuade you.' The impropriety of *nor* in this answer is clear: but the answer should certainly repeat the words not heard, or not understood."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 330.

OBS. 19.--"It is probable, that the use of *nor* after *not* has been introduced, in consequence of such improprieties as the following: 'The injustice of inflicting death for crimes, when *not* of the most heinous nature, *or* attended with extenuating circumstances.' Here it is obviously not the intention of the writer, to understand the negative in the last clause: and, if this were good English, it would be not merely allowable to employ *nor* after *not*, to show the subsequent clause to be negative as well as the preceding, but it would always be necessary. In fact, however, the sentence quoted is faulty, in not repeating the adverb *when* in the last clause; 'or *when* attended:' which would preclude the negative from being understood in it; for, if an adverb, conjunction, or auxiliary verb, preceding a negative, be understood in the succeeding clause, the negative is understood also; if it be repeated, the negative must be repeated likewise, or the clause becomes affirmative."--*Ib.*, p. 330.

OBS. 20.--This author, proceeding with his remarks, suggests forms of correction for several other common modes of expression, which he conceives to be erroneous. For the information of the student, I shall briefly notice a little further the chief points of his criticism, though he teaches some principles which I have not thought it necessary always to observe in writing. "'And seemed *not* to understand ceremony, *or* to despise it.' *Goldsmith*. Here *either* ought to be inserted before *not*. 'It is *not* the business of virtue, to extirpate the affections of the mind, but to regulate them.' *Addison*. The sentence ought to have been: 'It is the business of virtue, *not* to extirpate the affections of the mind, but to regulate them.' 'I do *not* think, that he was averse to the office; *nor* do I believe, that it was unsuited to him.' How much better to say: 'I do not think, that he was averse to the office, *or* that it was unsuited to him!' For the same reason *nor* cannot follow *never*, the negative in the first clause affecting all the rest."--*Ib.* p. 332. "*Nor* is sometimes used improperly after *no*: [as,] 'I humbly however trust in God, that I have hazarded *no* conjecture, *nor* have given any explanation of obscure points, inconsistent with the general sense of Scripture, which must be our guide in all dubious passages.' *Gilpin*. It ought to be: 'and have given *no* explanation;' or, 'I have *neither* hazarded any conjecture, *nor* given any explanation.' The use of *or* after *neither* is as common, as that of *nor* after *no* or *not*. [429] '*Neither* the pencil *or* poetry are adequate.' *Coxe*. Properly, '*Neither* the pencil *nor* poetry *is* adequate.' 'The vow of poverty *allowed* the Jesuits individually, to have *no* idea of wealth.' *Dornford*. We cannot *allow* a *nonentity*. It should be: 'did *not* allow, to have *any* idea.'"--*Ib.*, p. 333.

OBS. 21.--Thus we see that Churchill wholly and positively condemns *nor* after *not*, *no*, or *never*; while Burn totally disapproves of *or*, under the same circumstances. Both of these critics are wrong, because each carries his point too far; and yet it may not be right, to suppose both particles to be often equally good. Undoubtedly, a negation may be repeated in English without impropriety, and that in several different ways: as, "There is no living, *none*, if Bertram be away."--*Beauties of Shak.*, p. 3. "Great men are *not* always wise, *neither* do the aged [always] understand judgement."--*Job*, xxxii, 9. "Will he esteem thy riches? *no*, *not* gold, *nor* all the forces of strength."--*Job*, xxxiv, 19. Some sentences, too, require *or*, and others *nor*, even when a negative occurs in a preceding clause; as, "There was *none* of you that convinced Job, *or* that answered his words."--*Job*, xxxii, 12. "How much less to him that accepteth *not* the persons of princes *nor* regardeth the rich more than the poor."--*Job*, xxxiv, 19. "This day is holy unto the Lord your God; mourn *not*, *nor* weep."--*Neh.*, viii, 9. "Men's behaviour should be like their apparel, *not* too straight *or* point-de-vise, but free for exercise."--*Ld. Bacon*. Again, the mere repetition of a simple negative is, on some occasions, more agreeable than the insertion of any connective; as, "There is *no* darkness, *nor* shadow of death, where the workers of iniquity may hide themselves."--*Job*, xxxiv, 22. Better: "There is *no* darkness, *no* shadow of death, *wherein* the workers of iniquity may hide themselves." "No place *nor* any object appears to him void of beauty."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 255. Better: "No place, *no* object, appears to him void of beauty." That passage from Milton which Burn supposes to be faulty, and that expression of Addison's which Churchill dislikes, are, in my opinion, not incorrect as they stand; though, doubtless, the latter admits of the variation proposed. In the former, too, *or* may twice be changed to *nor*, where the following nouns are nominatives; but to change it throughout, would not be well, because the other nouns are objectives governed by *of*:

"Seasons return, but *not* to me returns Day, *nor* the sweet approach of ev'n *or* morn, *Nor* sight of vernal bloom, *or* summer's rose, *Or* flocks, *or* herds, *or* human face divine."

OBS. 22.--*Ever* and *never* are directly opposite to each other in sense, and yet they are very frequently confounded and misapplied, and that by highly respectable writers; as, "Seldom, or *never* can we expect," &c.--*Blair's Lectures*, p. 305. "And seldom, or *ever*, did any one rise, &c."--*Ib.*, p. 272. "Seldom, or *never*, is[430] there more than one accented syllable in any English word."--*Ib.*, p. 329. "Which that of the present seldom or *ever* is understood to be."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Lang.*, Vol. ii, p. 120. Here *never* is right, and *ever* is wrong. It is *time*, that is here spoken of; and the affirmative *ever*, meaning *always*, or *at any time*, in stead of being a fit alternative for *seldom*, makes nonsense of the sentence, and violates the rule respecting the order and fitness of time: unless we change *or* to *if*, and say, "seldom, *if ever*." But in sentences like the following, the adverb appears to express, not time, but *degree*; and for the latter sense *ever* is preferable to *never*, because the degree ought to be possible, rather than impossible: "*Ever so* little of the spirit of martyrdom is always a more favourable indication to civilization, than *ever so* much dexterity of party management, or *ever so* turbulent protestation of immaculate patriotism."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 411. "Now let man reflect but *never so* little on himself."--*Burlamaqui, on Law*, p. 29. "Which will *not* hearken to the voice of charmers, charming *never so* wisely."--*Ps.*, lviii, 5. The phrase *ever so*, (which ought, I think, to be written as *one word*,) is now a very common expression to signify *in whatsoever degree*; as, "*evers*o little,"--"*evers*o much,"--"*evers*o wise,"--"*evers*o wisely." And it is manifestly this, and not time, that is intended by the false phraseology above;--"a form of speech handed down by the best writers, but lately accused, I think with justice, of solecism. * * * It can only be defended by supplying a very harsh and unprecedented ellipsis."--*Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Never*.

OBS. 23.--Dr. Lowth seconds this opinion of Johnson, respecting the phrase, "*never so wisely*," and says, "It should be, '*ever so wisely*;' that is, '*how wisely soever*.'" To which he adds an other example somewhat different: "'Besides, a slave would *not* have been admitted into that society, had he had *never such* opportunities.' Bentley."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 109. This should be, "had he had *evers*o excellent opportunities." But Churchill, mistaking the common explanation of the meaning of *evers*o for the manner of parsing or resolving it, questions the propriety of the term, and thinks it easier to defend the old phrase *never so*; in which he supposes *never* to be an adverb of time, and not to relate to *so*, which is an adverb of degree; saying, "'Be it *never so* true,' is resolvable into, 'Be it so true, *as never any thing was*.' [431] 'I have had *never so* much

trouble on this occasion,' may be resolved into, 'I have never had so much trouble, as on this occasion:' while, 'I have had *ever* so much trouble on this occasion, cannot be resolved, without supplying some very harsh and unprecedented ellipsis indeed.'--*New Gram.*, p. 337, Why not? I see no occasion at all for supposing any ellipsis. *Ever* is here an adverb of degree, and relates to *so*; or, if we take *eversò* as one word, this too is an adverb of degree, and relates to *much*: because the meaning is--"*eversò much* trouble." But the other phraseology, even as it stands in Churchill's explanations, is a solecism still; nor can any resolution which supposes *never* to be here an adverb of time, be otherwise. We cannot call that a grammatical resolution, which makes a different sense from that which the writer intended: as, "A slave would not have been admitted into that society, had he *never* had such opportunities." This would be Churchill's interpretation, but it is very unlike what Bentley says above. So, 'I have *never had so much* trouble,' and, 'I have had *eversò much* trouble,' are very different assertions.

OBS. 24.--On the word *never*, Dr. Johnson remarks thus: "It seems in some phrases to have the sense of an adjective, [meaning,] *not any*; but in reality it is *not ever*: [as,] 'He answered him to *never* a word.' MATTHEW, xxvii, 14."--*Quarto Dict.* This mode of expression was formerly very common, and a contracted form of it is still frequently heard among the vulgar: as, "Because he'd *ne'er* an other tub."--*Hudibras*, p. 102. That is, "Because he had *no* other tub." "Letter nor line know I *never* a one."--*Scott's Lay of L. M.*, p. 27. This is what the common people pronounce "*ne'er a one*," and use in stead of *neither* or *no one*. In like manner they contract *ever a one* into "*e'er a one*;" by which they mean *either* or *any one*. These phrases are the same that somebody--(I believe it is *Smith*, in his *Inductive Grammar*--) has ignorantly written "*ary one*" and "*nary one*" calling them vulgarisms.[432] Under this mode of spelling, the critic had an undoubted right to think the terms unauthorized! In the compounds of *whoever* or *whoe'er*, *whichever* or *whiche'er*, *whatever* or *whate'er*, the word *ever* or *e'er*, which formerly stood separate, appears to be an adjective, rather than an adverb; though, by becoming part of the pronoun, it has now technically ceased to be either.

OBS. 25.--The same may be said of *soever* or *soe'er*, which is considered as only a part of an other word even when it is written separately; as, "On *which* side *soever* I cast my eyes." In Mark, iii, 28th, *wherewithsoever* is commonly printed as two words; but Alger, in his *Pronouncing Bible*, more properly makes it one. Dr. Webster, in his grammars, calls *soever* a WORD; but, in his dictionaries, he does not *define* it as such. "The word *soever* may be interposed between the attribute and the name; 'how clear *soever* this idea of infinity,'--'how remote *soever* it may seem.'--LOCKE."--*Webster's Philosophical Gram.*, p. 154; *Improved Gram.*, p. 107. "SOEVER, *so* and *ever*, found in compounds, as in *whosoever*, *whatsoever*, *wheresoever*. See these words."--*Webster's Dict.*, 8vo.

OBS. 26.--The word *only*, (i.e., *onely*, or *onelike*.) when it relates to a noun or a pronoun, is a definitive adjective, meaning *single*, *alone*, *exclusive of others*; as, "The *only* man,"--"The *only* men,"--"Man *only*,"--"Men *only*,"--"He *only*,"--"They *only*." When it relates to a verb or a participle, it is an adverb of manner, and means *simply*, *singly*, *merely*, *barely*; as, "We fancy that we hate flattery, when we *only* hate the manner of it."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 38. "A disinterested love of one's country can *only* subsist in small republics."--*Ib.*, p. 56. When it stands at the head of a clause, it is commonly a connective word, equivalent to *but*, or *except that*; in which sense, it must be called a conjunction, or at least a conjunctive adverb, which is nearly the same thing; as, "*Only* they would that we should remember the poor."--*Gal.*, ii, 10. "For these signs are prepositions, *only* they are of more constant use than the rest."--*Ward's Gram.*, p. 129.

OBS. 27.--Among our grammarians, the word "*only*" often passes for an adverb, when it is in fact an adjective. Such a mistake in this single word, has led Churchill to say of the adverb in general, "*It's* place is for the most part before adjectives, *after* nouns, and *after* verbs;" &c.--*New Gram.*, p. 147. But, properly, the placing of adverbs has nothing to do with "nouns," because adverbs do not relate to nouns. In this author's example, "His *arm only* was bare," there is no adverb; and, where he afterwards speaks of the latitude allowable in the placing of adverbs, alleging, "It is indifferent whether we say, 'He bared his *arm only*;' or, 'He bared *only* his arm,'" the word *only* is an adjective, in one instance, if not in both. With this writer, and some others, the syntax of an adverb centres mainly in the suggestion, that, "*It's* propriety and force depend on *it's*

position."--*Ib.*, p. 147. Illustration: "Thus people commonly say; 'I *only* spoke three words;' which properly implies, that *I*, and *no other person*, spoke three words: when the intention of the speaker requires: 'I spoke *only three* words; that is, *no more than three* words.'"--*Ib.*, p. 327. One might just as well say, "I spoke three words *only*." But the interpretation above is hypercritical, and contrary to that which the author himself gives in his note on the other example, thus: "Any other situation of the adverb would make a difference. 'He *only* bared his arm;' would imply, that he did *nothing more than* bare his arm. '*Only* he bared his arm;' must refer to a preceding part of the sentence, stating something, to which the act of baring his arm was an exception; as, 'He did it in the same manner, *only* he bared his arm.' If *only* were placed immediately before *arm*; as, '*He* bared his *only arm*;' it would be an adjective, and signify, that he had but one arm.'"--*Ib.*, p. 328. Now are not, "*I only spoke three words*," and, "*He only bared his arm*," analogous expressions? Is not the former as good English as the latter? *Only*, in both, is most naturally conceived to belong to the verb; but either may be read in such a manner as to make it an adjective belonging to the pronoun.

OBS. 28.--The term *not but* is equivalent to two negatives that make an affirmative; as, "*Not but* that it is a wide place."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 89. "*Non quo non* latus locus sit."--*Cic. Ac.*, iv, 12. It has already been stated, that *cannot but* is equal to *must*; as, "It is an affection which *cannot but* be productive of some distress."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 461. It seems questionable, whether *but* is not here an adverb, rather than a conjunction. However this may be, by the customary (but faulty) omission of the negative before *but*, in some other sentences, that conjunction has acquired the adverbial sense of *only*; and it may, when used with that signification, be called an *adverb*. Thus, the text, "He hath *not* grieved me *but* in part." (2 *Cor.*, ii, 5,) might drop the negative *not*, and still convey the same meaning: "He hath grieved me *but* in part;" i.e., "*only* in part." In the following examples, too, *but* appears to be an adverb, like *only*: "Things *but* slightly connected should not be crowded into one sentence."--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, *Index*. "The assertion, however, serves *but* to show their ignorance."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 96.

"Reason itself *but* gives it edge and power."--*Pope*.

"Born *but* to die, and reasoning *but* to err."--*Id.*

OBS. 29.--In some constructions of the word *but*, there is a remarkable ambiguity; as

st contemptible person whom we behold, is the offspring of heaven, one of the children of the Most High."--*Scougal*, p. 102. "He shall sit next to Darius, because of his wisdom, and shall be called Darius his cousin."--*1 Esdras*, iii, 7. "In 1757, he published his 'Fleece;' but he did not long survive it."--*L. Murray, Seq.*, p. 252.

"The sun upon the calmest sea Appears not half so bright as thee."--*Prior*.

EXERCISE V.--VERBS.

"The want of connexion here, as well as in the description of the prodigies that accompanied the death of Cæsar, are scarce pardonable."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. i, p. 38. "The causes of the original beauty of language, considered as significant, which is a branch of the present subject, will be explained in their order."--*Ib.*, Vol. ii, p. 6. "Neither of these two Definitions do rightly adjust the Genuine signification of this Tense."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 280. "In the earnest hope that they may prove as beneficial to other teachers as they have to the author."--*John Flint's Gram.*, p. 3. "And then an example is given showing the manner in which the pupil should be required to classify."--*Ib.*, p. 3. "*Qu* in English words are equivalent to *kw*."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 258. "*Qu* has the power of *kw*, therefore quit doubles the final consonant in forming its preterite."--*Ib.*, p. 103. "The word pronoun or substantive can be substituted, should any teacher prefer to do it"--*Ib.*, p. 132. "The three angles of a right-angled triangle were equal to two right angles in the days of Moses, as well as now."--*GOODELL: Liberator*, Vol. xi, p. 4. "But now two paces of the vilest earth is room enough."--*Beaut. of Shak.*, p. 126. "Latin and French, as the World now goes, is by every one acknowledged to be necessary."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 351. "These things, that he will thus learn by sight, and

have by roat in his Memory, is not all, I confess, that he is to learn upon the Globes."--*Ib.*, p. 321. "Henry: if John shall meet me, I will hand him your note."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 261. "They pronounce the syllables in a different manner from what they do at other times."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 329. "Cato reminded him of many warnings he had gave him."--*Goldsmith's Rome*, i, 114. "The Wages is small. The Compasses is broken."--*Fisher's Gram.*, p. 95. "Prepare thy heart for prayer, lest thou temptest God."--*Life of Luther*, p. 83. "That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing."--*Adam's Lat. Gram.*, p. 155. "When there is two verbs which are together."--*Woodworth's Gram.*, p. 27. "Interjections are words used to express some passion of the mind; and is followed by a note of admiration!"--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 126. "And the king said, If he be alone, there is tidings in his mouth."--*2 Samuel*, xviii, 25. "The opinions of the few must be overruled, and submit to the opinions of the many."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 56. "One of the principal difficulties which here occurs, has been already hinted."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 391. "With milky blood the heart is overflown."--*Thomson, Castle of Ind.* "No man dare solicit for the votes of hiz nabors."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 344. "Yet they cannot, and they have no right to exercise it."--*Ib.*, p. 56. "In order to make it be heard over their vast theatres."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 471. "Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause is placed before the antecedent and its clause."--*Bullions, Lat. Gram.*, p. 200.

"Here thou, great Anna! whom three realms obey, Does sometimes counsel take--and sometimes tea."
--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 321.

EXERCISE VI.--PARTICIPLES.

"On the other hand, the degrading or vilifying an object, is done successfully by ranking it with one that is really low."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 50. "The magnifying or diminishing objects by means of comparison, proceeds from the same cause."--*Ib.*, i, 239. "Gratifying the affection will also contribute to my own happiness."--*Ib.*, i, 53. "The pronouncing syllables in a high or a low tone."--*Ib.*, ii, 77. "The crowding into one period or thought different figures of speech, is not less faulty than crowding metaphors in that manner."--*Ib.*, ii, 234. "To approve is acknowledging we ought to do a thing; and to condemn is owning we ought not to do it."--*Burlamaqui, on Law*, p. 39. "To be provoked that God suffers men to act thus, is claiming to govern the word in his stead."--*Secker*. "Let every subject be well understood before passing on to another."--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 18. "Doubling the *t* in *bigotted* is apt to lead to an erroneous accentuation of the word on the second syllable."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 22. "Their compelling the man to serve was an act of tyranny."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 54. "One of the greatest misfortunes of the French tragedy is, its being always written in rhyme."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 469. "Horace entitles his satire 'Sermones,' and seems not to have intended rising much higher than prose put into numbers."--*Ib.*, p. 402. "Feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, comforting the afflicted, yield more pleasure than we receive from those actions which respect only ourselves."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 238. "But when we attempt to go a step beyond this, and inquire what is the cause of regularity and variety producing in our minds the sensation of beauty, any reason we can assign is extremely imperfect."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 29. "In an author's writing with propriety, his being free of the two former faults seems implied."--*Ib.*, p. 94. "To prevent our being carried away by that torrent of false and frivolous taste."--*Ib.*, p. 12. "When we are unable to assign the reasons of our being pleased."--*Ib.*, p. 15. "An adjective will not make good sense without joining it to a noun."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 12. "What is said respecting sentences being inverted?"--*Ib.*, p. 71. "Though he admits of all the other cases, made use of by the Latins."--*Bicknell's Gram.*, p. viii. "This indeed, is accounting but feebly for its use in this instance."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 148. "The knowledge of what passes in the mind is necessary for the understanding the Principles of Grammar."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 73. "By *than's* being used instead of *as*, it is not asserted that the former has as much fruit as the latter."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 207. "Thus much for the Settling your Authority over your Children."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 58.

EXERCISE VII.--ADVERBS.

"There can scarce be a greater Defect in a Gentleman, than not to express himself well either in Writing or Speaking."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 335. "She seldom or ever wore a thing twice in the same way."--*Castle*

Rackrent, p. 84. "So can I give no reason, nor I will not."--*Beauties of Shak.*, p. 45. "Nor I know not where I did lodge last night."--*Ib.*, p. 270. "It is to be presumed they would become soonest proficient in Latin."--*Burn's Gram.*, p. xi. "The difficulty of which has not been a little increased by that variety."--*Ward's Pref. to Lily's Gram.*, p. xi. "That full endeavours be used in every monthly meeting to seasonably end all business or cases that come before them."--*N. E. Discipline*, p. 44. "In minds where they had scarce any footing before."--*Spectator*, No. 566. "The negative form is when the adverb *not* is used."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 61. "The interrogative form is when a question is asked."--*Ibid.* "The finding out the Truth ought to be his whole Aim."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 239. "Mention the first instance when *that* is used in preference to *who*, *whom*, or *which*."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 96. "The plot was always exceeding simple. It admitted of few incidents."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 470. "Their best tragedies make not a deep enough impression on the heart."--*Ib.*, p. 472. "The greatest genius on earth, not even a Bacon, can be a perfect master of every branch."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 13. "The verb OUGHT is only used in the indicative [and subjunctive moods]."--*Dr. Ash's Gram.*, p. 70. "It is still a greater deviation from congruity, to affect not only variety in the words, but also in the construction."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 28. "It has besides been found that, generally, students attend those lectures more carefully for which they pay."--*Dr. Lieber, Lit. Conv.*, p. 65. "This book I obtained through a friend, it being not exposed for sale."--*Woolsey, ib.*, p. 76. "Here there is no manner of resemblance but in the word *drown*."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 163. "We have had often occasion to inculcate, that the mind passeth easily and sweetly along a train of connected objects."--*Ib.*, ii, 197. "Observe the periods when the most illustrious persons flourished."--*Worcester's Hist.*, p. iv. "For every horse is not called Bucephalus, nor every dog Turk."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 15. "One can scarce avoid smiling at the blindness of a certain critic."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 257. "Provided always, that we run not into the extreme of pruning so very close, so as to give a hardness and dryness to style."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 92; *Blair's*, 111. "Agreement is when one word is like another in number, case, gender or person."--*Frost's Gram.*, p. 43. "Government is when one word causes another to be in some particular number, person or case."--*Ibid.* "It seems to be nothing more than the simple form of the adjective, and to imply not either comparison or degree."--*Murray's Gram.*, 2d Ed., p. 47.

EXERCISE VIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"The Indians had neither cows, horses, oxen, or sheep."--*Olney's Introd. to Geog.*, p. 46. "Who have no other object in view, but, to make a show of their supposed talents."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 344. "No other but these, could draw the attention of men in their rude uncivilized state."--*Ib.*, p. 379. "That he shall stick at nothing, nor nothing stick with him."--*Pope*. "To enliven it into a passion, no more is required but the real or ideal presence of the object."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 110. "I see no more to be made of it but to rest upon the final cause first mentioned."--*Ib.*, i, 175. "No quality nor circumstance contributes more to grandeur than force."--*Ib.*, i, 215. "It being a quotation, not from a poet nor orator, but from a grave author, writing an institute of law."--*Ib.*, i, 233. "And our sympathy cannot be otherwise gratified but by giving all the succour in our power."--*Ib.*, i, 362. "And to no verse, as far as I know, is a greater variety of time necessary."--*Ib.*, ii, 79. "English Heroic verse admits no more but four capital pauses."--*Ib.*, ii, 105. "The former serves for no other purpose but to make harmony."--*Ib.*, 231. "But the plan was not perhaps as new as some might think it."--*Literary Conv.*, p. 85. "The impression received would probably be neither confirmed or corrected."--*Ib.*, p. 183. "Right is nothing else but what reason acknowledges."--*Burlamaqui, on Law*, p. 32. "Though it should be of no other use but this."--BP. WILKINS: *Tooke's D. P.*, ii, 27. "One hope no sooner dies in us but another rises up."--*Spect.*, No. 535. "This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive."--*Adams Latin Gram.*, p. 156; *Gould's*, 129. "There can be no doubt but the plan of exercise pointed out at page 132, is the best that can be adopted."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. viii. "The exertions of this gentleman have done more than any other writer on the subject."--DR. ABERCROMBIE: *Rec. in Murray's Gram.*, Vol. ii, p. 306. "No accidental nor unaccountable event ought to be admitted."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, ii, 273. "Wherever there was much fire and vivacity in the genius of nations."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 5. "I aim at nothing else but your safety."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 90. "There are pains inflicted upon man for other purposes except warning."--*Wayland's Moral Sci.*, p. 122. "Of whom we have no more but a single letter remaining."--*Campbell's Pref. to Matthew*. "The publisher meant no more but that W. Ames was the

author."--*Sewel's History, Preface*, p. xii. "Be neether bashful, nor discover uncommon solicitude."--*Webster's Essays*, p. 403. "They put Minos to death, by detaining him so long in a bath, till he fainted."--*Lempriere's Dict.* "For who could be so hard-hearted to be severe?"--*Cowley*. "He must neither be a panegyrist nor a satirist."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 353. "No man unbiassed by philosophical opinions, thinks that life, air, or motion, are precisely the same things."--*Dr. Murray's Hist. of Lang.*, i, 426. "Which I had no sooner drank, but I found a pimple rising in my forehead."--*ADDISON: Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 182. "This I view very important, and ought to be well understood."--*Osborn's Key*, p. 5. "So that neither emphases, tones, or cadences should be the same."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 5.

"You said no more but that yourselves must be The judges of the scripture sense, not we."--*Dryden*, p. 96.

EXERCISE IX.--PREPOSITIONS.

"To be entirely devoid of relish for eloquence, poetry, or any of the fine arts, is justly construed to be an unpromising symptom of youth."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 14. "Well met, George, for I was looking of you."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 441. "There is another fact worthy attention."--*Channing's Emancip.*, p. 49. "They did not gather of a Lord's-day, in costly temples."--*The Dial*, No. ii, p. 209. "But certain ideas have, by convention between those who speak the same language, been agreed to be represented by certain articulate sounds."--*Adams's Rhet.*, ii, 271. "A careful study of the language is previously requisite, in all who aim at writing it properly."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 91. "He received his reward in a small place, which he enjoyed to his death."--*Notes to the Dunciad*, B. ii, l. 283. "Gaddi, the pupil of Cimabue, was not unworthy his master."--*Literary History*, p. 268. "It is a new, and picturesque, and glowing image, altogether worthy the talents of the great poet who conceived it."--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 100. "If the right does exist, it is paramount his title."--*Angell, on Tide Waters*, p. 237. "The most appropriate adjective should be placed nearest the noun."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 194. "Is not Mr. Murray's octavo grammar more worthy the dignified title of a 'Philosophical Grammar?'"--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 39. "If it shall be found unworthy the approbation and patronage of the literary public."--*Perley's Gram.*, p. 3. "When the relative is preceded by two words referring to the same thing, its proper antecedent is the one next it."--*Bullions's E. Gram.*, p. 101. "The magistrates commanded them to depart the city."--*Sewel's Hist.*, p. 97. "Mankind act oftener from caprice than reason."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 272. "It can never view, clearly and distinctly, above one object at a time."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 65. "The theory of speech, or systematic grammar, was never regularly treated as a science till under the Macedonian kings."--*Knight, on Greek Alph.*, p. 106. "I have been at London a year, and I saw the king last summer."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 198. "This is a crucifying of Christ, and a rebelling of Christ."--*Waldenfield*. "There is another advantage worthy our observation."--*Bolingbroke, on Hist.*, p. 26. "Certain conjunctions also require the subjunctive mood after them, independently on the sense."--*Grant's Lat. Gram.*, p. 77. "If the critical reader will think proper to admit of it at all."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 191. "It is the business of an epic poet to copy after nature."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 427. "Good as the cause is, it is one from which numbers have deserted."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 222. "In respect of the images it will receive from matter."--*Spectator*, No. 413. "Instead of following on to whither morality would conduct it."--*Dymond's Essays*, p. 85. "A variety of questions upon subjects on which their feelings, and wishes, and interests, are involved."--*Ib.*, p. 147. "In the Greek, Latin, Saxon, and German tongues, some of these situations are termed CASES, and are expressed by additions to the Noun instead of by separate words and phrases."--*Booth's Introd.*, p. 33. "Every teacher is bound during three times each week, to deliver a public lecture, gratis."--*Howitt's Student-Life in Germany*, p. 35. "But the professors of every political as well as religious creed move amongst each other in manifold circles."--*Ib.*, p. 113.

EXERCISE X.--PROMISCUOUS.

"The inseparable Prepositions making no Sense alone, they are used only in Composition."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. 66. "The English Scholar learns little from the two last Rules."--*Ib., Pref.*, p. xi. "To prevent the body being stolen by the disciples."--*Watson's Apology*, p. 123. "To prevent the Jews rejoicing at his death."--*Wood's Dict.*, p. 584. "After he had wrote the chronicles of the priesthood of John

Hyrceanus."--*Whiston's Josephus*, v, 195. "Such words are sometimes parsed as a direct address, than which, nothing could be farther from the truth."--*Goodenow's Gram.*, p. 89. "The signs of the tenses in these modes are as follows."--*C. Adams's Gram.*, p. 33. "The signs of the tenses in the Potential mode are as follows."--*Ibid.* "And, if more promiscuous examples be found necessary, they may be taken from Mr. Murray's English Exercises."--*Nesbit's Parsing*, p. xvi. "*One* is a numeral adjective, the same as *ten*."--*Ib.*, p. 95. "Nothing so much distinguishes a little mind as to stop at words."--MONTAGUE: *Letter-Writer*, p. 129. "But I say, again, What signifies words?"--*Id.*, *ib.* "Obedience to parents is a divine command, given in both the Old and the New Testaments."--*Nesbit's Parsing*, p. 207. "A Compound Subject is a union of several Subjects to all which belong the same Attribute."--*Fosdick's De Sacy, on General Gram.*, p. 22. "There are other languages in which the Conjunctive does not prevent our expressing the subject of the Conjunctive Proposition by a Pronoun."--*Ib.*, p. 58. "This distinction must necessarily be expressed by language, but there are several different modes of doing it."--*Ib.*, p. 64. "This action may be considered with reference to the person or thing upon whom the action falls."--*Ib.*, p. 97. "There is nothing in the nature of things to prevent our coining suitable words."--*Barnard's Gram.*, p. 41. "What kind of a book is this?"--*Ib.*, p. 43. "Whence all but him had fled."--*Ib.*, p. 58. "Person is a distinction between individuals, as speaking, spoken to, or spoken of."--*Ib.*, p. 114. "He repented his having neglected his studies at college."--*Emmons's Gram.*, p. 19. "What avails the taking so much medicine, when you are so careless about taking cold?"--*Ib.*, p. 29. "Active transitive verbs are those where the action passes from the agent to the object."--*Ib.*, p. 33. "Active intransitive verbs, are those where the action is wholly confined to the agent or actor."--*Ibid.* "Passive verbs express the receiving, or suffering, the action."--*Ib.*, p. 34. "The pluperfect tense expresses an action or event that passed prior or before some other period of time specified in the sentence."--*Ib.*, p. 42. "There is no doubt of his being a great statesman."--*Ib.*, p. 64. "Herschell is the fartherest from the sun of any of the planets."--*Fuller's Gram.*, p. 66. "There has not been introduced into the foregoing pages any reasons for the classifications therein adopted."--*Ib.*, p. 80. "There must be a comma before the verb, as well as between each nominative case."--*Ib.*, p. 98. "*Yon*, with *former* and *latter*, are also adjectives."--*Brace's Gram.*, p. 17. "You was."--*Ib.*, p. 32. "If you was."--*Ib.*, p. 39. "Two words which end in *ly* succeeding each other are indeed a little offensive to the ear."--*Ib.*, p. 85; *Lennie's Gram.*, p. 102.

"Is endless life and happiness despis'd? Or both wish'd here, where neither can be found?"--*Young*, p. 124.

EXERCISE XI.--PROMISCUOUS.

"Because any one of them is placed before a noun or pronoun, as you observe I have done in every sentence."--*Rand's Gram.*, p. 74. "*Might accompany* is a transitive verb, because it expresses an action which effects the object *me*."--*Gilbert's Gram.*, p. 94. "*Intend* is an intransitive verb because it expresses an action which does not effect any object."--*Ib.*, p. 93. "Charles and Eliza were jealous of one another."--*J. M. Putnam's Gram.*, p. 44. "Thus *one another* include both nouns."--*Ibid.* "When the antecedent is a child, *that* is elegantly used in preference to *who*, *whom*, or *which*."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 94. "He can do no more in words, but make out the expression of his will."--*Bp. Wilkins*. "The form of the first person plural of the imperative, *love we*, is grown obsolete."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 38. "Excluding those verbs which are become obsolete."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 47. "He who sighs for pleasure, the voice of wisdom can never reach, nor the power of virtue touch."--*Wright's Athens*, p. 64. "The other branch of wit in the thought, is that only which is taken notice of by Addison."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 312. "When any measure of the Chancellor was found fault with."--*Professors' Reasons*, p. 14. "*Whether* was formerly made use of to signify interrogation."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 54. "Under the article of *Pronouns* the following words must be taken notice of."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 95. "In a word, we are afforded much pleasure, to be enabled to bestow our most unqualified approbation on this excellent work."--*Wright's Gram., Rec.*, p. 4. "For Recreation is not being Idle, as every one may observe."--*Locke, on Ed.*, p. 365. "In the easier valuing and expressing that sum."--*Dilworth's Arith.*, p. 3. "Addition is putting together of two or more numbers."--*Alexander's Arith.*, p. 8. "The reigns of some of our British Queens may fairly be urged in proof of woman being capable of discharging the most arduous and complicated duties of government."--*West's Letters to Y. L.*, p. 43. "What is the import of that command to love such an one as ourselves?"--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 206. "It should

seem then the grand question was, What is good?"--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 297. "The rectifying bad habits depends upon our consciousness of them."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 32. "To prevent our being misled by a mere name."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 168. "I was refused an opportunity of replying in the latter review."--*Fowle's True English Gram.*, p. 10. "But how rare is such generosity and excellence as Howard displayed!"--*M'Culloch's Gram.*, p. 39. "The noun is in the Nominative case when it is the name of the person or thing which acts or is spoken of."--*Ib.*, p. 54. "The noun is in the Objective case when it is the name of the person or thing which is the object or end of an action or movement."--*Ib.*, p. 54. "To prevent their being erased from your memory."--*Mack's Gram.*, p. 17. "Pleonasm, is when a superfluous word is introduced abruptly."--*Ib.*, p. 69.

"Man feels his weakness, and to numbers run, Himself to strengthen, or himself to shun."--*Crabbe, Borough*, p. 137.

EXERCISE XII.--TWO ERRORS.

"Independent on the conjunction, the sense requires the subjunctive mood."--*Grant's Latin Gram.*, p. 77. "A Verb in past time without a sign is Imperfect tense."--*C. Adams's Gram.*, p. 33. "New modelling your household and personal ornaments is, I grant, an indispensable duty."--*West's Letters to Y. L.*, p. 58. "For grown ladies and gentlemen learning to dance, sing, draw, or even walk, is now too frequent to excite ridicule."--*Ib.*, p. 123. "It is recorded that a physician let his horse bleed on one of the evil days, and it soon lay dead."--*Constable's Miscellany*, xxi. 99. "As to the apostrophe, it was seldom used to distinguish the genitive case till about the beginning of the present century, and then seems to have been introduced by mistake."--*Dr. Ash's Gram.*, p. 23. "One of the relatives only varied to express the three cases."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 24. "What! does every body take their morning draught of this liquor?"--*Collier's Cebes*. "Here, all things comes round, and bring the same appearances a long with them."--*Collier's Antoninus*, p. 103. "Most commonly both the relative and verb are elegantly left out in the second member."--*Buchanan's Gram.*, p. ix. "A fair receipt of water, of some thirty or forty foot square."--*Bacon's Essays*, p. 127. "The old know more indirect ways of outwitting others, than the young."--*Burgh's Dignity*, i, 60. "The pronoun singular of the third person hath three genders."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 21. "The preposition *to* is made use of before nouns of place, when they follow verbs and participles of motion."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 203. "It is called, understanding human nature, knowing the weak sides of men, &c."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 284. "Neither of which are taken notice of by this Grammar."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 279. "But certainly no invention is entitled to such degree of admiration as that of language."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 54. "The Indians, the Persians, and Arabians, were all famous for their tales."--*Ib.*, p. 374. "Such a leading word is the preposition and the conjunction."--*Felch's Comp. Gram.*, p. 21. "This, of all others, is the most encouraging circumstance in these times."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 37. "The putting any constraint on the organs of speech, or urging them to a more rapid action than they can easily perform in their tender state, must be productive of indistinctness in utterance."--*Ib.*, p. 35. "Good articulation is the foundation of a good delivery, in the same manner as the sounding the simple notes in music, is the foundation of good singing."--*Ib.*, p. 33. "The offering praise and thanks to God, implies our having a lively and devout sense of his excellencies and of his benefits."--*ATTERBURY: Blair's Rhet.*, p. 295. "The pause should not be made till the fourth or sixth syllable."--*Blair, ib.*, p. 333. "Shenstone's pastoral ballad, in four parts, may justly be reckoned one of the most elegant poems of this kind, which we have in English."--*Ib.*, p. 394. "What need Christ to have died, if heaven could have contained imperfect souls?"--*Baxter*. "Every person is not a man of genius, nor is it necessary that he should."--*Seattle's Moral Science*, i, 69. "They were alarmed from a quarter where they least expected."--*Goldsmith's Greece*, ii, 6.

"If thou more murmur'st, I will rend an oak, And peg thee in his knotty intrails."--*SHAK.: White's Verb*, p. 94.

EXERCISE XIII.--TWO ERRORS.

"In consequence of this, much time and labor are unprofitably expended, and a confusion of ideas introduced

into the mind, which, by never so wise a method of subsequent instruction, it is very difficult completely to remove."--*Grenville's Gram.*, p. 3. "So that the restoring a natural manner of delivery, would be bringing about an entire revolution, in its most essential parts."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 170. "'Thou who loves us, will protect us still:' here *who* agrees with *thou*, and is nominative to the verb loves."--*Alex. Murray's Gram.*, p. 67. "The Active voice signifies action; the Passive, suffering, or being the object of an action."--*Adam's Latin Gram.*, p. 80; *Gould's*, 77. "They sudden set upon him, fearing no such thing."--*Walker's Particles*, p. 252. "That may be used as a pronoun, an adjective, and a conjunction, depending on the office which it performs in the sentence."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 110. "This is the distinguishing property of the church of Christ from all other antichristian assemblies or churches."--*Barclay's Works*, i, 533. "My lords, the course which the legislature formerly took with respect to the slave-trade, appears to me to be well deserving the attention both of the government and your lordships."--*BROUGHAM: Antislavery Reporter*, Vol. ii, p. 218. "We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen."--*John*, iii, 11. "This is a consequence I deny, and remains for him to prove."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 329. "To back this, He brings in the Authority of Accursius, and Consensus Romanus, to the latter of which he confesses himself beholding for this Doctrine."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 343. "The compound tenses of the second order, or those in which the participle present is made use of."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 24. "To lay the accent always on the same syllable, and the same letter of the syllable, which they do in common discourse."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 78. "Though the converting the *w* into a *v* is not so common as the changing the *v* into a *w*."--*Ib.*, p. 46. "Nor is this all; for by means of accent, the times of pauses also are rendered quicker, and their proportions more easily to be adjusted and observed."--*Ib.*, p. 72. "By mouthing, is meant, dwelling upon syllables that have no accent: or prolonging the sounds of the accented syllables, beyond their due proportion of time."--*Ib.*, p. 76. "Taunt him with the license of ink; if thou thou'st him thrice, it shall not be amiss."--*SHAK.: Joh. Dict.*, *w. Thou*. "The eye that mocketh at his father, and despiseth to obey his mother, the ravens of the valley shall pick it out, and the young eagles shall eat it."--*Prov.*, xxx, 17. "Copying, or merely imitating others, is the death of arts and sciences."--*Spurzheim, on Ed.*, p. 170. "He is arrived at that degree of perfection, as to surprise all his acquaintance."--*Ensell's Gram.*, p. 296. "Neither the King *nor* Queen are gone."--*Buchanan's E. Syntax*, p. 155. "*Many* is pronounced as if it were wrote *manny*."--*Dr. Johnson's Gram., with Dict.*, p. 2.

"And as the music on the waters float, Some bolder shore returns the soften'd note." --*Crabbe, Borough*, p. 118.

EXERCISE XIV.--THREE ERRORS.

"It appears that the Temple was then a building, because these Tiles must be supposed to be for the covering it."--*Johnson's Gram. Com.*, p. 281. "It was common for sheriffs to omit or excuse the not making returns for several of the boroughs within their counties."--*Brown's Estimate*, Vol. ii, p. 132. "The conjunction *as* when it is connected with the pronoun, such, many, or same, is sometimes called a relative pronoun."--*Kirkham's Gram., the Compend.* "Mr. Addison has also much harmony in his style; more easy and smooth, but less varied than Lord Shaftesbury."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 127; *Jamieson's*, 129. "A number of uniform lines having all the same pause, are extremely fatiguing; which is remarkable in French versification."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. ii, p. 104. "Adjectives qualify or distinguish one noun from another."--*Fowle's True Eng. Gram.*, p. 13. "The words *one*, *other*, and *none*, are used in both numbers."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 107. "A compound word is made up of two or more words, usually joined by an hyphen, as summer-house, spirit-less, school-master."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 7. "There is an inconvenience in introducing new words by composition which nearly resembles others in use before; as, *disserve*, which is too much like *deserve*."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 145. "For even in that case, the transgressing the limits in the least, will scarce be pardoned."--*Sheridan's Lect.*, p. 119. "What other are the foregoing instances but describing the passion another feels."--*Kames, El. of Crit.*, i, 388. "'Two and three are five.' If each *substantive* is to be taken separately as a subject, then 'two is five,' and 'three is five.'"--*Goodenow's Gram.*, p. 87. "The article *a* joined to the simple pronoun *other* makes it the compound *another*."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 96. "The word *another* is composed of the indefinite article prefixed to the word *other*."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 57; et al. "In relating things that were formerly expressed by another person, we often meet with modes of expression similar to the following."--*Ib.*, p. 191. "Dropping one

I prevents the recurrence of three very near each other."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 202. "Sometimes two or more genitive cases succeed each other; as, 'John's wife's father.'"--*Dalton's Gram.*, p. 14. "Sometimes, though rarely, two nouns in the possessive case immediately succeed each other, in the following form: 'My friend's wife's sister.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 45.

EXERCISE XV.--MANY ERRORS.

"Number is of a two fold nature,--Singular and Plural: and comprehends, accordingly to its application, the distinction between them."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 37. "The former, Figures of Words, are commonly called Tropes, and *consists* in a word's being employed to signify something, *which* is different from its original and primitive meaning."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 337. "The former, figures of words, are commonly called tropes, and *consist* in a word's being employed to signify something *that* is different from its original and primitive meaning."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 132. "A particular number of connected syllables are called feet, or measured paces."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 118. "Many poems, and especially songs, are written in the dactyl or anapæstic measure, some consisting of eleven or twelve syllables, and some of less."--*Ib.*, p. 121. "A Diphthong makes always a long Syllable, unless one of the vowels be dropped."--*British Gram.*, p. 34. "An Adverb is generally employed as an attributive, to denote some peculiarity or manner of action, with respect to the time, place, or order, of the noun or circumstance to which it is connected."--*Wright's Definitions, Philos. Gram.*, pp. 35 and 114. "A Verb expresses the action, the suffering or enduring, or the existence or condition of a noun."--*Ib.*, pp. 35 and 64. "These three adjectives should be written our's, your's, their's."--*Fowle's True Eng. Gram.*, p. 22. "Never was man so teized, or suffered half the uneasiness as I have done this evening."--*Tattler*, No. 160; *Priestley's Gram.*, p. 200; *Murray's*, i, 223. "There may be reckoned in English four different cases, or relations of a substantive, called the subjective, the possessive, the objective, and the absolute cases."--*Goodenow's Gram.*, p. 31. "To avoid the too often repeating the Names of other Persons or Things of which we discourse, the words *he, she, it, who, what*, were invented."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 85. "Names which denote a number of the same things, are called nouns of multitude."--*Infant School Gram.*, p. 21. "But lest he should think, this were too slightly a passing over his matter, I will propose to him to be considered these things following."--*Barclay's Works*, Vol. iii, p. 472. "In the pronunciation of the letters of the Hebrew proper names, we find nearly the same rules prevail as in those of Greek and Latin."--*Walker's Key*, p. 223. "The distributive pronominal adjectives *each, every, either*, agree with *the* nouns, *pronouns*, and verbs of the singular number only."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 89. "*Having treated* of the different *sorts* of words, and *their* various modifications, *which* is the first part of Etymology, *it* is now proper to explain the *methods* by which *one word* is derived from another."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 130.

EXERCISE XVI.--MANY ERRORS.

"A Noun with its Adjectives (or any governing Word with its Attendants) is one compound Word, whence the Noun and Adjective so joined, do often admit another Adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on; as, a Man, an old Man, a very good old Man, a very learned, judicious, sober Man."--*British Gram.*, p. 195; *Buchanan's*, 79. "A substantive *with* its adjective *is* reckoned as one *compounded* word; whence *they* often take *another* adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on: as, 'An old man; a good old man; a very learned, judicious, good old man.'"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 169; *Ingersoll's*, 195; and *others*. "But though this elliptical style *be* intelligible, and *is* allowable in conversation and epistolary writing, yet in all *writings* of a serious or dignified kind, *is* ungraceful."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 112. "There is no talent *so useful* towards rising in the world, *or which* puts men more out of the reach of fortune, than that quality generally possessed by the dullest sort of people, and *is*, in common language, called discretion."--SWIFT: *Blair's Rhet.*, p. 113. "Which to allow, is just as reasonable as to own, that 'tis the greatest ill of a body to be in the utmost *manner* maimed or distorted; but *that* to lose the use *only* of one limb, or to be impaired in some single organ or member, is no ill worthy the least notice."--SHAFTESBURY: *ib.*, p. 115; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 322. "If the singular nouns and pronouns, which *are joined* together by a copulative conjunction, *be* of several persons, in *making* the plural pronoun agree with them in person, the second person takes *place* of the third, and the *first* of both."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 151; *et al.* "The painter * * * cannot exhibit various stages of the same action.' *In* this sentence we see that

the painter governs, or agrees with, the verb *can*, as *its nominative case*."--*Ib.*, p. 195. "It expresses *also* facts *which exist generally*, at *all times*, general truths, attributes *which* are permanent, habits, customary actions, and the like, without the reference to a specific time."--*Ib.*, p. 73; *Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 71. "The different species of animals may therefore be considered, as so many different nations speaking different languages, *that have* no commerce with *each* other; each of *which* consequently understands *none* but *their* own."--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 142. "It is also important to *understand and* apply the principles of grammar in our common conversation; not only because *it* enables us to make our language *understood by educated* persons, but because it furnishes the readiest evidence *of our* having received a good education *ourselves*."--*Frost's Practical Gram.*, p. 16.

EXERCISE XVII.--MANY ERRORS.

"This faulty Tumour in Stile is like an huge unpleasant Rock in a Champion Country, that's difficult to be transcended."--*Holmes's Rhet.*, Book ii, p. 16. "For there are no Pelops's, nor Cadmus's, nor Danaus's dwell among us."--*Ib.*, p. 51. "None of these, except *will*, is ever used as a principal verb, but as an auxiliary to some principal, either expressed or understood."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 134. "Nouns which signify either the male or female are common gender."--*Perley's Gram.*, p. 11. "An Adjective expresses the kind, number, or quality of a noun."--*Parker and Fox's Gram.*, Part I, p. 9. "There are six tenses; the Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the Future, and the Future Perfect tenses."--*Ib.*, p. 18. "*My* refers to the first person singular, either gender. *Our* refers to the first person plural, either gender. *Thy* refers to the second person singular, either gender. *Your* refers to the second person plural, either gender. *Their* refers to the third person plural, either gender."--*Parker and Fox's Gram.*, Part II, p. 14. "Good use, which for brevity's sake, shall hereafter include reputable, national, and present use, is not always uniform in her decisions."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 44. "Nouns which denote but one object are considered in the singular number."--*Edward's First Lessons in Gram.*, p. 35. "If, therefore, the example of Jesus should be plead to authorize accepting an invitation to dine on the sabbath, it should be plead just as it was."--*Barnes's Notes: on Luke*, xiv, 1. "The teacher will readily dictate what part may be omitted, the first time going through it."--*Ainsworth's Gram.*, p. 4. "The contents of the following pages have been drawn chiefly, with various modifications, from the same source which has supplied most modern writers on this subject, viz. LINDLEY MURRAY'S GRAMMAR."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 3. "The term *person* in grammar distinguishes between the speaker, the person or thing spoken to, and the person or thing spoken of."--*Ib.*, p. 9. "In my father's garden grow the Maiden's Blush and the Prince' Feather."--*Felton, ib.*, p. 15. "A preposition is a word used to connect words with one another, and show the relation between them. They generally stand before nouns and pronouns."--*Ib.*, p. 60. "Nouns or pronouns addressed are always either in the second person, singular or plural."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 54. "The plural MEN not ending in s, is the reason for adding the apostrophie's."--*T. Smith's Gram.*, p. 19. "*Pennies* denote real coin; *pence*, their value in computation."--*Hazen's Gram.*, p. 24. "We commence, first, with *letters*, which is termed *Orthography*; secondly, with *words*, denominated *Etymology*; thirdly, with *sentences*, styled *Syntax*; fourthly, with *orations* and *poems*, called *Prosody*."--*Barrett's Gram.*, p. 22. "Care must be taken, that sentences of proper construction and obvious import be not rendered obscure by the too free use of the ellipsis."--*Felton's Grammar, Stereotype Edition*, p. 80.

EXERCISE XVIII.--PROMISCUOUS.

"Tropes and metaphors so closely resemble *each* other that it is not always easy, nor is it important to *be able* to distinguish the *one* from the *other*."--*Parker and Fox, Part III*, p. 66. "With regard to *relatives*, it may be further observed, that obscurity often arises from *the* too frequent repetition of them, particularly of the pronouns WHO, and THEY, and THEM, and THEIRS. When we find *these personal pronouns* crowding too fast upon us, we have often no method left, but to throw the whole sentence into some other form."--*Ib.*, p. 90; *Murray's Gram.*, p. 311; *Blair's Rhet.*, p. 106. "Do scholars acquire any valuable knowledge, by learning to repeat long strings of words, without any definite ideas, or *several jumbled* together like rubbish in a corner, and apparently with no application, *either for* the improvement of mind *or of* language?"--*Cutler's Gram., Pref.*, p. 5. "The being officiously good natured and civil are things so uncommon in the world, that one

cannot hear a man make professions of them without being surprised, or at least, suspecting the disinterestedness of his intentions."--FABLES: *Cutler's Gram.*, p. 135. "Irony is the intentional use of words to express a sense contrary to that which the speaker or writer means to convey."--*Parker and Fox's Gram.*, Part III, p. 68. "The term *Substantive* is derived from *substare*, to *stand*, to *distinguish it* from an adjective, which cannot, like the noun, stand alone."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 11. "They have two numbers, *like nouns*, the singular and plural; and three persons in each number, namely, *I*, the first person, represents the speaker. *Thou*, the second person, represents the person spoken to. *He, she, it*, the third person, represents the person or thing spoken of."--*Ib.*, p. 23. "*He, She, It*, is the Third Person singular; but *he with others, she with others, or it with others*, make each of them *they*, which is the Third Person plural."--*White, on the English Verb*, p. 97. "The words *had I been*, that is, the Third Past Tense of the Verb, marks the Supposition, as referring itself, not to the Present, but to some former period of time."--*Ib.*, p. 88. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid a too frequent repetition of the same word."--*Frazer's Improved Gram.*, p. 122.

"That which he cannot use, and dare not show, And would not give--why longer should he owe?"--*Crabbe*.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The word *prosody*, (from the Greek--[Greek: pros], *to*, and [Greek: dæ], *song*,) is, with regard to its derivation, exactly equivalent to *accent*, or the Latin *accentus*, which is formed from *ad*, *to*, and *cantus*, *song*: both terms, perhaps, originally signifying a *singing with*, or *sounding to*, some instrument or voice.

PROSODIA, as a Latin word, is defined by Littleton, "Pars Grammaticæ quæ docet *accentus*, *h. e.* rationem atollendi et depremendi syllabas, tum quantitatem carundem." And in English, "*The art of ACCENTING, or the rule of pronouncing syllables truly, LONG or SHORT.*"--*Litt. Dict.*, 4to. This is a little varied by Ainsworth thus: "*The rule of ACCENTING, or pronouncing syllables truly, whether LONG or SHORT.*"--*Ains. Dict.*, 4to. Accent, in English, belongs as much to prose as to poetry; but some deny that in Latin it belongs to either. There is also much difficulty about the import of the word; since some prosodists identify *accent* with *tone*; some take it for the *inflections* of voice; some call it the *pitch* of vocal sounds; and some, like the authors just cited, seem to confound it with *quantity*,--"LONG or SHORT." [459]

OBS. 2.--"*Prosody*," says a late writer, "strictly denotes only that *musical tone* or *melody* which accompanies speech. But the usage of modern grammarians justifies an extremely general application of the term."--*Frost's Practical Grammar*, p. 160. This remark is a note upon the following definition: "PROSODY is that part of grammar which treats of the structure of Poetical Composition."--*Ibid.* Agreeably to this definition, Frost's Prosody, with all the generality the author claims for it, embraces only a brief account of Versification, with a few remarks on "Poetical License." Of Pronunciation and the Figures of Speech, he takes no notice; and Punctuation, which some place with Orthography, and others distinguish as one of the chief parts of grammar, he exhibits as a portion of Syntax. Not more comprehensive is this part of grammar, as exhibited in the works of several other authors; but, by Lindley Murray, R. C. Smith, and some others, both Punctuation and Pronunciation are placed here; though no mention is made of the former in their subdivision of Prosody, which, they not very aptly say, "consists of *two* parts, Pronunciation and Versification." Dr. Bullions, no less deficient in method, begins with saying, "PROSODY consists of two parts; Elocution and Versification;" (*Principles of E. Gram.*, p. 163;) and then absurdly proceeds to treat of it under the following *six* principal heads: viz., Elocution, Versification, Figures of Speech, Poetic License, Hints for Correct and Elegant Writing, and Composition.

OBS. 3.--If, in regard to the subjects which may be treated under the name of *Prosody*, "the usage of *modern* grammarians justifies an extremely general application of the term," such an application is certainly not *less* warranted by the usage of *old* authors. But, by the practice of neither, can it be *easily* determined how many and what things *ought* to be embraced under this head. Of the different kinds of verse, or "the structure of Poetical Composition," some of the old prosodists took little or no notice; because they thought it their chief business, to treat of syllables, and determine the orthoëpy of words. The *Prosody* of Smetius, dated 1509, (my edition of which was published in Germany in 1691,) is in fact a *pronouncing dictionary* of the Latin language. After a brief abstract of the old rules of George Fabricius concerning quantity and accent, it exhibits, in alphabetic order, and with all their syllables marked, about twenty-eight thousand words, with a poetic line quoted against each, to prove the pronunciation just. The *Prosody* of John Genuensis, an other immense work, concluded by its author in 1286, improved by Badius in 1506, and printed at Lyons in 1514, is also mainly a *Latin dictionary*, with derivations and definitions as in other dictionaries. It is a folio volume of seven hundred and thirty closely-printed pages; six hundred of which are devoted to the vocabulary, the rest to orthography, accent, etymology, syntax, figures, points--almost everything *but versification*. Yet this vast sum of grammar has been entitled *Prosody*--"*Prosodia seu Catholicon*"--"*Catholicon seu Universale Vocabularium ac Summa Grammatices*."--See pp. 1 and 5.

CHAPTER I

--PUNCTUATION.

Punctuation is the art of dividing literary composition, by points, or stops, for the purpose of showing more clearly the sense and relation of the words; and of noting the different pauses and inflections required in reading.

The following are the principal points, or marks; namely, the Comma [,], the Semicolon [;], the Colon [:], the Period [.] , the Dash [--], the Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation [?], the Ecphoneme, or Note of Exclamation [!], and the Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis, [()].

The Comma denotes the shortest pause; the Semicolon, a pause double that of the comma; the Colon, a pause double that of the semicolon; and the Period, or Full Stop, a pause double that of the colon. The pauses required by the other four, vary according to the structure of the sentence, and their place in it. They may be equal to any of the foregoing.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pauses that are made in the natural flow of speech, have, in reality, no definite and invariable proportions. Children are often told to pause at a comma while they might count *one*; at a semicolon, *one, two*; at a colon, *one, two, three*; at a period, *one, two, three, four*. This may be of some use, as teaching them to observe the necessary stops, that they may catch the sense; but the standard itself is variable, and so are the times which good sense gives to the points. As a final stop, the period is immeasurable; and so may be the pause after a question or an exclamation.

OBS. 2.--The first four points take their names from the parts of discourse, or of a sentence, which are distinguished by them. The *Period*, or *circuit*, is a complete *round* of words, often consisting of several clauses or members, and always bringing out full sense at the close. The *Colon*, or *member*, is the greatest division or *limb* of a period, and is the chief constructive part of a compound sentence. The *Semicolon*, *half member*, or *half limb*, is the greatest division of a colon, and is properly a smaller constructive part of a compound sentence. The *Comma*, or *segment*, is a small part of a clause *cut off*, and is properly the least constructive part of a compound sentence. A *simple sentence* is sometimes a whole period, sometimes a chief member, sometimes a half member, sometimes a segment, and sometimes perhaps even less. Hence it may require the period, the colon, the semicolon, the comma, or even no point, according to the manner in which it is used. A sentence whose relatives and adjuncts are all taken in a restrictive sense, may be considerably complex, and yet require no division by points; as,

"Thank him who puts me loath to this revenge On you who wrong me not for him who wrong'd."--*Milton*.

OBS. 3.--The system of punctuation now used in English, is, in its main features, common to very many languages. It is used in Latin, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Dutch, German, and perhaps most of the tongues in which books are now written or printed. The Germans, however, make less frequent use of the comma than we; and the Spaniards usually mark a question or an exclamation *doubly*, inverting the point at the beginning of the sentence. In Greek, the difference is greater: the colon, expressed by the upper dot alone, is the only point between the comma and the period; the ecphoneme, or note of exclamation, is hardly recognized, though some printers of the classics have occasionally introduced it; and the eroteme, or note of interrogation, retains in that language its pristine form, which is that of our semicolon. In Hebrew, a full stop is denoted by a heavy colon, or something like it; and this is the only pointing adopted, when the vowel points and the accents are not used.

OBS. 4.--Though the points in use, and the principles on which they ought to be applied, are in general well fixed, and common to almost all sorts of books; yet, through the negligence of editors, the imperfections of copy, the carelessness of printers, or some other means, it happens, that different editions and different versions of the same work are often found pointed very variously. This circumstance, provided the sense is still preserved, is commonly thought to be of little moment. But all *writers* will do well to remember, that they owe it to their readers, to show them at once how they mean to be read; and since the punctuation of the early printers was unquestionably very *defective*, the republishers of ancient books should not be over scrupulous about an exact imitation of it; they may, with proper caution, correct obvious faults.

OBS. 5.--The precise origin of the points, it is not easy to trace in the depth of antiquity. It appears probable, from ancient manuscripts and inscriptions, that the period is the oldest of them; and it is said by some, that the first system of punctuation consisted in the different positions of this dot alone. But after the adoption of the small letters, which improvement is referred to the ninth century, both the comma and the colon came into use, and also the Greek note of interrogation. In old books, however, the comma is often found, not in its present form, but in that of a straight stroke, drawn up and down obliquely between the words. Though the colon is of Greek origin, the practice of writing it with two dots we owe to the Latin authors, or perhaps to the early printers of Latin books. The semicolon was first used in Italy, and was not adopted in England till about the year 1600. Our marks for questions and exclamations were also derived from the same source, probably at a date somewhat earlier. The curves of the parenthesis have likewise been in use for several centuries. But the clash is a more recent invention: Lowth, Ash, and Ward,--Buchanan, Bicknell, and Burn,--though they name all the rest, make no mention of this mark; but it appears by their books, that they all occasionally *used* it.

OBS. 6--Of the *colon* it may be observed, that it is now much less frequently used than it was formerly; its place being usurped, sometimes by the semicolon, and sometimes by the period. For this ill reason, some late grammarians have discarded it altogether. Thus Felton: "The COLON is now so seldom used by good writers, that rules for its use are unnecessary."--*Concise Manual of English Gram.*, p. 140. So Nutting: "It will be noticed, that the *colon* is omitted in this system; because it is omitted by the majority of the writers of the present age; three points, with the dash, being considered sufficient to mark the different lengths of the pauses."--*Practical Grammar*, p. 120. These critics, whenever they have occasion to copy such authors as Milton and Pope, do not scruple to mutilate their punctuation by putting semicolons or periods for all the colons they find. But who cannot perceive, that without the colon, the semicolon becomes an absurdity? It can no longer be a *semicolon*, unless the half can remain when the whole is taken away! The colon, being the older point of the two, and once very fashionable, is doubtless on record in more instances than the semicolon; and, if now, after both have been in common use for some hundreds of years, it be found out that only one is needed, perhaps it would be more reasonable to prefer the former. Should public opinion ever be found to coincide with the suggestions of the two authors last quoted, there will be reason to regret that Caxton, the old English typographer of the fifteenth century, who for a while successfully withstood, in his own country, the introduction of the semicolon, had not the power to prevent it forever. In short, to leave no literary extravagance unbroached, the latter point also has not lacked a modern impugner. "One of the greatest improvements in punctuation," says Justin Brenan, "is the rejection of the eternal semicolons of our ancestors. In latter times, the semicolon has been gradually disappearing, not only from the newspapers, but from books."--*Brenan's "Composition and Punctuation familiarly Explained"*, p. 100; London, 1830. The colon and the semicolon are both useful, and, not unfrequently, necessary; and all correct writers will, I doubt not, continue to use both.

OBS. 7--Since Dr. Blair published his emphatic caution against too frequent a use of *parentheses*, there has been, if not an abatement of the kind of error which he intended to censure, at least a diminution in the use of the *curves*, the sign of a parenthesis. These, too, some inconsiderate grammarians now pronounce to be out of vogue. "The parenthesis is now generally exploded as a deformity."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 362. "The Parenthesis, () has become nearly obsolete, except in mere references, and the like; its place, by modern writers, being usually supplied by the use of the comma, and the dash."--*Nutting's Practical Gram.*, p. 126; *Frazer's Improved Grammar*, p. 187. More use may have been made of the curves than was necessary, and

more of the parenthesis itself than was agreeable to good taste; but, the sign being well adapted to the construction, and the construction being sometimes sprightly and elegant, there are no good reasons for wishing to discard either of them; nor is it true, that the former "has become nearly obsolete."

OBS. 8.--The name *parenthesis* is, which literally means a *putting-in-between*, is usually applied both to the *curves*, and to the incidental *clause* which they enclose. This twofold application of the term involves some inconvenience, if not impropriety. According to Dr. Johnson, the enclosed "*sentence*" alone is the *parenthesis*; but Worcester, agreeably to common usage, defines the word as meaning also "the *mark* thus ()." But, as this sign consists of two distinct parts, two corresponding curves, it seems more natural to use a plural name: hence L. Murray, when he would designate the sign only, adopted a plural expression; as, "*the parenthetical characters*,"--"*the parenthetical marks*." So, in another case, which is similar: "the *hooks* in which words are included," are commonly called *crotchets* or *brackets*; though Bucke, in his *Classical Grammar*, I know not why, calls the two "[] a *Crochet*;" (p. 23;) and Webster, in his octavo Dictionary, defines a "*Bracket*, in printing," as Johnson does a "*Crochet*" by a plural noun: "*hooks*; thus, []." Again, in his grammars, Dr. Webster rather confusedly says: "The parenthesis () and hooks [] include a remark or clause, not essential to the sentence in construction."--*Philosophical Gram.*, p. 219; *Improved Gram.*, p. 154. But, in his Dictionary, he forgets both the hooks and the parenthesis that are here spoken of; and, with still worse confusion or inaccuracy, says: "The *parenthesis* is usually included in *hooks* or curved lines, thus, ()." Here he either improperly calls these regular little curves "*hooks*," or erroneously suggests that both the hooks and the curves are usual and appropriate signs of "*the parenthesis*." In Garner's quarto Dictionary, the French word *Crochet*, as used by printers, is translated, "A *brace*, a *crochet*, a *parenthesis*;" and the English word *Crochet* is defined, "The *mark* of a *parenthesis*, in printing, thus []." But Webster defines *Crochet*, "In printing, a *hook* including words, a *sentence* or a *passage* distinguished from the rest, thus []." This again is both ambiguous and otherwise inaccurate. It conveys no clear idea of what a *crochet* is. *One hook includes* nothing. Therefore Johnson said: "*Hooks* in which words are included [thus]." But if each of the hooks is a *crochet*, as Webster suggests, and almost every body supposes, then both lexicographers are wrong in not making the whole expression plural: thus, "*Crotchets*, in printing, are angular *hooks* usually including some explanatory words." But is this all that Webster meant? I cannot tell. He may be understood as saying also, that a *Crochet* is "a *sentence* or a *passage* distinguished from the rest, thus [];" and doubtless it would be much better to call a hint thus marked, a *crochet*, than to call it a *parenthesis*, as some have done. In Parker and Fox's *Grammar*, and also in Parker's *Aids to English Composition*, the term *Brackets* only is applied to these angular hooks; and, contrary to all usage of other authors, so far as I know, the name of *Crotchets* is there given to the *Curves*. And then, as if this application of the word were general, and its propriety indisputable, the pupil is simply told: "The *curved lines* between which a parenthesis is enclosed are called *Crotchets*."--*Gram.*, Part III, p. 30; *Aids*, p. 40. "Called *Crotchets*" by whom? That not even Mr. Parker himself knows them by that name, the following most inaccurate passage is a proof: "The *note* of admiration and interrogation, as also the *parenthesis*, the *bracket*, and the reference marks, [are noted in the margin] in the same manner as the apostrophe."--*Aids*, p. 314. In some late grammars, (for example, *Hazen's* and *Day's*,) the parenthetic curves are called "*the Parentheses*" From this the student must understand that it always takes *two parentheses* to make *one parenthesis*! If then it is objectionable, to call the two marks "*a parenthesis*," it is much more so, to call each of them by that name, or both "*the parentheses*." And since Murray's phrases are both entirely too long for common use, what better name can be given them than this very simple one, *the Curves*?

OBS. 9.--The words *eroteme* and *ecphoneme*, which, like *aposteme* and *philosopheme*, are orderly derivatives from Greek roots[460], I have ventured to suggest as fitter names for the two marks to which they are applied as above, than are any of the long catalogue which other grammarians, each choosing for himself have presented. These marks have not unfrequently been called "*the interrogation* and the *exclamation*;" which names are not very suitable, because they have other uses in grammar. According to Dr. Blair, as well as L. Murray and others, interrogation and exclamation are "passionate *figures*" of rhetoric, and oftentimes also plain "unfigured" expressions. The former however are frequently and more fitly called by their Greek names *erotesis* and *ecphonesis*, terms to which those above have a happy correspondence. By Dr. Webster and some others, all *interjections* are called "*exclamations*;" and, as each of these is usually followed by the mark of

emotion, it cannot but be inconvenient to call both by the same name.

OBS. 10.--For things so common as the marks of asking and exclaiming, it is desirable to have simple and appropriate *names*, or at least some settled mode of denomination; but, it is remarkable, that Lindley Murray, in mentioning these characters six times, uses six different modes of expression, and all of them complex: (1.) "Notes of Interrogation and Exclamation." (2.) "The point of Interrogation,?"--"The point of Exclamation,!" (3.) "The Interrogatory Point."--"The Exclamatory Point." (4.) "A note of interrogation,"--"The note of exclamation." (5.) "The interrogation and exclamation points." (6.) "The points of Interrogation and Exclamation."--*Murray, Flint, Ingersoll, Alden, Pond*. With much better taste, some writers denote them uniformly thus: (7.) "The Note of Interrogation,"--"The Note of Exclamation."--*Churchill, Hiley*. In addition to these names, all of which are too long, there may be cited many others, though none that are unobjectionable: (8.) "The Interrogative sign,"--"The Exclamatory sign."--*Peirce, Hazen*. (9.) "The Mark of Interrogation,"--"The Mark of Exclamation."--*Ward, Felton, Hendrick*. (10.) "The Interrogative point,"--"The Exclamation point."--*T. Smith, Alger*. (11.) "The interrogation point,"--"The exclamation point."--*Webster, St. Quentin, S. Putnam*. (12.) "A Note of Interrogation,"--"A Note of Admiration."--*Coar, Nutting*. (13.) "The Interrogative point,"--"The Note of Admiration, or of vocation."--*Bucke*. (14.) "Interrogation (?),"--"Admiration (!) or Exclamation."--*Lennie, Bullions*. (15.) "A Point of Interrogation,"--"A Point of Admiration or Exclamation."--*Buchanan*. (16.) "The Interrogation Point (?),"--"The Admiration Point (!)."--*Perley*. (17.) "An interrogation (?),"--"An exclamation (!)."--*Cutler*. (18.) "The interrogator?"--"The exclaimor!"--*Day's Gram.*, p. 112. [The putting of "*exclaimor*" for *exclaimer*, like this author's changing of *quoters* to "*quoters*," as a name for the guillemets, is probably a mere sample of ignorance.] (19.) "Question point,"--"Exclamation point."--*Sanborn*, p. 272.

SECTION I.--THE COMMA.

The Comma is used to separate those parts of a sentence, which are so nearly connected in sense, as to be only one degree removed from that close connexion which admits no point.

RULE I.--SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence does not, in general, admit the comma; as, "The weakest reasoners are the most positive."--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 202. "Theology has not hesitated to make or support a doctrine by the position of a comma."--*Tract on Tone*, p. 4.

"Then pain compels the impatient soul to seize On promis'd hopes of instantaneous ease."--*Crabbe*.

EXCEPTION.--LONG SIMPLE SENTENCES.

When the nominative in a long simple sentence is accompanied by inseparable adjuncts, or when several words together are used in stead of a nominative, a comma should be placed immediately before the verb; as, "Confession of sin without amendment, obtains no pardon."--*Dillwyn's Reflections*, p. 6. "To be totally indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect in character."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 268.

"O that the tenor of my just complaint,[461] Were sculpt with steel in rocks of adamant!"--*Sandys*.

RULE II.--SIMPLE MEMBERS.

The simple members of a compound sentence, whether successive or involved, elliptical or complete, are generally divided by the comma; as,

1. "Here stand we both, and aim we at the best."--*Shak*.

2. "I, that did never weep, now melt in woe."--*Id.*
3. "Tide life, tide death, I come without delay."--*Id.*
4. "I am their mother, who shall bar me from them?"--*Id.*
5. "How wretched, were I mortal, were my state!"--*Pope.*
6. "Go; while thou mayst, avoid the dreadful fate."--*Id.*
7. "Grief aids disease, remember'd folly stings, And his last sighs reproach the faith of kings."--*Johnson.*

EXCEPTION I.--RESTRICTIVE RELATIVES.

When a relative immediately follows its antecedent, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be introduced *before* it; as, "For the things *which* are seen, are temporal; but the things *which* are not seen, are eternal."--2 *Cor.*, iv, 18. "A letter is a character *that* expresses a sound without any meaning."--*St. Quentin's General Gram.*, p. 3.

EXCEPTION II.--SHORT TERMS CLOSELY CONNECTED.

When the simple members are short, and closely connected by a conjunction or a conjunctive adverb, the comma is generally omitted; as, "Honest poverty is better *than* wealthy fraud."--*Dillwyn's Ref.*, p. 11. "Let him tell me *whether* the number of the stars be even or odd."--TAYLOR: *Joh. Dict.*, w. *Even*. "It is impossible *that* our knowledge of words should outstrip our knowledge of things."--CAMPBELL: *Murray's Gram.*, p. 359.

EXCEPTION III.--ELLIPTICAL MEMBERS UNITED.

When two simple members are immediately united, through ellipsis of the relative, the antecedent, or the conjunction *that*, the comma is not inserted; as, "Make an experiment on the first man you meet."--*Berkley's Alciphron*, p. 125. "Our philosophers do infinitely despise and pity whoever shall propose or accept any other motive to virtue."--*Ib.*, p. 126. "It is certain we imagine before we reflect."--*Ib.*, p. 359.

"The same good sense that makes a man excel, Still makes him doubt he ne'er has written well."--*Young.*

RULE III.--MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

When more than two words or terms are connected in the same construction, or in a joint dependence on some other term, by conjunctions expressed or understood, the comma should be inserted after every one of them but the last; and, if they are nominatives before a verb, the comma should follow the last also:[462] as,

1. "Who, to the enraptur'd heart, and ear, and eye, Teach beauty, virtue, truth, and love, and melody."--*Beattie.*
2. "Ah! what avails * * * * * All that art, fortune, enterprise, can bring, If envy, scorn, remorse, or pride, the bosom wring?"--*Id.*
3. "Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible; Thou, stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless."--*Shak.*
4. "She plans, provides, expatiates, triumphs there."--*Young.*
5. ---- "So eagerly the Fiend O'er bog, or steep, through strait, rough, dense, or rare, With head, hands, wings, or feet, pursues his way, And swims, or sinks, or wades, or creeps, or flies."--*Milton.*

RULE IV.--ONLY TWO WORDS.

When only two words or terms are connected by a conjunction, they should not be separated by the comma; as, "It is a *stupid and barbarous* way to extend dominion by arms; for true power is to be got by *arts and industry*"--*Spectator*, No. 2.

"*Despair and anguish* fled the struggling soul."--*Goldsmith*.

EXCEPTION I.--TWO WORDS WITH ADJUNCTS.

When the two words connected have several adjuncts, or when one of them has an adjunct that relates not to both, the comma is inserted; as, "I shall spare no pains to make their instruction agreeable, and their diversion useful."--*Spectator*, No. 10. "*Who* is applied to persons, or things personified."--*Bullions*.

"With listless eyes the dotard views the store, He views, and wonders that they please no more."--*Johnson*.

EXCEPTION II.--TWO TERMS CONTRASTED.

When two connected words or phrases are contrasted, or emphatically distinguished, the comma is inserted; as, "The vain are easily obliged, and easily disobliged."--*Kames*.

"Liberal, not lavish, is kind Nature's hand."--*Beattie*.

"Tis certain he could write, and cipher too."--*Goldsmith*.

EXCEPTION III.--ALTERNATIVE OF WORDS.

When there is merely an alternative of names, or an explanatory change of terms, the comma is usually inserted; as, "We saw a large opening, or inlet."--*W. Allen*. "Have we not power to lead about a sister, a wife, as well as other apostles?"--*Cor.*, ix, 5.

EXCEPTION IV.--CONJUNCTION UNDERSTOOD.

When the conjunction is understood, the comma is inserted; and, if two separated words or terms refer alike to a third term, the second requires a second comma: as, "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim."--*L. Murray, Gram.*, p. 269.

"To him the church, the realm, their pow'rs consign."--*Johnson*.

"She thought the isle that gave her birth. The sweetest, wildest land on earth."--*Hogg*.

RULE V.--WORDS IN PAIRS.

When successive words are joined in pairs by conjunctions, they should be separated in pairs by the comma; as, "Interest and ambition, honour and shame, friendship and enmity, gratitude and revenge, are the prime movers in public transactions."--*W. Allen*. "But, whether ingenious or dull, learned or ignorant, clownish or polite, every innocent man, without exception, has as good a right to liberty as to life."--*Beattie's Moral Science*, p. 313.

"Then say how hope and fear, desire and hate, O'erspread with snares the crowded maze of fate."--*Dr. Johnson*.

RULE VI.--WORDS PUT ABSOLUTE.

Nouns or pronouns put absolute, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as, "The prince, *his father being dead*, succeeded."--"*This done*, we parted."--"*Zaccheus*, make haste and come down."--"*His proctorship in Sicily*, what did it produce?"--*Cicero*.

"Wing'd with his fears, on foot he strove to fly, *His steeds too distant, and the foe too nigh*" --*Pope, Iliad*, xi, 440.

RULE VII.--WORDS IN APPPOSITION.

Words in apposition, (especially if they have adjuncts,) are generally set off by the comma; as, "He that now calls upon thee, is Theodore, *the hermit of Teneriffe*."--*Johnson*. "LOWTH, *Dr. Robert, bishop of London*, born in 1710, died in 1787."--*Biog. Dict.* "HOME, *Henry, lord Kames*."--*Ib.*

"What next I bring shall please thee, be assur'd, Thy *likeness*, thy fit *help*, thy other *self*, Thy *wish* exactly to thy heart's desire."--*Milton, P. L.*, viii, 450.

"And he, their prince, shall rank among my peers."--*Byron*.

EXCEPTION I.--COMPLEX NAMES.

When several words, in their common order, are used as one compound name, the comma is not inserted; as, "Dr. Samuel Johnson,"--"Publius Gavius Cosanus."

EXCEPTION II.--CLOSE APPPOSITION.

When a common and a proper name are closely united, the comma is not inserted; as, "The brook Kidron,"--"The river Don,"--"The empress Catharine,"--"Paul the Apostle."

EXCEPTION III.--PRONOUN WITHOUT PAUSE.

When a pronoun is added to an other word merely for emphasis and distinction, the comma is not inserted; as, "Ye men of Athens,"--"I myself,"--"Thou flaming minister,"--"You princes."

EXCEPTION IV.--NAMES ACQUIRED.

When a name acquired by some action or relation, is put in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun, the comma is not inserted; as, "I made the *ground* my *bed*;"--"To make *him* king;"--"Whom they revered as *God*;"--"With *modesty* thy *guide*."--*Pope*.

RULE VIII.--ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, when something depends on them, or when they have the import of a dependent clause, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as,

1. -----"Among the roots Of hazel, *pendent o'er the plaintive stream*, They frame the first foundation of their domes."--*Thomson*.

2. -----"Up springs the lark, *Shrill-voic'd and loud*, the messenger of morn."--*Id.*

EXCEPTION.--ADJECTIVES RESTRICTIVE.

When an adjective immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be used before it; as,

---"And on the coast *averse* From entrance or cherubic watch."--*Milton, P. L.*, B. ix, l. 68.

RULE IX.--FINITE VERBS.

Where a finite verb is understood, a comma is generally required; as, "From law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity, knowledge."--*Murray*.

"Else all my prose and verse were much the same; This, prose on stilts; that, poetry fallen lame."--*Pope*.

EXCEPTION.--VERY SLIGHT PAUSE.

As the semicolon must separate the clauses when the comma is inserted by this rule, if the pause for the omitted verb be very slight, it may be left unmarked, and the comma be used for the clauses; as, "When the profligate speaks of piety, the miser of generosity, the coward of valour, and the corrupt of integrity, they are only the more despised by those who know them."--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 132.

RULE X.--INFINITIVES.

The infinitive mood, when it follows a verb from which it must be separated, or when it depends on something remote or understood, is generally, with its adjuncts, set off by the comma; as, "One of the greatest secrets in composition is, *to know* when to be simple."--*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 151. "To confess the truth, I was much in fault."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 271.

"The Governor of all--has interposed, Not seldom, his avenging arm, *to smite* The injurious trampler upon nature's law."--*Cowper*.

RULE XI.--PARTICIPLES.

Participles, when something depends on them, when they have the import of a dependent clause, or when they relate to something understood, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as, 1. "Law is a rule of civil conduct, *prescribed* by the supreme power in a state, *commanding* what is right, and *prohibiting* what is wrong."--BLACKSTONE: *Beattie's Moral Science*, p. 346.

2. "Young Edwin, *lighted by the evening star*, *Lingering and list'ning* wander'd down the vale."--*Beattie*.

3. "*United*, we stand; *divided*, we fall."--*Motto*.

4. "*Properly speaking*, there is no such thing as chance."

EXCEPTION.--PARTICIPLES RESTRICTIVE.

When a participle immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be used before it; as,

"A man *renown'd for repartee*, Will seldom scruple to make free With friendship's finest feeling."--*Cowper*.

RULE XII.--ADVERBS. Adverbs, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they have not a close dependence on some particular word in the context, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as, "We must not, *however*, confound this gentleness with the artificial courtesy of the

world."--*Besides*, the mind must be employed."--*Gilpin*. "Most unquestionably, no fraud was equal to all this."--*Lyttelton*. "But, *unfortunately for us*, the tide was ebbing already."

"When buttress and buttress, *alternately*, Seem framed of ebon and ivory."--*Scott's Lay*, p. 33.

RULE XIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions, when they are separated from the principal clauses that depend on them, or when they introduce examples, are generally set off by the comma; as, "But, by a timely call upon Religion, the force of Habit was eluded."--*Johnson*.

"They know the neck that joins the shore and sea, *Or*, ah! how chang'd that fearless laugh would be."--*Crabbe*.

RULE XIV.--PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions and their objects, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they do not closely follow the words on which they depend, are generally set off by the comma; as, "Fashion is, *for the most part*, nothing but the ostentation of riches."--"By *reading*, we add the experience of others to our own."

"In vain the sage, *with retrospective eye*, Would from th' apparent What conclude the Why."--*Pope*.

RULE XV.--INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections that require a pause, though more commonly emphatic and followed by the ecphoneme, are sometimes set off by the comma; as, "For, *lo*, I will call all the families of the kingdoms of the north."--*Jeremiah*, i, 15. "O, 'twas about something you would not understand."--*Columbian Orator*, p. 221. "*Ha, ha!* you were finely taken in, then!"--*Aikin*. "*Ha, ha, ha!* A facetious gentleman, truly!"--*Id*.

"*Oh*, when shall Britain, conscious of her claim, Stand emulous of Greek and Roman fame?"--*Pope*.

RULE XVI.--WORDS REPEATED.

A word emphatically repeated, is generally set off by the comma; as, "Happy, happy, happy pair!"--*Dryden*. "Ay, ay, there is some comfort in that."--*Shak*. "Ah! no, no, no."--*Dryden*.

"The old oaken bucket, the iron-bound bucket, The moss-covered bucket, which hung in the well!"--*Woodworth*.

RULE XVII.--DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

A quotation, observation, or description, when it is introduced in close dependence on a verb, (as, *say*, *reply*, *cry*, or the like,) is generally separated from the rest of the sentence by the comma; as, "'The book of nature,' said he, 'is before thee.'"--*Hawkesworth*. "I say unto all, Watch."--*Mark*. "'The boy has become a man,' means, 'he has *grown to be* a man.' 'Such conduct becomes a man,' means, 'such conduct *befits* him.'"--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 116.

"While man exclaims, 'See all things for my use!' 'See man for mine!' replies a pamper'd goose."--*Pope*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE COMMA.

UNDER RULE I.--OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"Short, simple sentences should not be separated by a comma."--*Felton's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 135; 3d Ed., Stereotyped, p. 137.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because a needless comma is put after *short*, the sentence being simple. But, according to Rule 1st for the Comma, "A simple sentence does not, in general, admit the comma." Therefore, this comma should be omitted; thus, "Short simple sentences should not be separated by a comma." Or, much better: "A short simple *sentence* should *rarely be divided by the* comma." For such sentences, combined to form a period, *should generally be separated*; and even a single one may have some phrase that must be set off.]

"A regular and virtuous education, is an inestimable blessing."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 174. "Such equivocal expressions, mark an intention to deceive."--*Ib.*, p. 256. "They are, *This* and *that*, with their plurals *these* and *those*."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 26; *Practical Lessons*, p. 3. "A nominative case and a verb, sometimes make a complete sentence; as, He sleeps."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 78. "*Tense*, expresses the action connected with certain relations of time; *mood*, represents it as farther modified by circumstances of contingency, conditionally, &c."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 37. "The word Noun, means name."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 14. "The present, or active participle, I explained then."--*Ib.*, p. 97. "Are some verbs used, both transitively and intransitively?"--*Cooper's Pt. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 54. "Blank verse, is verse without rhyme."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 242. "A distributive adjective, denotes each one of a number considered separately."--*Ib.*, p. 51.

"And may at last my weary age, Find out the peaceful hermitage."--*Murray's Gr.*, 12mo, p. 205; 8vo, 255.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"A noun without an Article to limit it is taken in its widest sense."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 8; *Practical Lessons*, p. 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set before the verb *is taken*. But, according to the Exception to Rule 1st for the Comma, "When the nominative in a long simple sentence is accompanied by inseparable adjuncts, or when several words together are used in stead of a nominative, a comma should be placed immediately before the verb." Therefore, a comma should be here inserted; thus, "A noun without an article to limit it, is taken in its widest sense."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 6.]

"To maintain a steady course amid all the adversities of life marks a great mind."--*Day's District School Gram.*, p. 84. "To love our Maker supremely and our neighbor as ourselves comprehends the whole moral law."--*Ibid.* "To be afraid to do wrong is true courage."--*Ib.*, p. 85. "A great fortune in the hands of a fool is a great misfortune."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 89. "That he should make such a remark is indeed strange."--*Farnum, Practical Gram.*, p. 30. "To walk in the fields and groves is delightful."--*Id., ib.* "That he committed the fault is most certain."--*Id., ib.* "Names common to all things of the same sort or class are called *Common nouns*; as, *man, woman, day*."--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 12. "That it is our duty to be pious *admits* not of any doubt."--*Id., E. Gram.*, p. 118. "To endure misfortune with resignation is the characteristic of a great mind."--*Id., ib.*, p. 81. "The assisting of a friend in such circumstances was certainly a duty."--*Id., ib.*, 81. "That a life of virtue is the safest is certain."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 169. "A collective noun denoting the idea of unity should be represented by a pronoun of the singular number."--*Ib.*, p. 167.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"When the sun had arisen the enemy retreated."--*Day's District School Gram.*, p. 85.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here separates the two simple members which compose the

sentence. But, according to Rule 2d, "The simple members of a compound sentence, whether successive or involved, elliptical or complete, are generally divided by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be inserted after *arisen*; thus, "When the sun had arisen, the enemy retreated."]

"If he *become* rich he may be less industrious."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 118. "The more I study grammar the better I like it."--*Id., ib.*, p. 127. "There is much truth in the old adage that fire is a better servant than master."--*Id., ib.*, p. 128. "The verb *do*, when used as an auxiliary gives force or emphasis to the expression."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 39. "Whatsoever it is incumbent upon a man to do it is surely expedient to do well."--*J. Q. Adams's Rhetoric*, Vol. i, p. 46. "The soul which our philosophy divides into various capacities, is still one essence."--*Channing, on Self-Culture*, p. 15. "Put the following words in the plural and give the rule for forming it."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 19. "We will do it if you wish."--*Id., ib.*, p. 29. "He who does well will be rewarded."--*Id., ib.*, 29. "That which is always true is expressed in the present tense."--*Id., ib.*, p. 119. "An observation which is always true must be expressed in the present tense."--*Id., Prin. of E. Gram.*, p. 123. "That part of orthography which treats of combining letters to form syllables and words is called SPELLING."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 8. "A noun can never be of the first person except it is in apposition with a pronoun of that person."--*Ib.*, p. 14. "When two or more singular nouns or pronouns refer to the same object they require a singular verb and pronoun."--*Ib.*, p. 80. "James has gone but he will return in a few days."--*Ib.*, 89. "A pronoun should have the same person, number, and gender as the noun for which it stands."--*Ib.*, 89 and 80. "Though he is out of danger he is still afraid."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 80. "She is his inferior in sense but his equal in prudence."--*Ib.*, p. 81. "The man who has no sense of religion is little to be trusted."--*Ib.*, 81. "He who does the most good has the most pleasure."--*Ib.*, 81. "They were not in the most prosperous circumstances when we last saw them."--*Ib.*, 81. "If the day continue pleasant I shall return."--*Felton's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 22; Ster. Ed., 24. "The days that are past are gone for ever."--*Ib.*, pp. 89 and 92. "As many as are friendly to the cause will sustain it."--*Ib.*, 89 and 92. "Such as desire aid will receive it."--*Ib.*, 89 and 92. "Who gave you that book which you prize so much?"--*Bullions, Pract. Lessons*, p. 32. "He who made it now preserves and governs it."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 83.

"Shall he alone, whom rational we call, Be pleased with nothing if not blessed with all?" --*Felton's Gram.*, p. 126.

UNDER THE EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"Newcastle is the town, in which Akenside was born."--*Bucke's Classical Gram.*, p. 54.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because a needless comma here separates the restrictive relative *which* from its antecedent *town*. But, according to Exception 1st to Rule 2d, "When a relative immediately follows its antecedent, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be introduced before it." Therefore, this comma Should be omitted; thus, "Newcastle is the town in which Akenside was born."]

"The remorse, which issues in reformation, is true repentance."--*Campbell's Philos. of Rhet.*, p. 255. "Men, who are intemperate, are destructive members of community."--*Alexander's Gram.*, p. 93. "An active-transitive verb expresses an action, which extends to an object."--*Felton's Gram.*, pp. 16 and 22. "They, to whom much is given, will have much to answer for."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 188. "The prospect, which we have, is charming."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 143. "He is the person, who informed me of the matter."--*Ib.*, p. 134; *Cooper's Murray*, 120. "These are the trees, that produce no fruit."--*Ib.*, 134; and 120. "This is the book, which treats of the subject."--*Ib.*, 134; and 120. "The proposal was such, as pleased me."--*Cooper, Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 134. "Those, that sow in tears, shall reap in joy."--*Id., ib.*, pp. 118 and 124; and *Cooper's Murray*, p. 141. "The pen, with which I write, makes too large a mark."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 71. "Modesty makes large amends for the pain, it gives the persons, who labour under it, by the prejudice, it affords every worthy person in their favour."--*Ib.*, p. 80. "Irony is a figure, whereby we plainly intend something very different from what our words express."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 108. "Catachresis is a figure, whereby an improper word is used instead of a proper one."--*Ib.*, p. 109. "The man, whom you met at the

party, is a Frenchman."--*Frost's Practical Gram.*, p. 155.

UNDER RULE III.--OF MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

"John, James and Thomas are here: that is, John *and* James, &c."--*Cooper's Plain and Practical Grammar*, p. 153.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here used after *James*, or after *Thomas*, or again after *John*, in the latter clause; the three nouns being supposed to be in the same construction, and all of them nominatives to the verb *are*. But, according to Rule 3d for the Comma, "When more than two words or terms are connected in the same construction, or in a joint dependence on some other term, by conjunctions expressed or understood, the comma should be inserted after every one of them but the last; and, if they are nominatives before a verb, the comma should follow the last also." Therefore, the comma should be inserted after each; thus, "John, James, and Thomas, are here: that is, John, *and* James, and Thomas, are here."][463]

"Adverbs modify verbs adjectives and other adverbs."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 97. "To Nouns belong Person, Gender, Number and Case."--*Id.*, *Practical Lessons*, p. 12. "Wheat, corn, rye, and oats are extensively cultivated."--*Id.*, *ib.*, p. 13. "In many, the definitions, rules and leading facts are prolix, inaccurate and confused."--*Finch's Report on Gram.*, p. 3. "Most people consider it mysterious, difficult and useless."--*Ib.*, p. 3. "His father and mother, and uncle reside at Rome."--*Farnum's Gram.*, p. 11. "The relative pronouns are *who*, *which* and *that*."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 29. "*That* is sometimes a demonstrative, sometimes a relative and sometimes a conjunction."--*Id.*, *ib.*, p. 33. "Our reputation, virtue, and happiness greatly depend on the choice of our companions."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 92. "The spirit of true religion is social, kind and cheerful."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 81. "*Do*, *be*, *have* and *will* are sometimes principal verbs."--*Ib.*, p. 26. "John and Thomas and Peter reside at Oxford."--*Webster, Philos. Gram.*, p. 142; *Improved Gram.*, p. 96. "The most innocent pleasures are the most rational, the most delightful and the most durable."--*Id.*, *ib.*, pp. 215 and 151. "Love, joy, peace and blessedness are reserved for the good."--*Id.*, *ib.*, 215 and 151. "The husband, wife and children, suffered extremely."--*Murray's Gram.*, 4th Am. Ed., 8vo, p. 269. "The husband, wife, and children suffer extremely."--*Sanborn's Analytical Gram.*, p. 268. "He, you, and I have our parts assigned us."--*Ibid.*

"He moaned, lamented, tugged and tried, Repented, promised, wept and sighed."--*Felton's Gr.*, p. 108.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF ONLY TWO WORDS.

"Disappointments derange, and overcome, vulgar minds."--*Murray's Exercises*, p. 15.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the two verbs here connected by *and*, are needlessly separated from each other, and from their object following. But, according to Rule 4th, "When only two words or terms are connected by a conjunction, they should not be separated by the comma." Therefore, these two commas should be omitted; thus, "Disappointments derange and overcome vulgar minds."]

"The hive of a city, or kingdom, is in the best condition, when there is the least noise or buzz in it."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 171. "When a direct address is made, the noun, or pronoun, is in the nominative case independent."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 88. "The verbs *love* and *teach*, make *loved*, and *taught*, in the imperfect and participle."--*Ib.*, p. 97. "Neither poverty, nor riches were injurious to him."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 133. "Thou, or I am in fault."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 136. "A verb is a word that expresses action, or being."--*Day's District School Gram.*, pp. 11 and 61. "The Objective Case denotes the object of a verb, or a preposition."--*Ib.*, pp. 17 and 19. "Verbs of the second conjugation may be either transitive, or intransitive."--*Ib.*, p. 41. "Verbs of the fourth conjugation may be either transitive, or intransitive."--*Ib.*, 41. "If a verb does not form its past indicative by adding *d*, or *ed* to the indicative present, it is said to be *irregular*."--*Ib.*, 41. "The young lady is studying rhetoric, and logic."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 143. "He writes, and speaks the language very correctly."--*Ib.*, p. 148. "Man's happiness, or misery, is, in a great

measure, put into his own hands."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 183. "This accident, or characteristic of nouns, is called their *Gender*."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, 1843, p. 195.

"Grant that the powerful still the weak controul; Be Man the Wit, and Tyrant of the whole." --POPE: *Brit. Poets*, vi, 375.

UNDER EXCEPTION I.--TWO WORDS WITH ADJUNCTS.

"Franklin is justly considered the ornament of the new world and the pride of modern philosophy."--*Day's District School Gram.*, p. 88.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words *ornament* and *pride*, each of which has adjuncts, are here connected by *and* without a comma before it. But, according to Exception 1st to Rule 4th, "When the two words connected have several adjuncts, or when one of them has an adjunct that relates not to both, the comma is inserted." Therefore, a comma should be set before *and*; thus, "Franklin is justly considered the ornament of the New World, and the pride of modern philosophy."]

"Levity and attachment to worldly pleasures, destroy the sense of gratitude to him."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 183. "In the following Exercise, point out the adjectives and the substantives which they qualify."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 100. "When a noun or pronoun is used to explain or give emphasis to a preceding noun or pronoun."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 87. "Superior talents and *briliancy* of intellect do not always constitute a great man."--*Ib.*, p. 92. "A word that makes sense after an *article* or the phrase *speak of*, is a noun."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 12. "All feet used in poetry, are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables and four of three."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 123. "He would not do it himself nor let me do it."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 113.[464] "The old writers give examples of the subjunctive mode and give other modes to explain what is meant by the words in the subjunctive."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 352.

UNDER EXCEPTION II.--TWO TERMS CONTRASTED.

"We often commend as well as censure imprudently."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 214. "It is as truly a violation of the right of property, to take little as to take much; to purloin a book, or a penknife, as to steal money; to steal fruit as to steal a horse; to defraud the revenue as to rob my neighbour; to overcharge the public as to overcharge my brother; to cheat the postoffice as to cheat my friend."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, 1st Edition, p. 254. "The classification of verbs has been and still is a vexed question."--*Bullions, E. Grammar*, Revised Edition, p. 200. "Names applied only to individuals of a sort or class and not common to all, are called *Proper Nouns*."--*Id.*, *Practical Lessons*, p. 12. "A hero would desire to be loved as well as to be revered."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 108. "Death or some worse misfortune now divides them."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 133. "Alexander replied, 'The world will not permit two suns nor two sovereigns.'"--*Goldsmith's Greece*, Vol. ii, p. 113.

"From nature's chain, whatever link you strike, Tenth or ten thousandth, breaks the chain alike." --*Felton's Gram.*, p. 131.

UNDER EXCEPTION III.--ALTERNATIVE OF WORDS.

"*Metre* or *Measure* is the number of poetical feet which a verse contains."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 123. "The *Cæsura* or *division*, is the pause which takes place in a verse, and which divides it into two parts."--*Ib.*, 123. "It is six feet or one fathom deep."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 113. "A BRACE is used in poetry at the end of a triplet or three lines which rhyme together."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 142. "There are four principal kinds of English verse or poetical feet."--*Ib.*, p. 143. "The period or full stop denotes the end of a complete sentence."--*Sanborn's Analytical Gram.*, p. 271. "The scholar is to receive as many *jetons* or counters as there are words in the sentence."--*St. Quentin's Gram.*, p. 16. "That [thing] or the thing which purifies, fortifies also

the heart."--*Peirce's Gram.*, p. 74. "*That thing* or *the thing* which would induce a laxity in public or private morals, or indifference to guilt and wretchedness, should be regarded as the deadly Sirocco."--*Ib.*, 74. "What is elliptically *what thing* or *that thing* which."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 99. "*Demonstrate* means *show* or *point out precisely*."--*Ib.*, p. 139. "*The man* or *that man*, who endures to the end, shall be saved."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 73. UNDER EXCEPTION IV.--A SECOND COMMA.

"Reason, passion answer one great end."--*Bullions's E. Gram.*, p. 152; *Hiley's*, p. 112. "Reason, virtue answer one great aim."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 194; *Butler's*, 204. "Every good gift, and every perfect gift is from above."--*Felton's Gram.*, p. 90. "Every plant, and every tree produces others after its kind."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 91. "James, and not John was paid for his services."--*Ib.*, 91. "The single dagger, or obelisk [Dagger] is the second."--*Ib.*, p. 113. "It was I, not he that did it."--*St. Quentin's Gram.*, p. 152. "Each aunt, (and) each cousin hath her speculation."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 139. "'I shall see you *when* you come,' is equivalent to 'I shall see you *then*, or *at that time* when you come.'"--*Butler's Pract. Gram.*, p. 121.

"Let wealth, let honour wait the wedded dame, August her deed, and sacred be her fame."--*Pope*, p. 334.

UNDER RULE V.--OF WORDS IN PAIRS.

"My hopes and fears, joys and sorrows centre in you."--B. GREENLEAF: *Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 268.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here separates the second pair of nominatives from the verb. But, according to Rule 5th, "When successive words are joined in pairs by conjunctions, they should be separated in pairs by the comma." Therefore, an other comma should be inserted after *sorrows*; thus, "My hopes and fears, joys and sorrows, centre in you."]

"This mood implies possibility, or liberty, will, or obligation."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 113. "Substance is divided into Body, and Spirit into Extended and Thinking."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 253. "These consonants, [*d* and *t*,] like *p*, and *b*, *f*, and *v*, *k*, and hard *g*, and *s*, and *z*, are letters of the same organ."--*Walkers Dict.*, p. 41: *Principles*, No. 358. "Neither fig nor twist pigtail nor cavendish have passed my lips since, nor ever shall they again."--*Boston Cultivator*, Vol. vii, p. 36. "The words WHOEVER, or WHOSOEVER, WHICHEVER, or WHICHSOEVER, and WHATEVER, or WHATSOEVER are called COMPOUND RELATIVE PRONOUNS."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 23. "Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness govern the dative."--*Bullions, Lat. Gram.*, 12th Ed., 215.

UNDER RULE VI.--OF WORDS ABSOLUTE.

"Thy rod and thy staff they comfort me."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 135.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after *staff*, which, with the noun *rod*, is put absolute by pleonasm. But, according to Rule 6th, "Nouns or pronouns put absolute, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be here inserted; thus, "Thy rod and thy staff, they comfort me."--*Psalm xxiii*, 4.]

"Depart ye wicked."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 70. "He saith to his mother, Woman behold thy son."--*Gurney's Portable Evidences*, p. 44. "Thou God seest me."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 9; *Practical Lessons*, p. 13. "Thou, God seest me."--*Id.*, *E. Gram.*, Revised Ed., p. 195. "John write me a letter. Henry go home."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 356. "John; write a letter. Henry; go home."--*Ib.*, p. 317. "Now, G. Brown; let us reason together."--*Ib.*, p. 326. "Smith: You say on page 11, the objective case denotes the object."--*Ib.*, p. 344. "Gentlemen: will you always speak as you mean?"--*Ib.*, p. 352. "John: I sold my books to William for his brothers."--*Ib.*, p. 47. "Walter and Seth: I will take my things, and leave yours."--*Ib.*, p. 69. "Henry: Julia and Jane left their umbrella, and took yours."--*Ib.*, p. 73. "John; harness the horses and go to the mine for some coal. William; run to the store for a few pounds of tea."--*Ib.*, p. 160. "The king being dead the parliament was

dissolved."--*Chandler's Gram.*, p. 119.

"Cease fond nature, cease thy strife, And let me languish into life."--*Bullions's E. Gram.*, p. 173.

"Forbear great man, in arms renown'd, forbear."--*Ib.*, p. 174.

"Eternal sunshine of the spotless mind, Each prayer accepted and each wish resign'd."--*Hiley's Gr.*, p. 123.

UNDER RULE VII.--WORDS IN APPPOSITION.

"We the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice," &c.--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 200.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after the pronoun *We*, with which the word *people*, which has adjuncts, is in apposition. But, according to Rule 7th, "Words in apposition, (especially if they have adjuncts,) are generally set off by the comma." Therefore, an other comma should be here inserted; thus, "We, the people of the United States," &c.]

"The Lord, the covenant God of his people requires it."--*Anti-Slavery Magazine*, Vol. i, p. 73. "He as a patriot deserves praise."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 124. "Thomson the watchmaker and jeweller from London, was of the party."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 128. "Every body knows that the person here spoken of by the name of *the conqueror*, is William duke of Normandy."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 33. "The words *myself*, *thysself*, *himself*, *herself*, and their plurals *ourselves*, *yourselves*, and *themselves* are called Compound Personal Pronouns."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 22.

"For who to dumb forgetfulness a prey, This pleasing anxious being e'er resign'd, Left the warm precincts of the cheerful day, Nor cast one longing, ling'ring look behind?"--*U. Poems*, p. 68.

UNDER EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING APPPOSITION.

"Smith and Williams' store; Nicholas, the emperor's army."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 17. "He was named William, the conqueror."--*Ib.*, p. 80. "John, the Baptist, was beheaded."--*Ib.*, p. 87. "Alexander, the coppersmith, did me great harm."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 126. "A nominative in immediate apposition; as, 'The boy, *Henry*, speaks.'"--*Smart's Accidence*, p. 29. "A noun objective can be in apposition with some other; as, 'I teach the boy, *Henry*.'"--*Ib.*, p. 30.

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF ADJECTIVES.

"But he found me, not singing at my work ruddy with health vivid with cheerfulness; but pale and dejected, sitting on the ground, and chewing opium."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrases, "*ruddy with health*," and "*vivid with cheerfulness*," which begin with adjectives, are not here *commaed*. But, according to Rule 8th, "Adjectives, when something depends on them, or when they have the import of a dependent clause, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma." Therefore, two other commas should be here inserted; thus, "But he found me, not singing at my work, ruddy with health, vivid with cheerfulness; but pale," &c.--*Dr. Johnson*.]

"I looked up, and beheld an inclosure beautiful as the gardens of paradise, but of a small extent."--See *Key*. "A is an article, indefinite and belongs to '*book*.'"--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 10. "The first expresses the rapid movement of a troop of horse over the plain eager for the combat."--*Id., Lat. Gram.*, p. 296. "He [, the Indian chieftain, King Philip,] was a patriot, attached to his native soil; a prince true to his subjects and indignant of their wrongs; a soldier daring in battle firm in adversity patient of fatigue, of hunger, of every

variety of bodily suffering and ready to perish in the cause he had espoused."--See *Key*.

"For thee, who mindful of th' unhonour'd dead Dost in these lines their artless tale relate." --*Union Poems*, p. 68.

"Some mute inglorious Milton here may rest: Some Cromwell guiltless of his country's blood." --*Day's Gram.*, p. 117.

"Idle after dinner in his chair Sat a farmer ruddy, fat, and fair." --*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 125.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING ADJECTIVES.

"When an attribute becomes a title, or is emphatically applied to a name, it follows it; as Charles, the Great; Henry, the First; Lewis, the Gross."--*Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 153; *Improved Gram.*, p. 107. "Feed me with food, convenient for me."--*Cooper's Practical Gram.*, p. 118. "The words and phrases, necessary to exemplify every principle progressively laid down, will be found strictly and exclusively adapted to the illustration of the principles to which they are referred."--*Ingersoll's Gram., Pref.*, p. x. "The *Infinitive Mode* is that form of the verb which expresses action or being, unlimited by person, or number."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 35. "A man, diligent in his business, prospers."--*Frost's Practical Gram.*, p. 113.

"O wretched state! oh bosom, black as death!" --*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 118.

"O, wretched state! O, bosom, black as death!" --*Singer's Shak.*, Vol. ii, p. 494.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINITE VERBS.

"The Singular denotes *one*; the Plural *more* than one."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 12; *Pract. Lessons*, p. 16; *Lennie's Gram.*, p. 7.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after *Plural*, where the verb *denotes* is understood. But, according to Rule 9th, "Where a finite verb is understood, a comma is generally required." Therefore, a comma should be inserted at the place mentioned; thus, "The Singular denotes *one*; the Plural, *more* than one."]

"The *comma* represents the shortest pause; the *semicolon* a pause longer than the comma; the *colon* longer than the semicolon; and the *period* longer than the colon."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 111. "The comma represents the shortest pause; the semicolon a pause double that of the comma; the colon, double that of the semicolon; and the period, double that of the colon."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 151; *Pract. Lessons*, p. 127. "Who is applied only to persons; which to animals and things; what to things only; and that to persons, animals, and things."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 23. "A or *an* is used before the singular number only; *the* before either singular or plural."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 10. "Homer was the greater genius; Virgil the better artist."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 96. "Homer was the greater genius, Virgil the better artist."--POPE'S PREFACE: *British Poets*, Vol. vi, p. viii. "Words are formed of syllables; syllables of letters."--*St. Quentin's General Gram.*, p. 2. "The Conjugation of an active verb is styled the ACTIVE VOICE; and that of a passive verb the PASSIVE VOICE."--*Frost's El. of E. Gram.*, p. 19. "The CONJUGATION of an active verb is styled the ACTIVE VOICE, and that of a passive verb the PASSIVE VOICE."--*Smith's New. Gram.*, p. 171. "The possessive is sometimes called the genitive case; and the objective the accusative."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 12mo, p. 44. "Benevolence is allied to few vices; selfishness to fewer virtues."--*Kames, Art of Thinking*, p. 40. "Orthography treats of Letters, Etymology of Words, Syntax of Sentences, and Prosody of Versification."--*Hart's English Gram.*, p. 21.

"Earth praises conquerors for shedding blood; Heaven those that love their foes, and do them good."--See

Key.

UNDER RULE X.--OF INFINITIVES.

"His business is to observe the agreement or disagreement of words."--*Bullions, E. Grammar*, Revised Edition, p. 189.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here divides *to observe* from the preceding verb. But, according to Rule 10th, "The infinitive mood, when it follows a verb from which it must be separated, or when it depends on something remote or understood, is generally, with its adjuncts, set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be inserted after *is*; thus, "His business is, to observe the agreement or disagreement of words."]

"It is a mark of distinction to be made a member of this society."--*Farnum's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 25; 2d Ed., p. 23. "To distinguish the conjugations let the pupil observe the following rules."--*Day's D. S. Gram.*, p. 40. "He was now sent for to preach before the Parliament."--*Life of Dr. J. Owen*, p. 18. "It is incumbent on the young to love and honour their parents."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 83. "It is the business of every man to prepare for death."--*Id., ib.*, p. 83. "It argued the sincerest candor to make such an acknowledgement."--*Id., ib.*, p. 115. "The proper way is to complete the construction of the first member, and leave that of the second understood."--*Ib., ib.*, p. 125. "ENEMY is a name. It is a term of distinction given to a certain person to show the character in which he is represented."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 23. "The object of this is to preserve the soft sound of *c* and *g*."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 29. "The design of grammar is to facilitate the *reading, writing, and speaking* of a language."--*Barrett's Gram.*, 10th Ed., Pref., p. iii. "Four kinds of type are used in the following pages to indicate the portions that are considered more or less elementary."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 3.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF PARTICIPLES.

"The chancellor being attached to the king secured his crown."--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 114.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase, "being attached to the king," is not *commaed*. But, according to Rule 11th, "Participles, when something depends on them, when they have the import of a dependent clause, or when they relate to something understood, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma." Therefore, two commas should be here inserted; thus, "The chancellor, being attached to the king, secured his crown."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 66.]

"The officer having received his orders, proceeded to execute them."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 108. "Thus used it is in the present tense."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, Revised Ed., p. 33. "The *Imperfect* tense has three distinct forms corresponding to those of the present tense."--*Id., ib.*, p. 40. "Every possessive case is governed by some noun denoting the thing possessed."--*Id., ib.*, p. 87. "The word *that* used as a conjunction is preceded by a comma."--*Id., ib.*, p. 154. "His narrative being composed upon such good authority, deserves credit."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, p. 97. "The hen being in her nest, was killed and eaten there by the eagle."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo. p. 252. "Pronouns being used instead of nouns are subject to the same modifications."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 92. "When placed at the beginning of words they are consonants."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 14. "Man starting from his couch, shall sleep no more."--*Ib.*, p. 222. "*His* and *her* followed by a noun are possessive pronouns: not followed by a noun they are personal pronouns."--*Bullions, Practical Lessons*, p. 33.

"He with viny crown advancing, First to the lively pipe his hand addressed."--*Id., E. Gram.*, p. 83.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING PARTICIPLES.

"But when they convey the idea of many, acting individually, or separately, they are of the plural

number."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 15. "Two or more singular antecedents, connected by *and* require verbs and pronouns of the plural number."--*Ib.*, pp. 80 and 91. "Words ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i* when a termination is added."--*Butlers Gram.*, p. 11. "A noun, used without an article to limit it, is generally taken in its widest sense."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 30. "Two nouns, meaning the same person or thing, frequently come together."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 89. "Each one must give an account to God for the use, or the abuse of the talents, committed to him."--*Coopers Pl. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 133. "Two vowels, united in one sound, form a diphthong."--*Frost's El. of Gram.*, p. 6. "Three vowels, united in one sound, form a triphthong."--*Ib.* "Any word, joined to an adverb, is a secondary adverb."--*Barrett's Revised Gram.*, p. 68. "The person, spoken to, is put in the Second person. The person, spoken of, in the Third person."--*Cutler's Gram.*, p. 14. "A man, devoted to his business, prospers."--*Frost's Pr. Gram.*, p. 113.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF ADVERBS.

"So in indirect questions; as, 'Tell me *when* he will come.'"--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 121.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adverb *So* is not set off by the comma. But according to Rule 12th, "Adverbs, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they have not a close dependence on some particular word in the context, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be inserted after *So*; thus, "So, in indirect questions; as," &c.]

"Now when the verb tells what one person or thing does to another, the verb is transitive."--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 37. "Agreeably to your request I send this letter."--*Id.*, *E. Gram.*, p. 141. "There seems therefore, to be no good reason for giving them a different classification."--*Id.*, *E. Gram.*, p. 199. "Again the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchantman, seeking goodly pearls."--ALGER'S BIBLE: *Matt.*, xiii, 45. "Again the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea."--*Ib. ib.*, verse 47. "*Cease* however, is used as a transitive verb by our best writers."--*Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 171. "Time admits of three natural divisions, namely: Present, Past, and Future."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 37. "There are three kinds of comparison, namely: regular, irregular, and adverbial."--*Ib.*, p. 31. "There are five Personal Pronouns namely: *I, thou, he, she, and it.*"--*Ib.*, p. 22. "Nouns have three cases, viz. the Nominative, Possessive, and Objective."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 16; *P. Lessons*, p. 19. "Hence in studying Grammar, we have to study words."--*Frazee's Gram.*, p. 18. "Participles like Verbs relate to Nouns and Pronouns."--*Miller's Ready Grammarian*, p. 23. "The time of the participle like that of the infinitive is estimated from the time of the leading verb."--*Bullions, Lat. Gram.*, p. 97.

"The dumb shall sing the lame his crutch forego, And leap exulting like the bounding roe."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 123.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"But he said, Nay; lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, and SMITH'S: *Matt.*, xiii, 29.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is inserted after *lest*. But, according to Rule 13th, "Conjunctions, when they are separated from the principal clauses that depend on them, or when they introduce examples, are generally set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be put after the word *lest*; thus, "But he said, Nay; lest, while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them."--SCOTT'S BIBLE, ALGER'S, BRUCE'S.]

"Their intentions were good; but wanting prudence, they missed the mark at which they aimed."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 221. "The verb *be* often separates the name from its attribute; as war is expensive."--*Webster's Philos. Gram.*, p. 153. "*Either* and *or* denote an alternative; as 'I will take *either* road at your pleasure.'"--*Ib.*, p. 63; *Imp. Gram.*, 45. "*Either* is also a substitute for a name; as '*Either* of the roads is

good."--*Webster, both Grams.*, 63 and 45. "But alas! I fear the consequence."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 74. "Or if he ask a fish, will he for a fish give him a serpent?"--*Scott's Bible, and Smith's*. "Or if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion?"--*Smiths Bible*. "The infinitive sometimes performs the office of a nominative case, as 'To enjoy is to obey.'"--*POPE*.--*Cutler's Gram.*, p. 62. "The plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular, as *book, books*."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 12. "As 'I were to blame, if I did it.'"--*Smart's Accidence*, p. 16.

"Or if it be thy will and pleasure Direct my plough to find a treasure."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 124.

"Or if it be thy will and pleasure, Direct my plough to find a treasure."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 185.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF PREPOSITIONS.

"Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand in gender, number, and person."--*Butler's Practical Gram.*, pp. 141 and 148; *Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 150.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition *in* has not the comma before it, as the text requires. But, according to Rule 14th, "Prepositions and their objects, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or when they do not closely follow the words on which they depend, are generally set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be here inserted; thus, "Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand, in gender, number, and person." Or the words may be transposed, and the comma set before *with*; thus, "Pronouns agree *in* gender, number, and person, *with* the nouns for which they stand."]

"In the first two examples the antecedent is *person*, or something equivalent; in the last it is *thing*."--*Butler*, *ib.*, p. 53. "In what character he was admitted is unknown."--*Ib.*, p. 55. "To what place he was going is not known."--*Ib.*, p. 55. "In the preceding examples *John, Cæsar, and James* are the subjects."--*Ib.*, p. 59. "*Yes* is generally used to denote assent in the answer to a question."--*Ib.*, p. 120. "*That* in its origin is the passive participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb *thean, to take*."--*Ib.*, p. 127. "But in all these sentences *as* and *so* are *adverbs*."--*Ib.*, p. 127. "After an interjection or exclamatory sentence is placed the mark of exclamation."--*Blair's Gram.*, p. 116. "Intransitive verbs from their nature can have no distinction of voice."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 30. "To the inflection of verbs belong Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons."--*Id.*, *ib.*, p. 33; *Pract. Lessons*, p. 41. "*As* and *so* in the antecedent member of a comparison are properly *adverbs*."--*Id.*, *E. Gram.*, p. 113. "In the following Exercise point out the words in apposition."--*Id.*, *P. Lessons*, p. 103. "In the following Exercise point out the noun or pronoun denoting the possessor."--*Id.*, *ib.*, p. 105. "*Its* is not found in the Bible except by misprint."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 68. "No one's interest is concerned except mine."--*Ib.*, p. 70. "In most of the modern languages there are four concords."--*St. Quentin's Gen. Gram.*, p. 143. "In illustration of these remarks let us suppose a case."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 104. "On the right management of the emphasis depends the life of pronunciation."--*Ib.*, p. 172; *Murray's*, 8vo, p. 242.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Behold he is in the desert."--*SCOTT'S BIBLE: Matt.*, xxiv, 26.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the interjection *Behold*, which has usually a comma after it in Scripture, has here no point. But, according to Rule 15th, "Interjections that require a pause, though more commonly emphatic and followed by the ecphoneme, are sometimes set off by the comma." In this instance, a comma should be used; thus, "Behold, he is in the desert."--*Common Bible*.]

"And Lot said unto them, Oh not so my Lord."--*SCOTT'S BIBLE: Gen.*, xix, 18. "Oh let me escape thither, (is it not a little one?) and my soul shall live."--*SCOTT: Gen.*, xix, 20. "Behold! I come quickly."--*BIBLE*.--*Day's Gram.*, p. 74. "Lo! I am with you always."--*Day's Gram.*, pp. 10 and 73. "And lo! I am with you always."--*Ib.*, pp. 78 and 110. "And lo, I am with you alway."--*SCOTT'S BIBLE, and BRUCE'S*:

Matt., xxviii, 20. "Ha! ha! ha! how laughable that is."--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 83. "Interjections of *Laughter*,--Ha! he! hi! ho!"--*Wright's Gram.*, p. 121.

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF WORDS REPEATED.

"Lend lend your wings! I mount! I fly!"--*Example varied*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the repeated word *lend* has here no comma. But, according to Rule 16th, "A word emphatically repeated, is generally set off by the comma." In this instance, a comma is required after the former *lend*, but not after the latter; thus,

"Lend, lend your wings! I mount! I fly!"--*Pope's Poems*, p. 317.

]

"To bed to bed to bed. There is a knocking at the gate. Come come come. What is done cannot be undone. To bed to bed to bed."--See *Burgh's Speaker*, p. 130. "I will roar, that the duke shall cry, Encore encore let him roar let him roar once more once more."--See *ib.*, p. 136.

"Vital spark of heav'nly flame, Quit oh quit this mortal frame."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 126.

"Vital spark of heav'nly flame, Quit, oh quit, this mortal frame!"--*Bullions, E. Gr.*, p. 172.

"O the pleasing pleasing Anguish, When we love, and when we languish."--*Ward's Gram.*, p. 161.

"Praise to God immortal praise For the love that crowns our days!"--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 124.

UNDER RULE XVII.--OF DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"Thus, of an infant, we say 'It is a lovely creature.'"--*Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.*, p. 12.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here inserted between *say* and the citation which follows. But, according to Rule 17th, "A quotation, observation, or description, when it is introduced in close dependence on a verb, (as, *say*, *reply*, *cry*, or the like.) is generally separated from the rest of the sentence by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be put after *say*; as, "Thus, of an infant, we say, 'It is a lovely creature.'"]

"No being can state a falsehood in saying *I am*; for no one can utter it, if it is not true."--*Cardell's Gram.*, 18mo, p. 118. "I know they will cry out against this and say 'should he pay, means if he should pay.'"--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 352. "For instance, when we say '*the house is building*,' the advocates of the new theory ask, '*building what?*' We might ask in turn, when you say '*the field ploughs well*,' ploughs *what?* 'Wheat sells well,' sells *what?* If *usage* allows us to say '*wheat sells* at a dollar' in a sense that is not active, why may it not also allow us to say '*wheat is selling* at a dollar' in a sense that is not active?"--*Hart's English Gram.*, p. 76. "*Man* is accountable, equals *mankind* are accountable."--*S. Barrett's Revised Gram.*, p. 37. "Thus, when we say 'He may be reading,' *may* is the real verb; the other parts are verbs by name only."--*Smart's English Accidence*, p. 8. "Thus we say *an apple*, *an hour*, that two vowel sounds may not come together."--*Ib.*, p. 27. "It would be as improper to say *an unit*, as to say *an youth*; to say *an one*, as to say *an wonder*."--*Ib.*, p. 27. "When we say 'He died for the truth,' *for* is a preposition."--*Ib.*, p. 28. "We do not say 'I might go yesterday,' but 'I might have gone yesterday.'"--*Ib.*, p. 11. "By student, we understand one who has by matriculation acquired the rights of academical citizenship; but, by bursché, we understand one who has already spent a certain time at the university."--*Howitt's Student-Life in Germany*, p. 27.

SECTION II.--THE SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which are neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the comma, nor so little dependent as those which require the colon.

RULE I.--COMPLEX MEMBERS.

When two or more complex members, or such clauses as require the comma in themselves, are constructed into a period, they are generally separated by the semicolon: as, "In the regions inhabited by angelic natures, unmingled felicity forever blooms; joy flows there with a perpetual and abundant stream, nor needs any mound to check its course."--*Carter*. "When the voice rises, the gesture naturally ascends; and when the voice makes the falling inflection, or lowers its pitch, the gesture follows it by a corresponding descent; and, in the level and monotonous pronunciation of the voice, the gesture seems to observe a similar limitation, by moving rather in the horizontal direction, without much varying its elevation."--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 107.

"The wide, the unbounded prospect lies before me; But shadows, clouds, and darkness, rest upon it."--*Addison*.

RULE II.--SIMPLE MEMBERS.

When two or more simple members, or such clauses as complete their sense without subdivision, are constructed into a period; if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, they are usually separated by the semicolon: as, "Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 276. "Every thing grows old; every thing passes away; every thing disappears."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 115. "Alexander asked them the distance of the Persian capital; what forces the king of Persia could bring into the field; what the Persian government was; what was the character of the king; how he treated his enemies; what were the most direct ways into Persia."--*Whelpley's Lectures*, p. 175.

"A longer care man's helpless kind demands; That longer care contracts more lasting bands."--*Pope*.

RULE III.--OF APPPOSITION, &C.

Words in apposition, in disjunct pairs, or in any other construction, if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, and less than that of the colon, may be separated by the semicolon: as, "Pronouns have three cases; the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 51. "Judge, judgement; lodge, lodgement; acknowledge, acknowledgement."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 11. "Do not the eyes discover humility, pride; cruelty, compassion; reflection, dissipation; kindness, resentment?"--*Sheridan's Elocution*, p. 159. "This rule forbids parents to lie to children, and children to parents; instructors to pupils, and pupils to instructors; the old to the young, and the young to the old; attorneys to jurors, and jurors to attorneys; buyers to sellers, and sellers to buyers."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, p. 304.

"Make, made; have, had; pay, paid; say, said; leave, left; Dream, dreamt; mean, meant; reave and bereave have reft." --*Ward's Gr.*, p. 66.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE SEMICOLON.

UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPLEX MEMBERS.

"The buds spread into leaves, and the blossoms swell to fruit, but they know not how they grow, nor who causes them to spring up from the bosom of the earth."--*Day's E. Gr.*, p. 72.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the two chief members which compose this period, are separated only by the comma after "*fruit*." But, according to Rule 1st for the Semicolon, "When two or more complex members, or such clauses as require the comma in themselves, are constructed into a period, they are generally separated by the semicolon." Therefore, the pause after "*fruit*" should be marked by a semicolon.]

"But he used his eloquence chiefly against Philip, king of Macedon, and, in several orations, he stirred up the Athenians to make war against him."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 84. "For the sake of euphony, the *n* is dropped before a consonant, and because most words begin with a consonant, this of course is its more common form."--*Ib.*, p. 192. "But if I say 'Will *a* man be able to carry this burden?' it is manifest the idea is entirely changed, the reference is not to number, but to the species, and the answer might be 'No; but a horse will.'"--*Ib.*, p. 193. "In direct discourse, a noun used by a speaker or writer to designate himself, is said to be of the *first* person--used to designate the person addressed, it is said to be of the *second* person, and when used to designate a person or thing spoken of, it is said to be of the *third* person."--*Ib.*, p. 195. "Vice stings us, even in our pleasures, but virtue consoles us, even in our pains."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 84. "Vice is infamous though in a prince, and virtue honorable though in a peasant."--*Ib.*, p. 72. "Every word that is the name of a person or thing, is a *Noun*, because 'A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing.'"--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 83.

"This is the sword, with which he did the deed, And that the shield by which he was defended."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 56.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"A deathlike paleness was diffused over his countenance [sic--KTH], a chilling terror convulsed his frame; his voice burst out at intervals into broken accents."--*Principles of Eloquence*, p. 73.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the first pause in this sentence is not marked by a suitable point. But, according to Rule 2d for the Semicolon, "When two or more simple members, or such clauses as complete their sense without subdivision, are constructed into a period; if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, they are usually separated by the semicolon." Therefore, the comma after "*countenance*" should be changed to a semicolon.]

"The Lacedemonians never traded--they knew no luxury--they lived in houses built of rough materials--they lived at public tables--fed on black broth, and despised every thing effeminate or luxurious."--*Whelpley's Lectures*, p. 167. "Government is the agent. Society is the principal."--*Wayland's Moral Science*, 1st Ed., p. 377. "The essentials of speech were anciently supposed to be sufficiently designated by the *Noun* and the *Verb*, to which was subsequently added, the *Conjunction*"--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 191. "The first faint gleamings of thought in its mind are but the reflections from the parents' own intellect,--the first manifestations of temperament are from the contagious parental fountain,--the first aspirations of soul are but the warmings and promptings of the parental spirit."--*Jocelyn's Prize Essay*, p. 4. "*Older* and *oldest* refer to maturity of age, *elder* and *eldest* to priority of right by birth. *Farther* and *farthest* denote place or distance: *Further* and *furthest*, quantity or addition."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 148. "Let the divisions be *natural*, such as obviously suggest themselves to the mind, and as may aid your main design, and be easily remembered."--*Goldsbury's Manual of Gram.*, p. 91.

"Gently make haste, of labour not afraid: A hundred times consider what you've said."--*Dryden's Art of Poetry*.

UNDER RULE III.--OF APPPOSITION, &c.

(1.) "Adjectives are divided into two classes: *Adjectives denoting quality*, and *Adjectives denoting number*."--*Frost's Practical Gram.*, p. 31.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the colon after the word "*classes*," is not the most suitable sign of the pause required. But according to Rule 3d for the Semicolon, "Words in apposition, in disjunct pairs, or in any other construction if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, and less than that of the colon, maybe separated by the semicolon." In this case, the semicolon should have been preferred to the colon.]

(2.) "There are two classes of adjectives--*qualifying* adjectives, and *limiting* adjectives."--*Butler's Practical Gram.*, p. 33. (3.) "There are three Genders, the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*."--*Frost's Pract. Gram.*, p. 51; *Hiley's Gram.*, p. 12; *Alger's*, 16; *S. Putnam's*, 14; *Murray's*, 8vo, 37; and others. (4.) "There are three genders: the MASCULINE, the FEMININE, and the NEUTER."--*Murray's Gram.*, 12mo. p. 39; *Jaudon's*, 25. (5.) "There are three genders: The *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*."--*Hendrick's Gram.*, p. 15. (6.) "The Singular denotes ONE, and the Plural MORE THAN ONE."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 40. (7.) "There are three Cases viz., the *Nominative*, the *Possessive*, and the *Objective*"--*Hendrick's Gram.*, p. 7. (8.) "Nouns have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 41. (9.) "In English, nouns have three cases--the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--*R. C. Smith's New Gram.*, p. 47. (10.) "Grammar is divided into four parts, namely, ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, PROSODY."--*Ib.*, p. 41. (11.) "It is divided into four parts, viz. ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PROSODY."--*L. Murray's Grammars all; T. Smith's Gram.*, p. 5. (12.) "It is divided into four parts: viz. Orthography--Etymology--Syntax--Prosody."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 3. (13.) "It is divided into four parts, namely, Orthography. Etymology, Syntax and Prosody."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 5. (14.) "It is divided into four parts: viz. *Orthography, Etymology, Syntax and Prosody*."--*Hendrick's Gram.*, p. 11. (15.) "Grammar is divided into four parts: viz. Orthography, Etymology. Syntax and Prosody."--*Chandler's Gram.*, p. 13. (16.) "It is divided into four parts: Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pract. Gram.*, p. 1; *Frost's Pract. Gram.*, 19. (17.) "English grammar has been usually divided into four parts, viz: Orthography, Etymology, Syntax and Prosody."--*Nutting's Gram.*, p. 13. (18.) "Temperance leads to happiness, intemperance to misery."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 137 *Hart's*, 180. (19.) "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues, an enemy his crimes."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 137 (20.) "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues: an enemy his crimes."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo., p. 325 (21.) "Many writers use a *plural noun* after the second of two numeral adjectives, thus, 'The first and second pages are torn.'"--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, 5th Ed., p. 145 (22.) "Of these, the Latin has six, the Greek, five, the German, four, the Saxon, six, the French, three, &c."--*Id., ib.*, p. 196.

"In (*ing*) it ends, when *doing* is express'd, In *d, t, n*, when *suffering's* confess'd." --*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 93.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"In old books *i* is often used for *j*, *v* for *u*, *vv* for *w*, and *ii* or *ij* for *y*."--*Hart's E. Gram.*, p. 22. "The forming of letters into words and syllables is also called *Spelling*."--*Ib.*, p. 21. "Labials are formed chiefly by the *lips*, dentals by the *teeth*, palatals by the *palate*, gutturals by the *throat*, nasals by the *nose*, and linguals by the *tongue*."--*Ib.*, p. 25. "The labials are *p, b, f*, *v*; the dentals *t, d, s, z*; the palatals *g* soft and *j*; the gutturals *k, q*, and *c* and *g* hard; the nasals *m* and *n*; and the linguals *l* and *r*."--*Ib.*, p. 25. "Thus, 'the man *having finished* his letter, will carry it to the post office.'"--*Ib.*, p. 75. "Thus, in the sentence 'he had a dagger *concealed* under his cloak,' *concealed* is passive, signifying *being* concealed; but in the former combination, it goes to make up a form, the force of which is active."--*Ib.*, p. 75. "Thus, in Latin, 'he had concealed the dagger' would be '*pugionem abdiderat*;' but 'he had the dagger concealed' would be '*pugionem abditum habebat*.'"--*Ib.*, p. 75. "Here, for instance, means 'in this place,' *now*, 'at this time,' &c."--*Ib.*, p. 90. "Here *when* both declares the *time* of the action, and so is an adverb, and also *connects* the two verbs, and so is a conjunction."--*Ib.*, p. 91. "These words were all no doubt originally other parts of speech, viz.: verbs, nouns, and adjectives."--*Ib.*, p. 92. "The principal parts of a sentence are the subject, the attribute, and the object, in other words the nominative, the verb, and the objective."--*Ib.*, p. 104. "Thus, the adjective is connected with the noun, the adverb with the verb or adjective, pronouns with their antecedents, &c."--*Ib.*, p. 104. "*Between* refers to two, *among* to more than two."--*Ib.*, p. 120. "*At* is used after a verb of *rest*, *to* after a verb of *motion*."--*Ib.*, p. 120. "Verbs are of three kinds, Active, Passive, and Neuter."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 19; *Bullions, Prin.*, 2d Ed., p. 29

"Verbs are divided into two classes: Transitive and Intransitive."--*Hendrick's Gram.*, p. 28 "The Parts of Speech in the English language are nine, viz. The Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition. Interjection and Conjunction."--*Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.*, p. 7 "Of these the Noun, Pronoun, and Verb are declined, the rest are indeclinable."--*Id., ib.*, p. 7; *Practical Lessons*, p. 9. "The first expression is called the 'Active form.' The second the 'Passive form.'"--*Welds Gram.*, 2d Ed., p. 83; Abridged, p. 66.

"O 'tis a godlike privilege to save, And he that scorns it is himself a slave."--*Cowper*, Vol. i., p. 123

SECTION III.--THE COLON.

The Colon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which are neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the semicolon, nor so little dependent as those which require the period.

RULE I.--ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

When the preceding clause is complete in itself, but is followed by some additional remark or illustration, especially if no conjunction is used, the colon is generally and properly inserted: as, "Avoid evil doers: in such society, an honest man may become ashamed of himself."--"See that moth fluttering incessantly round the candle: man of pleasure, behold thy image!"--*Art of Thinking*, p. 94. "Some things we can, and others we cannot do: we can walk, but we cannot fly."--*Beanie's Moral Science*, p. 112.

"Remember Heav'n has an avenging rod: To smite the poor, is treason against God."--*Cowper*.

RULE II.--GREATER PAUSES.

When the semicolon has been introduced, or when it must be used in a subsequent member, and a still greater pause is required within the period, the colon should be employed: as, "Princes have courtiers, and merchants have partners; the voluptuous have companions, and the wicked have accomplices: none but the virtuous can have friends."--"Unless the truth of our religion be granted, a Christian must be the greatest monster in nature: he must at the same time be eminently wise, and notoriously foolish; a wise man in his practice, and a fool in his belief: his reasoning powers must be deranged by a constant delirium, while his conduct never swerves from the path of propriety."--*Principles of Eloquence*, p. 80.

"A decent competence we fully taste; It strikes our sense, and gives a constant feast: More we perceive by dint of thought alone; The rich must labour to possess their own."--*Young*.

RULE III.--INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

A quotation introduced without a close dependence on a verb or a conjunction, is generally preceded by the colon; as, "In his last moments, he uttered these words: 'I fall a sacrifice to sloth and luxury.'"--"At this the king hastily retorted: 'No put-offs, my lord; answer me presently.'"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 367. "The father addressed himself to them to this effect: 'O my sons, behold the power of unity!'"--*Ripplingham's Art of Speaking*, p. 85.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE COLON.

UNDER RULE I.--ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

"Of is a preposition, it expresses the relation between *fear* and *Lord*."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 133.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the additional remark in this sentence is not sufficiently separated from the main clause, by the comma after the word *preposition*. But, according to Rule 1st for the Colon, "When the preceding clause is complete in itself, but is followed by some additional remark or illustration, especially if no conjunction is used, the colon is generally and properly inserted." Therefore, the colon should here be substituted for the comma.]

"Wealth and poverty are both temptations to man; *that* tends to excite pride, *this* discontentment."--*Id., ib.*, p. 93; see also *Lennie's Gram.*, p. 81; *Murray's*, 56; *Ingersoll's* 61; *Alger's*, 25; *Merchant's*, 44; *Hart's*, 137; *et al.* "Religion raises men above themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; *this* binds them down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable earth, *that* opens for them a prospect in the skies."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 98; *Lennie's Gram.*, p. 81. "Love not idleness, it destroys many."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 71. "Children, obey your parents; honour thy father and mother, is the first commandment with promise."--*Bullions, Pract. Lessons*, p. 88. "Thou art my hiding place, and my shield, I hope in thy promises."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 56. "The sun shall not smite me by day nor the moon by night. The Lord will preserve from evil. He will save my soul."--*BIBLE.*--*Id.*, p. 57. "Here Greece is assigned the highest place in the class of objects among which she is numbered--the nations of antiquity--she is one of them."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 79.

"From short (as usual) and disturb'd repose I wake; how happy they who wake no more!"--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 216.

UNDER RULE II.--GREATER PAUSES.

"A taste *of* a thing, implies actual enjoyment of it; but a taste for it, implies only capacity for enjoyment; as, 'When we have had a true taste of the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish *for* those of vice.'"--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 147.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pause after *enjoyment* is marked only by a semicolon. But, according to Rule 2d for the Colon, "When the semicolon has been introduced, or when it must be used in a subsequent member, and a still greater pause is required within the period, the colon should be employed." Therefore, the second semicolon here should be changed to a colon.]

"The Indicative mood simply declares a thing; as, He *loves*; He is *loved*; Or, it asks a question; as, *Lovest* thou me?"--*Id., ib.*, p. 35; *Pract. Lessons*, p. 43; *Lennie's Gr.*, p. 20. "The Indicative Mood simply indicates or declares a thing; as, 'He *loves*, he is *loved*;' or it asks a question: as, 'Does he love?' 'Is he loved?'"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 63; 12mo, p. 63. "The Imperfect (or Past) tense represents an action or event indefinitely as past; as, Cæsar *came*, and *saw*, and *conquered*; or it represents the action definitely as unfinished and continuing at a certain time, now entirely past; as, My father *was coming* home when I met him."--*Bullions, P. L.*, p. 45; *E. Gr.*, 39. "Some nouns have no plural; as, *gold, silver, wisdom, health*; others have no singular; as, *ashes, shears, tongs*; others are alike in both numbers; as, *sheep, deer, means, news*"--*Day's School Gram.*, p. 15. "The same verb may be transitive in one sense, and intransitive in another; thus, in the sentence, 'He believes my story,' *believes* is transitive; but in this phrase, 'He believes in God,' it is intransitive."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 61. "Let the divisions be *distinct*; one part should not include another, but each should have its proper place, and be of importance in that place, and all the parts well fitted together and united, should present a whole."--*Goldsbury's C. S. Gram.*, p. 91. "In the use of the transitive verb there are always *three* things implied,--the *actor*, the *act*, and the *object* acted upon. In the use of the intransitive there are only *two*--the *subject* or thing spoken of, and the *state*, or *action* attributed to it."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*

"Why labours reason? instinct were as well; Instinct far better; what can choose, can err." --*Brit. Poets*, Vol. viii.

UNDER RULE III.--INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"The sentence may run thus; 'He is related to the same person, and is governed by him.'"--*Hart's Gram.*

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the semicolon is here inserted, in an unusual manner, before a quotation not closely dependent. But, according to Rule 3d for the Colon, "A quotation introduced without a close dependence on a verb or a conjunction, is generally preceded by the colon." Therefore, the colon should be here preferred.]

"Always remember this ancient proverb, 'Know thyself.'"--*Hallock's Gram.* "Consider this sentence. The boy runs swiftly."--*Frazer's Gram.*, Stereotype Ed. 1st Ed. "The comparative is used thus; 'Greece was more polished than any *other* nation of antiquity.' The same idea is expressed by the superlative when the word *other* is left out. Thus, 'Greece was the most polished nation of antiquity'"--*Bullions, E. Gram.* see *Lennie's Gram.* "Burke, in his speech on the Carnatic war, makes the following allusion to the well known fable of Cadmus's sowing dragon's teeth;--'Every day you are fatigued and disgusted with this cant, the Carnatic is a country that will soon recover, and become instantly as prosperous as ever. They think they are talking to innocents, who believe that by the sowing of dragon's teeth, men may come up ready grown and ready made.'"--*Hiley's Gram.*, see also *Hart's*.

"For sects he car'd not, 'they are not of us, Nor need we, brethren, their concerns discuss.'"--*Crabbe*.

"Habit with him was all the test of truth, 'It must be right: I've done it from my youth.' Questions he answered in as brief a way, 'It must be wrong--it was of yesterday.'"--*Id., Borough.*

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"This would seem to say, 'I doubt nothing save one thing, namely, that he will fulfil his promise;' whereas, that is the very thing not doubted."--*Bullions, E. Gram.* "The common use of language requires that a distinction be made between *morals* and *manners*, the former depend upon internal dispositions, the latter on outward and visible accomplishments."--*Beattie's Moral Science.* "Though I detest war in each particular fibre of my heart yet I honor the Heroes among our fathers who fought with bloody hand: Peacemakers in a savage way they were faithful to their light; the most inspired can be no more, and we, with greater light, do, it may be, far less."--*Parker's Idea of a Church.* "The Article *the*, like *a*, must have a substantive joined with it, whereas *that*, like *one*, may have it understood; thus, speaking of books, I may select one, and say, 'give me that;' but not, 'give me *the*;' 'give me *one*;' but not 'give me *a*.'"--*Bullions's E. Gram.* "The Present tense has three distinct forms--the *simple*; as, I read; the *emphatic*; as, I do read; and the *progressive*; as, I am reading'."--*Ib.* "The tenses in English are usually reckoned six. The *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *Future*, and the *Future Perfect*."--*Ib.* "There are three participles, the Present or Active, the Perfect or Passive, and the Compound Perfect; as, *loving*, *loved*, *having loved*."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 2d Edition; *Alger's*; *Fisk's*; *Bacon's*. "The Participles are three, the Present, the Perfect, and the Compound Perfect; as, *loving*, *loved*, *having loved*."--*Hart's Gram.* "Will is conjugated regularly, when it is a principal verb, as, present, I will, past, I willed, &c."--*Frazer's Gram.*, Ster. Ed.; Old Ed. "And both sounds of *x* are compound, one is that of *gz*, and the other, that of *ks*"--*Ib.*, Ster. Ed. "The man is happy: he is benevolent: he is useful."--*Cooper's Murray; Pl. and Pract. Gr.* "The Pronoun stands instead of the noun; as, The man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is useful."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 2d Ed. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word: as, 'The man is happy,' *he* is benevolent, *he* is useful."--*Ib.* "A pronoun is a word, used in the room of a noun, or as a substitute for one or more words, as: the man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is useful."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*, *his Abridg. of Mur.* "A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of beings, or things, as: animal; tree; insect; fish; fowl"--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.* "Nouns have three persons: the first; the second; and the third."--*Ib.*

"(Eve) so saying, her rash hand in evil hour Forth reaching to the fruit; she pluck'd, she ate Earth felt the wound: and nature from her seat, Sighing through all her works, gave signs of wo, That all was lost."--*Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.*

SECTION IV.--THE PERIOD.

The Period, or Full Stop, is used to mark an entire and independent sentence, whether simple or compound.

RULE I.--DISTINCT SENTENCES.

When a sentence, whether long or short, is complete in respect to sense, and independent in respect to construction, it should be marked with the period: as, "Every deviation from truth is criminal. Abhor a falsehood. Let your words be ingenuous. Sincerity possesses the most powerful charm."--"The force of a true individual is felt through every clause and part of a right book; the commas and dashes are alive with it."--*R. W. Emerson.*

"By frequent trying, TROY was won. All things, by trying, may be done."--*Lloyd*, p. 184.

RULE II.--ALLIED SENTENCES.

The period is often employed between two sentences which have a general connexion, expressed by a personal pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive adverb: as, "The selfish man languishes in his narrow circle of pleasures. *They* are confined to what affects his own interests. *He* is obliged to repeat the same gratifications, till they become insipid. *But* the man of virtuous sensibility moves in a wider sphere of felicity."--*Blair.*

"And whether we shall meet again, I know not. *Therefore* our everlasting farewell take."--*Shak.*, J. C.

RULE III.--ABBREVIATIONS.

The period is generally used after abbreviations, and very often to the exclusion of other points; but, as in this case it is not a constant sign of pause, other points may properly follow it, if the words written in full would demand them: as, A. D. for *Anno Domini*;--Pro tem. for *pro tempore*;--Ult. for *ultimo*;--i.e. for *id est*, that is;--Add., Spect. No. 285; i.e., *Addison, in the Spectator, Number 285th.*

"Consult the statute; 'quart.' I think, it is, 'Edwardi sext.,' or 'prim. et quint. Eliz.'"--*Pope*, p. 399.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--It seems to be commonly supposed, whether correctly or not, that short sentences which are in themselves distinct, and which in their stated use must be separated by the period, may sometimes be rehearsed as examples, in so close succession as not to require this point: as, "But if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. He saith unto him, Which? Jesus said, Thou shalt do no murder, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Honour thy father and thy mother: and, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself."--SCOTT, ALGER, AND OTHERS: *Matt.*, xix, 17, 18, 19. "The following sentences exemplify the possessive pronouns:--'My lesson is finished; *Thy* books are defaced; He loves *his* studies; She performs *her* duty; We own *our* faults; *Your* situation is distressing; I admire *their* virtues.'"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 55. What mode of pointing is best adapted to examples like these, is made a very difficult question by the great diversity of practice in such cases. The semicolon, with guillemets, or the semicolon and a dash, with the quotation marks, may sometimes be sufficient; but I see no good reason why the *period* should not in general be preferred to the comma, the semicolon, or the colon, where full and distinct sentences are thus recited. The foregoing passage of Scripture I have examined in five different languages, ten different translations, and seventeen different editions which happened to be at hand. In these it is found pointed in twelve different ways. In Leusden's, Griesbach's, and Aitton's Greek, it has nine colons; in Leusden's Latin from Montanus, eight; in the common French version, six; in the old Dutch, five; in our

Bibles, usually one, but not always. In some books, these commandments are mostly or wholly divided by periods; in others, by colons; in others, by semicolons; in others, as above, by commas. The first four are negative, or prohibitory; the other two, positive, or mandatory. Hence some make a greater pause after the fourth, than elsewhere between any two. This greater pause is variously marked by the semicolon, the colon, or the period; and the others, at the same time, as variously, by the comma, the semicolon, or the colon. Dr. Campbell, in his *Four Gospels*, renders and points the latter part of this passage thus: "Jesus answered, 'Thou shalt not commit murder. Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal. Thou shalt not give false testimony. Honour thy father and mother; and love thy neighbour as thyself.'" But the corresponding passage in Luke, xviii 20, he exhibits thus: "Thou knowest the commandments. Do not commit adultery; do not commit murder; do not steal; do not give false testimony; honour thy father and thy mother." This is here given as present advice, *referring to* the commandments, but not actually *quoting* them; and, in this view of the matter, semicolons, not followed by capitals may be right. See the common reading under Rule XIV for Capitals, on page 166.

OBS. 2.--Letters written for *numbers*, after the manner of the Romans, though read as words, are never words in themselves; nor are they, except perhaps in one or two instances, abbreviations of words. C, a hundred, comes probably from *Centum*; and M, a thousand, is the first letter of *Mille*; but the others, I, V, X, L, D, and the various combinations of them all, are direct numerical signs, as are the Arabic figures. Hence it is not really necessary that the period should be set after them, except at the end of a sentence, or where it is suitable as a sign of pause. It is, however, and always has been, a prevalent custom, to mark numbers of this kind with a period, as if they were abbreviations; as, "While pope Sixtus V. who succeeded Gregory XIII. fulminated the thunder of the church against the king of Navarre."--*Smollet's Eng.*, iii, 82. The period is here inserted where the reading requires only the comma; and, in my opinion, the latter point should have been preferred. Sometimes, of late, we find other points set after this period; as, "Otho II., surnamed the Bloody, was son and successor of Otho I.; he died in 983."--*Univ. Biog. Dict.* This may be an improvement on the former practice, but double points are not *generally* used, even where they are proper; and, if the period is not indispensable, a simple change of the point would perhaps sooner gain the sanction of general usage.

OBS. 3.--Some writers, judging the period to be wrong or needless in such cases, omit it, and insert only such points as the reading requires; as, "For want of doing this, Judge Blackstone has, in Book IV, Chap. 17, committed some most ludicrous errors."--*Cobbett's Gram.*, Let. XIX, ¶ 251. To insert points needlessly, is as bad a fault as to omit them when they are requisite. In Wm. Day's "Punctuation Reduced to a System," (London, 1847,) we have the following obscure and questionable RULE: "*Besides denoting a grammatical pause, the full point is used to mark contractions, and is requisite after every abbreviated word, as well as after numeral letters.*"--Page 102. This seems to suggest that both a pause and a contraction may be denoted by the same point. But what are properly called "*contractions*," are marked not by the period, but by the apostrophe, which is no sign of pause; and the confounding of these with words "*abbreviated*," makes this rule utterly absurd. As for the period "*after numeral letters*," if they really needed it at all, they would need it *severally*, as do the abbreviations; but there are none of them, which do not uniformly dispense with it, when not final to the number; and they may as well dispense with it, in like manner, whenever they are not final to the sentence.

OBS. 4.--Of these letters, Day gives this account: "*M. denotes mille, 1,000; D., dimidium mille, half a thousand, or 500; C. centum, 100; L. represents the lower half of C., and expresses 50; X. resembles V. V., the one upright, the other inverted, and signifies 10; V. stands for 5, because its sister letter U is the fifth vowel; and I. signifies 1, probably because it is the plainest and simplest letter in the alphabet.*"--*Day's Punctuation*, p. 103. There is some fancy in this. Dr. Adam says, "The letters employed for this purpose [i.e., to express *numbers*.] were C. I. L. V. X."--*Latin and Eng. Gram.*, p. 288. And again: "A thousand is marked thus CI[C-reversed], which in later times was *contracted* into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, I[C-reversed], or by *contraction*, D."--*Ib.* Day inserts periods thus: "IV. means 4; IX., 9; XL., 40; XC., 90; CD., 400; CM., 900."--Page 703. And again: "4to., *quarto*, the fourth of a sheet of paper; 8vo., *octavo*, the eighth part of a sheet of paper; 12mo., *duodecimo*, the twelfth of a sheet of paper; N. L., 8°, 9', 10", North latitude, eight

degrees, nine minutes, ten seconds."--Page 104. But IV may mean 4, without the period; 4to or 8vo has no more need of it than 4th or 8th; and N. L. 8° 9' 10" is an expression little to be mended by commas, and not at all by additional periods.

OBS. 5.--To allow the period of abbreviation to supersede all other points wherever it occurs, as authors generally have done, is sometimes plainly objectionable; but, on the other hand, to suppose double points to be always necessary wherever abbreviations or Roman numbers have pauses less than final, would sometimes seem more nice than wise, as in the case of Biblical and other references. A concordance or a reference Bible pointed on this principle, would differ greatly from any now extant. In such references, *numbers* are very frequently pointed with the period, with scarcely any regard to the pauses required in the reading; as, "DIADEM, Job 29. 14. Isa. 28. 5. and 62. 3. Ezek. 21. 26."--*Brown's Concordance*. "Where no vision is, the people perish, Prov. xxix. 18. Acts iv. 12. Rom. x. 14."--*Brown's Catechism*, p. 104. "What I urge from 1. Pet. 3. 21. in my Apology."--*Barclay's Works*, iii, 498. "I. Kings--II. Kings."--*Alger's Bible*, p. iv. "Compare iii. 45. with 1. Cor. iv. 13."--*Scott's Bible, Pref. to Lam. Jer.* "Hen. v. A. 4. Sc. 5."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 41. "See Rule iii. Rem. 10."--*Ib.*, p. 162. Some set a *colon* between the number of the chapter and that of the verse; which mark serves well for distinction, where both numbers are in Arabic figures: as, "He that formed the eye, shall he not see?"--Ps. 94: 9."--*Wells's Gram.*, p. 126. "He had only a lease-hold title to his service. Lev. 25: 39, Exod. 21: 2."--*True Amer.*, i. 29. Others adopt the following method which seems preferable to any of the foregoing: "Isa. Iv, 3; Ezek. xviii, 20; Mic. vi, 7."--*Gurney's Essays*, p. 133. Churchill, who is uncommonly nice about his punctuation, writes as follows: "*Luke*. vi, 41, 42. See also Chap. xv, 8; and *Phil.*, iii. 12."--*New Gram.*, p. 353.

OBS. 6.--Arabic figures used as ordinals, or used for the numeral adverbs, *first*, or *firstly*, *secondly*, *thirdly*, &c., are very commonly pointed with the period, even where the pause required after them is less than a full stop; as, "We shall consider these words, 1. as expressing *resolution*; and 2. as expressing *futurity*."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 106. But the period thus followed by a small letter, has not an agreeable appearance, and some would here prefer the comma, which is, undoubtedly, better suited to the pause. A fitter practice, however, would be, to change the expression thus: "We shall consider these words, 1st, as expressing *resolution*; and, 2dly, as expressing *futurity*."

OBS. 7.--Names vulgarly shortened, then written as they are spoken, are not commonly marked with a period; as, *Ben* for *Benjamin*. "O RARE BEN JOHNSON!"--*Biog. Dict.*

"From whence the inference is plain, Your friend MAT PRIOR wrote with pain." --LLOYD: *B. P.*, Vol. viii, p. 188.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE PERIOD.

UNDER RULE I.--DISTINCT SENTENCES.

"The third person is the position of the name spoken of; as, Paul and Silas were imprisoned, the earth thirsts, the sun shines."--*Frazee's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 21; Ster. Ed., p. 23.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because three totally distinct sentences are here thrown together as examples, with no other distinction than what is made by two commas. But, according to Rule 1st for the Period, "When a sentence, whether long or short, is complete in respect to sense, and independent in respect to construction, it should be marked with the period." Therefore, these commas should be periods; and, of course, the first letter of each example must be a capital.]

"Two and three and four make nine; if he were here, he would assist his father and mother, for he is a dutiful

son; they live together, and are happy, because they enjoy each other's society; they went to Roxbury, and tarried all night, and came back the next day."--*Goldsbury's Parsing Lessons in his Manual of E. Gram.*, p. 64.

"We often resolve, but seldom perform; she is wiser than her sister; though he is often advised, yet he does not reform; reproof either softens or hardens its object; he is as old as his classmates, but not so learned; neither prosperity, nor adversity, has improved him; let him that standeth, take heed lest he fall; he can acquire no virtue, unless he make some sacrifices."--*Ibid.*

"Down from his neck, with blazing gems array'd, Thy image, lovely Anna! hung portray'd, Th' unconscious figure, smiling all serene, Suspended in a golden chain was seen,"--*S. Barrett's E. Gr.*, p. 92.

UNDER RULE II.--ALLIED SENTENCES.

"This life is a mere prelude to another, which has no limits, it is a little portion of duration. As death leaves us, so the day of judgment will find us."--*Merchant's School Gram.*, p. 76.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pause after *limits*, which is sufficient for the period, is marked only by the comma. But, according to Rule 2d, "The period is often employed between two sentences which have a general connexion, expressed by a personal pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive adverb." It would improve the passage, to omit the first comma, change the second to a period, and write the pronoun *it* with a capital. *Judgment* also might be bettered with an *e*, and *another* is properly two words.]

"He went from Boston to New York; he went from Boston; he went to New York; in walking across the floor, he stumbled over a chair."--*Goldsbury's Manual of E. Gram.*, p. 62.

"I saw him on the spot, going along the road, looking towards the house; during the heat of the day, he sat on the ground, under the shade of a tree."--*Id.*, *ib.*

"George came home, I saw *him* yesterday, here; the word *him*, can extend only to the individual *George*"--*S. Barrett's E. Gram.*, 10th Ed., p. 45.

"Commas are often used now, where parentheses were formerly; I cannot, however, esteem this an improvement."--See the *Key*.

"Thou, like a sleeping, faithless sentinel Didst let them pass unnoticed, unimproved, And know, for that thou slumb'rest on the guard, Thou shalt be made to answer at the bar For every fugitive." --*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 222; *Enfield's Sp.*, p. 380.

UNDER RULE III.--OF ABBREVIATIONS.

"The term pronoun (Lat *pronomen*) strictly means a word used for, or instead of a noun."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 198.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the syllable here put for the word *Latin*, is not marked with a period. But, according to Rule 3d, "The period is generally used after abbreviations, and very often to the exclusion of other points; but, as in this case it is not a constant sign of pause, other points may properly follow it, if the words written in full would demand them." In this instance, a period should mark the abbreviation, and a comma be set after *of*. By analogy, *in stead* is also more properly two words than one.]

"The period is also used after abbreviations; as, A. D. P. S. G. W. Johnson."--*Butler's Pract. Gram.*, p. 211.

"On this principle of classification, the later Greek grammarians divided words into eight classes or parts of speech, viz: the Article, Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction."--*Bullions*,

E. Gram., p. 191.

"*Metre* is not confined to verse: there is a tune in all good prose; and Shakspeare's was a sweet one.'--*Epea Pter*, II, 61. Mr. H. Tooke's idea was probably just, agreeing with Aristotle's, but not accurately expressed."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 385.

"Mr. J. H. Tooke was educated at Eton and at Cambridge, in which latter college he took the degree of A. M; being intended for the established church of England, he entered into holy orders when young, and obtained the living of Brentford, near London, which he held ten or twelve years."--*Div. of Purley*, 1st Amer. Edition, Vol. i, p. 60.

"I, nor your plan, nor book condemn, But why your name, and why A. M!"--*Lloyd*.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"If thou *turn* away thy foot from the sabbath, &c. *Isaiah*. lviii. 7."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 67. "He that hath eeris of herynge, *here he*. *Wiclif*. Matt xi."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 76. "See General Rules for Spelling, iii., v., and vii."--*Butler's Gram.*, p. 81. "False witnesses *did* rise up.' *Ps*. xxxv. ii."--*Butlers Gram.*, p. 105.

"An *explicative* sentence is used for explaining. An *interrogative* sentence for enquiring. An *imperative* sentence for commanding."--*S. Barrett's Prin. of Language*, p. 87. "In October, corn is gathered in the field by men, who go from hill to hill with baskets, into which they put the ears; Susan labors with her needle for a livelihood; notwithstanding his poverty, he is a man of integrity."--*Goldsbury's Parsing, Manual of E. Gram.*, p. 62.

"A word of one syllable, is called a monosyllable. A word of two syllables; a dissyllable. A word of three syllables; a trissyllable. A word of four or more syllables; a polysyllable."--*Frazer's Improved Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 15. "A word of one syllable, is called a monosyllable. A word of two syllables, a dissyllable. A word of three syllables, a trissyllable. A word of four or more syllables, a polysyllable."--*Frazer's Improved Gram.*, Ster. Ed., p. 17.

"If I say, '*if it did not rain*, I would take a walk;' I convey the idea that it *does rain*, at the time of speaking, *If it rained*, or *did it rain*, in the present time, implies, it does not rain; *If it did not rain*, or *did it not rain*, in present time, implies that *it does rain*; thus in this peculiarity, an *affirmative* sentence always implies a *negation*, and a *negative sentence* an *affirmation*."--*Frazer's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 61; Ster. Ed., 62. "*If I were loved*, and, *were I loved*, imply, I am *not* loved; *if I were not loved*, and, *were I not loved*, imply, I am loved; a negative sentence implies an affirmation; and an affirmative sentence implies a negation, in these forms of the subjunctive."--*Ib.*, Old Ed., p. 73; Ster. Ed., 72.

"What is Rule III.?"--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 114. "How is Rule III. violated?"--*Ib.*, p. 115. "How do you parse 'letter' in the sentence, 'James writes a *letter*'? *Ans.*--'Letter is a noun com., of the MASC. gend., in the 3d p., sing. num., and *objective case*, and is governed by the verb 'writes,' according to Rule III., which says. 'A transitive verb,' &c."--*Ib.*, p. 114.[465]

"Creation sleeps. 'T is as the general pulse Of life stood still, and nature made a pause; An awful pause! prophetic of her end, And let her prophecy be soon fulfilled; Fate drop the curtain; I can lose no more."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 216.

SECTION V.--THE DASH.

The Dash is mostly used to denote an unexpected or emphatic pause, of variable length; but sometimes it is a sign of faltering, or of the irregular stops of one who hesitates in speaking: as, "Then, after many pauses, and

inarticulate sounds, he said: 'He was very sorry for it, was extremely concerned it should happen so--but--a--it was necessary--a--' Here lord E----- stopped him short, and bluntly demanded, if his post were destined for an other."--See *Churchill's Gram.*, p. 170.

RULE I.--ABRUPT PAUSES.

A sudden interruption, break, or transition, should be marked with the dash; as, 1. "I must inquire into the affair; and if'--'And if!' interrupted the farmer." 2. "Whom I--But first 't is fit the billows to restrain."--*Dryd. Virg.* 3. "HERE LIES THE GREAT--False marble! where? Nothing but sordid dust lies here."--*Young.*

RULE II.--EMPHATIC PAUSES.

To mark a considerable pause, greater than the structure or the sentence or the points inserted would seem to require, the dash may be employed; as, 1. "I pause for a reply.--None?--Then none have I offended.--I have done no more to Cæsar, than you should do to Brutus."--SHAKESPEARE: *Enfields Speaker*, p. 182.

2. "Tarry a little. There is something else.-- This bond--doth give thee here--no jot of blood." --ID.: *Burgh's Sp.*, p. 167.

3. "It thunders;--but it thunders to preserve."--*Young.*

4. "Behold the picture!--Is it like?--Like whom?"--*Cowper.*

RULE III.--FAULTY DASHES.

Dashes needlessly inserted, or substituted for other stops more definite, are in general to be treated as errors in punctuation; as, "Here Greece stands by *itself* as opposed to the *other* nations of antiquity--She was none of the *other nations*--She was more polished than they."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 78. "Here Greece stands by *herself*, as opposed to the *other* nations of antiquity. She was none of the *other nations*: She was more polished than they."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 114. If this colon is sufficient, the capital after it is needless: a period would, perhaps, be better.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The dash does not appear to be always a rhetorical stop, or always intended to lengthen the pause signified by an other mark before it. As one instance of a different design, we may notice, that it is now very often employed between a text and a reference;--i.e., between a quotation and the name of the author of the book quoted;--in which case, as Wm. Day suggests, "it serves as a *connecting mark* for the two."--*Day's Punctuation*, p. 131. But this usage, being comparatively recent, is, perhaps, not so general or so necessary, that a neglect of it may properly be censured as false punctuation.

OBS. 2.--An other peculiar use of the dash, is its application to *side-titles*, to set them off from other words in the same line, as is seen often in this Grammar as well as in other works. Day says of this, "When the *substance* of a paragraph is given as a side-head, a dash is *necessary* to *connect* it with its relative matter."--*Ibid.* Wilson also approves of this usage, as well as of the others here named; saying, "The dash should be inserted between a title and the subject-matter, and also between the subject-matter, and the authority from which it is taken, when they occur in the same paragraph."--*Wilson's Punctuation*, Ed. of 1850, p. 139.

OBS. 3.--The dash is often used to signify the omission of something; and, when set between the two extremes of a series of numbers, it may represent all the intermediate ones; as, "Page 10-15;" i. e., "Page 10, 11, 12, &c. to 15."--"Matt, vi, 9-14."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE DASH.

UNDER RULE I.--ABRUPT PAUSES.

"And there is something in your very strange story, that resembles ... Does Mr. Bevil know your history particularly?"--See *Key*.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the abrupt pause after *resembles* is here marked by three periods. But, according to Rule 1st for the Dash. "A sudden interruption, break, or transition, should be marked with the dash." Therefore, the dash should be preferred to these points.]

"Sir, Mr. Myrtle, Gentlemen! You are friends; I am but a servant. But."--See *Key*.

"Another man now would have given plump into this foolish story; but I? No, no, your humble servant for that."--See *Key*.

"Do not plunge thyself too far in anger lest thou hasten thy trial; which if Lord have mercy on thee for a hen!"--See *Key*.

"But ere they came, O, let me say no more! Gather the sequel by that went before."--See *Key*.

UNDER RULE II.--EMPHATIC PAUSES.

"*M*, Malvolio; *M*, why, that begins my name."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pauses after *M* and *Malvolio* seem not to be sufficiently indicated here. But, according to Rule 2d for the Dash, "To mark a considerable pause, greater than the structure of the sentence or the points inserted would seem to require, the dash may be employed." Therefore, a dash may be set after the commas and the semicolon, in this sentence.]

"Thus, by the creative influence of the Eternal Spirit, were the heavens and the earth finished in the space of six days, so admirably finished, an unformed chaos changed into a system of perfect order and beauty, that the adorable Architect himself pronounced it very good, and all the sons of God shouted for joy."--See *Key*.

"If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop remained in my country, I NEVER would lay down my arms; NEVER, NEVER, NEVER."--*Columbian Orator*, p. 265.

"Madam, yourself are not exempt in this, Nor your son Dorset, Buckingham, nor you."--See *Key*.

UNDER RULE III.--FAULTY DASHES.

--"You shall go home directly, Le Fevre, said my uncle Toby, to my house,--and we'll send for a doctor to see what's the matter,--and we'll have an apothecary,--and the corporal shall be your nurse;--and I'll be your servant, Le Fevre."--STERNE: *Enfield's Speaker*, p. 306.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because all the dashes here quoted, except perhaps the last, are useless, or obviously substituted for more definite marks. But, according to Rule 3d, "Dashes needlessly inserted, or substituted for other stops more definite, are in general to be treated as errors in punctuation." Therefore, the first of these should be simply expunged; the second, third, and fourth, with their commas, should be changed to semicolons; and the last, with its semicolon, may well be made a colon.]

"He continued--Inferior artists may be at a stand, because they want materials."--HARRIS: *Enfield's Speaker*, p. 191. "Thus, then, continued he--The end in other arts is ever distant and removed."--*Id.*, *ib.*

"The nouns must be coupled with *and*, and when a pronoun is used it must be plural, as in the example--When the nouns are *disjoined* the pronoun must be singular."--*Lennie's Gram.*, 5th Ed., p. 57.

"*Opinion* is a noun or substantive common,--of the singular number,--neuter gender,--nominative case,--and third person."--*Wright's Philos. Gram.*, p. 228.

"The mountain--thy pall and thy prison--may keep thee; I shall see thee no more; but till death I will weep thee." --*Felton's Gram.*, p. 146.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR

"If to accommodate man and beast, heaven and earth; if this be beyond me, 'tis not possible.--What consequence then follows? or can there be any other than this--if I seek an interest of my own, detached from that of others; I seek an interest which is chimerical, and can never have existence."--HARRIS: *Enfield's Speaker*, p. 139.

"Again--I must have food and clothing--Without a proper genial warmth, I instantly perish--Am I not related, in this view, to the very earth itself? To the distant sun, from whose beams I derive vigour?"--*Id.*, *ib.*, p. 140.

"Nature instantly ebb'd again--the film returned to its place--the pulse flutter'd--stopp'd--went on--throbb'd--stopp'd again--mov'd--stopp'd--shall I go on?--No."--STERNE: *ib.*, p. 307.

"Write ten nouns of the masculine gender. Ten of the feminine. Ten of the neuter. Ten indefinite in gender."--*Pardon Davis's Gram.*, p. 9.

"The Infinitive Mode has two tenses--the Indicative, six--the Potential, two--the Subjunctive, six, and the Imperative, one."--*Frazer's Gram.*, Ster. Ed., p. 39; 1st Ed., 37. "Now notice the following sentences. John runs,--boys run--thou runnest."--*Ib.*, Ster. Ed., p. 50; 1st Ed., p. 48.

"The Pronoun sometimes stands for a name--sometimes for an adjective--a sentence--a part of a sentence--and, sometimes for a whole series of propositions."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, 1st Ed., 12mo, p. 321.

"The self-applauding bird, the peacock, see-- Mark what a sumptuous pharisee is he!"--*Cowper*, i, 49.

SECTION VI.--THE EROTEME.

The Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation, is used to designate a question.

RULE I.--QUESTIONS DIRECT.

Questions expressed directly as such, if finished, should always be followed by the note of interrogation; as, "Was it possible that virtue so exalted should be erected upon injustice? that the proudest and the most ambitious of mankind should be the great master and accomplished pattern of humility? that a doctrine so pure as the Gospel should be the work of an uncommissioned pretender? that so perfect a system of morals should be established on blasphemy?"--*Jerningham's Essay*, p. 81.

"In life, can love be bought with gold? Are friendship's pleasures to be sold?"--*Johnson*.

RULE II.--QUESTIONS UNITED.

When two or more questions are united in one compound sentence, the comma, semicolon, or dash, is sometimes used to separate them, and the eroteme occurs after the last only; as, 1. "When--under what administration--under what exigencies of war or peace--did the Senate ever before deal with such a measure in such a manner? Never, sir, never."--*D. Webster, in Congress, 1846.*

2. "Canst thou, and honour'd with a Christian name, Buy what is woman-born, and feel no shame; Trade in the blood of innocence, and plead Expedience as a warrant for the deed?"--*Cowper.*

3. "Truths would you teach, or save a sinking land? All fear, none aid you, and few understand."--*Pope.*

RULE III.--QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

When a question is mentioned, but not put directly as a question, it loses both the quality and the sign of interrogation; as, "The Cyprians asked me *why I wept.*"--*Murray.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The value of the eroteme as a sign of pause, is stated very differently by different grammarians; while many of the vast multitude, by a strange oversight, say nothing about it. It is unquestionably *variable*, like that of the dash, or of the ecphoneme. W. H. Wells says, "The comma requires a momentary pause; the semicolon, a pause somewhat longer than the comma; the colon, a pause somewhat longer than the semicolon; and the period, a full stop. The note of interrogation, or the note of exclamation, *may take the place of EITHER of these*, and accordingly requires a pause of the same length as the point for which it is substituted."--*Wells's School Gram.*, p. 175. This appears to be accurate in idea, though perhaps hardly so in language. Lindley Murray has stated it thus: "The interrogation and exclamation points are *intermediate* as to their quantity or time, and may be equivalent in that respect to a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense may require."--*Octavo Gram.*, p. 280. But Sanborn, in regard to his "*Question Point*," awkwardly says: "*This pause is generally some longer than that of a period.*"--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 271. Buchanan, as long ago as 1767, taught as follows: "The Pause after the two Points of Interrogation and Admiration ought to be equal to that of the Period, or a Colon at least."--*English Syntax*, p. 160. And J. S. Hart avers, that, "A question is reckoned as equal to a complete sentence, and the mark of interrogation as equal to a period."--*Hart's English Gram.*, p. 166. He says also, that, "the first word after a note of interrogation should begin with a capital."--*Ib.*, p. 162. In some instances, however, he, like others, has not adhered to these exceptionable principles, as may be seen by the false grammar cited below.

OBS. 2.--Sometimes a series of questions may be severally complete in sense, so that each may require the interrogative sign, though some or all of them may be so united in construction, as not to admit either a long intermediate pause or an initial capital; as, "Is there no honor in generosity? nor in preferring the lessons of conscience to the impulses of passion? nor in maintaining the supremacy of moral principle, and in paying reverence to Christian truth?"--*Gannett.* "True honour is manifested in a steady, uniform train of actions, attended by justice, and directed by prudence. Is this the conduct of the duellist? will justice support him in robbing the community of an able and useful member? and in depriving the poor of a benefactor? will it support him in preparing affliction for the widow's heart? in filling the orphan's eyes with tears?"--*Jerningham's Essay*, p. 113. But, in this latter example, perhaps, commas might be substituted for the second and fourth erotemes; and the word *will* might, in both instances, begin with a capital.

OBS. 3.--When a question is mentioned in its due form, it commonly retains the sign of interrogation, though not actually asked by the writer; and, except perhaps when it consists of some little interrogative word or phrase, requires the initial capital: as, "To know when this point ought to be used, do not say:[,] 'Is a question asked?' but, 'Does the sentence ask a question?'"--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 368. "They put their huge inarticulate question, 'What do you mean to do with us?' in a manner audible to every reflective soul in the kingdom."--*Carlyle's Past and Present*, p. 16. "An adverb may be generally known, by its answering to the

question, How? how much? when? or where? as, in the phrase, 'He reads *correctly*,' the answer to the question, How does he read? is *correctly*."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 28. This passage, which, without ever arriving at great accuracy, has been altered by Murray and others in ways innumerable, is everywhere exhibited with five interrogation points. But, as to capitals and commas, as well as the construction of words, it would seem no easy matter to determine what impression of it is nearest right. In Flint's Murray it stands thus: "An adverb may generally be known by its answering the question, How? How much? When? or Where? As in the phrase, 'He reads *correctly*. The answer to the question, 'How does he read?' is, '*correctly*.'" Such questions, when the pause is slight, do not, however, in all cases, require capitals: as,

"*Rosal*. Which of the visors was it, that you wore? *Biron*. Where? when? what visor? why demand you this?" *Shakspeare, Love's Labour Lost*, Act V, Sc. 2.

OBS. 4.--A question is sometimes put in the form of a mere declaration; its interrogative character depending solely on the eroteme, and the tone, or inflection of voice, adopted in the utterance: as, "I suppose, Sir, you are his apothecary?"--SWIFT: *Burgh's Speaker*, p. 85. "I hope, you have, upon no account, promoted sternutation by hellebore?"--*Id., ib.* "This priest has no pride in him?"--SINGER'S SHAK., *Henry VIII*, ii, 2.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE EROTEME.

UNDER RULE I.--QUESTIONS DIRECT.

"When will his ear delight in the sound of arms."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, 12mo, p. 59.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because here is a finished question with a period set after it. But, according to Rule 1st for the Eroteme, "Questions expressed directly as such, if finished, should always be followed by the note of interrogation." Therefore, the eroteme, or note of interrogation, should here be substituted for the period.]

"When shall I, like Oscar, travel in the light of my steel."--*Ib.*, p. 59. "Will Henry call on me while he shall be journeying South."--*Peirce, ib.*, p. 133.

"An Interrogative Pronoun is one that is used in asking a question; as, '*who* is he, and *what* does he want?'"--*Day's School Gram.*, p. 21. "*Who* is generally used when we would inquire for some unknown person or persons; as, '*who* is that man.'"--*Ib.*, p. 24. "Our fathers, where are they, and the prophets, do they live forever?"--*Ib.*, p. 109.

"It is true, that some of our best writers have used *than whom*; but it is also true, that they have used *other* phrases which we have rejected as ungrammatical: then why not reject this too.--The sentences in the Exercises [with *than who*] are correct as they stand."--*Lennie's Gram.*, 5th Ed., 1819, p. 79.

"When the perfect participle of an active-intransitive verb is annexed to the neuter verb *to be*? What does the combination form?"--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 88. "Those adverbs which answer to the question *where*, *whither* or *whence*, are called adverbs of *place*."--*Ib.*, p. 116.

"Canst thou, by searching, find out God; Canst thou find out the Almighty to perfection; It is high as heaven, what canst thou do? deeper than hell, what canst thou know?"--*Blair's Rhet.* p. 132.

"Where, where, for shelter shall the guilty fly, When consternation turns the good man pale."--*Ib.*, p. 222.

UNDER RULE II.--QUESTIONS UNITED.

"Who knows what resources are in store? and what the power of God may do for thee?"

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because an eroteme is set after *store*, where a comma would be sufficient. But, according to Rule 2d for the Eroteme, "When two or more questions are united in one compound sentence, the comma, semicolon, or dash, is sometimes used to separate them, and the eroteme occurs after the last only." Therefore, the comma should here be preferred, as the author probably wrote the text. See *Key*.]

"The Lord is not a man that he should lie, neither the son of man that he should repent. Hath he said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 353; 12mo, 277; *Hiley's*, 139; *Hart's*, 181. "*Hath the Lord said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?*"--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 113; *Bullions's*, 176.

"Who calls the council, states the certain day? Who forms the phalanx, and who points the way." --*Brit. Poets*, vi, 376.

UNDER RULE III.--QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

"To be, or not to be?--that is the question."--*Enfield's Sp.*, p. 367; *Kirkham's Eloc.*, 123.[466]

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the note of interrogation is here set after an expression which has neither the form nor the nature of a direct question. But, according to Rule 3d for the Eroteme, "When a question is mentioned, but not put directly as a question, it loses both the quality and the sign of interrogation." Therefore, the semicolon, which seems adapted to the pause, should here be preferred.]

"If it be asked, why a pause should any more be necessary to emphasis than to an accent? or why an emphasis alone, will not sufficiently distinguish the members of sentences from each other, without pauses, as accent does words? the answer is obvious; that we are pre-acquainted with the sound of words, and cannot mistake them when distinctly pronounced, however rapidly; but we are not pre-acquainted with the meaning of sentences, which must be pointed out to us by the reader or speaker."--*Sheridan's Rhet. Gram.*, p. lvi.

"Cry, By your Priesthood tell me what you are?" --POPE: *British Poets*, London, 1800, Vol. vi, p. 411.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"Who else can he be. Where else can he go."--*S. Barrett's Gram.*, 1845, p. 71. "In familiar language *here*, *there* and *where* are used for *hither*, *thither* and *whither*."--*N. Butler's Gram.*, p. 183. "Take, for instance, this sentence, 'Indolence undermines the foundation of virtue.'"--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 106. "Take, for instance, the sentence before quoted. 'Indolence undermines the foundation of virtue.'"--*Ib.*, p. 110. "Under the same head are considered such sentences as these, '*he* that heareth, let him hear,' 'Gad, a troop shall overcome him,' &c."--*Ib.*, p. 108.

"TENSES are certain modifications of the verb which point out the distinctions of time."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 38; *Pract. Les.*, p. 44. "Calm was the day and the scene delightful."--*Id. E. Gr.*, p. 80. "The capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called Numeral Letters. I, denotes *one*; V, *five*; X, *ten*; L, *fifty*; and C, a hundred."--*Id., Lat. Gram.*, p. 56. "'I shall have written,' viz, at or before some future time or event."--*Id., ib.*, p. 89. "In Latin words the liquids are *l* and *r* only. In Greek words *l*, *r*, *m*, *n*."--*Id., ib.*, p. 277. "Each legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries."--*Id., ib.*, p. 300. "Of the Roman literature previous to A. U. 514 scarcely a vestige remains."--*Id., ib.*, p. 312.

"And that, which He delights in must be happy. But when!--or where!--This world was made for Cæsar." --*Burgh's Sp.*, p. 122.

"And that which he delights in must be happy. But when, or where? This world was made for Cæsar."
--*Enfield's Sp.*, p. 321.

"Look next on greatness. Say, where greatness lies? Where but among the heroes and the wise." --*Burgh's Sp.*, p. 91.

"Look next on greatness! say where greatness lies. Where, but among the heroes and the wise?" --*Essay on Man*, p. 51.

"Look next on Greatness; say where Greatness lies: Where, but among the Heroes and the Wise?" --*Brit. Poets*, vi, 380.

SECTION VII--THE ECPHONEME.

The Ecphoneme, or Note of Exclamation, is used to denote a pause with some strong emotion of admiration, joy, grief, or other feeling; and, as a sign of great wonder, it is sometimes, though not very elegantly, repeated: as, "Grammatical consistency!!! What a gem!" --*Peirce's Gram.*, p. 352.

RULE I.--INTERJECTIONS, &c.

Emphatic interjections, and other expressions of great emotion, are generally followed by the note of exclamation; as, "Hold! hold! Is the devil in you? Oh! I am bruised all over." --*MOLIERE: Burgh's Speaker*, p. 250.

"And O! till earth, and seas, and heav'n decay, Ne'er may that fair creation fade away!" --*Dr. Lowth*.

RULE II.--INVOCATIONS.

After an earnest address or solemn invocation, the note of exclamation is now generally preferred to any other point; as, "Whereupon, O king Agrippa! I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision." --*Acts*, xxvi, 19.

"Be witness thou, immortal Lord of all! Whose thunder shakes the dark ærial hall." --*Pope*.

RULE III.--EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

Words uttered with vehemence in the form of a question, but without reference to an answer, should be followed by the note of exclamation; as, "How madly have I talked!" --*Young*.

"An Author! 'Tis a venerable name! How few deserve it, and what numbers claim!" --*Id., Br. Po.*, viii, 401.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE ECPHONEME.

UNDER RULE I.--OF INTERJECTIONS, &c.

(1.) "O that he were wise." --*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 111.

[FORMULE. Not proper, because this strong wish, introduced by "O," is merely marked with a period. But, according to Rule 1st for the Ecphoneme, "Emphatic interjections, and other expressions of great emotion, are generally followed by the note of exclamation." Therefore, the pause after this sentence, should be marked with the latter sign; and, if the "O" be read with a pause, the same sign may be there also.]

(2.) "O that his heart was tender."--*Exercises, ib.*, p. 111. (3.) "Oh, what a sight is here!"--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 48. (4.) "Oh! what a sight is here."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 71; (Obs. 2;) *Pract. Les.*, p. 83. (5.) "O virtue! How amiable thou art."--*Id.*, p. 71; *Pract. Les.*, p. 82. (6.) "O virtue! how amiable thou art."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 109. (7.) "O, virtue! how amiable thou art."--*S. Putnam's Gram.*, p. 53. (8.) "Oh! virtue, how amiable thou art!"--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 191; *O. B. Peirce's*, 375. (9.) "O virtue! how amiable thou art!"--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 126. (10.) "Oh! that I had been more diligent."--*Hart's Gram.*, p. 167; see *Hiley's*, 117. (11.) "O! the humiliation to which vice reduces us."--*Farnum's Gram.*, p. 12; *Murray's Ex.*, p. 5. (12.) "O! that he were more prudent."--*Farnum's Gram.*, p. 81. (13.) "Ah! me."--*P. Davis's Gram.*, p. 79. (14.) "Ah me!"--*Ib.*, p. 122. (15.) "Lately alas I knew a gentle boy," &c.--*The Dial*, Vol. i, p. 71.

(16.) "Wo is me Alhama."--*Wells's School Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 190.

(17.) "Wo is me, Alhama."--*Ibid.*, "113th Thousand," p. 206.

UNDER RULE II.--OF INVOCATIONS.

"Weep on the rocks of roaring winds, O maid of Inistore."--*Kirkham's Gram.*, p. 131; *Cooper's Plain and Practical Gram.*, p. 158.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the emphatic address in this sentence, is marked with a period after it. But, according to Rule 2d for the Ecphoneme, "After an earnest address or solemn invocation, the note of exclamation is now generally preferred to any other point." Therefore, this period should be changed to the latter sign.]

"Cease a little while, O wind; stream, be thou silent a while; let my voice be heard around. Let my wanderer hear me. Salgar, it is Colma who calls. Here is the tree, and the rock. Salgar, my love, I am here. Why delayest thou thy coming? Lo, the calm moon comes forth. The flood is bright in the vale."--See *Key*.

"Ah, stay not, stay not, guardless and alone; Hector, my lov'd, my dearest, bravest son."--See *Key*.

UNDER RULE III.--EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

"How much better is wisdom than gold."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 153; *Hiley*, p. 113.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because this exclamatory sentence is pointed with a period at the end. But, according to Rule 3d for the Ecphoneme, "Words uttered with vehemence in the form of a question, but without reference to an answer, should be followed by the note of exclamation." Therefore, this period should be changed to the latter sign.]

"O virtue! how amiable art thou."--*Flint's Murray*, p. 51. "At that hour, O how vain was all sublunary happiness."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 74. "Alas! how few and transitory are the joys which this world affords to man."--*Ib.*, p. 12. "Oh! how vain and transitory are all things here below."--*Ib.*, p. 110.

"And oh! what change of state, what change of rank, In that assembly everywhere was seen."--*Day's Gram.*, p. 12.

"And O! what change of state! what change of rank! In that assembly every where was seen!"--*Pollok*, B. ix, l. 781.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"O shame! where is thy blush."--*S. Barren's Principles of Language*, p. 86. "O shame, where is thy blush;

John, give me my hat."--*Ib.*, p. 98. "What! is Moscow in flames."--*Ib.*, p. 86. "Ah! what happiness awaits the virtuous."--*Ib.*, 86.

"Ah, welladay,--do what we can for him, said Trim, maintaining his point,--the poor soul will die."--STERNE: *Enfield's Speaker*, p. 306. "A well o'day! do what we *can* for him, said Trim, maintaining his point: the poor soul will *die*"--*Kirkham's Elocution*, p. 340.

"Will John *return* to-morrow."--*S. Barrett's Gram.*, Tenth Ed., p. 55. "Will not John *return* to-morrow."--*Ib.*, 55. "John! *return* to-morrow; Soldiers! *stand* firm."--*Ib.*, 55. "If *mea* which means *my* is an adjective in *Latin*, why may not *my* be so called in English, and if *my* is an adjective, why not *Barrett's*"--*Ib.*, p. 50.

"Oh? Absalom, my son."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 375. "Oh! STAR-EYED SCIENCE!! whither hast thou fled?"--*Ib.*, p. 366. "Why do you tolerate your own inconsistency, by calling it the present tense!"--*Ib.*, p. 360. "Thus the declarative mode may be used in asking a question; as, *what* man *is* frail."--*Ib.*, p. 358. "What connexion has motive wish, or supposition, with the term subjunctive!"--*Ib.*, p. 348. "A grand reason, truly! for calling it a golden key."--*Ib.*, p. 347. "What '*suffering*'! the man who can say this, must be '*enduring*.'"--*Ib.*, p. 345. "What is Brown's Rule! in relation to this matter?"--*Ib.*, p. 334.

"Alas! how short is life." "*Thomas*, study your book."--*Day's District School Gram.*, p. 109. "As, '*alas*!' how short is life; *Thomas*, study your book."--*Ib.*, p. 82. "Who can tell us who they are."--*Sanborn's Gram.*, p. 178. "Lord have mercy on my son; for he is a lunatic, etc."--*Felton's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 138; Ster. Ed., 140. "O, ye wild groves, O, where is now your bloom!"--*Ib.*, p. 88; Ster. Ed., 91.

"O who of man the story will unfold!" --*Farnum's Gr.*, 2d Ed., p. 104.

"Methought I heard Horatio say to-morrow. Go to I will not hear of it--to-morrow." --*Hallock's Gr.*, 1st Ed., p. 221.

"How his eyes languish? how his thoughts adore That painted coat which Joseph never wore?" --*Love of Fame*, p. 66.

SECTION VIII.--THE CURVES.

The Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis, are used to distinguish a clause or hint that is hastily thrown in between the parts of a sentence to which it does not properly belong; as, "Their enemies (and enemies they will always have) would have a handle for exposing their measures."--*Walpole*.

"To others do (the law is not severe) What to thyself thou wishest to be done."--*Beattie*.

OBS.--The incidental clause should be uttered in a lower tone, and faster than the principal sentence. It always requires a pause as great as that of a comma, or greater.

RULE I.--THE PARENTHESIS.

A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence or passage too much to be incorporated with it, and only such, should be inclosed within curves, as a parenthesis; as, "For I know that in me, (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing."--*Rom.*, vii, 18.

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,) Virtue alone is happiness below."--*Pope*.

RULE II.--INCLUDED POINTS.

The curves do not supersede other stops; and, as the parenthesis terminates with a pause equal to that which precedes it, the same point should be included, except when the sentences differ in form: as, 1. "Now for a recompense in the same, (I speak as unto my children,) be ye also enlarged."--2 *Cor.*, vi, 13.

2. "Man's thirst of happiness declares it is: (For nature never gravitates to nought:) That thirst unquench'd, declares it is not here."--*Young*.

3. "Night visions may befriend: (as sung above:) Our waking dreams are fatal. How I dreamt Of things impossible! (could sleep do more?) Of joys perpetual in perpetual change!"--*Young*.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE CURVES.

UNDER RULE I.--OF THE PARENTHESIS.

"Another is composed of the indefinite article *an*, which, etymologically means *one* and *other*, and denotes *one other*."--*Hallock's Gram.*, p. 63.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the parenthetical expression, "which etymologically means *one*," is not sufficiently separated from the rest of the passage. But, according to Rule 1st for the Curves, "A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence or passage too much to be incorporated with it, and only such, should be enclosed within curves, as a parenthesis." Therefore, the curves should be here inserted; and also, by Rule 2d, a comma at the word *one*.]

"Each mood has its peculiar Tense, Tenses (or Times)."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 58.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the expression, "or Times," which has not the nature of a parenthesis, is here marked with curves. But, according to Rule 1st for the Curves, "A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence or passage too much to be incorporated with it, *and only such*, should be enclosed within curves, as a parenthesis." Therefore, these marks should be omitted; and a comma should be set after the word "*Tenses*," by Rule 3d.]

"In some very ancient languages, as the Hebrew, which have been employed chiefly for expressing plain sentiments in the plainest manner, without aiming at any elaborate length or harmony of periods, this pronoun [the relative] occurs not so often."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 127.

"Before I shall say those Things, (O conscript Fathers) about the Public Affairs, which are to be spoken at this Time; I shall lay before you, in few Words, the Motives of the Journey, and the Return."--*Brightland's Gram.*, p. 149.

"Of well-chose Words some take not care enough. And think they should be (like the Subject) rough." --*Ib.*, p. 173.

"Then having shewed his wounds, *he'd* sit (him) down." --*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 32.

UNDER RULE II.--OF INCLUDED POINTS.

"Then Jael smote the Nail into his Temples, and fastened it to the Ground: (for he was fast asleep and weary) so he died. OLD TEST."--*Ward's Gram.*, p. 17.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because this parenthesis is not marked as terminating with a pause equal to that

which precedes it. But, according to Rule 2d above, "The curves do not supersede other stops; and, as the parenthesis terminates with a pause equal to that which precedes it, the same point should be included, except when the sentences differ in form." Therefore, a colon should be inserted within the curve after *weary*.]

"Every thing in the Iliad has manners (as Aristotle expresses it) that is, every thing is acted or spoken."--*Pope, Pref. to Homer*, p. vi.

"Those nouns, that end in *f*. or *fe* (except some few I shall mention presently), form plurals by changing those letters into *ves*: as, thief, *thieves*; wife, *wives*."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 35.

"As, requires *as*; (expressing equality) Mine is as good as yours. *As*,--so; (expressing equality) As the stars, so shall thy seed be. *So*,--*as*; (with a negative expressing inequality) He is not so wise as his brother. *So*,--*that*; (expressing consequence) I am so weak that I cannot walk."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 113; *Pract. Les.*, p. 112.

"A captious question, sir (and yours is one,) Deserves an answer similar, or none."--*Cowper*, ii. 228.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"Whatever words the verb TO BE serves to unite referring to the same thing, must be of the same case; §61, as, *Alexander is a student*."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 75. "When the objective is a relative or interrogative, it comes before the verb that governs it. §40, R. 9. (Murray's 6th rule is unnecessary.)"--*Id., ib.*, p. 90. "It is generally improper (except in poetry,) to omit the antecedent to a relative; and always to omit a relative when of the nominative case."--*Id., ib.*, p. 130. "In every sentence there must be a *verb* and a *nominative* (or subject) expressed or understood."--*Id., ib.*, p. 87; *Pract. Lessons*, p. 91. "Nouns and pronouns, and especially words denoting time, are often governed by prepositions understood; or are used to restrict verbs or adjectives without a governing word, §50. Rem. 6 and Rule; as, He gave (to) me a full account of the whole affair."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 80. "When *should* is used instead of *ought*, to express *present* duty, §20, 4, it may be followed by the present; as, 'You *should* study that you *may* become learned.'"--*Id., ib.*, p. 123. "The indicative present is frequently used after the words, *when, till, before, as soon as, after*, to express the relative time of a future action; (§24, I, 4,) as, 'When he *comes*, he will be welcome.'"--*Id., ib.*, p. 124. "The relative is parsed by stating its gender, number, case, and antecedent, (the gender and number being always the same as those of the antecedent) thus, 'The boy who.' '*Who*' is a relative pronoun, masculine, singular, the nominative, and refers to '*boy*' as its antecedent."--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 31.

"Now, now, I seize, I clasp *thy* charms, And now *you* burst; ah! cruel from my arms."

Here is an unnecessary change from the second person singular to the second plural. It would have been better thus,

"Now, now I seize, I clasp *your* charms, And now *you* burst; ah! cruel from my arms." --*J. Burn's Gram.*, p. 193.

SECTION IX.--THE OTHER MARKS.

There are also several other marks, which are occasionally used for various purposes, as follow:--

I. ['] The APOSTROPHE usually denotes either the possessive case of a noun, or the elision of one or more letters of a word: as, "The *girl's* regard to her *parents'* advice;"--'*'gan, lov'd, e'en, thro'*; for *began, loved, even, through*. It is sometimes used in pluralizing a mere letter or sign; as, Two *a's*--three *6's*. [467]

II. [-] The HYPHEN connects the parts of many compound words, especially such as have two accents; as, *ever-living*. It is also frequently inserted where a word is divided into syllables; as, *con-tem-plate*. Placed at

the end of a line, it shows that one or more syllables of a word are can led forward to the next line.

III. ["] The DIÆRESIS, or DIALYSIS, placed over either of two contiguous vowels, shows that they are not a diphthong; as, *Danæe*, *aërial*.

IV. ['] The ACUTE ACCENT marks the syllable which requires the principal stress in pronunciation; as, *e'qual*, *equal'ity*. It is sometimes used in opposition to the grave accent, to distinguish a close or short vowel; as, "*Fáncy*:" (*Murray*:) or to denote the rising inflection of the voice; as, "Is it *hé*?"

V. [˘] The GRAVE ACCENT is used in opposition to the acute, to distinguish an open or long vowel; as, "*Fàvour*:" (*Murray*:) or to denote the falling inflection of the voice; as, "*Yès*; it is *hè*" It is sometimes placed over a vowel to show that it is not to be suppressed in pronunciation; as,

"Let me, though in humble speech, Thy refinèd maxims teach."--*Amer. Review*, May, 1848.

VI. [ˆ] The CIRCUMFLEX generally denotes either the broad sound of *a* or an unusual sound given to some other vowel; as in *âll*, *hêir*, *machîne*. Some use it to mark a peculiar *wave* of the voice, and when occasion requires, reverse it; as, "If you said *s=o*, then I said *sô*."

VII. [˘˘] The BREVE, or STENOTONE, is used to denote either the close, short, *shut* sound of a vowel, or a syllable of short quantity; as, *l~ive*, to have life,--*r~av'en*, to devour,[468]--*c~al~am~us*, a reed.

VIII. [=] The MACRON, or MACROTONE,[469] is used to denote either the open, long, *primal* sound of a vowel, or a syllable of long quantity; as, *l=ive*, having life,--*r=a'ven*, a bird,--*=e'qu=ine*, of a horse.

IX. [----] or [* * * *] or [...] The ELLIPSIS, or SUPPRESSION, denotes the omission of some letters or words: as, *K--g*, for *King*; *c****d*, for *coward*; *d....d*, for *damned*.

X. [^] The CARET, used only in writing, shows where to insert words or letters that have been accidentally omitted. XI. [{}] The BRACE serves to unite a triplet; or, more frequently, to connect several terms with something to which they are all related. XII. [§] The SECTION marks the smaller divisions of a book or chapter; and, with the help of numbers, serves to abridge references.

XIII. [¶] The PARAGRAPH (chiefly used in the Bible) denotes the commencement of a new subject. The parts of discourse which are called paragraphs, are, in general, sufficiently distinguished by beginning a new line, and carrying the first word a little forwards or backwards. The paragraphs of books being in some instances numbered, this character may occasionally be used, in lieu of the word *paragraph*, to shorten references.

XIV. ["""] The GUILLEMETS, or QUOTATION POINTS, distinguish words that are exhibited as those of an other author or speaker. A quotation within a quotation, is usually marked with single points; which, when both are employed, are placed within the others: as, "And again he saith, 'Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.'"--*Rom.*, xv, 10.

XV. [[]] The CROTCHETS, or BRACKETS, generally inclose some correction or explanation, but sometimes the sign or subject to be explained; as, "He [Mr. Maurice] was of a different opinion."--*Allen's Gram.*, p. 213.

XVI. [Fist] The INDEX, or HAND, points out something remarkable, or what the reader should particularly observe.

XVII. [*] The ASTERISK, or STAR, [Dagger] the OBELISK, or DAGGER, [Double dagger] the DIESIS, or DOUBLE DAGGER, and [||] the PARALLELS, refer to marginal notes. The SECTION also [§], and the

PARAGRAPH [¶], are often used for marks of reference, the former being usually applied to the fourth, and the latter to the sixth note on a page; for, by the usage of printers, these signs are commonly introduced in the following order: 1, *; 2, [Dagger]; 3, [Double dagger]; 4, §; 5, ||; 6, ¶; 7, **; 8, [Dagger][Dagger]; &c. Where many references are to be made, the *small letters* of the alphabet, or the *numerical figures*, in their order, may be conveniently used for the same purpose.

XVIII. [[Asterism]] The ASTERISM, or THREE STARS, a sign not very often used, is placed before a long or general note, to mark it as a note, without giving it a particular reference.

XIX. [,] The CEDILLA is a mark borrowed from the French, by whom it is placed under the letter *c*, to give it the sound of *s*, before *a* or *o*; as in the words, "façade," "Alençon." In Worcester's Dictionary, it is attached to three other letters, to denote their soft sounds: viz., "[G] as J; [S] as Z; [x] as gz."

[Fist][Oral exercises in punctuation should not be confined to the correction of errors. An application of its principles to points rightly inserted, is as easy a process as that of ordinary syntactical parsing, and perhaps as useful. For this purpose, the teacher may select a portion of this grammar, or of any well-pointed book, to which the foregoing rules and explanations may be applied by the pupil, as reasons for the points that occur.]

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"The principal stops are the following:--

The Comma (,) the semicolon (;) the colon (:) the period, or full stop (.) the note of interrogation (?) the note of exclamation (!) the parenthesis () and the dash (--) [.]--*Bullions, E. Gram., p. 151; Pract. Les., p. 127.*

"The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks employed, are the *Comma* (,); *Semicolon* (;); *Colon* (:); *Period* (.); *Interrogation* (?); *Exclamation* (!)."--*Bullions, Lat. Gram., p. 3.*

"Plato reproving a young man for playing at some childish game; you chide me, says the youth, for a trifling fault. Custom, replied the philosopher, is no trifle. And, adds Montagnie, he was in the right; for our vices begin in infancy."--*Home's Art of Thinking*, (N. Y. 1818,) p. 54.

"A merchant at sea asked the skipper what death his father died? 'My father,' says the skipper, my grandfather, and my great-grandfather, were all drowned. 'Well,' replies the merchant, and are not you afraid of being drowned too?'"--*Ib.*, p. 135.

"The use of inverted comma's derives from France, where one Guillemet was the author of them; [and] as an acknowledgement for the improvement his countrymen call them after his name GUILLEMETS."--*History of Printing*, (London, 1770,) p. 266.

"This, however, is seldem [sic--KTH] if ever done unless the word following the possessive begins with *s*; thus we do not say, 'the prince' feather,' but, 'the prince's feather.'"--*Bullions, E. Gram., p. 17.* "And this phrase must mean *the feather of the prince* but *princesfeather* written as one word is the name of a plant: a species of amaranth."--See *Key*.

"Böethius soon had the satisfaction of obtaining the highest honour his country could bestow."--*Ingersoll's Gram.* 12mo., p. 279. "Boethius soon had," &c.--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, Vol. ii., p. 83.

"When an example, a quotation, or a speech is introduced, it is separated from the rest of the sentence either by a semicolon or a colon; as, 'The scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words; *God is love.*'"--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 116. "Either the colon or semicolon may be used when an example, a

quotation, or a speech is introduced; as, 'Always remember this ancient maxim; *Know thyself*.' 'The scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words: *God is love*.'"--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 155.

"The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon [, must begin with a capital]; as, always remember this ancient maxim: '*Know thyself*.'"-- *Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 159; *Lennie's Gram.*, p. 106. [Lennie has "*Always*" with a capital.] "The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon, or *when it is* in a direct form: as, 'Always remember this ancient maxim: *Know thyself*.' 'Our great lawgiver says, Take up thy cross daily, and follow me.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 284. "8. The first word of a quotation, *introduced after a colon*, or *when it is* in a direct form. EXAMPLES.--'Always remember this ancient maxim, '*Know thyself*.' 'Our great Lawgiver says, Take up thy cross daily, and follow me.'"--*Weld's Gram., Abridged.*, p. 17

"Tell me in whose house do you live."--*N. Butler's Gram.*, p. 55. "He, that acts wisely, deserves praise."--*Ib.*, p. 50 "He, who steals my purse, steals trash."--*Ib.*, p. 51. "The antecedent is sometimes omitted, as, 'Who steals my purse, steals trash;' that is, *he* who, or *person* who."--*Ib.*, p. 51. "Thus, 'Whoever steals my purse steals trash;' 'Whoever does no good does harm.'"--*Ib.*, p. 53 "Thus, 'Whoever sins will suffer.' This means that any one without exception who sins will suffer."--*Ib.*, p. 53.

"Letters form syllables, syllables words, words sentences, and sentences, combined and connected form discourse."--*Cooper's Plain and Practical Gram.*, p. 1. "A letter which forms a perfect sound, when uttered by itself, is called a vowel, as: *a, e, i*."--*Ib.*, p. 1. "A proper noun is the name of an individual, as: John; Boston: Hudson; America."--*Ib.*, p. 17.

"Many men have been capable of doing a wise thing, more a cunning thing, but very few a generous thing."--*P. Davis's Gram.*, p. 96. "In the place of an ellipsis of the verb a comma must be inserted."--*Ib.*, p. 121. "A common noun unlimited by an article is sometimes understood in its broadest acceptation: thus, '*Fishes* swim' is understood to mean *all* fishes. '*Man* is mortal,' *all* men."--*Ib.*, p. 13.

"Thus those sounds formed principally by the throat are called *gutturals*. Those formed principally by the palate are called *palatals*. Those formed by the teeth, *dentals*--those by the lips, *labials*--those by the nose, *nasals*, &c."--*P. Davis's Gram.*, p. 113.

"Some adjectives are compared irregularly; as, *Good, better, best. Bad, worse, worst. Little, less, least*."--*Felton's Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 63; Ster. Ed., p. 66.

"Under the fourth head of grammar, therefore, four topics will be considered, viz. PUNCTUATION, ORTHOEPY, FIGURES, and VERSIFICATION."-- *Hart's Gram.*, p. 161.

"Direct her onward to that peaceful shore, Where peril, pain and death are felt no more!" *Falconer's Poems*, p. 136; *Barrett's New Gram.*, p. 94

BAD ENGLISH BADLY POINTED.

LESSON I.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"Discoveries of such a character are sometimes made in grammar also, and such, too, is often their origin and their end."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 191.

"*Traverse*, (to cross.) To deny what the opposite party has alleged. To traverse an indictment, &c. is to deny it."--*Id., ib.*, p. 216.

"The *Ordinal* [numerals] denote the *order* or *succession* in which any number of persons or things is mentioned, as *first, second, third, fourth*, &c."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 22.

"Nouns have three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD. The First person is the speaker, the Second is the one spoken to, the Third is the one spoken of."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 44.

"Nouns have three cases, NOMINATIVE, POSSESSIVE, and OBJECTIVE. The relation indicated by the case of a noun includes three ideas, viz: those of *subject*, *object*, and *ownership*."--*Ib.*, p. 45.

"In speaking of animals that are of inferior size, or whose sex is not known or not regarded, they are often considered as without sex: thus, we say of a *cat* 'it is treacherous,' of an infant 'it is beautiful,' of a *deer* 'it was killed.'"--*Ib.*, p. 39.

"When *this* or *these*, *that* or *those*, refers to a preceding sentence; *this*, or *these*, refers to the latter member or term; *that*, or *those*, to the former."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 136; see *Lowth's Gram.*, p. 102.

"The rearing of them [i. e. of plants] became his first care, their fruit his first food, and marking their kinds his first knowledge."--*N. Butler's Gram.*, p. 44.

"After the period used with abbreviations we should employ other points, if the construction demands it; thus, after Esq. in the last example, there should be, besides a period, a comma."--*Ib.*, p. 212.

"In the plural, the verb is the same in all the persons; and hence the principle in *Rem.* 5, under Rule iii. [that the first or second person takes precedence,] is not applicable to verbs."--*Ib.*, p. 158.

"Rex and Tyrannus are of very different characters. The one rules his people by laws to which they consent; the other, by his absolute will and power: *that* is called freedom, this, *tyranny*."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 190.

"A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, which can be known, or mentioned, as: George; London; America; goodness; charity."--*Cooper's Plain and Pract. Gram.*, p. 17.

"Etymology treats of the classification of words; their various modifications and derivations."--*Day's School Gram.*, p. 9. "To punctuate correctly implies a thorough acquaintance with the meaning of words and phrases, as well as of all their corresponding connexions"--*W. Day's Punctuation*, p. 31.

"All objects which belong to neither the male nor female kind are called neuter."--*Weld's Gram.*, 2d Ed., p. 57. "All objects, which belong to neither the male nor female kind, are said to be of the neuter gender."--*Weld's Gram., Abridged*, p. 51.

"The Analysis of the Sounds in the English language presented in the preceding statements are sufficiently exact for the purpose in hand. Those who wish to pursue it further can consult Dr. Rush's admirable work, 'The Philosophy of the Human Voice.'"--*Fowlers E. Gram.*, 1850, §65. "Nobody confounds the name of *w* or *y* with their sound or phonetic import."--*Ib.*, §74.

"Order is Heaven's first law; and this confest, Some are and must be, greater than the rest."--*Ib.*, p. 96.

LESSON II.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"In adjectives of one syllable, the Comparative is formed by adding *-er* to the positive; and the Superlative by adding *-est*; as, *sweet*, *sweeter*, *sweetest*."--*Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.*, p. 19.

"In monosyllables the comparative is formed by adding *er* or *r* to the positive, and the superlative by adding *est* or *st*; as, *tall*, *taller*, *tallest*; *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*."--*Id., Pract. Les.*, p. 24.

"By this method the confusion and unnecessary labor occasioned by studying grammars in these languages,

constructed on different principles is avoided, the study of one is rendered a profitable introduction to the study of another, and an opportunity is furnished to the enquiring student of comparing the languages in their grammatical structure, and seeing at once wherein they agree, and wherein they differ."--*Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.*, Pref. to 5th Ed., p. vii.

"No larger portion should be assigned for each recitation than the class can easily master, and till this is done, a new portion should not be given out."--*Id., ib.*, p. viii. "The acquisitions made in every new lesson should be rivetted and secured by repeated *revisals*."--*Id., ib.*, p. viii.

"The personal pronouns may be parsed briefly thus; *I*, the first personal pronoun, masculine (or feminine), singular, the nominative. *His*, the third personal pronoun, masculine, singular, the possessive, &c."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 23; *Pract. Les.*, p. 28.

"When the male and female are expressed by distinct terms; as, *shepherd*, *shepherdess*, the masculine term has also a general meaning, expressing both male and female, and is always to be used when the office, occupation, profession, &c., and not the sex of the individual, is chiefly to be expressed. The feminine term is used only when the discrimination, of sex is indispensably necessary. Thus, when it is said 'the Poets of this country are distinguished by correctness of taste,' the term 'Poet' clearly includes both male and female writers of poetry."--*Id., E. Gram.*, p. 12; *his Analyt. and Pract. Gram.*, 24.

"Nouns and pronouns, connected by conjunctions, must be in the same cases."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 78.

"Verbs, connected by conjunctions, must be in the same moods and tenses, and, when in the subjunctive present, they must be in the same form."--*Id.*, p. 112.

"This will habituate him to reflection--exercise his judgment on the meaning of the author, and without any great effort on his part, impress indelibly on his memory, the rules which he is required to give. After the exercises under the rule have been gone through as directed in the note page 96, they may be read over again in a corrected state the pupil making an emphasis on the correction made, or they may be presented in writing at the next recitation."--*Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.*, 2d Ed. Revised and Cor., p. viii.

"Man, but for *that*, no action *could* attend And but for *this*, be *thoughtful* to no end." --*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, Pref. p. 5.

LESSON III.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"'Johnson the bookseller and stationer,' indicates that the bookseller and the stationer are epithets belonging to the same person; 'the bookseller and the stationer' would indicate that they belong to different persons."--*Bullions, E. Gram.*, p. 127.

"*Past* is an adjective; *passed*, the past tense or perfect participle of the verb, and they ought not, as is frequently done, to be confounded with each other."--*Id., ib.*, p. 148.

"Not only the nature of the thoughts and sentiments, but the very selection and arrangement of the words, gives English poetry a character, which separates it widely from common prose."--*Id., ib.*, p. 178.

"Men of sound, discriminating, and philosophical minds--men prepared for the work by long study, patient investigation, and extensive acquirements, have labored for ages to improve and perfect it, and nothing is hazarded in asserting, that should it be unwisely abandoned, it will be long before another equal in beauty, stability and usefulness, be produced in its stead."--*Id., ib.*, p. 191.

"The Article *The*, on the other hand, is used to restrict, and is therefore termed *Definite*. Its proper office is to call the attention to a particular individual or class, or to any number of such, and is used with nouns in either

the singular or plural number."--*Id., ib.*, p. 193.

"Hence also the infinitive mood, a participle, a member of a sentence, or a proposition, forming together the subject of discourse, or the object of a verb or preposition, and being the name of an act or circumstance, are in construction, regarded as nouns, and are usually called 'substantive phrases;' as '*To play* is pleasant,' '*His being an expert dancer* is no recommendation,' 'Let your motto be *Honesty is the best policy*.'"--*Id., ib.*, p. 194.

"In accordance with his definition, Murray has divided verbs into three classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*, and includes in the first class *transitive* verbs only, and in the last all verbs used intransitively"--*Id., ib.*, p. 200.

"Moreover, as the name of the speaker or the person spoken to is seldom expressed, (the pronouns *I* and *thou* being used in its stead,) a noun is very seldom in the first person, not often in the second, and almost never in either, unless it be a proper noun, or a common noun personified."--*Bullions, Pract. Les.*, p. 13.

"In using the above exercises it will save much time, which is all important, if the pupil be taught to say every thing belonging to the nouns in the fewest words possible, and to say them always in the same order as above."--*Id., ib.*, p. 21.

"In any phrase or sentence the adjectives qualifying a noun may generally be found by prefixing the phrase 'What kind of,' to the noun in the form of a question; as, What kind of a horse? What kind of a stone? What kind of a way? The word containing the answer to the question is an adjective."--*Id., ib.*, p. 22.

"In the following exercise let the pupil first point out the nouns, and then the adjectives; and tell how he knows them to be so."--*Id., ib.*, p. 23.

"In the following sentences point out the improper ellipsis. Show why it is improper, and correct it."--*Id., ib.*, p. 124.

"SINGULAR PRONOUNS. PLURAL PRONOUNS.

1. I--am being smitten. 1. We--are being smitten. 2. Thou--art being smitten. 2. Ye *or* you--are being smitten. 3. He--is being smitten. 3. They--are being smitten."

Wright's Philos. Gram., p. 98.

CHAPTER II

--UTTERANCE.

Utterance Is the art or act of vocal expression. It includes the principles of articulation, of pronunciation, and of elocution.

SECTION I.--OF ARTICULATION.

Articulation is the forming of words; by the voice, with reference to their component letters and sounds.

ARTICLE I.--OF THE DEFINITION.

Articulation differs from pronunciation, in having more particular regard to the elements of words, and in not embracing accent[470]. A recent author defines it thus: "ARTICULATION is the act of forming, with the organs of speech, the elements of vocal language."--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 16. And again: "A good articulation is the *perfect* utterance of the elements of vocal language."--*Ibid*.

An other describes it more elaborately thus: "ARTICULATION, in language, is the forming of the human voice, accompanied by the breath, in some few consonants, into the simple and compound sounds, called vowels, consonants, and diphthongs, by the assistance of the organs of speech; and the uniting of those vowels, consonants, and diphthongs, together, so as to form syllables and words, and constitute spoken language."--*Bolles's Dict., Introd.*, p. 7.

ARTICLE II.--OF GOOD ARTICULATION.

Correctness in articulation is of such importance, that without it speech or reading becomes not only inelegant, but often absolutely unintelligible. The opposite faults are mumbling, muttering, mincing, lisping, slurring, mouthing, drawling, hesitating, stammering, misreading, and the like. "A good articulation consists in giving every letter in a syllable its due proportion of sound, according to the most approved custom of pronouncing it; and in making such a distinction between the syllables of which words are composed, that the ear shall without difficulty acknowledge their number; and perceive, at once, to which syllable each letter belongs. Where these points are not observed, the articulation is proportionably defective."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Grammar*, p. 50.

Distinctness of articulation depends, primarily, upon the ability to form the simple elements, or sounds of letters, by the organs of speech, in the manner which the custom of the language demands; and, in the next place, upon the avoidance of that precipitancy of utterance, which is greater than the full and accurate play of the organs will allow. If time be not given for the full enunciation of any word which we attempt to speak, some of the syllables will of course be either lost by elision or sounded confusedly.

Just articulation gives even to a feeble voice greater power and reach than the loudest vociferation can attain without it. It delivers words from the lips, not mutilated, distorted, or corrupted, but as the acknowledged sterling currency of thought;--"as beautiful coins newly issued from the mint, deeply and accurately impressed, perfectly finished, neatly struck by the proper organs, distinct, sharp, in due succession, and of due weight."--*Austin's Chironomia*, p. 38.

OBS.--The principles of articulation constitute the chief exercise of all those who are learning either to speak or to read. So far as they are specifically taught in this work, they will be found in those sections which treat of the powers of the letters.

SECTION II.--OF PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation, as distinguished from elocution, or delivery, is the utterance of words taken separately. The correct pronunciation of words, or that part of grammar which teaches it, is frequently called *Orthoëpy*.

Pronunciation, or orthoëpy, requires a knowledge of the just powers of the letters in all their combinations; of the distinction of quantity in vowels and syllables; and of the force and seat of the accent.

ARTICLE I--OF THE POWERS OF LETTERS.

The JUST POWERS of the letters, are those sounds which are given to them by the best readers. These are to be learned, as reading is learned, partly from example, and partly from such books as show or aid the pronunciation of words.

It is to be observed, however, that considerable variety, even in the powers of the letters, is produced by the character and occasion of what is uttered. It is noticed by Walker, that, "Some of the vowels, when neither under the accent, nor closed by a consonant, have a longer or a shorter, an opener or a closer sound, according to the solemnity or familiarity, the deliberation or rapidity of our delivery."--*Pronouncing Dict., Preface*, p. 4. In cursory speech, or in such reading as imitates it, even the best scholars utter many letters with quicker and obscurer sounds than ought ever to be given them in solemn discourse. "In public speaking," says Rippingham, "every word should be uttered, as though it were spoken singly. The solemnity of an oration justifies and demands such scrupulous distinctness. That careful pronunciation which would be ridiculously pedantic in colloquial intercourse, is an essential requisite of good elocution."--*Art of Public Speaking*, p. xxxvii.

ARTICLE II--OF QUANTITY.

QUANTITY, or TIME in pronunciation, is the measure of sounds or syllables in regard to their duration; and, by way of distinction, is supposed ever to determine them to be either *long* or *short*. [471]

The absolute time in which syllables are uttered, is very variable, and must be different to suit different subjects, passions, and occasions; but their relative length or shortness may nevertheless be preserved, and generally must be, especially in reciting poetry.

Our long syllables are chiefly those which, having sounds naturally capable of being lengthened at pleasure, are made long by falling under some stress either of accent or of emphasis. Our short syllables are the weaker sounds, which, being the less significant words, or parts of words, are uttered without peculiar stress.

OBS.--As quantity is chiefly to be regarded in the utterance of poetical compositions, this subject will be farther considered under the head of Versification.

ARTICLE III.--OF ACCENT.

ACCENT, as commonly understood, is the peculiar stress which we lay upon some particular syllable of a word, whereby that syllable is distinguished from and above the rest; as, *gram'-mar*, *gram-ma'-ri-an*.

Every word of more than one syllable, has one of its syllables accented; and sometimes a compound word has two accents, nearly equal in force; as, *e'ven-hand'ed*, *home'-depart'ment*. [472]

Besides the *chief* or *primary* accent, when the word is long, for the sake of harmony or distinctness, we often give a *secondary* or less forcible accent to an other syllable; as, to the last of *tem'-per-a-ture'*, and to the second of *in dem'-ni-fi-ca'-tion*.

"Accent seems to be regulated, in a great measure, by etymology. In words from the Saxon, the accent is

generally on the root; in words from the learned languages, it is generally on the termination; and if to these we add the different accent we lay on some words, to distinguish them from others, we seem to have the three great principles of accentuation; namely, the radical, the terminational, and the distinctive."--*Walker's Principles*, No. 491; *L. Murray's Grammar*, 8vo, p. 236.

A full and open pronunciation of the long vowel sounds, a clear articulation of the consonants, a forcible and well-placed accent, and a distinct utterance of the unaccented syllables, distinguish the elegant speaker.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pronunciation of the English language is confessedly very difficult to be mastered. Its rules and their exceptions are so numerous, that few become thoroughly acquainted with any general system of them. Nor, among the different systems which have been published, is there any which is worthy in all respects to be accounted a STANDARD. And, if we appeal to custom, the custom even of the best speakers is far from an entire uniformity. Perhaps the most popular directory on this subject is Walker's Critical Pronouncing Dictionary. The "Principles of English Pronunciation," which this author has furnished, occupy fifty-six closely-printed octavo pages, and are still insufficient for the purpose of teaching our orthoëpy by rule. They are, however, highly valuable, and ought to be consulted by every one who wishes to be master of this subject. In its vocabulary, or stock of words, this Dictionary is likewise deficient. Other lexicographers have produced several later works, of high value to the student; and, though no one has treated the subject of pronunciation so elaborately as did Walker, some may have given the results of their diligence in a form more useful to the generality of their consulters. Among the good ones, is the Universal and Critical Dictionary of Joseph E. Worcester.

OBS. 2.--Our modern accentuation of Greek or Latin words is regulated almost wholly by the noted rule of Sanctius, which Walker has copied and Englished in the Introduction to his Key, and of which the following is a new version or paraphrase, never before printed:

RULE FOR THE ACCENTING OF LATIN.

One syllable has stress of course, And words of two the first enforce; In longer words the penult guides, Its quantity the point decides; If long, 'tis there the accent's due, If short, accent the last but two; For accent, in a Latin word, Should ne'er go higher than the third.

This rule, or the substance of it, has become very important by long and extensive use; but it should be observed, that stress on monosyllables is more properly *emphasis* than *accent*; and that, in English, the accent governs quantity, rather than quantity the accent.

SECTION III.--OF ELOCUTION.

Elocution is the graceful utterance of words that are arranged into sentences, and that form discourse.

Elocution requires a knowledge, and right application, of emphasis, pauses, inflections, and tones.

ARTICLE I--OF EMPHASIS.

EMPHASIS is the peculiar stress of voice which we lay upon some particular word or words in a sentence, which are thereby distinguished from the rest as being more especially significant.[473]

As accent enforces a syllable, and gives character to a word; so emphasis distinguishes a word, and often determines the import of a sentence. The right placing of accent, in the utterance of words, is therefore not more important, than the right placing of emphasis, in the utterance of sentences. If no emphasis be used,

discourse becomes vapid and inane; if no accent, words can hardly be recognized as English.

"Emphasis, besides its other offices, is the great regulator of quantity. Though the quantity of our syllable is fixed, in words separately pronounced, yet it is mutable, when [the] words are [ar]ranged in[to] sentences; the long being changed into short, the short into long, according to the importance of the words with regard to meaning: and, as it is by emphasis only, that the meaning can be pointed out, emphasis must be the regulator of the quantity."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 246.[474] "Emphasis changes, not only the quantity of words and syllables, but also, in particular cases, the sent of the accent. This is demonstrable from the following examples: 'He shall *increase*, but I shall *decrease*.' 'There is a difference between giving and *forgiving*.' 'In this species of composition, *plausibility* is much more essential than *probability*.' In these examples, the emphasis requires the accent to be placed on syllables to which it does not commonly belong."--*Ib.*, p. 247.

In order to know what words are to be made emphatic, the speaker or reader must give constant heed to *the sense* of what he utters; his only sure guide, in this matter, being a just conception of the force and spirit of the sentiment which he is about to pronounce. He must also guard against the error of multiplying emphatic words too much; for, to overdo in this way, defeats the very purpose for which emphasis is used. To manage this stress with exact propriety, is therefore one of the surest evidences both of a quick understanding, and of a delicate and just taste.

ARTICLE II.--OF PAUSES.

Pauses are cessations in utterance, which serve equally to relieve the speaker, and to render language intelligible and pleasing.

Pauses are of three kinds: first, *distinctive* or *sentential* pauses,--such as form the divisions required by the sense; secondly, *emphatic* or *rhetorical* pauses,--such as particularly call the hearer's attention to something which has been, or is about to be, uttered; and lastly, *poetical* or *harmonic* pauses,--such as are peculiar to the utterance of metrical compositions.

The duration of the distinctive pauses should be proportionate to the degree of connexion between the parts of the discourse. The shortest are long enough for the taking of some breath; and it is proper, thus to relieve the voice at every stop, if needful. This we may do, slightly at a comma, more leisurely at a semicolon, still more so at a colon, and completely at a period.

Pauses, whether in reading or in public discourse, ought always to be formed after the manner in which we naturally form them in ordinary, sensible conversation; and not after the stiff, artificial manner which many acquire at school, by a mere mechanical attention to the common punctuation.

Forced, unintentional pauses, which accidentally divide words that ought to be spoken in close connexion, are always disagreeable; and, whether they arise from exhaustion of breath, from a habit of faltering, or from unacquaintance with the text, they are errors of a kind utterly incompatible with graceful elocution.

Emphatic or rhetorical pauses, the kind least frequently used, may be made immediately before, or immediately after, something which the speaker thinks particularly important, and on which he would fix the attention of his audience. Their effect is similar to that of a strong emphasis; and, like this, they must not be employed too often.

The harmonic pauses, or those which are peculiar to poetry, are of three kinds: the *final pause*, which marks the end of each line; the *cæsural* or *divisional pause*, which commonly divides the line near the middle; and the *minor rests*, or *demi-cæsuras*, which often divide it still further.

In the reading of poetry, these pauses ought to be observed, as well as those which have reference to the sense;

for, to read verse exactly as if it were prose, will often rob it of what chiefly distinguishes it from prose. Yet, at the same time, all appearance of singsong, or affected tone, ought to be carefully guarded against.

ARTICLE III.--OF INFLECTIONS.

INFLECTIONS are those peculiar variations of the human voice, by which a continuous sound is made to pass from one note, key, or pitch, into an other. The passage of the voice from a lower to a higher or shriller note, is called the *rising* or *upward* inflection. The passage of the voice from a higher to a lower or graver note, is called the *falling* or *downward* inflection. These two opposite inflections may be heard in the following examples: 1. The rising, "Do you mean to *gò*?" 2. The falling, "When will you *gò*?"

In general, questions that may be answered by *yes* or *no*, require the rising inflection; while those which demand any other answer, must be uttered with the falling inflection. These slides of the voice are not commonly marked in writing, or in our printed books; but, when there is occasion to note them, we apply the acute accent to the former, and the grave accent to the latter.[475]

A union of these two inflections upon the same syllable, is called a *circumflex*, a *wave*, or a "*circumflex inflection*." When the slide is first downward and then upward, it is called the *rising circumflex*, or "the *gravo-acute circumflex*;" when first upward and then downward, it is denominated the *falling circumflex*, or "the *acuto-grave circumflex*." Of these complex inflections of the voice, the emphatic words in the following sentences may be uttered as examples: "And it shall go *h~ard* but I will *ûse* the information."--"Ô! but he *pa~used* upon the brink."

When a passage is read without any inflection, the words are uttered in what is called a *monotone*; the voice being commonly pitched at a grum note, and made to move for the time, slowly and gravely, on a perfect level.

"Rising inflections are far more numerous than falling inflections; the former constitute the main body of oral language, while the latter are employed for the purposes of emphasis, and in the formation of cadences. Rising inflections are often emphatic; but their emphasis is weaker than that of falling inflections."--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 50.

"Writers on Elocution have given numerous rules for the regulation of inflections; but most of these rules are better calculated to make *bad* readers than good ones. Those founded on the construction of sentences might, perhaps, do credit to a *mechanic*, but they certainly do none to an *elocutionist*."--*Ib.*, p. 51.

"The reader should bear in mind that a falling inflection gives more importance to a word than a rising inflection. Hence it should never be employed merely for the sake of *variety*; but for *emphasis* and *cadences*. Neither should a rising inflection be used for the sake of mere '*harmony*,' where a falling inflection would better express the meaning of the author. The *sense* should, in *all* cases, determine the direction of inflections."--*Ib.*

Cadence is a fall of the voice, which has reference not so much to pitch as to force, though it may depress both; for it seems to be generally contrasted with emphasis,[476] and by some is reprehended as a fault. "Support your voice steadily and firmly," says Ripplingham, "and pronounce the concluding words of the sentence with force and vivacity, rather than with a languid cadence."--*Art of Speaking*, p. 17. The pauses which L. Murray denominates the suspending and the closing pause, he seems to have discriminated chiefly by the inflections preceding them, if he can be said to have distinguished them at all. For he not only teaches that the former may sometimes be used at the close of a sentence, and the latter sometimes where "the sense is not completed;" but, treating cadence merely as a defect, adds the following caution: "The closing pause must not be confounded with that fall of the voice, or *cadence*, with which many readers uniformly finish a sentence. Nothing is more destructive of propriety and energy than this habit. The tones and inflections of the

voice at the close of a sentence, ought to be diversified, according to the general nature of the discourse, and the particular construction and meaning of the sentence."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 250; 12mo, p. 200.

ARTICLE IV.--OF TONES.

Tones are those modulations of the voice which depend upon the feelings of the speaker. They are what Sheridan denominates "the language of emotions." And it is of the utmost importance, that they be natural, unaffected, and rightly adapted to the subject and to the occasion; for upon them, in a great measure, depends all that is pleasing or interesting in elocution.

"How much of the propriety, the force, and [the] grace of discourse, must depend on these, will appear from this single consideration; that to almost every sentiment we utter, more especially to every strong emotion, nature has adapted some peculiar tone of voice; insomuch, that he who should tell another that he was angry, or much grieved, in a tone that did not suit such emotions, instead of being believed, would be laughed at."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 333.

"The different passions of the mind must be expressed by different tones of the voice. *Love*, by a soft, smooth, languishing voice; *anger*, by a strong, vehement, and elevated voice; *joy*, by a quick, sweet, and clear voice; *sorrow*, by a low, flexible, interrupted voice; *fear*, by a dejected, tremulous, hesitating voice; *courage*, by a full, bold, and loud voice; and *perplexity*, by a grave and earnest voice. In *exordiums*, the voice should be low, yet clear; in *narrations*, distinct; in *reasoning*, slow; in *persuasions*, strong: it should thunder in *anger*, soften in *sorrow*, tremble in *fear*, and melt in *love*."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 121.

OBS.--Walker observes, in his remarks on the nature of Accent and Quantity, "As to the tones of the passions, which are so many and various, these, in the opinion of one of the best judges in the kingdom, are *qualities* of sound, occasioned by certain vibrations of the organs of speech, independent *on* [say *of*] high, low, loud, soft, quick, slow, forcible, or feeble: which last may not improperly be called different *quantities* of sound."--*Walker's Key*, p. 305.

CHAPTER III.

--FIGURES.

A Figure, in grammar, is an intentional deviation from the ordinary spelling, formation, construction, or application, of words. There are, accordingly, figures of Orthography, figures of Etymology, figures of Syntax, and figures of Rhetoric. When figures are judiciously employed, they both strengthen and adorn expression. They occur more frequently in poetry than in prose; and several of them are merely poetic licenses.

SECTION I.--FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

A Figure of Orthography is an intentional deviation from the ordinary or true spelling of a word. The principal figures of Orthography are two; namely, *Mi-me'-sis* and *Ar'-cha-ism*.

EXPLANATIONS.

I. *Mimesis* is a ludicrous imitation of some mistake or mispronunciation of a word, in which the error is mimicked by a false spelling, or the taking of one word for another; as, "*Maister*, says he, have you any *wery* good *weal* in you *vâllet*?"--*Columbian Orator*, p. 292. "Ay, he was *porn* at Monmouth, captain Gower."--*Shak*. "I will *description* the matter to you, if you be *capacity* of it."--*Id*.

"*Perdigious!* I can hardly stand." --LLOYD: *Brit. Poets*, Vol. viii, p. 184.

II. An *Archaism* is a word or phrase expressed according to ancient usage, and not according to our modern orthography; as, "*Newe grene chese of smalle clammynes comfortethe a hotte stomake*."--T. PAYNEL: *Tooke's Diversions*, ii, 132. "He *hath holpen* his servant Israel."--*Luke*, i, 54.

"With him was rev'rend Contemplation *pight*, Bow-bent with *eld*, his beard of snowy hue."--*Beattie*.

OBS.--Among the figures of this section, perhaps we might include the foreign words or phrases which individual authors now and then adopt in writing English; namely, the *Scotticisms*, the *Gallicisms*, the *Latinisms*, the *Grecisms*, and the like, with which they too often garnish their English style. But these, except they stand as foreign quotations, in which case they are exempt from our rules, are in general offences against the *purity* of our language; and it may therefore be sufficient, just to mention them here, without expressly putting any of them into the category of grammatical figures.

SECTION II.--FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

A Figure of Etymology is an intentional deviation from the ordinary formation of a word. The principal figures of Etymology are eight; namely, *A-phoer'-e-sis*, *Pros'-the-sis*, *Syn'-co-pe*, *A-poc'-o-pe*, *Par-a-go'-ge*, *Di-oer'-e-sis*, *Syn-oer'-e-sis*, and *Tme'-sis*.

EXPLANATIONS.

I. *Aphæresis* is the elision of some of the initial letters of a word: as, '*gainst*, for *against*; '*gan*, for *began*; '*neath*, for *beneath*; '*thout*, for *without*.

II. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of an expletive syllable to a word: as, *adown*, for *down*; *appaid*, for *paid*; *bestrown*, for *strown*; *evanished*, for *vanished*; *yelad*, for *clad*.

III. *Syn'copè* is the elision of some of the middle letters of a word: as, *med'cine*, for *medicine*; *e'en*, for *even*; *o'er*, for *over*; *conq'ring*, for *conquering*; *se'nnight*, for *sevensnight*.

IV. *Apoc'opè* is the elision of some of the final letters of a word: as, *tho'* for *though*; *th'*, for *the*; *t'other*, for *the other*; *thro'*, for *through*.

V. *Parago'gè* is the annexing of an expletive syllable to a word: as, *Johnny*, for *John*; *deary*, for *dear*; *withouten*, for *without*.

VI. *Diæresis* is the separating of two vowels that might be supposed to form a diphthong: as, *coöperate*, not *cooperate*; *aëronaut*, not *æronaut*; *or'thoëpy*, not *orthoepy*.

VII. *Synæresis* is the sinking of two syllables into one: as, *seest*, for *sëest*; *tacked*, for *tack-ed*; *drowned*, for *drown-ed*; *spoks't*, for *spok-est*; *show'dst*, for *show-edst*; *'tis*, for *it is*; *I'll*, for *I will*.

VIII. *Tmesis* is the inserting of a word between the parts of a compound, or between two words which should be united if they stood together: as, "On *which* side *soever*."--*Rolla*. "To us *ward*;" "To God *ward*."--*Bible*. "The *assembling* of ourselves *together*."--*Id*. "With *what* charms *soe'er* she will."--*Cowper*. "So *new* a *fashion'd* robe."--*Shak*. "Lament the *live* day *long*."--*Burns*.

OBS.--In all our pronunciation, except that of the solemn style, such verbal or participial terminations as can be so uttered, are usually sunk by *synæresis* into mere modifications of preceding syllables. The terminational consonants, if not uttered with one vowel, must be uttered with an other. When, therefore, a vowel is entirely suppressed in pronunciation, (whether retained in writing or not,) the consonants connected with it, necessarily fall into an other syllable: thus, *tried*, *triest*, *sued*, *suest*, *loved*, *lovest*, *mov'd*, *mov'st*, are monosyllables; and *studied*, *studiest*, *studi'dst*, *argued*, *arguest*, *argu'dst*, are dissyllables; except in solemn discourse, in which the *e* is generally retained and made vocal.

SECTION III.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A Figure of Syntax is an intentional deviation from the ordinary construction of words. The principal figures of Syntax are five; namely, *El-lip'-sis*, *Ple'-o-nasm*, *Syl-lep'-sis*, *En-al'-la-ge*, and *Hy-per'-ba-ton*.
EXPLANATIONS.

I. *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words which are necessary to complete the construction, but not necessary to convey the meaning. Such words are said, in technical phrase, to be *understood*;^[477] because they are received as belonging to the sentence, though they are not uttered.

Of compound sentences, a vast many are more or less elliptical; and sometimes, for brevity's sake, even the most essential parts of a simple sentence, are suppressed;^[478] as, "But more of this hereafter."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 77. This means, "But *I shall say* more of this hereafter." "Prythee, peace."--*Shak*. That is, "*I pray thee, hold thou thy peace*."

There may be an omission of any of the parts of speech, or even of a whole clause, when this repeats what precedes; but the omission of mere articles or interjections can scarcely constitute a proper ellipsis, because these parts of speech, wherever they are really necessary to be recognized, ought to be expressed.

EXAMPLES OF ELLIPSIS SUPPLIED.

1. Of the ARTICLE:--"A man and [*a*] woman."--"The day, [*the*] month, and [*the*] year."--"She gave me an apple and [*a*] pear, for a fig and [*an*] orange."--*Jaudon's Gram.*, p. 170.

2. Of the NOUN:--"The common [*law*] and the statute law."--"The twelve [*apostles*]."--"The same [*man*] is he."--"One [*book*] of my books."--"A dozen [*bottles*] of wine."--"Conscience, I say; not thine own [*conscience*], but [*the conscience*] of the other."--*1 Cor.*, x, 29. "Every moment subtracts *from* [*our lives*] what it adds *to* our lives."--*Dillwyn's Ref.*, p. 8. "Bad actions mostly lead to worse" [*actions*].--*Ib.*, p. 5.

3. Of the ADJECTIVE:--"There are subjects proper for the one, and not [*proper*] for the other."--*Kames*. "A just weight and [*a just*] balance are the Lord's."--*Prov.*, xvi, 11. True ellipses of the adjective alone, are but seldom met with.

4. Of the PRONOUN:--"Leave [*thou*] there thy gift before the altar, and go [*thou*] thy way; first be [*thou*] reconciled to thy brother, and then come [*thou*] and offer [*thou*] thy gift,"--*Matt.*, v, 24. "Love [*ye*] your enemies, bless [*ye*] them that curse you, do [*ye*] good to them that hate you."--*Ib.*, v, 44. "Chastisement does not always immediately follow error, but [*it*] sometimes comes when [*it is*] least expected."--*Dillwyn, Ref.*, p. 31. "Men generally put a greater value upon the favours [*which*] they bestow, than upon those [*which*] they receive."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 48. "Wisdom and worth were all [*that*] he had."--*Allen's Gram.*, p. 294.

5. Of the VERB:--"The world is crucified unto me, and I [*am crucified*] unto the world."--*Gal.*, vi, 14. "Hearts should not [*differ*], though heads may, differ."--*Dillwyn*, p. 11. "Are ye not much better than they" [*are*]?"--*Matt.*, vi, 26. "Tribulation worketh patience; and patience [*worketh*] experience; and experience [*worketh*] hope."--*Romans*, v, 4. "Wrongs are engraved on marble; benefits [*are engraved*] on sand."--*Art of Thinking*, p. 41. "To whom thus Eve, yet sinless" [*spoke*].--*Milton*.

6. Of the PARTICIPLE:--"That [*being*] o'er, they part."--"Animals of various natures, some adapted to the wood, and some [*adapted*] to the wave."--*Melmoth, on Scripture*, p. 13.

"His knowledge [*being*] measured to his state and place, His time [*being*] a moment, and a point [*being*] his space."--*Pope*.

7. Of the ADVERB:--"He can do this independently of me, if not [*independently*] of you."

"She shows a body rather than a life; A statue, [*rather*] than a breather." --*Shak., Ant. and Cleo.*, iii, 3.

8. Of the CONJUNCTION:--"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, [*and*] joy, [*and*] peace, [*and*] long suffering, [*and*] gentleness, [*and*] goodness, [*and*] faith, [*and*] meekness, [*and*] temperance."--*Gal.*, v, 22. The repetition of the conjunction is called *Polysyndeton*; and the omission of it, *Asyndeton*.

9. Of the PREPOSITION:--"It shall be done [*on*] this very day."--"We shall set off [*at*] some time [*in*] next month."--"He departed [*from*] this life."--"He gave [*to*] me a book."--"We walked [*through*] a mile."--"He was banished [*from*] the kingdom."--*W. Allen*. "He lived like [*to*] a prince."--*Wells*.

10. Of the INTERJECTION:--"Oh! the frailty, [*oh!*] the wickedness of men."--"Alas for Mexico! and [*alas*] for many of her invaders!"

11. Of PHRASES or CLAUSES:--"The active commonly do more than they are bound to do; the indolent [*commonly do*] less" [*than they are bound to do*].--"Young men, angry, mean less than they say; old men, [*angry, mean*] more" [*than they say*].--"It is the duty of justice, not to injure men; [*it is the duty*] of modesty, not to offend them."--*W. Allen*.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Grammarians in general treat of ellipsis without *defining* it; and exhibit such rules and examples as suppose our language to be a hundred-fold more elliptical than it really is.[479] This is a great error, and only

paralleled by that of a certain writer elsewhere noticed, who denies the existence of all ellipsis whatever. (See Syntax, Obs. 24th on Rule 22d.) Some have defined this figure in a way that betrays a very inaccurate notion of what it is: as, "ELLIPSIS is *when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense.*"--*Adam's Lat. and Eng. Gram.*, p. 235; *Gould's*, 229. "ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words necessary *to complete the sense.*"--*Bullions, Lat. Gram.*, p. 265. These definitions are decidedly worse than none; because, if they have any effect, they can only mislead. They absurdly suggest that every elliptical sentence lacks a part of its own meaning! Ellipsis is, in fact, the mere omission or absence of certain *suggested words*; or of words that may be spared from utterance, *without defect in the sense*. There never can be an ellipsis of any thing which is either unnecessary to the construction or necessary to the sense; for to say what we mean and nothing more, never can constitute a deviation from the ordinary grammatical construction of words. As a figure of Syntax, therefore, the *ellipsis* can only be of such words as are so evidently suggested to the reader, that the writer is as fully answerable for them as if he had written them.

OBS. 2.--To suppose an ellipsis where there is none, or to overlook one where it really occurs, is to pervert or mutilate the text, in order to accommodate it to the parser's or reader's ignorance of the principles of syntax. There never can be either a general uniformity or a self-consistency in our methods of parsing, or in our notions of grammar, till the true nature of an ellipsis is clearly ascertained; so that the writer shall distinguish it from a *blundering omission* that impairs the sense, and the reader or parser be barred from an *arbitrary insertion* of what would be cumbrous and useless. By adopting loose and extravagant ideas of the nature of this figure, some pretenders to learning and philosophy have been led into the most whimsical and opposite notions concerning the grammatical construction of language. Thus, with equal absurdity, *Cardell* and *Sherman*, in their *Philosophic Grammars*, attempt to confute the doctrines of their predecessors, by supposing *ellipses* at pleasure. And while the former teaches, that prepositions do not govern the objective case, but that every verb is transitive, and governs at least two objects, expressed or *understood*, its own and that of a preposition: the latter, with just as good an argument, contends that no verb is transitive, but that every objective case is governed by a preposition expressed or *understood*. A world of nonsense for lack of a *definition*!

II. PLEONASM is the introduction of superfluous words; as, "But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat *of it.*"--*Gen.*, ii, 17. This figure is allowable only, when, in animated discourse, it abruptly introduces an emphatic word, or repeats an idea to impress it more strongly; as, "*He* that hath ears to hear, let him hear."--*Bible*. "All ye inhabitants of the world, and *dwellers on the earth.*"--*Id.* "There shall not be left one stone upon another *that shall not be thrown down.*"--*Id.* "I know thee *who thou art.*"--*Id.* A Pleonasm, as perhaps in these instances, is sometimes impressive and elegant; but an unemphatic repetition of the same idea, is one of the worst faults of bad writing.

OBS.--Strong passion is not always satisfied with saying a thing once, and in the fewest words possible; nor is it natural that it should be. Hence repetitions indicative of intense feeling may constitute a beauty of the highest kind, when, if the feeling were wanting, or supposed to be so, they would be reckoned intolerable tautologies. The following is an example, which the reader may appreciate the better, if he remembers the context: "At her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay down; at her feet he bowed, he fell; where he bowed, there he fell down dead."--*Judges*, v, 27.

III. SYLLEPSIS is agreement formed according to the figurative sense of a word, or the mental conception of the thing spoken of, and not according to the literal or common use of the term; it is therefore in general connected with some figure of rhetoric: as "The *Word* was made flesh, and dwelt amongst us, and we beheld *his* glory."--*John*, i, 14. "Then Philip went down to the *city* of Samaria, and preached Christ unto *them.*"--*Acts*, viii, 5. "The *city* of London *have* expressed *their* sentiments with freedom and firmness."--*Junius*, p. 159. "And I said [to backsliding *Israel*,] after *she* had done all these things, Turn *thou* unto me; but *she* returned not: and *her* treacherous *sister* Judah saw it."--*Jer.*, iii, 7. "And he surnamed them *Boanerges*, *which is*, The sons of thunder."--*Mark*, iii, 17.

"While *Evening* draws *her* crimson curtains round."--*Thomson*, p. 63.

"The *Thunder* raises *his* tremendous voice."--*Id.*, p. 113.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--To the parser, some explanation of that agreement which is controlled by tropes, is often absolutely necessary; yet, of our modern grammarians, none appear to have noticed it; and, of the oldest writers, few, if any, have given it the rank which it deserves among the figures of syntax. The term *Syllepsis* literally signifies *conception*, *comprehension*, or *taking-together*. Under this name have been arranged, by the grammarians and rhetoricians, many different forms of unusual or irregular agreement; some of which are quite too unlike to be embraced in the same class, and not a few, perhaps, too unimportant or too ordinary to deserve any classification as figures. I therefore omit some forms of expression which others have treated as examples of *Syllepsis*, and define the term with reference to such as seem more worthy to be noticed as deviations from the ordinary construction of words. Dr. Webster, allowing the word two meanings, explains it thus: "SYLLEPSIS, *n.* [*Gr.* *syllæpsis*.] 1. In *grammar*, a figure by which we conceive the sense of words otherwise than the words import, and construe them according to the intention of the author; otherwise called *substitution*. [480] 2. The agreement of a verb or adjective, not with the word next to it, but with the most worthy in the sentence."--*American Dict.*

OBS. 2.--In short, *Syllepsis* is a *conception* of which grammarians have *conceived* so variously, that it has become doubtful, what definition or what application of the term is now the most appropriate. Dr. Prat, in defining it, cites one notion from Sanctius, and adds an other of his own, thus: "SYLLEPSIS, *id est*, *Conceptio*, est quoties Generibus, aut Numeris videntur voces discrepare. Sanct. l. 4. c. 10. Vel sit Comprehensio indignioris sub digniore."--*Prat's Lat. Gram.*, Part ii, p. 164. John Grant ranks it as a mere form or species of *Ellipsis*, and expounds it thus: "*Syllepsis* is *when* the adjective or verb, joined to different substantives, agrees with the more worthy."--*Institutes of Lat. Gram.*, p. 321. Dr. Littleton describes it thus: "SYLLLEPSIS [*sic*--KTH],--A Grammatical figure *where* two Nominative Cases singular of different persons are joined to a Verb plural."--*Latin Dict.*, 4to. By Dr. Morell it is explained as follows: "SYLLEPSIS,--A grammatical figure, *where* one is put for many, and many for one, *Lat. Conceptio*."--*Morell's Ainsworth's Dict.*, 4to, Index Vitand. IV. *Enállagè* is the use of one part of speech, or of one modification, for an other. This figure borders closely upon solecism; and, for the stability of the language, it should be sparingly indulged. There are, however, several forms of it which can appeal to good authority: as,

1. "You know that *you* are Brutus, that say this."--*Shak.*
2. "They fall *successive*[ly], and *successive*[ly] rise."--*Pope.*
3. "Than *whom* [who] a fiend more fell is nowhere found."--*Thomson.*
4. "Sure some disaster has *befell*" [befallen].--*Gay.*
5. "So furious was that onset's shock, Destruction's gates at once *unlock*" [unlocked].--*Hogg.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--*Enallage* is a Greek word, signifying *commutation*, *change*, or *exchange*. "*Enallage*, in a general sense, is the change of words, or of their accidents, one for another."--*Grant's Latin Gram.*, p. 322. The word *Antimeria*, which literally expresses *change of parts*, was often used by the old grammarians as synonymous with *Enallage*; though, sometimes, the former was taken only for the substitution of one *part of speech* for an other, and the latter, only, or more particularly, for a change of *modification*--as of mood for mood, tense for tense, or number for number. The putting of one *case* for an other, has also been thought worthy of a

particular name, and been called *Antiptosis*. But *Enallage*, the most comprehensive of these terms, having been often of old applied to all such changes, reducing them to one head, may well be now defined as above, and still applied, in this way, to all that we need recognize as figures. The word *Enallaxis*, preferred by some, is of the same import. "ENALLAXIS, so called by *Longinus*, or ENALLAGE, is an *Exchange of Cases, Tenses, Persons, Numbers, or Genders*."--*Holmes's Rhet.*, Book i, p. 57.

"An ENALLAXIS changes, when it pleases, Tenses, or Persons, Genders, Numbers, Cases."--*Ib.*, B. ii, p. 50.

OBS. 2.--Our most common form of *Enallage* is that by which a single person is addressed in the plural number. This is so fashionable in our civil intercourse, that some very polite grammarians improperly dispute its claims to be called a *figure*; and represent it as being more ordinary, and even more literal than the regular phraseology; which a few of them, as we have seen, would place among the *archaisms*. The next in frequency, (if indeed it can be called a different form,) is the practice of putting *we* for *I*, or the plural for the singular in the *first person*. This has never yet been claimed as literal and regular syntax, though the usages differ in nothing but commonness; both being honourably authorized, both still improper on some occasions, and, in both, the *Enallage* being alike obvious. Other varieties of this figure, not uncommon in English, are the putting of adjectives for adverbs, of adverbs for nouns, of the present tense for the preterit, and of the preterit for the perfect participle. But, in the use of such liberties, elegance and error sometimes approximate so nearly, there is scarcely an obvious line between them, and grammarians consequently disagree in making the distinction.

OBS. 3.--Deviations of this kind are, *in general*, to be considered solecisms; otherwise, the rules of grammar would be of no use or authority. *Despauter*, an ancient Latin grammarian, gave an improper latitude to this figure, or to a species of it, under the name of *Antiptosis*; and *Behourt* and others extended it still further. But *Sanctius* says, "*Antiptosi grammaticorum nihil imperitius, quod figmentum si esset verum, frustra quæreretur, quem casum verba regerent.*" And the *Messieurs De Port Royal* reject the figure altogether. There are, however, some changes of this kind, which the grammarian is not competent to condemn, though they do not accord with the ordinary principles of construction.

V. *Hyperbaton* is the transposition of words; as, "He wanders *earth around*."--*Cowper* "*Rings the world with the vain stir*."--*Id.* "*Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*."--*Acts*, xvii, 23. "*Happy*", says *Montesquieu*, "*is that nation whose annals are tiresome*."--*Corwin, in Congress*, 1847. This figure is much employed in poetry. A judicious use of it confers harmony, variety, strength, and vivacity upon composition. But care should be taken lest it produce ambiguity or obscurity, absurdity or solecism.

OBS.--A confused and intricate arrangement of words, received from some of the ancients the name of *Syn'chysis*, and was reckoned by them among the figures of grammar. By some authors, this has been improperly identified with *Hyper'baton*, or elegant inversion; as may be seen under the word *Synchysis* in *Littleton's Dictionary*, or in *Holmes's Rhetoric*, at page 58th. *Synchysis* literally means *confusion*, or *commixtion*; and, in grammar, is significant only of some poetical jumble of words, some verbal *kink* or *snarl*, which cannot be grammatically resolved or disentangled: as,

"*Is piety thus and pure devotion paid?*" --*Milton, P. L.*, B. xi, l. 452.

"An ass will with his long ears fray The flies that tickle him away; But man delights to have *his ears Blown maggots in by flatterers*." --*Butler's Poems*, p. 161.

SECTION IV.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

A Figure of Rhetoric is an intentional deviation from the ordinary application of words. Several of this kind of figures are commonly called *Tropes*, i.e., *turns*; because certain words are turned from their original signification to an other.[481]

Numerous departures from perfect simplicity of diction, occur in almost every kind of composition. They are mostly founded on some similitude or relation of things, which, by the power of imagination, is rendered conducive to ornament or illustration.

The principal figures of Rhetoric are sixteen; namely, *Sim'-i-le*, *Met'-a-phor*, *Al'-le-gor-y*, *Me-ton'-y-my*, *Syn-ec'-do-che*, *Hy-per'-bo-le*, *Vis'-ion*, *A-pos'-tro-phe*, *Per-son'-i-fi-ca'-tion*, *Er-o-te'-sis*, *Ec-pho-ne'-sis*, *An-tith'-e-sis*, *Cli'-max*, *I'-ro-ny*, *A-poph'-a-sis*, and *On-o-ma-to-poe'-ia*.

EXPLANATIONS.

I. A *Simile* is a simple and express comparison; and is generally introduced by *like*, *as*, or *so*: as, "Such a passion is *like falling in love with a sparrow flying over your head*; you have but one glimpse of her, and she is out of sight."--*Colliers Antoninus*. "Therefore they shall be *as the morning cloud*, and *as the early dew* that passeth away; *as the chaff* that is driven with the whirlwind out of the floor, and *as the smoke* out of the chimney."--*Hosea*, xiii.

"At first, *like thunder's distant tone*, The rattling din came rolling on."--*Hogg*.

"Man, *like the generous vine*, supported lives; The strength he gains, is from th' embrace he gives."--*Pope*.

OBS.--Comparisons are sometimes made in a manner sufficiently intelligible, without any express term to point them out. In the following passage, we have a triple example of what seems the *Simile*, without the usual sign--without *like*, *as*, or *so*: "Away with all tampering with such a question! Away with all trifling with the man in fetters! *Give a hungry man a stone, and tell what beautiful houses are made of it*;--give ice to a freezing man, and tell him of its good properties in hot weather;--throw a drowning man a dollar, as a mark of your good will;--but do not mock the bondman in his misery, by giving him a Bible when he cannot read it."--FREDERICK DOUGLASS: *Liberty Bell*, 1848.

II. A *Metaphor* is a figure that expresses or suggests the resemblance of two objects by applying either the name, or some attribute, adjunct, or action, of the one, directly to the other; as,

1. "The LORD is my *rock*, and my *fortress*."--*Psal.*, xviii 1.

2. "His eye was *morning's brightest ray*."--*Hogg*.

3. "An *angler* in the *tides* of fame."--*Id.*, *Q. W.*

4. "Beside him *sleeps* the warrior's bow."--*Langhorne*.

5. "Wild fancies in his moody brain *Gambol'd unbridled* and unbound."--*Hogg*, *Q. W.*

6. "Speechless, and fix'd in all the *death* of wo."--*Thomson*.

OBS.--A *Metaphor* is commonly understood [sic--KTH] to be only the tropical use of some *single word*, or *short phrase*; but there seem to be occasional instances of one *sentence*, or *action*, being used metaphorically to represent an other. The following extract from the London Examiner has several figurative expressions, which perhaps belong to this head: "In the present age, nearly all people are critics, even to the pen, and treat the gravest writers with a sort of *taproom* familiarity. If they are dissatisfied, *they throw a short and spent cigar in the face of the offender*; if they are pleased, *they lift the candidate off his legs, and send him away with a hearty slap on the shoulder*. Some of the shorter, when they are bent to mischief, *dip a twig in the gutter, and drag it across our polished boots*: on the contrary, when they are inclined to be gentle and generous, *they leap boisterously upon our knees, and kiss us with bread-and-butter* in their

mouths."--WALTER SAVAGE LANDOR.

III. An *Allegory* is a continued narration of fictitious events, designed to represent and illustrate important realities. Thus the Psalmist represents the *Jewish nation* under the symbol of a *vine*: "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen, and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root; and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars."--*Psalms*, lxxx, 8-10.

OBS.--The *Allegory*, agreeably to the foregoing definition of it, includes most of those similitudes which in the Scriptures are called *parables*; it includes also the better sort of *fables*. The term *allegory* is sometimes applied to a *true history* in which something else is intended, than is contained in the words literally taken. See an instance in *Galatians*, iv, 24. In the *Scriptures*, the term *fable* denotes an idle and groundless story: as, in *1 Timothy*, iv, 7; and *2 Peter*, i, 16. It is now commonly used in a better sense. "A *fable* may be defined to be an analogical narrative, intended to convey some moral lesson, in which irrational animals or objects are introduced as speaking."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 280.

IV. A *Metonymy* is a change of names between things related. It is founded, not on resemblance, but on some such relation as that of *cause* and *effect*, of *progenitor* and *posterity*, of *subject* and *adjunct*, of *place* and *inhabitant*, of *container* and *thing contained*, or of *sign* and *thing signified*: as, (1.) "God is our *salvation*;" i.e., *Saviour*. (2.) "Hear, O *Israel*;" i.e. O ye *descendants of Israel*. (3.) "He was the *sigh* of her secret soul;" i.e., the *youth* she loved. (4.) "They smote the *city*;" i.e., the *citizens*. (5.) "My son, give me thy *heart*;" i.e., *affection*. (6.) "The *sceptre* shall not depart from Judah;" i.e., *kingly power*. (7.) "They have *Moses and the prophets*;" i.e., *their writings*. See *Luke*, xvi, 29.

V. *Synecdoche*, (that is, *Comprehension*,) is the naming of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; as, (1.) "This *roof* [i.e., house] protects you." (2.) "Now the *year* [i.e., summer] is beautiful." (3.) "A *sail* [i.e., a ship or vessel] passed at a distance." (4.) "Give us this day our daily *bread*;" i.e., food. (5.) "Because they have taken away my *Lord*, [i.e., the body of Jesus,] and I know not where they have laid him."--*John*. (6.) "The same day there were added unto them about three thousand *souls*;" i.e., persons.--*Acts*. (7.) "There went out a decree from Cæsar Augustus, that all *the world* [i.e., the Roman empire] should be taxed."--*Luke*, ii, 1.

VI. *Hyperbole* is extravagant exaggeration, in which the imagination is indulged beyond the sobriety of truth; as, "My little finger *shall be thicker* than my father's loins."--*2 Chron.*, x, 10. "When I washed my *steps with butter*, and the rock poured me out *rivers of oil*."--*Job*, xxix, 6.

"The sky *shrunk upward with unusual dread*, And trembling Tiber *div'd beneath his bed*."--*Dryden*.

VII. *Vision*, or *Imagery*, is a figure by which the speaker represents the objects of his imagination, as actually before his eyes, and present to his senses; as,

"I see the dagger-crest of Mar! I see the Moray's silver star Wave o'er the cloud of Saxon war, That up the lake comes winding far!"--*Scott, L. L.*, vi, 15.

VIII. *Apostrophe* is a turning from the regular course of the subject, into an animated address; as, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death! where is thy sting? O Grave! where is thy victory?"--*1 Cor.*, xv, 55.

IX. *Personification* is a figure by which, in imagination, we ascribe intelligence and personality to unintelligent beings or abstract qualities; as,

1. "The *Worm*, aware of his intent, Harangued him thus, right eloquent."--*Cowper*.

2. "Lo, steel-clad *War* his gorgeous standard rears!"--*Rogers*.

3. "Hark! *Truth* proclaims, thy triumphs cease!"--*Idem*.

X. *Erotesis* is a figure in which the speaker adopts the form of interrogation, not to express a doubt, but, in general, confidently to assert the reverse of what is asked; as, "Hast thou an arm like God? or canst thou thunder with a voice like him?"--*Job*, xl, 9. "He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see?"--*Psalms*, xciv, 9.

XI. *Ecphonesis* is a pathetic exclamation, denoting some violent emotion of the mind; as, "O liberty!--O sound once delightful to every Roman ear!--O sacred privilege of Roman citizenship!--once sacred--now trampled upon."--*Cicero*. "And I said, O that I had wings like a dove! for then would I fly away, and be at rest."--*Psalms*, lv, 6.

XII. *Antithesis* is a placing of things in opposition, to heighten their effect by contrast; as, "I will talk of things heavenly, or things earthly; things moral, or things evangelical; things sacred, or things profane; things past, or things to come; things foreign, or things at home; things more essential, or things circumstantial; provided that all be done to our profit."--*Bunyan*, *P. P.*, p. 90.

"Contrasted faults through all his manners reign; Though poor, luxurious; though submissive, vain; Though grave, yet trifling; zealous, yet untrue; And e'en in penance, planning sins anew."--*Goldsmith*.

XIII. *Climax* is a figure in which the sense is made to advance by successive steps, to rise gradually to what is more and more important and interesting, or to descend to what is more and more minute and particular; as, "And besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith, virtue; and to virtue, knowledge; and to knowledge, temperance; and to temperance, patience; and to patience, godliness; and to godliness, brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness, charity."--2 *Peter*, i, 5.

XIV. *Irony* is a figure in which the speaker sneeringly utters the direct reverse of what he intends shall be understood; as, "We have, to be sure, great reason to believe the modest man would not ask him for a debt, when he pursues his life."--*Cicero*. "No doubt but ye are the people, and wisdom shall die with you."--*Job*, xii, 2. "They must esteem learning *very much*, when they see its professors used with such little ceremony!"--*Goldsmith's Essays*, p. 150.

XV. *Apophysis*, or *Paralipsis*, [482] is a figure in which the speaker or writer pretends to omit what at the same time he really mentions; as, "I Paul have written it with mine own hand, I will repay it; albeit *I do not say to thee*, how thou owest unto me even thine own self besides."--*Philemon*, 19.

XVI. *Onomatopoeia* is the use of a word, phrase, or sentence, the sound of which resembles, or intentionally imitates, the sound of the thing signified or spoken of: as, "Of a knocking at the door, *Rat a tat tat*."--J. W. GIBBS: in *Fowler's Gram.*, p. 334. "*Ding-dong! ding-dong!* Merry, merry, go the bells, *Ding-dong! ding-dong!*"--H. K. White. "Bow-wow n. The loud bark of a dog. *Booth*."--*Worcester's Dict*. This is often written separately; as, "*Bow wow*."--*Fowler's Gram.*, p. 334. The imitation is better with three sounds: "*Bow wow wow*." The following verses have been said to exhibit this figure:

"But when loud surges lash the sounding shore, The hoarse rough verse should like the torrent roar." --*Pope*, on *Crit.*, l. 369.

OBS.--The whole number of figures, which I have thought it needful to define and illustrate in this work, is only about thirty. These are the *chief* of what have sometimes been made a very long and minute catalogue. In the hands of some authors, Rhetoric is scarcely anything else than a detail of figures; the number of which, being made to include almost every possible form of expression, is, according to these authors, not less than two hundred and forty. Of their *names*, John Holmes gives, in his index, two hundred and fifty-three; and he has not all that might be quoted, though he has more than there are of the forms named, or the figures

themselves. To find a learned name for every particular mode of expression, is not necessarily conducive to the right use of language. It is easy to see the inutility of such pedantry; and Butler has made it sufficiently ridiculous by this caricature:

"For all a rhetorician's rules Teach nothing but to name his tools."--*Hudibras*, P. i, C. i, l. 90.

SECTION V.--EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS XIV.--PROSODICAL.

In the Fourteenth Praxis, are exemplified the several Figures of Orthography, of Etymology, of Syntax, and of Rhetoric, which the parser may name and define; and by it the pupil may also be exercised in relation to the principles of Punctuation, Utterance, Analysis, or whatever else of Grammar, the examples contain.

LESSON I.--FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

MIMESIS AND ARCHAISM.

"I *ax'd* you what you had to sell. I am fitting out a *wessel* for *Wenice*, loading her with *various keinds* of *prowisions*, and *wittualling* her for a long *woyage*; and I want several *undred* weight of *weal*, *wenison*, &c., with plenty of *inyons* and *winegar*, for the *preservation* of *ealth*."--*Columbian Orator*, p. 292.

"God bless you, and lie still quiet (*says I*) a bit longer, for my *shister's* afraid of ghosts, and would die on the spot with the fright, *was* she to see you come to life all on a sudden this way without the least preparation."--*Edgeworth's Castle Rackrent*, p. 143.

"None [else are] so desperately *evill*, as they that may *bee* good and will not: or have *beene* good and are not."--*Rev. John Rogers*, 1620. "A Carpenter finds his work as *hee* left it, but a Minister shall find his *sett* back. You need preach continually."--*Id.*

"Here *whilom ligg'd th'* Esopus of his age, But call'd by Fame, in soul *ypricked* deep."--*Thomson*.

"It was a fountain of Nepenthe rare, Whence, as Dan Homer sings, huge *pleasaunce* grew."--*Id.*

LESSON II.--FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

APHÆRESIS, PROSTHESIS, SYNCOPE, APOCOPE, PARAGOGÉ, DIÆRESIS, SYNÆRESIS, AND TMESIS.

"Bend '*gainst* the steepy hill thy breast, Burst down like torrent from its crest."--*Scott*.

"*Tis* mine to teach *th'* inactive hand to reap Kind nature's bounties, *o'er* the globe *diffus'd*."--*Dyer*.

"Alas! alas! how impotently true *Th' aërial* pencil forms the scene anew."--*Cawthorne*.

"Here a deformed monster *joy'd* to won, Which on fell rancour ever was *ybent*."--*Lloyd*.

"*Withouten* trump was proclamation made."--*Thomson*.

"The gentle knight, who saw their rueful case, Let fall *adown* his silver beard some tears. 'Certes,' quoth he, 'it is not *e'en* in grace, *T'* undo the past and eke your broken years."--*Id.*

"Vain *tamp'ring* has but *foster'd* his disease; 'Tis *desp'rate*, and he sleeps the sleep of death."--*Cowper*.

"I have a pain upon my forehead here"-- 'Why *that's* with watching; 'twill away again.'"--*Shakspeare*.

"I'll to the woods, among the happier brutes; Come, *let's* away; hark! the shrill horn resounds."--*Smith*.

"What prayer and supplication *soever* be made."--*Bible*. "By the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly *to* you *ward*."--*Ib*.

LESSON III.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE I.--ELLIPSIS.

"And now he faintly kens the bounding fawn, And [--] villager [--] abroad at early toil."--*Beattie*.

"The cottage curs at [--] early pilgrim bark."--*Id*.

"'Tis granted, and no plainer truth appears, Our most important [--] are our earliest years."--*Cowper*.

"To earn her aid, with fix'd and anxious eye, He looks on nature's [--] and on fortune's course."--*Akenside*.

"For longer in that paradise to dwell, The law [--] I gave to nature him forbids."--*Milton*.

"So little mercy shows [--] who needs so much."--*Cowper*.

"Bliss is the same [--] in subject, as [--] in king; In [--] who obtain defence, and [--] who defend."--*Pope*.

"Man made for kings! those optics are but dim That tell you so--say rather, they [--] for him."--*Cowper*.

"Man may dismiss compassion from his heart, But God will never [-----]."--*Id*.

"Vigour [--] from toil, from trouble patience grows."--*Beattie*.

"Where now the rill melodious, [--] pure, and cool, And meads, with life, and mirth, and beauty crown'd?"--*Id*.

"How dead the vegetable kingdom lies! How dumb the tuneful [-----]!"--*Thomson*.

"Self-love and Reason to one end aspire, Pain [--] their aversion, pleasure [--] their desire; But greedy that its object would devour, This [--] taste the honey, and not wound the flower."--*Pope*.

LESSON IV.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE II.--PLEONASM.

"According to their deeds, *accordingly* he will *repay*, fury to his adversaries, *recompense* to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompense."--*Isaiah*, lix, 18. "Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, *and my locks with the drops of the night*."--*Song of Sol.*, v, 2. "Thou hast chastised me, *and I was chastised*, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, *and I shall be turned*; for thou art the Lord my God."--*Jer.*, xxxi, 18. "Consider the *lilies* of the field how *they* grow."--*Matt.*, vi, 28. "*He* that glorieth, let *him* glory in the Lord."--*2 Cor.*, x, 17.

"*He* too is witness, noblest of the train That wait on man, the flight-performing horse."--*Cowper*.

FIGURE III.--SYLLEPSIS.

"Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called *Cephas*: 'which is, by interpretation a stone.'"--*John*, i, 42. "Thus saith the Lord of hosts, 'Behold, I will break the bow of *Elam*, the chief of *their* might.'"--*Jer.*, xlix, 35. "Behold, I lay in Sion a *stumbling-stone* and *rock* of offence: and whosoever believeth on *him* shall not be ashamed."--*Rom.*, ix, 33.

"Thus *Conscience* pleads *her* cause within the breast, Though long rebell'd against, not yet suppressed."--*Cowper*.

"*Knowledge* is proud that *he* has learn'd so much; *Wisdom* is humble that *he* knows no more."--*Id.*

"For those the *race* of Israel oft forsook *Their* living *strength*, and unfrequented left *His* righteous altar, bowing lowly down To bestial gods."--*Milton, Paradise Lost*, B. i, l. 432.

LESSON V.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE IV.--ENALLAGE.

"Let me tell *you*, Cassius, *you* yourself *Are* much condemned to have an itching palm, To sell and mart *your* offices for gold."--*Shakspeare*.

"Come, Philomelus; let us *instant* go, O'erturn his bow'rs, and lay his castle low."--*Thomson*.

"Then palaces shall rise; the joyful son Shall finish what the short-liv'd sire *begun*"--*Pope*.

"Such was that temple built by Solomon, Than *whom* none richer reign'd o'er Israel."--*Author*.

"He spoke: with fatal eagerness we *burn*, And *quit* the shores, undestin'd to return."--*Day*.

"Still as he pass'd, the nations he *sublimes*."--*Thomson*.

"Sometimes, with early morn, he mounted *gay*."--*Id.*

"I've lost a day"--the prince who nobly cried, *Had been* an emperor without his crown."--*Young*.

FIGURE V.--HYPERBATON.

"Such resting found *the sole* of unblest feet."--*Milton*.

"Yet, though successful, *will the toil* delight."--*Thomson*.

"Where, 'midst the changeful scen'ry ever new, Fancy a thousand wondrous *forms* describes."--*Beattie*.

"Yet so much bounty is in God, such grace, That who advance his glory, not their own, *Them* he himself to glory will advance."--*Milton*.

"No quick *reply* to dubious questions make; Suspense and caution still prevent mistake."--*Denham*.

LESSON VI.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE I.--SIMILE.

"Human greatness is short and transitory, *as the odour of incense in the fire.*"--*Dr. Johnson*. "Terrestrial happiness is of short continuance: *the brightness of the flame is wasting its fuel, the fragrant flower is passing away in its own odours.*"--*Id.* "Thy nod is *as the earthquake that shakes the mountains*; and thy smile, *as the dawn of the vernal day.*"--*Id.*

"*Plants rais'd with tenderness are seldom strong*; Man's coltish disposition asks the thong; And, without discipline, the fav'rite child, *Like a neglected forester*, runs wild."--*Cowper*.

"As turns a flock of geese, and, on the green, Poke out their foolish necks in awkward spleen, (Ridiculous in rage!) to hiss, not bite, *So war their quills*, when sons of *dullness* write."--*Young*.

"Who can un pitying see the flowery race, Shed by the morn, their new-flush'd bloom resign, Before th' unbating beam? *So fade the fair*, When fevers revel through their azure veins."--*Thomson*.

FIGURE II.--METAPHOR.

"Cathmon, thy name is a pleasant *gale.*"--*Ossian*. "Rolled into himself he flew, wide on the *bosom of winds*. The old *oak* felt his departure, and *shook* its whistling *head.*"--*Id.* "Carazan gradually lost the inclination to do good, as he acquired the power; as the *hand of time* scattered *snow* upon his head, the *freeziny influence* [sic--KTH] extended to his bosom."--*Hawkesworth*. "The sun *grew weary* of gilding the palaces of Morad; *the clouds of sorrow* gathered round his head; and *the tempest of hatred* roared about his dwelling."--*Dr. Johnson*.

LESSON VII.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE III.--ALLEGORY.

"But what think ye? A certain man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, 'Son, go work to-day in my vineyard.' He answered and said, 'I will not;' but afterward he repented, and went. And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, 'I go, sir;' and went not. Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, 'The first.'"--*Matt.*, xxi, 28-31.

FIGURE IV.--METONYMY.

"Swifter than a whirlwind, flies the leaden *death.*"--*Hervey*. "'Be all the dead forgot,' said Foldath's bursting *wrath.* 'Did not I fail in the field?'"--*Ossian*.

"Their *furrow* oft the stubborn glebe has broke."--*Gray*.

"Firm in his love, resistless in his hate, His arm is *conquest*, and his frown is *fate.*"--*Day*.

"At length the *world*, renew'd by calm repose, Was strong for toil; the dappled morn arose."--*Parnell*.

"What modes of sight betwixt each wide extreme, The mole's dim curtain and the lynx's *beam*! Of hearing, from the *life* that fills the flood, To *that* which warbles through the vernal wood!"--*Pope*.

FIGURE V.--SYNECDOCHE.

"'Twas then his *threshold* first receiv'd a guest."--*Parnell*.

"For yet by swains alone the world he knew, Whose *feet* came wand'ring o'er the nightly dew."--*Id.*

"Flush'd by the spirit of the genial *year*, Now from the virgin's cheek a fresher bloom Shoots, less and less, the

live carnation round."--*Thomson*.

LESSON VIII.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE VI.--HYPERBOLE.

"I saw their chief, tall as a rock of ice; his spear, the blasted fir; his shield the rising moon; he sat on the shore, like a cloud of mist on the hill."--*Ossian*.

"At which the universal host up sent A shout, that tore Hell's concave, and beyond Frighted the reign of Chaos and old Night."--*Milton*.

"Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood Clean from my hand? No; this my hand will rather The multitudinous seas incarnadine, Making the green one red!"--*Shakspeare*.

FIGURE VII.--VISION.

"How mighty is their defence who reverently trust in the arm of God! How powerfully do they contend who fight with lawful weapons! Hark! 'Tis the voice of eloquence, pouring forth the living energies of the soul; pleading, with generous indignation and holy emotion, the cause of injured humanity against lawless might, and reading the awful destiny that awaits the oppressor!--I see the stern countenance of despotism overawed! I see the eye fallen, that kindled the elements of war! I see the brow relaxed, that scowled defiance at hostile thousands! I see the knees tremble, that trod with firmness the embattled field! Fear has entered that heart which ambition had betrayed into violence! The tyrant feels himself a man, and subject to the weakness of humanity!--Behold! and tell me, is that power contemptible which can thus find access to the sternest hearts?"--*Author*.

FIGURE VIII.--APOSTROPHE.

"Yet still they breathe destruction, still go on, Inhumanly ingenious to find out New pains for life, new terrors for the grave; Artificers of death! Still monarchs dream Of universal empire growing up From universal ruin. *Blast the design, Great God of Hosts! nor let thy creatures fall Unpitied victims at Ambition's shrine.*"--*Porteus*.

LESSON IX.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE IX.--PERSONIFICATION.

"Hail, sacred *Polity*, by *Freedom* rear'd! Hail, sacred *Freedom*, when by *Law* restrain'd! Without you, what were man? A grov'ling herd, In darkness, wretchedness, and want, enchain'd."--*Beattie*.

"Let cheerful *Mem'ry*, from her purest cells, Lead forth a godly train of *Virtues* fair, Cherish'd in early youth, now paying back With tenfold usury the pious care."--*Porteus*.

FIGURE X.--EROTESIS.

"He that chastiseth the heathen, shall not he correct? He that teacheth man knowledge, shall not he know?"--*Psalms*, xciv, 10. "Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? then may ye also do good, that are accustomed to do evil."--*Jeremiah*, xiii, 23.

FIGURE XI.--ECPHONESIS. "O that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people! O that I had in the wilderness a lodging place

of way-faring men, that I might leave my people, and go from them!"--*Jeremiah*, ix, 1.

FIGURE XII.--ANTITHESIS.

"On this side, modesty is engaged; on that, impudence: on this, chastity; on that, lewdness: on this, integrity; on that, fraud: on this, piety; on that, profaneness: on this, constancy; on that, fickleness: on this, honour; on that, baseness: on this, moderation; on that, unbridled passion."--*Cicero*.

"She, from the rending earth, and bursting skies, Saw gods descend, and fiends infernal rise; Here fix'd the dreadful, there the blest abodes; Fear made her devils, and weak hope her gods."--*Pope*.

LESSON X.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE XIII.--CLIMAX.

"Virtuous actions are necessarily approved by the awakened conscience; and when they are approved, they are commended to practice; and when they are practised, they become easy; and when they become easy, they afford pleasure; and when they afford pleasure, they are done frequently; and when they are done frequently, they are confirmed by habit: and confirmed habit is a kind of second nature."--*Inst.*, p. 246.

"Weep all of every name: begin the wo, Ye woods, and tell it to the doleful winds; And doleful winds, wail to the howling hills; And howling hills, mourn to the dismal vales; And dismal vales, sigh to the sorrowing brooks; And sorrowing brooks, weep to the weeping stream; And weeping stream, awake the groaning deep; And let the instrument take up the song, Responsive to the voice--harmonious wo!"--*Pollok*, B. vi, l. 115.

FIGURE XIV.--IRONY.

"And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, 'Cry aloud; for he is a god: either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in [on] a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked!' "--*I Kings*, xviii, 27.

"After the number of the days in which ye searched the land, even forty days, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years; and ye shall know my breach of promise."--*Numbers*, xiv, 34.

"Some lead a life unblamable and just, Their own dear virtue their unshaken trust; They never sin--or if (as all offend) Some trivial slips their daily walk attend, The poor are near at hand, the charge is small, A slight gratuity atones for all."--*Cowper*.

FIGURE XV.--APOPHASIS, OR PARALIPSIS.

I say nothing of the notorious profligacy of his character; nothing of the reckless extravagance with which he has wasted an ample fortune; nothing of the disgusting intemperance which has sometimes caused him to reel in our streets;--but I aver that he has not been faithful to our interests,--has not exhibited either probity or ability in the important office which he holds.

FIGURE XVI.--ONOMATOPOEIA.

[Fist][The following lines, from Swift's Poems, satirically mimick the imitative music of a violin.]

"Now slowly move your fiddle-stick; Now, tantan, tantantivi, quick; Now trembling, shivering, quivering, quaking, Set hoping hearts of Lovers aching."

"Now sweep, sweep the deep. See Celia, Celia dies, While true Lovers' eyes Weeping sleep, Sleeping weep,
Weeping sleep, Bo-peep, bo-peep."

CHAPTER IV.

--VERSIFICATION.

Versification is the forming of that species of literary composition which is called *verse*; that is, *poetry*, or *poetic numbers*.

SECTION I.--OF VERSE.

Verse, in opposition to prose, is language arranged into metrical lines of some determinate length and rhythm--language so ordered as to produce harmony, by a due succession of poetic feet, or of syllables differing in quantity or stress.

DEFINITIONS AND PRINCIPLES.

The *rhythm* of verse is its relation of quantities; the modulation of its numbers; or, the kind of metre, measure, or movement, of which it consists, or by which it is particularly distinguished.

The *quantity* of a syllable, as commonly explained, is the relative portion of time occupied in uttering it. In poetry, every syllable is considered to be either long or short. A long syllable is usually reckoned to be equal to two short ones.

In the construction of English verse, long quantity coincides always with the primary accent, generally also with the secondary, as well as with emphasis; and short quantity, as reckoned by the poets, is found only in unaccented syllables, and unemphatical monosyllabic words.[483]

The quantity of a syllable, whether long or short, does not depend on what is called the long or the short sound of a vowel or diphthong, or on a supposed distinction of accent as affecting vowels in some cases and consonants in others, but principally on the degree of energy or loudness with which the syllable is uttered, whereby a greater or less portion of time is employed.

The open vowel sounds, which are commonly but not very accurately termed *long*, are those which are the most easily protracted, yet they often occur in the shortest and feeblest syllables; while, on the other hand, no vowel sound, that occurs under the usual stress of accent or of emphasis, is either so short in its own nature, or is so "quickly joined to the succeeding letter," that the syllable is not one of long quantity.

Most monosyllables, in English, are variable in quantity, and may be made either long or short, as strong or weak sounds suit the sense and rhythm; but words of greater length are, for the most part, fixed, their accented syllables being always long, and a syllable immediately before or after the accent almost always short.

One of the most obvious distinctions in poetry, is that of rhyme and blank verse. *Rhyme* is a similarity of sound, combined with a difference: occurring usually between the last syllables of different lines, but sometimes at other intervals; and so ordered that the rhyming syllables begin differently and end alike. *Blank verse* is verse without rhyme.

The principal rhyming syllables are almost always long. Double rhyme adds one short syllable; triple rhyme, two. Such syllables are redundant in iambic and anapestic verses; in lines of any other sort, they are generally, if not always, included in the measure.

A *Stanza* is a combination of several verses, or lines, which, taken together, make a regular division of a poem. It is the common practice of good versifiers, to form all stanzas of the same poem after one model. The possible variety of stanzas is infinite; and the actual variety met with in print is far too great for detail.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Verse, in the broadest acceptation of the term, is poetry, or metrical language, in general. This, to the eye, is usually distinguished from prose by the manner in which it is written and printed. For, in very many instances, if this were not the case, the reader would be puzzled to discern the difference. The division of poetry into its peculiar lines, is therefore not a mere accident. The word *verse*, from the Latin *versus*, literally signifies a *turning*. Each full line of metre is accordingly called a verse; because, when its measure is complete, the writer *turns* to place another under it. A *verse*, then, in the primary sense of the word with us, is, "A *line* consisting of a certain succession of sounds, and number of syllables."--*Johnson, Walker, Todd, Bottes*, and others. Or, according to *Webster*, it is, "A poetic *line*, consisting of a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to the rules of the species of poetry which the author intends to compose."--See *American Dict.*, 8vo.

OBS. 2.--If to settle the theory of English verse on true and consistent principles, is as difficult a matter, as the manifold contrarieties of doctrine among our prosodists would indicate, there can be no great hope of any scheme entirely satisfactory to the intelligent examiner. The very elements of the subject are much perplexed by the incompatible dogmas of authors deemed skillful to elucidate it. It will scarcely be thought a hard matter to distinguish true verse from prose, yet is it not well agreed, wherein the difference consists: what the generality regard as the most essential elements or characteristics of the former, some respectable authors dismiss entirely from their definitions of both verse and versification. The existence of quantity in our language; the dependence of our rhythms on the division of syllables into long and short; the concurrence of our accent, (except in some rare and questionable instances,) with long quantity only; the constant effect of emphasis to lengthen quantity; the limitation of quantity to mere duration of sound; the doctrine that quantity pertains to all *syllables* as such, and not merely to vowel sounds; the recognition of the same general principles of syllabication in poetry as in prose; the supposition that accent pertains not to certain *letters* in particular, but to certain *syllables* as such; the limitation of accent to stress, or percussion, only; the conversion of short syllables into long, and long into short, by a change of accent; our frequent formation of long syllables with what are called short vowels; our more frequent formation of short syllables with what are called long or open vowels; the necessity of some order in the succession of feet or syllables to form a rhythm; the need of framing each line to correspond with some other line or lines in length; the propriety of always making each line susceptible of scansion by itself: all these points, so essential to a true explanation of the nature of English verse, though, for the most part, well maintained by some prosodists, are nevertheless denied by some, so that opposite opinions may be cited concerning them all. I would not suggest that all or any of these points are thereby made *doubtful*; for there may be opposite judgements in a dozen cases, and yet concurrence enough (if concurrence *can* do it) to establish them every one.

OBS. 3.--An ingenious poet and prosodist now living,[484] Edgar Allan Poe, (to whom I owe a word or two of reply,) in his "Notes upon English Verse," with great self-complacency, represents, that, "While much has been written upon the structure of the Greek and Latin rhythms, comparatively *nothing* has been done as regards the English;" that, "It may be said, indeed, we are *without a treatise* upon our own versification;" that "The very best" *definition* of versification[485] to be found in any of "*our ordinary treatises* on the topic," has "*not a single point* which does not involve an error;" that, "A *leading deft* in each of these treatises is the confining of the subject to mere *versification*, while metre, or rhythm, in general, is the real question at issue;" that, "Versification is *not* the art, but the *act*--of making verses;" that, "A correspondence in the *length* of lines is by no means essential;" that "*Harmony*" produced "by the regular alternation of syllables differing in quantity," does not include "*melody*;" that "A *regular alternation*, as described, forms *no part* of the principle of metre;" that "There is no necessity of *any regularity* in the succession of *feet*;" that, "By consequence," he ventures to "dispute the *essentiality* of any alternation, regular or irregular, of *syllables* long and short:" that, "For *anything more intelligible* or *more satisfactory* than this definition [i. e., G. Brown's former definition of versification,] we shall look in vain in *any published treatise* upon the subject;" that, "So general and *so total a failure* can be referred only to some *radical misconception*;" that, "The word *verse* is derived (through *versus* from the Latin *verto*, *I turn*,) and * * * it can be nothing but *this derivation*, which has led to *the error* of our

writers upon prosody;" that, "*It is this which has seduced them into regarding the line itself--the versus, or turning--as an essential, or principle of metre;*" that, "Hence the term *versification* has been employed as sufficiently general, or inclusive, for treatises upon rhythm in general;" that, "Hence, also, [comes] the precise catalogue of a few varieties of English *lines*, when these varieties are, in fact, almost without limit;" that, "I," the aforesaid Edgar Allan Poe, "*shall dismiss entirely, from the consideration of the principle of rhythm, the idea of versification, or the construction of verse;*" that, "In so doing, *we shall avoid a world of confusion;*" that, "*Verse is, indeed, an afterthought, or an embellishment, or an improvement, rather than an element of rhythm;*" that, "*This fact has induced the easy admission, into the realms of Poesy, of such works as the 'Télémaque' of Fenelon;*" because, forsooth, "In the elaborate modulation of their sentences, THEY FULFIL THE IDEA OF METRE."--*The Pioneer, a Literary and Critical Magazine* (Boston, March, 1843,) Vol. I, p. 102 to 105.

OBS. 4.--"Holding these things in view," continues this sharp connoisseur, "the prosodist who rightly examines that which constitutes the external, or most immediately *recognisable*, form of Poetry, will commence with the definition of *Rhythm*. Now *rhythm*, from the Greek [*Greek: arithmos*], *number*, is a term which, in its present application, very nearly *conveys its own idea*. No more *proper* word could be employed to present *the conception intended*; for *rhythm*, in prosody, is, in its *last analysis*, identical with *time* in music. *For this reason,*" says he, "I have used, throughout this article, as synonymous with *rhythm*, the word *metre* from [*Greek: metron*], *measure*. Either the one or the other may be defined as *the arrangement of words into two or more consecutive, equal, pulsations of time*. These pulsations are *feet*. Two feet, at least, are requisite to constitute a *rhythm*; just as, in mathematics, two units are necessary to form [a] *number*.[486] The syllables of which the foot consists, when the foot is not a syllable in itself, are subdivisions of the pulsations. No equality is demanded in these subdivisions. It is only required that, so far as regards two consecutive feet at least, the sum of the times of the syllables in one, shall be equal to the sum of the times of the syllables in the other. Beyond two pulsations there is no necessity for equality of time. All beyond is arbitrary or conventional. A third or fourth pulsation may embody half, or double, or any proportion of the time occupied in the two first. Rhythm being thus understood, the prosodist should proceed to define *versification* as *the making of verses*, and *verse* as *the arbitrary or conventional isolation of rhythm into masses of greater or less extent*."--*Ib.*, p. 105.

OBS. 5.--No marvel that all usual conceptions and definitions of rhythm, of versification, and of verse, should be found dissatisfactory to the critic whose idea of *metre* is fulfilled by the pompous *prose* of Fenelon's *Télémaque*. No right or real examination of this matter can ever make the most immediately *recognizable* form of poetry to be any thing else than the form of *verse*--the form of writing in *specific lines*, ordered by number and chime of syllables, and not squared by gage of the composing-stick. And as to the derivation and primitive signification of *rhythm*, it is plain that in the extract above, both are misrepresented. The etymology there given is a gross error; for, "the Greek [*Greek: arithmos*], *number*," would make, in English, not *rhythm*, but *arithm*, as in *arithmetic*. Between the two combinations, there is the palpable difference of three or four letters in either six; for neither of these forms can be varied to the other, but by dropping one letter, and adding an other, and changing a third, and moving a fourth. *Rhythm* is derived, not thence, but from the Greek [*Greek: rhythmos*]; which, according to the lexicons, is a primitive word, and means, *rhythmus*, *rhythm*, *concinnity*, *modulation*, *measured tune*, or *regular flow*, and not "*number*."

OBS. 6.--*Rhythm*, of course, like every other word not misapplied, "*conveys its own idea*;" and that, not qualifiedly, or "*very nearly*," but *exactly*. That this idea, however, was originally that of arithmetical *number*, or is nearly so now, is about as fanciful a notion, as the happy suggestion added above, that *rhythm* in lieu of *arithm* or *number*, is the fittest of words, *because* "*rhythm in prosody is time in music!*" Without dispute, it is important to the prosodist, and also to the poet or versifier, to have as accurate an idea as possible of the import of this common term, though it is observable that many of our grammarians make little or no use of it. That it has some relation to *numbers*, is undeniable. But what is it? Poetic numbers, and numbers in arithmetic, and numbers in grammar, are three totally different sorts of things. *Rhythm* is related only to the first. Of the signification of this word, a recent expositor gives the following brief explanation: "RHYTHM, *n.*

Metre; verse; *numbers*. Proportion applied to any motion whatever."--*Bolles's Dictionary*, 8vo. To this definition, Worcester prefixes the following: "The consonance of measure and time in poetry, *prose composition*, and music;--also in dancing."--*Universal and Critical Dict.* In verse, the proportion which forms rhythm--that is, the chime of quantities--is applied to the *sounds* of syllables. Sounds, however, may be considered as a species of *motion*, especially those which are rhythmical or musical.[487] It seems more strictly correct, to regard rhythm as a *property* of poetic numbers, than to identify it with them. It is their proportion or modulation, rather than the numbers themselves. According to Dr. Webster, "RHYTHM, or RHYTHMUS, in *music* [is] variety in the movement as to quickness or slowness, or length and shortness of the notes; or *rather* the proportion which the parts of the motion have to each other."--*American Dict.* The "*last analysis*" of rhythm can be nothing else than the reduction of it to its *least parts*. And if, in this reduction, it is "identical with *time*," then it is here the same thing as *quantity*, whether prosodical or musical; for, "The *time* of a note, or syllable, is called *quantity*. The time of a *rest* is also called quantity; because *rests*, as well as notes are a constituent of rhythm."--*Comstock's Elocution*, p. 64. But rhythm is, in fact, neither time nor quantity; for the analysis which would make it such, destroys the relation in which the thing consists.

SECTION II.--OF ACCENT AND QUANTITY.

Accent and Quantity have already been briefly explained in the second chapter of Prosody, as items coming under the head of Pronunciation. What we have to say of them here, will be thrown into the form of *critical observations*; in the progress of which, many quotations from other writers on these subjects, will be presented, showing what has been most popularly taught.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Accent and quantity are distinct things;[488] the former being the stress, force, loudness, or percussion of voice, that distinguishes certain syllables from others; and the latter, the *time*, distinguished as *long* or *short*, in which a syllable is uttered. But, as the *great* sounds which we utter, naturally take more time than the *small* ones, there is a necessary connexion between quantity and accent in English,--a connexion which is sometimes expounded as being the mere relation of *cause and effect*; nor is it in fact much different from that. "As no utterance can be agreeable to the ear, which is void of proportion; and as *all quantity*, or proportion of time in utterance, depends upon a due observation of the *accent*; it is a matter of absolute necessity to all, who would arrive at a good and graceful delivery, to be master of that point. Nor is the use of *accent* in our language confined to *quantity* alone; but it is also the chief mark by which words are distinguished from mere syllables. Or rather I may say, it is the *very essence* of words, which without that, would be only so many collections of syllables."--*Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution*, p. 61. "As no utterance *which is void of proportion*, can be agreeable to the ear; and as quantity, or proportion of time in utterance, *greatly depends on* a due *attention* to the *accent*; it is *absolutely necessary for every person*, who would attain a *just* and *pleasing* delivery, to be master of that point."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 241; 12mo, 194.

OBS. 2.--In the first observation on Prosody, at page 770, and in its marginal notes, was reference made to the fact, that the nature and principles of *accent* and *quantity* are involved in difficulty, by reason of the different views of authors concerning them. To this source of embarrassment, it seems necessary here again to advert; because it is upon the distinction of syllables in respect to quantity, or accent, or both, that every system of versification, except his who merely counts, is based. And further, it is not only requisite that the principle of distinction which we adopt should be clearly made known, but also proper to consider which of these three modes is the best or most popular foundation for a theory of versification. Whether or wherein the accent and quantity of the ancient languages, Latin and Greek, differed from those of our present English, we need not now inquire. From the definitions which the learned lexicographers Littleton and Ainsworth give to *prosodia*, prosody, it would seem that, with them, "the art of *accenting*" was nothing else than the art of giving to syllables their right *quantity*, "whether long or short." And some have charged it as a glaring error, long prevalent among English grammarians, and still a fruitful source of disputes, to confound accent with quantity in our language.[489] This charge, however, there is reason to believe, is sometimes, if not in most cases,

made on grounds rather fanciful than real; for some have evidently mistaken the notion of concurrence or coincidence for that of identity. But, to affirm that the stress which we call accent, coincides always and only with long quantity, does not necessarily make accent and quantity to be one and the same thing. The greater force or loudness which causes the accented syllable to occupy more time than any other, is in itself something different from time. Besides, quantity is divisible,--being either *long* or *short*: these two species of it are acknowledged on all sides, and some few prosodists will have a third, which they call "common." [490] But, of our English accent, the word being taken in its usual acceptation, no *such* division is ever, with any propriety, made; for even the stress which we call *secondary accent*, pertains to *long* syllables rather than to short ones; and the mere absence of stress, which produces short quantity, we do not call *accent*. [491]

OBS. 3.--The impropriety of affirming *quantity* to be the same as *accent*, when its most frequent species occurs only in the absence of accent, must be obvious to every body; and those writers who anywhere suggest this identity, must either have written absurdly, or have taken *accent* in some sense which includes the sounds of our *unaccented* syllables. The word sometimes means, "The *modulation* of the voice in speaking."--*Worcester's Dict.*, w. *Accent*. In this sense, the lighter as well as the more impressive sounds are included; but still, whether both together, considered as accents, can be reckoned the same as long and short quantities, is questionable. Some say, they cannot; and insist that they are yet as different, as the variable tones of a *trumpet*, which swell and fall, are different from the merely loud and soft notes of the monotonous *drum*. This illustration of the "easy Distinction betwixt *Quantity* and *Accent*" is cited with commendation, in Brightland's Grammar, on page 157th; [492] the author of which grammar, *seems* to have understood *Accent*, or *Accents*, to be the same as *Inflections*--though these are still unlike to quantities, if he did so. (See an explanation of *Inflections* in Chap. II, Sec. iii, Art. 3, above.) His exposition is this: "*Accent* is the *rising* and *falling* of the Voice, above or under its usual *Tone*. There are three Sorts of Accents, an *Acute*, a *Grave*, and an *Inflex*, which is also call'd a *Circumflex*. The *Acute*, or *Sharp*, naturally *raises* the Voice; and the *Grave*, or *Base*, as naturally *falls* it. The *Circumflex* is a kind of *Undulation*, or *Waving* of the Voice."--*Brightland's Gram.*, Seventh Ed., Lond., 1746, p. 156.

OBS. 4.--Dr. Johnson, whose great authority could not fail to carry some others with him, too evidently identifies accent with quantity, at the commencement of his Prosody. "PRONUNCIATION is just," says he, "when every letter has its proper sound, and when every syllable has its proper accent, or which in English versification is *the same*, its proper quantity."--*Johnson's Gram.*, before Dict., 4to, p. 13; *John Burn's Gram.*, p. 240; *Jones's Prosodial Gram.*, before Dict., p. 10. Now our most common notion of *accent*--the sole notion with many--and that which the accentuation of Johnson himself everywhere inculcates--is, that it belongs *not* to "*every syllable*," but only to some particular syllables, being either "*a stress of voice* on a certain syllable," or a *small mark* to denote such stress.--See *Scott's Dict.*, or *Worcester's*. But Dr. Johnson, in the passage above, must have understood the word *accent* agreeably to his own imperfect definition of it; to wit, as "*the sound given to the syllable pronounced*."--*Joh. Dict.* An *unaccented* syllable must have been to him a syllable unpronounced. In short he does not appear to have recognized any syllables as being unaccented. The word *unaccented* had no place in his lexicography, nor could have any without inconsistency. [sic--KTH] It was unaptly added to his text, after sixty years, by one of his amenders, Todd or Chalmers; who still blindly neglected to amend his definition of *accent*. In these particulars, Walker's dictionaries exhibit the same deficiencies as Johnson's; and yet no author has more frequently used the words *accent* and *unaccented*, than did Walker. [493] Mason's Supplement, first published in 1801, must have suggested to the revisers of Johnson the addition of the latter term, as appears by the authority cited for it: "UNA'CCENTED, *adj.* Not accented. 'It being enough to make a syllable long, if it be accented, and short, if it be *unaccented*.' *Harris's Philological Inquiries*."--*Mason's Sup.*

OBS. 5.--This doctrine of Harris's, that long quantity accompanies the accent, and unaccented syllables are short, is far from confounding or identifying accent with quantity, as has already been shown; and, though it plainly contradicts some of the elementary teaching of Johnson, Sheridan, Walker, Murray, Webster, Latham, Fowler, and others, in regard to the length or shortness of certain syllables, it has been clearly maintained by many excellent authors, so that no opposite theory is better supported by authority. On this point, our

language stands not alone; for the accent controls quantity in some others.[494] G H. Noehden, a writer of uncommon ability, in his *German Grammar for Englishmen*, defines accent to be, as we see it is in English, "that *stress* which marks a particular syllable in speaking;" and recognizing, as we do, both a full accent and a partial one, or "demi-accent," presents the syllables of his language as being of three conditions: the "*accented*," which "cannot be used otherwise than as *long*;" the "*half-accented*" which "must be regarded as ambiguous, or common;" and the "*accentless*," which "are in their nature *short*."--See *Noehden's Gram.*, p. 87. His middle class, however, our prosodists in general very properly dispense with. In Fiske's *History of Greek Literature*, which is among the additions to the *Manual of Classical Literature from the German of Eschenburg*, are the following passages: "The *tone* [i.e. accent] in Greek is placed upon short syllables as well as long; in German, it accompanies regularly only long syllables."--"In giving an accent to a syllable in an English word we *thereby* render it a long syllable, whatever may be the sound given to its vowel, and in whatever way the syllable may be composed; so that as above stated in relation to the German, an English accent, or stress in pronunciation, accompanies only a long syllable."--*Manual of Class. Lit.*, p. 437. With these extracts, accords the doctrine of some of the ablest of our English grammarians. "In the English Pronunciation," says William Ward, "there is a certain Stress of the Voice laid on some one syllable at least, of every Word of two or more Syllables; and that Syllable on which the Stress is laid may be considered *long*. Our Grammarians have agreed to consider this Stress of the Voice as *the Accent* in English; and therefore the Accent and long Quantity coincide in our Language."--*Ward's Practical Gram.*, p. 155. As to the vowel sounds, with the quantity of which many prosodists have greatly puzzled both themselves and their readers, this writer says, "they may be made as long, or as short, as the Speaker pleases."--*Ib.*, p. 4.

OBS. 6.--From the absurd and contradictory nature of many of the *principles usually laid down* by our grammarians, for the discrimination of long quantity and short, it is quite apparent, that but very few of them have well understood either the distinction itself or their own rules concerning it. Take Fisher for an example. In Fisher's *Practical Grammar*, first published in London in 1753,--a work not unsuccessful, since Wells quotes the "*28th edition*" as appearing in 1795, and this was not the last--we find, in the first place, the vowel sounds distinguished as long or short thus: "Q. How many Sounds has a Vowel? A. Two in general, viz. 1. A LONG SOUND, When the Syllable ends with a Vowel, either in Monosyllables, or in Words of more Syllables; as, *t=ake, w=e, =I, g=o, n=il*; or, as, *N=ature, N=ero, N=itre, N=ovice, N=uisance*. 2. A SHORT SOUND, When the Syllable ends with a Consonant, either in Monosyllables, or others; as *H~at, h~er, b~it, r~ob, T~un*; or, as *B~arber, b~itten, B~utton*."--See p. 5. To this rule, the author makes needless exceptions of all such words as *balance* and *banish*, wherein a single consonant between two vowels goes to the former; because, like Johnson, Murray, and most of our old grammarians, he divides on the vowel; falsely calls the accented syllable short; and imagines the consonant to be heard *twice*, or to have "*a double Accent*." On page 35th, he tells us that, "*Long and short Vowels, and long and short Syllables, are synonymous* [--*synonymous, from [Greek: synonymos]*--] Terms;" and so indeed have they been most erroneously considered by sundry subsequent writers; and the consequence is, that all who judge by their criteria, mistake the poetic quantity, or prosodical value, of perhaps one half the syllables in the language. Let each syllable be reckoned long that "ends with a Vowel," and each short that "ends with a Consonant," and the decision will probably be oftener wrong than right; for more syllables end with consonants than with vowels, and of the latter class a majority are without stress and therefore short. Thus the foregoing principle, contrary to the universal practice of the poets, determines many *accented* syllables to be "*short*;" as the first in "*barber, bitten, button, balance, banish*;"-- and many *unaccented* ones to be "*long*;" as the last in *sofa, specie, noble, metre, sorrow, daisy, valley, nature, native*; or the first in *around, before, delay, divide, remove, seclude, obey, cocoon, presume, propose*, and other words innumerable.

OBS. 7.--Fisher's conceptions of accent and quantity, as constituting prosody, were much truer to the original and etymological sense of the words, than to any just or useful view of English versification: in short, this latter subject was not even mentioned by him; for prosody, in his scheme, was nothing but the right pronunciation of words, or what we now call *orthoëpy*. This part of his *Grammar* commences with the following questions and answers:

"Q. What is the Meaning of the Word PROSODY? A. It is a Word borrowed from the Greek; which, in Latin, is rendered *Accentus*, and in English *Accent*. "Q. What do you mean by *Accent*? A. Accent originally signified a Modulation of the Voice, or chanting to a musical Instrument; but is now generally used to signify *Due Pronunciation*, i.e. the pronouncing [of] a syllable according to its Quantity, (whether it be long or short,) with a stronger Force or Stress of Voice than the other Syllables in the same Word; as, *a* in *able*, *o* in *above*, &c. "Q. What is *Quantity*? A. Quantity is the different Measure of *Time* in pronouncing Syllables, from whence they are called long or short. "Q. What is the *Proportion* between a long and a short Syllable? A. Two to one; that is, a long Syllable is twice as long in pronouncing as a short one; as, *Hate*, *Hat*. This mark (=) set over a Syllable, shows that it is long, and this (~) that it is short; as, *r=ecord*, *r~ecord*. "Q. How do you *know* long and short Syllables? A. A Syllable is long or short according to the Situation of the Vowel, i.e. it is generally long when it ends with a Vowel, and short when with a Consonant; as, *F=a-* in *Favour*, and *M~an-* in *Manner*."--*Fisher's Practical Gram.*, p. 34.

Now one grand mistake of this is, that it supposes syllabication to fix the quantity, and quantity to determine the accent; whereas it is plain, that accent controls quantity, so far at least that, in the construction of verse, a syllable fully accented cannot be reckoned short. And this mistake is practical; for we see, that, in three of his examples, out of the four above, the author himself misstates the quantity, because he disregards the accent: the verb *re-cord'*, being accented on the second syllable, is an *iambus*; and the nouns *rec'-ord* and *man'-ner*, being accented on the first, are *trochees*; and just as plainly so, as is the word *f=av-our*. But a still greater blunder here observable is, that, as a "*due pronunciation*" necessarily includes the utterance of every syllable, the explanation above stolidly supposes *all* our syllables to be *accented*, each "according to its Quantity, (whether it be long or short,)" and each "*with a stronger Force or Stress of Voice, than the other Syllables!*" Absurdity akin to this, and still more worthy to be criticised, has since been propagated by Sheridan, by Walker, and by Lindley Murray, with a host of followers, as Alger, D. Blair, Comly, Cooper, Cutler, Davenport, Felton, Fowler, Frost, Guy, Jaudon, Parker and Fox, Picket, Pond, Putnam, Russell, Smith, and others.

OBS. 8.--Sheridan was an able and practical teacher of *English pronunciation*, and one who appears to have gained reputation by all he undertook, whether as an actor, as an elocutionist, or as a lexicographer. His publications that refer to that subject, though now mostly superseded by others of later date, are still worthy to be consulted. The chief of them are, his *Lectures on Elocution*, his *Lectures on the Art of Reading*, his *Rhetorical Grammar*, his *Elements of English*, and his *English Dictionary*. His third lecture on Elocution, and many pages of the *Rhetorical Grammar*, are devoted to *accent* and *quantity*--subjects which he conceived to have been greatly misrepresented by other writers up to his time.[495] To this author, as it would seem, we owe the invention of that absurd doctrine, since copied into a great multitude of our English grammars, that the accent on a syllable of two or more letters, belongs, *not to the whole of it, but only to some ONE LETTER*; and that according to the character of this letter, as vowel or consonant, the same stress serves to lengthen or shorten the syllable's quantity! Of this matter, he speaks thus: "The *great distinction* of our accent depends upon its *seat*; which may be either upon a vowel or a consonant. Upon a vowel, as in the words, glóry, fáther, hóly. Upon a consonant, as in the words, hab'it, bor'row, bat'tle. When the accent is on the vowel, the syllable is long; because the accent is *made by dwelling* upon the vowel. When it is on the consonant, the *syllable is short*:[496] because the accent is *made by passing rapidly* over the vowel, and giving a smart stroke of the voice to the following consonant. *Obvious as this point is, it has wholly escaped the observation of all our grammarians and compilers of dictionaries*; who, instead of examining the peculiar genius of our tongue, implicitly and pedantically have followed the Greek method of always placing the accentual mark over a vowel."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.*, p. 51. The author's reprehension of the old mode of accentuation, is not without reason; but his "great distinction" of short and long syllables is only fit to puzzle or mislead the reader. For it is plain, that the first syllables of *hab'it*, *bor'row*, and *bat'tle*, are twice as long as the last; and, in poetry, these words are trochees, as well as the other three, *glo'ry*, *fa'ther*, and *ho'ly*.

OBS. 9.--The only important distinction in our accent, is that of the *primary* and the *secondary*, the latter species occurring when it is necessary to enforce more syllables of a word than one; but Sheridan, as we see

above, after rejecting all the old distinctions of *rising* and *falling*, *raising* and *depressing*, *acute* and *grave*, *sharp* and *base*, *long* and *short*, contrived a new one still more vain, which he founded on that of vowels and consonants, but "referred to *time*, or *quantity*." He recognized, in fact, a *vowel accent* and a *consonant accent*; or, in reference to quantity, a *lengthening accent* and a *shortening accent*. The discrimination of these was with him "THE GREAT DISTINCTION of our accent." He has accordingly mentioned it in several different places of his works, and not always with that regard to consistency which becomes a precise theorist. It led him to new and variant ways of *defining* accent; some of which seem to imply a division of consonants from their vowels in utterance, or to suggest that syllables are not the least parts of spoken words. And no sooner has he told us that our accent is but one single mode of distinguishing a syllable, than he proceeds to declare it two. Compare the following citations: "As the pronunciation of English words is chiefly regulated by *accent*, it will be necessary to have a *precise idea* of that term. Accent with us means *no more* than a *certain stress* of the voice upon *one letter* of a syllable, which distinguishes it from all the *other letters* in a word."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.*, p. 39. Again: "Accent, in the English language, means a *certain stress* of the voice upon a *particular letter* of a syllable which distinguishes it from the rest, and, at the same time, *distinguishes the syllable itself* to which it belongs from the others which compose the word."--*Same work*, p. 50. Again: "But as *our accent consists in stress only*, it can just as well be placed on a consonant as [on] a vowel."--*Same*, p. 51. Again: "By the word *accent*, is meant *the stress* of the voice on *one letter* in a syllable."--*Sheridan's Elements of English*, p. 55. Again: "The term [*accent*] with us has no reference to *inflexions* of the voice, or musical notes, but only means a *peculiar manner of distinguishing one syllable of a word from the rest*, denominated by us *accent*; and the term for that reason [is] used by us in the singular number.--This distinction is made by us in *two ways*; either by *dwelling longer upon one syllable* than the rest; or by *giving it a smarter percussion* of the voice in utterance. Of the first of these, we have instances in the words, *gl=ory*, *f=ather*, *h=oly*; of the last, in *bat'tle*, *hab'it*, *bor'row*. So that *accent*, with us, is not referred to *tune*, but to *time*; to *quantity*, not *quality*; to the more *equable* or *precipitate* motion of the voice, not to the variation of notes or *inflexions*."--*Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution*, p. 56; *Flint's Murray's Gram.*, p. 85.

OBS. 10.--How "precise" was Sheridan's idea of accent, the reader may well judge from the foregoing quotations; in four of which, he describes it as "*a certain stress*," "*the stress*," and "*stress only*," which enforces some "*letter*;" while, in the other, it is whimsically made to consist in two different modes of pronouncing "*syllables*"--namely, with *equability*, and with *precipitance*--with "*dwelling longer*," and with "*smarter percussion*"--which terms the author very improperly supposes to be *opposites*: saying, "For the two ways of distinguishing syllables by accent, as mentioned before, are *directly opposite*, and produce *quite contrary effects*; the one, by *dwelling* on the syllable, necessarily makes it long; the other, by the *smart percussion*--of the voice, as necessarily *makes it short*"--*Ib.*, p. 57. Now it is all a mistake, however common, to suppose that our accent, consisting as it does, in stress, enforcement, or "percussion of voice," can ever *shorten* the syllable on which it is laid; because what increases the quantum of a vocal sound, cannot diminish its length; and a syllable accented will always be found *longer* as well as *louder*, than any unaccented one immediately before or after it. Though weak sounds may possibly be protracted, and shorter ones be exploded loudly, it is not the custom of our speech, so to deal with the sounds of syllables.

OBS. 11.--Sheridan admitted that some syllables are naturally and necessarily short, but denied that any are naturally and necessarily long. In this, since syllabic length and shortness are relative to each other, and to the cause of each, he was, perhaps, hardly consistent. He might have done better, to have denied both, or neither. Bating his new division of accent to subject it sometimes to short quantity, he recognized very fully the dependence of quantity, long or short, whether in syllables or only in vowels, upon the presence or absence of accent or emphasis. In this he differed considerably from most of the grammarians of his day; and many since have continued to uphold other views. He says, "It is an *infallible rule* in our tongue that no vowel ever has a long sound in an unaccented syllable."--*Lectures on Elocution*, p. 60. Again: "In treating of the simple elements or letters, I have shown that some, both vowels and consonants, are *naturally short*; that is, whose sounds *cannot possibly* be prolonged; and these are the [short or shut] sounds of ~e, ~i, and ~u, of vocal sounds; and three pure mutes, k, p, t, of the consonant; as in the words *beck*, *lip*, *cut*. I have shown also, that the sounds of all the other vowels, and of the consonant semivowels, may be prolonged to what degree we

please; but at the same time it is to be observed, that all these may also be reduced to a short quantity, and are capable of being uttered in as short a space of time as those which are naturally short. So that they who speak of syllables as absolutely in their own nature long, *the common cant of prosodians*, speak of a nonentity: for though, as I have shown above, there are syllables absolutely short, which cannot possibly be prolonged by any effort of the speaker, yet it is in his power to shorten or prolong the others to what degree he pleases."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.*, p. 52. And again: "I have already mentioned that when the accent is on the vowel, it of course makes the syllable *long*; and when the accent is on the consonant, the syllable may be *either long or short*, according to the nature of the consonant, or *will of the speakers*. And as *all unaccented syllables are short*, the quantity of our syllables is adjusted by the easiest and simplest rule in the world, and in the exactest proportion."--*Lect. on Elocution*, p. 66.

OBS. 12.--This praise of our rule for the adjustment of quantity, would have been much more appropriate, had not the rule itself been greatly mistaken, perplexed, and misrepresented by the author. If it appear, on inspection, that "*beck, lip, cut*," and the like syllables, are twice as long when under the accent, as they are when not accented, so that, with a short syllable annexed or a long one prefixed, they may form *trochees*; then is it *not true*, that such syllables are either always necessarily and *inherently* short, or always, "by the smart percussion of the voice, as necessarily *made* short;" both of which inconsistent ideas are above affirmed of them. They may not be so long as some other long syllables; but, if they are twice as long as the accompanying short ones, they are not short. And, if not short, then that remarkable distinction in accent, which assumes that they are so, is as needless as it is absurd and perplexing. Now let the words, *beck'on, lip'ping, cut'ter*, be properly pronounced, and their syllables be compared with each other, or with those of *lim'beck, fil'lip, Dr=a'cut*; and it cannot but be perceived, that *beck, lip, and cut*, like other syllables in general, are *lengthened* by the accent, and shortened only in its absence; so that all these words are manifestly trochees, as all similar words are found to be, in our versification. To suppose "as many words as we hear accents," or that "it is the laying of an accent on *one* syllable, which *constitutes a word*," and then say, that "no unaccented syllable or vowel is ever to be accounted long," as this enthusiastic author does in fact, is to make strange scansion of a very large portion of the trissyllables and polysyllables which occur in verse. An other great error in Sheridan's doctrine of quantity, is his notion that all monosyllables, except a few small particles, are *accented*; and that their quantity is determined to be long or short by the *seat* or the *mode* of the accent, as before stated. Now, as our poetry abounds with monosyllables, the relative time of which is adjusted by emphasis and cadence, according to the nature and importance of the terms, and according to the requirements of rhythm, with no reference to this factitious principle, no conformity thereto but what is accidental, it cannot but be a puzzling exercise, when these difficulties come to be summed up, to attempt the application of a doctrine so vainly conceived to be "the easiest and simplest rule in the world!"

OBS. 13.--Lindley Murray's principles of accent and quantity, which later grammarians have so extensively copied, were mostly extracted from Sheridan's; and, as the compiler appears to have been aware of but few, if any, of his predecessor's errors, he has adopted and greatly spread well-nigh all that have just been pointed out; while, in regard to some points, he has considerably increased the number. His scheme, as he at last fixed it, appears to consist essentially of propositions already refuted, or objected to, above; as any reader may see, who will turn to his definition of accent, and his rules for the determination of quantity. In opposition to Sheridan, who not very consistently says, that, "*All unaccented syllables are short*," this author appears to have adopted the greater error of Fisher, who supposed that the *vowel sounds* called long and short, are just the same as the long and short *syllabic quantities*. By this rule, thousands of syllables will be called long, which are in fact short, being always so uttered in both prose and poetry; and, by the other, some will occasionally be called short, which are in fact long, being made so by the poet, under a slight secondary accent, or perhaps none. Again, in supposing our numerous monosyllables to be accented, and their quantity to be thereby fixed, without excepting "the *particles*, such as *a, the, to, in, &c.*," which were excepted by Sheridan, Murray has much augmented the multitude of errors which necessarily flow from the original rule. This principle, indeed, he adopted timidly; saying, as though he hardly believed the assertion true: "And *some writers assert*, that every monosyllable of two or more letters, has one of its letters thus distinguished."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 236; 12mo, 189. But still he *adopted* it, and adopted it *fully*, in his

section on Quantity; for, of his twelve words, exemplifying syllabic time so regulated, no fewer than nine are monosyllables. It is observable, however, that, in some instances, it is not *one* letter, but *two*, that he marks; as in the words, "m=o=od, h=o=use."--*Ib.*, p. 239; 12mo, 192. And again, it should be observed, that generally, wherever he marks accent, he follows the *old mode*, which Sheridan and Webster so justly condemn; so that, even when he is speaking of "the accent on the *consonant*," the sign of stress, as that of time, is set over a *vowel*: as, "Sádly, róbber."--*Ib.*, 8vo, 240; 12mo, 193. So in his Spelling-Book, where words are often falsely divided: as, "Vé nice," for Ven'-ice; "Há no ver," for Han'o-ver; &c.--See p. 101.

OBS. 14.--In consideration of the great authority of this grammarian, now backed by a score or two of copyists and modifiers, it may be expedient to be yet more explicit. Of *accent* Murray published about as many different definitions, as did Sheridan; which, as they show what notions he had at different times, it may not be amiss for some, who hold him always in the right, to compare. In one, he describes it thus: "Accent signifies *that stress* of the voice, which is laid on *one syllable*, to distinguish it from the rest."--*Murray's Spelling-Book*, p. 138. He should here have said, (as by his examples it would appear that he meant,) "on one syllable *of a word*;" for, as the phrase now stands, it may include stress on a *monosyllable in a sentence*; and it is a matter of dispute, whether this can properly be called accent. Walker and Webster say, it is emphasis, and not accent. Again, in an other definition, which was written before he adopted the notion of accent on consonants, of accent on monosyllables, or of accent for quantity in the formation of verse, he used these words: "Accent is *the laying of a peculiar stress* of the voice on a certain *vowel* or syllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest, or distinguished from them; as, in the word *presúme*, the stress of the voice must be on the second syllable, *súme*, which takes the accent."--*Murray's Gram.*, Second Edition, 12mo, p. 161. In this edition, which was published at York, in 1796, his chief rules of quantity say nothing about accent, but are thus expressed: [1.] "A *vowel or syllable* is long, when *the vowel or vowels contained in it* are slowly joined in pronunciation with the *following letters*; as, 'F=all, b=ale, m=o=od, h=o=use, f=eature.' [2.] A syllable is short, when the vowel is quickly joined to the succeeding *letter*; as, '~art, b~onn~et, h~ung~er."--*Ib.*, p. 166. Besides the absurdity of representing "*a vowel*" as having "*vowels contained in it*," these rules are *made up* of great faults. They confound syllabic quantities with vowel sounds. They suppose quantity to be, not the time of a whole syllable, but the quick or slow junction of *some* of its parts. They apply to no syllable that ends with a vowel sound. The former applies to none that ends with one consonant only; as, "*mood*" or the first of "*feat-ure*." In fact, it does not apply to *any* of the examples given; the final letter in each of the other words being *silent*. The latter rule is worse yet: it misrepresents the examples; for "*bonnet*" and "*hunger*" are trochees, and "*art*," with any stress on it, is long.

OBS. 15.--In all late editions of L. Murray's Grammar, and many modifications of it, accent is defined thus: "Accent is *the laying of a peculiar stress* of the voice, on a certain *letter OR syllable* in a word, that *it* may be better heard than *the rest*, or distinguished from *them*; as, in the word *presúme*, the stress of the voice must be on the *letter u*, AND [the] *second syllable*, *sume*, which takes the accent."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 235; 12mo, 188; 18mo, 57; *Alger's*, 72; *Bacon's*, 52; *Comly's*, 168; *Cooper's*, 176; *Davenport's*, 121; *Felton's*, 134; *Frost's El.*, 50; *Fisk's*, 32; *Merchant's*, 145; *Parker and Fox's*, iii, 44; *Pond's*, 197; *Putnam's*, 96; *Russell's*, 106; *R. O. Smith's*, 186. Here we see a curious jumble of the common idea of accent, as "stress laid on some particular *syllable* of a word," with Sheridan's doctrine of accenting always "a particular *letter* of a syllable,"--an idle doctrine, contrived solely for the accommodation of short quantity with long, *under the accent*. When this definition was adopted, Murray's scheme of quantity was also revised, and materially altered. The principles of his main text, to which his copiers all confine themselves, then took the following form:

"The quantity of a syllable, is *that time* which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is considered as LONG or SHORT.

"A *vowel or syllable* is long, when the accent is on the vowel; *which occasions it to be slowly joined in pronunciation with the following letters*: as, 'F=all, b=ale, m=o=od, h=o=use, f=eature.'

"A *syllable* is short, when the accent is on the consonant; *which* occasions the vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding *letter*: as, 'ant, b=onn~et, h=ung~er.'

"A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one *in pronouncing it*: thus, 'M=ate' and 'N=ote' should be pronounced as slowly again as 'M~at' and 'N~ot.'"--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 239; 12mo, 192; 18mo, 57; *Alger's*, 72; *D. C. Allen's*, 86; *Bacon's*, 52; *Comly's*, 168; *Cooper's*, 176; *Cutler's*, 165; *Davenport's*, 121; *Felton's*, 134; *Frost's El.*, 50; *Fisk's*, 32; *Maltby's*, 115; *Parker and Fox's*, iii, 47; *Pond's*, 198; *S. Putnam's*, 96; *R. C. Smith's*, 187; *Rev. T. Smith's*, 68.

Here we see a revival and an abundant propagation of Sheridan's erroneous doctrine, that our accent produces both short quantity and long, according to its seat; and since none of all these grammars, but the first two of Murray's, give any *other* rules for the discrimination of quantities, we must infer, that these were judged sufficient. Now, of all the principles on which any have ever pretended to determine the quantity of syllables, none, so far as I know, are more defective or fallacious than these. They are liable to more objections than it is worth while to specify. Suffice it to observe, that they divide certain accented syllables into long and short, and say nothing of the unaccented; whereas it is plain, and acknowledged even by Murray and Sheridan themselves, that in "*ant, bonnet, hunger*" and the like, the unaccented syllables are the *only short ones*: the rest can be, and here are, lengthened.[497]

OBS. 16.--The foregoing principles, differently expressed, and perchance in some instances more fitly, are found in many other grammars, and in some of the very latest; but they are everywhere a *mere dead letter*, a record which, if it is not always untrue, is seldom understood, and never applied in any way to practice. The following are examples:

(1.) "In a long syllable, the vowel is accented; in a short syllable [,] the consonant; as [,] *r=oll, p=oll; t~op, c~ut*."--*Rev. W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 222. (2.) "A syllable *or word* is long, when the accent is on the vowel: as *n=o, l=ine, l=a, m=e*; and short, when on the consonant: as *n~ot, l~in, L~atin, m~et*."--*S. Barrett's Grammar*, ("*Principles of Language*,") p. 112.

(3.) "A syllable is long when the accent is on the vowel, as, *P=all, s=ale, m=o=use, cr=eature*. A syllable is short when the accent is placed on the consonant; as *great', let'ter, mas'ter*."--*Rev. D. Blair's Practical Gram.*, p. 117.

(4.) "When the stress is on the *vowel*, the measure of quantity is *long*: as, *Máte, fáte, complàin, pláyful, un der míne*. When the stress is on a *consonant*, the quantity is short: as, *Mat', fat', com pel', prog'ress, dis man'tle*."--*Pardon Davis's Practical Gram.*, p. 125.

(5.) "The quantity of a syllable is considered *as long or short*. It is long when the accent is on the vowel; as, *F=all, b=ale, m=ood, ho=use, f=eature*. It is short when the accent is placed on the consonant; as, *Mas'ter, let'ter*."--*Guy's School Gram.*, p. 118; *Picket's Analytical School Gram.*, 2d Ed., p. 224.

(6.) "A syllable is *long* when the accent is on the vowel; and *short*, when the accent is on the consonant. A *long* syllable requires twice the time in pronouncing it that a *short* one does. Long syllables are marked thus =; as, *t=ube*; short syllables, thus ~; as, *m~an*."--*Hiley's English Gram.*, p. 120.

(7.) "When the accent is on a vowel, the syllable is generally long; as *=aleho=use, am=usement, f=eatures*. But when the accent is on a consonant, the syllable is mostly short; as, *h~ap'py, m~an'ner*. A long syllable requires twice as much time in the pronunciation, as a short one; as, *h=ate, h~at; n=ote, n~ot; c=ane, c~an; f=ine, f~in*."--*Jaudon's Union Gram.*, p. 173.

(8.) "If the syllable *be long*, the accent is on the vowel; as, in *b=ale, m=o=od, educ=ation*; &c. If *short*, the accent is on the consonant; as, in *~ant, b~onnet, h~unger*, &c."--*Merchant's American School Gram.*, p. 145.

The quantity of our unaccented syllables, none of these authors, except Allen, thought it worth his while to notice. But among their accented syllables, they all include *words of one syllable*, though most of them thereby pointedly contradict their own definitions of accent. To find in our language no short syllables but such as are accented, is certainly a very strange and very great oversight. Frazee says, "The pronunciation of an accented syllable *requires double the time* of that of an unaccented one."--*Frazee's Improved Gram.*, p. 180. If so, our poetical quantities are greatly misrepresented by the rules above cited. Allen truly says, "Unaccented syllables are generally short; as, *r-etúrn, túrn-er*."--*Elements of E. Gram.*, p. 222. But how it was ever found out, that in these words we accent only the vowel *u*, and in such as *hunter* and *bluntly*, some one of the consonants only, he does not inform us.

OBS. 17.--As might be expected, it is not well agreed among those who accent single consonants and vowels, *what particular letter* should receive the stress and the mark. The word or syllable "*ant*," for example, is marked "an't" by Alger, Bacon, and others, to enforce the *n*; "ant'" by Frost, Putnam, and others, to enforce the *t*; "~ant" by Murray, Russell, and others, to show, as they say, "*the accent on the consonant*!" But, in "A'NTLER," Dr. Johnson accented the *a*; and, to mark the same pronunciation, Worcester now writes, "~ANT'LER;" while almost any prosodist, in scanning, would mark this word "*~antl~er*" and call it a *trochee*. [498] Churchill, who is in general a judicious observer, writes thus: "The *leading feature* in the English language, on which *it's* melody both in prose and verse chiefly depends, is *it's* accent. Every word in it of *more than one syllable* has one of *it's* syllables distinguished by this from the rest; the accent being in some cases on the vowel, in others on the *consonant that closes the syllable*; on the vowel, when it has *it's* long sound; on the consonant, when the vowel is short."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 181. But to this, as a rule of accentuation, no attention is in fact paid nowadays. Syllables that have long vowels not final, very properly take the sign of stress on or after a consonant or a mute vowel; as, =an'gel, ch=am'ber, sl=ay'er, b=ead'roll, sl=ea'zy, sl=e=ep'er, sl=e=eve'less, l=ive'ly, m=ind'ful, sl=ight'ly, sl=id'ing, b=old'ness, gr=oss'ly, wh=ol'ly, =use'less.--See *Worcester's Dict.*

OBS. 18.--It has been seen, that Murray's principles of quantity were greatly altered by himself, after the first appearance of his grammar. To have a full and correct view of them, it is necessary to notice something more than his main text, as revised, with which all his amenders content themselves, and which he himself thought sufficient for his Abridgement. The following positions, which, in some of his revisals, he added to the large grammar, are therefore cited:--

(1.) "Unaccented syllables are generally short: as, '~-admíre, bóldn~ess, sín~er.' But to this rule there are *many* exceptions: as, 'áls=o, éx=ile, gáng=ene, úmp=ire, f=oretáste,' &c.

(2.) "When the accent is on the consonant, the syllable is often *more or less short*, as it ends with a *single consonant*, or with more than one: as, 'Sádly, róbber; persíst, máchless.'

(3.) "When the accent is on a semi-vowel, the time of the syllable may be protracted, by dwelling upon the *semi-vowel*: as, 'Cur', can', f~ulfil' but when the accent falls on a mute, the syllable *cannot be lengthened in the same manner*: as, 'Búbble, cáptain, tóttter.'"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 240; 12mo, 193.

(4.) "In this work, and in the author's Spelling-book, the vowels *e* and *o*, in the first syllable of such words as, behave, prejudge, domain, propose; and in the second syllable of such as pulley, turkey, borrow, follow; are considered as *long vowels*. The second syllables in such words as, baby, spicy, holy, fury, are also considered as *long syllables*."--*Ib.*, 8vo, p. 241.

(5.) "In the words *scarecrow*, *wherefore*, both the syllables are *unquestionably long*, but not of equal length. We presume *therefore*, that the syllables under consideration, [i.e., those which end with the sound of *e* or *o* without accent,] may also be properly styled *long syllables*, though their length is not equal to that of some others."--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, p. 241.

OBS. 19.--Sheridan's "*infallible rule*, that no vowel ever has a long sound in an unaccented syllable," is in striking contrast with three of these positions, and the exact truth of the matter is with neither author. But, for the accuracy of his doctrine, Murray appeals to "the authority of the judicious Walker," which he thinks sufficient to prove any syllable long whose vowel is called so; while the important distinction suggested by Walker, in his *Principles*, No. 529, between "the length or shortness of the vowels," and "that quantity which constitutes poetry," is entirely overlooked. It is safe to affirm, that all the accented syllables occurring in the examples above, are *long*; and all the unaccented ones, *short*: for Murray's long syllables vary in length, and his short ones in shortness, till not only the just proportion, but the actual relation, of long and short, is evidently lost with some of them. Does not *match* in "*match'less*," *sad* in "*sad'ly*," or *bub* in "*bub'ble*," require more time, than *so* in "*al'so*," *key* in "*tur'key*," or *ly* in "*ho'ly*"? If so, four of the preceding positions are very faulty. And so, indeed, is the remaining one; for where is the sense of saying, that "when the accent falls on a mute, the syllable cannot be lengthened by *dwelling upon the semi-vowel*"? This is an apparent truism, and yet not true. For a semivowel in the middle or at the beginning of a syllable, may lengthen it as much as if it stood at the end. "*Cur*" and "*can*," here given as protracted syllables, are certainly no longer by usage, and no more susceptible of protraction, than "*mat*" and "*not*," "*art*" and "*ant*," which are among the author's examples of short quantity. And if a semivowel accented will make the syllable long, was it not both an error and a self-contradiction, to give "*b~onnet*" and "*h~unger*" as examples of quantity *shortened* by the accent? The syllable *man* has two semivowels; and the letter *l*, as in "*ful fil'*," is the most sonorous of consonants; yet, as we see above, among their false examples of short syllables accented, different authors have given the words "*man*" and "*man'ner*," "*disman'tle*" and "*com pel'*," "*mas'ter*" and "*let'ter*," with sundry other sounds which may easily be lengthened. Sanborn says, "The *breve* distinguishes a short syllable; as, *m~anner*."--*Analytical Gram.*, p. 273. Parker and Fox say, "The *Breve* (thus ~) is placed over a vowel to indicate *its short sound*; as, *St. H~elena*."--*English Gram.*, Part iii, p. 31. Both explanations of this sign are defective; and neither has a suitable example. The name "*St. H~l=e'n~a*," as pronounced by Worcester, and as commonly heard, is two trochees; but "*Hel'ena*," for *Helen*, having the penult short, takes the accent on the first syllable, which is thereby *made long*, though the vowel sound is *called short*. Even Dr. Webster, who expressly notes the difference between "long and short vowels" and "long and short syllables," allows himself, on the very same page, to confound them: so that, of his three examples of a *short syllable*,--"*th~at*, *not*, *m~elon*,"--all are erroneous; two being monosyllables, which any emphasis must lengthen; and the third,--the word "*m~el'on*,"--with the first syllable marked short, and not the last! See *Webster's Improved Gram.*, p. 157.

OBS. 20.--Among the latest of our English Grammars, is Chandler's new one of 1847. The Prosody of this work is fresh from the mint; the author's old grammar of 1821, which is the nucleus of this, being "confined to Etymology and Syntax." [sic--KTH] If from anybody the public have a right to expect correctness in the details of grammar, it is from one who has had the subject so long and so habitually before him. "*Accent*" says this author, "is *the stress on a syllable, or letter*."--*Chandler's Common School Gram.*, p. 188. Now, if our less prominent words and syllables require any force at all, a definition so loose as this, may give accent to some words, or to all; to some syllables, or to all; to some letters, or to all--except those which are *silent*! And, indeed, whether the stress which distinguishes some monosyllables from others, is supposed by the writer to be accent, or emphasis, or both, it is scarcely possible to ascertain from his elucidations. "The term *emphasis*," says he, "is used to denote a fuller sound of voice *after* certain words that come in *antithesis*; that is, contrast. 'He can *write*, but he cannot *read*.' Here, *read* and *write* are *antithetical* (that is, in contrast), and are *accented*, or *emphasized*."--P. 189. The word "*after*" here may be a misprint for the word *upon*; but no preposition really suits the connexion: the participle *impressing* or *affecting* would be better. Of *quantity*, this work gives the following account: "The *quantity* of a syllable is that time which is required to pronounce it. A syllable may be *long* or *short*. *Hate* is long, as the vowel *a* is elongated by the final *e*; *hat* is short, and requires about half the time for pronunciation which is used for pronouncing *hate*. So of *ate*, *at*; *bate*, *bat*; *cure*, *cur*. Though unaccented syllables are usually short, yet *many* of those which are accented are short also. The following are short: *ádvent*, *sin'ner*, *sup'per*. In the following, the unaccented syllables are long: *álso*, *éxile*, *gángrene*, *úmpire*. It maybe remarked, that the quantity of a syllable is short when the accent is on a consonant; as, *art'*, *bon'net*, *hun'ger*. The *hyphen* (-), placed over a syllable, denotes that it is long: *n=áture*. The *breve* (~) over a syllable, denotes that it is short; as, *d~etr=áct*."--*Chandler's Common School Gram.*, p. 189. This scheme of

quantity is truly remarkable for its absurdity and confusion. What becomes of the elongating power of e, without accent or emphasis, as in *jun'cate, pal'ate, prel'ate*? Who does not know that such syllables as "*at, bat, and cur*" are often long in poetry? What more absurd, than to suppose both syllables short in such words as, "*~advent, sin'ner, sup'per,*" and then give "*serm~on, f=ilt~er, sp=ir~it, g=ath~er,*" and the like, for regular trochees, with "the first syllable long, and the second short," as does this author? What more contradictory and confused, than to pretend that the primal sound of a vowel lengthens an unaccented syllable, and accent on the consonant shortens an accented one, as if in "*âl'so*" the first syllable must be short and the second long, and then be compelled, by the evidence of one's senses to mark "*ech~o*" as a trochee, and "*détract*" as an iambus? What less pardonable misnomer, than for a great critic to call the sign of long quantity a "*hyphen*"?

OBS. 21.--The following suggestions found in two of Dr. Webster's grammars, are not far from the truth: "Most prosodians who have treated particularly of this subject, have been guilty of a fundamental error, in considering the movement of English verse as depending on long and short syllables, formed by long and short vowels. This hypothesis has led them into capital mistakes. The truth is, many of those syllables which are considered as *long* in verse, are formed by the shortest vowels in the language; as, *strength, health, grand*. The doctrine that long vowels are necessary to form long syllables in poetry is at length exploded, and the principles which regulate the movement of our verse, are explained; viz. *accent* and *emphasis*. Every emphatical word, and every accented syllable, will form what is called in verse, a long syllable. The unaccented syllables, and unemphatical monosyllabic words, are considered as short syllables."--*Webster's Philosophical Gram.*, p. 222; *Improved Gram.*, 158. Is it not remarkable, that, on the same page with this passage, the author should have given the first syllable of "*melon*" as an example of *short* quantity?

OBS. 22.--If the principle is true, which every body now takes for granted, that the foundation of versifying is some distinction pertaining to syllables; it is plain, that nothing can be done towards teaching the Art of Measuring Verses, till it be known *upon what distinction* in syllables our scheme of versification is based, and by what rule or rules the discrimination is, or ought to be, made. Errors here are central, radical, fundamental. Hence the necessity of these present disquisitions. Without some effectual criticism on their many false positions, prosodists may continue to theorize, dogmatize, plagiarize, and blunder on, as they have done, indefinitely, and knowledge of the rhythmic art be in no degree advanced by their productions, new or old. For the supposition is, that in general the consulters of these various oracles are persons more fallible still, and therefore likely to be misled by any errors that are not expressly pointed out to them. In this work, it is assumed, that *quantity*, not laboriously ascertained by "a great variety of rules applied from the Greek and Latin Prosody," but discriminated on principles of our own--*quantity*, dependent in some degree on the nature and number of the letters in a syllable, but still more on the presence or absence of stress--is the true foundation of our metre. It has already been stated, and perhaps proved, that this theory is as well supported by authority as any; but, since Lindley Murray, persuaded wrong by the positiveness of Sheridan, exchanged his scheme of feet formed by quantities, for a new one of "feet formed by accents"--or, rather, for an impracticable mixture of both, a scheme of supposed "*duplicates* of each foot"--it has been becoming more and more common for grammarians to represent the basis of English versification to be, not the distinction of long and short quantities, but the recurrence of *accent* at certain intervals. Such is the doctrine of Butler, Felton, Fowler, S. S. Greene, Hart, Hiley, R. C. Smith, Weld, Wells, and perhaps others. But, in this, all these writers contradict themselves; disregard their own definitions of accent; count monosyllables to be accented or unaccented; displace emphasis from the rank which Murray and others give it, as "the great regulator of quantity;" and suppose the length or shortness of syllables not to depend on the presence or absence of either accent or emphasis; and not to be of much account in the construction of English verse. As these strictures are running to a great length, it may be well now to introduce the poetic feet, and to reserve, for notes under that head, any further examination of opinions as to what constitutes the *foundation* of verse.

SECTION III.--OF POETIC FEET.

A verse, or line of poetry., consists of successive combinations of syllables, called *feet*. A poetic *foot*, in English, consists either of two or of three syllables, as in the following examples:

1. "C=an t=y | -r~ants b=ut | b~y t=y | -r~ants c=on | -qu~ered b=e?"--*Byron*.
2. "H=ol~y, | h=ol~y, | h=ol~y! | =all th~e | s=aints ~a | -d=ore th~ee."--*Heber*.
3. "And th~e br=eath | ~of th~e D=e | ~it~y c=ir | -cl~ed th~e ro=om."--*Hunt*.
4. "H=ail t~o th~e | chi=ef wh~o ~in | tr=i~umph ~ad l~v=anc~es!"--*Scott*.

EXPLANATIONS AND DEFINITIONS.

Poetic feet being arbitrary combinations, contrived merely for the measuring of verses, and the ready ascertainment of the syllables that suit each rhythm, there is among prosodists a perplexing diversity of opinion, as to the *number* which we ought to recognize in our language. Some will have only two or three; others, four; others, eight; others, twelve. The dozen are all that can be made of two syllables and of three. Latinists sometimes make feet of four syllables, and admit sixteen more of these, acknowledging and naming twenty-eight in all. The *principal* English feet are the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, the *Anapest*, and the *Dactyl*.

1. The *Iambus*, or *Iamb*, is a poetic foot consisting of a short syllable and a long one; as, *b~etr=ay*, *c~onf=ess*, *d~em=and*, *~intent*, *d~egr=ee*.
2. The *Trochee*, or *Choree*, is a poetic foot consisting of a long syllable and a short one; as, *h=atef~ul*, *p=ett~ish*, *l=eg~al*, *m=eas~ure*, *h=ol~y*.
3. The *Anapest* is a poetic foot consisting of two short syllables and one long one; as, *c~ontr~av=ene*, *~acqu~i=esce*, *~imp~ort=une*.
4. The *Dactyl* is a poetic foot consisting of one long syllable and two short ones; as, *l=ab~our~er*, *p=oss~ibl~e*, *w=ond~erf~ul*.

These are our principal feet, not only because they are oftenest used, but because each kind, with little or no mixture, forms a distinct order of numbers, having a peculiar rhythm. Of verse, or poetic measure, we have, accordingly, four principal kinds, or orders; namely, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapestic*, and *Dactylic*; as in the four lines cited above.

The more pure these several kinds are preserved, the more exact and complete is the chime of the verse. But exactness being difficult, and its sameness sometimes irksome, the poets generally indulge some variety; not so much, however, as to confound the drift of the rhythmical pulsations: or, if ever these be not made obvious to the reader, there is a grave fault in the versification.

The *secondary* feet, if admitted at all, are to be admitted only, or chiefly, as occasional diversifications. Of this class of feet, many grammarians adopt four; but they lack agreement about the selection. Brightland took the *Spondee*, the *Pyrrhic*, the *Moloss*, and the *Tribrach*. To these, some now add the other four; namely, the *Amphibrach*, the *Amphimac*, the *Bacchy*, and the *Antibacchy*.

Few, if any, of these feet are really *necessary* to a sufficient explanation of English verse; and the adopting of so many is liable to the great objection, that we thereby produce different modes of measuring the same lines. But, by naming them all, we avoid the difficulty of selecting the most important; and it is proper that the student should know the import of all these prosodical terms.

5. A *Spondee* is a poetic foot consisting of two long syllables; as, *c=old n=ight*, *p=o=or s=o=uls*, *~am~en*, *shr=ovet=ide*.

6. A *Pyrrhic* is a poetic foot consisting of two short syllables; as, *presumpt-l~uo~us*, *perpet-l~u~al*, *unhap-lp~il~y*, *inglo-lr~io~us*.

7. A *Moloss* is a poetic foot consisting of three long syllables; as, *De~ath's p=ale h=orse,--gre=at wh=ite thr=one,--d=EEP d=amp v=a=ult*.

8. A *Tribrach* is a poetic foot consisting of three short syllables; as, *prohib-l~it~or~y*, *unnat-l~ur~all~y*, *author-l~it~at~ive*, *innum-l~er~abl~e*.

9. An *Amphibrach* is a poetic foot of three syllables, having both sides short, the middle long; as, *~impr=ud~ent*, *c~ons=id~er*, *tr~ansp=ort~ed*.

10. An *Amphimac*, *Amphimacer*, or *Cretic*, is a poetic foot of three syllables, having both sides long, the middle short; as, *w~ind~ingsh=eet*, *l=ife~est=ate*, *s=oul~d~is~eased*.

11. A *Bacchy* is a poetic foot consisting of one short syllable and two long ones; as, *th=e wh=ole w~orld,--~a gre=at v=ase,--=of p=ure g=old*.

12. An *Antibacchy*, or *Hypobacchy*, is a poetic foot consisting of two long syllables and a short one; as, *kn=ight~s=erv~ice*, *gl=obe~d=ais~y*, *gr=ape~flow~er*, *g=old~b=eat~er*.

Among the variegations of verse, one emphatic syllable is sometimes counted for a foot. "When a single syllable is [thus] taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable." [499]

FOR EXAMPLE:--

"Keeping | *time*, | *time*, | *time*, In a | sort of | Runic | *rhyme*, To the | tintinl -nabul -lation that so | musil -cally | *wells* From the | *bells*, | *bells*, | *bells*, | *bells*, *Bells*, | *bells*, | *bells*." --EDGAR A. POE: *Union Magazine*, for Nov. 1849; *Literary World*, No. 143.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In defining our poetic feet, many late grammarians substitute the terms *accented* and *unaccented* for *long* and *short*, as did Murray, after some of the earlier editions of his grammar; the only feet recognized in his *second* edition being the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, the *Dactyl*, and the *Anapest*, and all these being formed by *quantities* only. This change has been made on the supposition, that accent and long quantity, as well as their opposites, nonaccent and short quantity, may oppose each other; and that the basis of English verse is not, like that of Latin or Greek poetry, a distinction in the *time* of syllables, not a difference in *quantity*, but such a course of accenting and nonaccenting as overrides all relations of this sort, and makes both length and shortness compatible alike with stress or no stress. Such a theory, I am persuaded, is untenable. Great authority, however, may be quoted for it, or for its principal features. Besides the several later grammarians who give it countenance, even "the judicious Walker," who, in his *Pronouncing Dictionary*, as before cited, very properly suggests a difference between "*that quantity which constitutes poetry*," and the mere "*length or shortness of vowels*," when he comes to explain our English accent and quantity, in his "*Observations on the Greek and Latin Accent and Quantity*," finds "accent perfectly compatible with either long or short quantity;" (*Key*, p. 312;) repudiates that vulgar accent of Sheridan and others, which "is only a greater force upon one syllable than another;" (*Key*, p. 313;) prefers the doctrine which "makes the elevation or depression of the voice inseparable from accent;" (*Key*, p. 314;) holds that, "unaccented vowels are frequently pronounced long when the accented vowels are short;" (*Key*, p. 312;) takes long or short *vowels* and long or short *syllables* to be things everywhere tantamount; saying, "We have *no conception* of quantity arising from any thing but the nature of the vowels, as they are pronounced long or short;" (*ibid.*;) and again: "Such long quantity" as consonants may produce with a close or short vowel, "an English ear *has not the least idea of*. Unless the

sound of the vowel be altered, we have *not any conception* of a long or short syllable."--*Walker's Key*, p. 322; and *Worcester's Octavo Dict.*, p. 935.

OBS. 2.--In the opinion of Murray, Walker's authority should be thought sufficient to settle any question of prosodial quantities. "But," it is added, "there are some critical writers, who dispute the propriety of his arrangement."--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, p. 241. And well there may be; not only by reason of the obvious incorrectness of the foregoing positions, but because the great orthoëpist is not entirely consistent with himself. In his "*Preparatory Observations*," which introduce the very essay above cited, he avers that, "the different states of the voice," which are indicated by the comparative terms *high* and *low*, *loud* and *soft*, *quick* and *slow*, *forcible* and *feeble*, "may not improperly be called *quantities* of sound."--*Walker's Key*, p. 305. Whoever thinks this, certainly conceives of quantity as arising from *several other things* than "the nature of the vowels." Even Humphrey, with whom, "Quantity differs materially from time," and who defines it, "the weight, or aggregate quantum of sounds," may find his questionable and unusual "conception" of it included among these.

OBS. 3.--Walker must have seen, as have the generality of prosodists since, that such a distinction as he makes between long syllables and short, could not possibly be the basis of English versification, or determine the elements of English feet; yet, without the analogy of any known usage, and contrary to our customary mode of reading the languages, he proposes it as applicable--and as the only doctrine conceived to be applicable--to Greek or Latin verse. Ignoring all long or short quantity not formed by what are called long or short vowels,[500] he suggests, "*as a last refuge*," (§25,) the very doubtful scheme of reading Latin and Greek poetry with the vowels conformed, agreeably to this English sense of *long* and *short* vowel sounds, to the ancient rules of quantity. Of such words as *fallo* and *ambo*, pronounced as we usually utter them, he says, "*nothing can be more evident* than the long quantity of the final vowel though without the accent, and the short quantity of the initial and accented syllable."--*Obs. on Greek and Lat. Accent*, §23; *Key*, p. 331. Now the very reverse of this appears to me to be "evident." The *a*, indeed, may be close or short, while the *o*, having its primal or *name* sound, is *called* long; but the first *syllable*, if fully accented, will have *twice the time* of the second; nor can this proportion be reversed but by changing the accent, and misplacing it on the latter syllable. Were the principle *true*, which the learned author pronounces so "evident," these, and all similar words, would constitute *iambic feet*; whereas it is plain, that in English they are *trochees*; and in Latin,--where "*o* final is *common*,"--either *trochees* or *spondees*. The word *ambo*, as every accurate scholar knows, is always a *trochee*, whether it be the Latin adjective for "*both*," or the English noun for "*a reading desk*, or *pulpit*."

OBS. 4.--The names of our poetic feet are all of them derived, by change of endings, from similar names used in Greek, and thence also in Latin; and, of course, English words and Greek or Latin, so related, are presumed to stand for things somewhat similar. This reasonable presumption is an argument, too often disregarded by late grammarians, for considering our poetic feet to be quantitative, as were the ancient,--not accentual only, as some will have them,--nor separately both, as some others absurdly teach. But, whatever may be the difference or the coincidence between English verse and Greek or Latin, it is certain, that, in *our* poetic division of syllables, strength and length must always concur, and any scheme which so contrasts accent with long quantity, as to confound the different species of feet, or give contradictory names to the same foot, must be radically and grossly defective. In the preceding section it has been shown, that the principles of quantity adopted by Sheridan, Murray, and others, being so erroneous as to be wholly nugatory, were as unfit to be the basis of English verse, as are Walker's, which have just been spoken of. But, the puzzled authors, instead of reforming these their elementary principles, so as to adapt them to the quantities and rhythms actually found in our English verse, have all chosen to assume, that our poetical feet in general *differ radically* from those which the ancients called by the same names; and yet the *coincidence* found--the "*exact sameness of nature*" acknowledged--is sagely said by some of them *to duplicate each foot into two distinct sorts for our especial advantage*; while the *difference*, which they presume to exist, or which their false principles of accent and quantity would create, between feet quantitative and feet accentual, (both of which are allowed to us,) would *implicate different names*, and convert foot into foot--iambes, trochees, spondees, pyrrhics, each species into some other--till all were confusion!

OBS. 5.--In Lindley Murray's revised scheme of feet, we have first a paragraph from Sheridan's *Rhetorical Grammar*, suggesting that the ancient poetic measures were formed of syllables divided "into *long* and *short*," and affirming, what is not very true, that, for the forming of ours, "In English, syllables are divided into *accented* and *unaccented*."--*Rhet. Gram.*, p. 64; *Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, 253; *Hart's Gram.*, 182; and others. Now *some* syllables are accented, and others are unaccented; but syllables singly significant, i.e., monosyllables, which are very numerous, belong to neither of these classes. The contrast is also comparatively new; our language had much good poetry, long before *accented* and *unaccented* were ever thus misapplied in it. Murray proceeds thus: "When the feet are formed by *accent on vowels*, they are *exactly of the same nature as ancient feet*, and have the same just quantity in their syllables. So that, in this respect, *we have all that the ancients had*, and something which they had not. We have in fact *duplicates of each foot*, yet with such a *difference*, as to fit them for *different purposes*, to be applied at our pleasure."--*Ib.*, p. 253. Again: "We have observed, that *English verse is composed of feet formed by accent*; and that when the accent falls on *vowels*, the feet are equivalent to those formed by quantity."--*Ib.*, p. 258. And again: "From the preceding view of English versification, we may see *what a copious stock of materials* it possesses. For *we are not only allowed the use of all the ancient poetic feet*, in our *heroic measure*, but we have, as before observed, *duplicates of each*, agreeing in movement, though differing in measure,[501] *and which* make different impressions on the ear; *an opulence peculiar* to our language, *and which* may be the source of a boundless variety."--*Ib.*, p. 259.

OBS. 6.--If it were not dullness to overlook the many errors and inconsistencies of this scheme, there should be thought a rare ingenuity in thus turning them all to the great advantage and peculiar riches of the English tongue! Besides several grammatical faults, elsewhere noticed, these extracts exhibit, first, the inconsistent notion--of "*duplicates with a difference*;" or, as Churchill expresses it, of "*two distinct species of each foot*;" (*New Gram.*, p. 189;) and here we are gravely assured withal, that these *different sorts*, which have no separate names, are sometimes forsooth, "*exactly of the same nature*"! Secondly, it is incompatibly urged, that, "English verse is *composed of feet formed by accent*," and at the same time shown, that it partakes largely of feet "*formed by quantity*." Thirdly, if "*we have all that the ancients had*," of poetic feet, and "*duplicates of each*," "*which they had not*" we are encumbered with an enormous surplus; for, of the twenty-eight Latin feet,[502] mentioned by Dr. Adam and others, Murray never gave the names of more than eight, and his early editions acknowledged *but four*, and these *single*, not "*duplicates*"--*unigenous*, not severally of "*two species*." Fourthly, to suppose a multiplicity of feet to be "*a copious stock of materials*" for versification, is as absurd as to imagine, in any other case, a variety of *measures* to be materials for producing the thing measured. Fifthly, "*our heroic measure*" is *iambic pentameter*, as Murray himself shows; and, to give to this, "*all the ancient poetic feet*," is to bestow most of them where they are least needed. Sixthly, "*feet differing in measure*," so as to "*make different impressions on the ear*," cannot well be said to "*agree in movement*," or to be "*exactly of the same nature*!"

OBS. 7.--Of the foundation of metre, *Wells* has the following account: "The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in its pronunciation. A syllable may be *long* in quantity, as *fate*; or *short*, as *let*. The Greeks and Romans based their poetry on the quantity of syllables; but modern versification depends chiefly upon accent, the quantity of syllables being almost wholly disregarded."--*School Gram.*, 1st Ed., p. 185. Again: "*Versification* is a measured arrangement of words[,] in which the *accent* is made to recur at certain regular intervals. This definition applies only to modern verse. In Greek and Latin poetry, it is the regular recurrence of *long syllables*, according to settled laws, which constitutes verse."--*Ib.*, p. 186. The contrasting of ancient and modern versification, since Sheridan and Murray each contrived an example of it, has become very common in our grammars, though not in principle very uniform; and, however needless where a correct theory prevails, it is, to such views of accent and quantity as were adopted by these authors, and by Walker, or their followers, but a necessary counterpart. The notion, however, that English verse has less regard to quantity than had that of the old Greeks or Romans, is a mere assumption, originating in a false idea of what quantity is; and, that Greek or Latin verse was less accentual than is ours, is another assumption, left proofless too, of what many authors disbelieve and contradict. Wells's definition of quantity is similar to mine, and perhaps unexceptionable; and yet his idea of the thing, as he gives us reason to think, was very different, and

very erroneous. His examples imply, that, like Walker, he had "no conception of quantity arising from any thing but the nature of the vowels,"--no conception of a long or a short *syllable* without what is called a long or a short *vowel sound*. That "the Greeks and Romans based their poetry on quantity" of that restricted sort,--on such "*quantity*" as "*fate*" and "*let*" may serve to discriminate,--is by no means probable; nor would it be more so, were a hundred great modern masters to declare themselves ignorant of any other. The words do not distinguish at all the long and short quantities even of our own language; much less can we rely on them for an idea of what is long or short in other tongues. Being monosyllables, both are long with emphasis, both short without it; and, could they be accented, accent too would lengthen, as its absence would shorten both. In the words *phosphate* and *streamlet*, we have the same sounds, both short; in *lettuce* and *fateful*, the same, both long. This cannot be disproved. And, in the scansion of the following stanza from Byron, the word "*Let*" twice used, is to be reckoned a *long* syllable, and not (as Wells would have it) a short one:

"Cavalier! and man of worth! *Let* these words of mine go forth; *Let* the Moorish Monarch know, That to him I nothing owe: Wo is me, Alhama!"

OBS. 8.--In the English grammars of Allen H. Weld, works remarkable for their egregious inaccuracy and worthlessness, yet honoured by the Boston school committee of 1848 and '9, the author is careful to say, "Accent should not be confounded with emphasis. *Emphasis* is a stress of voice on a word in a sentence, to mark its importance. *Accent* is a stress of voice on a syllable in a word." Yet, within seven lines of this, we are told, that, "A *verse* consists of a certain number of *accented and unaccented syllables*, arranged according to certain rules."--*Weld's English Grammar*, 2d Edition, p. 207; "Abridged Edition," p. 137. A doctrine cannot be contrived, which will more evidently or more extensively confound accent with emphasis, than does this! In English verse, on an average, about three quarters of the words are monosyllables, which, according to Walker, "have no accent," certainly none distinguishable from emphasis; hence, in fact, our syllables are no more "divided into *accented and unaccented*" as Sheridan and Murray would have them, than into *emphasized and unemphasized*, as some others have thought to class them. Nor is this confounding of accent with emphasis at all lessened or palliated by teaching with Wells, in its justification, that, "The term *accent* is also applied, in poetry, to the stress laid on monosyllabic words."--*Wells's School Gram.*, p. 185; 113th Ed., §273. What better is this, than to apply the term *emphasis* to the accenting of syllables in poetry, or to all the stress in question, as is virtually done in the following citation? "In English, verse is regulated by the *emphasis*, as there should be one *emphatic* syllable in every foot; for it is by the interchange of *emphatick* and *non-emphatick* syllables, that verse grateful to the ear is formed."--*Thomas Coar's E. Gram.*, p. 196. In Latin poetry, the longer words predominate, so that, in Virgil's verse, not one word in five is a monosyllable; hence accent, if our use of it were adjusted to the Latin quantities, might have much more to do with Latin verse than with English. With the following lines of Shakspeare, for example, accent has, properly speaking, no connexion;

"Good friend, thou hast no cause to say so yet; But thou shalt have; and creep time ne'er so slow, Yet it shall come, for me to do thee good. I had a thing to say,--But let it go."--*King John*, Act iii, Sc. 3.

OBS. 9.--T. O. Churchill, after stating that the Greek and Latin rhythms are composed of syllables long and short, sets ours in contrast with them thus: "These terms are commonly employed also in speaking of English verse, though it is marked, *not by long and short*, but by accented and unaccented syllables; the accented syllables being *accounted* long; the unaccented, short."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 183. This, though far from being right, is very different from the doctrine of Murray or Sheridan; because, in practice, or the scansion of verses, it comes to the *same results* as to suppose all our feet to be "formed by quantity." To *account* syllables long or short and not *believe* them to *be* so, is a ridiculous inconsistency: it is a shuffle in the name of science.

OBS. 10.--Churchill, though not apt to be misled by others' errors, and though his own scanning has no regard to the principle, could not rid himself of the notion, that the quantity of a syllable must depend on the "vowel sound." Accordingly he says, "Mr. Murray *justly observes*, that our accented syllables, or those reckoned long; may have either a *long or [a] short vowel sound*, so that we have *two distinct species* of each

foot."--*New Gram.*, p. 189. The obvious impossibility of "two distinct species" in one,--or, as Murray has it, of "duplicates fitted for different purposes,"--should have prevented the teaching and repeating of this nonsense, propound it who might. The commender himself had not such faith in it as is here implied. In a note, too plainly incompatible with this praise, he comments thus: "Mr. Murray adds, that this is 'an opulence *peculiar* to our language, and which may be the source of a boundless variety:' a point, on which, I confess, *I have long entertained doubts*. I am inclined to suspect that the English mode of reading verse *is analogous* to that of the ancient Greeks and Romans. Dion. Hal., *de Comp., Verb.* §xi, speaks of the *rhythm of verse differing* from the proper measure of the syllables, and often reversing it: does not this imply, that the ancients, contrary to the opinion of the learned author of *Metronariston*, read verse as we do?"--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 393, note 329.

OBS. 11.--The nature, chief sources, and true distinction of *quantity*, at least as it pertains to our language, I have set forth with clearness, first in the short chapter on Utterance, and again, more fully in this, which treats of Versification; but that the syllables, long and short, of the old Greek and Latin poets, or the feet they made of them, are to be expounded on precisely the same principles that apply to ours. I have not deemed it necessary to affirm or to deny. So far as the same laws are applicable, let them be applied. This important property of syllables,--their *quantity*, or relative time,--which is the basis of all rhythm, is, as my readers have seen, very variously treated, and in general but ill appreciated, by our English prosodists, who ought, at least in this their own province, to understand it all alike, and as it is; and so common among the erudite is the confession of Walker, that "the accent and quantity of the ancients" are, to modern readers, "obscure and mysterious," that it will be taken as a sign of arrogance and superficiality, to pretend to a very certain knowledge of them. Nor is the difficulty confined to Latin and Greek verse: the poetry of our own ancestors, from any remote period, is not easy of scansion. Dr. Johnson, in his *History of the English Language*, gave examples, with this remark: "Of the *Saxon* poetry some specimen is necessary, though our ignorance of the laws of their metre and the quantities of their syllables, *which it would be very difficult, perhaps impossible, to recover*, excludes us from that pleasure which the old bards undoubtedly gave to their contemporaries."

OBS. 12.--The imperfect measures of "the father of English poetry," are said by Dryden to have been *adapted to the ears* of the rude age which produced them. "The verse of Chaucer," says he, "I confess, is not harmonious to us; but it is like the eloquence of one whom Tacitus commends, it was *auribus istius temporis accommodata*:' they who lived with him, and sometime after him, thought it musical; and it continues so even in our judgment, if compared with the numbers of Lidgate and Gower, his contemporaries: there is the rude sweetness of a Scotch tune in it, which is natural and pleasing, though not perfect. It is true, I cannot go so far as he who published the last edition of him; for he would make us believe that the fault is in *our ears*, and that there were really ten syllables in a verse where we find but nine: but this opinion is not worth confuting; it is so gross and obvious an error, that common sense (which is a rule in every thing but matters of faith and revelation) must convince the reader that equality of numbers in every verse, which we call Heroic, was either not known, or not always practised in Chaucer's age. It were an easy matter to produce some thousands of his verses, which are lame for want of half a foot, and sometimes a whole one, and which no pronunciation can make otherwise. We can only say, that he lived in the infancy of our poetry, and that nothing is brought to perfection at the first."--*British Poets*, Vol. iii, p. 171.

OBS. 13.--Dryden appears to have had more faith in the ears of his own age than in those of an earlier one; but Poe, of our time, himself an ingenious versifier, in his *Notes upon English Verse*, conveys the idea that all ears are alike competent to appreciate the elements of metre. "Quantity," according to his dogmatism, "is a point in the investigation of which the lumber of mere learning may be dispensed with, if ever in any. *Its appreciation*" says he, "*is universal*. It appertains to no region, nor race, nor era in especial. To melody and to harmony the Greeks hearkened with ears precisely similar to those which we employ, for similar purposes, at present; and a pendulum at Athens would have vibrated much after the same fashion as does a pendulum in the city of Penn."--*The Pioneer*, Vol. i. p. 103. Supposing here not even the oscillations of the same pendulum to be more uniform than are the nature and just estimation of quantity the world over, this author soon after expounds his idea of the thing as follows: "I have already said that all syllables, in metre, are either long or

short. Our usual prosodies maintain that a long syllable is equal, in its time, to two short ones; this, however, is but an approach to the truth. It should be here observed that the quantity of an English syllable *has no dependence upon* the sound of its vowel or diphthong [diphthong], but [depends] chiefly upon *accentuation*. Monosyllables are exceedingly variable, and, for the most part, may be either long or short, to suit the demand of the rhythm. In polysyllables, the accented *ones* [say, *syllables*] are always long, while those which immediately precede or succeed them, are always short. *Emphasis* will render any short syllable long."--*Ibid.*, p. 105. In penning the last four sentences, the writer must have had Brown's Institutes of English Grammar before him, and open at page 235.

OBS. 14.--Sheridan, in his Rhetorical Grammar, written about 1780, after asserting that a distinction of accent, and not of quantity, marks the movement of English verse, proceeds as follows: "From not having examined the peculiar genius of our tongue, our Prosodians have fallen into a variety of errors; some having adopted the rules of our neighbours, the French; and others having had recourse to those of the ancients; though neither of them, in reality, would square with our tongue, on account of an essential difference *between them*. [He means, "*between each language and ours*," and should have said so.] With regard to the French, they measured verses by the number of syllables whereof they were composed, on account of a constitutional defect in their tongue, which rendered it incapable of numbers formed by poetic feet. For it has neither accent nor quantity suited to the purpose; the syllables of their words being for the most part equally accented; and the number of long syllables being out of all proportion greater than that of the short. Hence for a long time it was supposed, *as it is by most people at present*, that our verses were composed, not of feet, but syllables; and accordingly they *are denominated* verses often, eight, six, or four syllables, *even to this day*. Thus have we lost sight of the great advantage which our language has given us over the French, in point of poetic numbers, by its being capable of a geometrical proportion, on which the harmony of versification depends; and blindly reduced ourselves to that of the arithmetical kind which contains no natural power of pleasing the ear. And hence like the French, our chief pleasure in verse arises from the poor ornament of rhyme."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.*, p. 64.

OBS. 15.--In a recent work on this subject, Sheridan is particularly excepted, and he alone, where Hallam, Johnson, Lord Kames, and other "Prosodians" in general, are charged with "astonishing ignorance of the first principles of our verse;" and, at the same time, he is as particularly commended of having "especially insisted on the subject of Quantity."--*Everett's English Versification, Preface*, p. 6. That the rhetorician was but slenderly entitled to these compliments, may plainly appear from the next paragraph of his Grammar just cited; for therein he mistakingly represents it as a central error, to regard our poetic feet as being "formed by quantity" at all. "Some few of our Prosodians," says he, "finding this to be an error, and that our verses were really composed of feet, not syllables, without farther examination, boldly applied all the rules of the Latin prosody to our versification; though scarce any of them answered exactly, and some of them were utterly incompatible with the genius of our tongue. *Thus because the Roman feet were formed by quantity, they asserted the same of ours, denominating all the accented syllables long; whereas I have formerly shewn, that the accent, in some cases, as certainly makes the syllable on which it is laid, short, as in others it makes it long.* And their whole theory of quantity, borrowed from the Roman, in which they endeavour to establish the proportion of long and short, as immutably fixed to the syllables of words constructed in a certain way, at once falls to the ground; when it is shewn, that the quantity of our syllables is *perpetually varying with the sense*, and is *for the most part regulated by EMPHASIS*: which has been fully proved in the course of Lectures on the Art of reading Verse; where it has been also shewn, that *this very circumstance* has given us an *amazing advantage over the ancients* in the point of poetic numbers."--*Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.*, p. 64.

OBS. 16.--The lexicographer here claims to have "*shewn*" or "*proved*," what he had only *affirmed*, or *asserted*. Erroneously taking the quality of the vowel for the quantity of the syllable, he had suggested, in his confident way, that short quantity springs from the accenting of *consonants*, and long quantity, from the accenting of *vowels*--a doctrine which has been amply noticed and refuted in a preceding section of the present chapter. Nor is he, in what is here cited, consistent with himself. For, in the first place, nothing comes nearer than this doctrine of his, to an "endeavour to establish the proportion of long and short, as immutably

fixed to the syllables of words constructed in a certain way"! Next, although he elsewhere contrasts accent and emphasis, and supposes them different, he either confounds them in reference to verse, or contradicts himself by ascribing to each the chief control over quantity. And, lastly, if our poetic feet are not quantitative, not formed of syllables long and short, as were the Roman, what "advantage over the ancients," can we derive from the fact, that quantity is regulated by stress, whether accent or emphasis?

OBS. 17.--We have, I think, no prosodial treatise of higher pretensions than Erastus Everett's "System of English Versification," first published in 1848. This gentleman professes to have borrowed no idea but what he has regularly quoted. "He mentions this, that it may not be supposed that this work is a compilation. It will be seen," says he, "how great a share of it is original; and the author, having deduced his rules from the usage of the great poets, has the best reason for being confident of their correctness."--*Preface*, p. 5. Of the place to be filled by this System, he has the following conception: "It is thought to supply an important desideratum. It is a matter of surprise to the foreign student, who attempts the study of English poetry and the structure of its verse, to find that *we have no work on which he can rely as authority on this subject*. In the other modern languages, the most learned philologists have treated of the subject of versification, in all its parts. In English alone, in a language which possesses a body of poetical literature more extensive, as well as more valuable than any other modern language, not excepting the Italian, *the student has no rules to guide him*, but a few meagre and incorrect outlines appended to elementary text-books." Then follows this singularly inconsistent exception: "We must except from this remark two works, published in the latter part of the sixteenth century. But as they were written before the poetical language of the English tongue was fixed, and as the rules of verse were not then settled, these works can be of little practical utility."--*Preface*, p. 1. The works thus excepted as of *reliable authority without practical utility*, are "a short tract by *Gascoyne*," doubtless *George Gascoigne's* 'Notes of Instruction concerning the making of Verse or Rhyme in English,' published in 1575, and Webbe's 'Discourse of English Poetry,' dated 1586, neither of which does the kind exceptor appear to have ever seen! Mention is next made, successively, of Dr. Carey, of Dryden, of Dr. Johnson, of Blair, and of Lord Kames. "To these *guides*," or at least to the last two, "the author is indebted for many valuable hints;" yet he scruples not to say, "Blair betrays a paucity of knowledge on this subject;"--"Lord Kames has slurred over the subject of Quantity," and "shown an unpardonable ignorance of the first principles of Quantity in our verse;"--and, "Even Dr. Johnson speaks of syllables in such a manner as would lead us to suppose that he was in the same error as Kames. These inaccuracies," it is added, "can be accounted for only from the fact that Prosodians have not thought *Quantity* of sufficient importance to merit their attention."--See *Preface*, p. 4-6.

OBS. 18.--Everett's Versification consists of seventeen chapters, numbered consecutively, but divided into two parts, under the two titles Quantity and Construction. Its specimens of verse are numerous, various, and beautiful. Its modes of scansion--the things chiefly to be taught--though perhaps generally correct, are sometimes questionable, and not always consonant with the writer's own rules of quantity. From the citations above, one might expect from this author such an exposition of quantity, as nobody could either mistake or gainsay; but, as the following platform will show, his treatment of this point is singularly curt and incomplete. He is so sparing of words as not even to have given a *definition* of quantity. He opens his subject thus: "VERSIFICATION is the proper arrangement of words in a *line* according to *their quantity*, and the disposition of *these lines* in couplets, stanzas, or in blank verse, in such order, and according to such rules, as are sanctioned by usage.--A FOOT is a combination of two or *more* syllables, whether long or short.--A LINE is one foot, or more than one.--The QUANTITY of each *word* depends on its *accent*. In words of more than one syllable, all accented syllables are long, and all unaccented syllables are short. Monosyllables are long or short, according to the following Rules:--1st. All Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles are long.--2nd. The articles are always short.--3rd, The Pronouns are long or short, according to *emphasis*.--4th. Interjections and Adverbs are generally long, but sometimes *made short by emphasis*.--5th. Prepositions and Conjunctions are almost always *short*, but sometimes *made long by emphasis*."--*English Versification*, p. 13. None of these principles of quantity are unexceptionable; and whoever follows them implicitly, will often differ not only from what is right, but from their author himself in the analysis of verses. Nor are they free from important antagonisms. "Emphasis," as here spoken of, not only clashes with "accent," but contradicts itself, by making some syllables long and some short; and, what is more mysteriously absurd, the author says, "It *frequently*

happens that syllables *long* by QUANTITY become *short* by EMPHASIS."--*Everett's Eng. Versif.*, 1st Ed., p. 99. Of this, he takes the first syllable of the following line, namely, "the word *bids*," to be an example:

"B~ids m~e l~ive b~ut t=o h=ope f~or p~ost=er~it~y's pr=aise."

OBS. 19.--In the *American Review*, for May, 1848, Everett's System of Versification is named as "an apology and occasion"--not for a critical examination of this or any other scheme of prosody--but for the promulgation of a new one, a rival theory of English metres, "the principles and laws" of which the writer promises, "at another time" more fully "to develop." The article referred to is entitled, "*The Art of Measuring Verses*." The writer, being designated by his initials, "J. D. W.," is understood to be James D. Whelpley, editor of the *Review*. Believing Everett's principal doctrines to be radically erroneous, this critic nevertheless excuses them, because he thinks we have nothing better! "The views supported in the work itself," says his closing paragraph, "are not, indeed, such as we would subscribe to, nor can we admit the numerous analyses of the English metres which it contains to be correct; yet, as it is as complete in design and execution as anything that has yet appeared on the subject, and well calculated to excite the attention, and direct the inquiries, of English scholars, to the study of our own metres, we shall even pass it by without a word of criticism."--*American Review, New Series*, Vol. I, p. 492.

OBS. 20.--Everett, although, as we have seen, he thought proper to deny that the student of English versification had any well authorized "rules to guide him," still argues that, "The laws of our verse are just as fixed, and may be as clearly laid down, if we but attend to the usage of the great Poets, as are the laws of our syntax."--*Preface*, p. 7. But this critic, of the *American Review*, ingenious though he is in many of his remarks, flippantly denies that our English Prosody has either authorities or principles which one ought to respect; and accordingly cares so little whom he contradicts, that he is often inconsistent with himself. Here is a sample: "As there are *no established authorities* in this art, and, indeed, *no acknowledged principles*--every rhymester being permitted to *invent* his own *method*, and write by *instinct* or *imitation*--the critic feels quite at liberty to say just what he pleases, and *offer his private observations* as though these were really of some moment."--*Am. Rev.*, Vol. i, p. 484. In respect to writing, "*to invent*," and "*to imitate*," are repugnant ideas; and so are, *after a "method*," and "*by instinct*." Again, what sense is there in making the "liberty" of publishing one's "private observations" to depend on the presumed absence of rivals? That the author did not lack confidence in the general applicability of his speculations, subversive though they are of the best and most popular teaching on this subject, is evident from the following sentence: "We intend, also, that if these principles, with the others previously expressed, are true in the given instances, *they are equally true for all languages and all varieties of metre*, even to the denial that *any* poetic metres, founded on other principles, can properly exist."--*Ib.*, p. 491

OBS. 21.--J. D. W. is not one of those who discard quantity and supply accent in expounding the nature of metre; and yet he does not coincide very nearly with any of those who have heretofore made quantity the basis of poetic numbers. His views of the rhythmical elements being in several respects *peculiar*, I purpose briefly to notice them here, though some of the peculiarities of this new "*Art of Measuring Verses*," should rather be quoted under the head of *Scanning*, to which they more properly belong. "Of every species of beauty," says this author, "and more especially of the beauty of sounds, *continuousness* is the *first element*; a succession of *pulses* of sound becomes agreeable, only when the breaks or intervals cease to be heard." Again: "Quantity, or the *division into measures of time*, is a *second element* of verse; each line must be *stuffed out with sounds*, to a certain fullness and plumpness, that will sustain the voice, and force it to dwell upon the sounds."--*Rev.*, p. 485. The first of these positions is subsequently contradicted, or very largely qualified, by the following: "So, the line of significant sounds, in a verse, is also marked by *accents*, or *pulses*, and divided into portions called *feet*. These are necessary and natural for the very simple reason that *continuity by itself is tedious*; and the greatest pleasure arises from the union of continuity with *variety*. [That is, with "*interruption*," as he elsewhere calls it!] In the line,

'Full màny a tàle theír mùsic tèlls,'

there are at least four accents or stresses of the voice, with faint *pauses* after them, just enough to separate the continuous stream of sound into these four parts, to be read thus:

Fullman--yataleth--eirmus--ictells,[503]

by which, new combinations of sound are produced, of a singularly musical character. It is evident from the inspection of the above line, that the division of the feet by the accents is quite independent of the division of words by the sense. The sounds are melted into continuity, and *re-divided again* in a manner agreeable to the musical ear."--*Ib.*, p. 486. Undoubtedly, the due formation of our poetic feet occasions both a blending of some words and a dividing of others, in a manner unknown to prose; but still we have the authority of this writer, as well as of earlier ones, for saying, "Good verse requires to be read *with the natural quantites [sic--KTH] of the syllables*," (p. 487,) a doctrine with which that of the *redivision* appears to clash. If the example given be read with any regard to the *caesural pause*, as undoubtedly it should be, the *th* of *their* cannot be joined, as above, to the word *tale*; nor do I see any propriety in joining the *s* of *music* to the third foot rather than to the fourth. Can a theory which turns topsyturvy the whole plan of syllabication, fail to affect "the *natural quantities* of syllables?"

OBS. 22--Different modes of reading verse, may, without doubt, change the quantities of very many syllables. Hence a correct mode of reading, as well as a just theory of measure, is essential to correct scansion, or a just discrimination of the poetic feet. It is a very common opinion, that English verse has but few spondees; and the doctrine of Brightland has been rarely disputed, that, "*Heroic Verses* consist of five *short*, and five *long* Syllables *intermixt*, but not so very strictly as never to alter that order."--*Gram.*, 7th Ed., p. 160.[504] J. D. W., being a heavy reader, will have each line so "*stuffed out with sounds*," and the consonants so syllabled after the vowels, as to give to our heroics three spondees for every two iambuses; and lines like the following, which, with the elisions, I should resolve into four iambuses, and without them, into three iambuses and one anapest, he supposes to consist severally of four spondees:--

"When coldness wraps this suffering clay, Ah! whither strays the immortal mind?"

[These are] to be read," according to this prosodian,

"Whencoldn--esswrapsth--issuff'r--ingclay, Ah! whith--erstraysth'--immort--almind?"

"The verse," he contends, "is perceived to consist of *six* [probably he meant to say *eight*] heavy syllables, each composed of a vowel followed by a group of consonantal sounds, the whole measured into four equal feet. The movement is what is called spondaic, a spondee being a foot of two heavy sounds. The absence of short syllables gives the line a peculiar weight and solemnity suited to the sentiment, and doubtless prompted by it."--*American Review*, Vol. i, p. 487. Of his theory, he subsequently says: "It maintains that good English verse is as thoroughly quantitative as the Greek, though it be *much more heavy and spondaic*."--*Ib.*, p. 491.[505]

OBS. 23--For the determining of quantities and feet, this author borrows from some old Latin grammar three or four rules, commonly thought inapplicable to our tongue, and, mixing them up with other speculations, satisfies himself with stating that the "Art of Measuring Verses" requires yet the production of many more such! But, these things being the essence of his principles, it is proper to state them *in his own words*: "A short vowel sound followed by a double consonantal sound, usually makes a *long* quantity:[506] so also does a long vowel like *y* in *beauty*, before a consonant. The *metrical accents*, which *often differ from the prosaic*, mostly fall upon the heavy sounds; *which must also be prolonged in reading*, and never slurred or lightened, unless to help out a bad verse. In our language *the groupings of the consonants furnish a great number of spondaic feet*, and give the language, especially its more ancient forms, as in the verse of Milton and the prose of Lord Bacon, a grand and solemn character. One vowel followed by another, unless the first be *naturally made long* in the reading, makes a short quantity, as in *th[=e] old*. So, also, a short vowel followed by a single short

consonant, gives a short *time* or *quantity*, as in *tö give*. [Fist] A great variety of rules for the detection of long and short quantities *have yet to be invented*, or applied from the Greek and Latin prosody. *In all languages they are of course the same*, making due allowance for difference of organization; but it is as absurd to suppose that the Greeks should have a system of prosody differing in principle from our own, as that their rules of musical harmony should be different from the modern. Both result from the nature of the ear and of *the organ of speech*, and are consequently *the same* in all ages and nations."--*Am. Rev.*, Vol. i, p. 488.

OBS. 24.--QUANTITY is here represented as "*time*" only. In this author's first mention of it, it is called, rather less accurately, "*the division into measures of time*." With too little regard for either of these conceptions, he next speaks of it as including both "*time and accent*." But I have already shown that "*accents or stresses*" cannot pertain to *short* syllables, and therefore cannot be ingredients of quantity. The whole article lacks that *clearness* which is a prime requisite of a sound theory. Take all of the writer's next paragraph as an example of this defect: "The two elements of musical metre, *time* and *accent*, both together constituting *quantity*, are *equally* elements of the metre of verse. Each *iambic* foot or metre, is marked by a swell of the voice, concluding abruptly in an *accent*, or *interruption*, on the *last sound* of the foot; or, [omit this 'or:' it is improper,] in metres of the *trochaic* order, in such words as *dandy, handy, bottle, favor, labor*, it [the foot] begins with a heavy accented sound, and declines to a faint or light one at the close. The line is thus composed of a series of swells or waves of sound, *concluding and beginning alike*. The *accents*, or points at which the voice is most forcibly exerted in the feet, *being the divisions of time*, by which a part of its musical character is given to the verse, are *usually made to coincide*, in our language, with the accents of the words as they are spoken; which [coincidence] diminishes the musical character of our verse. In Greek hexameters and Latin hexameters, on the contrary, this coincidence is avoided, as tending to monotony and a prosaic character."--*Ibid*.

OBS. 25.--The passage just cited represents "*accent*" or "*accents*" not only as partly constituting *quantity*, but as being, in its or their turn, "*the divisions of time*;"--as being also stops, pauses, or "*interruptions*" of sound else continuous;--as being of two sorts, "*metrical*" and "*prosaic*," which "*usually coincide*," though it is said, they "*often differ*," and their "*interference*" is "*very frequent*;"--as being "*the points*" of stress "*in the feet*," but not always such in "*the words*," of verse;--as striking different feet differently, "*each iambic foot*" on the latter syllable and every *trochee* on the former, yet causing, in each line, only such waves of sound as conclude and begin "*alike*;"--as coinciding with the long quantities and "*the prosaic accents*," in iambs and trochaics, yet not coinciding with these always;--as giving to verse "*a part of its musical character*," yet *diminishing* that character, by their usual coincidence with "*the prose accents*;"--as being kept distinct in Latin and Greek, "*the metrical*" from "*the prosaic*" and their "*coincidence avoided*," to make poetry more poetical,--though the old prosodists, in all they say of accents, acute, grave, and circumflex, give no hint of this primary distinction! In all this elementary teaching, there seems to be a want of a clear, steady, and consistent notion of the things spoken of. The author's theory led him to several strange combinations of words, some of which it is not easy, even with his whole explanation before us, to regard as other than *absurd*. With a few examples of his new phraseology, Italicized by myself, I dismiss the subject: "It frequently happens that *word and verse accent* fall differently."--P. 489. "The *verse syllables*, like *the verse feet*, differ in the *prosaic* and [the] *metrical* reading of the line."--*Ib*. "If we read it by *the prosaic syllabication*, there will be no possibility of measuring the quantities."--*Ib*. "The *metrical* are perfectly distinct from the *prosaic properties of verse*."--*Ib*. "It may be called an *iambic dactyl*, formed by the substitution of two short for one long time in the last portion of the foot. *Iambic spondees and dactyls* are to be distinguished by the *metrical accent* falling on the last syllable."--P. 491.

SECTION IV.--THE KINDS OF VERSE.

The principal kinds of verse, or orders of poetic numbers, as has already been stated, are four; namely, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapestic*, and *Dactylic*. Besides these, which are sometimes called "*the simple orders*" being unmixed, or nearly so, some recognize several "*Composite orders*" or (with a better view of the matter) several kinds of mixed verse, which are said to constitute "*the Composite order*." In these, one of the four

principal kinds of feet must still be used as the basis, some other species being inserted therewith, in each line or stanza, with more or less regularity.

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES.

The diversification of any species of metre, by the occasional change of a foot, or, in certain cases, by the addition or omission of a short syllable, is not usually regarded as sufficient to change the denomination, or stated order, of the verse; and many critics suppose some variety of feet, as well as a studied diversity in the position of the cæsural pause, essential to the highest excellence of poetic composition.

The dividing of verses into the feet which compose them, is called *Scanning*, or *Scansion*. In this, according to the technical language of the old prosodists, when a syllable is wanting, the verse is said to be *catalectic*; when the measure is exact, the line is *acatalectic*; when there is a redundant syllable, it forms *hypermeter*.

Since the equal recognition of so many feet as twelve, or even as eight, will often produce different modes of measuring the same lines; and since it is desirable to measure verses with uniformity, and always by the simplest process that will well answer the purpose; we usually scan by the principal feet, in preference to the secondary, where the syllables give us a choice of measures, or may be divided in different ways.

A single foot, especially a foot of only two syllables, can hardly be said to constitute a line, or to have rhythm in itself; yet we sometimes see a foot so placed, and rhyming as a line. Lines of two, three, four, five, six, or seven feet, are common; and these have received the technical denominations of *dim'eter*, *trim'eter*, *tetram'eter*, *pentam'eter*, *hexam'eter*, and *heptam'eter*. On a wide page, iambics and trochaics may possibly be written in *octom'eter*; but lines of this measure, being very long, are mostly abandoned for alternate tetrameters.

ORDER I.--IAMBIC VERSE.

In Iambic verse, the stress is laid on the even syllables, and the odd ones are short. Any short syllable added to a line of this order, is supernumerary; iambic rhymes, which are naturally single, being made double by one, and triple by two. But the adding of one short syllable, which is much practised in dramatic poetry, may be reckoned to convert the last foot into an amphibrach, though the adding of two cannot. Iambics consist of the following measures:--

MEASURE I.--IAMBIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

Psalm XLVII, 1 and 2.

"O =all | y~e p=eo | -pl~e, cl=ap | y~our h=ands, | ~and w=ith | tr~i=um | -ph~ant v=oi | -c~es s=ing; No force | the might | -=y power | withstands | of God, | the u | -niver | -sal King." See the "*Psalms of David, in Metre*," p. 54.

Each couplet of this verse is now commonly reduced to, or exchanged for, a simple stanza of four tetrameter lines, rhyming alternately, and each commencing with a capital; but sometimes, the second line and the fourth are still commenced with a small letter: as,

"Your ut | -most skill | in praise | be shown, for Him | who all | the world | commands, Who sits | upon | his right | -eous throne, and spreads | his sway | o'er heath | -en lands." *Ib.*, verses 7 and 8; *Edition bound with Com. Prayer*, N. Y., 1819.

An other Example.

"The hour | is come | --the cher | -ish'd hour, When from | the bus | -y world | set free, I seek | at length | my lone | -ly bower, And muse | in si | -lent thought | on thee." THEODORE HOOK'S REMAINS: *The Examiner*, No. 82.

MEASURE II.--IAMBIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

Example I.--Hat-Brims.

"It's odd | how hats | expand | their brims | as youth | begins | to fade, As if | when life | had reached | its noon, | it want | -ed them | for shade." OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES: *From a Newspaper*.

Example II.--Psalm XLII, 1.

"As pants | the hart | for cool | -ing streams, | when heat | -ed in | the chase; So longs | my soul, | O God, | for thee, | and thy | refresh | -ing grace." EPISCOPAL PSALM-BOOK: *The Rev. W. Allen's Eng. Gram.*, p. 227.

Example III.--The Shepherd's Hymn.

"Oh, when | I rove | the des | -ert waste, | and 'neath | the hot | sun pant, The Lord | shall be | my Shep | -herd then, | he will | not let | me want; He'll lead | me where | the past | -ures are | of soft | and shad | -y green, And where | the gen | -tle wa | -ters rove, | the qui | -et hills | between.

And when | the sav | -age shall | pursue, | and in | his grasp | I sink, He will | prepare | the feast | for me, | and bring | the cool | -ing drink, And save | me harm | -less from | his hands, and strength | -en me | in toil, And bless | my home | and cot | -tage lands, and crown | my head | with oil.

With such | a Shep | -herd to | protect, | to guide | and guard | me still, And bless | my heart | with ev | -'ry good, | and keep | from ev | -'ry ill, Surely | I shall | not turn | aside, | and scorn | his kind | -ly care, But keep | the path | he points | me out, | and dwell | for ev | -er there." W. GILMORE SIMMS: *North American Reader*, p. 376.

Example IV.--"The Far, Far Fast."--First six Lines.

"It was | a dream | of earl | -y years, | the long | -est and | the last, And still | it ling | -ers bright | and lone | amid | the drear | -y past; When I | was sick | and sad | at heart | and faint | with grief | and care, It threw | its ra | -diant smile | athwart | the shad | -ows of | despair: And still | when falls | the hour | of gloom | upon | this way | -ward breast, Unto | THE FAR, | FAR EAST | I turn | for sol | -ace and | for rest." *Edinburgh Journal*; and *The Examiner*,

Example V.--"Lament of the Slave."--Eight Lines from thirty-four.

"Behold | the sun | which gilds | *yon heaven*, how love | -ly it | appears! And must | it shine | to light | a world | of war | -fare and | of tears? Shall hu | -man pas | -sion ev | -er sway | this glo | -rious world | of God, And beau | -ty, wis | -dom, hap | -piness, | sleep with | the tram | -pled sod? Shall peace | ne'er lift | her ban | -ner up, | shall truth | and rea | -son cry, And men | oppress | them down | with worse | than an | -cient tyr | -anny? Shall all | the les | -sons time | has taught, | be so | long taught | in vain; And earth | be steeped | in hu | -man tears, | and groan | with hu | -man pain?" ALONZO LEWIS: *Freedom's Amulet*, Dec. 6, 1848.

Example VI.--"Greek Funeral Chant."--First four of sixty-four Lines.

"A wail | was heard | around | the bed, | the death | -bed of | the young; Amidst | her tears, | the Fu | -neral Chant | a mourn | -ful moth | -er sung. 'I-an | -this dost | thou sleep?-- | Thou sleepest!-- | but this | is not | the rest, The breath | -ing, warm, | and ros | -y calm, | I've pil | -low'd on | my breast!'" FELICIA HEMANS:

Poetical Works, Vol. ii, p. 37.

Everett observes, "The *Iliad* was translated into this measure by CHAPMAN, and the *Æneid* by PHAER."--*Eng. Versif.*, p. 68. Prior, who has a ballad of one hundred and eighty such lines, intimates in a note the great antiquity of the verse. Measures of this length, though not very uncommon, are much less frequently used than shorter ones. A practice has long prevailed of dividing this kind of verse into alternate lines of four and of three feet, thus:--

"To such | as fear | thy ho | -ly name, myself | I close | -ly join; To all | who their | obe | -dient wills to thy | commands | resign." *Psalms with Com. Prayer: Psalm cxix*, 63.

This, according to the critics, is the most soft and pleasing of our lyric measures. With the slight change of setting a capital at the head of each line, it becomes the regular ballad-metre of our language. Being also adapted to hymns, as well as to lighter songs, and, more particularly, to quaint details of no great length, this stanza, or a similar one more ornamented with rhymes, is found in many choice pieces of English poetry. The following are a few popular examples:--

"When all | thy mer | -cies, O | my God! My ris | -ing soul | surveys, Transport | -ed with | the view | I'm lost In won | -der, love, | and praise." *Addison's Hymn of Gratitude*.

"John Gil | -pin was | a cit | -izen Of cred | -it and | renown, A train | -band cap | -tain eke | was he Of fam | -ous Lon | -don town." *Cowper's Poems*, Vol. i, p. 275.

"God pros | -per long | our no | -ble king, Our lives | and safe | -ties all; A wo | -ful hunt | -ing once | there did In Chev | -y Chase | befall," *Later Reading of Chevy Chase*.

"Turn, An | -geli | -na, ev | -er dear, My charm | -er, turn | to see Thy own, | thy long | -lost Ed | -win here, Restored | to love | and thee." *Goldsmith's Poems*, p. 67.

"'Come back! | come back!' | he cried | in grief, Across | this storm | -y water: 'And I'll | forgive | your High | -land chief, My daugh | -ter!--oh | my daughter! 'Twas vain: | the loud | waves lashed | the shore, Return | or aid | preventing:-- The wa | -ters wild | went o'er | his child,-- And he | was left | lamenting.'"--*Campbell's Poems*, p. 110.

The rhyming of this last stanza is irregular and remarkable, yet not unpleasant. It is contrary to rule, to omit any rhyme which the current of the verse leads the reader to expect. Yet here the word "*shore*" ending the first line, has no correspondent sound, where twelve examples of such correspondence had just preceded; while the third line, without previous example, is so rhymed within itself that one scarcely perceives the omission. Double rhymes are said by some to unfit this metre for serious subjects, and to adapt it only to what is meant to be burlesque, humorous, or satiric. The example above does not confirm this opinion, yet the rule, as a general one, may still be just. Ballad verse may in some degree imitate the language of a simpleton, and become popular by clownishness, more than by elegance: as,

"Father | and I | went down | to the camp Along | with cap | -tain Goodwin, And there | we saw | the men | and boys As thick | as hast | -y pudding;

And there | we saw | a thun | -dering gun,-- It took | a horn | of powder,-- It made | a noise | like fa | -ther's gun, Only | a na | -tion louder." *Original Song of Yankee Doodle*.

Even the line of seven feet may still be lengthened a little by a double rhyme: as,

How gay | -ly, o | -ver fell | and fen, | yon sports | -man light | is *dashing*! And gay | -ly, in | the sun | -beams

bright, | the mow | --er's blade | is *flashing*!

Of this length, T. O. Churchill reckons the following couplet; but by the general usage of the day, the final *ed* is not made a separate syllable:--

"With *hic* | and *hoec*, | as Pris | -cian tells, | *sacer* | -dos was | *decli* | -n~ed; But now | its gen | -der by | the pope | far bet | -ter is | *defi* | -n~ed." *Churchill's New Grammar*, p. 188.

MEASURE III.--IAMBIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

Example I.--A Couplet.

"S~o v=a | -r~y~ing still | th~eir m=oods, | ~obs=erv | ~ing =yet | ~in =all Their quan | -tities, | their rests, | their cen | -sures met | -rical." MICHAEL DRAYTON: *Johnson's Quarto Dict.*, w. *Quantity*.

Example II.--From a Description of a Stag-Hunt.

"And through | the cumb | -rous thicks, | as fear | -fully | he makes, He with | his branch | -ed head | the ten | -der sap | -lings shakes, That sprink | -ling their | moist pearl | do seem | for him | to weep; When aft | -er goes | the cry, | with yell | -ings loud | and deep, That all | the for | -est rings, | and ev | -ery neigh | -bouring place: And there | is not | a hound | but fall | -eth to | the chase." DRAYTON: *Three Couplets from twenty-three*, in *Everett's Versif.*, p. 66.

Example III.--An Extract from Shakespeare.

"If love | make me | forsworn, | how shall | I swear | to love? O, nev | -er faith | could hold, | if not | to beau | -ty vow'd: Though to | myself | forsworn, | to thee | I'll con | -stant prove; Those thoughts, | to me | like oaks, | to thee | like o | -siers bow'd. *St=ud~y* | his bi | -as leaves, | and makes | his book | thine eyes, Where all | those pleas | -ures live, | that art | can com | -prehend. If know | -edge be | the mark, | to know | thee shall | suffice; Well learn | -ed is | that tongue | that well | can thee | commend; All ig | -norant | that soul | that sees | thee with' | *o~ut wonder*; Which is | to me | some praise, | that I | thy parts | admire: Thine eye | Jove's light | -ning seems, | thy voice | his dread | -ful thunder, Which (not | to an | -ger bent) | is mu | -sic and | sweet fire. Celes | -tial as | thou art, | O, do | not love | that wrong, To sing | the heav | -ens' praise | with such | an earth | -ly tongue." *The Passionate Pilgrim, Stanza IX*; SINGER'S SHAK., Vol. ii, p. 594.

Example IV.--The Ten Commandments Versified.

"Adore | no God | besides | me, to | provoke | mine eyes; Nor wor | -ship me | in shapes | and forms | that men | devise; With rev | 'rence use | my name, | nor turn | my words | to jest; Observe | my sab | -bath well, | nor dare | profane | my rest; Honor | and due | obe | -dience to | thy pa | -rents give; Nor spill | the guilt | -less blood, | nor let | the guilt | -y live;[507] Preserve | thy bod | -y chaste, | and flee | th' unlaw | -ful bed; Nor steal | thy neigh | -bor's gold, | his gar | -ment, or | his bread; Forbear | to blast | his name | with false | -hood or deceit; Nor let | thy wish | -es loose | upon | his large | estate." DR. ISAAC WATTS: *Lyric Poems*, p. 46.

This verse, consisting, when entirely regular, of twelve syllables in six iambs, is the *Alexandrine*; said to have been so named because it was "first used in a poem called *Alexander*."--*Worcester's Dict.* Such metre has sometimes been written, with little diversity, through an entire English poem, as in Drayton's *Polyolbion*; but, couplets of this length being generally esteemed too clumsy for our language, the *Alexandrine* has been little used by English versifiers, except to complete certain stanzas beginning with shorter iambs, or, occasionally, to close a period in heroic rhyme. French heroics are similar to this; and if, as some assert, we have obtained it thence, the original poem was doubtless a French one, detailing the exploits of the hero "*Alexandre*." The phrase, "*an Alexandrine verse*," is, in French, "*un vers Alexandrin*." Dr. Gregory, in his *Dictionary of Arts and*

Sciences, copies Johnson's Quarto Dictionary, which says, "ALEXANDRINE, a kind of verse borrowed from the French, first used in a poem called Alexander. They [Alexandrines] consist, among the French, of twelve and thirteen syllables, in alternate couplets; and, among us, of twelve." Dr. Webster, in his American Dictionary, *improperly* (as I think) gives to the name two forms, and seems also to acknowledge two sorts of the English verse: "ALEXAN'DRINE, or ALEXAN'DRIAN, *n.* A kind of verse, consisting of twelve syllables, or of twelve and thirteen alternately." "The Pet-Lamb," a modern pastoral, by Wordsworth, has sixty-eight lines, all probably meant for Alexandrines; most of which have twelve syllables, though some have thirteen, and others, fourteen. But it were a great pity, that versification so faulty and unsuitable should ever be imitated. About half of the said lines, as they appear in the poet's royal octave, or "the First Complete American, from the Last London Edition," are as sheer prose as can be written, it being quite impossible to read them into any proper rhythm. The poem being designed for children, the measure should have been reduced to iambic trimeter, and made exact at that. The story commences thus:--

"The dew | was fall | -ing fast, | the stars | began | to blink; I heard | a voice; | it said, | 'Drink, pret | -ty crea | -ture, drink!' And, look | -ing o'er | the hedge, | before | me I | espied A snow | -white moun | -tain Lamb | w=ith =a M=aid | -en at | its side."

All this is regular, with the exception of one foot; but who can make any thing but *prose* of the following?

"Thy limbs will shortly be twice as stout as they are now, Then I'll yoke thee to my cart like a pony in the plough." "Here thou needest not dread the raven in the sky; Night and day thou art safe,--our cottage is hard by." WORDSWORTH'S *Poems*, New-Haven Ed., 1836, p. 4.

In some very ancient English poetry, we find lines of twelve syllables combined in couplets with others of fourteen; that is, six iambic feet are alternated with seven, in lines that rhyme. The following is an example, taken from a piece of fifty lines, which Dr. Johnson ascribes to the *Earl of Surry*, one of the wits that flourished in the reign of Henry VIII:--

"Such way | -ward wayes | hath Love, | that most | part in | discord, Our willes | do stand, | whereby | our hartes | but sel | -dom do | accord; Decyte | is hys | delighe, | and to | begyle | and mocke, The sim | ple hartes | which he | doth strike | with fro | -ward di | -vers stroke. He caus | -eth th' one | to rage | with gold | -en burn | -ing darte, And doth | allay | with lead | -en cold, | again | the oth | -er's harte; Whose gleames | of burn | -ing fyre | and eas | -y sparkes | of flame, In bal | -ance of | ~un=e | -qual weyght | he pon | -dereth | by ame." See *Johnson's Quarto Dict., History of the Eng. Lang.*, p. 4.

MEASURE IV.--IAMBIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER.

Example I.--Hector to Andromache.

"Andr=om | ~ach=e! | m=y s=oul's | f~ar b=et | -t~er p=art, Wh=y w~ith | untine | -ly | sor | -rows heaves | thy heart? No hos | -tile hand | can an | -tedate | my doom, Till fate | condemns | me to | the si | -lent tomb. Fix'd is | the term | to all | the race | of earth; And such | the hard | conditi | -on of | our birth, No force | can then | resist, | no flight | can save; All sink | alike, | the fear | -ful and | the brave." POPE'S HOMER: *Iliad*, B. vi, l. 624-632.

Example II.--Angels' Worship.

"No soon | -er had | th' Almighty | -y ceas'd | but all The mul | -titude | of an | -gels with | a shout Loud as | from num | -bers with' | -out num | -ber, sweet As from | blest voi | -ces ut | t~er ~ing j=oy, | heav'n rung With ju | -bilee, | and loud | hosan | -nas fill'd Th' eter | -nal | re | -gions; low | -ly rev | -erent Tow'rds ei | -ther throne | they bow, | and to | the ground With sol | -emn ad | -ora | -tion down | they cast Their crowns | inwove | with am | -arant | and gold." MILTON: *Paradise Lost*, B. iii, l. 344.

Example III.--Deceptive Glosses.

"The world | is still | deceiv'd | with or | -nament. In law, | what plea | so taint | -ed and | corrupt, But, be | -ing sea | -son'd with | a gra | -cious voice, Obscures | the show | of e | -vil? In | *religi~on*, What dam | -n~ed er | -ror, but | some so | -ber brow Will bless | it, and | approve | it with | a text, *Hid~ing* | the gross | -ness with | fair or | -nament?" SHAKESPEARE: *Merch. of Venice*, Act iii, Sc. 2.

Example IV.--Praise God.

"Ye head | -long tor | -rents, rap | -id, and | profound; Ye soft | -er floods, | that lead | the hu | -mid maze Along | the vale; | and thou, | majes | -tic main, A se | -cret world | of won | -ders in | thyself, Sound His | stupen | -dous | praise; | whose great | -er voice Or bids | you roar, | or bids | your roar | -ings fall." THOMSON: *Hymn to the Seasons*.

Example V.--The Christian Spirit.

"Like him | the soul, | thus kin | -dled from | above, Spreads wide | her arms | of u | -niver | -sal love; And, still | enlarg'd | as she | receives | the grace, Includes | cr~e=a | -tion in | her close | embrace. Behold | a Chris | -tian! and | without | the fires The found | ~er ~of | that name | alone | inspires, Though all | accom | -plishment, | all knowl | -edge meet, To make | the shin | -ing prod | -igy | complete, Whoev | -er boasts | that name-- | behold | a cheat!" COWPER: *Charity; Poems*, Vol. i, p. 135.

Example VI.--To London.

"Ten right | -eous would | have sav'd | a cit | -y once, And thou | hast man | -y right | -eous.--Well | for thee-- That salt | preserves | thee; more | corrupt | -ed else, And there | -fore more | obnox | -ious, at | this hour, Than Sod | -om in | her day | had pow'r | to be, For whom | God heard | his Abr' | -ham plead | in vain." IDEM: *The Task*, Book iii, at the end.

This verse, the iambic pentameter, is the regular English *heroic*--a stately species, and that in which most of our great poems are composed, whether epic, dramatic, or descriptive. It is well adapted to rhyme, to the composition of sonnets, to the formation of stanzas of several sorts; and yet is, perhaps, the only measure suitable for blank verse--which latter form always demands a subject of some dignity or sublimity.

The *Elegiac Stanza*, or the form of verse most commonly used by elegists, consists of four heroics rhyming alternately; as,

"Thou knowst | how trans | -port thrills | the ten | -der breast, Where love | and fan | -cy fix | their ope | -ning reign; How na | -ture shines | in live | -lier col | -ours dress'd, To bless | their un | -ion, and | to grace | their train." SHENSTONE: *British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 106.

Iambic verse is seldom continued perfectly pure through a long succession of lines. Among its most frequent diversifications, are the following; and others may perhaps be noticed hereafter:--

(1.) The first foot is often varied by a substitutional trochee; as,

"*Bacchus*, | that first | from out | the pur | -ple grape *Crush'd the* | sweet poi | -son of | mis~us | ~ed wine, *After* | the Tus | -can mar | -iners | transform'd, *Coasting* | the Tyr | -rhene shore, | ~as th~e | winds list~ed, On Cir | -ce's isl | -and fell. | Who knows | not Circ~e, The daugh | -ter of | the sun? | whose charm | ~ed cup Whoev | -er tast | -ed, lost | his up | -right shape, And down | -ward fell | =int~o a grov | -elling swine." MILTON: *Comus; British Poets*, Vol. ii, p. 147.

(2.) By a synæresis of the two short syllables, an anapest may sometimes be employed for an iambus; or a dactyl, for a trochee. This occurs chiefly where one unaccented vowel precedes an other in what we usually regard as separate syllables, and both are clearly heard, though uttered perhaps in so quick succession that both syllables may occupy only half the time of a long one. Some prosodists, however, choose to regard these substitutions as instances of trissyllabic feet mixed with the others; and, doubtless, it is in general easy to make them such, by an utterance that avoids, rather than favours, the coalescence. The following are examples:--

"No rest: | through man | -y a dark | and drear | -y vale They pass'd, | and man | -y a re | -gion dol | -orous, O'er man | -y a fro | -zen, man | -y a fi | -ery Alp." --MILTON: *P. L.*, B. ii, l. 618.

"Rejoice | ye na | -tions, vin | -dicate | the sway Ordain'd | for com | -mon hap | -piness. | Wide, o'er The globe | terra | -queous, let | Britan | -nia pour The fruits | of plen | -ty from | her co | -pious horn." --DYER: *Fleece*, B. iv, l. 658.

"*Myriads* | of souls | that knew | one pa | -rent mold, See sad | -ly sev | er'd by | the laws | of chance! *Myriads*, | in time's | peren | -nial list | enroll'd, Forbid | by fate | to change | one tran | -sient glance!" SHENSTONE: *British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 109.

(3.) In plays, and light or humorous descriptions, the last foot of an iambic line is often varied or followed by an additional short syllable; and, sometimes, in verses of triple rhyme, there is an addition of two short syllables, after the principal rhyming syllable. Some prosodists call the variant foot, in the former instance, an *amphibrach*, and would probably, in the latter, suppose either an *additional pyrrhic*, or an amphibrach with still a *surplus syllable*; but others scan, in these cases, by the iambus only, calling what remains after the last long syllable *hypermeter*; and this is, I think, the better way. The following examples show these and some other variations from pure iambic measure:--

Example I.--Grief.

"Each sub | st~ance ~of | a grief | hath twen | -ty shad~ows, Which show | like grief | itself, | but are | not so: For sor | -row's eye, | gl~az~ed | with blind | -ing tears, Divides one thing | entire | to man | -y obj~ects; Like per | -spectives, | which, right | -ly gaz'd | upon, Show noth | -ing but | confu | -sion; ey'd | awry, Distin | -guish form: | so your | sweet maj | -esty, Lo~ok~ing | awry | upon | your lord's | depart~ure, Finds shapes | of grief, | more than | himself, | to wail; Which, look'd | on as | it is, | is nought | but shad~ows." SHAKESPEARE: *Richard II*, Act ii, Sc. 2.

Example II.--A Wish to Please.

"O, that | I had | the art | of eas | -y writing What should | be eas | -y read | -ing | could | I scale Parnas | -sus, where | the Mus | -es sit | inditing Those pret | -ty po | -ems nev | -er known | to fail, How quick | -ly would | I print | (the world | delighting) A Gre | -cian, Syr | -ian, or | Assy | -ian tale; And sell | you, mix'd | with west | -ern sen | -timentalism, Some sam | -ples of | the fin | -est O | -rientalism." LORD BYRON: *Beppo*, Stanza XLVIII.

MEASURE V.--IAMBIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

Example I.--Presidents of the United States of America.

"First stands | the loft | -y Wash | -ington, That no | -ble, great, | immor | -tal one; The eld | -er Ad | -ams next | we see; And Jef | -ferson | comes num | -ber three; Then Mad | -ison | is fourth, | you know; The fifth | one on | the list, | Monroe; The sixth | an Ad | -ams comes | again; And Jack | -son, sev | -enth in | the train; Van Bu | -ren, eighth | upon | the line; And Har | -rison | counts num | -ber nine; The tenth | is Ty | -ler, in | his turn; And

Polk, | elev | -enth, as | we learn; The twelfth | is Tay | -lor, peo | -ple say; The next | we learn | some fu | -ture day." ANONYMOUS: *From Newspaper*, 1849.

Example II.--The Shepherd Bard.

"The bard | on Ett | -rick's moun | tain green In Na | -ture's bo | -som nursed | had been, And oft | had marked | in for | -est lone Her beau | -ties on | her moun | -tain throne; Had seen | her deck | the wild | -wood tree, And star | with snow | -y gems | the lea; In love | -*li~est c=ol* | -ours paint | the plain, And sow | the moor | with pur | -ple grain; By gold | -en mead | and moun | -tain sheer, Had viewed | the Ett | -rick wav | -ing clear, Where shad | -*ow=y fl=ocks* | of pur | -est snow Seemed graz | -ing in | a world | below." JAMES HOGG: *The Queen's Wake*, p. 76.

Example III.--Two Stanzas from Eighteen, Addressed to the Ettrick Shepherd.

"O Shep | -herd! since | 'tis thine | to boast The fas | -cinat | -ing pow'rs | of song, Far, far | above | the count | -less host, Who swell | the Mus | -es' sup | -*pli~ant throng*,

The GIFT | OF GOD | distrust | no more, His in | -spira | -tion be | thy guide; Be heard | thy harp | from shore | to shore, Thy song's | reward | thy coun | -try's pride." B. BARTON: *Verses prefixed to the Queen's Wake*.

Example IV.--"Elegiac Stanzas," in Iambics of Four feet and Three.

"O for | a dirge! | But why | complain? Ask rath | -er a | trium | -phal strain When FER | MOR'S race | is run; A gar | -land of | immor | -tal boughs To bind | around | the Chris | -tian's brows, Whose glo | -rious work | is done.

We pay | a high | and ho | -ly debt; No tears | of pas | -sionate | regret Shall stain | this vo | -litive lay; Ill-wor | -thy, Beau | -mont! were | the grief That flings | itself | on wild | relief When Saints | have passed | away." W. WORDSWORTH: *Poetical Works*, First complete Amer. Ed., p. 208.

This line, the iambic tetrameter, is a favourite one, with many writers of English verse, and has been much used, both in couplets and in stanzas. Butler's *Hudibras*, Gay's *Fables*, and many allegories, most of Scott's poetical works, and some of Byron's, are written in couplets of this measure. It is liable to the same diversifications as the preceding metre. The frequent admission of an additional short syllable, forming double rhyme, seems admirably to adapt it to a familiar, humorous, or burlesque style. The following may suffice for an example:--

"First, this | large par | -cel brings | you *tidings* Of our | good Dean's | eter | -nal *chidings*; Of Nel | -ly's pert | -ness, Rob | -in's *leasings*, And Sher | -idan's | perpet | -ual *teasings*. This box | is cramm'd | on ev | -ery side With Stel | -la's mag | -iste | -rial pride." DEAN SWIFT: *British Poets*, Vol. v, p. 334.

The following lines have *ten syllables* in each, yet the measure is not iambic of five feet, but that of four with hypermeter:--

"There was | ~an =an | -cient sage | philosopher, Who had | read Al | -exan | -der *Ross over*."--Butler's *Hudibras*.

"I'll make | them serve | for per | -pendiculars, As true | as e'er | were us'd | by *bricklayers*." --*Ib.*, Part ii, C. iii, l. 1020.

MEASURE VI.--IAMBIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

Example.--To Evening.

"Now teach | me, maid | compos'd To breathe | some soft | -en'd strain."--*Collins*, p. 39.

This short measure has seldom, if ever, been used alone in many successive couplets; but it is often found in stanzas, sometimes without other lengths, but most commonly with them. The following are a few examples:--

Example I.--Two ancient Stanzas, out of Many,

"This while | we are | abroad, Shall we | not touch | our lyre? Shall we | not sing | an ode? Shall now | that ho |
-ly fire, In us, | that strong | -ly glow'd, In this | cold air, | expire?

Though in | the ut | -most peak, A while | we do | remain, Amongst | the moun | -tains bleak, Expos'd | to sleet |
and rain, No sport | our hours | shall break, To ex | -ercise | our vein." DRAYTON: *Dr. Johnson's Gram.*, p. 13; *John Burn's*, p. 244.

Example II.--Acis and Galatea.

"For us | the zeph | -yr blows, For us | distils | the dew, For us | unfolds | the rose, And flow'rs | display | their
hue;

For us | the win | -ters rain, For us | the sum | -mers shine, Spring swells | for us | the grain, And au | -tumn
bleeds | the vine." JOHN GAY: *British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 376.

Example III.--"Mene, Mene, Tekel, Upharsin."

"The king | was on | his throne, The sa | -traps thronged | the hall; A thou | -sand bright | lamps shone O'er that
| high fes | -tival. A thou | -sand cups | of gold, In Ju | -dah deemed | divine-- Jeho | -vah's ves | -sels, hold The
god | -less Hea | -then's wine!

In that | same hour | and hall, The fin | -gers of | a hand Came forth | against | the wall, And wrote | as if | on
sand: The fin | -gers of | a man,-- A sol | -ita | -ry hand Along | the let | -ters ran, And traced | them like | a
wand." LORD BYRON: *Vision of Belshazzar*.

Example IV.--Lyric Stanzas.

"Descend, | celes | -tial fire, And seize | me from | above, Melt me | in flames | of pure | desire, A sac | -rifice |
to love.

Let joy | and wor | -ship spend The rem | -nant of | my days, And to | my God, | my soul | ascend, In sweet |
perfumes | of praise." WATTS: *Poems sacred to Devotion*, p. 50.

Example V.--Lyric Stanzas.

"I would | begin | the mu | -sic here, And so | my soul | should rise: O for | some heav'n | -ly notes | to bear My
spir | -it to | the skies!

There, ye | that love | my say | -iour, sit, There I | would fain | have place Amongst | your thrones | or at | your
feet, So I | might see | his face." WATTS: *Same work*, "*Horæ Lyricæ*," p. 71.

Example VI.--England's Dead.

"The hur | -ricane | hath might Along | the In | -dian shore, And far, | by Gan | -ges' banks | at night, Is heard | the ti | -ger's roar.

But let | the sound | roll on! It hath | no tone | of dread For those | that from | their toils | are gone;-- *There* slum | -ber Eng | -land's dead." HEMANS: *Poetical Works*, Vol. ii, p. 61.

The following examples have some of the common diversifications already noticed under the longer measures:--

Example I.--"Languedocian Air."

"*L=ove ~is* | a hunt | -er boy, Who makes | young hearts | his prey; *And in* | his nets | of joy Ensnares | them night | and day.

In vain | conceal'd | they lie, Love tracks | them ev' | -ry where; In vain | aloft | they fly, Love shoots | them fly | -ing there.

But 'tis | his joy | most sweet, At earl | -y dawn | to trace The print | of Beau | -ty's feet, And give | the trem | -bler chase.

And most | he loves | through snow To track | those foot | -steps fair, For then | the boy | doth know, None track'd | before | him there." MOORE'S *Melodies and National Airs*, p. 274.

Example II.--From "a Portuguese Air."

"Flow on, | thou shin | -ing *river*, But ere | thou reach | the sea, Seek El | -la's bower, | and *give her* The wreaths | I fling | o'er thee.

But, if | in wand' | -ring *thither*, Thou find | she mocks | my pray'r, Then leave | those wreaths | to *wither* Upon | the cold | bank there." MOORE: *Same Volume*, p. 261.

Example III.--Resignation.

"O Res | -igna | -tion! yet | unsung, Untouch'd | by for | -mer strains; Though claim | -ing ev | -ery *mu* | -se's smile, And ev | -ery *po* | -et's pains!

All oth | -er du | -ties cres | -cents are Of vir | -tue faint | -ly bright; The glo | -rious *con* | -summa | -tion, thou, Which fills | her orb | with light!" YOUNG: *British Poets*, Vol. viii, p. 377.

MEASURE VII.--IAMBIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

Example--A Scolding Wife.

1.

"There was | a man Whose name | was Dan, Who sel | -dom spoke; His part | -ner sweet He thus | did greet, Without | a joke;

2.

My love | -ly wife, Thou art | the life Of all | my joys; Without | thee, I Should sure | -ly die For want | of noise.

3. O, prec | -ious one, Let thy | tongue run In a | sweet fret; And this | will give A chance | to live, A long | time yet.

4.

When thou | dost scold So loud | and bold, I'm kept | awake; But if | thou leave, It will | me grieve, Till life | forsake.

5.

Then said | his wife, I'll have | no strife With you, | sweet Dan; As 'tis | your mind, I'll let | you find I am | your man.

6.

And fret | I will, To keep | you still Enjoy | -ing life; So you | may be Content | with me, A scold | -ing wife." ANONYMOUS: *Cincinnati Herald*, 1844.

Iambic dimeter, like the metre of three iambs, is much less frequently used alone than in stanzas with longer lines; but the preceding example is a refutation of the idea, that no piece is ever composed wholly of this measure, or that the two feet cannot constitute a line. In Humphrey's *English Prosody*, on page 16th, is the following paragraph; which is not only defective in style, but erroneous in all its averments:--

"Poems are never composed of lines of two [-] feet metre, in succession: they [combinations of two feet] are only used occasionally in poems, hymns, odes, &c. to diversify the metre; and are, in no case, lines of poetry, or verses; but hemistichs, [*hemistichs*,] or half lines. The shortest metre of which iambic verse is composed, in lines successively, is that of three feet; and this is the shortest metre *which* can be denominated lines, or verses; and *this is not frequently used*."

In ballads, ditties, hymns, and versified psalms, scarcely any line is *more common* than the iambic trimeter, here denied to be "frequently used;" of which species, there are about seventy lines among the examples above. Dr. Young's poem entitled "Resignation," has eight hundred and twenty such lines, and as many more of iambic tetrameter. His "Ocean" has one hundred and forty-five of the latter, and two hundred and ninety-two of the species now under consideration; i.e., iambic dimeter. But how can the metre which predominates by two to one, be called, in such a case, an occasional diversification of that which is less frequent?

Lines of two iambs are not very uncommon, even in psalmody; and, since we have some lines *yet shorter*, and the lengths of all are determined only by the act of measuring, there is, surely, no propriety in calling dimeters "hemistichs," merely because they are short. The following are some examples of this measure combined with longer ones:--

Example I.--From Psalm CXLVIII.

1, 2. "Ye bound | -less realms | of joy, Exalt | your Ma | -ker's fame; His praise | your songs | employ Above | the star | -ry frame: Your voi | -ces raise, Ye Cher | -ubim, And Ser | -aphim, To sing | his praise.

3, 4. Thou moon, | that rul'st | the night, And sun, | that guid'st | the day, Ye glitt' | -ring stars | of light, To him | your hom | -age pay: His praise | declare, Ye heavens | above, And clouds | that move In liq | -uid air." *The Book of Psalms in Metre*, (with *Com. Prayer*,) 1819.

Example II.--From Psalm CXXXVI.

"To God | the might | -y Lord, your joy | -ful thanks | repeat; To him | due praise | afford, as good | as he | is great: For God | does prove Our con | -stant friend, His bound | -less love Shall nev | -er end."--*Ib.*, p. 164.

Example III.--Gloria Patri.

"To God | the Fa | -ther, Son, And Spir | -it ev | -er bless'd, Eter | -nal Three | in One, All wor | -ship be | address'd; As here | -tofore It was, | is now, And shall | be so For ev | -ermore."--*Ib.*, p. 179.

Example IV.--Part of Psalm III.

[O] "Lord, | how man | -y are | my foes! How man | -y those That [now] | in arms | against | me rise! *Many* | are they That of | my life | distrust | -fully | thus say: 'No help | for him | in God | there lies.'

But thou, | Lord, art | my shield | my glory; Thee, through | my story, Th' exalt | -er of | my head | I count; Aloud | I cried Unto | Jeho | -vah, he | full soon | replied, And heard | me from | his ho | -ly mount." MILTON: *Psalms Versified, British Poets*, Vol. ii, p. 161.

Example V.--Six Lines of an "Air."

"As when | the dove Laments | her love All on | the na | -ked spray;

When he | returns, No more | she mourns, But loves | the live | -long day." JOHN GAY: *British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 377.

Example VI.--Four Stanzas of an Ode.

"XXVIII. Gold pleas | -ure buys; But pleas | -ure dies", Too soon | the gross | fruiti | -on cloy: Though rapt | -ures court, The sense | is short; But vir | -tue kin | -dles liv | -ing joys:

XXIX. Joys felt | alone! Joys ask'd | of none! Which Time's | and For | -tune's ar | -rows miss; Joys that | subsist, Though fates | resist, An un | -preca | -rious, end | -less bliss!

XXX. The soul | refin'd Is most | inclin'd To ev | -~er=y m=or | -al ex | -cellence; All vice | is dull, A knave's | a fool; And Vir | -tue is | the child | of Sense.

XXXI. The vir | -tuous mind Nor wave, | nor wind, Nor civ | -il rage, | nor ty | -rant's frown, The shak | -en ball, Nor plan | -ets' fall, From its | firm ba | -sis can | dethrone." YOUNG'S "OCEAN:" *British Poets*, Vol. viii, p 277.

There is a line of five syllables and double rhyme, which is commonly regarded as iambic dimeter with a supernumerary short syllable; and which, though it is susceptible of two other divisions into two feet, we prefer to scan in this manner, because it usually alternates with pure iambs. Twelve such lines occur in the following extract:--

LOVE TRANSITORY

"Could Love | for ever Run like | a river, And Time's | endeavour Be tried | in vain,-- No oth | -er pleasure With this | could measure; And like | a treasure We'd hug | the chain.

But since | our sighing Ends not | in dying, And, formed | for flying, Love plumes | his wing; Then for | this reason Let's love | a season; But let | that season Be on | -ly spring." LORD BYRON: See *Everett's Versification*, p. 19; *Fowler's E. Gram.*, p. 650.

MEASURE VIII.--IAMBIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

"The shortest form of the English Iambic," says Lindley Murray, "consists of an Iambus with an additional short syllable: as,

Disdaining, Complaining, Consenting, Repenting.

We have no poem of this measure, but it may be met with in stanzas. The Iambus, with this addition, coincides with the Amphibrach."--*Murray's Gram.*, 12mo, p. 204; 8vo, p. 254. This, or the substance of it, has been repeated by many other authors. Everett varies the language and illustration, but teaches the same doctrine. See *E. Versif.*, p. 15.

Now there are sundry examples which may be cited to show, that the iambus, without any additional syllable, and without the liability of being confounded with an other foot, may, and sometimes does, stand as a line, and sustain a regular rhyme. The following pieces contain instances of this sort:--

Example I.--"How to Keep Lent."

"Is this | a Fast, | to keep The lard | -er lean And clean From fat | of neats | and sheep?

Is it | to quit | the dish Of flesh, | yet still To fill The plat | -ter high | with fish?

Is it | to fast | an hour, Or ragg'd | to go, Or show A down | -cast look | and sour?

No:--'Tis | a Fast | to dole Thy sheaf | of wheat, And meat, Unto | the hun | -gry soul.

It is | to fast | from strife, From old | debate, And hate; To cir | -cumcise | thy life;

To show | a *heart* | grief-rent; To starve | thy sin, Not *bin*: Ay, that's | to keep | thy Lent." ROBERT HERRICK: *Clapp's Pioneer*, p. 48.

Example II.--"To Mary Ann."

[This singular arrangement of seventy-two separate iambic feet, I find *without intermediate points*, and leave it so. It seems intended to be read in three or more different ways, and the punctuation required by one mode of reading would not wholly suit an other.]

"Your face Your tongue Your wit So fair So sweet So sharp First bent Then drew Then hit Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart To like To learn To love Your face Your tongue Your wit Doth lead Doth teach Doth move

Your face Your tongue Your wit With beams With sound With art Doth blind Doth charm Doth rule Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart With life With hope With skill Your face Your tongue Your wit Doth feed Doth feast Doth fill

O face O tongue O wit With frowns With cheek With smart Wrong not Vex not Wound not Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

This eye This ear This heart Shall joy Shall bend Shall swear Your face Your tongue Your wit To serve To trust To fear."

ANONYMOUS: *Sundry American Newspapers*, in 1849.

Example III.--Umbrellas.

"The late George Canning, of whom Byron said that 'it was his happiness to be at once a wit, poet, orator, and statesman, and excellent in all,' is the author of the following clever *jeu d'esprit*:" [except three lines here added in brackets:]

"I saw | a man | with two | umbrellas, (One of | the lon l--gest kind | of fellows,) When it rained, M=eet =a | l=ady On the | shady Side of | thirty l-three, Minus | one of | these rain l-dispellers. 'I see,' Says she, 'Your qual | -ity | of mer | -cy is | not strained.' [Not slow | to comprehend | an inkling, His eye | with wag l-gish hu l-mour twinkling.] Replied | he, 'Ma'am, Be calm; This one | under | my arm Is rotten, [And can l-not save | you from | a sprinkling.] Besides | to keep | you dry, 'Tis plain | that you | as well | as I, 'Can lift | your cotton.'" See *The Essex County Freeman*, Vol. i, No. 1.

Example IV.--Shreds of a Song.

I. SPRING.

"The cuck l--oo then, | on ev l--ery tree, Mocks mar l--ried men, | for thus | sings he, *Cuckoo*'; Cuckoo', | cuckoo',-- | O word | of fear, Unpleas l-ing to | a mar l-ried ear!"

II. WINTER.

"When blood | is nipp'd, | and ways | be foul, Then night | -ly sings | the star l-ing owl, *To-who*; To-whit, | to-who, | a mer | -ry note, While greas | -y Joan | doth keel | the pot." --SHAKSPEARE: *Love's Labour's Lost*, Act v, Sc. 2.

Example V.--Puck's Charm.

[When he has uttered the fifth line, he squeezes a juice on Lysander's eyes.]

"On the ground, *Sleep sound*; I'll apply To your eye, Gentle | lover, | remedy. When thou wak'st, *Thou tak'st* True delight In the sight Of thy | former | lady's eye." [508] IDEM: *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, Act iii, Sc. 2.

ORDER II.--TROCHAIC VERSE.

In Trochaic verse, the stress is laid on the odd syllables, and the even ones are short. Single-rhymed trochaic omits the final short syllable, that it may end with a long one; for the common doctrine of Murray, Chandler, Churchill, Bullions, Butler, Everett, Fowler, Weld, Wells, Mulligan, and others, that this chief rhyming syllable is "*additional*" to the real number of feet in the line, is manifestly incorrect. One long syllable is, in some instances, used *as a foot*; but it is one or more *short syllables* only, that we can properly admit *as hypermeter*. Iambics and trochaics often occur in the same poem; but, in either order, written with exactness, the number of feet is always the number of the long syllables.

Examples from Gray's Bard.

(1.)

"*Ruin | seize thee, | ruthless | king!* Confu | -sion on | thy ban | -ners wait, Though, fann'd | by Con | -quest's crim | -son wing. They mock | the air | with i | -dle state. *Helm, nor | hauberk's | twisted | mail,* Nor e'en | thy vir | -tues, ty | -rant, shall | avail."

(2.)

"*Weave the | warp, and | weave the | woof,* The wind | -ing-sheet | of Ed | -ward's race. Give am | -ple room, | and verge | enough, The char | -acters | of hell | to trace. *Mark the | year, and | mark the | night,* When Sev | -ern shall | re-ech | -o with | affright." "*The Bard, a Pindaric Ode;*" *British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 281 and 282.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Trochaic verse without the final short syllable, is the same as iambic would be without the *initial* short syllable;--it being quite plain, that iambic, so changed, *becomes trochaic*, and is iambic no longer. But trochaic, retrenched of its last short syllable, is trochaic still; and can no otherwise be made iambic, than by the prefixing of a short syllable to the line. Feet, and the orders of verse, are distinguished one from another by two things, and in general by two only; the number of syllables taken as a foot, and the order of their quantities. Trochaic verse is always as distinguishable from iambic, as iambic is from any other. Yet have we several grammarians and prosodies who contrive to confound them--or who, at least, mistake catalectic trochaic for catalectic iambic; and that too, where the syllable wanting affects only the last foot, and makes it perhaps but a common and needful cæsure.

OBS. 2.--To suppose that iambic verse may drop its initial short syllable, and still be iambic, still be measured as before, is not only to take a single long syllable for a foot, not only to recognize a pedal cæsure at the *beginning* of each line, but utterly to destroy the only principles on which iambs and trochaics can be discriminated. Yet Hiley, of Leeds, and Wells, of Andover, while they are careful to treat separately of these two orders of verse, not only teach that any order may take at the end "an additional syllable," but also suggest that the iambic *may drop* a syllable "from the first foot," without diminishing the number of feet,--without changing the succession of quantities,--without disturbing the mode of scansion! "Sometimes," say they, (in treating of iambs,) "a syllable is cut off from the first foot; as,

Práise | to Gód, | immór | -tal práise, Fór | the lóve | that crówns | our dáys." [--BARBAULD.] *Hiley's E. Gram.*, Third Edition, London, p. 124; *Wells's*, Third Edition, p. 198.

OBS. 3.--Now this couplet is the precise exemplar, not only of the thirty-six lines of which it is a part, but also of the most common of our trochaic metres; and if this may be thus scanned into iambic verse, so may all other trochaic lines in existence: distinction between the two orders must then be worse than useless. But I reject this doctrine, and trust that most readers will easily see its absurdity. A prosodist might just as well scan all iambs into trochaics, by pronouncing each initial short syllable to be hypermeter. For, surely, if deficiency may be discovered at the *beginning* of measurement, so may redundancy. But if neither is to be looked for before the measurement ends, (which supposition is certainly more reasonable,) then is the distinction already vindicated, and the scansion above-cited is shown to be erroneous.

OBS. 4.--But there are yet other objections to this doctrine, other errors and inconsistencies in the teaching of it. Exactly the same kind of verse as this, which is said to consist of "*four iambs*" from one of which "a syllable *is cut off*," is subsequently scanned by the same authors as being composed of "*three trochees* and an *additional syllable*; as,

'Haste thee, | Nymph, and | bring with | thee Jest and | youthful | Jolli | -ty.'--MILTON." *Wells's School Grammar*, p. 200.

"V=it~al | sp=ark of | he=av'nly | fl=me, Q=uit ~oh | q=uit th~is | m=ort~al | fr=ame." [509][--POPE.] *Hiley's*

English Grammar, p. 126.

There is, in the works here cited, not only the inconsistency of teaching two very different modes of scanning the same species of verse, but in each instance the scansion is wrong; for all the lines in question are *trochaic of four feet*,--single-rhymed, and, of course, catalectic, and ending with a cæsure, or elision. In no metre that lacks but one syllable, can this sort of foot occur *at the beginning* of a line; yet, as we see, it is sometimes *imagined* to be there, by those who have never been able to find it *at the end*, where it oftenest exists!

OBS. 5.--I have hinted, in the main paragraph above, that it is a common error of our prosodists, to underrate, by one foot, the measure of all trochaic lines, when they terminate with single rhyme; an error into which they are led by an other as gross, that of taking for hypermeter, or mere surplus, the whole rhyme itself, the sound or syllable most indispensable to the verse.

"(For rhyme the *rudder* is of verses, With which, like ships, they steer their courses.)"--*Hudibras*.

Iambics and trochaics, of corresponding metres, and exact in them, agree of course in both the number of feet and the number of syllables; but as the former are slightly redundant with double rhyme, so the latter are deficient as much, with single rhyme; yet, the number of feet may, and should, in these cases, be reckoned the same. An estimable author now living says, "Trochaic verse, with an additional long syllable, is the same as iambic verse, without the initial short syllable."--*N. Butler's Practical Gram.*, p. 193. This instruction is not quite accurate. Nor would it be right, even if there could be "iambic verse without the initial short syllable," and if it were universally *true*, that, "Trochaic verse may take an additional *long* syllable."--*Ibid*. For the addition and subtraction here suggested, will inevitably make the difference of a foot, between the measures or verses said to be the same!

OBS. 6.--"I doubt," says T. O. Churchill, "whether the *trochaic* can be considered as a legitimate English measure. All the examples of it given by Johnson have an additional long syllable at the end: but these are *iambics*, if we look upon the additional syllable to be at the beginning, which is much more agreeable to the analogy of music."--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 390. This doubt, ridiculous as must be all reasoning in support of it, the author seriously endeavours to raise into a general conviction *that we have no trochaic order of verse!* It can hardly be worth while to notice here all his remarks. "*An additional long syllable*" Johnson never dreamed of--"at the end"--"at the beginning"--or anywhere else. For he discriminated metres, not by the number of feet, as he ought to have done, but by the number of *syllables* he found in each line. His doctrine is this: "Our *iambick* measure comprises verses--Of four syllables,--Of six,--Of eight,--Of ten. Our *trochaick* measures are--Of three syllables,--Of five,--Of seven. These are the measures *which are now in use*, and above the rest those of seven, eight and ten syllables. Our ancient poets wrote verses sometimes of twelve syllables, as Drayton's *Polyolbion*; and of fourteen, as Chapman's *Homer*." "We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called the *anapestick*."

'May I góvern my pássion with ábsolute swáy, And grow wiser and bétter as life wears awáy.' *Dr. Pope*.

"In this measure a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot, [;] as [,]

'When présent we lóve, and when ábsent agrée, I th'nk not of I'ris [,] nor I'ris of mé.' *Dryden*.

"These measures are varied by many combinations, and sometimes by *double endings*, either with or without rhyme, as in the *heroick* measure.

"Tis the divinity that stirs *within us*, 'Tis heaven itself that points out an *hereafter*.' *Addison*.

"So in that of eight syllables,

'They neither added nor confounded, They neither wanted nor abounded.' *Prior*.

"In that of seven,

'For resistance I could *fear none*, But with twenty ships had done, What thou, brave and happy *Vernon*, Hast achieved with six alone.' *Glover*.

"To these measures and their laws, may be reduced every species of English verse."--*Dr. Johnson's Grammar of the English Tongue*, p. 14. See his *Quarto Dict.* Here, except a few less important remarks, and sundry examples of the metres named, is Johnson's *whole scheme* of versification.

OBS. 7.--How, when a prosodist judges certain examples to "have an additional long syllable at the end," he can "look upon the additional syllable to be at the beginning," is a matter of marvel; yet, to abolish trochaics, Churchill not only does and advises this, but imagines short syllables removed sometimes from the beginning of lines; while sometimes he couples final short syllables with initial long ones, to make iambs, and yet does not always count these as feet in the verse, when he has done so! Johnson's instructions are both misunderstood and misrepresented by this grammarian. I have therefore cited them the more fully. The first syllable being retrenched from an *anapest*, there remains an *iambus*. But what countenance has Johnson lent to the gross error of reckoning such a foot an anapest still?--or to that of commencing the measurement of a line by including a syllable not used by the poet? The preceding stanza from Glover, is *trochaic of four feet*; the odd lines full, and of course making double rhyme; the even lines catalectic, and of course ending with a long syllable counted as a foot. Johnson cited it merely as an example of "*double endings*" imagining in it no "additional syllable," except perhaps the two which terminate the two trochees, "fear none" and "Vernon." These, it may be inferred, he improperly conceived to be additional to the regular measure; because he reckoned measures by the number of syllables, and probably supposed single rhyme to be the normal form of all rhyming verse.

OBS. 8.--There is false scansion in many a school grammar, but perhaps none more uncouthly false, than Churchill's pretended amendments of Johnson's. The second of these--wherein "the old *seven[-]foot iambic*" is professedly found in two lines of Glover's *trochaic tetrameter*--I shall quote:--

"In the anapæstic measure, Johnson himself allows, that a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot; yet he gives *as an example of trochaics with an additional syllable at the end of the even lines* a stanza, which, by adopting the *same principle*, would be in the iambic measure:

"For | resis- | tance I | could fear | none, But | with twen | ty ships | had done, What | thou, brave | and hap | py
Ver- | non, Hast | achiev'd | with six | alone.

In fact, *the second and fourth lines* here stamp the character of the measure; [Fist] *which is the old seven[-]foot iambic broken into four and three, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE AT THE BEGINNING.*"--*Churchill's New Gram.*, p. 391.

After these observations and criticisms concerning the trochaic order of verse, I proceed to say, trochaics consist of the following measures, or metres:--

MEASURE I.--TROCHAIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

Example I.--"The Raven"--First Two out of Eighteen Stanzas.

1. "Once up | -on a | midnight | dreary, | while I | pondered, | weak and | weary, Over | *m=any ~a* | quaint and |
c=ur~io~us | volume | of for | -gotten | lore, While I | nodded, | nearly | napping, | sudden | -ly there | came a |
tapping, As of | some one | gently | rapping, | rapping | at my | chamber | door. 'Tis some | visit | -or,' I |

muttered, | 'tapping | at my | chamber | door-- Only | this, and | nothing | more."

2. Ah! dis | tinctly | I re | member | it was | in the | bleak De | cember, And each | *s=ep~ar~ate* | dying | ember
| wrought its | ghost up | on the | floor; Eager | ly I | wished the | morrow; | vainly | had I | tried to | borrow
From my | books sur | cease of | sorrow-- | sorrow | for the | lost Le | nore-- For the | rare and | *r=ad~i~ant* |
maiden, | whom the | angels | name Le | nore-- Nameless | here for | ever | more." EDGAR A. POE: *American
Review for February*, 1845.

Double rhymes being less common than single ones, in the same proportion, is this long verse less frequently terminated with a full trochee, than with a single long syllable counted as a foot. The species of measure is, however, to be reckoned the same, though catalectic. By Lindley Murray, and a number who implicitly re-utter what he teaches, the verse of *six trochees*, in which are *twelve syllables* only, is said "to be *the longest Trochaic line* that our language admits."--*Murray's Octavo Gram.*, p. 257; *Weld's E. Gram.*, p. 211. The examples produced here will sufficiently show the inaccuracy of their assertion.

Example II.--"The Shadow of the Obelisk."--Last two Stanzas.

"Herds are | feeding | in the | Forum, | as in | old E | -vander's | time: Tumbled | from the | steep Tar | *peian* |
every | pile that | sprang sub | lime. Strange! that | what seemed | most in | constant | should the | most a |
-biding | prove; Strange! that | what is | hourly | moving | no mu | tation | can re | move: Ruined | lies the |
cirque! the | *chariots*, | long a | go, have | ceased to | roll-- E'en the | Obe | lisk is | broken | --but the | shadow |
still is | whole.

9.

Out a | --las! if | *mightiest* | empires | leave so | little | mark be | hind, How much | less must | heroes | hope for, |
in the | wreck of | human | kind! Less than | e'en this | darksome | picture, | which I | tread be | neath my | feet,
Copied | by a | lifeless | moonbeam | on the | pebbles | of the | street; Since if | Cæsar's | best am | bition, |
living, | was, to | be re | nowned, What shall | Cassar | leave be | hind him, | save the | shadow | of a | sound?"
T. W. PARSONS: *Lowell and Carter's "Pioneer,"* Vol. i, p. 120.

Example III.--"The Slaves of Martinique."--Nine Couplets out of Thirty-six.

"Beams of | noon, like | burning | lances, | through the | tree-tops | flash and | glisten, As she | stands be | -fore
her | lover, | with raised | face to | look and | listen.

Dark, but | comely, | like the | maiden | in the | ancient | Jewish | song, Scarcely | has the | toil of | task-fields |
done her graceful | beauty | wrong.

He, the | strong one, | and the | manly, | with the | vassal's | garb and | hue, Holding | still his | spirit's |
birthright, | to his | higher | nature | true;

Hiding | deep the | *strengthening* | purpose | of a | freeman | in his | heart, As the | Greegree | holds his | Fetish |
from the | white man's | gaze a | -part.

Ever | foremost | of the | toilers, | when the | driver's | morning | horn Calls a | -way to | stifling | millhouse, | or
to | fields of | cane and | corn;

Fall the | keen and | burning | lashes | never | on his | back or | limb; Scarce with | look or | word of | censure, |
turns the | driver | unto | him.

Yet his | brow is | always | thoughtful, | and his | eye is | hard and | stern; *Slavery's* | last and | humblest | lesson

l he has l never l deigned to l learn."

"And, at evening l when his l comrades l dance be l -fore their l master's l door, Folding arms and l knitting l forehead, l stands he l silent l ever l-more.

God be l praised for l every instinct l which re l -bels a l -gainst a l lot Where the l brute sur l-vives the l human, l and man's l upright l form is l not!" --J. G. WHITTIER: *National Era, and other Newspapers*, Jan. 1848.

Example IV.--"The Present Crisis"--Two Stanzas out of sixteen.

"Once to l every l man and l nation l comes the l moment l to de l-cide, In the l strife of l Truth with l Falsehood, l for the l good or l evil l side; Some great l cause, God's l new Mes l-siah, l offering l each the l bloom or l blight, Parts the l goats up l -on the l left hand, l and the l sheep up l -on the l right, And the l choice goes l by for l -ever l'twixt that l darkness l and that l light.

Have ye l chosen, l O my l people, l on whose l party l ye shall l stand, Ere the l Doom from l its worn l sandals l shakes the l dust a l -gainst our l land? Though the l cause of l evil l prosper, l yet the l Truth a l -lone is l strong, And, al l beit she l wander l outcast l now, I l see a l -round her l throng Troops of l beauti l -ful tall l angels l to en l -shield her l from all l wrong." JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL: *Liberator*, September 4th, 1846.

Example V.--The Season of Love.--A short Extract.

"In the l Spring, a l fuller l crimson l comes up l -on the l robin's l breast; In the l Spring, the l wanton l lapwing l gets him l -self an l other l crest; In the l Spring, a l livelier l iris l changes l on the l burnished l dove; In the l Spring, a l young man's l fancy l lightly l turns to l thoughts of l love.

Then her l cheek was l pale, and l thinner l than should l be for l one so l young; And her l eyes on l all my l motions, l with a l mute ob l -servance, l hung. And I l said, 'My l cousin l Amy, l speak, and l speak the l truth to l me; Trust me, l cousin, l all the l current l of my l being l sets to l thee.'" *Poems by* ALFRED TENNYSON, Vol. ii, p. 35.

Trochaic of eight feet, as these sundry examples will suggest, is much oftener met with than iambic of the same number; and yet it is not a form very frequently adopted. The reader will observe that it requires a considerable pause after the fourth foot; at which place one might divide it, and so reduce each couplet to a stanza of four lines, similar to the following examples:--

PART OF A SONG, IN DIALOGUE.

SYLVIA.

"Corin, l cease this l idle l teasing; Love that's l forc'd is l harsh and l sour; If the l lover l be dis l -pleasing, To per l -sist dis l -gusts the l more."

CORIN.

"'Tis in l vain, in l vain to l fly me, Sylvia, l I will l still pur l -sue; Twenty l thousand l times de l -ny me, I will l kneel and l weep a l -new."

SYLVIA.

"Cupid l ne'er shall l make me l languish, I was l born a l -verse to l love; Lovers' l sighs, and l tears, and l anguish, Mirth and l pastime l to me l prove."

CORIN.

"Still I | vow with | patient | duty Thus to | meet your | proudest | scorn; You for | unre | -lenting | beauty I for | constant | love was | born."

Poems by ANNA LÆTITIA BARBAULD, p. 56.

PART OF A CHARITY HYMN.

1.

"Lord of | life, all | praise ex | -celling, thou, in | glory | uncon | -fin'd, Deign'st to | make thy | humble | dwelling with the | poor of | humble | mind.

2.

As thy | love, through | all cre | -ation, beams like | thy dif | -fusive | light; So the | scorn'd and | humble | station shrinks be | -fore thine | equal | sight.

3.

Thus thy | care, for | all pro | -viding, warm'd thy | faithful | prophet's | tongue; Who, the | lot of | all de | -ciding, to thy | chosen | *Israel* | sung:

4.

'When thine | harvest | yields thee | pleasure, thou the | golden | sheaf shalt | bind; To the | poor be | -longs the | treasure of the | scatter'd | ears be | -hind.'" *Psalms and Hymns of the Protestant Episcopal Church, Hymn LV.*

A still more common form is that which reduces all these tetrameters to single rhymes, preserving their alternate succession. In such metre and stanza, is Montgomery's "Wanderer of Switzerland, a Poem, in Six Parts," and with an aggregate of eight hundred and forty-four lines. Example:--

1.

"*Wanderer*, | whither | wouldst thou | roam? To what | region | far a | -way, Bend thy | steps to | find a | home, In the | twilight | of thy | day?"

2.

'In the | twilight | of my | day, I am | hastening | to the | west; There my | weary limbs | to lay, Where the | sun re | -tires to | rest.

3.

Far be | -yond the At | -lantic | floods, Stretched be | -neath the | evening | sky, Realms of | mountains, | dark with | woods, In Co | -lumbia's | bosom | lie.

4.

There, in | glens and | caverns | rude, Silent | since the | world be | -gan, Dwells the | virgin | Soli | -tude, Unbe | -trayed by | faithless | man:

5.

Where a | tyrant | never | trod, Where a | slave was | never | known, But where | nature | worships | God In the |
wilder | -ness a | -lone.

6.

Thither, | thither | would I | roam; There my | children | may be | free; I for | them will | find a | home; They
shall | find a | grave for | me."

First six stanzas of Part VI, pp. 71 and 72.

MEASURE II.--TROCHAIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

Example.--Psalm LXX,[510] Versified.

Hasten, | Lord, to | rescue | me, and | set me | safe from | trouble; Shame thou | those who | seek my | soul, re |
-ward their | mischief | double. Turn the | taunting | scorers | back, who | cry, 'A | -ha!' so | loudly; Backward |
in con | -fusion | hurl the | foe that | mocks me | proudly. Then in | thee let | those re | -joice, who | seek thee, |
self-de | -nying; All who | thy sal | -vation | love, thy | name be | glory | -fying. So let | God be | magni | -fied.
But | I am | poor and | needy: Hasten, | Lord, who | art my | Helper; | let thine | aid be | speedy.

This verse, like all other that is written in very long lines, requires a cæsural pause of proportionate length; and it would scarcely differ at all to the ear, if it were cut in two at the place of this pause--provided the place were never varied. Such metre does not appear to have been at any time much used, though there seems to be no positive reason why it might not have a share of popularity. To commend our versification for its "boundless variety," and at the same time exclude from it forms either unobjectionable or well authorized, as some have done, is plainly inconsistent. Full trochaics have some inconvenience, because all their rhymes must be double; and, as this inconvenience becomes twice as much when any long line of this sort is reduced to two short ones, there may be a reason why a stanza precisely corresponding to the foregoing couplets is seldom seen. If such lines be divided and rhymed at the middle of the fourth foot, where the cæsural pause is apt to fall, the first part of each will be a trochaic line of four feet, single-rhymed and catalectic, while the rest of it will become an iambic line of three feet, with double rhyme and hypermeter. Such are the prosodial characteristics of the following lines; which, if two were written as one, would make exactly our full trochaic of seven feet, the metre exhibited above:--

"Whisp'ring, | heard by | wakeful | maids, To whom | the night | stars *guide* | *us*, Stolen | walk, through |
moonlight | shades, With those | we love | *beside* | *us*"--*Moore's Melodies*, p. 276.

But trochaic of seven feet may also terminate with single rhyme, as in the following couplet, which is given anonymously, and, after a false custom, erroneously, in N. Butler's recent Grammar, as "trochaic of *six feet*, with an additional long syllable:--

"Night and | morning | were at | meeting | over | Water | -loo; Cocks had | sung their | *earliest* | greeting; | faint
and | low they | crew." [511]

In Frazee's Grammar, a separate line or two, similar in metre to these, and rightly reckoned to have *seven feet*, and many lines, (including those above from Tennyson, which W. C. Fowler erroneously gives for *Heptameter*,) being a foot longer, are presented as trochaics of *eight feet*; but Everett, the surest of our prosodists, remaining, like most others, a total stranger to our octometers, and too little acquainted with trochaic heptameters to believe the species genuine, on finding a couple of stanzas in which two such lines are set with shorter ones of different sorts, and with some which are defective in metre, sagely concludes that all

lines of more than "*six trochees*" must necessarily be condemned as prosodial anomalies. It may be worth while to repeat the said stanzas here, adding such corrections and marks as may suggest their proper form and scansion. But since they commence with the shorter metre of six trochees only, and are already placed under that head, I too may take them in the like connexion, by now introducing my third species of trochaics, which is Everett's tenth.

MEASURE III.--TROCHAIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

Example.--Health.

"Up the | dewy | mountain, | Health is | bounding | lightly; On her | brows a | garland, | twin'd with | richest | posies: Gay is | she, e | -late with | hope, and | smiling | sprightly; Redder | is her | cheek, and | sweeter | than the | rose is." G. BROWN: *The Institutes of English Grammar*, p. 258.

This metre appears to be no less rare than the preceding; though, as in that case, I know no good reason why it may not be brought into vogue. Professor John S. Hart says of it: "This is the *longest* Trochaic verse that seems to have been cultivated."--*Hart's Eng. Gram.*, p. 187. The seeming of its cultivation he doubtless found only in sundry modern grammars. Johnson, Bicknell, Burn, Coar, Ward, Adam,--old grammarians, who vainly profess to have illustrated "every species of English verse,"--make no mention of it; and, with all the grammarians who notice it, *one anonymous couplet*, passing from hand to hand, has everywhere served to exemplify it.

Of this, "the line of six Trochees," Everett says: "This measure *is languishing*, and rarely used. The following example is often cited:

'On a | mountain, | stretched be | -neath a | hoary | willow, Lay a | shepherd | swain, and | view'd the | rolling | billow.'"[512]

Again: "We have the following from BISHOP HEBER:--

'H=ol~y, | h=ol~y | h=ol~y! | =all th~e | s=aints ~a | -d=ore th~ee, C=ast~ing | d=own th~eir | g=old~en | cr=owns ~a | -r=ound th~e | gl=ass~y | s=ea; Ch=er~u | -b=im ~and | s=er~a | -ph=im [~are,] | f=all~ing | d=own b~e | -f=ore th~ee, *Wh~ich* w=ert, | ~and =art, | ~and =ev | ~erm=ore | sh~alt b=e!

Holy, | holy, | holy! | though the | darkness | hide thee, Though the | eye of | sinful | man thy | glory | may not | see, Only | thou, [O | *God*,] art | holy; | there is | none be | -side thee, P=erf~ect | ~in p=ow'r, | ~in l=ove, | ~and p=u | -r~it=y.'

Only the first *and the third* lines of these stanzas are to our purpose," remarks the prosodist. That is, only these he conceived to be "lines of six Trochees." But it is plain, that the third line of the first stanza, having seven long syllables, must have seven feet, and cannot be a trochaic hexameter; and, since the third below should be like it in metre, one can hardly forbear to think the words which I have inserted in brackets, were accidentally omitted.

Further: "It is worthy of remark," says he, "that the second line of each of these stanzas is composed of *six Trochees* and an *additional long syllable*. As its corresponding line is an Iambic, and as the piece has some licenses in its construction, it is *far safer* to conclude that this line is an *anomaly* than that it forms a distinct species of verse. We must therefore conclude that the tenth [the metre of six trochees] is the longest species of Trochaic line known to English verse."--*Everett's Versification*, pp. 95 and 96.

This, in view of the examples above, of our longer trochaics, may serve as a comment on the author's boast, that, "having deduced his rules from the usage of the great poets, he has the best reason for being confident of

their correctness."--*Ibid.*, Pref., p. 5.

Trochaic hexameter, too, may easily be written with *single rhyme*; perhaps more easily than a specimen suited to the purpose can be cited from any thing already written. Let me try:--

Example I.--The Sorcerer.

Lonely | in the | forest, | subtle | from his | birth, Lived a | necro | -mancer, | wondrous | son of | earth. More of | him in | -quire not, | than I | choose to | say; Nymph or | dryad | bore him-- | else 'twas | witch or | fay; Ask you | who his | father?-- | haply | he might | be Wood-god, | satyr, | sylvan; | --such his | pedi | -gree. Reared mid | fauns and | fairies, | knew he | no com | -peers; Neither | cared he | for them, | saving | ghostly | seers. Mistress | of the | black-art, | "wizard | gaunt and | grim," Nightly | on the | hill-top, | "read the | stars to | him." These were | welcome | teachers; | drank he | in their | lore; Witchcraft | so en | -ticed him, | still to | thirst for | more. Spectres | he would | play with, | phantoms | raise or | quell; Gnomes from | earth's deep | centre | knew his | potent | spell. Augur | or a | -ruspex | had not | half his | art; Master | deep of | magic, | spirits | played his | part; Demons, | imps in | -fernal, | conjured | from be | -low, Shaped his | grand en | -chantments | with im | -posing | show.

Example II.--An Example of Hart's, Corrected

"Where the | wood is | waving, | *shady*, | green, and | high, Fauns and | dryads, | *nightly*, | watch the | starry | sky." See *Hart's E. Gram.*, p. 187; or *the citation thence below*.

A couplet of this sort might easily be reduced to a pleasant little stanza, by severing each line after the third foot, thus:--

Hearken! | hearken! | hear ye; Voices | meet my | ear. Listen, | never | fear ye; Friends--or | foes--are | near.

Friends! "So | -ho!" they're | shouting.-- "Ho! so | -ho, a | -hoy!"-- "Tis no | Indian, | scouting. Cry, *so* | -ho! with | joy.

But a similar succession of eleven syllables, six long and five short, divided after the seventh, leaving two iambs to form the second or shorter line,--(since such a division produces different orders and metres both,--) will, I think, retain but little resemblance in rhythm to the foregoing, though the actual sequence of quantities long and short is the same. If this be so, the particular measure or correspondent length of lines is more essential to the character of a poetic strain than some have supposed. The first four lines of the following extract are an example relevant to this point:--

Ariel's Song.

"C=ome ~un | t=o' th~ese | y=ell~ow | s=ands, And th=en | t~ake h=ands: Court'sied | when you | have and | kiss'd, (The wild | waves whist,) Foot it | featly | here and | there; And, sweet | sprites, the | burden | bear."
SINGER'S SHAKSPEARE: *Tempest*, Act i, Sc. 2.

MEASURE IV.--TROCHAIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER

Example I.--Double Rhymes and Single, Alternated.

"Mountain | winds! oh! | whither | do ye | call me? Vainly, | vainly, | would my | steps pur | -sue: Chains of | care to | lower | earth en | -thrall me, Wherefore | thus my | weary | spirit | woo?

Oh! the | strife of | this di | -vided | being! Is there | peace where | ye are | borne, on | high? Could we | soar to |

your proud | eyries | fleeing, In our | hearts, would | haunting | *m=em~or~ies* | die?" FELICIA HEMANS: "*To the Mountain Winds:*" *Everet's Versif.*, p. 95.

Example II--Rhymes Otherwise Arranged.

"Then, me | thought, I | heard a | hollow | sound, *G=ath~er~ing* | up from | all the lower | ground:
N=arr~ow~ing | in to | where they | sat as | sembled, Low vo | *l~l~upt~uo~us* | music, | winding, | trembled."
ALFRED TENNYSON: *Frazer's Improved Gram.*, p. 184; *Fowler's*, 657.

This measure, whether with the final short syllable or without it, is said, by Murray, Everett, and others, to be "*very uncommon*." Dr. Johnson, and the other old prosodists named with him above, knew nothing of it. Two couplets, exemplifying it, now to be found in sundry grammars, and erroneously reckoned to *differ as to the number of their feet*, were either selected or composed by Murray, for his Grammar, at its origin--or, if not then, at its first reprint, in 1796. They are these:--

(1.)

"All that | walk on | foot or | ride in | *chariots*, All that | dwell in | pala | ces or | garrets."

L. Murray's Gram., 12mo, 175; 8vo, 257; *Chandler's*, 196; *Churchill's*, 187; *Hiley's*, 126; *et al.*

(2.)

"Idle | after | dinner, | in his | chair, Sat a | farmer, | ruddy, | fat, and | fair."

Murray, same places; N. Butler's Gr., p. 193; *Hallock's*, 244; *Hart's*, 187; *Weld's*, 211; *et al.*

Richard Hiley most absurdly scans this last couplet, and all verse like it, into "*the Heroic measure*," or a form of our *iambic pentameter*; saying, "Sometimes a syllable is cut off from the *first* foot; as,

=I | dl~e =af | t~er d=inn | n~er =in | h~is ch=air [,] S=at | ~a f=ar | m~er [,] r=ud | l~ý, f=at, | =and f=air."
Hiley's English Grammar, Third Edition, p. 125.

J. S. Hart, who, like many others, has mistaken the metre of this last example for "*Trochaic Tetrameter*," with a surplus "syllable," after repeating the current though rather questionable assertion, that, "this measure is very uncommon," proceeds with our "*Trochaic Pentameter*," thus: "This species is likewise uncommon. It is composed of five trochees; as,

=In th~e | d=ark ~and | gr=een ~and | gl=oom~y | v=all~ey, S=at~yrs | b=y th~e | br=ookl~et | l=ove t~o | d=all~y."

And again: [[Fist]] "*The SAME with an ADDITIONAL accented syllable*; as,

Wh=ere th~e | w=ood ~is | w=av~ing | gr=een ~and | lh=igh, F=auns ~and | Dr=y~ads | w=atch th~e | st=arr~y | sky." *Hart's English Grammar*, First Edition, p. 187.

These examples appear to have been made for the occasion; and the latter, together with its introduction, made unskillfully. The lines are of five feet, and so are those about the ruddy farmer; but there is nothing "*additional*" in either case; for, as pentameter, they are all *catalectic*, the final short syllable being dispensed with, and a cæsure preferred, for the sake of single rhyme, otherwise not attainable. "Five trochees" and a rhyming "syllable" will make trochaic *hexameter*, a measure perhaps more pleasant than this. See examples above.

MEASURE V.--TROCHAIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

Example I.--A Mournful Song.

1.

"Raving | winds a | -round her | blowing, Yellow | leaves the | woodlands | strewing, By a | river | hoarsely |
roaring, Isa | -bella | strayed de | -ploring. 'Farewell | hours that | late did | measure Sunshine | days of | joy and
| pleasure; Hail, thou | gloomy | night of | sorrow, Cheerless | night that | knows no | morrow.

2.

O'er the | past too | fondly | *wandering*, On the | hopeless | future | *pondering*, Chilly | grief my | life-blood |
freezes, Fell de | -spair my | fancy | seizes. Life, thou | soul of | *every* | blessing, Load to | *misery* | most dis |
-tressing, O how | gladly | I'd re | -sign thee, And to | dark ob | -*livion* | join thee." ROBERT BURNS: *Select Works*, Vol. ii, p. 131

Example II.--A Song Petitionary.

"*Powers ce* | -lestial, | whose pro | -tection Ever | guards the | *virtuous* | fair, While in | distant | climes I |
wander, Let my | Mary | be your | care: Let her | form so | fair and | faultless, Fair and | faultless | as your |
own; Let my | Mary's | kindred | spirit Draw your | choicest | *influence* | down.

Make the | gales you | waft a | -round her Soft and | peaceful | as her | breast; Breathing | in the | breeze that |
fans her, Soothe her | bosom | into | rest: *Guardian* | angels, | O pro | -tect her, When in | distant | lands I |
roam; *To realms* | *unknown* | *while fate* | *exiles me*, Make her | bosom | still my | home." BURNS'S SONGS,
Same Volume, p. 165.

Example III.--Song of Juno and Ceres.

Ju. "Honour, | riches, marriage | -blessing, Long con | -*tinuance*, | and in | -creasing, Hourly | joys be | still up |
-on you! Juno | sings her | blessings | on you." *Cer.* "Earth's in | -crease, and | foison | plenty; Barns and |
garners | never | empty; Vines with | clust'ring | bunches | growing; Plants with | goodly | burden | bowing;
Spring come | to you, | at the | farthest, In the | very | end of | harvest! Scarci | -ty and | want shall | shun you;
Ceres' | blessing | so is | on you." SHAKESPEARE: *Tempest*, Act iv, Sc. 1.

Example IV.--On the Vowels.

"We are | little | airy | creatures, All of | diffrent | voice and | features; One of | us in | glass is | set, One of | us
you'll | find in | jet;

T'other | you may | see in | tin, And the | fourth a | box with | -in; If the | fifth you | should pur | -sue, It can |
never | fly from | you." SWIFT: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. v, p. 343.

Example V.--Use Time for Good.

"Life is | short, and | time is | swift; Roses | fade, and | shadows | shift; But the ocean | and the | river Rise and |
fall and | flow for | ever;

Bard! not | vainly | heaves the | ocean; Bard! not | vainly | flows the | river; Be thy | song, then, | like their |
motion, Blessing | now, and | blessing | ever." EBENEZER ELLIOT: *From a Newspaper*.

Example IV.[sic for VI--KTH]--"The Turkish Lady"--First Four Stanzas.

1. "'Twas the | hour when | rites un | -holy Called each | Paynim | voice to | pray'r, And the | star that | faded | slowly, Left to | dew's the | freshened | air.
2. Day her | sultry | fires had | wasted, Calm and | sweet the | moonlight | rose; E'en a | captive's | spirit | tasted Half ob | -livion | of his | woes.
3. Then 'twas | from an | Emir's | palace Came an | eastern | lady | bright; She, in | spite of | tyrants | jealous, Saw and | loved an | English | knight.
4. 'Tell me, | captive, | why in | anguish Foes have | dragged thee | here to | dwell Where poor | Christians, | as they | languish. Hear no | sound of | sabbath | bell?'" THOMAS CAMPBELL: *Poetical Works*, p. 115.

Example VII.--The Palmer's Morning Hymn.

"Lauded | be thy | name for | ever, Thou, of | life the | guard and | giver! Thou canst | guard thy | creatures | sleeping, Heal the | heart long | broke with | weeping, Rule the | =oupes ~and | =elves ~at | w=ill *Th~at v=ex | th~e =air | ~or h=aunt | th~e h=ill, ~And =all | th~e f=u | -r~y s=ub | -j~ect k=eep ~Of b=oil | ~~ing cl=oud | ~and ch=af | ~~ed d=eep!*

I h~ave | s=een, ~and | w=ell I | kn=ow ~it! Thou hast | done, and | Thou wilt | do it! God of | stillness | and of | motion! Of the | rainbow | and the | ocean! Of the | mountain, | rock, and | river! Blessed | be Thy | name for | ever! I have | seen thy | wondrous | might Through the | shadows | of this | night!

Thou, who | slumber'st | not, nor | sleepest! Blest are | they thou | kindly | keepest! Spirits, | from the | ocean | under, Liquid | flame, and | levell'd | thunder, Need not | waken | nor a | -larm them-- All com | -bined, they | cannot | harm them.

God of | evening's | yellow | ray, God of | yonder | dawning | day, Thine the | flaming | sphere of | light! Thine the | darkness | of the | night! Thine are | all the | gems of | even, God of | angels! | God of | heaven!" JAMES HOGG: *Mador of the Moor, Poems*, p. 206.

Example VIII--A Short Song, of Two Stanzas.

"Stay, my | charmer, | can you | leave me? Cruel, | cruel, | to de | -ceive me! Well you | know how | much you | grieve me: Cruel | charmer, | can you | go? Cruel | charmer, | can you | go?

By my | love, so | ill re | -quited; By the | faith you | fondly plighted; By the | pangs of | lovers slighted; Do not, | do not | leave me | so! Do not, | do not | leave me | so!" ROBERT BURNS: *Select Works*, Vol. ii, p. 129.

Example IX.--Lingering Courtship.

1. "Never | wedding, | ever | wooing, Still | lovelorn | heart pur | -suing, Read you | not the | wrong you're | doing, In my | cheek's pale | hue? All my | life with | sorrow | strewing, Wed, or | cease to | woo.
2. Rivals | banish'd, | bosoms | plighted, Still our | days are | disu | -nited; Now the | lamp of | hope is | lighted, Now half | quench'd ap | -pears, Damp'd, and | *wavering*, and be | -nighted, Midst my | sighs and | tears.
3. Charms you | call your | dearest | blessing, Lips that | thrill at | your ca | -ressing, Eyes a | *mutual* soul con | -fessing, Soon you'll | make them | grow Dim, and | worthless | your pos | -singing, Not with | age, but | woe!" CAMPBELL: *Everett's System of Versification*, p. 91.

Example X.--"Boadicea"--Four Stanzas from Eleven.

1. "When the | British | warrior | queen, Bleeding | from the | Roman | rods, Sought, with | an in | -dignant | mien, Counsel | of her | country's | gods,
2. Sage be | -neath the | spreading | oak, Sat the | Druid, | hoary | chief; *Every* burning | word he | spoke Full of | rage, and | full of | grief.
3. Princess! | if our | aged | eyes Weep up | -on thy | matchless | wrongs, 'Tis be | -cause re | -sentment | ties All the | terrors | of our | tongues.
4. ROME SHALL | PERISH-- | write that | word In the | blood that | she hath | spilt; Perish, | hopeless | and ab | -horr'd, Deep in | ruin | as in | guilt." WILLIAM COWPER: *Poems*, Vol. ii, p. 244.

Example XI--"The Thunder Storm"--Two Stanzas from Ten.

"Now in | deep and | dreadful | gloom, Clouds on | clouds por | -tentous | spread, Black as | if the | day of | doom Hung o'er | Nature's | shrinking | head: Lo! the | lightning | breaks from | high, God is | coming! | -God is | nigh!

Hear ye | not his | *chariot* | wheels, As the | mighty | thunder | rolls? Nature, | startled | Nature | reels, From the | centre | to the | poles: Tremble! | --Ocean, | Earth, and | Sky! Tremble! | --God is | passing | by!" J. MONTGOMERY: *Wanderer of Switzerland, and other Poems*, p. 130.

Example XII.--"The Triumphs of Owen," King of North Wales.[513]

"Owen's | praise de | -mands my song, Owen | swift and | Owen | strong; Fairest | flow'r of | *Roderick's* | stem, Gwyneth's | shield, and | Britain's | gem. He nor | heaps his | brooded | stores, Nor the | whole pro | -fusely | pours; Lord of | *every* | regal | art, *Liberal* | hand and | open | heart. Big with | hosts of | mighty | name, Squadrons | three a | -gainst him came; This the | force of | Eirin | hiding, Side by | side as | proudly | riding, On her | shadow | long and | gay, Lochlin | ploughs the | *watery* | way: There the Norman | sails a | -far Catch the | winds, and | join the | war; Black and | huge, a | -long they | sweep, Burthens | of the | angry | deep. Dauntless | on his | native | sands, *The Drag* | -on-son | of *Mo* | -na stands;[514] In glit | -tering arms | and glo | -ry drest, High he | rears his | ruby | crest. There the | thundering | stroke be | -gin, There the | press, and | there the | din; Taly | -malfra's | rocky | shore *Echoing* | to the | battle's | roar; Where his | glowing | eyeballs | turn, Thousand | banners | round him | burn. Where he | points his | purple | spear, Hasty, | hasty | rout is | there, Marking | with in | -dignant | eye Fear to | stop, and | shame to | fly. There Con | -fusion, | Terror's | child, Conflict | fierce, and | Ruin | wild, Ago | -ny, that | pants for | breath, *Despair*, | and HON | -OURA | -BLE DEATH." THOMAS GRAY: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 285.

Example XIII.--"Grongar Hill."--First Twenty-six Lines.

"Silent | Nymph, with | *curious* | eye, Who, the | purple | eve, dost | lie On the | mountain's | lonely | van, *Beyond* | the noise | of bus | -y man; Painting | fair the | form of | things, While the | yellow | linnet | sings; Or the | tuneful | nightin | -gale Charms the | forest | with her | tale; Come, with | all thy | various hues, Come, and | aid thy | sister | Muse. Now, while | Phoebus, | riding | high, *Gives lus* | -tre to | the land | and sky, Grongar | Hill in | -vites my | song; Draw the | landscape | bright | and strong; Grongar, | in whose | mossy | cells, Sweetly | -musing | Quiet | dwells; Grongar, | in whose | silent | shade, For the | modest | Muses | made, *So oft* | *I have*, | the eve | -ning still, At the | fountain | of a | rill, Sat up | -on a | *flowery* | bed, With my | hand be | -neath my | head, *While stray'd* | my eyes | o'er Tow | -y's flood, Over | mead and | over wood, *From house* | to house, | from hill | to hill, Till Con | -templa | -tion had | her fill." JOHN DYER: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 65.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--This is the most common of our trochaic measures; and it seems to be equally popular, whether written with single rhyme, or with double; in stanzas, or in couplets; alone, or with some intentional intermixture. By a careful choice of words and style, it may be adapted to all sorts of subjects, grave, or gay; quaint, or pathetic; as may the corresponding iambic metre, with which it is often more or less mingled, as we see in some of the examples above. Milton's *L'Allegro*, or *Gay Mood*, has one hundred and fifty-two lines; ninety-eight of which are iambs; fifty-four trochaic tetrameters; a very few of each order having double rhymes. These orders the poet has *not*--"very ingeniously *alternated*" as Everett avers; but has simply interspersed, or commingled, with little or no regard to alternation. His *Il Penseroso*, or *Grave Mood*, has twenty-seven trochaic tetrameters, mixed irregularly with one hundred and forty-nine iambs.

OBS. 2.--Everett, who divides our trochaic tetrameters into two species of metre, imagines that the catalectic form, or that which is single-rhymed, "has a *solemn effect*,"--"imparts to all pieces *more dignity* than any of the other short measures,"--"that no trivial or humorous subject should be treated in this measure,"--and that, "besides dignity, it imparts an air of *sadness* to the subject."--*English Verses.*, p. 87. Our "line of four trochees" he supposes to be "*difficult* of construction,"--"not of very *frequent* occurrence,"--"the most *agreeable* of all the trochaic measures,"--"remarkably well adapted to lively subjects,"--and "peculiarly expressive of the eagerness and fickleness of the passion of love."--*Ib.*, p. 90. These pretended metrical characteristics seem scarcely more worthy of reliance, than astrological predictions, or the oracular guessings of our modern craniologists.

OBS. 3.--Dr. Campbell repeats a suggestion of the older critics, that gayety belongs naturally to all trochaics, as such, and gravity or grandeur, as naturally, to iambs; and he attempts to find a reason for the fact; while, perhaps, even here--more plausible though the supposition is--the fact may be at least half imaginary. "The iambus," says he, "is expressive of dignity and grandeur; the trochee, on the contrary, according to Aristotle, (Rhet. Lib. III,) is frolicsome and gay. It were difficult to assign a reason of this difference that would be satisfactory; but of the thing itself, I imagine, most people will be sensible on comparing the two kinds together. I know not whether it will be admitted as a sufficient reason, that the distinction into metrical feet hath a much greater influence in poetry on the rise and fall of the voice, than the distinction into words; and if so, when the cadences happen mostly after the long syllables, the verse will naturally have an air of greater gravity than when they happen mostly after the short."--*Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric*, p. 354.

MEASURE VI.--TROCHAIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

Example I.--Youth and Age Contrasted.

"Crabbed | age and | youth Cannot | live to | -gether; Youth is | full of | pleasance, Age is | full of | care: Youth, like | summer | morn, Age, like | winter | weather; Youth, like | summer, | brave; Age, like | winter, | bare. Youth is | full of | sport, Age's | breath is | short, Youth is | nimble, | age is | lame; Youth is | hot and | bold, Age is | weak and | cold; Youth is | wild, and | age is | tame." *The Passionate Pilgrim*; SINGER'S SHAKSPEARE, Vol. ii p. 594.

Example II--Common Sense and Genius.

3.

"While I | touch the | string, Wreath my | brows with | laurel; For the | tale I | sing, Has, for | once, a | moral!

4.

Common | Sense went | on, Many | wise things | saying; While the | light that | shone, Soon set | Genius |

straying.

5.

One his eye ne'er | rais'd From the | path be | -fore him; T' other | idly | gaz'd On each | night-cloud | o'er him.

6.

While I | touch the | string, Wreathe my | brows with | laurel; For the | tale I | sing, Has, for | once, a | moral!

7.

So they | came, at | last, To a | shady | river; Common | Sense soon | pass'd Safe,--as | he doth | ever.

8.

While the | boy whose | look Was in | heav'n that | minute, Never | saw the | brook,-- *But tum | -bled head | -long in it.*" *Six Stanzas from Twelve.*--MOORE'S MELODIES, p. 271.

This short measure is much oftener used in stanzas, than in couplets. It is, in many instances, combined with some different order or metre of verse, as in the following:--

Example III.--Part of a Song.

"Go where | glory | waits thee, But while | fame e | -lates thee, *Oh! still | remem | -ber me.* When the | praise thou | meetest, To thine | ear is | sweetest, *Oh! then | remem | -ber me.* Other | arms may | press thee, Dearer | friends ca | -ress thee, All the | joys that | bless thee, Sweeter | far may | be: But when | friends are | nearest, And when | joys are | dearest, *Oh! then | remem | -ber me.*

When, at | eve, thou | rovest, By the | star thou | lovest, *Oh! then | remem | -ber me.* Think when | home re | -turning, Bright we've | seen it | burning; *Oh! thus | remem | -ber me.* Oft as | summer | closes, When thine | eye re | -poses On its | ling'ring | roses, Once so | loved by | thee, Think of | her who | wove them, Her who | made thee | love them; *Oh! then | remem | -ber me.*" MOORE'S *Melodies, Songs, and Airs*, p. 107.

Example IV.--From an Ode to the Thames.

"On thy | shady | margin, Care its | load dis | -charging, *Is lull'd | to gen | -tle rest:*

Britain | thus dis | -arming, Nothing | her a | -larming, *Shall sleep on Cæ | -sar's breast.*" See ROWE'S POEMS: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. iv, p. 58.

Example V.--"The True Poet"--First Two of Nine Stanzas.

1. "Poet | of the | heart, Delving | in its | mine, From man | -kind a | -part, Yet where | jewels | shine; Heaving | upward | to the | light, Precious | wealth that | charms the | sight;

2.

Toil thou | still, deep | down, For earth's | hidden | gems; They shall | deck a | crown, Blaze in | dia | -dems; *And when | thy hand | shall fall | to rest, Brightly | jewel | beauty's | breast.*" JANE B. LOCKE: *N. Y. Evening Post; The Examiner*, No. 98.

Example VI.--"Summer Longings"--First Two of Five Stanzas.

"Ah! my | heart is | ever | waiting, Waiting | for the | May,-- Waiting | for the | pleasant | rambles Where the |
fragrant | hawthorn | brambles, With the | woodbine | alter | -nating, Scent the | dewy | way. Ah! my | heart is |
weary | waiting, Waiting | for the | May.

Ah! my | heart is | sick with | longing, Longing | for the | May,-- Longing | to e | -scape from | study, To the |
young face | fair and | ruddy, And the | thousand | charms be | -longing To the | Summer's | day. Ah! my | heart
is | sick with | longing, Longing | for the | May." "D. F. M. C.:" *Dublin University Magazine; Liberator, No.*
952.

MEASURE VII.--TROCHAIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

Example I.--Three Short Excerpts.

1.

"My flocks | feed not, My ewes | breed not, My rams | speed not, All is | *amiss*: Love's de | -nying, Faith's de |
-fying, Heart's re | -nying, Causer | *of this*."

2.

"In black | mourn I, All fears | scorn I, Love hath | lorn me, Living | *in thrall*: Heart is | bleeding, All help |
needing. (Cruel | speeding,) Fraughted | *with gall*."

3.

"Clear wells | spring not. Sweet birds | sing not, Loud bells | ring not *Cheerfully*; Herds stand | weeping,
Flocks all | sleeping, Nymphs back | creeping *Fearfully*." SHAKSPEARE: *The Passionate Pilgrim*. See Sec.
xv.

Example II.--Specimen with Single Rhyme.

"To Quinbus Flestrin, the Man-Mountain"

A LILLIPUTIAN ODE

I.

"In a | -maze, Lost, I | gaze. Can our | eyes Reach thy | size? May my | lays Swell with | praise, Worthy | thee,
Worthy | me! Muse, in | -spire All thy | fire! Bards of | old Of him | told, When they | said Atlas' | head Propp'd
the | skies: See! and | *believe | your eyes!*

II.

"See him | stride Valleys | wide: Over | woods, Over | floods, When he | treads, Mountains' | heads Groan and |
shake: Armies | quake, Lest his | spurn Over | -turn Man and | steed: Troops, take | heed! Left and | right Speed
your | flight! Lest an | host *Beneath | his foot | be lost*.

III.

"Turn'd a | -side From his | hide, Safe from | wound, Darts re | -bound. From his | nose, Clouds he | blows;

When he | speaks, Thunder | breaks! When he | eats, Famine | threats! When he | drinks, Neptune | shrinks!
Nigh thy | ear, In mid | air, On thy | hand, Let me | stand. So shall | I (Lofty | poet!) touch the sky." JOHN
GAY: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 376.

Example III.--Two Feet with Four.

"Oh, the | pleasing, | pleasing | anguish, When we | love, and | when we | languish! Wishes | rising! Thoughts
sur | -prising! Pleasure | courting! Charms trans | -porting! Fancy | viewing Joys en | -suing! Oh, the | pleasing,
| pleasing | anguish!" ADDISON'S *Rosamond*, Act i, Scene 6.

Example IV.--Lines of Three Syllables with Longer Metres.

1. WITH TROCHAICS.

"Or we | sometimes | pass an | hour Under | a green | willow, That de | -fends us | from the | shower, Making |
earth our | pillow; Where we | may Think and | pray, B=e'fore | death Stops our | breath: Other | joys, Are but |
toys, And to | be la | -mented." [515]

2. WITH IAMBICS.

"What sounds | were heard, What scenes | appear'd, O'er all | the drear | -y coasts! Dreadful | gleams, Dismal |
screams, Fires that | glow, Shrieks of | wo, Sullen | moans, Hollow | groans, And cries | of tor | -tur'd ghosts!"
POPE: *Johnson's Brit. Poets*, Vol. vi, p. 315.

Example V.--"The Shower."--In Four Regular Stanzas.

1.

"In a | valley | that I | know-- Happy | scene! There are | meadows | sloping | low, There the | fairest | flowers |
blow, And the | brightest | waters | flow. All se | -rene; But the | sweetest | thing to | see, If you | ask the |
dripping | tree, Or the | harvest | -hoping | swain, Is the | Rain.

2.

Ah, the | dwellers | of the | town, How they | sigh,-- How un | -grateful | -ly they | frown, When the |
cloud-king | shakes his | crown, And the | pearls come | pouring | down From the | sky! They de | -s cry no |
charm at | all Where the | sparkling | jewels | fall, And each | moment | of the | shower, Seems an | hour!

3.

Yet there's | something | very | sweet In the | sight, When the | crystal | currents | meet In the | dry and | dusty |
street, And they | wrestle | with the | heat, In their | might! While they | seem to | hold a | talk With the | stones
a | -long the | walk, And re | -mind them | of the | rule, To 'keep | cool!"

4.

Ay, but | in that | quiet | dell, Ever | fair, Still the | Lord doth | all things | well, When his | clouds with |
blessings | swell, And they | break a | brimming | shell On the | air; There the | shower | hath its | charms,
Sweet and | welcome | to the | farms As they | listen | to its | voice, And re | -joice!" Rev. RALPH HOYT'S
Poems: The Examiner, Nov. 6, 1847.

Example VI.--"A Good Name?"--Two Beautiful Little Stanzas.

1.

"Children, I choose it, Don't re-l-fuse it, 'Tis a I precious I dia I -dem; Highly I prize it, Don't de-l-spise it, You will I need it I when you're I men.

2.

Love and I cherish, Keep and I nourish, 'Tis more I precious I far than I gold; Watch and I guard it, Don't dis I -card it, You will I need it I when you're I old." *The Family Christian Almanac, for 1850, p. 20.*

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Trochaics of two feet, like those of three, are, more frequently than otherwise, found in connexion with longer lines, as in some of the examples above cited. The trochaic line of three syllables, which our prosodists in general describe as consisting, not of two feet; but "of one Trochee and a long syllable," may, when it stands alone, be supposed to consist of one *amphimac*; but, since this species of foot is not admitted by all, and is reckoned a secondary one by those who do admit it, the better practice is, to divide even the three syllables into two feet, as above.

OBS. 2.--Murray, Hart, Weld, and many others, erroneously affirm, that, "The *shortest* Trochaic verse in our language, consists of one Trochee and a long syllable."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 256; *Hart's, First Edition*, p. 186; *Weld's, Second Edition*, p. 210. The error of this will be shown by examples below--examples of *true "Trochaic Monometer,"* and not of Dimeter mistaken for it, like Weld's, Hart's, or Murray's.

OBS. 3.--These authors also aver, that, "This measure is *defective in dignity*, and can seldom be used on serious occasions."--*Same places*. "Trochaic of *two feet*--is likewise so *brief*, that," in their opinion, "it is rarely used for any very serious purpose."--*Same places*. Whether the expression of love, or of its disappointment, is "any very serious purpose" or not, I leave to the decision of the reader. What lack of dignity or seriousness there is, in several of the foregoing examples, especially the last two, I think it not easy to discover.

MEASURE VIII.--TROCHAIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

Examples with Longer Metres.

1. WITH IAMBICS.

"Fr~om w=alk I t~o w=alk, I fr~om sh=ade I t~o sh=ade, From stream to purl I -ing stream I convey'd, Through all I the ma I -zes of I the grove, Through all I the ming I -ling tracks I I rove, Turning, Burning, Changing, Ranging, F=ull ~of I gri=ef ~and I f=ull ~of I l=ove." ADDISON'S *Rosamond*, Act I, Sc. 4: *Everett's Versification*, p. 81.

2. WITH ANAPESTICS, &c.

"T~o l=ove ~and t~o l=angu~ish, T~o s=igh I ~and c~ompl=ain, H~ow cr=u~el's th~e =angu~ish! H~ow t~orm=ent I ~ing th~e p=ain! Suing, Pursuing, Flying, Denying, O the curse I of disdain! How torment I -ing's the pain!" GEO. GRANVILLE: *Br. Poets*, Vol. v, p. 31.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The metres acknowledged in our ordinary schemes of prosody, scarcely amount, with all their "boundless variety," to more than one half, or three quarters, of what may be found in *actual use* somewhere.

Among the foregoing examples, are some which are longer, and some which are shorter, than what are commonly known to our grammarians; and some, also, which seem easily practicable, though perhaps not so easily quotable. This last trochaic metre, so far as I know, has not been used alone,--that is, without longer lines,--except where grammarians so set examples of it in their prosodies.

OBS. 2.--"Trochaic of One foot," as well as "Iambic of One foot," was, I believe, first recognized, prosodically, in Brown's Institutes of English Grammar, a work first published in 1823. Since that time, both have obtained acknowledgement in sundry schemes of versification, contained in the new grammars; as in Farnum's, and Hallock's, of 1842; in Pardon Davis's, of 1845; in S. W. Clark's, and S. S. Greene's, of 1848; in Professor Fowler's, of 1850. Wells, in his School Grammar, of 1846, and D. C. Allen, in an other, of 1847, give to the *length of lines* a laxity positively absurd: "*Rhymed verses*," say they, "may consist of *any number* of syllables."--Wells, 1st Ed., p. 187; late Ed., 204; Allen, p. 88. Everett has recognized "*The line of a single Trochee*," though he repudiates some long measures that are much more extensively authorized.

ORDER III.--ANAPESTIC VERSE.

In full Anapestic verse, the stress is laid on every third syllable, the first two syllables of each foot being short. The first foot of an anapestic line, may be an iambus. This is the most frequent diversification of the order. But, as a diversification, it is, of course, not *regular* or *uniform*. The stated or uniform adoption of the iambus for a part of each line, and of the anapest for the residue of it, produces verse of the *Composite Order*. As the anapest ends with a long syllable, its rhymes are naturally single; and a short syllable after this, producing double rhyme, is, of course, supernumerary: so are the two, when the rhyme is triple. Some prosodists suppose, a surplus at the end of a line may compensate for a deficiency at the beginning of the next line; but this I judge to be an error, or at least the indulgence of a questionable license. The following passage has two examples of what may have been *meant* for such compensation, the author having used a dash where I have inserted what seems to be a necessary word:--

"Apol | -lo smil'd shrewd | -ly, and bade | him sit down, With 'Well, | Mr. Scott, | you have man | -aged the town; Now pray, | copy less-- | have a lit | -tle temer | --it~y-- [And] Try | if you can't | also man | -age poster | -ity. [For] All | you add now | only les | -sens your cred | -it; And how | could you think, | too, of tak | -ing to ed | -ite?" LEIGH HUNT'S *Feast of the Poets*, page 20.

The anapestic measures are few; because their feet are long, and no poet has chosen to set a great many in a line. Possibly lines of five anapests, or of four and an initial iambus, might be written; for these would scarcely equal in length some of the iambs and trochaics already exhibited. But I do not find any examples of such metre. The longest anapestics that have gained my notice, are of fourteen syllables, being tetrameters with triple rhyme, or lines of four anapests and two short surplus syllables. This order consists therefore of measures reducible to the following heads:--

MEASURE I.--ANAPESTIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

Example I.--A "Postscript."--An Example with Hypermeter.

"Lean Tom, | when I saw | him, last week, | on his *horse* | awry, Threaten'd loud | -ly to turn | me to stone | with his *sor* | -cery. But, I think, | little Dan, | that, in spite | of what *our* | foe says, He will find | I read Ov | -id and his | Metamor | -phoses. For, omit | -ting the first, | (where I make | a compar | -ison, With a sort | of allu | -sion to Put | -land or *Har* | -rison,) Yet, by | my descrip | -tion, you'll find | he in *short* | is A pack | and a gar | -ran, a top | and a *tor* | -toise. So I hope | from hencefor | -ward you ne'er | will ask, *can* | I maul This teas | -ing, conceit | -ed, rude, in | -solent *an* | -imal? And, if | this rebuke | might be turn'd | to his *ben* | -efit, (For I pit | -y the man,) | I should | be glad *then* | of it" SWIFT'S POEMS: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. v, p. 324.

Example II.--"The Feast of the Poets."--First Twelve Lines.

"T' other day, | as Apol | -lo sat pitch | -ing his darts Through the clouds | of Novem | -ber, by fits | and by starts, He began | to consid | -er how long | it had been Since the bards | of Old Eng | -land had all | been rung in. 'I think,' | said the god, | recollect | -ing, (and then He fell twid | -dling a sun | -beam as I | may my pen,) 'I think-- | let me see-- | yes, it is, | I declare, As long | ago now | as that Buck | -ingham there; And yet | I can't see | why I've been | so remiss, Unless | it may be-- | and it cer | -tainly is, That since Dry | -den's fine ver | -ses and Mil | -ton's sublime, I have fair | -ly been sick | of their sing | -song and rhyme.'" LEIGH HUNT: *Poems*, New-York Edition, of 1814.

Example III.--The Crowning of Four Favourites.

"Then, 'Come,' | cried the god | in his el | -egant mirth, 'Let us make | us a heav'n | of our own | upon earth, And wake, | with the lips | that we dip | in our bowls, That divin | -est of mu | -sic--conge | -nial souls.' So say | -ing, he led | through the din | -ing-room door, And, seat | -ing the po | -ets, cried, 'Lau | -rels for four!' No soon | -er demand | -ed, than, lo! | they were there, And each | of the bards | had a wreath | in his hair. Tom Camp | -bell's with wil | -low and pop | -lar was twin'd, And South | -ey's, with moun | -tain-ash, pluck'd | in the wind; And Scott's, | with a heath | from his old | garden stores, And, with vine | -leaves and jump | -up-and-kiss | -me, Tom Moore's." LEIGH HUNT: from line 330 to line 342.

Example IV.--"Glenara."--First Two of Eight Stanzas.

"O heard | ye yon pi | -broch sound sad | in the gale, Where a band | cometh slow | -ly with weep | -ing and wail! 'Tis the chief | of Glena | -ra laments | for his dear; And her sire, | and the peo | -ple, are called | to her bier.

Glena | -ra came first | with the mourn | -ers and shroud; Her kins | -men, they fol | -lowed, but mourned | not aloud; Their plaids | all their bo | -soms were fold | -ed around; They marched | all in si | -lence--they looked | on the ground." T. CAMPBELL'S *Poetical Works*, p. 105.

Example V.--"Lochiel's Warning."--Ten Lines from Eighty-six.

"'Tis the sun | -set of life | gives me mys | -tical lore, And com | -ing events | cast their shad | -ows before. I tell | thee, Cullo | -den's dread ech | -oes shall ring With the blood | -hounds that bark | for thy fu | -gitive king. Lo! anoint | -ed by Heav'n | with the vi | -als of wrath, Behold, | where he flies | on his des | -olate path! Now, in dark | -ness and bil | -lows he sweeps | from my sight; Rise! rise! | ye wild tem | -pests, and cov | -er his flight! 'Tis fin | -ished. Their thun | -ders are hushed | on the moors; Cullo | -den is lost, | and my coun | -try deplores."--*Ib.*, p. 89.

Example VI.--"The Exile of Erin."--The First of Five Stanzas.

"There came | to the beach | a poor Ex | -ile of E | -r~in, The dew | on his thin | robe was heav | -y and chill; For his coun | -try he sighed, | when at twi | -light repair | ~ing To wan | -der alone | by the wind | -beaten hill. But the day | -star attract | -ed his eye's | sad devo | -t~ion, For it rose | o'er his own | native isle | of the o | -c~ean, Where once, | in the fire | of his youth | -ful emo | t~ion, He sang | the bold an | -them of E | -rin go bragh."--*Ib.*, p. 116.

Example VII.--"The Poplar Field."

"The pop | -lars are fell'd, | farewell | to the shade, And the whis | -pering sound | of the cool | colonnade; The winds | play no lon | -ger and sing | in the leaves, Nor Ouse | on his bo | -som their im | -age receives. Twelve years | have elaps'd, | since I last | took a view Of my fa | -vourite field, | and the bank | where they grew; And now | in the grass | behold | they are laid, And the tree | is my seat | that once lent | me a shade. The black | -bird has fled | to anoth | -er retreat, Where the ha | -zels afford | him a screen | from the heat, And the scene, |

where his mel | -ody charm'd | me before, *Resounds* | with his sweet | -flowing dit | -ty no more. *My fu* | -gitive years | are all hast | -ing away, *And I* | must ere long | lie as low | -ly as they, With a turf | on my breast, | and a stone | at my head, Ere anoth | -er such grove | shall arise | in its stead. 'Tis a sight | to engage | me, if an | -y thing can, *To muse* | on the per | -ishing pleas | -ures of man; Though his life | be a dream, | his enjoy | -ments, I see, Have a be | -ing less dur | -able e | -ven than he." COWPER'S *Poems*, Vol. i, p. 257.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Everett avers, that, "The purely Anapestic measure is more easily constructed than the Trochee, [Trochaic,] and of much more frequent occurrence."--*English Versification*, p. 97. Both parts of this assertion are at least very questionable; and so are this author's other suggestions, that, "The Anapest is [necessarily] the vehicle of *gayety and joy*;" that, "Whenever this measure is employed in the treating of *sad* subjects, *the effect is destroyed*;" that, "Whoever should attempt to write an elegy in this measure, would be *sure to fail*;" that, "The words might express grief, but the measure *would express joy*;" that, "The Anapest should never be employed throughout a *long piece*;" because "buoyancy of spirits can never be supposed to last,"--"sadness *never leaves us*, BUT joy remains but for a moment;" and, again, because, "the measure is *exceedingly monotonous*."--*Ibid.*, pp. 97 and 98.

OBS. 2.--Most anapestic poetry, so far as I know, is in pieces of no great length; but Leigh Hunt's "Feast of the Poets," which is thrice cited above, though not a long *poem*, may certainly be regarded as "*a long piece*," since it extends through fifteen pages, and contains four hundred and thirty-one lines, all, or nearly all, of anapestic tetrameter. And, surely, no poet had ever more need of a metre well suited to his purpose, than he, who, intending a critical as well as a descriptive poem, has found so much fault with the versification of others. Pope, as a versifier, was regarded by this author, "not only as no master of his art, but as a very indifferent practiser."--*Notes on the Feast of the Poets*, p. 35. His "*monotonous and cloying*" use of numbers, with that of Darwin, Goldsmith, Johnson, Haley, and others of the same "school," is alleged to have wrought a general corruption of taste in respect to versification--a fashion that has prevailed, not temporarily,

"*But ever since Pope spoil'd the ears of the town With his cuckoo-song verses, half up and half down*"--*Ib.*

OBS. 3.--Excessive monotony is thus charged by one critic upon all verse of "the purely Anapestic measure;" and, by an other, the same fault is alleged in general terms against all the poetry "of the school of Pope," well-nigh the whole of which is iambic. The defect is probably in either case, at least half imaginary; and, as for the inherent joyousness of anapestics, that is perhaps not less ideal. Father Humphrey says, "Anapæstic and amphibrachic verse, being similar in measure and movement, are pleasing to the ear, and well adapted to cheerful and humorous compositions; and *sometimes to elegiac compositions*, and subjects important and solemn."--*Humphrey's English Prosody*, p. 17.

OBS. 4.--The anapest, the dactyl, and the amphibrach, have this in common,--that each, with one long syllable, takes two short ones. Hence there is a degree of similarity in their rhythms, or in their several effects upon the ear; and consequently lines of each order, (or of any two, if the amphibrachic be accounted a separate order,) are sometimes commingled. But the propriety of acknowledging an order of "*Amphibrachic verse*," as does Humphrey, is more than doubtful; because, by so doing, we not only recognize the amphibrach as one of the principal feet, but make a vast number of lines ambiguous in their scansion. For our Amphibrachic order will be *made up* of lines that are commonly scanned as anapestics--such anapestics as are diversified by an iambus at the beginning, and sometimes also by a surplus short syllable at the end; as in the following verses, better divided as in the sixth example above:--

"Th~ere c=ame t~o | th~e b=each ~a | p~oor Ex~ile | ~of Er~in The dew on | his thin robe | was heavy | and chill: F~or h~is co~un | ~tr~y h~e s~ighed, | wh~en ~at tw~i | ~l~ight r~ep~air | ~ing To wander | alone by | the wind-beat | ~en hill."

MEASURE II.--ANAPÆSTIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

Example I.--"Alexander Selkirk."--First Two Stanzas.

I.

"I am mon | -arch of all | I survey, My right | there is none | to dispute; From the cen | -tre all round | to the sea,
I am lord | of the fowl | and the brute. O Sol | -itude! where | are the charms That sa | -ges have seen | in thy
face? Better dwell | in the midst | of alarms, Than reign | in this hor | -rible place.

II.

I am out | of human | -ity's reach, I must fin | -ish my jour | -ney alone, Never hear | the sweet mu | -sic of
speech, I start | at the sound | of my own. The beasts | that roam o | -ver the plain, My form | with indif |
-ference see; They are so | unacquaint | -ed with man, Their tame | -ness is shock | -ing to me." COWPER'S
Poems, Vol. i, p. 199.

Example II.--"Catharina."--Two Stanzas from Seven.

IV.

"Though the pleas | -ures of Lon | -don exceed In num | -ber the days | of the year, Cathari | -na, did noth | -ing
impede, Would feel | herself hap | -pier here; For the close | -woven arch | -es of limes On the banks | of our
riv | -er, I know, Are sweet | -er to her | many times Than aught | that the cit | -y can show.

V.

So it is, | when the mind | is endued With a well | -judging taste | from above; Then, wheth | -er embel | -lish'd
or rude, 'Tis na | -ture alone | that we love. The achieve | -ments of art | may amuse, May e | -ven our won |
-der excite, But groves, | hills, and val | -leys, diffuse A last | -ing, a sa | -cred delight." COWPER'S *Poems*,
Vol. ii, p. 232.

Example III.--"A Pastoral Ballad."--Two Stanzas from Twenty-seven.

(8.)

"Not a pine | in my grove | is there seen, But with ten | -drils of wood | -bine is bound; Not a beech | 's more
beau | -tiful green, But a sweet | -briar twines | it around, Not my fields | in the prime | of the year More
charms | than my cat | -tle unfold; Not a brook | that is lim | -pid and clear, But it glit | -ters with fish | -es of
gold.

(9)

One would think | she might like | to retire To the bow'r | I have la | -bour'd to rear; Not a shrub | that I heard |
her admire, But I hast | -ed and plant | -ed it there. O how sud | -den the jes | -samine strove With the li | -lac to
ren | -der it gay! Alread | -y it calls | for my love, To prune | the wild branch | -es away." SHENSTONE:
British Poets, Vol. vii, p. 139.

Anapæstic lines of four feet and of three are sometimes alternated in a stanza, as in the following instance:--

Example IV.--"The Rose."

"The rose | had been wash'd, | just wash'd | in a show'r, Which Ma | -ry to An | -na convey'd; The plen | -tiful moist | -ure encum | -ber'd the flow'r, And weigh'd | down its beau | -tiful head.

The cup | was all fill'd, | and the leaves | were all wet, And it seem'd | to a fan | -ciful view, To weep | for the buds | it had left, | with regret, On the flour | -ishing bush | where it grew.

I hast | -ily seized | it, unfit | as it was For a nose | -gay, so drip | -ping and drown'd, And, swing | -ing it rude | -ly, too rude | -ly, alas! I snapp'd | it,--it fell | to the ground.

And such, | I exclaim'd, | is the pit | -iless part Some act | by the del | -icate mind, Regard | -less of wring | -ing and break | -ing a heart Ahead | -y to sor | -row resign'd.

This el | -egant rose, | had I shak | -en it less, Might have bloom'd | with its own | -er a while; And the tear | that is wip'd | with a lit | -tle address, May be fol | -low'd perhaps | by a smile." COWPER: *Poems*, Vol. i, p. 216; *English Reader*, p. 212.

MEASURE III.--ANAPESTIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

Example I.--Lines with Hypermeter and Double Rhyme.

"CORONACH," OR FUNERAL SONG.

1.

"He is gone | on the mount | -a~in He is lost | to the for | --est Like a sum | -mer-dried foun | -ta~in When our need | was the sor | --est. The font, | reappear | --ing, From the rain | -drops shall bor | -r~ow, But to us | comes no cheer | --ing, Do Dun | -can no mor | -r~ow!

2.

The hand | of the reap | --er Takes the ears | that are hoar | --y, But the voice | of the weep | --er Wails man | -hood in glo | -r~y; The au | -tumn winds rush | --ing, Waft the leaves | that are sear | --est, But our flow'r | was in flush | --ing, When blight | -ing was near | --est." WALTER SCOTT: *Lady of the Lake*, Canto iii, St. 16.

Example II.--Exact Lines of Two Anapests.

"Prithee, Cu | -pid, no more Hurl thy darts | at threescore; To thy girls | and thy boys, Give thy pains | and thy joys; Let Sir Trust | -y and me From thy fro | -lics be free." ADDISON: *Rosamond*, Act ii, Scene 2; *Ev. Versif.*, p. 100.

Example III--An Ode, from the French of Malherbe.

"This An | -na so fair, So talk'd | of by fame, Why dont | she appear? Indeed, | she's to blame! Lewis sighs | for the sake Of her charms, | as they say; What excuse | can she make For not com | -ing away? If he does | not possess, He dies | with despair; Let's give | him redress, And go find | out the fair"

"Cette Anne si belle, Qu'on vante si fort, Pourquoi ne vient elle? Vraiment, elle a tort! Son Louis soupire, Après ses appas; Que veut elle dire, Qu'elle ne vient pas? S'il ne la possède, Il s'en va mourir; Donnons y remède, Allons la guérir." WILLIAM KING, LL. D.: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. iii, p. 590.

Example IV.--'Tis the Last Rose of Summer.

1.

"'Tis the last | rose of sum | -*m~er*, Left bloom | -ing alone; All her love | -ly compan | -*i~ons* Are fad | -ed and gone; No flow'r | of her kin | -*dr~ed*, No rose | -bud is nigh, To give | back her blush | -*~es*, Or give | sigh for sigh.

2.

I'll not leave | thee, thou lone | ~*one*! To pine | on the stem! Since the love | -ly are sleep | -*~ing*, Go, sleep | thou with them; Thus kind | -ly I scat | -*t~er* Thy leaves | o'er thy bed, Where thy mates | of the gar | -*d~en* Lie scent | -less and dead.

3.

So, soon | may I fol | -*l~ow*, When friend | -ships decay, And, from love's | shining cir | -*cl~e*, The gems | drop away; When true | hearts lie with | -*~er'd*, And fond | ones are flown, Oh! who | would inhab | -*it* This bleak | world alone ?" T. MOORE: *Melodies, Songs, and Airs*, p. 171.

Example V.--Nemesis Calling up the Dead Astarte.

"Shadow! | or spir | -*~it*! Whatev | -er thou art, Which still | doth inher | -*~it* The whole | or a part Of the form | of thy birth, Of the mould | of thy clay, Which return'd | to the earth, Re-appear | to the day! Bear what | thou bor | -*~est*, The heart | and the form, And the as | -pect thou wor | -*~est* Redeem | from the worm! Appear!--Appear!--Appear!" LORD BYRON: *Manfred*, Act ii, Sc. 4.

Example VI.--Anapestic Dimeter with Trimeter.

FIRST VOICE.

"Make room | for the com | -bat, make room; Sound the trum | -pet and drum; A fair | -er than Ve | -nus prepares To encoun | -ter a great | -er than Mars. Make room | for the com | -bat, make room; Sound the trum | -pet and drum."

SECOND VOICE.

"Give the word | to begin, Let the com | -batants in, The chal | -lenger en | -ters all *glo* | *r~io~us*; But Love | has decreed, Though Beau | -ty may bleed, Yet Beau | -ty shall still | be victo | *r~io~us*." GEORGE GRANVILLE: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. v, p. 58.

Example VII.--Anapestic Dimeter with Tetrameter.

AIR.

"Let the pipe's | merry notes | aid the skill | of the voice; For our wish | -es are crown'd, | and our hearts | shall rejoice. Rejoice, | and be glad; For, sure, | he is mad, Who, where mirth, | and good hum | -mour, and har | -mony's found, Never catch | -es the smile, | nor lets pleas | -ure go round. Let the stu | -pid be grave, 'Tis the vice | of the slave; But can nev | -er agree With a maid | -en like me, Who is born | in a coun | -try that's hap | -py and free." LLOYD: *Johnson's British Poets*, Vol. viii, p. 178.

MEASURE IV.--ANAPESTIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

This measure is rarely if ever used except in connexion with longer lines. The following example has six anapestics of two feet, and two of one; but the latter, being verses of double rhyme, have each a surplus short syllable; and four of the former commence with the iambus:--

Example I.--A Song in a Drama.

"Now, mor l-tal, prepare, For thy fate l is at hand; Now, mor l-tal, prepare, ~And s~urr=en l-d~er.

For Love l shall arise, Whom no pow'r l can withstand, Who rules l from the skies T~o th~e c=en l-tr~e."
GRANVILLE, VISCOUNT LANSDOWNE: *Joh. Brit. Poets*, Vol. v, p. 49.

The following extract, (which is most properly to be scanned as anapestic, though considerably diversified,) has two lines, each of which is pretty evidently composed of a single anapest:--

Example II.--A Chorus in the Same.

"Let trum l-pets and tym l-b~als, Let at~a l--bals and cym l-b~als, Let drums l and let haut l-boys give o l-v~er;
B~ut l~et fl=utes, And l~et l=utes Our pas l-sions excite To gent l-ler delight, And ev l-ery Mars l be a lov
l~er." *Ib.*, p. 56.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--That a single anapest, a single foot of any kind, or even a single long syllable, may be, and sometimes is, in certain rather uncommon instances, set as a line, is not to be denied. "Dr. Caustic," or T. G. Fessenden, in his satirical "Directions for *Doing Poetry*," uses in this manner the monosyllables, "*Whew*," "*Say*," and "*Dress*" and also the iambs, "*The gay*" and, "*All such*," rhyming them with something less isolated.

OBS. 2.--Many of our grammarians give anonymous examples of what they conceive to be "*Anapestic Monometer*," or "*the line of one anapest*," while others--(as Allen, Bullions, Churchill, and Hiley--) will have the length of two anapests to be the *shortest* measure of this order. Prof. Hart says, "The shortest anapestic verse is a *single* anapæst; as,

'~In =a sw=eet R~es~on=ance,

~All th~eir f=eet ~In th=e d=ance

~All th=e n=ight T~inkl~ed l=ight.'

This measure," it is added, "is, however, *ambiguous*; for by laying an accent on the first, as well as the third syllable, we may generally make it a trochaic."--*Hart's English Gram.*, p. 188. The same six versicles are used as an example by Prof. Fowler, who, without admitting any ambiguity in the measure, introduces them, rather solecistically, thus: "*Each of the following lines consist of a single Anapest.*"--*Fowler's E. Gram.*, 8vo, 1850, §694.

OBS. 3.--Verses of three syllables, with the second short, the last long, and the first *common, or variable*, are, it would seem, *doubly doubtful* in scansion; for, while the first syllable, if made short, gives us an anapest, to make it long, gives either an amphimac or what is virtually two trochees. For reasons of choice in the latter case, see Observation 1st on Trochaic Dimeter. For the *fixing of variable quantities*, since the case admits no other rule, regard should be had to the *analogy of the verse*, and also to the common principles of accentuation. It is doubtless possible to read the six short lines above, into the measure of so many *anapests*; but, since the two monosyllables "*In*" and "*All*" are as easily made long as short, whoever considers the common pronunciation of the longer words, "*Resonance*" and "*Tinkled*," may well doubt whether the learned

professors have, in this instance, hit upon the right mode of scansion. The example may quite as well be regarded either as Trochaic Dimeter, catalectic, or as Amphimacric Monometer, acatalectic. But the word *resonance*, being accented usually on the first syllable only, is naturally a *dactyl*; and, since the other five little verses end severally with a monosyllable, which *can* be varied in quantity, it is possible to read them all as being *dactylics*; and so the whole may be regarded as *trebly doubtful* with respect to the measure.

OBS. 4.--L. Murray says, "*The shortest anapæstic verse must be a single anapæst*; as,

B~ut ~in v=ain They complain."

And then he adds, "This measure is, however, ambiguous; for, by laying the stress of the voice on the first and third syllables, we *might make* a trochaic. *And therefore* the first and simplest form of our genuine Anapæstic verse, is made up of *two anapæsts*."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 257; 12mo, p. 207. This conclusion is utterly absurd, as well as completely contradictory to his first assertion. The genuineness of this small metre depends not at all on what may be made of the same words by other pronunciation; nor can it be a very natural reading of this passage, that gives to "*But*" and "*They*" such emphasis as will make them long.

OBS. 5.--Yet Chandler, in his improved grammar of 1847, has not failed to repeat the substance of all this absurdity and self-contradiction, carefully dressing it up in other language, thus: "Verses composed of single Anapæsts *are frequently found* in stanzas of songs; and the same is true of several of the other kinds of feet; *but we may consider the first* [i.e., shortest] *form* of anapæstic verse as consisting of *two* Anapæsts."--*Chandler's Common School Gram.*, p. 196.

OBS. 6.--Everett, speaking of anapestic lines, says, "The first and shortest of these is composed of a *single Anapest following an Iambus*."--*English Versification*, p. 99. This not only denies the existence of *Anapestic Monometer*, but improperly takes for the Anapestic verse what is, by the statement itself, half Iambic, and therefore of the Composite Order. But the false assertion is plainly refuted even by the author himself and on the same page. For, at the bottom of the page, he has this contradictory note: "It has been remarked (§15) that though the Iambus with an additional short syllable *is the shortest line that is known* to Iambic verse, *there are isolated instances of a single Iambus*, and even of a *single long syllable*. There are examples of *lines made up of a single Anapest*, as the following example will show:--

'Jove in his chair, Of the sky lord mayor, With his nods Men and gods Keeps in awe; When he winks, Heaven shrinks; * * * *

Cock of the school, He bears despotic rule; His word, Though absurd, Must be law. Even Fate, Though so great, Must not prate;

His bald pate Jove would cuff, He's so bluff, For a straw. Cowed deities, Like mice in cheese, To stir must cease Or gnaw.'

O'HARA:--*Midas*, Act i, Sc. 1."--*Everett's Versification*, p. 99

ORDER IV.--DACTYLIC VERSE.

In pure Dactylic verse, the stress is laid on the first syllable of each successive three; that is, on the first, the fourth, the seventh, and the tenth syllable of each line of four feet. Full dactylic generally forms triple rhyme. When one of the final short syllables is omitted, the rhyme is double; when both, single. These omissions are here essential to the formation of such rhymes. Dactylic with double rhyme, ends virtually with a *trochee*; dactylic with single rhyme, commonly ends with a *cæsura*; that is, with a long syllable taken for a foot. Dactylic with single rhyme is the same as anapestic would be without its initial short syllables. Dactylic verse is rather uncommon; and, when employed, is seldom perfectly pure and regular.

MEASURE I.--DACTYLIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

Example.--Nimrod.

Nimrod the | hunter was | mighty in | hunting, and | famed as the | ruler of | cities of | yore; Babel, and | Erech,
and | Accad, and | Calneh, from | Shinar's fair | region his | name afar | bore.

MEASURE II.--DACTYLIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

Example.--Christ's Kingdom.

Out of the | kingdom of | Christ shall be | gathered, by | angels o'er | Satan vic | -torious, All that of | fendeth,
that | lieth, that | faileth to | honour his | name ever | glorious.

MEASURE III.--DACTYLIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

Example I.--Time in Motion.

Time, thou art | ever in | motion, on | wheels of the | days, years, and | ages; Restless as | waves of the | ocean,
when | Eurus or | Boreas | rages.

Example II.--Where, is Grand-Pré?

"This is the | forest pri | -meval; but | where are the | hearts that be | -neath it Leap'd like the | roe, when he |
hears in the | woodland the | voice of the | huntsman? Where is the | thatch-rooféd | village, the | home of A |
-cadian | farmers?" H. W. LONGFELLOW: *Evangeline*, Part i, l. 7--9.

MEASURE IV.--DACTYLIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER.

Example.--Salutation to America.

"Land of the | beautiful, | beautiful, | land of the | free, Land of the | negro-slave, | negro-slave, | land of the |
chivalry, Often my | heart had turned, | heart had turned, | longing to | thee; Often had | mountain-side, |
mountain-side, | broad lake, and | stream, Gleamed on my | waking thought, | waking thought, | crowded my |
dream. Now thou dost | welcome me, | welcome me, | from the dark | sea, Land of the | beautiful, | beautiful, |
land of the | free, Land of the | negro-slave, | negro-slave, | land of the | chivalry."

MEASURE V.--DACTYLIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

Example I.--The Soldier's Wife.

"Weary way | wanderer, | languid and | sick at heart, Travelling | painfully | over the | rugged road,
Wild-visaged | Wanderer! | God help thee, | wretched one! Sorely thy | little one | drags by thee | barefooted;
Cold is the | baby that | hangs at thy | bending back, Meagre, and | livid, and | screaming for | misery.
Woe-begone | mother, half | anger, half | agony, Over thy | shoulder thou | lookest to | hush the babe, Bleakly
the | blinding snow | beats in thy | haggard face. Ne'er will thy | husband re | -turn from the | war again, Cold is
thy | heart, and as | frozen as | Charity! Cold are thy | children.--Now | God be thy | comforter!" ROBERT
SOUTHEY: *Poems*, Philad., 1843, p. 250.

Example II.--Boys.--A Dactylic Stanza.

"Boys will an | -ticipate, | lavish, and | dissipate All that your | busy pate | hoarded with | care; And, in their |

foolishness, | passion, and | mulishness, Charge you with | churlishness, | spurning your pray'r."

Example III.--"Labour."--The First of Five Stanzas.

"Pause not to | dream of the | future be | -fore us; Pause not to | weep the wild | cares that come | o'er us: Hark, how Cre | -ation's deep, | musical | chorus, Uninter | -mitting, goes | up into | Heaven! Never the | ocean-wave | falters in | flowing; Never the | little seed | stops in its | growing; More and more | richly the | rose-heart keeps | glowing, Till from its | nourishing | stem it is | riven." FRANCES S. OSGOOD: *Clapp's Pioneer*, p. 94.

Example IV.--"Boat Song."--First Stanza of Four.

"Hail to the | chief who in | triumph ad | -vances! Honour'd and | bless'd be the | ever-green | pine! Long may the | tree in his | banner that | glances, Flourish, the | shelter and | grace of our | line! Heaven send it happy dew, Earth lend it sap anew, Gayly to | burgeon, and | broadly to | grow, While ev'ry | Highland glen Sends our shout | back agen, 'Roderigh Vich Alpine Dhu, ho! ieroe!'" WALTER SCOTT: *Lady of the Lake*, C. ii, St. 19.

MEASURE VI.--DACTYLIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

Example.--To the Katydid.

"Ka-ty-did, | Ka-ty-did, | sweetly sing,-- Sing to thy | loving mates | near to thee; Summer is | come, and the | trees are green,-- Summer's glad | season so | dear to thee.

Cheerily, | cheerily, | insect, sing; Blithe be thy | notes in the | hickory; Every | bough shall an | answer ring, Sweeter than | trumpet of | victory."

MEASURE VII.--DACTYLIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

Example I.--The Bachelor.--Four Lines from Many.

"Free from sa | -tiety, Care, and anx | -iety, Charms in va | -riety, Fall to his | share."--ANON.: *Newspaper*.

Example II.--The Pibroch.--Sixteen Lines from Forty.

"Pibroch of | Donuil Dhu, Pibroch of | Donuil, Wake thy wild | voice anew. Summon Clan | -Conuil. Come away, | come away! Hark to the | summons! Come in your | war-array, Gentles and | commons!

"Come as the | winds come, when Forests are | rended; Come as the | waves come, when Navies are | stranded; Faster come, | faster come, Faster and | faster! Chief, vassal, | page, and groom, Tenant and | master."--W. SCOTT.

Example III.--"My Boy."

'There is even a happiness that makes the heart afraid.'--HOOD.

1. "One more new | claimant for Human fra | -ternity, Swelling the | flood that sweeps On to e | -ternity;

I who have | filled the cup, Tremble to | think of it; For, be it | what it may, I must yet | drink of it.

2. Room for him | into the Ranks of hu | -manity; Give him a | place in your Kingdom of | vanity! Welcome the | stranger with Kindly af | -fection; Hopefully, | trustfully, Not with de | l-jection.

3. See, in his | waywardness How his fist | doubles; Thus pugi | listical, Daring life's | troubles: Strange that the | neophyte Enters ex | istence In such an | attitude, Feigning re | sistance.
4. Could he but | have a glimpse Into fu | turity, Well might he | fight against Farther ma | turity; Yet does it | seem to me As if his | purity Were against | sinfulness Ample se | curity.
5. Incompre | hensible, Budding im | mortal, Thrust all a | mazedly Under life's | portal; Born to a | destiny Clouded in | mystery, Wisdom it | self cannot Guess at its | history.
6. Something too | much of this Timon-like | croaking; See his face | wrinkle now, Laughter pro | voking. Now he cries | lustily-- Bravo, my | hearty one! Lungs like an | orator Cheering his | party on.
7. Look how his | merry eyes Turn to me | pleadingly! Can we help | loving him-- Loving ex | ceedingly? Partly with | hopefulness, Partly with | fears, Mine, as I | look at him, Moisten with | tears.
8. Now then to | find a name;-- Where shall we | search for it? Turn to his | ancestry, Or to the | church for it? Shall we en | dow him with Title he | roic, After some | warrior, Poet, or | stoic?
9. One aunty | says he will Soon 'lisp in | numbers,' Turning his | thoughts to rhyme, E'en in his | slumbers; Watts rhymed in | babyhood, No blemish | spots his fame-- Christen him | even so: Young Mr. | Watts his name." ANONYMOUS: *Knickerbocker*, and *Newspapers*, 1849.

MEASURE VIII.--DACTYLIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

"Fearfully, Tearfully."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A single dactyl, set as a line, can scarcely be used otherwise than as part of a stanza, and in connexion with longer verses. The initial accent and triple rhyme make it necessary to have something else with it. Hence this short measure is much less common than the others, which are accented differently. Besides, the line of three syllables, as was noticed in the observations on Anapestic Monometer, is often peculiarly uncertain in regard to the measure which it should make. A little difference in the laying of emphasis or accent may, in many instances, change it from one species of verse to an other. Even what seems to be dactylic of two feet, if the last syllable be sufficiently lengthened to admit of single rhyme with the full metre, becomes somewhat doubtful in its scansion; because, in such case, the last foot maybe reckoned an *amphimac*, or *amphimacer*. Of this, the following stanzas from Barton's lines "to the Gallic Eagle," (or to Bonaparte on St. Helena,) though different from all the rest of the piece, may serve as a specimen:--

"Far from the | *battle's shock*, Fate hath fast | bound thee; Chain'd to the | *rugged rock*, Waves warring | round thee.

[Now, for] the | *trumpet's sound*, Sea-birds are | shrieking; Hoarse on thy | *rampart's bound*, Billows are | breaking."

OBS. 2.--This may be regarded as verse of the Composite Order; and, perhaps, more properly so, than as Dactylic with mere incidental variations. Lines like those in which the questionable foot is here *Italicized*, may be united with longer dactyls, and thus produce a stanza of great beauty and harmony. The following is a specimen. It is a song, written by I know not whom, but set to music by Dempster. The twelfth line is varied to a different measure.

"ADDRESS TO THE SKYLARK."

"Bird of the | wilderness, Blithesome and | cumberless, Light be thy | matin o'er | moorland and | lea; Emblem of | happiness, Blest is thy | dwelling-place; O! to a | bide in the | desert with | thee!

"Wild is thy | lay, and loud, Far on the | downy cloud; Love gives it | energy, | love gave it | birth: Where, on thy | dewy wing, Where art thou | journeying? Thy lay | is in heav | en, thy love | is on earth.

"O'er moor and | mountain green, O'er fell and | fountain sheen, O'er the red | streamer that | heralds the | day; Over the | cloudlet dim, Over the | rainbow's rim, Musical | cherub, hie, | hie thee a | way.

"Then, when the | gloamin comes, Low in the | heather blooms. Sweet will thy | welcome and | bed of love | be. Emblem of | happiness, Blest is thy | dwelling-place; O! to a | bide in the | desert with | thee!"

OBS. 3.--It is observed by Churchill, (*New Gram.*, p. 387,) that, "Shakspeare has used the dactyl, as appropriate to mournful occasions." The chief example which he cites, is the following:--

"Midnight, as | sist our moan, Help us to | sigh and groan Heavily, | heavily. Graves, yawn and | yield your dead, Till death be | uttered Heavily, | heavily."--*Much Ado*, V, 3

OBS. 4.--These six lines of Dactylic (or Composite) Dimeter are subjoined by the poet to four of Trochaic Tetrameter. There does not appear to me to be any particular adaptation of either measure to mournful subjects, more than to others; but later instances of this metre may be cited, in which such is the character of the topic treated. The following long example consists of lines of two feet, most of them dactylic only; but, of the seventy-six, there are twelve which *may* be otherwise divided, and as many more which *must* be, because they commence with a short syllable.

"THE BRIDGE OF SIGHS."--BY THOMAS HOOD.

"One more un | fortunate, Weary of | breath, Rashly im | portunate, Gone to her | death! Take her up | tenderly, Lift her with | care; Fashioned so | slenderly, Young, and so | fair!

Look at her | garments Clinging like | cerements, Whilst the wave | constantly Drips from her | clothing; Take her up | instantly, Loving, not | loathing.

Touch her not | scornfully; Think of her | mournfully, Gently, and | humanly; Not of the | stains of her: All that re | mains of her Now, is pure | womanly.

Make no deep | scrutiny Into her | mutiny, Rash and un | dutifull; Past all dis | honour, Death has left | on her Only the | beautiful.

Still, for all | slips of hers,-- One of Eve's | family,-- Wipe those poor | lips of hers, Oozing so | clammily. Loop up her | tresses, Escaped from the comb,-- Her fair auburn tresses; Whilst wonderment guesses, Where was her | home?

Who was her | father? Who was her | mother? Had she a | sister? Had she a | brother? Was there a | dearer one Yet, than all | other?

Alas, for the rarity Of Christian charity Under the | sun! O, it was | pitiful! Near a whole | city full, Home she had | none.

Sisterly, | brotherly, Fatherly, | motherly, Feelings had | changed; Love, by harsh levidence, Thrown from its leminence Even God's | providence Seeming e | stranged.

Where the lamps | quiver So far in the river, With many a light, From window and casement, From garret to basement, She stood, with amazement, Houseless, by | night.

The bleak wind of March Made her tremble and shiver; But not the dark arch, Or the black-flowing river: Mad from life's | history, Glad to death's | mystery, Swift to be | hurled,-- Anywhere, | anywhere, Out of the | world!

In she plung'd | boldly,-- No matter how coldly The rough | river ran,-- Over the | brink of it: Picture it, | think of it, Dissolute | man!" *Clapp's Pioneer*, p. 54.

OBS. 5.--As each of our principal feet,--the Iambus, the Trochee, the Anapest, and the Dactyl,--has always one, and only one long syllable; it should follow, that, in each of our principal orders of verse,--the Iambic, the Trochaic, the Anapestic, and the Dactylic,--any line, not diversified by a secondary foot, must be reckoned to contain just as many feet as long syllables. So, too, of the Amphibrach, and any line reckoned Amphibrachic. But it happens, that the common error by which single-rhymed Trochaics have so often been counted a foot *shorter* than they are, is also extended by some writers to single-rhymed Dactylics--the rhyming syllable, if long, being esteemed *supernumerary*! For example, three dactylic stanzas, in each of which a pentameter couplet is followed by a hexameter line, and this again by a heptameter, are introduced by Prof. Hart thus: "The *Dactylic Tetrameter, Pentameter, and Hexameter*, with the *additional or hypermeter syllable*, are all found combined in the following extraordinary specimen of versification. * * * This is the only specimen of Dactylic *hexameter* or even *pentameter* verse that the author recollects to have seen."

LAMENT OF ADAM.

"Glad was our | meeting: thy | glittering | bosom I | *heard*, Beating on | mine, like the | heart of a | timorous | *bird*; Bright were thine | eyes as the | stars, and their | glances were | radiant as | *gleams* Falling from | eyes of the | angels, when | singing by | Eden's pur | l-pureal | *streams*.

"Happy as | seraphs were | we, for we | wander'd a | *-lone*, Trembling with | passionate | thrills, when the | twilight had | *flown*: Even the | echo was | silent: our | kisses and | whispers of | *love* Languish'd un | -heard and un | -known, like the | breath of the | blossoming | buds of the | *grove*.

"Life hath its | pleasures, but | fading are | they as the | *flowers*; Sin hath its | sorrows, and | sadly we | turn'd from those | *bowers*; Bright were the | angels be | -hind with their | falchions of | heavenly | *flame*! Dark was the | desolate | desert be | -fore us, and | darker the | depth of our | *shame*!" --HENRY B. HIRST: *Hart's English Grammar*, p. 190.

OBS. 6.--Of Dactylic verse, our prosodists and grammarians in general have taken but very little notice; a majority of them appearing by their silence, to have been utterly ignorant of the whole species. By many, the dactyl is expressly set down as an inferior foot, which they imagine is used only for the occasional diversification of an iambic, trochaic, or anapestic line. Thus Everett: "It is *never used* except as a *secondary foot*, and then in the *first place* of the line."--*English Versification*, p. 122. On this order of verse, Lindley Murray bestowed only the following words: "The DACTYLIC measure being very uncommon, we shall give only one example of one species of it:--

Fr=om th~e l~ow pl=eas~ures ~of th=is f~all~en n=at~ure, Rise we to higher, &c."--*Gram.*, 12mo, p. 207; 8vo, p. 257.

Read this example with "*we rise*" for "*Rise we*," and all the poetry of it is gone! Humphrey says, "*Dactyle* verse is seldom used, as remarked heretofore; but *is used occasionally*, and has three metres; viz. of 2, 3, and 4 feet. Specimens follow. 2 feet. Free from anxiety. 3 feet. Singing most sweetly and merrily. 4 feet. Dactylic measures are wanting in energy."--*English Prosody*, p. 18. Here the prosodist has made his own examples; and the last one, which unjustly impeaches all dactylics, he has made very badly--very prosaically; for the

word "*Dactylic*," though it has three syllables, is properly no dactyl, but rather an amphibrach.

OBS. 7.--By the Rev. David Blair, this order of poetic numbers is utterly misconceived and misrepresented. He says of it, "DACTYLIC verse consists of a *short syllable*, with one, two, or three feet, *and a long syllable*; as,

'D~istr=act~ed w~ith w=oe, 'I'll r~ush ~on th~e f=oe.' ADDISON."--*Blair's Pract. Gram.*, p. 119.

"'Y~e sh~eph~erds s~o ch~eerf~ul ~and g=ay, 'Wh~ose fl~ocks n~ev~er c~arel~essl~y r~oam; 'Sh~ould C~or~yd~on's h~app~en t~o str~ay, 'Oh! c~all th~e p~oor w~and~er~ers h~ome.' SHENSTONE."--*Ib.*, p. 120.

It is manifest, that these lines are not dactylic at all. There is not a dactyl in them. They are composed of iambs and anapests. The order of the versification is Anapestic; but it is here varied by the very common diversification of dropping the first short syllable. The longer example is from a ballad of 216 lines, of which 99 are thus varied, and 117 are full anapestics.

OBS. 8.--The makers of school-books are quite as apt to copy blunders, as to originate them; and, when an error is once started in a grammar, as it passes with the user for good learning, no one can guess where it will stop. It seems worth while, therefore, in a work of this nature, to be liberal in the citation of such faults as have linked themselves, from time to time, with the several topics of our great subject. It is not probable, that the false scansion just criticised originated with Blair; for the Comprehensive Grammar, a British work, republished in its third edition, by Dobson, of Philadelphia, in 1789, teaches the same doctrine, thus: "Dactylic measure may consist of one, two, or three Dactyls, introduced by a feeble syllable, and terminated by a strong one; as,

M~y | d~ear Ir~ish | f~olks, C~ome | l~eave ~off y~our | j~okes, And | b~uy ~up m~y | h~alfp~ence s~o | f~ine; S~o | f~air ~and s~o | br~ight, Th~ey'll | g~ive y~ou d~e | l~ight: Ob | s~erve h~ow th~ey | gl~ist~er ~and | sh~ine. SWIFT.

A | c~obl~er th~ere | w~as ~and h~e | l~iv'd ~in ~a | st~all, Wh~ich | s~erv'd h~im f~or | k~itch~en, f~or | p~arl~our ~and | hall; N~o | c~oin ~in h~is | p~ock~et, n~o | c~are ~in h~is | p~ate; N~o ~am | b~it~ion h~e | h~ad, ~and n~o | d~uns ~at h~is | g~ate." --*Comp. Gram.*, p. 150.

To this, the author adds, "Dactylic measure becomes Anapestic by setting off an Iambic foot in the beginning of the line."--*Ib.* These verses, all but the last one, unquestionably have an iambic foot at the beginning; and, for that reason, they are not, and by no measurement can be, dactylics. The last one is purely anapestic. All the divisional bars, in either example, are placed wrong.

ORDER V.--COMPOSITE VERSE.

Composite verse is that which consists of various metres, or different feet, combined,--not accidentally, or promiscuously, but by design, and with some regularity. In Composite verse, of any form, the stress must be laid rhythmically, as in the simple orders, else the composition will be nothing better than unnatural prose. The possible variety of combinations in this sort of numbers is unlimited; but, the pure and simple kinds being generally preferred, any stated mixture of feet is comparatively uncommon. Certain forms which may be scanned by other methods, are susceptible also of division as Composites. Hence there cannot be an exact enumeration of the measures of this order, but instances, as they occur, may be cited to exemplify it.

Example I.--From Swift's Irish Feast.

"O'Rourke's | noble fare | will ne'er | be forgot, By those | who were there, | or those | who were not. His rev
l-els to keep, | we sup | and we dine On sev l-en score sheep, | fat bul l-locks, and swine. Usquebaugh | to our
feast | in pails | was brought up, An hun l-dred at least, | and a mad l-der our cup. O there | is the sport! | we
rise | with the light, In disor l-derly sort, | from snor l-ing all night. O how | was I trick'd! | my pipe | it was
broke, My pock l-et was pick'd, | I lost | my new cloak. I'm ri l-fled, quoth Nell, | of man l-tle and kerch l-er:
Why then | fare them well, | the de'il | take the search l-er." *Johnson's Works of the Poets*, Vol. v, p. 310.

Here the measure is tetrameter; and it seems to have been the design of the poet, that each hemistich should consist of one iamb and one anapest. Such, with a few exceptions, is the arrangement throughout the piece; but the hemistichs which have double rhyme, *may* each be divided into two amphibrachs. In Everett's *Versification*, at p. 100, the first six lines of this example are broken into twelve, and set in three stanzas, being given to exemplify "*The Line of a single Anapest preceded by an Iambus*," or what he improperly calls "*The first and shortest species of Anapestic lines*." His other instance of the same metre is also *Composite* verse, rather than Anapestic, even by his own showing. "In the following example," says he, "we have this measure alternating with Amphibrachic lines:"

Example II.--From Byron's Manfred.

"The Captive Usurper, Hurl'd down | from the throne. Lay buried in torpor, Forgotten and lone; I broke
through his slumbers, I shiv l-er'd his chain, I leagued him with numbers-- He's Ty l-rant again! With the
blood | of a mill l-ion he'll an l-swer my care, With a na l-tion's destruc l-tion--his flight | and despair." --Act ii,
Sc. 3.

Here the last two lines, which are not cited by Everett, are pure anapestic tetrameters; and it may be observed, that, if each two of the short lines were printed as one, the eight which are here scanned otherwise, would become four of the same sort, except that these would each begin with an iambus. Hence the specimen *sounds* essentially as anapestic verse.

Example III.--Woman on the Field of Battle.

"Gentle and | lovely form, What didst | thou here, When the fierce | battle storm Bore down | the spear?

Banner and | shiver'd crest, Beside | thee strown, Tell that a l-midst the best Thy work was done!

Low lies the | stately head, Earth-bound | the free: How gave those | haughty dead A place | to thee?

Slumb'rer! thine | early bier Friends should | have crown'd, Many a lflow'r and tear Shedding | around.

Soft voices, | dear and young, Mingling | their swell, Should o'er thy | dust have sung Earth's last | farewell.

Sisters a l-bove the grave Of thy | repose Should have bid | vi'lets wave With the | white rose.

Now must the | trumpet's note. Savage | and shrill, For requi'm | o'er thee float, Thou fair | and still!

And the swift | charger sweep, In full | career, Trampling thy | place of sleep-- Why cam'st | thou here?

Why?--Ask the | true heart why Woman | hath been Ever, where | brave men die, Unshrink l-ing seen.

Unto this | harvest ground, Proud reap l-ers came, Some for that | stirring sound, A warr l-ior's name:

Some for the | stormy play, And joy | of strife, And some to | fling away A wea l-ry life.

But thou, pale | sleeper, thou, With the | slight frame, And the rich | locks, whose glow Death can | not tame;
 Only one | thought, one pow'r, *Thee* could | have led, So through the | tempest's hour To lift | thy head!
 Only the | true, the strong, The love | whose trust Woman's deep | soul too long Pours on | the dust."

HEMANS: *Poetical Works*, Vol. ii, p. 157.

Here are fourteen stanzas of composite dimeter, each having two sorts of lines; the first sort consisting, with a few exceptions, of a dactyl and an amphimac; the second, mostly, of two iambs; but, in some instances, of a trochee and an iamb;--the latter being, in such a connexion, much the more harmonious and agreeable combination of quantities.

Example IV.--Airs from a "Serenata."

Air 1.

"Love sounds | the alarm, And fear | is a-fly~ing; When beau | ty's the prize, What mor | tal fears dy | ~ing? In
 defence | of my treas | ~ure, I'd bleed | at each vein; Without | her no pleas | ure; For life | is a pain."

Air 2.

"Consid | er, fond shep | h~erd, How fleet | ing's the pleas | ~ure, That flat | ters our hopes In pursuit | of the
 fair: The joys | that attend | ~it, By mo | ments we meas | ~ure; But life | is too lit | tle To meas | ure our care."

GAY'S POEMS: *Johnson's Works of the Poets*, Vol. vii, p. 378.

These verses are essentially either anapestic or amphibrachic. The anapest divides two of them in the middle; the amphibrach will so divide eight. But either division will give many iambs. By the present scansion, the *first foot* is an iamb in all of them but the two anapestics.

Example V.--"The Last Leaf."

1. "I saw | him once | before As he pass | ~ed by | the door, And again The pave | ment stones | resound As he
 tot | ters o'er | the ground With his cane.

2. They say | that in | his prime, Ere the prun | ing knife of Time Cut him down, Not a bet | ter man | was
 found By the cri | ler on | his round Through the town.

3. But now | he walks | the streets, And he looks | at all | he meets So forlorn; And he shakes | his fee | ble
 head, That it seems | as if | he said, They are gone.

4. The mos | sy mar | bles rest On the lips | that he | has press'd In their bloom; And the names | he lov'd | to
 hear Have been carv'd | for man | y a year On the tomb.

5. My grand | mamma | has said,-- Poor old La | dy! she | is dead Long ago,-- That he had | a Ro | man nose,
 And his cheek | was like | a rose In the snow.

6. But now | his nose | is thin, And it rests | upon | his chin Like a staff; And a crook | is in | his back And a
 mel | anchol | y crack In his laugh.

7. I know | it is | a sin For me [thus] | to sit | and grin At him here; But the old | three-cor | ner'd hat, And the

breech l-es, and l all that, Are so queer!

8. And if I l should live l to be The last leaf l upon l the tree In the spring,-- Let them smile, l as I l do now, At the old l forsak l-en bough Where I cling." OLIVER W. HOLMES: *The Pioneer*, 1843, p. 108.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Composite verse, especially if the lines be short, is peculiarly liable to uncertainty, and diversity of scansion; and that which does not always abide by one chosen order of quantities, can scarcely be found agreeable; it must be more apt to puzzle than to please the reader. The eight stanzas of this last example, have eight lines of *iambic trimeter*; and, since seven times in eight, this metre holds the first place in the stanza, it is a double fault, that one such line seems strayed from its proper position. It would be better to prefix the word *Now* to the fourth line, and to mend the forty-third thus:--

"And should l I live l to be"--

The trissyllabic feet of this piece, as I scan it, are numerous; being the sixteen short lines of monometer, and the twenty-four initial feet of the lines of seven syllables. Every one of the forty--(except the thirty-sixth, "*The last leaf*"--) begins with a monosyllable which may be varied in quantity; so that, with stress laid on this monosyllable, the foot becomes an *amphimac*; without such stress, an *anapest*.

OBS. 2.--I incline to read this piece as composed of iambs and anapests; but E. A. Poe, who has commended "the effective harmony of these lines," and called the example "an excellently well conceived and well managed specimen of versification," counts many syllables long, which such a reading makes short, and he also divides all but the iambics in a way quite different from mine, thus: "Let us scan the first stanza.

'I s=aw l h~im =once l b~ef=ore As h~e l p=ass~ed l b=y th~e l d=oor, And ~a- l g=ain

Th~e p=ave- l m~ent st=ones l r~es=ound As h~e l t=ott~ers l =o'er th~e l gr=ound W=ith h~is c=ane.'

This," says he, "is the general scansion of the poem. We have first three iambuses. The second line shifts the *rhythm* into the *trochaic*, giving us three trochees, with a cæsure equivalent, in this case, to a trochee. The third line is a trochee and equivalent cæsure."--POE'S NOTES UPON ENGLISH VERSE: *Pioneer*, p. 109. These quantities are the same as those by which the whole piece is made to consist of iambs and amphimacs.

OBS. 3.--In its *rhythmical effect* upon the ear, a supernumerary short syllable at the end of a line, may sometimes, perhaps, compensate for the want of such a syllable at the beginning of the next line, as may be seen in the fourth example above; but still it is unusual, and seems improper, to suppose such syllables to belong to the scansion of the subsequent line; for the division of lines, with their harmonic pauses, is greater than the division of feet, and implies that no foot can ever actually be split by it. Poe has suggested that the division into lines may be disregarded in scanning, and sometimes must be. He cites for an example the beginning of Byron's "*Bride of Abydos*,"--a passage which has been admired for its easy flow, and which, he says, has greatly puzzled those who have attempted to scan it. Regarding it as essentially anapestic tetrameter, yet as having some initial iambs, and the first and fifth lines dactylic, I shall here divide it accordingly, thus:--

"Kn=ow y~e th~e l l=and wh~ere th~e l c=ypr~ess ~and l m=yrtl~e Ar~e =em l -bl~ems ~of d=eeds l th~at ~are d=one l ~in th~eir cl=ime-- Where the rage l of the vul l -ture, the love l of the tur l -tle, Now melt l into soft l -ness, now mad l -den to crime? Know ye the l land of the l cedar and l vine. Where the flow'rs l ever blos l -som, the beams l ever shine, And the light l wings of Zeph l -yr, oppress'd l with perfume, Wax faint l o'er the gar l -dens of Gul l in her bloom? Where the cit l -ron and ol l -ive are fair l -est of fruit, And the voice l of the night l -ingale nev l -er is mute? Where the vir l -gins are soft as the ros l -es they twine, And all, l save the spir l -it of man, l is divine? 'Tis the land l of the East- l 't is the clime l of the Sun-- Can he smile l on such

deeds | as his chil | -dren have done? Oh, wild | as the ac | -cents of lov | -ers' farewell, Are the hearts | that they bear, | and the tales | that they tell."

OBS. 4.--These lines this ingenious prosodist divides not thus, but, throwing them together like prose unpunctuated, finds in them "a regular succession of *dactylic rhythms*, varied only at three points by equivalent *spondees*, and separated into two distinct divisions by equivalent terminating *cæsuras*." He imagines that, "By all who have ears--not over long--this will be acknowledged as the true and the sole true scansion."--E. A. Poe: *Pioneer*, p. 107. So it may, for aught I know; but, having dared to show there is another way quite as simple and plain, and less objectionable, I submit both to the judgement of the reader:--

"Kn=ow y~e th~e | l=and wh~ere th~e | c=ypr~ess ~and | m=yrtl~e ~are | =embl~ems ~of | d=eeds th~at ~are | d=one ~in th~eir | cl=ime wh~ere th~e | r=age ~of th~e | v=ult~ure th~e | l=ove ~of th~e | t=urtl~e n~ow | m=elt ~int~o | s=oftn~ess n~ow | madd~en t~o | *crime*. Kn=ow y~e th~e | l=and ~of th~e | c=ed~ar ~and | v=ine wh~ere th~e | fl=ow'rs ~ev~er | bl=oss~om th~e | b=eams ~ev~er | sh=ine wh~ere th~e | l=ight w~ings ~of | z=eph=yr ~op | -pr=ess'd w~ith p~er | -f=ume w=ax | f=aint ~o'er th~e | g=ard~ens ~of | G=ul ~in h~er | bl=oom wh~ere th~e | c=itr~on ~and | =oli~ve ~are | f=air~est ~of | fr=uit ~and th~e | v=oice ~of th~e | n=ight~ing~ale | n=ev~er ~is | m=ute wh~ere th~e | v=irg~ins ~are | s=oft ~as th~e | r=os~es th~ey | *tw=ine* =and | =all s~ave th~e | sp=ir~it ~of | m=an ~is d~i- | v=ine 't~is th~e | l=and ~of th~e | E=ast 't~is th~e | cl=im~e ~of th~e | S=un c~an h~e | sm=ile ~on s~uch | d=eeds ~as h~is | ch=ildr~en h~ave | *d~one* =oh w=ild ~as th~e | =acc~ents ~of | l=ov~ers' f~are- | w=ell ~are th~e | h=earts th~at th~ey | b=e=ar and th~e | t=ales th~at th~ey | *t=ell*."--*Ib*.

OBS. 5.--In the sum and proportion of their quantities, the anapest, the dactyl, and the amphibrach, are equal, each having two syllables short to one long; and, with two short quantities between two long ones, lines may be tolerably accordant in rhythm, though the order, at the commencement, be varied, and their number of syllables be not equal. Of the following sixteen lines, nine are pure anapestic tetrameters; one *may* be reckoned dactylic, but it may quite as well be said to have a trochee, an iambus, and two anapests or two amphimacs; one is a spondee and three anapests; and the rest *may* be scanned as amphibrachics ending with an iambus, but are more properly anapestics commencing with an iambus. Like the preceding example from Byron, they lack the uniformity of proper composites, and are rather to be regarded as anapestics irregularly diversified.

THE ALBATROSS.

"'Tis said the Albatross never rests."--*Buffon*.

"Wh~ere th~e f=ath | ~oml~ess w=aves | in magnif | -icence toss, H=omel~ess | ~and h=igh | soars the wild | Albatross; Unwea | -ried, undaunt | -ed, unshrink | -ing, alone, The o | -cean his em | -pire, the tem | -pest his throne. When the ter | -rible whirl | -wind raves wild | o'er the surge, And the hur | -ricane howls | out the mar | -iner's dirge, In thy glo | -ry thou spurn | -est the dark | -heaving sea, Pr=oud b=ird | of the o | -cean-world, home | -less and free. When the winds | are at rest, | and the sun | in his glow, And the glit | -tering tide | sleeps in beau | -ty below, In the pride | of thy pow | -er trium | -phant above, With thy mate | thou art hold | -ing thy rev | -els of love. Untir | -ed, unfet | -tered, unwatched, | unconfined, Be my spir | -it like thee, | in the world | of the mind; No lean | -ing for earth, | e'er to wea | -ry its flight, And fresh | as thy pin | -ions in re | -gions of light." SAMUEL DALY LANGTREE: *North American Reader*, p. 443.

OBS. 6.--It appears that the most noted measures of the Greek and Latin poets were not of any simple order, but either composites, or mixtures too various to be called composites. It is not to be denied, that we have much difficulty in reading them rhythmically, according to their stated feet and scansion; and so we should have, in reading our own language rhythmically, in any similar succession of feet. Noticing this in respect to the Latin Hexameter, or Heroic verse, Poe says, "Now the discrepancy in question is not observable in English metres; where the scansion coincides with the reading, *so far as the rhythm is concerned*--that is to say, if we

pay no attention to the *sense* of the passage. But these facts indicate *a radical difference* in the genius of the two languages, as regards their capacity for modulation. In truth, * * * the Latin is a far more *stately* tongue than our own. It is essentially spondaic; the English is as essentially dactylic."--*Pioneer*, p. 110. (See the marginal note in §3d. at Obs. 22d, above.) Notwithstanding this difference, discrepance, or difficulty, whatever it may be, some of our poets have, in a few instances, attempted imitations of certain Latin metres; which imitations it may be proper briefly to notice under the present head. The Greek or Latin Hexameter line has, of course, six feet, or pulsations. According to the Prosodies, the first four of these may be either dactyls or spondees; the fifth is always, or nearly always, a dactyl; and the sixth, or last, is always a spondee: as,

"L=ud~er~e | qu=æ v=el | -l=em c~al~a | -m=o p=er | -m=is~it ~a | -gr=est=i."--*Virg.*

"Inf=an- | d=um, R=e | -g=in~a, j~u | -b=es r~en~o | -v=ar~e d~o | -l=or=em."--*Id.*

Of this sort of verse, in English, somebody has framed the following very fair example:--

"M=an ~is ~a | c=ompl=ex, | c=omp=ound | c=omp=ost, | y=et ~is h~e | G=od-b=orn."

OBS. 7.--Of this species of versification, which may be called Mixed or Composite Hexameter, the most considerable specimen that I have seen in English, is Longfellow's *Evangeline*, a poem of one thousand three hundred and eighty-two of these long lines, or verses. This work has found admirers, and not a few; for, of these, nothing written by so distinguished a scholar could fail: but, surely, not many of the verses in question exhibit truly the feet of the ancient Hexameters; or, if they do, the ancients contented themselves with very imperfect rhythms, even in their noblest heroics. In short, I incline to the opinion of Poe, that, "Nothing less than the deservedly high reputation of Professor Longfellow, could have sufficed to give currency to his lines as to Greek Hexameters. In general, they are neither one thing nor another. Some few of them are dactylic verses--English dactyls. But do away with the division into lines, and the most astute critic would never have suspected them of any thing more than prose."--*Pioneer*, p. 111. The following are the last ten lines of the volume, with such a division into feet as the poet is presumed to have contemplated:--

"Still stands the | forest pri | -meval; but | under the | shade of its | branches Dwells an | -other | race, with | other | customs and | language. Only a | -long the | shore of the | mournful and | misty At | -lantic Linger a | few A | -cadian | peasants, whose | fathers from | exile Wandered | back to their | native | land to | die in its | bosom. In the | fisherman's | cot the | wheel and the | loom are still | busy; Maidens still | wear their | Norman | caps and their | kirtles of | homespun, And by the | evening | fire re | -peat E | -vangeline's story, While from its | rocky | caverns the | deep-voiced, | neighbouring | ocean Speaks, and in | accents dis | -consolate | answers the | wail of the | forest." HENRY W. LONGFELLOW: *Evangeline*, p. 162.

OBS. 8.--An other form of verse, common to the Greeks and Romans, which has sometimes been imitated--or, rather, which some writers have *attempted to imitate*--in English, is the line or stanza called Sapphic, from the inventress, Sappho, a Greek poetess. The Sapphic verse, according to Fabricius, Smetius, and all good authorities, has eleven syllables, making "five feet--the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees." The Sapphic stanza, or what is sometimes so called, consists of three Sapphic lines and an Adonian, or Adonic,--this last being a short line composed of "a dactyl and a spondee." Example from Horace:--

"=Int~e | -g=er v=i | -tæ, sc~el~e | -r=isqu~e | p=ur~us Non e | -get Mau | -ri jacu | -lis ne | -qu' arcu, Nec ven | -ena | -tis gravi | -dâ sa | -gittis, Fusce, pha | -retra."

To arrange eleven syllables in a line, and have half or more of them to form trochees, is no difficult matter; but, to find *rhythm* in the succession of "a trochee, a spondee, and a dactyl," as we read words, seems hardly practicable. Hence few are the English Sapphics, if there be any, which abide by the foregoing formulæ of quantities and feet. Those which I have seen, are generally, if not in every instance, susceptible of a more

natural scansion as being composed of trochees, with a dactyl, or some other foot of three syllables, at the *beginning* of each line. The cæsural pause falls sometimes after the fourth syllable, but more generally, and much more agreeably, after the fifth. Let the reader inspect the following example, and see if he do not agree with me in laying the accent on only the first syllable of each foot, as the feet are here divided. The accent, too, must be carefully laid. Without considerable care in the reading, the hearer will not suppose the composition to be any thing but prose:--

"THE WIDOW."--(IN "SAPPHICS.")

"Cold was the | night-wind, | drifting | fast the | snow fell, Wide were the | downs, and | shelter | -less and |
naked, When a poor | Wanderer | struggled | on her | journey, Weary and | way-sore.

Drear were the | downs, more | dreary | her re | -flections; Cold was the | night-wind, | colder | was her | bosom;
She had no | home, the | world was | all be | -fore her; She had no | shelter.

Fast o'er the | heath a | chariot | rattlee | by her; 'Pity me!' | feebly | cried the | lonely | wanderer; 'Pity me, |
strangers! | lest, with | cold and | hunger, Here I should | perish.

'Once I had | friends,--though | now by | all for | -saken! 'Once I had | parents, | --they are | now in | heaven! 'I
had a | home once, | --I had | once a | husband-- Pity me, | strangers!

'I had a | home once, | --I had | once a | husband-- 'I am a | widow, | poor and | broken | -hearted!' Loud blew
the | wind; un | -heard was | her com | -plaining; On drove the | chariot.

Then on the | snow she | laid her | down to | rest her; She heard a | horseman; | 'Pity | me!' she | groan'd out;
Loud was the | wind; un | -heard was | her com | -plaining; On went the | horseman.

Worn out with | anguish, | toil, and | cold, and | hunger, Down sunk the | Wanderer; | sleep had | seized her |
senses; There did the | traveller | find her | in the | morning; God had re | -leased her." ROBERT SOUTHEY:
Poems, Philad., 1843, p. 251.

Among the lyric poems of Dr. Watts, is one, entitled, "THE DAY OF JUDGEMENT; *an Ode attempted in English Sapphic*." It is perhaps as good an example as we have of the species. It consists of nine stanzas, of which I shall here cite the first three, dividing them into feet as above:--

"When the fierce | North Wind, | with his | airy | forces, Rears up the | Baltic | to a | foaming | fury; And the red
| lightning | with a | storm of | hail comes Rushing a | -main down;

How the poor | sailors | stand a | -maz'd and | tremble! While the hoarse | thunder, | like a bloody | trumpet,
Roars a loud | onset | to the | gaping | waters, Quick to de | -vour them.

Such shall the | noise be, | and the | wild dis | -order, (If things e | -ternal | may be | like these | earthly,) Such
the dire | terror, | when the | great Arch | -angel Shakes the cre | -ation."--*Horæ Lyricæ*, p. 67.

"These lines," says Humphrey, who had cited the first four, "are good English Sapphics, and contain the essential traits of the original as nearly as the two languages, Greek and English, correspond to each other. This stanza, together with the poem, from which this was taken, may stand for a model, in our English compositions."--*Humphrey's E. Prosody*, p. 19. This author erroneously supposed, that the trissyllabic foot, in any line of the Sapphic stanza, must occupy the second place: and, judging of the ancient feet and quantities by what he found, or supposed he found, in the English imitations, and not by what the ancient prosodists say of them, yet knowing that the ancient and the modern Sapphics are in several respects unlike, he presented forms of scansion for both, which are not only peculiar to himself, but not well adapted to either. "We have,"

says he, "no established rule for this kind of verse, in our English compositions, which has been uniformly adhered to. The rule for which, in Greek and Latin verse, *as far as I can ascertain*, was this: = ~ | = = | ~ ~ | = ~ | = = a trochee, a *moloss*, a *pyrrhic*, a trochee, and [a] *spondee*; and *sometimes, occasionally*, a trochee, instead of a spondee, at the end. But as our language is not favourable to the use of the spondee and moloss, the moloss is seldom or never used in our English Sapphics; but, instead of which, some other *trissyllable* foot is used. Also, instead of the spondee, a trochee is commonly used; and sometimes a trochee instead of the pyrrhic, in the third place. As some prescribed rule, or model for imitation, may be necessary, in this case, I will cite a stanza from one of our best English poets, which may serve for a model.

'Wh=en th~e | fi=erce n=orth-w~ind, | w~ith h~is | =air~y | f=orc~es [,] R=ears ~up | th~e B=alt~ic | t~o ~a | f=oam~ing | f=ur~y; And th~e | r=ed l=ightn~ing | w~ith ~a | st=orm ~of | h=ail c~omes R=ush~ing | ~am=ain d=own.'--Watts."--*Ib.*, p. 19.

OBS. 12.--In "the Works of George Canning," a small book published in 1829, there is a poetical dialogue of nine stanzas, entitled, "The Friend of Humanity and the Knife-Grinder," said to be "a burlesque on Mr. Southey's Sapphics." The metre appears to be near enough like to the foregoing. But these verses I divide, as I have divided the others, into trochees with initial dactyls. At the commencement, the luckier party salutes the other thus:--

"'Needy knife | -grinder! | whither | are you | going? Rough is the | road, your | wheel is | out of | order-- Bleak blows the | blast;--your | hat has | got a | hole in't, So have your | breeches!

'Weary knife | -grinder! | little | think the | proud ones Who in their | coaches | roll a | -long the | turnpike-- Road, what hard | work 'tis, | crying | all day, | 'Knives and Scissors to | grind O!'"--P. 44.

OBS. 13.--Among the humorous poems of Thomas Green Fessenden, published under the sobriquet of Dr. Caustic, or "Christopher Caustic, M. D.," may be seen an other comical example of Sapphics, which extends to eleven stanzas. It describes a contra-dance, and is entitled, "Horace Surpassed." The conclusion is as follows:--

"Willy Wagnimble dancing with Flirtilla, Almost as light as air-balloon inflated, Rigadoons around her, 'till the lady's heart is Forced to surrender.

Benny Bamboozle cuts the drollest capers, Just like a camel, or a hippopot'mus; Jolly Jack Jumble makes as big a rout as Forty Dutch horses.

See Angelina lead the mazy dance down; Never did fairy trip it so fantastic; How my heart flutters, while my tongue pronounces, 'Sweet little seraph!'

Such are the joys that flow from contra-dancing, Pure as the primal happiness of Eden, Love, mirth, and music, kindle in accordance Raptures extatic."--*Poems*, p. 208.

SECTION V.--ORAL EXERCISES.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PROSODY, OR ERRORS OF METRE.

LESSON I.--RESTORE THE RHYTHM.

"The lion is laid down in his lair."--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 134.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "*lion*," here put for Cowper's word "*beast*" destroys the metre, and changes the line to prose. But, according to the definition given on p. 827, "Verse, in opposition to prose, is language arranged into metrical lines of some determinate length and rhythm--language so ordered as to produce harmony by a due succession of poetic feet." This line was composed of one iamb and two anapests; and, to such form, it should be restored, thus: "The *beast* is laid down in his lair."--*Cowper's Poems*, Vol. i, p. 201.]

"Where is thy true treasure? Gold says, not in me." --*Hallock's Gram.*, 1842, p. 66.

"Canst thou grow sad, thou sayest, as earth grows bright?" --*Frazer's Gram.*, 1845, p. 140.

"It must be so, Plato, thou reasonest well." --*Wells's Gram.*, 1846, p. 122.

"Slow rises merit, when by poverty depressed." --*Ib.*, p. 195; *Hiley*, 132; *Hart*, 179.

"Rapt in future times, the bard begun." --*Wells's Gram.*, 1846, p. 153.

"Is there not rain enough in the sweet heavens To wash it white as snow? Whereunto serves mercy, But to confront the visage of offence!" --*Hallock's Gram.*, 1842, p. 118.

"Look! in this place ran Cassius's dagger through." --*Kames, El. of Cr.*, Vol. i, p. 74.

"----When they list their lean and flashy songs, Harsh grate on their scannel pipes of wretched straw." --*Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 135.

"Did not great Julius bleed for justice's sake?" --*Dodd's Beauties of Shak.*, p. 253.

"Did not great Julius bleed for justice sake?" --*Singer's Shakspeare*, Vol. ii, p. 266.

"May I, unblam'd, express thee? Since God is light." --*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 290.

"Or hearest thou, rather, pure ethereal stream!" --*2d Perversion, ib.*

"Republics; kingdoms; empires, may decay; Princes, heroes, sages, sink to nought." --*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 287.

"Thou bringest, gay creature as thou art, A solemn image to my heart." --*E. J. Hallock's Gram.*, p. 197.

"Know thyself presume not God to scan; The proper study of mankind is Man." --*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 285.

"Raised on a hundred pilasters of gold." --*Charlemagne*, C. i, St. 40.

"Love in Adalgise's breast has fixed his sting." --*Ib.*, C. i, St. 30.

"Thirty days hath September, April, June, and November, February twenty-eight alone, All the rest thirty and one." *Colet's Grammar, or Paul's Accidence*. Lond., 1793, p. 75.

LESSON II.--RESTORE THE RHYTHM.

"'Twas not the fame of what he once had been, Or tales in old records and annals seen." --*Rowe's Lucan*, B. i, l. 274.

"And Asia now and Afric are explor'd, For high-priced dainties, and citron board." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. i, l. 311.

"Who knows not, how the trembling judge beheld The peaceful court with arm'd legions fill'd?" --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. i, l. 578.

"With thee the Scythian wilds we'll wander o'er, With thee burning Libyan sands explore." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. i, l. 661.

"Hasty and headlong different paths they tread, As blind impulse and wild distraction lead." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. i, l. 858.

"But Fate reserv'd to perform its doom, And be the minister of wrath to Rome." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 136.

"Thus spoke the youth. When Cato thus exprest The sacred counsels of his most inmost breast." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 435.

"These were the strict manners of the man, And this the stubborn course in which they ran; The golden mean unchanging to pursue, Constant to keep the proposed end in view." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 580.

"What greater grief can a Roman seize, Than to be forc'd to live on terms like these!" --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 782.

"He views the naked town with joyful eyes, While from his rage an arm'd people flies." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 880.

"For planks and beams he ravages the wood, And the tough bottom extends across the flood." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 1040.

"A narrow pass the horned mole divides, Narrow as that where Euripus' strong tides Beat on Euboean Chalcis' rocky sides." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. ii, l. 1095.

"No force, no fears their hands unarm'd bear, But looks of peace and gentleness they wear." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. iii, l. 112.

"The ready warriors all aboard them ride, And wait the return of the retiring tide." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. iv, l. 716.

"He saw those troops that long had faithful stood, Friends to his cause, and enemies to good, Grown weary of their chief, and satiated with blood." --*Eng. Poets: ib.*, B. v, l. 337.

CHAPTER V.

--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

PART FOURTH, PROSODY.

[Fist][The following questions call the attention of the student to the main doctrines in the foregoing code of Prosody, and embrace or demand those facts which it is most important for him to fix in his memory; they may, therefore, serve not only to aid the teacher in the process of examining his classes, but also to direct the learner in his manner of preparation for recital.]

LESSON I.--OF PUNCTUATION.

1. Of what does Prosody treat? 2. What is *Punctuation*? 3. What are the principal points, or marks? 4. What pauses are denoted by the first four points? 5. What pauses are required by the other four? 6. What is the general use of the Comma? 7. How many rules for the Comma are there, and what are their heads? 8. What says Rule 1st of *Simple Sentences*? 9. What says Rule 2d of *Simple Members*? 10. What says Rule 3d of *More than Two Words*? 11. What says Rule 4th of *Only Two Words*? 12. What says Rule 5th of *Words in Pairs*? 13. What says Rule 6th of *Words put Absolute*? 14. What says Rule 7th of *Words in Apposition*? 15. What says Rule 8th of *Adjectives*? 16. What says Rule 9th of *Finite Verbs*? 17. What says Rule 10th of *Infinitives*? 18. What says Rule 11th of *Participles*? 19. What says Rule 12th of *Adverbs*? 20. What says Rule 13th of *Conjunctions*? 21. What says Rule 14th of *Prepositions*? 22. What says Rule 15th of *Interjections*? 23. What says Rule 16th of *Words Repeated*? 24. What says Rule 17th of *Dependent Quotations*?

LESSON II.--OF THE COMMA.

1. How many exceptions, or forms of exception, are there to Rule 1st for the comma? 2.--to Rule 2d? 3.--to Rule 3d? 4.--to Rule 4th? 5.--to Rule 5th? 6.--to Rule 6th? 7.--to Rule 7th? 8.--to Rule 8th? 9.--to Rule 9th? 10.--to Rule 10th? 11.--to Rule 11th? 12.--to Rule 12th? 13.--to Rule 13th? 14.--to Rule 14th? 15.--to Rule 15th? 16.--to Rule 16th? 17.--to Rule 17th? 18. What says the Exception to Rule 1st of a *Long Simple Sentence*? 19. What says Exception 1st to Rule 2d of *Restrictive Relatives*? 20. What says Exception 2d to Rule 2d of *Short Terms closely Connected*? 21. What says Exception 3d to Rule 2d of *Elliptical Members United*? 22. What says Exception 1st to Rule 4th of *Two Words with Adjuncts*? 23. What says Exception 2d to Rule 4th of *Two Terms Contrasted*? 24. What says Exception 3d to Rule 4th of a mere *Alternative of Words*? 25. What says Exception 4th to Rule 4th of *Conjunctions Understood*?

LESSON III.--OF THE COMMA.

1. What rule speaks of the separation of *Words in Apposition*? 2. What says Exception 1st to Rule 7th of *Complex Names*? 3. What says Exception 2d to Rule 7th of *Close Apposition*? 4. What says Exception 3d to Rule 7th of a *Pronoun without a Pause*? 5. What says Exception 4th to Rule 7th of *Names Acquired*? 6. What says the Exception to Rule 8th of *Adjectives Restrictive*? 7. What is the rule which speaks of a finite *Verb Understood*? 8. What says the Exception to Rule 9th of a *Very Slight Pause*? 9. What is the Rule for the pointing of *Participles*? 10. What says the Exception to Rule 11th of *Participles Restrictive*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formulæ given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Comma in Section First.]

LESSON IV.--OF THE SEMICOLON.

1. What is the general use of the Semicolon? 2. How many rules are there for the Semicolon? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Complex Members*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Simple Members*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Apposition, &c.*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Semicolon in Section Second.]

LESSON V.--OF THE COLON.

1. What is the general use of the Colon? 2. How many rules are there for the Colon? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Additional Remarks*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Greater Pauses*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Independent Quotations*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Colon in Section Third.]

LESSON VI.--OF THE PERIOD.

1. What is the general use of the Period? 2. How many rules are there for the Period? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Distinct Sentences*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Allied Sentences*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Abbreviations*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Period in Section Fourth.]

LESSON VII.--OF THE DASH.

1. What is the general use of the Dash? 2. How many rules are there for the Dash? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Abrupt Pauses*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Emphatic Pauses*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Faulty Dashes*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Dash in Section Fifth.]

LESSON VIII.--OF THE EROTEME.

1. What is the use of the Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation? 2. How many rules are there for this mark? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Questions Direct*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Questions United*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Questions Indirect*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Eroteme in Section Sixth.]

LESSON IX.--OF THE ECPHONEME.

1. What is the use of the Ecphoneme, or Note of Exclamation? 2. How many rules are there for this mark? 2. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *Interjections*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Invocations*? 6. What says Rule 3d of *Exclamatory Questions*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Ecphoneme in Section Seventh.]

LESSON X.--OF THE CURVES.

1. What is the use of the Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis? 2. How many rules are there for the Curves? 3. What are their titles, or heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of *the Parenthesis*? 5. What says Rule 2d of *Included Points*?

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formulæ given, some or all of the various examples of *False Punctuation*, which are arranged under the rules for the Curves in Section Eighth.]

LESSON XI.--OF THE OTHER MARKS.

1. What is the use of the Apostrophe? 2. What is the use of the Hyphen? 3. What is the use of the Diæresis, or Dialysis? 4. What is the use of the Acute Accent? 5. What is the use of the Grave Accent? 6. What is the use of the Circumflex? 7. What is the use of the Breve, or Stenotone? 8. What is the use of the Macron, or Macrotone? 9. What is the use of the Ellipsis, or Suppression? 10. What is the use of the Caret? 11. What is the use of the Brace? 12. What is the use of the Section? 13. What is the use of the Paragraph? 14. What is the use of the Guillemets, or Quotation Points? 15. How do we mark a quotation within a quotation? 16. What is the use of the Crotchets, or Brackets? 17. What is the use of the Index, or Hand? 18. What are the six Marks of Reference in their usual order? 19. How can references be otherwise made? 20. What is the use of the Asterism, or the Three Stars? 21. What is the use of the Cedilla?

[Having correctly answered the foregoing questions, the pupil should be taught to apply the principles of punctuation; and, for this purpose, he may be required to read a portion of some accurately pointed book, or may be directed to turn to the *Fourteenth Praxis*, beginning on p. 821,--and to assign a reason for every mark he finds.]

LESSON XII.--OF UTTERANCE.

1. What is *Utterance*? 2. What does it include? 3. What is articulation? 4. How does articulation differ from pronunciation? 5. How does Comstock define it? 6. What, in his view, is a good articulation? 7. How does Bolles define articulation? 8. Is a good articulation important? 9. What are the faults opposite to it? 10. What says Sheridan, of a good articulation? 11. Upon what does distinctness depend? 12. Why is just articulation better than mere loudness? 13. Do we learn to articulate in learning to speak or read?

LESSON XIII.--OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. What is pronunciation? 2. What is it that is called *Orthoëpy*? 3. What knowledge does pronunciation require? 4. What are the just powers of the letters? 5. How are these learned? 6. Are the just powers of the letters in any degree variable? 7. What is quantity? 8. Are all long syllables equally long, and all short ones equally short? 9. What has stress of voice to do with quantity? 10. What is accent? 11. Is every word accented? 12. Do we ever lay two equal accents on one word? 13. Have we more than one sort of accent? 14. Can any word have the secondary accent, and not the primary? 15. Can monosyllables have either? 16. What regulates accent? 17. What four things distinguish the elegant speaker?

LESSON XIV.--OF ELOCUTION.

1. What is elocution? 2. What does elocution require? 3. What is emphasis? 4. What comparative view is taken of accent and emphasis? 5. How does L. Murray connect emphasis with quantity? 6. Does emphasis ever affect accent? 7. What is the guide to a right emphasis? 8. Can one read with too many emphases? 9. What are pauses? 10. How many and what kinds of pauses are there? 11. What is said of the duration of pauses, and the taking of breath? 12. After what manner should pauses be made? 13. What pauses are particularly ungraceful? 14. What is said of rhetorical pauses? 15. How are the harmonic pauses divided? 16.

Are such pauses essential to verse?

LESSON XV.--OF ELOCUTION.

17. What are inflections? 18. What is called the rising or upward inflection? 19. What is called the falling or downward inflection? 20. How are these inflections exemplified? 21. How are they used in asking questions? 22. What is said of the notation of them? 23. What constitutes a circumflex? 24. What constitutes the rising, and what the falling, circumflex? 25. Can you give examples? 26. What constitutes a monotone, in elocution? 27. Which kind of inflection is said to be most common? 28. Which is the best adapted to strong emphasis? 29. What says Comstock of rules for inflections? 30. Is the voice to be varied for variety's sake? 31. What should regulate the inflections? 32. What is cadence? 33. What says Rippingham about it? 34. What says Murray? 35. What are tones? 36. Why do they deserve particular attention? 37. What says Blair about tones? 38. What says Hiley?

LESSON XVI.--OF FIGURES.

1. What is a *Figure* in grammar? 2. How many kinds of figures are there? 3. What is a figure of orthography? 4. What are the principal figures of orthography? 5. What is Mimesis? 6. What is an Archaism? 7. What is a figure of etymology? 8. How many and what are the figures of etymology? 9. What is Aphæresis? 10. What is Prosthesis? 11. What is Syncope? 12. What is Apocope? 13. What is Paragoge? 14. What is Diæresis? 15. What is Synæresis? 16. What is Tmesis? 17. What is a figure of syntax? 18. How many and what are the figures of syntax? 19. What is Ellipsis, in grammar? 20. Are sentences often elliptical? 21. What parts of speech can be omitted, by ellipsis? 22. What is Pleonasm? 23. When is this figure allowable? 24. What is Syllepsis? 25. What is Enallage? 26. What is Hyperbaton? 27. What is said of this figure?

LESSON XVII.--OF FIGURES.

28. What is a figure of rhetoric? 29. What peculiar name have some of these? 30. Do figures of rhetoric often occur? 31. On what are they founded? 32. How many and what are the principal figures of rhetoric? 33. What is a Simile? 34. What is a Metaphor? 35. What is an Allegory? 36. What is a Metonymy? 37. What is Synecdoche? 38. What is Hyperbole? 39. What is Vision? 40. What is Apostrophe? 41. What is Personification? 42. What is Erotesis? 43. What is Ecphonesis? 44. What is Antithesis? 45. What is Climax? 46. What is Irony? 47. What is Apophasis, or Paralipsis? 48. What is Onomatopoeia?

[Now, if you please, you may examine the quotations adopted for the *Fourteenth Praxis*, and may name and define the various figures of grammar which are contained therein.]

LESSON XVIII.--OF VERSIFICATION.

1. What is *Versification*? 2. What is verse, as distinguished from prose? 3. What is the rhythm of verse? 4. What is the quantity of a syllable? 5. How are poetic quantities denominated? 6. How are they proportioned? 7. What quantity coincides with accent or emphasis? 8. On what but the vowel sound does quantity depend? 9. Does syllabic quantity always follow the quality of the vowels? 10. Where is quantity variable, and where fixed, in English? 11. What is rhyme? 12. What is blank verse? 13. What is remarked concerning the rhyming syllables? 14. What is a stanza? 15. What uniformity have stanzas? 16. What variety have they?

LESSON XIX.--OF VERSIFICATION.

17. Of what does a verse consist? 18. Of what does a poetic foot consist? 19. How many feet do prosodists recognize? 20. What are the principal feet in English? 21. What is an Iambus? 22. What is a Trochee? 23. What is an Anapest? 24. What is a Dactyl? 25. Why are these feet principal? 26. What orders of verse arise from these? 27. Are these kinds to be kept separate? 28. What is said of the secondary feet? 29. How many

and what secondary feet are explained in this code? 30. What is a Spondee? 31. What is a Pyrrhic? 32. What is a Moloss? 33. What is a Tribach? 34. What is an Amphibrach? 35. What is an Amphimac? 36. What is a Bacchy? 37. What is an Antibachy? 38. What is a Cæsura?

LESSON XX.--OF VERSIFICATION.

39. What are the principal kinds, or orders, of verse? 40. What other orders are there? 41. Does the composite order demand any uniformity? 42. Do the simple orders admit any diversity? 43. What is meant by *scanning* or *scansion*? 44. What mean the technical words, *catalectic*, *acatalectic*, and *hypermeter*? 45. In scansion, why are the principal feet to be preferred to the secondary? 46. Can a single foot be a line? 47. What are the several combinations that form dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, heptameter, and octometer? 48. What syllables have stress in a pure iambic line? 49. What are the several measures of iambic verse? 50. What syllables have stress in a pure trochaic line? 51. Can it be right, to regard as hypermeter the long rhyming syllables of a line? 52. Is the number of feet in a line to be generally counted by that of the long syllables? 53. What are the several measures of trochaic verse?

LESSON XXI.--OF VERSIFICATION.

54. What syllables have stress in a pure anapestic line? 55. What variation may occur in the first foot? 56. Is this frequent? 57. Is it ever uniform? 58. What is the result of a uniform mixture? 59. Is the anapest adapted to single rhyme? 60. May a surplus ever make up for a deficiency? 61. Why are the anapestic measures few? 62. How many syllables are found in the longest? 63. What are the several measures of anapestic verse? 64. What syllables have stress in a pure dactylic line? 65. With what does single-rhymed dactylic end? 66. Is dactylic verse very common? 67. What are the several measures of dactylic verse? 68. What is composite verse? 69. Must composites have rhythm? 70. Are the kinds of composite verse numerous? 71. Why have we no exact enumeration of the measures of this order? 72. Does this work contain specimens of different kinds of composite verse?

[It may now be required of the pupil to determine, by reading and scansion, the metrical elements of any good English poetry which may be selected for the purpose--the feet being marked by pauses, and the long syllables by stress of voice. He may also correct orally the few *Errors of Metre* which are given in the Fifth Section of Chapter IV.]

CHAPTER VI.

--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN PROSODY.

[Fist] [When the pupil can readily answer all the questions on Prosody, and apply the rules of punctuation to any composition in which the points are rightly inserted, he should *write out* the following exercises, supplying what is required, and correcting what is amiss. Or, if any teacher choose to exercise his classes *orally*, by means of these examples, he can very well do it; because, to read words, is always easier than to write them, and even points or poetic feet may be quite as readily named as written.]

EXERCISE I.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the COMMA where it is requisite.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"The dogmatist's assurance is paramount to argument." "The whole course of his argumentation comes to nothing." "The fieldmouse builds her garner under ground."

EXC.--"The first principles of almost all sciences are few." "What he gave me to publish was but a small part." "To remain insensible to such provocation is apathy." "Minds ashamed of poverty would be proud of affluence." "To be totally indifferent to praise or censure is a real defect in character."--*Wilson's Punctuation*, p. 38.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"I was eyes to the blind and feet was I to the lame." "They are gone but the remembrance of them is sweet." "He has passed it is likely through varieties of fortune." "The mind though free has a governor within itself." "They I doubt not oppose the bill on public principles." "Be silent be grateful and adore." "He is an adept in language who always speaks the truth." "The race is not to the swift nor the battle to the strong."

EXC. I.--"He that has far to go should not hurry." "Hobbes believed the eternal truths which he opposed." "Feeble are all pleasures in which the heart has no share." "The love which survives the tomb is one of the noblest attributes of the soul."--*Wilson's Punctuation*, p. 38.

EXC. II.--"A good name is better than precious ointment." "Thinkst thou that duty shall have dread to speak?" "The spleen is seldom felt where Flora reigns."

UNDER RULE III.--OF MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

"The city army court espouse my cause." "Wars pestilences and diseases are terrible instructors." "Walk daily in a pleasant airy and umbrageous garden." "Wit spirits faculties but make it worse." "Men wives and children stare cry out and run." "Industry, honesty, and temperance are essential to happiness."--*Wilson's Punctuation*, p. 29. "Honor, affluence, and pleasure seduce the heart."--*Ib.*, p. 31.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF TWO TERMS CONNECTED.

"Hope and fear are essentials in religion." "Praise and adoration are perfective of our souls." "We know bodies and their properties most perfectly." "Satisfy yourselves with what is rational and attainable." "Slowly and sadly we laid him down."

EXC. I.--"God will rather look to the inward motions of the mind than to the outward form of the body."
"Gentleness is unassuming in opinion and temperate in zeal."

EXC. II.--"He has experienced prosperity and adversity." "All sin essentially is and must be mortal."
"Reprove vice but pity the offender."

EXC. III.--"One person is chosen chairman or moderator." "Duration or time is measured by motion." "The governor or viceroy is chosen annually."

EXC. IV.--"Reflection reason still the ties improve." "His neat plain parlour wants our modern style." "We are fearfully wonderfully made."

UNDER RULE V.--OF WORDS IN PAIRS.

"I inquired and rejected consulted and deliberated." "Seed-time and harvest cold and heat summer and winter day and night shall not cease."

EXERCISE II.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the COMMA where it is requisite.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE VI.--OF WORDS PUT ABSOLUTE.

"The night being dark they did not proceed." "There being no other coach we had no alternative." "Remember my son that human life is the journey of a day." "All circumstances considered it seems right." "He that overcometh to him will I give power." "Your land strangers devour it in your presence." "Ah sinful nation a people laden with iniquity!"

"With heads declin'd ye cedars homage pay; Be smooth ye rocks ye rapid floods give way!"

UNDER RULE VII.--OF WORDS IN APPPOSITION.

"Now Philomel sweet songstress charms the night." "'Tis chanticleer the shepherd's clock announcing day." "The evening star love's harbinger appears." "The queen of night fair Dian smiles serene." "There is yet one man Micaiah the son of Imlah." "Our whole company man by man ventured down." "As a work of wit the Dunciad has few equals."

"In the same temple the resounding wood All vocal beings hymned their equal God."

EXC. I.--"The last king of Rome was Tarquinius Superbus." "Bossuet highly eulogizes Maria Theresa of Austria." "No emperor has been more praised than Marcus Aurelius, Antoninus."

EXC. II.--"For he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith." "Remember the example of the patriarch Joseph." "The poet, Milton, excelled in prose as well as in verse."

EXC. III.--"I wisdom dwell with prudence." "Ye fools be ye of an understanding heart." "I tell you that which you yourselves do know."

EXC. IV.--"I crown thee king of intimate delights" "I count the world a stranger for thy sake." "And this makes friends such miracles below." "God has pronounced it death to taste that tree." "Grace makes the slave a freeman."

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF ADJECTIVES.

"Deaf with the noise I took my hasty flight." "Him piteous of his youth soft disengage." "I played a while obedient to the fair." "Love free as air spreads his light wings and flies." "Physical science separate from morals parts with its chief dignity."

"Then active still and unconfined his mind Explores the vast extent of ages past."

"But there is yet a liberty unsung By poets and by senators unpraised."

EXC.--"I will marry a wife beautiful as the Houries." "He was a man able to speak upon doubtful questions." "These are the persons, anxious for the change." "Are they men worthy of confidence and support?" "A man, charitable beyond his means, is scarcely honest."

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINITE VERBS.

"Poverty wants some things--avarice all things." "Honesty has one face--flattery two." "One king is too soft and easy--an other too fiery."

"Mankind's esteem they court--and he his own: Theirs the wild chase of false felicities; His the compos'd possession of the true."

EXERCISE III.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following sentences, and insert the COMMA where it is requisite.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE X.--OF INFINITIVES.

"My desire is to live in peace." "The great difficulty was to compel them to pay their debts." "To strengthen our virtue God bids us trust in him." "I made no bargain with you to live always drudging." "To sum up all her tongue confessed the shrew." "To proceed my own adventure was still more laughable."

"We come not with design of wasteful prey To drive the country force the swains away."

UNDER RULE XI.--OF PARTICIPLES.

"Having given this answer he departed." "Some sunk to beasts find pleasure end in pain." "Eased of her load subjection grows more light." "Death still draws nearer never seeming near." "He lies full low gored with wounds and weltering in his blood." "Kind is fell Lucifer compared to thee." "Man considered in himself is helpless and wretched." "Like scattered down by howling Eurus blown." "He with wide nostrils snorting skims the wave." "Youth is properly speaking introductory to manhood."

EXC.--"He kept his eye fixed on the country before him." "They have their part assigned them to act." "Years will not repair the injuries done by him."

UNDER RULE XII.--OF ADVERBS.

"Yes we both were philosophers." "However Providence saw fit to cross our design." "Besides I know that the eye of the public is upon me." "The fact certainly is much otherwise." "For nothing surely can be more inconsistent."

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"For in such retirement the soul is strengthened." "It engages our desires; and in some degree satisfies them also." "But of every Christian virtue piety is an essential part." "The English verb is variable--*as love loveth loves.*"

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF PREPOSITIONS.

"In a word charity is the soul of social life." "By the bowstring I can repress violence and fraud." "Some by being too artful forfeit the reputation of probity." "With regard to morality I was not indifferent." "Of all our senses sight is the most perfect and delightful."

UNDER RULE XV.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Behold I am against thee O inhabitant of the valley!" "O it is more like a dream than a reality," "Some wine ho!" "Ha ha ha; some wine eh?"

"When lo the dying breeze begins to fail, And flutters on the mast the flagging sail."

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF WORDS REPEATED.

"I would never consent never never never." "His teeth did chatter chatter chatter still." "Come come come--to bed to bed to bed."

UNDER RULE XVII.--OF DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"He cried 'Cause every man to go out from me.'" "'Almet' said he 'remember what thou hast seen.'" "I answered 'Mock not thy servant who is but a worm before thee.'"

EXERCISE IV.--PUNCTUATION.

I. THE SEMICOLON.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma and the SEMICOLON where they are requisite.*

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPOUND MEMBERS.

"'Man is weak' answered his companion 'knowledge is more than equivalent to force.'" "To judge rightly of the present we must oppose it to the past for all judgement is comparative [sic--KTH] and of the future nothing can be known." "'Contentment is natural wealth' says Socrates to which I shall add 'luxury is artificial poverty.'"

"Converse and love mankind might strongly draw When love was liberty and nature law."

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"Be wise to-day 'tis madness to defer." "The present all their care the future his." "Wit makes an enterpriser sense a man." "Ask thought for joy grow rich and hoard within." "Song soothes our pains and age has pains to soothe." "Here an enemy encounters there a rival supplants him." "Our answer to their reasons is; 'No' to their scoffs nothing."

"Here subterranean works and cities see There towns aerial on the waving tree."

UNDER RULE III.--OF APPPOSITION.

"In Latin there are six cases namely the nominative the genitive the dative the accusative the vocative and the ablative." "Most English nouns form the plural by taking *s*; as *boy boys nation nations king kings bay bays*." "Bodies are such as are endued with a vegetable soul as plants a sensitive soul as animals or a rational soul as the body of man."

II. THE COLON.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma, the Semicolon, and the COLON, where they are requisite.*

UNDER RULE I.--OF ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

"Indulge not desires at the expense of the slightest article of virtue pass once its limits and you fall headlong into vice." "Death wounds to cure we fall we rise we reign." "Beware of usurpation God is the judge of all."

"Bliss!--there is none but unprecious bliss That is the gem sell all and purchase that."

UNDER RULE II.--OF GREATER PAUSES.

"I have the world here before me I will review it at leisure surely happiness is somewhere to be found." "A melancholy enthusiast courts persecution and when he cannot obtain it afflicts himself with absurd penances but the holiness of St. Paul consisted in the simplicity of a pious life."

"Observe his awful portrait and admire Nor stop at wonder imitate and live."

UNDER RULE III.--OF INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"Such is our Lord's injunction 'Watch and pray.'" "He died praying for his persecutors 'Father forgive them they know not what they do.'" "On the old gentleman's cane was inscribed this motto '*Festina lente*.'"

III.--THE PERIOD.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma, the Semicolon, the Colon, and the PERIOD, where they are requisite.*

UNDER RULE I.--OF DISTINCT SENTENCES.

"Then appeared the sea and the dry land the mountains rose and the rivers flowed the sun and moon began their course in the skies herbs and plants clothed the ground the air the earth and the waters were stored with their respective inhabitants at last man was made in the image of God"

"In general those parents have most reverence who most deserve it for he that lives well cannot be despised"

UNDER RULE II.--OF ALLIED SENTENCES.

"Civil accomplishments frequently give rise to fame but a distinction is to be made between fame and true honour the statesman the orator or the poet may be famous while yet the man himself is far from being honoured"

UNDER RULE III.--OF ABBREVIATIONS.

"Glass was invented in England by Benalt a monk A D 664" "The Roman era U C commenced A C 1753 years" "Here is the Literary Life of S T Coleridge Esq" "PLATO a most illustrious philosopher of antiquity died at Athens 348 B C aged 81 his writings are very valuable his language beautiful and correct and his philosophy sublime"--See *Univ. Biog. Dict.*

EXERCISE V.--PUNCTUATION.

I. THE DASH.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert, in their proper places, the DASH, and such other points as are necessary.*

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF ABRUPT PAUSES.

"You say *famous* very often and I don't know exactly what it means a *famous* uniform *famous* doings What does famous mean"

"O why *famous* means Now don't you know what *famous* means It means It is a word that people say It is the fashion to say it It means it means *famous*."

UNDER RULE II.--OF EMPHATIC PAUSES.

"But this life is not all there is there is full surely another state abiding us And if there is what is thy prospect O remorseless obdurate Thou shalt hear it would be thy wisdom to think thou now nearest the sound of that trumpet which shall awake the dead Return O yet return to the Father of mercies and live"

"The future pleases Why The present pains But that's a secret yes which all men know"

II. THE EROTEME.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the EROTEME, or NOTE OF INTERROGATION, and such other points as are necessary.*

UNDER RULE I.--OF QUESTIONS DIRECT.

"Does Nature bear a tyrant's breast Is she the friend of stern control Wears she the despot's purple vest Or fetters she the freeborn soul"

"Why should a man whose blood is warm within Sit like his grandsire cut in alabaster"

"Who art thou courteous stranger and from whence Why roam thy steps to this abandon'd dale"

UNDER RULE II.--OF QUESTIONS UNITED.

"Who bid the stork Columbus-like explore Heav'ns not his own and worlds unknown before Who calls the council states the certain day Who forms the phalanx and who points the way"

UNDER RULE III.--OF QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

"They asked me who I was and whither I was going." "St. Paul asked king Agrippa if he believed the prophets? But he did not wait for an answer."

"Ask of thy mother Earth why oaks are made Taller and stronger than the weeds they shade"

III. THE ECPHONEME.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the ECPHONEME, or NOTE OF EXCLAMATION, and such other points as are necessary.*

UNDER RULE I.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Oh talk of hypocrisy after this Most consummate of all hypocrites After instructing your chosen official advocate to stand forward with such a defence such an exposition of your motives to dare utter the word

hypocrisy and complain of those who charged you with it" *Brougham*

"Alas how is that rugged heart forlorn"

"Behold the victor vanquish'd by the worm"

"Bliss sublunary Bliss proud words and vain"

UNDER RULE II.--OF INVOCATIONS.

"O Popular Applause what heart of man Is proof against thy sweet seducing charms"

"More than thy balm O Gilead heals the wound"

UNDER RULE III.--OF EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

With what transports of joy shall I be received In what honour in what delightful repose shall I pass the remainder of my life What immortal glory shall I have acquired" *Hooke's Roman History*.

"How often have I loiter'd o'er thy green Where humble happiness endear'd each scene"

IV.--THE CURVES.--*Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the CURVES, or MARKS OF PARENTHESIS, and such other points as are necessary.*

UNDER RULE I.--OF THE PARENTHESIS.

"And all the question wrangle e'er so long Is only this If God has plac'd him wrong"

"And who what God foretells who speaks in things Still louder than in words shall dare deny"

UNDER RULE II.--OF INCLUDED POINTS.

"Say was it virtue more though Heav'n ne'er gave Lamented Digby sunk thee to the grave"

"Where is that thrift that avarice of time O glorious avarice thought of death inspires"

"And oh the last last what can words express Thought reach the last last silence of a friend"

EXERCISE VI.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following MIXED EXAMPLES, and insert the points which they require.

"As one of them opened his sack he espied his money" "They cried out the more exceedingly Crucify him" "The soldiers' counsel was to kill the prisoners" "Great injury these vermin mice and rats do in the field" "It is my son's coat an evil beast hath devoured him" "Peace of all worldly blessings is the most valuable" "By this time the very foundation was removed" "The only words he uttered were I am a Roman citizen" "Some distress either felt or feared gnaws like a worm" "How then must I determine Have I no interest If I have not I am stationed here to no purpose" *Harris* "In the fire the destruction was so swift sudden vast and miserable as to have no parallel in story" "Dionysius the tyrant of Sicily was far from being happy" "I ask now Verres what thou hast to advance" "Excess began and sloth sustains the trade" "Fame can never reconcile a man to a death bed" "They that sail on the sea tell of the danger" "Be doers of the word and not hearers only" "The storms of wintry time will quickly pass" "Here Hope that smiling angel stands" "Disguise I see thou art a wickedness"

"There are no tricks in plain and simple faith" "True love strikes root in reason passion's foe" "Two gods divide them all Pleasure and Gain" "I am satisfied My son has done his duty" "Remember Almet the vision which thou hast seen" "I beheld an enclosure beautiful as the gardens of paradise" "The knowledge which I have received I will communicate" "But I am not yet happy and therefore I despair" "Wretched mortals said I to what purpose are you busy" "Bad as the world is respect is always paid to virtue" "In a word he views men as the clear sunshine of charity" "This being the case I am astonished and amazed" "These men approached him and saluted him king" "Excellent and obliging sages these undoubtedly" "Yet at the same time the man himself undergoes a change" "One constant effect of idleness is to nourish the passions" "You heroes regard nothing but glory" "Take care lest while you strive to reach the top you fall" "Proud and presumptuous they can brook no opposition" "Nay some awe of religion may still subsist" "Then said he Lo I come to do thy will O God" *Bible* "As for me behold I am in your hand" *Ib.* "Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him saith the Lord" *Jer* xxiii 24 "Now I Paul myself beseech you" "Now for a recompense in the same I speak as unto my children be ye also enlarged" *2 Cor* vi 13 "He who lives always in public cannot live to his own soul whereas he who retires remains calm" "Therefore behold I even I will utterly forget you" "This text speaks only of those to whom it speaks" "Yea he warmeth himself and saith Aha I am warm" "King Agrippa believest thou the prophets"

EXERCISE VII.--PUNCTUATION.

Copy the following MIXED EXAMPLES, and insert the points which they require.

To whom can riches give repute or trust Content or pleasure but the good and just *Pope*

To him no high no low no great no small He fills he bounds connects and equals all *Id*

Reasons whole pleasure all the joys of sense Lie in three words health peace and competence *Id*

Not so for once indulged they sweep the main Deaf to the call or hearing hear in vain *Anon*

Say will the falcon stooping from above Smit with her varying plumage spare the dove *Pope*

Throw Egypts by and offer in its stead Offer the crown on Berenices head *Id*

Falsely luxurious will not man awake And springing from the bed of sloth enjoy The cool the fragrant and the silent hour *Thomson*

Yet thus it is nor otherwise can be So far from aught romantic what I sing *Young*

Thyself first know then love a self there is Of virtue fond that kindles at her charms *Id*

How far that little candle throws his beams So shines a good deed in a naughty world *Shakspeare*

You have too much respect upon the world They lose it that do buy it with much care *Id*

How many things by season seasoned are To their right praise and true perfection *Id*

Canst thou descend from converse with the skies And seize thy brothers throat For what a clod *Young*

In two short precepts all your business lies Would you be great--*be virtuous and be wise Denham*

But sometimes virtue starves while vice is fed What then is the reward of virtue bread *Pope*

A life all turbulence and noise may seem To him that leads it wise and to be praised But wisdom is a pearl
with most success Sought in still waters and beneath clear skies *Cowper*

All but the swellings of the softened heart That waken not disturb the tranquil mind *Thomson*

Inspiring God who boundless spirit all And unremitting energy pervades Adjusts sustains and agitates the
whole *Id*

Ye ladies for indifferent in your cause I should deserve to forfeit all applause Whatever shocks or gives the
least offence To virtue delicacy truth or sense Try the criterion tis a faithful guide Nor has nor can have
Scripture on its side. *Cowper*

EXERCISE VIII.--SCANNING.

Divide the following VERSES into the feet which compose them, and distinguish by marks the long and the short syllables.

Example I.--"Our Daily Paths"--By F. Hemans.

"There's Beauty all around our paths, if but our watchful eyes Can trace it 'midst familiar things, and through
their lowly guise; We may find it where a hedgerow showers its blossoms o'er our way, Or a cottage-window
sparkles forth in the last red light of day."

Example II.--"Fetching Water"--Anonymous.

"Early on a sunny morning, while the lark was singing sweet, Came, beyond the ancient farmhouse, sounds of
lightly-tripping feet. 'Twas a lowly cottage maiden, going,--why, let young hearts tell,-- With her homely
pitcher laden, fetching water from the well."

Example III.--Deity.

Alone thou sitst above the everlasting hills And all immensity of space thy presence fills: For thou alone art
God;--as God thy saints adore thee; Jehovah is thy name;--they have no gods before thee.--*G. Brown.*

Example IV.--Impenitence.

The impenitent sinner whom mercy empowers, Dishonours that goodness which seeks to restore; As the sands
of the desert are water'd by showers. Yet barren and fruitless remain as before.--*G. Brown.*

Example V.--Piety.

Holy and pure are the pleasures of piety, Drawn from the fountain of mercy and love; Endless, exhaustless,
exempt from satiety, Rising unearthly, and soaring above.--*G. Brown.*

Example VI.--A Simile.

The bolt that strikes the tow'ring cedar dead, Oft passes harmless o'er the hazel's head.--*G. Brown.*

Example VII.--A Simile.

"Yet to their general's voice they soon obey'd Innumerable. As when the potent rod Of Amram's son, in
Egypt's evil day, Wav'd round the coast, up call'd a pitchy cloud Of locusts, warping on the eastern wind, That

o'er the realm of impious Pharaoh hung Like night, and darken'd all the land of Nile."--*Milton*.

Example VIII.--Elegiac Stanza.

Thy name is dear--'tis virtue balm'd in love; Yet e'en thy name a pensive sadness brings. Ah! wo the day, our hearts were doom'd to prove, That fondest love but points affliction's stings!--*G. Brown*.

Example IX.--Cupid.

Zephyrs, moving bland, and breathing fragrant With the sweetest odours of the spring, O'er the winged boy, a thoughtless vagrant, Slumb'ring in the grove, their perfumes fling.--*G. Brown*.

Example X.--Divine Power.

When the winds o'er Gennesaret roar'd, And the billows tremendously rose, The Saviour but utter'd the word, They were hush'd to the calmest repose.--*G. Brown*.

Example XI.--Invitation.

Come from the mount of the leopard, spouse, Come from the den of the lion; Come to the tent of thy shepherd, spouse, Come to the mountain of Zion.--*G. Brown*.

Example XII.--Admonition.

In the days of thy youth, Remember thy God: O! forsake not his truth, Incur not his rod.--*G. Brown*.

Example XIII.--Commendation.

Constant and duteous, Meek as the dove, How art thou beauteous, Daughter of love!--*G. Brown*.

EXERCISE IX.--SCANNING.

Mark the feet and syllables which compose the following lines--or mark a sample of each metre.

Edwin, an Ode.

I. STROPHE.

Led by the pow'r of song, and nature's love, Which raise the soul all vulgar themes above, The mountain grove Would Edwin rove, In pensive mood, alone; And seek the woody dell, Where noontide shadows fell, Cheering, Veering, Mov'd by the zephyr's swell. Here nurs'd he thoughts to genius only known, When nought was heard around But sooth'd the rest profound Of rural beauty on her mountain throne. Nor less he lov'd (rude nature's child) The elemental conflict wild; When, fold on fold, above was pil'd The watery swathe, careering on the wind. Such scenes he saw With solemn awe, As in the presence of the Eternal Mind. Fix'd he gaz'd, Tranc'd and rais'd, Sublimely rapt in awful pleasure undefin'd.

II. ANTISTROPHE

Reckless of dainty joys, he finds delight Where feebler souls but tremble with affright. Lo! now, within the deep ravine, A black impending cloud Infolds him in its shroud, And dark and darker glooms the scene. Through the thicket streaming, Lightnings now are gleaming; Thunders rolling dread, Shake the mountain's head; Nature's war Echoes far, O'er ether borne, That flash The ash Has scath'd and torn! Now it rages; Oaks

of ages, Writhing in the furious blast, Wide their leafy honours cast; Their gnarled arms do force to force oppose Deep rooted in the crevic'd rock, The sturdy trunk sustains the shock, Like dauntless hero firm against assailing foes.

III. EPODE.

'O Thou who sitst above these vapours dense, And rul'st the storm by thine omnipotence! Making the collied cloud thy ear, Coursing the winds, thou rid'st afar, Thy blessings to dispense. The early and the latter rain, Which fertilize the dusty plain, Thy bounteous goodness pours. Dumb be the atheist tongue abhorr'd! All nature owns thee, sovereign Lord! And works thy gracious will; At thy command the tempest roars, At thy command is still. Thy mercy o'er this scene sublime presides; 'Tis mercy forms the veil that hides The ardent solar beam; While, from the volley'd breast of heaven, Transient gleams of dazzling light, Flashing on the balls of sight, Make darkness darker seem. Thou mov'st the quick and sulphurous leven-- The tempest-driven Cloud is riven; And the thirsty mountain-side Drinks gladly of the gushing tide.' So breath'd young Edwin, when the summer shower, From out that dark o'erchamb'ring cloud, With lightning flash and thunder loud, Burst in wild grandeur o'er his solitary bower.--*G. Brown.*

THE END OF PART FOURTH.

KEY TO THE IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION, CONTAINED IN THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS, AND DESIGNED FOR ORAL EXERCISES UNDER ALL THE RULES AND NOTES OF THE WORK.

[Fist][The various examples of error which are exhibited for oral correction, in the Grammar of English Grammars, are all here explained, in their order, by full amended readings, sometimes with authorities specified, and generally with references of some sort. They are intended to be corrected orally by the pupil, according to the formules given under corresponding heads in the Grammar. Some portion, at least, under each rule or note, should be used in this way; and the rest, perhaps, may be read and compared more simply.]

THE KEY.--PART I.--ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.

--OF LETTERS. CORRECTIONS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

UNDER RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

"Many a reader of the *Bible* knows not who wrote the *Acts* of the *Apostles*"--G. B. "The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, were written in the book of the *Chronicles*."--ALGER'S BIBLE: *Neh.*, xii, 23. "Are they not written in the book of the *Acts* of Solomon?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: I *Kings*, xi, 41. "Are they not written in the book of the *Chronicles* of the *Kings* of Israel?"--ALGER CORRECTED: I *Kings*, xxii, 39. "Are they not written in the book of the *Chronicles* of the *Kings* of Judah."--See ALGER: *ib.*, ver. 45. "Which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the *Psalms*."--ALGER, ET AL.: *Luke*, xxiv, 44. "The narrative of which maybe seen in Josephus's History of the *Jewish War*"--Dr. Scott cor. [Obs.--The word in Josephus is "War," not "Wars."--G. Brown.] "This *History of the Jewish War* was Josephus's first work, and published about A. D. 75."--Whiston cor. "I have read," says Photius, 'the Chronology of Justus of Tiberias.'"--Id. "A *Philosophical Grammar*, written by James Harris, Esquire."--Murray cor. "The reader is referred to Stroud's *Sketch of the Slave Laws*"--A. S. Mag. cor. "But God has so made the *Bible* that it interprets itself."--Idem. "In 1562, with the help of Hopkins, he completed the *Psalter*."--Gardiner cor. "Gardiner says this of Sternhold; of whom the *Universal Biographical Dictionary* and the American *Encyclopedia* affirm, that he died in 1549."--G. B. "The title of a book, to wit: 'English Grammar in *Familiar Lectures*,'" &c.--Kirkham cor. "We had not, at that time, seen Mr. Kirkham's 'Grammar in *Familiar Lectures*.'"--Id. "When you parse, you may spread the *Compendium* before you."--Id. right.[516] "Whenever you parse, you may spread the *Compendium* before you."--Id. cor. "Adelung was the author of a *Grammatical* and *Critical Dictionary* of the German *Language*, and other works." *Biog. Dict. cor.* "Alley, William, author of '*The Poor Man's Library*,' and a translation of the Pentateuch, died in 1570."--Id.

UNDER RULE II.--OF FIRST WORDS.

"Depart instantly;"--"Improve your time;"--"Forgive us our sins."--Murray corrected. EXAMPLES:--"Gold is corrupting;"--"The sea is green;"--"A lion is bold."--Mur. et al. cor. Again: "It may rain;"--"He may go or stay;"--"He would walk;"--"They should learn."--Idem. Again: "Oh! I have alienated my friend;"--"Alas! I fear for life."--Idem. See *Alger's Gram.*, p. 50. Again: "He went from London to York;"--"She is above disguise;" "They are supported by industry."--Idem. "On the foregoing examples, I have a word to say. *They* are better than a fair specimen of their kind. *Our* grammars abound with worse illustrations. *Their* models of English are generally spurious quotations. *Few* of their proof-texts have any just parentage. *Goose-eyes* are abundant, but names scarce. *Who* fathers the foundlings? *Nobody*. Then let their merit be nobody's, and their defects his who could write no better."--Author. "*Goose-eyes*!" says a bright boy; "pray, what are they? *Does* this Mr. Author make new words when he pleases? *Dead-eyes* are in a ship. *They* are blocks, with holes in them. *But* what are goose-eyes in grammar?" ANSWER: "*Goose-eyes* are quotation points. *Some* of the Germans gave them this name, making a jest of their form. The French call them *guillemets*, from the name of their inventor."--Author. "It is a personal pronoun, of the third person singular."--Comly cor. "*Ourselves* is a personal pronoun, of the first person plural."--Id. "*Thee* is a personal pronoun, of the second person singular."--Id. "*Contentment* is a common noun, of the third person singular."--Id. "*Were* is a neuter verb, of the indicative mood, imperfect tense."--Id.

UNDER RULE III.--OF DEITY.

"O thou *Dispenser* of life! thy mercies are boundless."--Allen cor. "Shall not the *Judge* of all the earth do right?"--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Gen.*, xviii, 25. "And the *Spirit of God* moved upon the face of the waters."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Gen.*, i, 2. "It is the gift of *Him*, who is the great *Author* of good, and the Father of mercies."--Murray cor. "This is thy *God* that brought thee up out of Egypt."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Neh.*, ix, 18. "For the LORD is our defence; and the *Holy One* of Israel is our

King.--*Psal.* lxxxix, 18. "By making him the responsible steward of *Heaven's* bounties."--*A. S. Mag. cor.* "Which the Lord, the righteous *Judge*, shall give me at that day."--*ALGER: 2 Tim.*, iv, 8. "The cries of them ... entered into the ears of the Lord of *Sabaoth*."--*ALGER, FRIENDS: James*, v, 4. "In Horeb, the *Deity* revealed himself to Moses, as the *Eternal 'I AM,'* the *Self-existent One*; and, after the first discouraging interview of his messengers with Pharaoh, he renewed his promise to them, by the awful name, JEHOVAH--a name till then unknown, and one which the Jews always held it a fearful profanation to pronounce."--*G. Brown*. "And *God* spake unto Moses, and said unto him, I am the LORD: and I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of *God Almighty*; but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them."--*SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS: Exod.*, vi, 2. "Thus saith the LORD[517] the *King* of Israel, and his *Redeemer* the LORD of hosts; I am the *First*, and I am the *Last*; and besides me there is no *God*."--See *Isa.*, xlv, 6.

"His impious race their blasphemy renew'd, And nature's *King*, through nature's optics view'd."--*Dryden cor.*

UNDER RULE IV.--OF PROPER NAMES.

"Islamism prescribes fasting during the month *Ramadan*."--*Balbi cor.* "Near *Mecca*, in *Arabia*, is *Jebel Nor*, or the *Mountain of Light*, on the top of which the *Mussulmans* erected a mosque, that they might perform their devotions where, according to their belief, *Mohammed* received from the angel *Gabriel* the first chapter of the Koran."--*G. Brown*. "In the *Kaaba* at *Mecca* there is a celebrated block of volcanic basalt, which the *Mohammedans* venerate as the gift of *Gabriel* to *Abraham*, but their ancestors once held it to be an image of *Remphan*, or *Saturn*; so 'the image which fell down from *Jupiter*,' to share with *Diana* the homage of the *Ephesians*, was probably nothing more than a meteoric stone."--*Id.* "When the *Lycaonians* at *Lystra* took *Paul* and *Barnabas* to be gods, they called the former *Mercury*, on account of his eloquence, and the latter *Jupiter*, for the greater dignity of his appearance."--*Id.* "Of the writings of the apostolic fathers of the first century, but few have come down to us; yet we have in those of *Barnabas*, *Clement of Rome*, *Hermas*, *Ignatius*, and *Polycarp*, very certain evidence of the authenticity of the New Testament, and the New Testament is a voucher for the Old."--*Id.* "It is said by *Tatian*, that *Theagenes* of *Rhégium*, in the time of *Cambyses*, *Stesimbrotus* the *Thracian*, *Antimachus* the *Colophonian*, *Herodotus* of *Halicarnassus*, *Dionysius* the *Olynthian*, *Ephorus* of *Cumæ*, *Philochorus* the *Athenian*, *Metaclides* and *Chamæleon* the *Peripatetics*, and *Zenodotus*, *Aristophanes*, *Callimachus*, *Crates*, *Eratosthenes*, *Aristarchus*, and *Apollodorus*, the grammarians, all wrote concerning the poetry, the birth, and the age of *Homer*."--See *Coleridge's Introd.*, p. 57. "Yet, for aught that now appears, the life of *Homer* is as fabulous as that of *Hercules*; and some have even suspected, that, as the son of *Jupiter* and *Alcmena* has fathered the deeds of forty other *Herculeses*, so this unfathered son of *Critheis*, *Themisto*, or whatever dame--this *Melesigenes*, *Mæonides*, *Homer*--the blind schoolmaster, and poet, of *Smyrna*, *Chios*, *Colophon*, *Salamis*, *Rhodes*, *Argos*, *Athens*, or whatever place--has, by the help of *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, *Pisistratus*, and other learned ancients, been made up of many poets or *Homers*, and set so far aloft and aloof on old *Parnassus*, as to become a god in the eyes of all *Greece*, a wonder in those of all *Christendom*."--*G. Brown*.

"Why so sagacious in your guesses? Your *Effs*, and *Tees*, and *Ars*, and *Esses*?"--*Swift corrected*.

UNDER RULE V.--OF TITLES.

"The king has conferred on him the title of *Duke*."--*Murray cor.* "At the court of *Queen Elizabeth*."--*Priestley's E. Gram.*, p. 99; see *Bullions's*, p. 24. "The laws of nature are, truly, what *Lord Bacon* styles his aphorisms, laws of laws."--*Murray cor.* "Sixtus the Fourth was, if I mistake not, a great collector of books."--*Id.* "Who at that time made up the court of *King Charles the Second*"--*Id.* "In case of his *Majesty's* dying without issue."--*Kirkham cor.* "King *Charles the First* was beheaded in 1649."--*W. Allen cor.* "He can no more impart, or (to use *Lord Bacon's* word) *transmit* convictions."--*Kirkham cor.* "I reside at *Lord Stormont's*, my old patron and benefactor." Better: "I reside with *Lord Stormont*, my old patron and benefactor."--*Murray cor.* "We staid a month at *Lord Lyttelton's*, the ornament of his country." Much better:

"We stayed a month at *the seat of Lord Lyttelton, who is the ornament of his country.*"--*Id.* "Whose prerogative is it? It is the *King-of-Great-Britain's*;" [518]--"That is the *Duke-of-Bridgewater's canal*;"--"The *Bishop-of-Landaff's* excellent book;"--"The *Lord Mayor-of-London's* authority."--*Id.* (See Murray's Note 4th on his Rule 10th.) "Why call ye me, *Lord, Lord*, and do not the things which I say?"--*Luke*, vi, 46. "And of them he chose twelve, whom also he named *Apostles.*"--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Luke*, vi, 13. "And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, Hail, *Master*; and kissed him."--*Matt.*, xxvi, 49. "And he said, Nay, *Father Abraham*: but if one went unto them from the dead, they *would* repent."--*Bible cor.*

UNDER RULE VI.--OF ONE CAPITAL.

"*Fallriver*, a village in Massachusetts, population (in 1830) 3,431."--*Williams cor.* "Dr. Anderson died at *Westham*, in Essex, in 1808."--*Biog. Dict. cor.* "*Madrivier*, the name of two towns in Clark and Champaign counties, Ohio."--*Williams cor.* "*Whitcreek*, a town of Washington county, New York."--*Id.* "*Saltcreek*, the name of four towns in different parts of Ohio."--*Id.* "*Saltlick*, a town of Fayette county, Pennsylvania."--*Id.* "*Yellowcreek*, a town of Columbiana county, Ohio."--*Id.* "*Whiteclay*, a hundred of *Newcastle* county, Delaware."--*Id.* "*Newcastle*, a town and *half-shire* of Newcastle county, Delaware."--*Id.* "*Singsing*, a village of *Westchester* county, New York, situated in the town of *Mountpleasant.*"--*Id.* "*Westchester*, a county of New York: *East Chester* and *West Chester* are towns in Westchester county."--*Id.* "*Westtown*, a village of Orange county, New York."--*Id.* "*Whitewater*, a town of Hamilton county, Ohio."--*Worcester's Gaz.* "*Whitewater* River, a considerable stream that rises in Indiana, and flowing southeasterly unites with the Miami in Ohio."--See *ib.* "*Blackwater*, a village of Hampshire, in England, and a town in Ireland."--See *ib.* "*Blackwater*, the name of seven different rivers, in England, Ireland, and the United States."--See *ib.* "*Redhook*, a town of Dutchess county, New York, on the Hudson."--*Williams cor.* "*Kinderhook*, a town of Columbia county, New York, on the Hudson."--*Williams right.* "*Newfane*, a town of Niagara county, New York."--*Williams cor.* "*Lakeport*, a town of Chicot county, Arkansas."--*Id.* "*Moosehead* Lake, the chief source of the Kennebeck, in Maine."--*Id.* (See *Worcester's Gaz.*) "*Macdonough*, a county of Illinois, population (in 1830) 2,959."--*Williams's Univ. Gaz.*, p 408. "*Macdonough*, a county of Illinois, with a *court-house* at *Macomb.*"--*Williams cor.* "*Halfmoon*, the name of two towns in New York and Pennsylvania; also of two bays in the West Indies."--*S. Williams's Univ. Gaz.* "*Leboeuf*, a town of Erie county, Pennsylvania, near a small lake of the same name."--See *ib.* "*Charlescity*, *Jamescity*, *Elizabethcity*, names of counties in Virginia, not cities, nor towns."--See *Univ. Gaz.*, p. 404.[519] "The superior qualities of the waters of the Frome, here called *Stroudwater.*"--*Balbi cor.*

UNDER RULE VII.--OF TWO CAPITALS.

"The Forth rises on the north side of *Ben Lomond*, and runs easterly."--*Glasgow Geog.*, 8vo, *corrected.* "The red granite of *Ben Nevis* is said to be the finest in the world."--*Id.* "*Ben More*, in Perthshire, is 3,915 feet above the level of the sea."--*Id.* "The height of *Ben Cleagh* is 2,420 feet."--*Id.* "In Sutherland and Caithness, are *Ben Ormod*, *Ben Clibeg*, *Ben Grin*, *Ben Hope*, and *Ben Lugal.*"--*Glas. Geog. right.* "*Ben Vracky* is 2,756 feet high; *Ben Ledi*, 3,009; and *Ben Voirloich*, 3,300."--*Glas. Geog. cor.* "The river *Dochart* gives the name of *Glen Dochart* to the vale through which it runs."--*Id.* "About ten miles from its source, it [the Tay] diffuses itself into *Loch Dochart.*"--*Glasgow Geog.*, Vol. ii, p. 314. LAKES:--"*Loch Ard*, *Loch Achray*, *Loch Con*, *Loch Doine*, *Loch Katrine*, *Loch Lomond*, *Loch Voil.*"--*Scott corrected.* GLENS:--"*Glen Finlas*, *Glen Fruin*, *Glen Luss*, *Ross Dhu*, *Leven Glen*, *Strath Endrick*, *Strath Gartney*. *Strath Ire.*"--*Id.* MOUNTAINS:--"*Ben An*, *Ben Harrow*, *Ben Ledi*, *Ben Lomond*, *Ben Voirlich*, *Ben Venue*, or, (as some spell it,) *Ben Ivenew.*"--*Id.*[520] "*Fenelon* died in 1715, deeply lamented by all the inhabitants of the *Low Countries.*"--*Murray cor.* "And *Pharaoh Necho*[521] made *Eliakim*, the son of *Josiah*, king."--See ALGER: *2 Kings*, xiii, 34. "Those who seem so merry and well pleased, call her *Good Fortune*; but the others, who weep and wring their hands, *Bad Fortune.*"--*Collier cor.*

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"When Joab returned, and smote Edom in the *Valley of Salt*"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Ps.* lx, title. "Then Paul stood in the midst of *Mars Hill*, and said," &c.--*Scott cor.* "And at night he went out, and abode in the mount that is called the *Mount of Olives*."--*Bible cor.* "Abgillus, son of the king of the Frisii, surnamed Prester John, was in the Holy *Land* with Charlemagne."--*U. Biog. Dict. cor.* "Cape Palmas, in Africa, divides the *Grain Coast* from the *Ivory Coast*."--*Dict. of Geog. cor.* "The North Esk, flowing from *Loch Lee*, falls into the sea three miles north of *Montrose*."--*Id.* "At *Queen's Ferry*, the channel of the Forth is contracted by promontories on both coasts."--*Id.* "The *Chestnut Ridge* is about twenty-five miles west of the *Alleghanies*, and *Laurel Ridge*, ten miles further west."--*Balbi cor.* "*Washington City*, the metropolis of the United States of America."--*Williams, U. Caz.*, p. 380. "*Washington City*, in the District of Columbia, population (in 1830) 18,826."--*Williams cor.* "The loftiest peak of the *White Mountains*, in New Hampshire, is called *Mount Washington*."--*G. Brown.* "*Mount's Bay*, in the west of England, lies between the *Land's End* and *Lizard Point*."--*Id.* "*Salamis*, an island of the *Egean Sea*, off the southern coast of the ancient *Attica*."--*Dict. of Geog.* "*Rhodes*, an island of the *Egean Sea*, the largest and most easterly of the *Cyclades*."--*Id. cor.* "But he overthrew Pharaoh and his host in the *Red Sea*."--SCOTT: *Ps.* cxxxvi, 15. "But they provoked him at the sea, even at the *Red Sea*."--ALGER, FRIENDS: *Ps.* cvi, 7.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF APPOSITION.

"At that time, Herod the *tetrarch* heard of the fame of Jesus."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Matt.*, xiv, 1. "Who has been more detested than Judas the *traitor*?"--*G. Brown.* "St. Luke the *evangelist* was a physician of Antioch, and one of the converts of St. Paul."--*Id.* "Luther, the *reformer*, began his bold career by preaching against papal indulgences."--*Id.* "The *poet* Lydgate was a disciple and admirer of Chaucer: he died in 1440."--*Id.* "The *grammarian* Varro, 'the most learned of the Romans,'[522] wrote three books when he was eighty years old."--*Id.* "John Despauter, the great *grammarian* of Flanders, whose works are still valued, died in 1520."--*Id.* "Nero, the *emperor* and *tyrant* of Rome, slew himself to avoid a worse death."--*Id.* "Cicero the *orator*, 'the Father of his Country,' was assassinated at the age of 64."--*Id.* "Euripides, the Greek *tragedian*, was born in the *island* of *Salamis*, B. C. 476."--*Id.* "I will say unto God my *rock*, Why hast thou forgotten me?"--ALGER, ET AL.: *Ps.* xlii, 9. "Staten Island, an island of New York, nine miles below New York city."--*Williams cor.* "When the son of Atreus, *king of men*, and the noble Achilles first separated."--*Coleridge cor.*

"Hermes, his *patron-god*, those gifts bestow'd, Whose shrine with *weanling* lambs he wont to load."--*Pope cor.*

UNDER RULE X.--OF PERSONIFICATIONS.

"But *Wisdom* is justified of all her children."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Luke*, vii, 35. "Fortune and the *Church* are generally put in the feminine gender: that is, when personified." "Go to your *Natural Religion*; lay before her Mahomet and his disciples."--*Bp. Sherlock.* "O *Death!* where is thy sting? O *Grave!* where is thy victory."--*Pope: 1 Cor.*, xv, 55; *Merchant's Gram.*, p. 172. "Ye cannot serve God and Mammon."--*Matt.*, vi, 24. "Ye cannot serve God and *Mammon*"--See *Luke*, xvi, 13. "This house was built as if *Suspicion* herself had dictated the plan."--*Rasselas.* "Poetry distinguishes herself from *Prose*, by yielding to a musical law."--*Music of Nature*, p. 501. "My beauteous deliverer thus uttered her divine instructions: 'My name is *Religion*. I am the offspring of *Truth* and *Love*, and the parent of *Benevolence*, *Hope*, and *Joy*. That monster, from whose power I have freed you, is called *Superstition*: she is called the child of *Discontent*, and her followers are *Fear* and *Sorrow*.'"--*E. Carter.* "Neither *Hope* nor *Fear* could enter the retreats; and *Habit* had so absolute a power, that even *Conscience*, if *Religion* had employed her in their favour, would not have been able to force an entrance."--*Dr. Johnson.*

"In colleges and halls in ancient days, There dwelt a sage called *Discipline*."--*Cowper.*

UNDER RULE XI.--OF DERIVATIVES.

"In English, I would have *Gallicisms* avoided."--*Felton*. "Sallust was born in Italy, 85 years before the *Christian* era."--*Murray cor.*; "Dr. Doddridge was not only a great man, but one of the most excellent and useful *Christians*, and *Christian* ministers."--*Id.* "They corrupt their style with untutored *Anglicisms*"--*Milton*. "Albert of Stade, author of a chronicle from the creation to 1286, a *Benedictine* of the 13th century."--*Biog. Dict. cor.* "Graffio, a *Jesuit* of Capua in the 16th century, author of two volumes on moral subjects."--*Id.* "They *Frenchify* and *Italianize* words whenever they can."--*Bucke's Gram.*, p. 86. "He who sells a *Christian*, sells the grace of God."--*Mag. cor.* "The first persecution against the *Christians*, under Nero, began A. D. 64."--*Gregory cor.* "P. Rapin, the *Jesuit*, uniformly decides in favour of the Roman writers."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 248. "The Roman poet and *Epicurean* philosopher Lucretius has said," &c.--*Cohen cor.* Spell "*Calvinistic*, *Atticism*, *Gothicism*, *Epicurism*, *Jesuitism*, *Sabianism*, *Socinianism*, *Anglican*, *Anglicism*, *Anglicize*, *Vandalism*, *Gallicism*, and *Romanize*."--*Webster cor.* "The large *Ternate* bat."--*Id. and Bolles cor.*

"Church-ladders are not always mounted best By learned clerks, and *Latinists* profess'd"--*Cowper cor.*

UNDER RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

"Fall back, fall back; *I* have not room:--*O!* methinks *I* see a couple whom *I* should know."--*Lucian*. "Nay, *I* live as *I* did, *I* think as *I* did, *I* love you as *I* did; but all these are to no purpose; the world will not live, think, or love, as *I* do."--*Swift to Pope*. "Whither, *O!* whither shall *I* fly? *O* wretched prince! *O* cruel reverse of fortune! *O* father Micipsa! is this the consequence of thy generosity?"--*Tr. of Sallust*. "When *I* was a child, *I* spake as a child, *I* understood as a child, *I* thought as a child; but when *I* became a man, *I* put away childish things."--*I Cor.*, xiii, 11. "And *I* heard, but *I* understood not; then said *I*, *O* my Lord, what shall be the end of these things?"--*Dan.*, xii, 8. "Here am *I*; *I* think *I* am very good, and *I* am quite sure *I* am very happy, yet *I* never wrote a treatise in my life."--*Few Days in Athens*, p. 127. "Singular, Vocative, *O master!* Plural, Vocative, *O masters!*"--*Bicknell cor.*

"*I*, *I* am he; *O* father! rise, behold Thy son, with twenty winters now grown old!" --*Pope's Odyssey*, B. 24, l. 375.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

"Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense, *Lie* in three words--health, peace, and competence; *But* health consists with temperance alone, *And* peace, *O* Virtue! peace is all thy own."--*Pope*.

"Observe the language well in all you write, *And* swerve not from it in your loftiest flight. The smoothest verse and the exactest sense *Displease* us, if ill English give offence: *A* barbarous phrase no reader can approve; *Nor* bombast, noise, or affectation love. In short, without pure language, what you write *Can* never yield us profit or delight. Take time for thinking; never work in haste; *And* value not yourself for writing fast."--*Dryden*.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

"The word *rather* is very properly used to express a small degree or excess of a quality; as, '*She is rather* profuse in her expenses.'"--*Murray cor.* "*Neither* imports *not either*; that is, not one nor the other: as, '*Neither* of my friends was there.'"--*Id.* "When we say, '*He is a tall man*,'--'*This is a fair day*,' we make some reference to the ordinary size of men, and to different weather."--*Id.* "We more readily say, '*A million of men*,' than, '*A thousand of men*.'"--*Id.* "So in the instances, '*Two and two are four*;'--'*The fifth and sixth volumes will complete the set of books*.'"--*Id.* "The adjective may frequently either precede or follow the verb: as, '*The man is happy*;' or, '*Happy is the man*;'--'*The interview was delightful*;' or, '*Delightful was the interview*.'"--*Id.* "If we say, '*He writes a pen*;'--'*They ran the river*;'--'*The tower fell the Greeks*;'--'*Lambeth is Westminster Abbey*;'--[we speak absurdly;] and, it is evident, there is a vacancy which must be filled up by some connecting word: as thus, '*He writes with a pen*;'--'*They ran towards the river*;'--'*The tower fell upon the*

Greeks; '--Lambeth is *over against* Westminster Abbey."--*Id.* "Let me repeat it;--*He* only is great, who has the habits of greatness."--*Id.* "I say not unto thee, *Until* seven times; but, *Until* seventy times seven."--*Matt.*, xviii, 22.

"The Panther smil'd at this; and, 'When,' said she, 'Were those first councils disallow'd by me?'"--*Dryd. cor.*

UNDER RULE XV.--OF CHIEF WORDS.

"The supreme council of the nation is called the *Divan*."--*Balbi cor.* "The British *Parliament* is composed of *King*, *Lords*, and *Commons*."--*Comly's Gram.*, p. 129; and *Jaudon's*, 127. "A popular orator in the House of Commons has a sort of patent for coining as many new terms as he pleases."--See *Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 169; *Murray's Gram.*, 364. "They may all be taken together, as one name; as, 'The House of Commons.'"--*Merchant cor.* "Intrusted to persons in whom the *Parliament* could confide."--*Murray cor.* "For 'The Lords' House,' it were certainly better to say, 'The House of Lords;' and, in stead of 'The Commons' vote,' to say, 'The vote of the Commons.'"--*Id. and Priestley cor.* "The House of Lords were so much influenced by these reasons."--*Idem.* "Rhetoricians commonly divide them into two great classes; *Figures of Words*, and *Figures of Thought*. The former, *Figures of Words*, are commonly called *Tropes*."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 337. "Perhaps, *Figures of Imagination*, and *Figures of Passion*, might be a more useful distribution."--*Ib.* "Hitherto we have considered sentences, under the heads of *Perspicuity*, *Unity*, and *Strength*."--See *Murray's Gram.*, p. 356.

"The word is then depos'd; and, in this view, You rule the *Scripture*, not the *Scripture* you."--*Dryd. cor.*

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

"Be of good cheer; *it* is I; be not afraid."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, AND SCOTT'S: *Matt.*, xiv, 27. "Between passion and lying, there is not a *finger's* breadth."--*Mur. cor.* "Can our *solicitude* alter the course, or unravel the intricacy, of human events?" "The last edition was carefully compared with the *original manuscript*."--*Id.* "And the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the *king* of the Jews?"--SCOTT: *Matt.*, xxvii, 11. "Let them be turned back for a reward of their shame, that say, Aha, *aha*!"--SCOTT ET AL.: *Ps.*, lxx, 3. "Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame, that say unto me, Aha, *aha*!"--IIDEM: *Ps.*, xl, 15. "What think ye of Christ? whose *son* is he? They say unto him, The *son* of David. He saith unto them, How then doth David in *spirit* call him Lord?"--ALGER: *Matt.*, xxii, 42, 43. "Among all *things* in the *universe*, direct your *worship* to the *greatest*. And which is that? *It* is that Being *who manages* and *governs* all the rest."--*Collier's Antoninus cor.* "As for *modesty* and *good faith*, *truth* and *justice*, they have left this wicked *world* and retired to *heaven*; and now what is it that can keep you here?"--*Idem.*

"If pulse of verse a nation's temper shows, In keen iambics English metre flows."--*Brightland cor.*

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Come, gentle *Spring*, *ethereal* mildness, come."--*Thomson's Seasons*, p. 29. As, "He is the Cicero of his age;"--"He is reading the *Lives* of the Twelve Cæsars;"--or, if no particular book is meant,--"the *lives* of the *twelve* Cæsars;" (as it is in *Fisk's Grammar*, p. 57;) for the sentence, as it stands in Murray, is ambiguous. "In the *History* of Henry the *Fourth*, by *Father* Daniel, we are *surprised* at not finding him the great man."--*Smollett's Voltaire*, Vol. v, p. 82. "Do not those same poor peasants use the *lever*, and the *wedge*, and many other instruments?"--*Harris and Mur. cor.* "Arithmetic is excellent for the gauging of *liquors*; *geometry*, for the measuring of *estates*; *astronomy*, for the making of *almanacs*; and *grammar*, perhaps, for the drawing of *bonds* and *conveyances*."--See *Murray's Gram.*, p. 288. "The [*History* of the] *Wars* of Flanders, written in Latin by *Famianus Strada*, is a book of some note."--*Blair cor.* "*William* is a noun. *Why?* *Was* is a verb. *Why?* *A* is an article. *Why?* *Very* is an adverb. *Why?*" &c.--*Merchant cor.* "In the beginning was

the *Word*, and that *Word* was with God, and God was that *Word*."--See *Gospel of John*, i, 1. "The *Greeks* are numerous in *Thessaly*, *Macedonia*, *Romelia*, and *Albania*."--*Balbi's Geog.*, p. 360. "He [the Grand Seignior] is styled by the Turks, Sultan, Mighty, or Padishah, *Lord*."--*Balbi cor.* "I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death. O *Death*! I will be thy *plague*; O *Grave*! I will be thy destruction."--*Bible cor.* "Silver and *gold* have I none; but such as I have, give I [unto] thee."--See *Acts*, iii, 6. "Return, we beseech thee, O God of *hosts*! look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine."--See *Psalms* lxxx, 14. "In the Attic *commonwealth*, it was the privilege of every citizen to rail in public."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 316. "They assert, that in the phrases, 'GIVE me *that*,'--'This is John's,' and, 'Such were some of you,'--the words in *Italics* are pronouns; but that, in the following phrases, they are not pronouns: 'This book is instructive;'--'Some boys are ingenious;'--'My health is declining;'--'Our hearts are deceitful.'"--*Murray partly corrected*. [523] "And the coast bends again to the northwest, as far as *Farout Head*."--*Geog. cor.* "Dr. Webster, and other makers of spelling-books, very improperly write *Sunday*, *Monday*, *Tuesday*, *Wednesday*, *Thursday*, *Friday*, and *Saturday*, without capitals."--*G. Brown*. "The commander in chief of the Turkish navy is styled the *Capitan Pacha*."--*Balbi cor.* "Shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the *Father* of spirits, and live?"--ALGER'S BIBLE: *Heb.*, xii, 9. "He [Dr. Beattie] was more anxious to attain the character of a *Christian hero*."--*Murray cor.* "Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is *Mount Zion*."--*W. Allen's Gram.*, p. 393. "The Lord is my *helper*, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me."--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Heb.*, xiii, 6. "Make haste to help me, O LORD my *salvation*."--IIDEM: *Psalms*, xxxviii, 22.

"The *city* which *thou* seest, no other deem Than great and glorious Rome, *queen* of the *earth*." --*Paradise Regained*, B. iv.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"That range of hills, known under the general name of *Mount Jura*."--*Account of Geneva*. "He rebuked the Red *Sea* also, and it was dried up."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Ps.* cvi, 9. "Jesus went unto the *Mount* of Olives."--*Bible cor.* "Milton's book in reply to the *Defence of the King*, by Salmasius, gained him a thousand pounds from the *Parliament*, and killed his antagonist with vexation."--*G. B.* "Mandeville, *Sir John*, an Englishman famous for his travels, born about 1300, died in 1372."--*B. Dict. cor.* "Ettrick *Pen*, a mountain in Selkirkshire, Scotland, height 2,200 feet."--*G. Geog. cor.* "The coast bends from *Dungsby Head*, in a northwest direction, to the promontory of *Dunnet Head*."--*Id.* "General Gaines ordered a detachment of *nearly* 300 men, under the command of Major Twiggs, to surround and take an Indian *village*, called *Fowltown*, about fourteen miles from *Fort Scott*."--*Cohen Cor.* "And he took the damsel by the hand, and said unto her, 'Talitha, *cumi*.'"--*Bible Editors cor.* "On religious subjects, a frequent *adoption* of *Scripture* language is attended with peculiar force."--*Murray cor.* "Contemplated with gratitude to their Author, the Giver of all *good*."--*Id.* "When he, the Spirit of *truth*, is come, he will guide you into all [the] truth,"--SCOTT, ALGER, ET AL.: *John*, xvi, 13. "See the *Lecture on Verbs*, Rule XV, Note 4th."--*Fisk cor.* "At the commencement of *Lecture* 2d, I informed you that Etymology treats, *thirdly*, of derivation."--*Kirkham cor.* "This 8th *Lecture* is a very important one."--*Id.* "Now read the *11th* and *12th* lectures, four or five times over."--*Id.* "In 1752, he [Henry Home] was advanced to the bench, under the title of *Lord Kames*."--*Murray cor.* "One of his maxims was, 'Know thyself.'"--*Lempriere cor.* "Good *Master*, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: *Matt.*, xix, 16. "His best known works, however, [John Almon's] are, '*Anecdotes of the Life of the Earl of Chatham*,' 2 vols. 4to, 3 vols. 8vo; and '*Biographical, Literary, and Political Anecdotes of several of the Most Eminent Persons of the Present Age*;' never before printed,' 3 vols. 8vo, 1797."--*Biog. Dict. cor.* "O gentle *Sleep*, Nature's soft nurse, how have I frightened thee?"--SHAK.: *Kames, El. of Crit.*, Vol. ii, p. 175. "And *peace*, O *Virtue*! peace is all thy own."--*Pope et al. cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Fenelon united the characters of a nobleman and a *Christian* pastor. His book entitled, '*An Explication of the Maxims of the Saints, concerning the Interior Life*,' gave considerable offence to the guardians of orthodoxy."--*Murray cor.* "When *Natural Religion*, who before was only a spectator, is introduced as

speaking by the *Centurion's* voice."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 347. "You cannot deny, that the great *Mover* and *Author* of nature constantly explaineth himself to the eyes of men, by the sensible intervention of arbitrary signs, which have no similitude to, or connexion with, the things signified."--*Berkley cor.* "The name of this letter is *Double-u*, its form, that of a double V."--*Dr. Wilson cor.* "Murray, in his *Spelling-Book*, wrote *Charlestown* with a *hyphen* and two capitals."--*G. Brown.* "He also wrote *European* without a capital."--*Id.* "They profess themselves to be *Pharisees*, who are to be heard and not imitated."--*Calvin cor.* "Dr. Webster wrote both *Newhaven* and *New York* with single capitals."--*G. Brown.* "*Gay Head*, the west point of Martha's Vineyard."--*Williams cor.* "Write *Crab Orchard, Egg Harbour, Long Island, Perth Amboy, West Hampton, Little Compton, New Paltz, Crown Point, Fell's Point, Sandy Hook, Port Penn, Port Royal, Porto Bello, and Porto Rico.*"--*G. Brown.* "Write the names of the months: *January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.*"--*Id.* "Write the following names and words properly: *Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Saturn;*--*Christ, Christian, Christmas, Christendom, Michaelmas, Indian, Bacchanals;*--*East Hampton, Omega, Johannes, Aonian, Levitical, Deuteronomy, European.*"--*Id.*

"Eight letters in some syllables we find, And no more syllables in words are join'd."--*Brightland cor.*

CHAPTER II.

--OF SYLLABLES.

CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SYLLABICATION.

LESSON I.--CONSONANTS.

1. Correction of *Murray*, in words of two syllables: civ-il, col-our, cop-y, dam-ask, doz-en, ev-er, feath-er, gath-er, heav-en, heav-y, hon-ey, lem-on, lin-en, mead-ow, mon-ey, nev-er, ol-ive, or-ange, oth-er, pheas-ant, pleas-ant, pun-ish, rath-er, read-y, riv-er, rob-in, schol-ar, shov-el, stom-ach, tim-id, whith-er.

2. Correction of *Murray*, in words of three syllables: ben-e-fit, cab-i-net, can-is-ter, cat-a-logue, char-ac-ter, char-i-ty, cov-et-ous, dil-i-gence, dim-i-ty, el-e-phant, ev-i-dent, ev-er-green, friv-o-lous, gath-er-ing, gen-er-ous, gov-ern-ess, gov-ern-or, hon-est-y, kal-en-dar, lav-en-der, lev-er-et, lib-er-al, mem-or-y, min-is-ter, mod-est-ly, nov-el-ty, no-bod-y, par-a-dise, pov-er-ty, pres-ent-ly, prov-i-dence, prop-er-ly, pris-on-er, rav-en-ous, sat-is-fy, sev-er-al, sep-ar-ate, trav-el-ler, vag-a-bond;--con-sid-er, con-tin-ue, de-liv-er, dis-cov-er, dis-fig-ure, dis-hon-est, dis-trib-ute, in-hab-it, me-chan-ic, what-ev-er;--rec-om-mend, ref-u-gee, rep-ri-mand.

3. Correction of *Murray*, in words of four syllables: cat-er-pil-lar, char-i-ta-ble, dil-i-gent-ly, mis-er-a-ble, prof-it-a-ble, tol-er-a-ble;--be-nev-o-lent, con-sid-er-ate, di-min-u-tive, ex-per-i-ment, ex-trav-a-gant, in-hab-i-tant, no-bil-i-ty, par-tic-u-lar, pros-per-i-ty, ri-dic-u-lous, sin-cer-i-ty;--dem-on-stra-tion, ed-u-ca-tion, em-u-la-tion, ep-i-dem-ic, mal-e-fac-tor, man-u-fac-ture, mem-o-ran-dum, mod-er-a-tor, par-a-lyt-ic, pen-i-ten-tial, res-ig-na-tion, sat-is-fac-tion, sem-i-co-lon.

4. Correction of *Murray*, in words of five syllables: a-bom-i-na-ble, a-poth-e-ca-ry, con-sid-er-a-ble, ex-plan-a-to-ry, pre-par-a-to-ry;--ac-a-dem-i-cal, cu-ri-os-i-ty, ge-o-graph-i-cal, man-u-fac-tor-y, sat-is-fac-tor-y, mer-i-to-ri-ous;--char-ac-ter-is-tic, ep-i-gram-mat-ic, ex-per-i-ment-al, pol-y-syl-la-ble, con-sid-er-a-tion.

5. Correction of *Murray*, in the division of proper names: Hel-en, Leon-ard, Phil-ip, Rob-ert, Hor-ace, Thom-as;--Car-o-line, Cath-a-rine, Dan-i-el, Deb-o-rah, Dor-o-thy, Fred-er-ick, Is-a-bel, Jon-a-than, Lyd-i-a, Nich-o-las, Ol-i-ver, Sam-u-el, Sim-e-on, Sol-o-mon, Tim-o-thy, Val-en-tine;--A-mer-i-ca, Bar-thol-o-mew, E-liz-a-beth, Na-than-i-el, Pe-nel-o-pe, The-oph-i-lus.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

1. Correction of *Webster*, by Rule 1st:--ca-price, e-steem, dis-e-steem, o-blige;--a-zure, ma-tron, pa-tron, pha-lanx, si-ren, trai-tor, tren-cher, bar-ber, bur-nish, gar-nish, tar-nish, var-nish, mar-ket, mus-ket, pam-phlet;--bra-ver-y, kna-ver-y, sla-ver-y, e-ven-ing, sce-ner-y, bri-ber-y, ni-ce-ty, chi-ca-ner-y, ma-chin-er-y, im-a-ger-y;--a-sy-lum, ho-ri-zon,--fin-an-cier, her-o-ism, sar-do-nyx, scur-ri-lous,--co-me-di-an, pos-te-ri-or.

2. Correction of *Webster*, by Rule 2d: o-yer, fo-li-o, ge-ni-al, ge-ni-us, ju-ni-or, sa-ti-ate, vi-ti-ate;--am-bro-si-a, cha-me-le-on, par-he-li-on, con-ve-ni-ent, in-ge-ni-ous, om-nis-ci-ence, pe-cu-li-ar, so-ci-a-ble, par-ti-al-i-ty, pe-cu-ni-a-ry;--an-nun-ci-ate, e-nun-ci-ate, ap-pre-ci-ate, as-so-ci-ate, ex-pa-ti-ate, in-gra-ti-ate, in-i-ti-ate, li-cen-ti-ate, ne-go-ti-ate, no-vi-ti-ate, of-fi-ci-ate, pro-pi-ti-ate, sub-stan-ti-ate.

3. Correction of *Cobb* and *Webster*, by each other, under Rule 3d: "dress-er, hast-y, past-ry, seiz-ure, roll-er, jest-er, weav-er, vamp-er, hand-y, dross-y, gloss-y, mov-er, mov-ing, ooz-y, full-er, trust-y, weight-y, nois-y, drows-y, swarth-y."--*Webster*. Again: "east-ern, ful-ly, pul-let, ril-let, scant-y, need-y."--*Cobb*.

4. Correction of *Webster* and *Cobb*, under Rule 4th: a-wry, a-thwart', pros-pect'-ive, pa-ren'-the-sis, re-sist-i-bil'-i-ty, hem-i-spher'-ic, mon'-o-stich, hem'-i-stich, to'-wards.

5. Correction of the words under Rule 5th; Eng-land, an oth-er,[524] Beth-es'-da, Beth-ab'-a-ra.

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

1. Correction of *Cobb*, by Rule 3d: bend-er, bless-ing, brass-y, chaff-y, chant-er, clasp-er, craft-y, curd-y, fend-er, film-y, fust-y, glass-y, graft-er, grass-y, gust-y, hand-ed, mass-y, musk-y, rust-y, swell-ing, tell-er, test-ed, thrift-y, vest-ure.

2. Corrections of *Webster*, mostly by Rule 1st: bar-ber, bur-nish, bris-ket, can-ker, char-ter, cuc-koo, fur-nish, gar-nish, guilt-y, han-ker, lus-ty, por-tal, tar-nish, tes-tate, tes-ty, trai-tor, trea-ty, var-nish, ves-tal, di-ur-nal, e-ter-nal, in-fer-nal, in-ter-nal, ma-ter-nal, noc-tur-nal, pa-ter-nal.

3. Corrections of *Webster*, mostly by Rule 1st: ar-mor-y, ar-ter-y, *butch-er-y*, cook-er-y, eb-on-y, em-er-y, ev-er-y, fel-on-y, fop-per-y, frip-per-y, gal-ler-y, his-tor-y, liv-er-y, lot-ter-y, mock-er-y, *mys-ter-y*,[525] nun-ner-y, or-rer-y, pil-lor-y, quack-er-y, sor-cer-y, witch-er-y.

4. Corrections of *Cobb*, mostly by Rule 1st: an-kle, bas-ket, blan-ket, buc-kle, cac-kle, cran-kle, crin-kle, Eas-ter, fic-kle, frec-kle, knuc-kle, mar-ket, mon-key, por-tress, pic-kle, poul-tice, pun-cheon, quad-rant, quad-rate, squad-ron, ran-kle, shac-kle, sprin-kle, tin-kle, twin-kle, wrin-kle.

5. Corrections of *Emerson*, by Rules 1st and 3d: as-cribe, blan-dish, branch-y, cloud-y, dust-y, drear-y, e-ven-ing, fault-y, filth-y, frost-y, gaud-y, gloom-y, health-y, heark-en, heart-y, hoar-y, leak-y, loun-ger, marsh-y, might-y, milk-y, naught-y, pass-ing, pitch-er, read-y, rock-y, speed-y, stead-y, storm-y, thirst-y, thorn-y, trust-y, vest-ry, west-ern, wealth-y.

CHAPTER III.

--OF WORDS.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING THE FIGURE, OR FORM, OF WORDS.

RULE I.--COMPOUNDS.

"Professing to imitate Timon, the *manhater*."--*Goldsmith corrected*. "Men load hay with a *pitchfork*."--*Webster cor*. "A *peartree* grows from the seed of a pear."--*Id*. "A *toothbrush* is good to brush your teeth."--*Id*. "The mail is opened at the *post-office*."--*Id*. "The error seems to me *twofold*."--*Sanborn cor*. "To *preëngage* means to engage *beforehand*."--*Webster cor*. "It is a mean act to deface the figures on a *milestone*."--*Id*. "A *grange* is a farm, with its *farm-house*."--*Id*. "It is no more right to steal apples or *watermelons*, than [to steal] money."--*Id*. "The *awl* is a tool used by shoemakers and *harness-makers*."--*Id*. "Twenty-five cents are equal to one quarter of a dollar."--*Id*. "The *blowing-up* of the Fulton at New York, was a terrible disaster."--*Id*. "The elders also, and the *bringers-up* of the children, sent to Jehu."--*ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: 2 Kings*, x, 5. "Not with *eyeservice* as *menpleasers*."--*Col.*, iii, 22. "A *good-natured* and equitable construction of cases."--*Ash cor*. "And purify your hearts, ye *double-minded*."--*James*, iv, 8. "It is a *mean-spirited* action to steal; i.e., To steal is a *mean-spirited* action."--*A. Murray cor*. "There is, indeed, one form of orthography which is *akin* to the subjunctive mood of the Latin tongue."--*Booth cor*. "To bring him into nearer connexion with real and *everyday* life."--*Philological Museum*, Vol. i, p. 459. "The *commonplace*, stale declamation of its revilers would be silenced."--*Id. cor*. "She [Cleopatra] formed a very singular and *unheard-of* project."--*Goldsmith cor*. "He [William Tell] had many vigilant, though *feeble-talented* and *mean-spirited* enemies."--*R. Vaux cor*. "These *old-fashioned* people would level our psalmody," &c.--*Gardiner cor*. "This *slow-shifting* scenery in the theatre of harmony."--*Id*. "So we are assured from *Scripture itself*."--*Harris cor*. "The mind, being disheartened, then betakes *itself* to trifling."--*R. Johnson cor*. "*Whosoever* sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them."--*Bible cor*. "Tarry we *ourselves* how we will."--*W. Walker cor*. "Manage your credit so, that you need neither swear *yourself*, nor seek a voucher."--*Collier cor*. "Whereas song never conveys any of the *abovenamed* sentiments."--*Dr. Rush cor*. "I go on *horseback*."--*Guy cor*. "This requires purity, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or *new-coined words*."--*Adam cor*. "May the *ploughshare* shine."--*White cor*. "*Whichever* way we consider it."--*Locke cor*.

"Where'er the silent *e* a place obtains, The voice foregoing, length and softness gains."--*Brightland cor*.

RULE II.--SIMPLES.

"It qualifies any of the four parts of speech *above named*."--*Kirkham cor*. "After a *while* they put us out among the rude multitude."--*Fox cor*. "It would be a *shame*, if your mind should falter and give in."--*Collier cor*. "They stared a *while* in silence one upon an *other*."--*Johnson cor*. "After passion has for a *while* exercised its tyrannical sway."--*Murray cor*. "Though set within the same *general frame* of intonation."--*Rush cor*. "Which do not carry any of the natural *vocal signs* of expression."--*Id*. "The measurable *constructive powers* of a few associable constituents."--*Id*. "Before each accented syllable or emphatic *monosyllabic word*."--*Id*. "One should not think too favourably of *one's self*."--*Murray's Gram.*, i, 154. "Know ye not your *own selves*, how that Jesus Christ is in you?"--*2 Cor.*, xiii, 5. "I judge not my *own self*, for I know nothing of my *own self*."--*See 1 Cor.*, iv, 3. "Though they were in such a rage, I desired them to tarry a *while*."--*Josephus cor*. "A, in *stead* of *an*, is now used before words beginning with *u* long."--*Murray cor*. "John will have earned his wages by next *new year's* day."--*Id*. "A *new year's gift* is a present made on the first day of the year."--*Johnson et al. cor*. "When he sat on the throne, distributing *new year's gifts*."--*Id*. "St. Paul admonishes Timothy to refuse *old wives' fables*."--*See 1 Tim.*, iv, 7. "The world, take it *all together*, is but one."--*Collier cor*. "In writings of this stamp, we must accept of sound in *stead* of sense."--*Murray cor*. "A *male* child, a *female* child; *male* descendants, *female* descendants."--*Goldsbury et al. cor*. "*Male* servants, *female* servants; *male* relations, *female* relations."--*Felton cor*.

"Reserved and cautious, with no partial aim, My muse e'er sought to blast *an other's* fame."--*Lloyd cor.*

RULE III.--THE SENSE.

"Our discriminations of this matter have been but *four-footed* instincts."--*Rush cor.* "He is in the right, (says Clytus,) not to bear *free-born* men at his table."--*Goldsmith cor.* "To the *short-seeing* eye of man, the progress may appear little."--*The Friend cor.* "Knowledge and virtue are, emphatically, the *stepping-stones* to individual distinction."--*Town cor.* "A *tin-peddler* will sell tin vessels as he travels."--*Webster cor.* "The beams of a *wooden house* are held up by the posts and joists."--*Id.* "What you mean by *future-tense* adjective, I can easily understand."--*Tooke cor.* "The town has been for several days very *well-behaved*."--*Spectator cor.* "A *rounce* is the handle of a *printing-press*."--*Webster cor.* "The phraseology [which] we call *thee-and-thouing* [or, better, *thoutheeing*,] is not in so common use with us, as the *tutoyant* among the French."--*Walker cor.* "Hunting and other *outdoor* sports, are generally pursued."--*Balbi cor.* "Come unto me, all ye that labor and are *heavy-laden*."--*Scott et al. cor.* "God so loved the world, that he gave his *only-begotten* Son to save it."--See ALGER'S BIBLE, and FRIENDS': *John*, iii, 16. "Jehovah is a *prayer-hearing* God: Nineveh repented, and was spared."--*Observer cor.* "These are *well-pleasing* to God, in all ranks and relations."--*Barclay cor.* "Whosoever cometh *anything* near unto the tabernacle."--*Bible cor.* "The words coalesce, when they have a *long-established* association."--*Mur. cor.* "Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will go *into* them."--MODERN BIBLE: *Ps.* cxviii, 19. "He saw an angel of God coming *in* to him."--*Acts*, x, 3. "The consequences of any action are to be considered in a *twofold* light."--*Wayland cor.* "We commonly write *twofold*, *threefold*, *fourfold*, and so on up to *tenfold*, without a hyphen; and, after that, we use one."--*G. Brown.* "When the first mark is going off, he cries, *Turn!* the *glassholder* answers, *Done!*"--*Bowditch cor.* "It is a kind of familiar *shaking-hands* (or *shaking of hands*) with all the vices."--*Maturin cor.* "She is a *good-natured* woman;"--"James is *self-opinionated*;"--"He is *broken-hearted*."--*Wright cor.* "These three examples apply to the *present-tense* construction only."--*Id.* "So that it was like a game of *hide-and-go-seek*."--*Gram. cor.*

"That lowliness is young ambition's ladder, Whereto the *climber-upward* turns his face."--*Shak.*

RULE IV.--ELLIPSES.

"This building serves yet for a *schoolhouse* and a meeting-house."--*G. Brown.* "Schoolmasters and *schoolmistresses*, if honest friends, are to be encouraged."--*Discip. cor.* "We never assumed to ourselves a *faith-making* or a *worship-making* power."--*Barclay cor.* "*Potash* and *pearlash* are made from common ashes."--*Webster cor.* "Both the *ten-syllable* and the *eight-syllable* verses are iambics."--*Blair cor.* "I say to myself, thou *say'st* to thyself, he says to himself, &c."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "Or those who have esteemed themselves *skillful*, have tried for the mastery in *two-horse* or *four-horse* chariots."--*Ware cor.* "I remember him barefooted and *bareheaded*, running through the streets."--*Edgeworth cor.* "Friends have the entire control of the *schoolhouse* and *dwelling-house*." Or:--"of the *schoolhouses* and *dwelling-houses*" Or:--"of the *schoolhouse* and the *dwelling-houses*" Or:--"of the *schoolhouses* and the *dwelling-house*." Or:--"of the *school*, and of the *dwelling-houses*." [For the sentence here to be corrected is so ambiguous, that any of these may have been the meaning intended by it.]--*The Friend cor.* "The meeting is held at the *first-mentioned* place in *Firstmonth*; at the *last-mentioned*, in *Secondmonth*; and so on."--*Id.* "Meetings for worship are held, at the same hour, on *Firstday* and *Fourthday*." Or:--"on *Firstdays* and *Fourthdays*."--*Id.* "Every part of it, inside and *outside*, is covered with gold leaf."--*Id.* "The Eastern Quarterly Meeting is held on the last *Seventhday* in *Secondmonth*, *Fifthmonth*, *Eighthmonth*, and *Eleventhmonth*."--*Id.* "Trenton Preparative Meeting is held on the third *Fifthday* in each month, at ten o'clock; meetings for worship [are held,] at the same hour, on *Firstdays* and *Fifthdays*."--*Id.* "Ketch, a vessel with two masts, a *mainmast* and a *mizzenmast*."--*Webster cor.* "I only mean to suggest a doubt, whether nature has enlisted herself [either] as a *Cis-Atlantic* or [as a] *Trans-Atlantic* partisan."--*Jefferson cor.* "By large hammers, like those used for *paper-mills* and *fulling-mills*, they beat their hemp."--*Johnson cor.* "ANT-HILL, or ANT-HILLOCK, n. A small *protuberance* of earth, *formed* by ants, *for* their *habitation*."--*Id.* "It became necessary to substitute simple indicative terms called

pronames or pronouns."

"Obscur'd, where highest woods, impenetrable To *light of star or sun*, their umbrage spread."--*Milton cor.*

RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

"*Evil-thinking*; a noun, compounded of the noun *evil* and the imperfect participle *thinking*; singular number;" &c.--*Churchill cor.* "*Evil-speaking*; a noun, compounded of the noun *evil* and the imperfect participle *speaking*."--*Id.* "I am a tall, *broad-shouldered*, impudent, black fellow."--*Spect.* or *Joh. cor.* "Ingratitude! thou *marble-hearted* fiend."--*Shak.* or *Joh. cor.* "A popular *license* is indeed the *many-headed* tyranny."--*Sydney* or *Joh. cor.* "He from the *many-peopled* city flies."--*Sandys* or *Joh. cor.* "He *many-languaged* nations has surveyed."--*Pope* or *Joh. cor.* "The *horse-cucumber* is the large green cucumber, and the best for the table."--*Mort.* or *Joh. cor.* "The bird of night did sit, even at *noon-day*, upon the market-place."--*Shak.* or *Joh. cor.* "These make a general *gaol-delivery* of souls not for punishment."--*South* or *Joh. cor.* "Thy air, thou other *gold-bound* brow, is like the first."--*Shak.* or *Joh. cor.* "His person was deformed to the highest degree; *flat-nosed* and *blobber-lipped*."--*L'Estr.* or *Joh. cor.* "He that defraudeth the labourer of his hire, is a *blood-shedder*."--*Ecclus.*, xxxiv, 22. "*Bloody-minded*, *adj.*, from *bloody* and *mind*; Cruel, inclined to *bloodshed*."--*Johnson cor.* "*Blunt-witted* lord, ignoble in demeanour."--*Shak.* or *Joh. cor.* "A young fellow, with a *bob-wig* and a black silken bag tied to it."--*Spect.* or *Joh. cor.* "I have seen enough to confute all the *bold-faced* atheists of this age."--*Bramhall* or *Joh. cor.* "Before *milk-white*, now purple with love's wound."--*Joh. Dict.*, w. *Bolt.* "For what else is a *red-hot* iron than fire? and what else is a burning coal than *red-hot* wood?"--*Newton* or *Joh. cor.* "*Poll-evil* is a large swelling, inflammation, or imposthume, in the horse's poll, or nape of the neck, just between the ears."--*Far.* or *Joh. cor.*

"Quick-witted, *brazen-fac'd*, with fluent tongues, Patient of labours, and dissembling wrongs."--*Dryden cor.*

RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

"From his fond parent's eye a *teardrop* fell."--*Snelling cor.* "How great, poor *jackdaw*, would thy sufferings be!"--*Id.* "Placed, like a *scarecrow* in a field of corn."--*Id.* "Soup for the almshouse at a cent a quart."--*Id.* "Up into the *watchtower* get, and see all things despoiled of fallacies."--*Donne* or *Joh. cor.* "In the *daytime* she [Fame] sitteth in a *watchtower*, and flieth most by night."--*Bacon* or *Joh. cor.* "The moral is the first business of the poet, as being the *groundwork* of his instruction."--*Dryd.* or *Joh. cor.* "Madam's own hand the *mousetrap* baited."--*Prior* or *Joh. cor.* "By the sinking of the *airshaft*, the air *has* liberty to circulate."--*Ray* or *Joh. cor.* "The multiform and amazing operations of the *airpump* and the loadstone."--*Watts* or *Joh. cor.* "Many of the *firearms* are named from animals."--*Johnson cor.* "You might have trussed him and all his apparel into an *eelskin*."--*Shak.* or *Joh. cor.* "They may serve as *landmarks*, to show what lies in the direct way of truth."--*Locke* or *Joh. cor.* "A *packhorse* is driven constantly in a narrow lane and dirty road."--*Locke* or *Joh. cor.* "A *millhorse*, still bound to go in one circle."--*Sidney* or *Joh. cor.* "Of singing birds, they have linnets, *goldfinches*, ruddocks, *Canary birds*, *blackbirds*, thrushes, and divers others."--*Carew* or *Joh. cor.* "Cartridge, a case of paper or parchment filled with *gunpowder*; [or, rather, containing the *entire charge* of a gun]."--*Joh. cor.*

"Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night, The time of night when Troy was set on fire, The time when *screechows* cry, and *bandogs* howl." SHAKESPEARE: in *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Screechowl*.

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS IN THE FIGURE OF WORDS.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"They that live in *glass houses*, should not throw stones."--*Adage.* "If a man profess Christianity in any manner or form *whatsoever*."--*Watts cor.* "For Cassius is *awearry* of the world." Better: "For Cassius is *weary*

of the world."--*Shak. cor.* "By the *coming-together* of more, the chains were fastened on."--*W. Walker cor.* "Unto the *carrying-away* of Jerusalem captive in the fifth month."--*Bible cor.* "And the *goings-forth* of the border shall be to Zedad."--*Id.* "And the *goings-out* of it shall be at *Hazar Enan*."--See *Walker's Key* "For the *taking-place* of effects, in a certain particular series."--*West cor.* "The *letting-go* of which was the *occasion* of all that corruption."--*Owen cor.* "A *falling-off* at the end, is always injurious."--*Jamieson cor.* "As all *holdings-forth* were courteously supposed to be trains of reasoning."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "Whose *goings-forth* have been from of old, from everlasting."--*Bible cor.* "Sometimes the adjective becomes a substantive."--*Bradley cor.* "It is very plain, *that* I consider man as visited *anew*."--*Barclay cor.* "Nor do I *anywhere* say, as he falsely insinuates."--*Id.* "Everywhere, anywhere, elsewhere, somewhere, nowhere"--*L. Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 115. "The world hurries off apace, and time is like a rapid river."--*Collier cor.* "But to *new-model* the paradoxes of ancient skepticism."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "The *southeast* winds from the ocean invariably produce rain."--*Webster cor.* "Northwest winds from the *highlands* produce cold clear weather."--*Id.* "The greatest part of such tables would be of little use to *Englishmen*."--*Priestley cor.* "The *ground-floor* of the east wing of *Mulberry-street* meeting-house was filled."--*The Friend cor.* "Prince Rupert's Drop. This singular production is made at the *glasshouses*."--*Barnes cor.*

"The lights and shades, whose *well-accorded* strife Gives all the strength and colour of our life."--*Pope.*

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"In the *twenty-seventh* year of Asa king of Judah, did Zimri reign seven days in Tirzah."--*Bible cor.* "In the *thirty-first* year of Asa king of Judah, began Omri to reign over Israel."--*Id.* "He cannot so deceive himself as to fancy that he is able to do a *rule-of-three* sum." Better--"a *sum in the rule of three*."--*Qr. Rev. cor.* "The best cod are those known under the name of *Isle-of-Shoals dun-fish*."--*Balbi cor.* "The soldiers, with *downcast eyes*, seemed to beg for mercy."--*Goldsmith cor.* "His head was covered with a coarse, *wornout* piece of cloth."--*Id.* "Though they had lately received a reinforcement of a thousand *heavy-armed* Spartans."--*Id.* "But he laid them by unopened; and, with a smile, said, 'Business *to-morrow*.'"--*Id.* "Chester *Monthly Meeting* is held at *Moorestown*, on the *Thirdday* following the second *Secondday*"--*The Friend cor.* "Eggharbour *Monthly Meeting* is held on the first *Secondday*."--*Id.* "Little-Eggharbour *Monthly Meeting* is held at Tuckerton on the second *Fifthday* in each month."--*Id.* "At three o'clock, on *Firstday* morning, the 24th of *Eleventhmonth*, 1834," &c.--*Id.* "In less than *one fourth* part of the time usually devoted."--*Kirkham cor.* "The pupil will not have occasion to use it *one tenth* part so much."--*Id.* "The painter dips his *paintbrush* in paint, to paint the carriage."--*Id.* "In an ancient English version of the *New Testament*."--*Id.* "The little boy was *bareheaded*."--*Red Book cor.* "The man, being a little *short-sighted*, did not immediately know him."--*Id.* "Picture-frames are gilt with gold."--*Id.* "The *parkkeeper* killed one of the deer."--*Id.* "The fox was killed near the *brickkiln*."--*Id.* "Here comes Esther, with her *milkpail*"--*Id.* "The *cabinet-maker* would not tell us."--*Id.* "A fine *thorn-hedge* extended along the edge of the hill."--*Id.* "If their private interests should be *verso* little affected."--*Id.* "Unios are *fresh-water* shells, vulgarly called *fresh-water* clams."--*Id.*

"Did not each poet mourn his luckless doom, Jostled by pedants out of *elbow-room*."--*Lloyd cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The captive hovers *a while* upon the sad remains."--*Johnson cor.* "Constantia saw that the *hand-writing* agreed with the contents of the letter."--*Id.* "They have put me in a silk *night-gown*, and a gaudy *foolscap*"--*Id.* "Have you no more manners than to rail at Hocus, that has saved that clod-pated, *numb-skulled* ninny-hammer of yours from ruin, and all his family?"--*Id.* "A noble, (that is, six shillings and *eight pence*), is [paid], and usually hath been paid."--*Id.* "The king of birds, *thick-feathered*, and with full-summed wings, fastened his talons east and west."--*Id.* "To-morrow. This--supposing *morrow* to mean *morning*, as it did originally--is an idiom of the same kind as *to-night*, *to-day*."--*Johnson cor.* "To-day goes away, and to-morrow comes."--*Id.* "Young children, who are tried in *Gocarts*, to keep their steps from sliding."--*Id.* "Which, followed well, would demonstrate them but *goers-backward*"--*Id.* "Heaven's *golden-winged* herald late he saw, to a poor

Galilean virgin sent."--*Id.* "My *pent-house eyebrows* and my shaggy beard offend your sight."--*Id.* "The hungry lion would fain have been dealing with good *horseflesh*."--*Id.* "A *broad-brimmed* hat ensconced each careful head."--*Snelling cor.* "With harsh vibrations of his *three-stringed lute*."--*Id.* "They magnify a *hundred-fold* an author's merit."--*Id.* "I'll nail them fast to some *oft-opened* door."--*Id.* "Glossed over only with *saintlike* show, still thou art bound to vice."--*Johnson's Dict., w. Saintlike.* "Take of *aqua-fortis* two ounces, of *quicksilver* two drachms."--*Id. cor.* "This rainbow never appears but when it rains in the *sunshine*."--*Id. cor.*

"Not but there are, who merit other palms; Hopkins and *Sternhold* glad the heart with *psalms*."--*Pope.*

CHAPTER IV.

--OF SPELLING.

CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SPELLING.

RULE I.--FINAL F, L, OR S.

"He *will* observe the moral law, in *his* conduct."--*Webster corrected*. "A *cliff* is a steep bank, or a precipitous rock."--*Walker cor*. "A needy man's budget is *full* of schemes."--*Maxim cor*. "Few large publications, in this country, *will* pay a printer."--*N. Webster cor*. "I *shall*, with cheerfulness, resign my other papers to oblivion."--*Id*. "The proposition *was* suspended *till* the next session of the legislature."--*Id*. "Tenants for life *will* make the most of lands for themselves."--*Id*. "While every thing is left to lazy negroes, a state *will* never be *well* cultivated."--*Id*. "The heirs of the original proprietors *still* hold the soil."--*Id*. "Say my annual profit on money loaned *shall* be six per cent."--*Id*. "No man would submit to the drudgery of business, if he could make money *as* fast by lying *still*."--*Id*. "A man may *as well* feed himself with a bodkin, *as* with a knife of the present fashion."--*Id*. "The clothes *will* be ill washed, the food *will* be badly cooked; you *will* be ashamed of your wife, if she *is* not ashamed of herself."--*Id*. "He *will* submit to the laws of the state while he *is* a member of it."--*Id*. "But *will* our sage writers on law forever think by tradition?"--*Id*. "Some *still* retain a sovereign power in their territories."--*Id*. "They *sell* images, prayers, the sound of *bells*, remission of sins, &c."--*Perkins cor*. "And the law had sacrifices offered every day, for the sins of *all* the people."--*Id*. "Then it may please the Lord, they *shall* find it to be a restorative."--*Id*. "Perdition is repentance put *off till* a future day."--*Maxim cor*. "The angels of God, who *will* good and cannot *will* evil, have nevertheless perfect liberty of *will*."--*Perkins cor*. "Secondly, this doctrine cuts off the excuse of *all* sin."--*Id*. "*Knell*, the sound of a bell rung at a funeral."--*Dict. cor*.

"If gold with *dross* or grain with *chaff* you find, Select--and leave the *chaff* and *dross* behind."--*G. Brown*.

RULE II.--OTHER FINALS.

"The *mob* hath many heads, but no brains."--*Maxim cor*. "*Clam*; to clog with any glutinous or viscous matter."--See *Webster's Dict*. "*Whur*; to pronounce the letter *r* with too much force." "*Flip*; a mixed liquor, consisting of beer and spirit sweetened." "*Glyn*; a hollow between two mountains, a glen."--See *Walker's Dict*. "*Lam*, or *belam*; to beat soundly with a cudgel or bludgeon."--See *Red Book*. "*Bun*; a small cake, a simnel, a kind of sweet bread."--See *Webster's Dict*. "*Brunet*, or *Brunette*; a woman with a brown complexion."--See *ib.*, and *Scott's Dict*. "*Wadset*; an ancient tenure or lease of land in the Highlands of Scotland."--*Webster cor*. "To *dod* sheep, is to cut the wool away about their tails."--*Id*. "In aliquem arietare. *Cic*. To run full *butt* at one."--*W. Walker cor*. "Neither your policy nor your temper would *permit* you to kill me."--*Phil. Mu. cor*. "And *admit* none but his own offspring to fulfill them."--*Id*. "The *sum* of all this dispute is, that some make them Participles."--*R. Johnson cor*. "As the *whistling* winds, the *buzz* and *hum* of insects, the *hiss* of serpents, the *crash* of falling timber."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 331. "*Van*; to winnow, or a fan for winnowing."--See *Scott*. "Creatures that *buzz*, are very commonly such as will sting."--*G. Brown*. "*Beg*, buy, or borrow; *but* beware how yon find."--*Id*. "It is better to have a house to *let*, than a house to *get*." "Let not your tongue *cut* your throat."--*Precept cor*. "A little *wit* will save a fortunate man."--*Adage cor*. "There is many a *slip* 'twixt the cup and the *lip*."--*Id*. "Mothers' darlings make but *milksop* heroes."--*Id*. "One eye-witness is worth *ten* hearsays."--*Id*.

"The judge shall *job*, the bishop bite the town, And mighty dukes pack cards for half a crown." POPE: in *Johnson's Dict.*, w. *Job*.

RULE III.--DOUBLING.

"Friz, to curl; *frizzed*, curled; *frizzing*, curling."--*Webster cor.* "The commercial interests served to foster the principles of *Whiggism*."--*Payne cor.* "Their extreme indolence *shunned* every species of labour."--*Robertson cor.* "In poverty and *strippedness*, they attend their little meetings."--*The Friend cor.* "In guiding and *controlling* the power you have thus obtained."--*Abbott cor.* "I began, Thou *begannest* or *beganst*, He began, &c."--*A. Murray cor.* "Why does *began* change its ending; as, I began, Thou *begannest* or *beganst*?"--*Id.* "Truth and conscience cannot be *controlled* by any methods of coercion."--*Hints cor.* "Dr. Webster *nodded*, when he wrote *knit*, *knitter*, and *knitting-needle*, without doubling the *t*."--*G. Brown.* "A wag should have wit enough to know when other wags are *quizzing* him." "Bonny; handsome, beautiful, merry."--*Walker cor.* "*Coquettish*; *practising* coquetry; after the manner of a jilt."--*See Worcester.* "*Pottage*; a species of food made of meat and vegetables boiled to softness in water."--*See Johnson's Dict.* "*Pottager*; (from *pottage*;) a porringer, a small vessel for children's food." "Compromit, *compromitted*, *compromitting*; manumit, manumitted, manumitting."--*Webster cor.* "*Inferrible*; that may be inferred or deduced from premises."--*Walker.* "Acids are either solid, liquid, or *gaseous*."--*Gregory cor.* "The spark will pass through the interrupted space between the two wires, and explode the *gasses*."--*Id.* "Do we sound *gasses* and *gaseous* like *cases* and *caseous*? No: they are more like *glasses* and *osseous*."--*G. Brown.* "I shall not need here to mention *Swimming*, when he is of an age able to learn."--*Locke cor.* "Why do lexicographers spell *thinnish* and *mannish* with two *Ens*, and *diminish* and *rammish* with one *Em*, each?"--*G. Brown.* "*Gas* forms the plural regularly, *gasses*."--*Peirce cor.* "Singular, *gas*; Plural, *gasses*."--*Clark cor.* "These are contractions from *shedded*, *bursted*."--*Hiley cor.* "The Present Tense denotes what is *occurring* at the present time."--*Day cor.* "The verb ending in *eth* is of the solemn or antiquated style; as, He loveth, He walketh, He *runneth*."--*Davis cor.*

"Thro' Freedom's sons no more remonstrance rings, Degrading nobles and controlling kings."--*Johnson.*

RULE IV--NO DOUBLING.

"A *bigoted* and tyrannical clergy will be feared."--*See Johnson, Walker, &c.* "Jacob *worshiped* his Creator, leaning on the top of his staff."--*Murray's Key*, 8vo, p. 165. "For it is all *marvellously* destitute of interest."--*See Johnson, Walker, and Worcester.* "As, box, boxes; church, churches; lash, lashes; kiss, kisses; rebus, *rebuses*."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 40. "*Gossiping* and lying go hand in hand."--*See Webster's Dict., and Worcester's, w. Gossiping.* "The substance of the Criticisms on the Diversions of Purley was, with singular industry, *gossiped* by the present precious Secretary at [of] war, in Payne the bookseller's shop."--*Tooke's Diversions*, Vol. i, p. 187. "*Worship* makes *worshiped*, *worshiper*, *worshipping*; *gossip*, *gossiped*, *gossiper*, *gossiping*; *fillip*, *filliped*, *filliper*, *filliping*."--*Web. Dict.* "I became as *fidgety* as a fly in a milk-jug."--*See ib.* "That enormous error seems to be *riveted* in popular opinion." "Whose mind is not *biased* by personal attachments to a sovereign."--*See ib.* "Laws against usury originated in a *bigoted* prejudice against the Jews."--*Webster cor.* "The most *critical* period of life is usually between thirteen and seventeen."--*Id.* "*Generalissimo*, the chief commander of an army or military force."--*Every Dict.* "*Tranquilize*, to quiet, to make calm and peaceful."--*Webster's Dict.* "*Pommelled*, beaten, bruised; having pommels, as a sword-hilt."--*Webster et al. cor.* "From what a height does a *jeweller* look down upon his shoemaker!"--*Red Book cor.* "You will have a verbal account from my friend and fellow *traveller*."--*Id.* "I observe that you have written the word *counselled* with one *l* only."--*Ib.* "They were offended at such as *combated* these notions."--*Robertson cor.* "From *libel*, come *libelled*, *libeller*, *libelling*, *libellous*; from *grovel*, *grovelled*, *groveller*, *grovelling*; from *gravel*, *gravelled*, and *gravelling*."--*Webster cor.* "*Woolliness*, the state of being woolly."--*Worcester's Dict.* "Yet he has spelled chapelling, bordeller, *medalist*, *metaline*, *metalist*, *metalize*, clavellated, etc, with *ll*, contrary to his rule."--*Webster cor.* "Again, he has spelled *cancellation* and *snivelly* with single *l*, and *cupellation*, *pannellation* wittolly, with *ll*."--*Id.* "*Oily*, fatty, greasy, containing oil, *glib*."--*Walker cor.* "*Medalist*, one curious in medals; *Metalist*, one skilled in metals."--*Walker's Rhym. Dict.* "He is *benefited*."--*Webster.* "They *travelled* for pleasure."--*Clark cor.*

"Without you, what were man? A *grovelling* herd, In darkness, wretchedness, and want enchain'd."--*Beattle cor.*

RULE V.--FINAL CK.

"He hopes, therefore, to be pardoned by the *critic*."--*Kirkham corrected*. "The leading object of every *public* speaker should be, to persuade."--*Id*. "May not four feet be as *poetic* as five; or fifteen feet as *poetic* as fifty?"--*Id*. "Avoid all theatrical trick and *mimicry*, and especially all *scholastic stiffness*."--*Id*. "No one thinks of becoming skilled in dancing, or in *music*, or in *mathematics*, or in *logic*, without long and close application to the subject."--*Id*. "Caspar's sense of feeling, and susceptibility of *metallic* and *magnetic* excitement, were also very extraordinary."--*Id*. "Authorship has become a mania, or, perhaps I should say, an *epidemic*."--*Id*. "What can prevent this *republic* from soon raising a literary standard?"--*Id*. "Courteous reader, you may think me garrulous upon *topics* quite foreign to the subject before me."--*Id*. "Of the *Tonic*, *Subtonic*, and *Atonic* elements."--*Id*. "The *subtonic* elements are inferior to the *tonics*, in all the *emphatic* and elegant purposes of speech."--*Id*. "The nine *atonics* and the three abrupt *subtonics* cause an interruption to the continuity of the *syllabic* impulse." [526]--*Id*. "On *scientific* principles, conjunctions and prepositions are [*not*] one [and the same] part of speech."--*Id*. "That some inferior animals should be able to *mimick* human articulation, will not seem wonderful."--*L. Murray cor*.

"When young, you led a life *monastic*, And wore a vest *ecclesiastic*; Now, in your age, you grow *fantastic*."--*Denham's Poems*, p. 235.

RULE VI.--RETAINING.

"*Fearlessness*; exemption from fear, intrepidity."--*Johnson cor*. "*Dreadlessness*; *fearlessness*, intrepidity, undauntedness."--*Id*. "*Regardlessly*, without heed; *Regardlessness*, heedlessness."--*Id*. "*Blamelessly*, innocently; *Blamelessness*, innocence."--*Id*. "That is better than to be flattered into pride and *carelessness*."--*Id*. "Good fortunes began to breed a proud *recklessness* in them."--*Id*. "See whether he lazily and *listlessly* dreams away his time."--*Id*. "It maybe, the palate of the soul is indisposed by *listlessness* or sorrow."--*Id*. "*Pitilessly*, without mercy; *Pitilessness*, unmercifulness."--*Id*. "What say you to such as these? abominable, accordable, *agreeable*, etc."--*Tooke cor*. "*Artlessly*; naturally, sincerely, without craft."--*Johnson cor*. "A *chillness*, or shivering of the body, generally precedes a fever."--*See Webster*. "*Smallness*; littleness, minuteness, weakness."--*Walker's Dict., et al*. "*Galless*, *adj*. Free from gall or bitterness."--*Webster cor*. "*Tallness*; height of stature, upright length with comparative slenderness."--*Webster's Dict*. "*Willful*; stubborn, contumacious, perverse, inflexible."--*See ib*. "He guided them by the *skillfulness* of his hands."--*See ib*. "The earth is the Lord's, and the *fullness* thereof."--*FRIENDS' BIBLE: Ps. xxiv, 1*. "What is now, is but an *amassment* of imaginary conceptions."--*Glanville cor*. "*Embarrassment*; perplexity, entanglement."--*Walker*. "The second is slothfulness, whereby they are performed slackly and *carelessly*."--*Perkins cor*. "*Installment*; induction into office, part of a large sum of money, to be paid at a particular time."--*See Webster's Dict*. "*Inthrallment*; servitude, slavery, bondage."--*Ib*.

"I, who at some times spend, at others spare, Divided between *carelessness* and care."--*Pope cor*.

RULE VII.--RETAINING.

"*Shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply *foretells*."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 41; *Comly's*, 38; *Cooper's*, 51; *Lennie's*, 26. "There are a few compound irregular verbs, as *befall*, *bespeak*, &c."--*Ash cor*. "That we might frequently *recall* it to our memory."--*Calvin cor*. "The angels exercise a constant solicitude that no evil *befall* us."--*Id*. "*Inthrall*; to enslave, to shackle, to reduce to servitude."--*Johnson*. "He makes resolutions, and *fulfills* them by new ones."--*See Webster*. "To *enroll* my humble name upon the list of authors on Elocution."--*See Webster*. "*Forestall*; to anticipate, to take up beforehand."--*Johnson*. "*Miscall*; to call wrong, to name improperly."--*Webster*. "*Bethrall*; to enslave, to reduce to bondage."--*Id*. "*Befall*; to happen to, to come to pass."--*Walkers Dict*. "*Unroll*; to open what is rolled or convolved."--*Webster's Dict*. "*Counterroll*; to keep copies of accounts to prevent frauds."--*See ib*. "As Sisyphus *uprolls* a rock, which constantly overpowers him at the summit."--*G. Brown*. "*Unwell*; not well, indisposed, not in good health."--*Webster*. "*Undersell*; to defeat

by selling for less, to sell cheaper than an other."--*Johnson*. "*Inwall*; to enclose or fortify with a wall."--*Id*. "*Twibill*; an instrument with two bills, or with a point and a blade; a pickaxe, a mattock, a halberd, a battleaxe."--*Dict. cor*. "What you *miscall* their folly, is their care."--*Dryden cor*. "My heart will sigh when I *miscall* it so."--*Shak. cor*. "But if the arrangement *recalls* one set of ideas more readily than an other."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 334.

"'Tis done; and since 'tis done, 'tis past *recall* And since 'tis past *recall*, must be forgotten."--*Dryden cor*.

RULE VIII.--FINAL LL.

"The righteous is taken away from the *evil* to come."--*Isaiah*, lvii, 1. "*Patrol*; to go the rounds in a camp or garrison, to march about and observe what passes."--See *Joh. Dic*. "*Marshal*; the chief officer of arms, one who regulates rank and order."--See *ib*. "*Weevil*; a destructive grub that gets among corn."--See *ib*. "It much *excels* all other studies and arts."--*W. Walker cor*. "It is *essential* to all magnitudes, to be in one place."--*Perkins cor*. "By nature I was thy *vassal*, but Christ hath redeemed me."--*Id*. "Some being in want, pray for *temporal* blessings."--*Id*. "And this the Lord doth, either in *temporal* or in *spiritual* benefits."--*Id*. "He makes an *idol* of them, by setting his heart on them." "This *trial* by desertion serveth for two purposes."--*Id*. "Moreover, this destruction is both *perpetual* and terrible."--*Id*. "Giving to *several* men several gifts, according to his good pleasure." "*Until*; to some time, place, or degree, mentioned."--See *Dict*. "*Annul*; to make void, to nullify, to abrogate, to abolish."--See *Dict*. "Nitric acid combined with *argil*, forms the nitrate of *argil*."--*Gregory cor*.

"Let modest Foster, if he will, *excel* Ten metropolitans in preaching well."--*Pope cor*.

RULE IX.--FINAL E.

"Adjectives ending in *able* signify capacity; as, *comfortable*, *tenable*, *improvable*."--*Priestly cor*. "Their mildness and hospitality are *ascribable* to a general administration of religious ordinances."--*Webster cor*. "Retrench as much as possible without *obscuring* the sense."--*J. Brown cor*. "*Changeable*, subject to change; *Unchangeable*, immutable."--*Walker cor*. "*Tamable*, susceptible of taming; *Untamable*, not to be tamed."--*Id*. "*Reconcilable*, *Unreconcilable*, *Reconcilableness*; Irreconcilable, Irreconcilably, Irreconcilableness."--*Johnson cor*. "We have thought it most *advisable* to pay him some little attention."--*Merchant cor*. "*Provable*, that may be proved; *Reprovable*, *blamable*, worthy of reprehension."--*Walker cor*. "*Movable* and *Immovable*, *Movably* and *Immovably*, *Movables* and *Removal*, *Movableness* and *Improvableness*, *Unremovable* and *Unimprovable*, *Unremovably* and *Removable*, *Provable* and *Approvable*, *Irreprovable* and *Reprovable*, *Unreprovable* and *Improvable*, *Unimprovableness* and *Improvably*."--*Johnson cor*. "And with this cruelty you are *chargeable* in some measure yourself."--*Collier cor*. "Mothers would certainly resent it, as *judging* it proceeded from a low opinion of the genius of their sex."--*Brit. Gram. cor*. "*Tithable*, subject to the payment of tithes; *Salable*, vendible, fit for sale; *Losable*, possible to be lost; *Sizable*, of reasonable bulk or size."--See *Webster's Dict*. "When he began this custom, he was *puting* and very tender."--*Locke cor*.

"The plate, coin, revenues, and *movables*, Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd."--*Shak. cor*.

RULE X.--FINAL E.

"*Diversely*; in different ways, differently, variously."--See *Walker's Dict*. "The event thereof contains a *wholesome* instruction."--*Bacon cor*. "Whence Scaliger *falsely* concluded that Articles were useless."--*Brightland cor*. "The child that we have just seen is *wholesomely* fed."--*Murray cor*. "Indeed, *falsehood* and legerdemain sink the character of a prince."--*Collier cor*. "In earnest, at this rate of *management*, thou usest thyself very *coarsely*."--*Id*. "To give them an *arrangement* and a diversity, as agreeable as the nature of the subject would admit."--*Murray cor*. "Alger's Grammar is only a trifling

enlargement of Murray's little *Abridgement*."--*G. Brown*. "You ask whether you are to retain or *to omit* the mute *e* in the words, *judgement*, *abridgement*, *acknowledgement*, *lodgement*, *adjudgement*, and *prejudgement*."--*Red Book cor*. "Fertileness, fruitfulness; *fertilely*, fruitfully, abundantly."--*Johnson cor*. "*Chastely*, purely, without contamination; *Chasteness*, chastity, purity."--*Id*. "*Rhymester*, n. One who makes rhymes; a versifier; a mean poet."--*Walker, Chalmers, Maunder, Worcester*. "It is therefore a heroical *achievement* to disposess [sic--KTH] this imaginary monarch."--*Berkley cor*. "Whereby is not meant the present time, as he *imagines*, but the time past."--*R. Johnson cor*. "So far is this word from affecting the noun, in regard to its *definiteness*, that its own character of *definiteness* or *indefiniteness*, depends upon the name to which it is prefixed."--*Webster cor*.

"Satire, by *wholesome* lessons, would reclaim, And heal their vices to secure their fame "--*Brightland cor*.

RULE XI.--FINAL Y.

"Solon's the *veriest* fool in all the play."--*Dryden cor*. "Our author prides himself upon his great *sliness* and shrewdness."--*Merchant cor*. "This tense, then, *implies* also the signification of *debeo*."--*R. Johnson cor*. "That may be *applied* to a subject, with respect to something accidental."--*Id*. "This latter author *accompanies* his note with a distinction."--*Id*. "This rule is defective, and none of the annotators have sufficiently *supplied its deficiencies*."--*Id*. "Though the *fancied* supplement of Sanctius, Scioppius, Vossius, and Mariangelus, may take place."--*Ib*. "Yet, as to the commutableness of these two tenses, which is *denied* likewise, they [the foregoing examples] are *all one* [; i.e., *exactly equivalent*]"--*Id*. "Both these tenses may represent a futurity, *implied* by the dependence of the clause."--*Id*. "Cry, cries, crying, cried, crier, decrial; Shy, *shier*, *shiest*, *shily*, *shiness*; Fly, flies, flying, flier, high-flier; Sly, *slier*, *sliest*, *slily*, *sliness*; Spy, spies, spying, spied, espial; Dry, drier, driest, *drily*, *driness*."--*Cobb, Webster, and Chalmers cor*. "I would sooner listen to the thrumming of a *dandizette* at her piano."--*Kirkham cor*. "Send her away; for she *crieth* after us."--*Matt.*, v, 23. "IVIED, a. overgrown with ivy."--*Cobb's Dict.*, and *Maunders*.

"Some *drily* plain, without invention's aid, Write dull receipts how poems may be made."--*Pope cor*.

RULE XII.--FINAL Y.

"The *gayety* of youth should be tempered by the precepts of age."--*Murray cor*. "In the storm of 1703, two thousand stacks of *chimneys* were blown down in and about London."--*Red Book cor*. "And the vexation was not abated by the *hackneyed* plea of haste."--*Id*. "The fourth sin of our *days* is lukewarmness."--*Perkins cor*. "God hates the workers of iniquity, and *destroys* them that speak lies."--*Id*. "For, when he *lays* his hand upon us, we may not fret."--*Id*. "Care not for it; but if thou *mayst* be free, choose it rather."--*Id*. "Alexander Severus saith, 'He that *buyeth*, must sell; I will not suffer buyers and sellers of offices.'"--*Id*. "With these measures, fell in all *moneyed* men."--See *Johnson's Dict*. "But rattling nonsense in full *volleys* breaks."--*Murray's Reader, q. Pope*. "*Valleys* are the intervals betwixt mountains."--*Woodward cor*. "The Hebrews had fifty-two *journeys* or marches."--*Wood cor*. "It was not possible to manage or steer the *galleys* thus fastened together."--*Goldsmith cor*. "*Turkeys* were not known to naturalists till after the discovery of America."--*Gregory cor*. "I would not have given it for a wilderness of *monkeys*."--SHAK.: in *Johnson's Dict*. "Men worked at embroidery, especially in *abbeys*."--*Constable cor*. "By which all purchasers or mortgagees may be secured of all *moneys* they lay out."--*Temple cor*. "He would fly to the mines *or* the *galley*s, for his recreation."--*South cor*. "Here *pulleys* make the pond'rous oak ascend."--*Gay cor*.

-----"You need my help, and you say, Shylock, we would have *moneys*."--*Shak. cor*.

RULE XIII.--IZE AND ISE.

"Will any able writer *authorize* other men to *revise* his works?"--*G. B*. "It can be made as strong and expressive as this *Latinized English*."--*Murray cor*. "Governed by the success or failure of an *enterprise*."--*Id*.

"Who have *patronized* the cause of justice against powerful oppressors."--*Id.*, *et al.* "Yet custom *authorizes* this use of it."--*Priestley cor.* "They *surprise* myself, ****; and I even think the writers themselves will be *surprised*."--*Id.* "Let the interest *rise* to any sum which can be obtained."--*Webster cor.* "To *determine* what interest shall *arise* on the use of money."--*Id.* "To direct the popular councils and check *any rising* opposition,"--*Id.* "Five were appointed to the immediate *exercise* of the office."--*Id.* "No man ever offers himself as a candidate by *advertising*."--*Id.* "They are honest and economical, but indolent, and destitute of *enterprise*."--*Id.* "I would, however, *advise* you to be cautious."--*Id.* "We are accountable for what we *patronize* in others."--*Murray cor.* "After he was *baptized*, and was solemnly admitted into the office."--*Perkins cor.* "He will find all, or most, of them, *comprised* in the exercises."--*Brit. Gram. cor.* "A quick and ready habit of *methodizing* and regulating their thoughts."--*Id.* "To *tyrannize* over the time and patience of his readers."--*Kirkham cor.* "Writers of dull books, however, if *patronized* at all, are rewarded beyond their deserts."--*Id.* "A little reflection will show the reader the reason for *emphasizing* the words marked."--*Id.* "The English Chronicle contains an account of a *surprising* cure."--*Red Book cor.* "Dogmatize, to assert positively; Dogmatizer, an *assertor*, a magisterial teacher."--*Chalmers cor.* "And their inflections might now have been easily *analyzed*."--*Murray cor.* "Authorize, *disauthorize*, and unauthorized; Temporize, *contemporize*, and extemporize."--*Walker cor.* "Legalize, *equalize*, *methodize*, *sluggardize*, *womanize*, *humanize*, *patronize*, *cantonize*, *gluttonize*, *epitomize*, *anatomize*, *phlebotomize*, *sanctuarize*, *characterize*, *synonymize*, *recognize*, *detonize*, *colonize*."--*Id. cor.*

"This beauty sweetness always must *comprise*, Which from the subject, well express'd, will rise."--*Brightland cor.*

RULE XIV.--COMPOUNDS.

"The glory of the Lord shall be thy *rear-ward*."--SCOTT, ALGER: *Isa.*, lviii, 8. "A mere *van-courier* to announce the coming of his master."--*Tooke cor.* "The *party-coloured* shutter appeared to come close up before him."--*Kirkham cor.* "When the day broke upon this *handful* of forlorn but dauntless spirits."--*Id.* "If, upon a *plumtree*, peaches and apricots are engrafted, *nobody* will say they are the natural growth of the *plumtree*."--*Berkley cor.* "The channel between Newfoundland and Labrador is called the Straits of *Belleisle*."--*Worcester cor.* "There being nothing that more exposes to *the headache*:"--or, (perhaps more accurately,) "*headake*."--*Locke cor.* "And, by a sleep, to say we end the *heartache*:"--or, "*heartake*."--*Shak. cor.* "He that sleeps, feels not the *toothache*:"--or, "*toothake*."--*Id.* "That the shoe must fit him, because it fitted his father and *grandfather*."--*Phil. Museum cor.* "A single word *misspelled* [or *misspelt*] in a letter is sufficient to show that you have received a defective education."--*C. Bucke cor.* "Which *misstatement* the committee attributed to a failure of memory."--*Professors cor.* "Then he went through the *Banqueting-House* to the scaffold."--*Smollet cor.* "For the purpose of maintaining a clergyman and a *schoolmaster*."--*Webster cor.* "They however knew that the lands were claimed by *Pennsylvania*."--*Id.* "But if you ask a reason, they immediately bid *farewell* to argument."--*Barnes cor.* "Whom resist, *steadfast* in the faith."--*Alger's Bible.* "And they continued *steadfastly* in the apostles' doctrine."--*Id.* "Beware lest ye also fall from your own *steadfastness*."--*Ib.* "*Galiot*, or *Galliot*, a Dutch vessel carrying a main-mast and a *mizzen-mast*."--*Webster cor.* "Infinitive, to overflow; Preterit, overflowed; Participle, *overflowed*."--*Cobbett cor.* "After they have *misspent* so much precious time."--*Brit. Gram. cor.* "Some say, 'two *handsful*;' some, 'two *handfuls*;' and others, 'two *handful*.' The second expression is right."--*G. Brown.* "*Lapful*, as much as the lap can contain."--*Webster cor.* "*Dareful*, full of defiance."--*Walker cor.* "The road to the *blissful* regions is as open to the peasant as to the king."--*Mur. cor.* "*Misspell* is *misspelled* [or *misspelt*] in every dictionary which I have seen."--*Barnes cor.* "*Downfall*; ruin, calamity, fall from rank or state."--*Johnson cor.* "The whole legislature *likewise* acts as a court."--*Webster cor.* "It were better a *millstone* were hanged about his neck."--*Perkins cor.* "*Plumtree*, a tree that produces plums; *Hogplumtree*, a tree."--*Webster cor.* "*Trissyllables* ending in *re* or *le*, accent the first syllable."--*Murray cor.*

"It happened on a summer's *holyday*, That to the greenwood shade he took his way."--*Dryden.*

RULE XV.--USAGE.

"Nor are the *moods* of the Greek tongue more uniform."--*Murray cor.* "If we *analyze* a conjunctive *preterit*, the rule will not appear to hold."--*Priestley cor.* "No landholder would have been at that *expense*."--*Id.* "I went to see the child whilst they were putting on its *clothes*."--*Id.* "This *style* is ostentatious, and *does* not suit grave writing."--*Id.* "The king of Israel and *Jehoshaphat* the king of Judah, sat each on his throne."--*1 Kings*, xxii, 10; *2 Chron.*, xviii, 9. "*Lysias*, speaking of his friends, promised to his father never to abandon them."--*Murray cor.* "Some, to avoid this *error*, run into its opposite."--*Churchill cor.* "Hope, the balm of life *soothes* us under every misfortune."--*Jaudon's Gram.*, p. 182. "Any judgement or decree might be *heard* and reversed by the legislature."--*N. Webster cor.* "A pathetic *harangue* will screen from punishment any knave."--*Id.* "For the same *reason* the women would be improper judges."--*Id.* "Every person is indulged in worshipping *as he pleases*."--*Id.* "Most or all *teachers* are excluded from genteel company."--*Id.* "The *Christian* religion, in its purity, is the best institution on *earth*."--*Id.* "Neither clergymen nor human laws *have* the *least* authority over the conscience."--*Id.* "A *guild* is a society, fraternity, or corporation."--*Barnes cor.* "Phillis was not able to *untie* the knot, and so she cut it."--*Id.* "An *acre* of land is the quantity of one hundred and sixty perches."--*Id.* "*Ochre* is a fossil earth combined with the *oxyd* of some metal."--*Id.* "*Genii*, when denoting *aërial* spirits; *geniuses*, when signifying persons of genius."--*Murray cor.*; also *Frost*; also *Nutting*. "*Acrisius*, king of Argos, had a beautiful daughter, whose name was *Danæe*."--*Classic Tales cor.* "*Phæton* was the son of Apollo and Clymene."--*Id.* "But, after all, I may not have reached the intended *goal*."--*Buchanan cor.* "'*Pittacus* was offered a large sum.' Better: '*To Pittacus* was offered a large sum.'"--*Kirkham cor.* "King *Micipsa* charged his sons to respect the senate and people of Rome."--*Id.* "For example: '*Galileo* greatly improved the telescope.'"--*Id.* "Cathmor's *warriors* sleep in death."--*Macpherson's Ossian*. "For parsing will enable you to detect and correct *errors* in composition."--*Kirkham cor.*

"O'er barren mountains, o'er the flow'ry plain, Extends thy *uncontrolled* and boundless reign."--*Dryden cor.*

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SPELLING.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"A bad author deserves better usage than a bad *critic*."--*Pope (or Johnson) cor.* "Produce a single passage, *superior* to the speech of Logan, a Mingo chief, to Lord Dunmore, *governor* of this state."--*Jefferson's Notes*, p. 94. "We have none *synonymous* to supply its place."--*Jamieson cor.* "There is a probability that the effect will be *accelerated*."--*Id.* "Nay, a regard to sound has *controlled* the public choice."--*Id.* "Though learnt [better, *learned*] from the uninterrupted use of *guttural* sounds."--*Id.* "It is by carefully filing off all roughness and *all inequalities*, that languages, like metals, must be polished."--*Id.* "That I have not *misspent* my time in the service of the community."--*Buchanan cor.* "The leaves of *maize* are also called blades."--*Webster cor.* "Who boast that they know what is past, and can *foretell* what is to come."--*Robertson cor.* "Its tasteless *dullness* is interrupted by nothing but its perplexities."--*Abbott, right.* "Sentences constructed with the Johnsonian *fullness* and swell."--*Jamieson, right.* "The privilege of escaping from his prefatory *dullness* and prolixity."--*Kirkham, right.* "But, in poetry, this *characteristic* of *dullness* attains its full growth."--*Id. corrected.* "The leading *characteristic* consists in an increase of the force and fullness."--*Id cor.* "The character of this opening *fullness* and feebler vanish."--*Id. cor.* "Who, in the *fullness* of *unequalled* power, would not believe himself the favourite of Heaven?"--*Id. right.* "They *mar* one another, and distract him."--*Philol. Mus. cor.* "Let a deaf *worshiper* of antiquity and an English prosodist settle this."--*Rush cor.* "This *Philippic* gave rise to my satirical reply in self-defence."--*Merchant cor.* "We here saw no *innuendoes*, no new sophistry, no falsehoods."--*Id.* "A witty and *humorous* vein has often produced enemies."--*Murray cor.* "Cry *hollo!* to thy tongue, I *pray thee*:[527] it *curvets* unseasonably."--*Shak. cor.* "I said, in my *sliest* manner, 'Your health, sir.'"--*Blackwood cor.* "And *attorneys* also travel the circuit in *pursuit* of business."--*Barnes cor.* "Some whole counties in Virginia would hardly *sell* for the *value* of the *debts due* from the inhabitants."--*Webster cor.* "They were called the Court of Assistants, and *exercised* all powers, *legislative* and judicial."--*Id.* "Arithmetic is excellent for the *gauging* of liquors."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 295.

"Most of the inflections may be *analyzed* in a way somewhat similar."--*Murray cor.*

"To epithets allots emphatic state, *While* principals, ungrac'd, like *lackeys* wait." --*T. O. Churchill's Gram.*, p. 326.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Hence *less* is a privative *suffix*, denoting destitution; as in *fatherless*, *faithless*, *penniless*."--*Webster cor.*
"Bay; red, or reddish, inclining to a *chestnut colour*."--*Id.* "To *mimick*, to imitate or ape for sport; a *mimic*, one who imitates or mimicks."--*Id.* "Counterroll, a counterpart or copy of the rolls; *Counterrollment*, a counter account."--*Id.* "*Millennium*, [from *mille* and *annus*,] the thousand years during which Satan shall be bound."--See *Johnson's Dict.* "*Millennial*, [like *septennial*, *decennial*, &c.,] pertaining to the *millennium*, or to a thousand years."--See *Worcester's Dict.* "*Thralldom*; slavery, bondage, a state of servitude."--*Webster's Dict.*
"Brier, a prickly bush; *Briery*, rough, prickly, full of briers; *Sweetbrier*, a fragrant shrub."--See *Ainsworth's Dict.*, *Scott's*, *Gobb's*, and others. "*Will*, in the second and third persons, barely *foretells*."--*Brit. Gram. cor.*
 "And *therefore* there is no word false, but what is distinguished by *Italics*."--*Id.* "What should be *repeated*, is left to their discretion."--*Id.* "Because they are abstracted or *separated* from material substances."--*Id.* "All motion is in time, and *therefore*, *wherever* it exists, implies time as its *concomitant*."--*Harris's Hermes*, p. 95.
 "And illiterate grown persons are guilty of *blamable* spelling."--*Brit. Gram. cor.* "They *will* always be ignorant, and of *rough*, uncivil manners."--*Webster cor.* "This fact *will* hardly be *believed* in the northern states."--*Id.* "The province, however, *was harassed* with disputes."--*Id.* "So little concern *has* the legislature for the interest of *learning*."--*Id.* "The gentlemen *will* not admit that a *schoolmaster* can be a gentleman."--*Id.*
 "Such absurd *quid-pro-quo*es cannot be too strenuously avoided."--*Churchill cor.* "When we say of a man, 'He looks *slyly*;' we signify, that he takes a sly glance or peep at something."--*Id.* "*Peep*; to look through a crevice; to look narrowly, closely, or *slyly*"--*Webster cor.* "Hence the confession has become a *hackneyed* proverb."--*Wayland cor.* "Not to mention the more ornamental parts of *gilding*, *varnish*, &c."--*Tooke cor.*
 "After this system of self-interest had been *riveted*."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "Prejudice might have prevented the cordial approbation of a *bigoted* Jew."--*Dr. Scott cor.*

"All twinkling with the *dewdrop* sheen, The *brier-rose* fell in streamers green."--*Sir W. Scott cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The infinitive *mood* has, commonly, the sign *to* before it."--*Harrison cor.* "Thus, it is *advisable* to write *singeing*, from the verb to *singe*, by way of distinction from *singing*, the participle of the verb to *sing*."--*Id.*
 "Many verbs form both the *preterit* tense and the *preterit* participle irregularly."--*Id.* "Much must be left to every one's taste and *judgement*."--*Id.* "Verses of different lengths, intermixed, form a *Pindaric* poem."--*Priestley cor.* "He'll *surprise* you."--*Frost cor.* "Unequalled archer! why was this concealed?"--*Knowles.* "So *gayly* curl the waves before each dashing prow."--*Byron cor.* "When is a *diphthong* called a proper *diphthong*?"--*Inf. S. Gram. cor.* "How many *Esses* would *the word* then end with? Three; for it would be *goodness's*."--*Id.* "*Qu.* What is a *triphthong*? *Ans.* A *triphthong* is a *coalition* of three vowels in *one syllable*."--*Bacon cor.* "The verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken *separately*."--*Murray.* "The cubic foot of matter which occupies the *centre* of the globe."--*Cardell cor.* "The wine imbibes *oxygen*, or the acidifying principle, from the air."--*Id.* "Charcoal, sulphur, and *nitre*, make *gunpowder*."--*Id.* "It would be readily understood, that the thing so *labelled* was a bottle of Madeira wine."--*Id.* "They went their ways, one to his farm, an other to his *merchandise*."--*Matt.*, xxii, 5. "A *diphthong* is the union of two vowels, *both in one syllable*."--*Russell cor.* "The professors of the *Mohammedan* religion are called *Mussulmans*."--*Maltby cor.* "This *shows* that *let* is not a *mere* sign of the imperative mood, but a real verb."--*Id.* "Those *preterits* and *participles* which are first mentioned in the list, seem to be the most eligible."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 107; *Fisk's*, 81; *Ingersoll's*, 103. "Monosyllables, for the most part, are compared by *er* and *est*, and *dissyllables*, by *more* and *most*."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 47. "This termination, added to a noun or *an* adjective, changes it into a verb: as, *modern*, to *modernize*; a *symbol*, to *symbolize*."--

Churchill cor. "An *Abridgement* of Murray's Grammar, with additions from Webster, Ash, Tooke, and others."--*Maltby's Gram.*, p. 2. "For the sake of occupying the room more *advantageously*, the subject of Orthography is merely glanced at."--*Nutting cor.* "So contended the accusers of *Galileo*."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* Murray says, "They were *travelling post* when *he* met them."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 69. "They *fulfill* the only purposes for which they were designed."--*Peirce cor.*--See *Webster's Dict.* "On the *fulfillment* of the event."--*Peirce, right.* "*Fullness* consists in expressing every idea."--*Id.* "Consistently with *fullness* and perspicuity."--*Peirce cor.* "The word *veriest* is a *regular adjective*; as, 'He is the *veriest* fool on earth.'"--*Wright cor.* "The sound will *recall* the idea of the object."--*Hiley cor.* "Formed for great *enterprises*."--*Hiley's Gram.*, p. 113. "The most important rules and definitions are printed in large type, *Italicized*."--*Hart cor.* "HAMLETED, *a.*, accustomed to a hamlet, countrified."--*Webster, and Worcester.* "Singular, *spoonful, cupful, coachful, handful*; plural, *spoonfuls, cupfuls, coachfuls, handfuls*."--*Worcester's Universal and Critical Dictionary.*

"Between superlatives and following names, *Of*, by *grammatic* right, a station claims."--*Brightland cor.*

THE KEY.--PART II.--ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

--PARTS OF SPEECH.

The first chapter of Etymology, as it exhibits only the distribution of words into the ten Parts of Speech, contains no false grammar for correction. And it may be here observed, that as mistakes concerning the forms, classes, or modifications of words, are chiefly to be found in *sentences*, rather than in any separate exhibition of the terms; the quotations of this kind, with which I have illustrated the principles of etymology, are many of them such as might perhaps with more propriety be denominated *false syntax*. But, having examples enough at hand to show the ignorance and carelessness of authors in every part of grammar, I have thought it most advisable, so to distribute them as to leave no part destitute of this most impressive kind of illustration. The examples exhibited as *false etymology*, are as distinct from those which are called *false syntax*, as the nature of the case will admit.

CHAPTER II.

--ARTICLES.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING A, AN, AND THE.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES ADAPTED.

"Honour is *a* useful distinction in life."--*Milnes cor.* "No writer, therefore, ought to foment *a* humour of innovation."--*Jamieson cor.* "Conjunctions [generally] require a situation between the things of which they form *a* union."--*Id.* "Nothing is more easy than to mistake *a* *u* for an *a*."--*Tooke cor.* "From making so ill *a* use of our innocent expressions."--*Penn cor.* "To grant thee *a* heavenly and incorruptible crown of glory."--*Sewel cor.* "It in no wise follows, that such *a* one was able to predict."--*Id.* "With *a* harmless patience, they have borne most heavy oppressions."--*Id.* "My attendance was to make me *a* happier man."--*Spect. cor.* "On the wonderful nature of *a* human mind."--*Id.* "I have got *a* hussy of a maid, who is most craftily given to this."--*Id.* "Argus is said to have had *a* hundred eyes, some of which were always awake."--*Stories cor.* "Centiped, having *a* hundred feet; centennial, consisting of a hundred years."--*Town cor.* "No good man, he thought, could be *a* heretic."--*Gilpin cor.* "As, a Christian, an infidel, *a* heathen."--*Ash cor.* "Of two or more words, usually joined by *a* hyphen."--*Blair cor.* "We may consider the whole space of *a* hundred years as time present."--*Ingersoll's Gram.*, p. 138. "In guarding against such *a* use of meats and drinks."--*Ash cor.* "Worship is *a* homage due from man to his Creator."--*Monitor cor.* "Then *a* eulogium on the deceased was pronounced."--*Grimshaw cor.* "But for Adam there was not found *a* help meet for him."--*Bible cor.* "My days are consumed like smoke, and my bones are burned as *a* hearth."--*Id.* "A foreigner and a hired servant shall not eat thereof."--*Id.* "The hill of God is as the hill of Bashan; *a* high hill, as the hill of Bashan."--*Id.* "But I do declare it to have been *a* holy offering, and such *a* one too as was to be once for all."--*Penn cor.* "A hope that does not make ashamed those that have it."--*Barclay cor.* "Where there is not *a* unity, we may exercise true charity."--*Id.* "Tell me, if in any of these such *a* union can be found?"--*Dr. Brown cor.*

"Such holy drops her tresses steeped, Though 'twas *a* hero's eye that weeped."--*Sir W. Scott cor.*

LESSON II.--ARTICLES INSERTED.

"This veil of flesh parts the visible and *the* invisible world."--*Sherlock cor.* "The copulative and *the* disjunctive conjunctions operate differently on the verb."--*L. Murray cor.* "Every combination of a preposition and *an* article with the noun."--*Id.* "*Either* signifies, 'the one or the other:' *neither* imports, 'not either;' that is, 'not *the* one nor the other.'"--*Id.* "A noun of multitude may have a pronoun or *a* verb agreeing with it, either of the singular number or of *the* plural."--*Bucke cor.* "*The principal* copulative conjunctions are, *and*, *as*, *both*, *because*, *for*, *if*, *that*, *then*, *since*."--*Id.* "The two real genders are the masculine and *the* feminine."--*Id.* "In which a mute and *a* liquid are represented by the same character, *th*."--*Gardiner cor.* "They said, John *the* Baptist hath sent us unto thee."--*Bible cor.* "They indeed remember the names of *an* abundance of places."--*Spect. cor.* "Which created a great dispute between the young and *the* old men."--*Goldsmith cor.* "Then shall be read the Apostles' or *the* Nicene Creed."--*Com. Prayer cor.* "The rules concerning the perfect tenses and *the* supines of verbs are Lily's."--*K. Henry's Gr. cor.* "It was read by the high and the low, the learned and *the* illiterate."--*Dr. Johnson cor.* "Most commonly, both the pronoun and *the* verb are understood."--*Buchanan cor.* "To signify the thick and *the* slender enunciation of tone."--*Knight cor.* "The difference between a palatial and *a* guttural aspirate is very small."--*Id.* "Leaving it to waver between the figurative and *the* literal sense."--*Jamieson cor.* "Whatever verb will not admit of both an active and *a* passive signification."--*Alex. Murray cor.* "*The* is often set before adverbs in the comparative or *the* superlative degree."--*Id. and Kirkham cor.* "Lest any should fear the effect of such a change, upon the present or *the* succeeding age of writers."--*Fowle cor.* "In all these measures, the accents are to be placed on *the* even syllables; and every line is, in general, *the* more melodious, as this rule is *the* more strictly observed."--*L. Murray et al. cor.* "How many numbers do nouns appear to have? Two: the singular and *the* plural."--*R. C.*

Smith cor. "How many persons? Three; the first, *the* second, and *the* third."--*Id.* "How many cases? Three; the nominative, *the* possessive, and *the* objective."--*Id.*

"Ah! what avails it me, the flocks to keep, Who lost my heart while I preserv'd *the* sheep:"--or, "*my* sheep."

LESSON III.--ARTICLES OMITTED.

"The negroes are all *descendants* of Africans."--*Morse cor.* "*Sybarite* was applied as a term of reproach to a man of dissolute manners."--*Id.* "The original signification of *knave* was *boy*."--*Webster cor.* "The meaning of these will be explained, for greater clearness and precision."--*Bucke cor.* "What sort of *noun* is *man*? A noun substantive, common."--*Buchanan cor.* "Is *what* ever used as three kinds of *pronoun*?"--*Kirkham's Question cor.* [Answer: "No; as a pronoun, it is either relative or interrogative."--*G. Brown.*] "They delighted in *having done it*, as well as in the doing of it."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Both parts of this rule are exemplified in the following sentences."--*Murray cor.* "He has taught them to hope for *an other and better* world."--*Knapp cor.* "It was itself only preparatory to a future, *better*, and perfect revelation."--*Keith cor.* "*Es* then makes *an other and distinct* syllable."--*Brightland cor.* "The eternal clamours of a *selfish and factious* people."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "To those whose taste in elocution is *but little* cultivated."--*Kirkham cor.* "They considered they had but a *sort of gourd* to rejoice in."--*Bennet cor.* "Now there was *but one such bough*, in a spacious and shady grove."--*Bacon cor.* "Now the absurdity of this latter supposition will go a great way *towards making* a man easy."--*Collier cor.* "This is true of *mathematics*, with which taste has but little to do."--*Todd cor.* "To stand prompter to a *pausing yet ready* comprehension."--*Rush cor.* "Such an obedience as the *yoked and tortured* negro is compelled to yield to the whip of the overseer."--*Chalmers cor.* "For the gratification of a *momentary and unholy* desire."--*Wayland cor.* "The body is slenderly put together; the mind, a *rambling sort of thing*."--*Collier cor.* "The only nominative to the verb, is *officer*."--*Murray cor.* "And though *in general* it ought to be admitted, &c."--*Blair cor.* "Philosophical writing admits of a polished, *neat*, and elegant style."--*Id.* "But notwithstanding this defect, Thomson is a strong *and beautiful* describer."--*Id.* "So should he be sure to be ransomed, *and many* poor men's lives *should be* saved."--*Shak. cor.*

"Who felt the wrong, or feared it, *took alarm*, Appealed to law, and Justice lent her arm."--*Pope cor.*

LESSON IV.--ARTICLES CHANGED.

"To enable us to avoid too frequent *a* repetition of the same word."--*Bucke cor.* "The former is commonly acquired in *a* third part of the time."--*Burn cor.* "Sometimes *an* adjective becomes a substantive; and, *like other substantives*, it may have *an* adjective relating to it: as, '*The chief good*.'"--*L. Murray cor.* "An articulate sound is *a* sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech."--*Id.* "*A tense* is *a* distinction of time: there are six tenses."--*Maunder cor.* "In this case, *an* ellipsis of the last article would be improper."--*L. Hurray cor.* "Contrast *always* has the effect to make each of the contrasted objects appear in *a* stronger light."--*Id. et al.* "These remarks may serve to *show* the great importance of *a* proper use of the *articles*."--*Lowth et al. cor.* "'Archbishop Tillotson,' says *the* author of *a* history of England, 'died in this year.'"--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Pronouns are used in stead of substantives, to prevent too frequent *a* repetition of them."--*A. Murray cor.* "THAT, as a relative, seems to be introduced to *prevent* too frequent *a* repetition of WHO and WHICH."--*Id.* "A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun, to *prevent* too frequent *a* repetition of it."--*L. Murray cor.* "THAT is often used as a relative, to prevent too frequent *a* repetition of WHO and WHICH."--*Id. et al. cor.* "His knees smote one against *the* other."--*Logan cor.* "They stand now on one foot, then on *the* other."--*W. Walker cor.* "The Lord watch between thee and me, when we are absent one from *the* other."--*Bible cor.* "Some have enumerated ten parts of speech, making *the* participle a distinct part."--*L. Murray cor.* "Nemesis rides upon *a* hart because *the* hart is a most lively creature."--*Bacon cor.* "The transition of the voice from one vowel of the diphthong to *the* other."--*Dr. Wilson cor.* "So difficult it is, to separate these two things one from *the* other."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Without *a* material breach of any rule."--*Id.* "The great source of *looseness* of style, in opposition to precision, is *an* injudicious use of *what* are termed *synonymous words*."--*Blair cor.*; also *Murray.* "Sometimes one article is improperly used for *the* other."--*Sanborn cor.*

"Satire of sense, alas! can Sporus feel? Who breaks a butterfly upon *the* wheel?"--*Pope cor.*

LESSON V.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"He hath no delight in the strength of *a* horse."--*Maturin cor.* "The head of it would be *a* universal monarch."--*Butler cor.* "Here they confound the material and *the* formal object of faith."--*Barclay cor.* "The Irish [Celtic] and *the* Scottish Celtic are one language; the Welsh, *the* Cornish, and *the* Armorican, are *an* other."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "In *a* uniform and perspicuous manner."--*Id.* "SCRIPTURE, *n.* Appropriately, and by way of distinction, the books of the Old and *the* New Testament; the Bible."--*Webster cor.* "In two separate volumes, entitled, 'The Old and New Testaments.'"--*Wayland cor.* "The Scriptures of the Old and *the* New Testament, contain a revelation from God."--*Id.* "Q has *always a* u after it; which, in words of French origin, is not sounded."--*Wilson cor.* "What should we say of such *a* one? that he is regenerate? No."--*Hopkins cor.* "Some grammarians subdivide *the* vowels into simple and compound."--*L. Murray cor.* "Emphasis has been *divided* into the weaker and *the* stronger emphasis."--*Id.* "Emphasis has also been divided into *the* superior and the inferior emphasis."--*Id.* "Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or *the* nouns which they represent, in gender, number, and person."--*Merchant cor.* "The adverb *where* is often used improperly, for *a* relative pronoun and *a* preposition": as, "Words *where* [in which] the *h* is not silent."--*Murray, p. 31.* "The termination *ish* imports diminution, or *a* lessening *of* the quality."--*Merchant cor.* "In this train, all their verses proceed: one half of *a* line always answering to the other."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "To *a* height of prosperity and glory, unknown to any former age."--*L. Murray cor.* "*Hwilc*, who, which, such as, such *a* one, is declined as follows."--*Gwilt cor.* "When a vowel precedes *the* y, *s* only is required to form *the* plural; as, *day*, *days*."--*Bucke cor.* "He is asked what sort *of* word each is; whether a primitive, *a* derivative, or *a* compound."--*British Gram. cor.* "It is obvious, that neither the second, *the* third, nor *the* fourth chapter of Matthew, is the first; consequently, there are not '*four first* chapters.'"--*Churchill cor.* "Some thought, which a writer wants *the* art to introduce in its proper place."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Groves and meadows are *the* most pleasing in the spring."--*Id.* "The conflict between the carnal and *the* spiritual mind, is often long."--*Gurney cor.* "A Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and *the* Beautiful"--*Burke cor.*

"Silence, my muse! make not these jewels cheap, Exposing to the world too large *a* heap."--*Waller cor.*

CHAPTER III.

--NOUNS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE MODIFICATIONS OF NOUNS.

LESSON I.--NUMBERS.

"All the ablest of the Jewish *rabbies* acknowledge it."--*Wilson cor.* "Who has thoroughly imbibed the system of one or other of our Christian *rabbies*."--*Campbell cor.* "The seeming *singularities* of reason soon wear off."--*Collier cor.* "The chiefs and *arikies*, or priests, have the power of declaring a place or object taboo."--*Balbi cor.* "Among the various tribes of this family, are the Pottawatomies, the *Sauks* and Foxes, or *Saukies* and *Ottogamies*."--*Id.* "The Shawnees, Kickapoos, Menom'onies, *Miamies*, and Delawares, are of the same region."--*Id.* "The Mohegans and *Abenauquies* belonged also to this family."--*Id.* "One tribe of this family, the *Winnebagoes*, formerly resided near lake Michigan."--*Id.* "The other tribes are the Ioways, the Otoes, the *Missouries*, the Quapaws."--*Id.* "The great Mexican family comprises the Aztecs, the Toltecs, and the *Tarascoes*."--*Id.* "The Mulattoes are born of negro and white parents; the *Zamboes*, of Indians and Negroes."--*Id.* "To have a place among the Alexanders, the Cæsars, the *Louises*, or the *Charleses*,--the scourges and butchers of their fellow-creatures."--*Burgh cor.* "Which was the notion of the Platonic philosophers and the Jewish *rabbies*."--*Id.* "That they should relate to the whole body of *virtuosoes*."--*Cobbeti cor.* "What *thanks* have ye? for sinners also love those that love them."--*Bible cor.* "There are five ranks of nobility; dukes, *marquises*, earls, viscounts, and barons."--*Balbi cor.* "Acts which were so well known to the two *Charleses*."--*Payne cor.* "*Courts-martial* are held in all parts, for the trial of the blacks."--*Observer cor.* "It becomes a common noun, and may have *the* plural number; as, the two *Davids*, the two *Scipios*, the two *Pompeys*."--*Staniford cor.* "The food of the rattlesnake is birds, squirrels, *hares*, rats, and reptiles."--*Balbi cor.* "And let *fowls* multiply in the earth."--*Bible cor.* "Then we reached the *hillside*, where eight *buffaloes* were grazing."--*Martineau cor.* "CORSET, *n.* a *bodice* for a woman."--*Worcester cor.* "As, the *Bees*, the *Cees*, the *Double-ues*."--*Peirce cor.* "Simplicity is the *mean* between ostentation and rusticity."--*Pope cor.* "You have disguised yourselves like *tipstaffs*."--*Gil Bias cor.* "But who, that *has* any taste, can endure the incessant quick returns of the *alsoes*, and the *likewises*, and the *moreovers*, and the *howevers*, and the *notwithstandings*?"--*Campbell cor.*

"Sometimes, in mutual sly disguise, Let *ays* seem *noes*, and *noes* seem *ays*."--*Gay cor.*

LESSON II.--CASES.

"For whose *name's* sake, I have been made willing."--*Penn cor.* "Be governed by your conscience, and never ask any *body's* leave to be honest."--*Collier cor.* "To overlook *nobody's* merit or misbehaviour."--*Id.* "And Hector at last fights his way to the stern of *Ajax's* ship."--*Coleridge cor.* "Nothing is lazier, than to keep *one's* eye upon words without heeding their meaning."--*Museum cor.* "Sir William *Jones's* division of the day."--*Id.* "I need only refer here to *Voss's* excellent account of it."--*Id.* "The beginning of *Stesichorus's* palinode has been preserved."--*Id.* "Though we have *Tibullus's* elegies, there is not a word in them about *Glyc~era*."--*Id.* "That Horace was at *Thaliarchus's* country-house."--*Id.* "That *Sisyphus's* foot-tub should have been still in existence."--*Id.* "How everything went on in Horace's closet, and *Mecenas's* antechamber."--*Id.* "Who, for elegant *brevity's* sake, put a participle for a verb."--*W. Walker cor.* "The *country's* liberty being oppressed, we have no more to hope."--*Id.* "A brief but true account of this *people's* principles."--*Barclay cor.* "As, The *Church's* peace, or, *The* peace of the Church; Virgil's *Æneid*, or, *The* *Æneid* of Virgil."--*Brit. Gram. cor.* "As, Virgil's *Æneid*, for, *The* *Æneid* of Virgil; *The* *Church's* peace, for, *The* peace of the Church."--*Buchanan cor.* "Which, with Hubner's Compend, and *Well's* Geographia Classica, will be sufficient."--*Burgh cor.* "Witness Homer's speaking horses, scolding goddesses, and Jupiter *enchanted* with *Venus's* girdle."--*Id.* "Dr. *Watts's* Logic may with success be read to them and commented on."--*Id.* "Potter's Greek, and Kennet's Roman Antiquities, *Strauchius's* and *Helvicus's* Chronology."--*Id.* "SING. *Alice's* friends, *Felix's* property; PLUR.

The Alices' friends, the Felixes' property."--*Peirce cor.* "Such as *Bacchus's* company--at *Bacchus's* festivals."--*Ainsworth cor.* "*Burns's* inimitable *Tam o' Shanter* turns entirely upon such a circumstance."--*Scott cor.* "Nominative, men; Genitive, [or Possessive,] *men's*; Objective, men."--*Cutler cor.* "*Men's* happiness or misery is *mostly* of their own making."--*Locke cor.* "That your *son's clothes* be never made strait, especially about the breast."--*Id.* "*Children's* minds are narrow and weak."--*Id.* "I would not have little children much tormented about *punctilios*, or niceties of breeding."--*Id.* "To fill his head with suitable ideas."--*Id.* "The *Burgusdisciuses* and the Scheiblers did not swarm in those days, as they do now."--*Id.* "To see the various ways of dressing--a *calf's* head!"--*Shenstone cor.*

"He puts it on, and for *decorum's* sake Can wear it e'en as gracefully as she."--*Cowper cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Simon the *wizard* was of this religion too"--*Bunyan cor.* "MAMMODIES, n. Coarse, plain, India muslins."--*Webster cor.* "Go on from single persons to families, that of the *Pompeys* for instance."--*Collier cor.* "By which the ancients were not able to account for *phenomena*."--*Bailey cor.* "After this I married a *woman* who had lived at Crete, but a *Jewess* by birth."--*Josephus cor.* "The very *heathens* are inexcusable for not *worshipping* him."--*Todd cor.* "Such poems as *Camoens's* *Lusiad*, *Voltaire's* *Henrinde*, &c."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "My learned correspondent writes a word in defence of large *scarfs*."--*Sped. cor.* "The forerunners of an apoplexy are *dullness*, *vertigoes*, *tremblings*."--*Arbuthnot cor.* "*Vertigo*, [in Latin,] changes the *o* into *~in=es*, making the plural *vertig~in=es*:" [not so, in English.]--*Churchill cor.* "*Noctambulo*, [in Latin,] changes the *o* into *=on=es*, making the plural *noctambul=on=es*:" [not so in English.]--*Id.* "What shall we say of *noctambuloes*? It is the regular English plural."--*G. Brown.* "In the curious fretwork of rocks and *grottoes*."--*Blair cor.* "*Wharf* makes the plural *wharfs*, according to the best usage."--*G. Brown.* "A few *cents'* worth of *macaroni* supplies all their wants."--*Balbi cor.* "C sounds hard, like *k*, at the end of a word or syllable."--*Blair cor.* "By which the *virtuosoes* try The magnitude of every lie."--*Butler cor.* "*Quartoes*, *octavo*es, shape the lessening pyre."--*Pope cor.* "Perching within square royal *roofs*"--*Sidney cor.* "*Similes* should, even in poetry, be used with moderation."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "*Similes* should never be taken from low or mean objects."--*Id.* "It were certainly better to say, '*The House of Lords*,' than, '*The Lords' House*.'"--*Murray cor.* "Read your answers. *Units'* figure? 'Five.' *Tens'*? 'Six.' *Hundreds'*? 'Seven.'"--*Abbott cor.* "Alexander conquered *Darius's* army."--*Kirkham cor.* "Three *days'* time was requisite, to prepare matters."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "So we say, that *Cicero's* style and *Sallust's* were not one; nor *Cæsar's* and *Livy's*; nor *Homer's* and *Hesiod's*; nor *Herodotus's* and *Thucydides's*; nor *Euripides's* and *Aristophanes's*; nor *Erasmus's* and *Budæus's*."--*Puttenham cor.* "LEX (i.e., *legs*, a *law*,) is no other than our *ancestors'* past participle *loeg*, *laid down*"--*Tooke cor.* "Achaia's sons at Ilium slain for the *Atridae's* sake."--*Cowper cor.* "The *corpses* of her senate manure the fields of Thessaly."--*Addison cor.*

"Poisoning, without regard of fame or fear; And spotted *corpses* load the frequent bier."--*Dryden cor.*

CHAPTER IV.

--ADJECTIVES.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF COMPARISON, &c.

LESSON I.--DEGREES.

"I have the real excuse of the *most honest* sort of bankrupts."--*Cowley corrected*. "The *most honourable* part of talk, is, to give the occasion."--*Bacon cor*. "To give him one of the *most modest* of his own proverbs."--*Barclay cor*. "Our language is now, certainly, *more proper* and more natural, than it was formerly."--*Burnet cor*. "Which will be of the *greatest* and *most frequent* use to him in the world."--*Locke cor*. "The same is notified in the *most considerable* places in the diocese."--*Whitgift cor*. "But it was the *most dreadful* sight that ever I saw."--*Bunyan cor*. "Four of the *oldest*, soberest, and discreetest of the brethren, chosen for the occasion, shall regulate it."--*Locke cor*. "Nor can there be any clear understanding of any Roman author, especially of *more ancient* time, without this skill."--*W. Walker cor*. "Far the *most learned* of the Greeks."--*Id*. "The *more learned* thou art, the humbler be thou."--*Id*. "He is none of the best, or *most honest*."--*Id*. "The *most proper* methods of communicating it to others."--*Burn cor*. "What heaven's great King hath *mightiest* to send against us."--*Milton cor*. "Benedict is not the *most unhopeful* husband that I know."--*Shakspeare cor*. "That he should immediately do all the meanest and *most trifling* things himself."--*Ray cor*. "I shall be named among the *most renowned* of women."--*Milton cor*. "Those have the *most inventive* heads for all purposes."--*Ascham cor*. "The *more wretched* are the contemnners of all helps."--*B. Johnson cor*. "I will now deliver a few of the *most proper* and *most natural* considerations that belong to this piece."--*Wotton cor*. "The *most mortal* poisons practised by the *West Indians*, have some mixture of the blood, fat, or flesh of man."--*Bacon cor*. "He so won upon him, that he rendered him one of the *most faithful* and *most affectionate* allies the Medes ever had."--*Rollin cor*. "'You see before you,' says he to him, 'the most devoted servant, and the *most faithful* ally, you ever had.'"--*Id*. "I chose the *most flourishing* tree in all the park."--*Cowley cor*. "Which he placed, I think, some centuries *earlier* than *did* Julius Africanus afterwards."--*Bolingbroke cor*. "The Tiber, the *most noted* river of Italy."--*Littleton cor*.

"To *farthest* shores th' ambrosial spirit flies."--*Pope*.

---"That what she wills to do or say, Seems wisest, *worthiest*, discreetest, best."--*Milton cor*.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"During the *first three or four* years of its existence."--*Taylor cor*. "To the first of these divisions, my *last ten* lectures have been devoted."--*Adams cor*. "There are, in the twenty-four states, not *fewer* than sixty thousand common schools."--*J. O. Taylor cor*. "I know of nothing which gives teachers *more* trouble, *than* this want of firmness."--*Id*. "I know of nothing *else* that throws such darkness over the line which separates right from wrong."--*Id*. "None need this purity and *this* simplicity of language and thought, *more than does the instructor of a common school*."--*Id*. "I know of no *other* periodical that is so valuable to the teacher, as the *Annals of Education*."--*Id*. "Are not these schools of the highest importance? Should not every individual feel a *deep* interest in their character and condition?"--*Id*. "If instruction were made a *liberal* profession, teachers would feel more sympathy for *one an other*."--*Id*. "Nothing is *more interesting* to children, *than* novelty, or change."--*Id*. "I know of no *other* labour which affords so much happiness as the teacher's."--*Id*. "Their school exercises are the most pleasant and agreeable *duties*, that they engage in."--*Id*. "I know of no exercise *more* beneficial to the pupil *than* that of drawing maps."--*Id*. "I know of nothing in which our district schools are *more* defective, *than* they are in the art of teaching grammar."--*Id*. "I know of *no other branch of knowledge*, so easily acquired as history."--*Id*. "I know of *no other school exercise* for which pupils usually have such an abhorrence, as *for* composition."--*Id*. "There is nothing *belonging* to our fellow-men, which we should respect *more sacredly* than their good name."--*Id*. "Surely, never any *other creature* was so unbred as that odious

man."--*Congreve cor.* "In the dialogue between the mariner and the shade of the *deceased*."--*Phil. Museum cor.* "These master-works would still be less excellent and *finished*."--*Id.* "Every attempt to staylace the language of *polished* conversation, renders our phraseology inelegant and clumsy."--*Id.* "Here are a few of the *most unpleasant* words that ever blotted paper."--*Shakespeare cor.* "With the most easy and *obliging* transitions."--*Broome cor.* "Fear is, of all affections, the *least apt* to admit any conference with reason."--*Hooker cor.* "Most chymists think glass a body *less destructible* than gold itself."--*Boyle cor.* "To part with *unhacked* edges, and bear back our barge undinted."--*Shak. cor.* "Erasmus, who was an *unbigoted* Roman Catholic, was transported with this passage."--*Addison cor.* "There are no *fewer* than five words, with any of which the sentence might have terminated."--*Campbell cor.* "The *ones* preach Christ of contention; but the *others*, of love." Or, "The *one party* preach," &c.--*Bible cor.* "Hence we find less discontent and *fewer* heart-burnings, than where the subjects are unequally burdened."--*H. Home, Ld. Kames, cor.*

"The serpent, *subtlest* beast of all the field." --*Milton, P. L., B. ix, l. 86.*

"Thee, Serpent, *subtlest* beast of all the field, I knew, but not with human voice indued." --*Id., P. L., B. ix, l. 560.*

"How much more grievous would our lives appear. To reach th' *eight-hundredth*, than the eightieth year!" --*Denham cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced *each other* at the same time."--*Lempriere cor.* "Her two brothers were, one after *the other*, turned into stone."--*Kames cor.* "Nouns are often used as adjectives; as, A *gold* ring, a *silver* cup."--*Lennie cor.* "Fire and water destroy *each other*"--*Wanostrocht cor.* "Two negatives, in English, destroy *each other*, or are equivalent to an affirmative."--*Lowth, Murray, et al. cor.* "Two negatives destroy *each other*, and are generally equivalent to an affirmative."--*Kirkham and Felton cor.* "Two negatives destroy *each other*, and make an affirmative."--*Flint cor.* "Two negatives destroy *each other*, being equivalent to an affirmative."--*Frost cor.* "Two objects, resembling *each other*, are presented to the imagination."--*Parker cor.* "Mankind, in order to hold converse with *one an other*, found it necessary to give names to objects."--*Kirkham cor.* "Derivative words are *formed* from *their primitives* in various ways."--*Cooper cor.* "There are many *different* ways of deriving words *one from an other*."--*Murray cor.* "When several verbs *have a joint construction* in a sentence, the auxiliary is usually *expressed* with the first *only*."--*Frost cor.* "Two or more verbs, having the same nominative case, and *coming in immediate succession*, are also separated by *the comma*."--*Murray et al. cor.* "Two or more adverbs, *coming in immediate succession*, must be separated by *the comma*."--*Iidem.* "If, however, the *two* members are very closely connected, the comma is *unnecessary*."--*Iidem.* "Gratitude, when exerted towards *others*, naturally produces a very pleasing sensation in the mind of a *generous* man."--*L. Murray cor.* "Several verbs in the infinitive mood, *coming in succession*, and having a common dependence, are also divided by commas."--*Comly cor.* "The several words of which it consists, have so near a relation *one to an other*."--*Murray et al. cor.* "When two or more verbs, or two or more adverbs,[528] *occur in immediate succession*, and have a common dependence, they must be separated by *the comma*."--*Comly cor.* "One noun frequently *follows an other*, both meaning the same thing."--*Sanborn cor.* "And these two tenses may thus answer *each other*."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Or some other relation which two objects bear to *each other*."--*Jamieson cor.* "That the heathens tolerated *one an other* is allowed."--*A. Fuller cor.* "And yet these two persons love *each other* tenderly."--*E. Reader cor.* "In the six *hundred* and first year."--*Bible cor.* "Nor is this arguing of his, *any thing* but a *reiterated* clamour."--*Barclay cor.* "In *several* of them the inward life of Christianity is to be found."--*Ib.* "Though Alvarez, *Despauter*, and *others*, *do not allow it* to be plural."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Even the most *dissipated* and shameless blushed at the sight."--*Lempriere cor.* "We feel a *higher* satisfaction in surveying the life of animals, *than* [*in contemplating*] that of vegetables."--*Jamieson cor.* "But this man is so *full-fraught* with malice."--*Barclay cor.* "That I suggest some things concerning the *most proper* means."--*Dr. Blair cor.*

"So, hand in hand, they passed, the loveliest pair That ever *yet* in love's embraces met."--*Milton cor.*

"Aim at *supremacy*; without *such height*, Will be for thee no sitting, or not long."--*Id. cor.*

CHAPTER V.

--PRONOUNS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

LESSON I.--RELATIVES.

"While we attend to this pause, every appearance of *singsong* must be carefully avoided."--*Murray cor.* "For thou shalt go to all *to whom* I shall send thee."--*Bible cor.* "Ah! how happy would it have been for me, had I spent in retirement these twenty-three years *during which* I have possessed my kingdom."--*Sanborn cor.* "In the same manner *in which* relative pronouns and their antecedents are usually parsed."--*Id.* "Parse or *explain* all the other nouns *contained* in the examples, *after the very manner of* the word *which* is parsed for you."--*Id.* "The passive verb will always *have* the person and number that *belong* to the verb *be*, of which it is in part composed."--*Id.* "You have been taught that a verb must always *agree in* person and number *with* its subject or nominative."--*Id.* "A relative pronoun, also, must always *agree in* person, *in* number, and even *in* gender, *with* its antecedent."--*Id.* "The *answer* always *agrees in* case *with the pronoun* which asks the question."--*Id.* "One sometimes represents an antecedent noun, in the definite manner of a personal pronoun." [529]--*Id.* "The mind, being carried forward to the time *at which the event is to happen*, easily conceives it to be present." "SAVE and SAVING are [*seldom to be*] parsed in the manner *in which* EXCEPT and EXCEPTING are [commonly explained]."--*Id.* "Adverbs qualify *verbs*, or modify *their* meaning, *as* adjectives *qualify* nouns [and describe things]."--*Id.* "The third person singular of verbs, *terminates in s* or *es*, *like* the plural number of nouns."--*Id.* "He saith further: that, 'The apostles did not baptize anew such persons *as* had been baptized with the baptism of John.'"--*Barclay cor.* "For we *who* live,"--or, "For we *that are alive*, are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake."--*Bible cor.* "For they *who* believe in God, must be careful to maintain good works."--*Barclay cor.* "Nor yet of those *who* teach things *that* they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake."--*Id.* "So as to hold such bound in heaven *as* they bind on earth, and such loosed in heaven *as* they loose on earth."--*Id.* "Now, if it be an evil, to do any thing out of strife; then such things *as* are seen so to be done, are they not to be avoided and forsaken?"--*Id.* "All such *as* do not satisfy themselves with the superficies of religion."--*Id.* "And he is the same in substance, *that* he was upon earth,--*the same* in spirit, soul, and body."--*Id.* "And those that do not thus, are such, *as* the Church of Rome can have no charity *for*." Or: "And those that do not thus, are *persons toward* whom the Church of Rome can have no charity."--*Id.* "Before his book, he *places* a great list of *what* he accounts the blasphemous assertions of the Quakers."--*Id.* "And this is *what* he should have proved."--*Id.* "Three of *whom* were at that time actual students of philosophy in the university."--*Id.* "Therefore it is not lawful for any *whomsoever* * * * to force the consciences of others."--*Id.* "Why were the former days better than these?"--*Bible cor.* "In the same manner *in which*"--or, better, "*Just as*--the term *my* depends on the name *books*."--*Peirce cor.* "*Just as* the term HOUSE depends on the [preposition *to*, understood after the adjective] NEAR."--*Id.* "James died on the day *on which* Henry returned."--*Id.*

LESSON II.--DECLENSIONS.

"OTHER makes the plural OTHERS, when it is found without *its* substantive."--*Priestley cor.* "But *his, hers, ours, yours*, and *theirs*, have evidently the form of the possessive case."--*Lowth cor.* "To the Saxon possessive cases, *hire, ure, eower, hira*, (that is, *hers, ours, yours, theirs*,) we have added the *s*, the characteristic of the possessive case of nouns."--*Id.* "Upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both *theirs* and *ours*."--*Friends cor.* "In this place, *His* is clearly preferable either to *Her* or to *Its*."--*Harris cor.* "That roguish leer of *yours* makes a pretty woman's heart *ache*."--*Addison cor.* "Lest by any means this liberty of *yours* become a stumbling-block."--*Bible cor.* "First person: Sing. I, *my* or *mine*, me; Plur. we, *our* or *ours*, us."--*Wilbur and Livingston cor.* "Second person: Sing. thou, *thy* or *thine*, thee; Plur. ye or you, *your* or *yours*, you."--*Id.* "Third person: Sing. she, *her* or *hers*, her; Plur. they, *their* or *theirs*, them."--*Id.* "So shall ye serve strangers in a land that is not *yours*."--ALGER, BRUCE, ET AL.; *Jer.*, v, 19. "Second person, Singular: Nom. *thou*, Poss. *thy* or *thine*, Obj. *thee*."--*Frost cor.* "Second person, Dual; Nom. Gyt, ye two; Gen. Incer, of you two;

Dat. Inc, incrum, to *you* two; Acc. Inc, *you* two; Voc. Eala inc, O ye two; Abl. Inc, incrum, from *you* two."--*Gwilt cor.* "Second person, Plural: Nom. Ge, ye; Gen. Eower, of *you*; Dat. Eow, to *you*; Acc. Eow, *you*; Voc Eala ge, O ye; Abl. Eow, from *you*."--*Id.* "These words are, *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs, and whose.*"--*Cardell cor.* "This house is *ours*, and that is *yours. Theirs* is very commodious."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 55. "And they shall eat up *thy* harvest, and *thy* bread; they shall eat up *thy* flocks and *thy* herds."--*Bible cor.* "Whoever and Whichever are thus declined: Sing. Nom. whoever, Poss. *whosever*, Obj. whomever; Plur. Nom. whoever, Poss. *whosever*, Obj. whomever. Sing. Nom. whichever, Poss. (*wanting*,) Obj. whichever; Plur. Nom. whichever, Poss. (*wanting*,) Obj. whichever."--*Cooper cor.* "The compound personal pronouns are thus declined: Sing. Nom. myself, Poss. (*wanting*,) Obj. myself; Plur. Nom. ourselves, Poss. (*wanting*,) Obj. ourselves. Sing. Nom. thyself or yourself, Poss. (*wanting*,) Obj. thyself, &c."--*Perley cor.* "Every one of us, each for *himself*, laboured to recover him."--*Sidney cor.* "Unless when ideas of their opposites manifestly suggest *themselves.*"--*Wright cor.* "It not only exists in time, but is *itself* time." "A position which the action *itself* will palpably *confute.*"--*Id.* "A difficulty sometimes presents *itself.*"--*Id.* "They are sometimes explanations in *themselves.*"--*Id.* "Ours, Yours, Theirs, Hers, Its."--*Barrett cor.*

"*Theirs*, the wild *chase* of false felicities; His, the composed possession of the true." --*Young, N. Th.*, N. viii, l. 1100.

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"It is the boast of Americans, without distinction of parties, that their government is the most free and perfect *that* exists on the earth."--*Dr. Allen cor.* "Children *that* are dutiful to their parents, enjoy great prosperity."--*Sanborn cor.* "The scholar *that* improves his time, sets an example worthy of imitation."--*Id.* "Nouns and pronouns *that* signify the same person, place, or thing, agree in case."--*Cooper cor.* "An interrogative sentence is one *that* asks a question."--*Id.* "In the use of words and phrases *that* in point of time relate to each other, *the order of time* should be *duly regarded.*"--*Id.* "The same observations *that* show the effect of the article *upon* the participle, appear to be applicable [also] to the pronoun and participle."--*Murray cor.* "The reason *why* they have not the same use of them in reading, may be traced to the very defective and erroneous method in which the art of reading is taught."--*Id.* "Ever since reason began to exert her powers, thought, during our waking hours, has been active in every breast, without a moment's suspension or pause."--*Id. et al. cor.* "In speaking of *such as* greatly delight in the same."--*Pope cor.* "Except *him to whom* the king shall hold out the golden sceptre, that he may live."--*Bible cor.* "But the same day *on which* Lot went out of Sodom, it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all."--*Bible cor.* "In the next place, I will explain several *constructions* of nouns and pronouns, *that* have not yet come under our notice."--*Kirkham cor.* "Three natural distinctions of time are all *that* can exist."--*Hall cor.* "We have exhibited such only as are obviously distinct; and *these* seem to be sufficient, and not more than sufficient."--*Murray et al. cor.* "The parenthesis encloses a *phrase or clause that* may be omitted without materially injuring the connexion of the other members."--*Hall cor.* "Consonants are letters *that* cannot be sounded without the aid of a vowel."--*Bucke cor.* "Words are not *mere* sounds, but sounds *that* convey a meaning to the mind."--*Id.* "Nature's postures are always easy; and, *what* is more, nothing but your own will can put you out of them."--*Collier cor.* "Therefore ought we to examine our *own selves*, and prove our *own selves.*"--*Barclay cor.* "Certainly, it had been much more natural, to have divided Active verbs into *Immanent*, or *those whose* action is terminated *within itself*, and *Transient*, or *those whose* action is terminated in something without *itself.*"--*R. Johnson cor.* "This is such an advantage *as* no other lexicon will afford."--*Dr. Taylor cor.* "For these reasons, such liberties are taken in the Hebrew tongue, with those words *which* are of the most general and frequent use."--*Pike cor.* "While we object to the *laws which* the antiquarian in language would impose on us, we must *also* enter our protest against those *authors who* are too fond of innovations."--*L. Murray cor.*

CHAPTER VI.

--VERBS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF VERBS.

LESSON I.--PRETERITS.

"In speaking on a matter which *touched* their hearts."--*Phil. Museum cor.* "Though Horace *published* it some time after."--*Id.* "The best subjects with which the Greek models *furnished* him."--*Id.* "Since he *attached* no thought to it."--*Id.* "By what slow steps the Greek alphabet *reached* its perfection."--*Id.* "Because Goethe *wished* to erect an affectionate memorial."--*Id.* "But the Saxon forms soon *dropped* away."--*Id.* "It speaks of all the towns that *perished* in the age of Philip."--*Id.* "This *enriched* the written language with new words."--*Id.* "He merely *furnished* his friend with matter for laughter."--*Id.* "A cloud arose, and *stopped* the light."--*Swift cor.* "She *slipped* spadillo in her breast."--*Id.* "I *guessed* the hand."--*Id.* "The tyrant *stripped* me to the skin; My skin he *flayed*, my hair he *cropped*; At head and foot my body *lopped*."--*Id.* "I see the greatest owls in you, That ever *screeched* or ever flew."--*Id.* "I *sat* with delight, From morning till night."--*Id.* "Dick nimbly *skipped* the gutter."--*Id.* "In at the pantry door this morn I *slipped*."--*Id.* "Nobody living ever *touched* me, but you."--*W. Walker cor.* "Present, I ship; Preterit, I shipped; Perf. Participle, shipped."--*A. Murray cor.* "Then the king arose, and *tore* his garments."--*Bible cor.* "When he *lifted* up his foot, he knew not where he should set it next."--*Bunyan cor.* "He *lifted* up his spear against eight hundred, whom he slew at one time."--*Bible cor.* "Upon this chaos *rode* the distressed ark."--*Burnet cor.* "On whose foolish honesty, my practices *rode* easy."--*Shakspeare cor.* "That form of the first or primogenial Earth, which *rose* immediately out of chaos."--*Burnet cor.* "Sir, how *came* it, you have *helped* to make this rescue?"--*Shak. cor.* "He *swore* he would rather lose all his father's images, than that table."--*Peacham cor.* "When our language *dropped* its ancient terminations."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "When themselves they *vilified*."--*Milton cor.* "But I *chose* rather to do thus."--*Barclay cor.* "When he *pleaded* (or *pled*) against the parsons."--*Hist. cor.* "And he that saw it, *bore* record." Or: "And he that saw it, *bare* record."--*John, xix, 35.* "An irregular verb has one more variation; as, drive, drivest, [*driveth*,] drives, drove, *drovest*, driving, driven."--*Matt. Harrison cor.* "Beside that village, Hannibal *pitched* his camp."--*W. Walker cor.* "He *fetchd* it from Tmolus."--*Id.* "He *supped* with his morning-gown on."--*Id.* "There *stamped* her sacred name."--*Barlow cor.*

"*Fix'd*[530] on the view the great discoverer stood; And thus *address'd* the messenger of good."--*Barlow cor.*

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Three freemen *were on trial*"--or, "*were receiving their trial*--at the date of our last information."--*Editor cor.* "While the house *was building*, many of the tribe arrived."--*Cox cor.* "But a foundation has been laid in Zion, and the church *is built*--(or, *continues to be built*--) upon it."--*The Friend cor.* "And one fourth of the people are *receiving education*."--*E. I. Mag. cor.* "The present [*tense*,] or that [*form of the verb*] which [*expresses what*] is now *doing*."--*Beck cor.* "A new church, called the Pantheon, is *about* being completed, in an expensive style."--*Thompson cor.* "When I last saw him, he *had* grown considerably."--*Murray cor.* "I know what a rugged and dangerous path I *have* got into."--*Duncan cor.* "You *might* as well preach ease to one on the rack."--*Locke cor.* "Thou hast heard me, and *hast* become my salvation."--*Bible cor.* "While the Elementary Spelling-Book *was preparing* (or, *was in progress of preparation*) for the press."--*Cobb cor.* "Language *has* become, in modern times, more correct."--*Jamieson cor.* "If the plan *has* been executed in any measure answerable to the author's wishes."--*Robbins cor.* "The vial of wrath is still *pouring* out on the seat of the beast."--*Christian Ex. cor.* "Christianity *had* become the generally-adopted and established religion of the whole Roman Empire."--*Gurney cor.* "Who wrote before the first century *had* elapsed."--*Id.* "The original and analogical form *has* grown quite obsolete."--*Lowth cor.* "Their love, and their hatred, and their envy, *have* perished."--*Murray cor.* "The poems *had* got abroad, and *were* in a great many hands."--*Waller cor.* "It is more harmonious, as well as more correct, to say, 'The bubble *is ready to burst*.'"--*Cobbett cor.* "I *drove* my

suitor from his mad humour of love."--*Shak. cor.* "Se viriliter expedit."--*Cic.* "He *has played* the man."--*Walker cor.* "Wilt thou kill me, as thou *didst* the Egyptian yesterday?"--*Bible cor.* "And we, *methought*, [or *thought I*] looked up to him from our hill"--*Cowley cor.* "I fear thou *dost* not think *so* much of the best things as thou *ought*."--*Memoir cor.* "When this work was commenced."--*Wright cor.* "Exercises and a Key to this work are *about* being prepared."--*Id.* "James is loved by John."--*Id.* "Or that which is exhibited."--*Id.* "He was smitten."--*Id.* "In the passive *voice* we say, 'I am loved.'"--*Id.* "Subjunctive Mood: If I *be* smitten, If thou *be* smitten, If he *be* smitten."--*Id.* "I *shall* not be able to convince you how superficial the reformation is."--*Chalmers cor.* "I said to myself, I *shall* be obliged to expose the folly."--*Chazotte cor.* "When Clodius, had he meant to return that day to Rome, must have arrived."--*J. Q. Adams cor.* "That the fact has been done, *is doing*, or will be done."--*Peirce cor.* "Am I *to be* instructed?"--*Wright cor.* "I *choose* him."--*Id.* "John, who *respected* his father, was obedient to his commands."--*Barrett cor.*

"The region *echoes* to the clash of arms."--*Beattie cor.*

"And *sitst* on high, and mak'st creation's top Thy footstool; and *beholdst* below thee--all."--*Pollok cor.*

"And see if thou *canst* punish sin and let Mankind go free. Thou *failest*--be not surprised."--*Idem.*

LESSON III--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"What follows, *might better have been* wanting altogether."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "This member of the sentence *might* much better have been omitted altogether."--*Id.* "One or *the* other of them, therefore, *might* better have been omitted."--*Id.* "The whole of this last member of the sentence *might* better have been dropped."--*Id.* "In this case, they *might* much better be omitted."--*Id.* "He *might* better have said '*the productions*.'"--*Id.* "The Greeks *ascribed* the origin of poetry to Orpheus, Linus, and Musæus."--*Id.* "It was noticed long ago, that all these fictitious names have the same number of syllables."--*Phil. Museum cor.* "When I found that he had committed nothing worthy of death, I *determined* to send him."--*Bible cor.* "I *would* rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God."--*Id.* "As for such, I wish the Lord *would open* their eyes." Or, better: "*May* the Lord *open* (or, I *pray* the Lord *to open*) their eyes."--*Barclay cor.* "It would *have* made our *passage* over the river very difficult."--*Walley cor.* "We should not *have* been able to *carry* our great guns."--*Id.* "Others would *have* questioned our prudence, if *we* had."--*Id.* "Beware thou *be* not BECÆSARED; i.e., Beware that thou *do* not dwindle--or, *lest thou dwindle*--into a mere Cæsar."--*Harris cor.* "Thou *raisedst* (or, familiarly, thou *raised*) thy voice to record the stratagems of needy heroes."--*Arbuthnot cor.* "Life *hurries* off apace; thine is almost *gone* already."--*Collier cor.* "How unfortunate has this accident made me!" *cries* such a one."--*Id.* "The muse that soft and sickly *woos* the ear."--*Pollok cor.* "A man *might* better relate himself to a statue."--*Bacon cor.* "I heard thee say but now, thou *liked* not that."--*Shak. cor.* "In my whole course of wooing, thou *criedst*, (or, familiarly, thou *cried*.) *Indeed!*"--*Id.* "But our ears *have* grown familiar with '*I have wrote*, '*I have drank*,' &c., which are altogether as ungrammatical."--*Lowth et al. cor.* "The court was *in session* before Sir Roger came"--*Addison cor.* "She *needs*--(or, if you please, *need*,--) be no more with the jaundice *possessed*"--*Swift cor.* "Besides, you found fault with our victuals one day *when* you *were* here."--*Id.* "If spirit of other sort, So minded, *hath* (or *has*) o'erleaped these earthy bounds."--*Milton cor.* "It *would* have been more rational to have *forborne* this."--*Barclay cor.* "A student is not master of it till he *has* seen all these."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "The said justice shall *summon* the party."--*Brevard cor.* "Now what *has* become of thy former wit and humour?"--*Spect. cor.* "Young stranger, whither *wanderst* thou?"--*Burns cor.* "SUBJ. Pres. If I love, If thou *love*, If he *love*. Imp. If I *loved*, If thou *loved*, If he *loved*."--*Merchant cor.* "SUBJ. If I do not love, If thou *do* not love, If he *do* not love."--*Id.* "If he *has* committed sins, they shall be forgiven him."--*Bible cor.* "Subjunctive Mood of the verb *to call*, second person singular: If thou *call*, (rarely, If thou *do call*,) If thou *called*."--*Hiley cor.* "Subjunctive Mood of the verb *to love*, second person singular: If thou *love*, (rarely, If thou *do love*,) If thou *loved*."--*Bullions cor.* "I was; thou wast; he, she, or it, was: We, you or ye, they, were."--*White cor.* "I taught, thou *taughtest*, (familiarly, thou *taught*,) he taught."--*Coar cor.* "We say, '*If it rain*,' '*Suppose it rain*?' '*Lest it rain*,' '*Unless it rain*.' This manner of speaking is called the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD."--*Weld cor.* "He *has* arrived at what is deemed the age of manhood."--*Priestley cor.* "He *might* much

better have let it alone."--*Tooke cor.* "He were better without it. Or: He *would be better* without it."--*Locke cor.* "*Hadst* thou not been by. Or: *If* thou *hadst* not been by. Or, in the familiar style: *Had* not thou been by,"--*Shak. cor.* "I learned geography. Thou *learned arithmetic*. He learned grammar."--*Fuller cor.* "Till the sound *has* ceased."--*Sheridan cor.* "Present, die; Preterit, died; Perf. Participle, *died*."--*Six English Grammars corrected.*

"Thou *bow'dst* thy glorious head to none, *fear'dst* none." Or:-- "Thou *bowed* thy glorious head to none, *feared* none." --*Pollok cor.*

"Thou *lookst* upon thy boy as though thou *guess'd* it." --*Knowles cor.*

"As once thou *slept*, while she to life was formed." --*Milton cor.*

"Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest, But may imagine how the bird was *killed*?" --*Shak. cor.*

"Which might have well *become* the best of men." --*Idem cor.*

CHAPTER VII.

--PARTICIPLES.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF PARTICIPLES.

LESSON I.--IRREGULARS.

"Many of your readers have *mistaken* that passage."--*Steele cor.* "Had not my dog of a steward *run* away."--*Addison cor.* "None should be admitted, except he had *broken* his collarbone thrice."--*Id.* "We could not know what was *written* at twenty."--*Waller cor.* "I have *written*, thou hast *written*, he has *written*; we have *written*, you have *written*, they have *written*."--*Ash cor.* "As if God had *spoken* his last words there to his people."--*Barclay cor.* "I had like to have *come* in that ship myself."--*Observer cor.* "Our ships and vessels being *driven* out of the harbour by a storm."--*Hutchinson cor.* "He will endeavour to write as the ancient author would have *written*, had he *written* in the same language."--*Bolingbroke cor.* "When his doctrines grew too strong to be *shaken* by his enemies."--*Atterbury cor.* "The immortal mind that hath *forsaken* her mansion."--*Milton cor.* "Grease that's *sweated* (or *sweat*) from the murderer's gibbet, throw into the flame."--*Shak. cor.* "The court also was *chidden* (or *chid*) for allowing such questions to be put."--*Stone cor.* "He would have *spoken*."--*Milton cor.* "Words *interwoven* (or *interweaved*) with sighs found out their way."--*Id.* "Those kings and potentates who have *strived* (or *striven*)."--*Id.* "That even Silence was *taken*."--*Id.* "And envious Darkness, ere they could return, had *stolen* them from me."--*Id.* "I have *chosen* this perfect man."--*Id.* "I *shall scarcely* think you have *swum* in a gondola."--*Shak. cor.* "The fragrant brier was *woven* (or *weaved*) between."--*Dryden cor.* "Then finish what you have *begun*."--*Id.* "But now the years a numerous train have *run*."--*Pope cor.* "Repeats your verses *written* (or *writ*) on glasses."--*Prior cor.* "Who by turns have *risen*."--*Id.* "Which from great authors I have *taken*."--*Id.* "Even there he should have *fallen*."--*Id.*

"The sun has *ris'n*, and gone to bed. Just as if Partridge were not dead."--*Swift cor.*

"And, though no marriage words are *spoken*, They part not till the ring is *broken*."--*Swift cor.*

LESSON II.--REGULARS.

"When the word is *stripped* of all the terminations."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "Forgive him, Tom; his head is *cracked*."--*Swift cor.* "For 'tis the sport, to have the engineer *hoised* (or *hoisted*) with his own petar."--*Shak. cor.* "As great as they are, I was *nursed* by their mother."--*Swift cor.* "If he should now be *cried* down since his change."--*Id.* "*Dipped* over head and ears--in debt."--*Id.* "We see the nation's credit *cracked*."--*Id.* "Because they find their pockets *picked*."--*Id.* "O what a pleasure *mixed* with pain!"--*Id.* "And only with her brother *linked*."--*Id.* "Because he ne'er a thought allowed, That might not be *confessed*."--*Id.* "My love to Sheelah is more firmly *fixed*."--*Id.* "The observations *annexed* to them will be intelligible."--*Phil. Mus. cor.* "Those eyes are always *fixed* on the general principles."--*Id.* "Laborious conjectures will be *banished* from our commentaries."--*Id.* "Tiridates was dethroned, and Phraates was *reestablished*, in his stead."--*Id.* "A Roman who was *attached* to Augustus."--*Id.* "Nor should I have spoken of it, unless Baxter had *talked* about two such."--*Id.* "And the reformers of language have generally *rushed* on."--*Id.* "Three centuries and a half had then *elapsed* since the date,"--*Ib.* "Of such criteria, as has been *remarked* already, there is an abundance."--*Id.* "The English have *surpassed* every other nation in their services."--*Id.* "The party *addressed* is next in dignity to the speaker."--*Harris cor.* "To which we are many times *helped*."--*W. Walker cor.* "But for him, I should have *looked* well enough to myself."--*Id.* "Why are you *vexed*, Lady? why do frown?"--*Milton cor.* "Obtruding false rules *pranked* in reason's garb."--*Id.* "But, like David *equipped* in Saul's armour, it is encumbered and oppressed."--*Campbell cor.*

"And when their merchants are blown up, and *cracked*, Whole towns are cast away in storms, and *wrecked*."--*Butler cor.*

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The lands are *held* in free and common socage."--*Trumbull cor.* "A stroke is *drawn* under such words."--*Cobbett's Gr.*, 1st Ed. "It is *struck* even, with a strickle."--*W. Walker cor.* "Whilst I was *wandering*, without any care, beyond my bounds."--*Id.* "When one would do something, unless *hindered* by something present."--*B. Johnson cor.* "It is used potentially, but not so as to be *rendered* by these signs."--*Id.* "Now who would dote upon things *hurried* down the stream thus fast?"--*Collier cor.* "Heaven hath timely *tried* their growth."--*Milton cor.* "O! ye mistook, ye should have *snatched* his wand."--*Id.* "Of true virgin here *distressed*."--*Id.* "So that they have at last come to be *substituted* in the stead of it."--*Barclay cor.* "Though ye have *lain* among the pots."--*Bible cor.* "And, lo! in her mouth was an olive leaf *plucked* off."--*Scott's Bible, and Alger's.* "Brutus and Cassius *Have ridden*, (or *rode*,) like madmen, through the gates of Rome."--*Shak. cor.* "He shall be *spit upon*."--*Bible cor.* "And are not the countries so *overflowed* still *situated* between the tropics?"--*Bentley.* "Not *tricked* and *frowned* as she was wont, But *kerchiefed* in a comely cloud."--*Milton cor.* "To satisfy his rigour, *Satisfied* never."--*Id.* "With him there *crucified*."--*Id.* "Th' earth cumbered, and the wing'd air *darked* with plumes."--*Id.* "And now their way to Earth they had *descried*."--*Id.* "Not so thick swarmed once the soil *Bedropped* with blood of Gorgon."--*Id.* "And in a troubled sea of passion *tossed*."--*Id.* "The cause, alas! is quickly *guessed*."--*Swift cor.* "The kettle to the top was *hoised*, or *hoisted*."--*Id.* "In chains thy syllables are *linked*."--*Id.* "Rather than thus be *overtopped*, Would you not wish their laurels *cropped*."--*Id.* "The HYPHEN, or CONJOINER, is a little line *drawn* to connect words, or parts of words."--*Cobbett cor.* "In the other manners of dependence, this general rule is sometimes *broken*."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Some intransitive verbs may be rendered transitive by means of a preposition *prefixed* to them."--*Grant cor.* "Whoever now should place the accent on the first syllable of *Valerius*, would set every body *a laughing*."--*J. Walker cor.* "Being mocked, scourged, *spit upon*, and crucified."--*Gurney cor.*

"For rhyme in Greece or Rome was never known, Till *barb'rous hordes* those states had *overthrown*."--*Roscommon cor.*

"In my own Thames may I be *drowned*, If e'er I stoop beneath *the crowned*." Or thus:-- "In my own Thames may I be *drown'd dead*, If e'er I stoop beneath a crown'd head."--*Swift cor.*

CHAPTER VIII.

--ADVERBS.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING THE FORMS OF ADVERBS.

"We can much *more easily* form the conception of a fierce combat."--*Blair corrected*. "When he was restored *agreeably* to the treaty, he was a perfect savage."--*Webster cor*. "How I shall acquit myself *suitably* to the importance of the trial."--*Duncan cor*. "Can any thing show your Holiness how *unworthily* you treat mankind?"--*Spect. cor*. "In what other, *consistently* with reason and common sense, can you go about to explain it to him?"--*Lowth cor*. "Agreeably to this rule, the short vowel Sheva has two characters."--*Wilson cor*. "We shall give a *remarkably* fine example of this figure."--See *Blair's Rhet.*, p. 156. "All of which is most *abominably* false."--*Barclay cor*. "He heaped up great riches, but passed his time *miserably*."--*Murray cor*. "He is never satisfied with expressing any thing clearly and *simply*."--*Dr. Blair cor*. "Attentive only to exhibit his ideas *clearly* and *exactly*, he appears dry."--*Id*. "Such words as have the most liquids and vowels, glide the *most softly*." Or: "Where liquids and vowels most abound, the utterance is softest."--*Id*. "The simplest points, such as are *most easily* apprehended."--*Id*. "Too historical to be accounted a *perfectly* regular epic poem."--*Id*. "Putting after them the oblique case, *agreeably* to the French construction."--*Priestley cor*. "Where the train proceeds with an *extremely* slow pace."--*Kames cor*. "So as *scarcely* to give an appearance of succession."--*Id*. "That concord between sound and sense, which is perceived in some expressions, *independently* of artful pronunciation."--*Id*. "Cornaro had become very corpulent, *previously* to the adoption of his temperate habits."--*Hitchcock cor*. "Bread, which is a solid, and *tolerably* hard, substance."--*Day cor*. "To command every body that was not dressed as *finely* as himself."--*Id*. "Many of them have *scarcely* outlived their authors."--*J. Ward cor*. "Their labour, indeed, did not penetrate very *deeply*."--*Wilson cor*. "The people are *miserably* poor, and subsist on fish."--*Hume cor*. "A scale, which I took great pains, some years ago, to make."--*Bucke cor*. "There is no truth on earth *better* established *than* the truth of the Bible."--*Taylor cor*. "I know of no work *more* wanted *than* the one *which* Mr. Taylor has now furnished."--*Dr. Nott cor*. "And therefore their requests are *unfrequent* and reasonable."--*Taylor cor*. "Questions are *more easily* proposed, than answered rightly."--*Dillwyn cor*. "Often reflect on the advantages you possess, and on the source *from which* they are all derived."--*Murray cor*. "If there be no special rule which requires it to be put *further forward*."--*Milnes cor*. "The masculine and *the* neuter have the same dialect in all *the* numbers, especially when they end *alike*."--*Id*.

"And children are more busy in their play Than those that *wiseliest* pass their time away."--*Butler cor*.

CHAPTER IX.

--CONJUNCTIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"A *Verb* is so called from the Latin *verbum*, a word."--*Bucke cor.* "References are often marked by letters *or* figures."--*Adam and Gould cor.* (1.) "A Conjunction is a word which joins words *or* sentences together."--*Lennie, Bullions and Brace, cor.* (2.) "A Conjunction is used to connect words *or* sentences together."--*R. C. Smith cor.* (3.) "A Conjunction is used to connect words *or* sentences."--*Maunder cor.* (4.) "Conjunctions are words used to join words *or* sentences."--*Wilcox cor.* (5.) "A Conjunction is a word used to connect words *or* sentences."--*M'Culloch, Hart, and Day, cor.* (6.) "A Conjunction joins words *or* sentences together."--*Macintosh and Hiley cor.* (7.) "The Conjunction joins words *or* sentences together."--*L. Murray cor.* (8.) "Conjunctions connect words *or* sentences to each other."--*Wright cor.* (9.) "Conjunctions connect words *or* sentences."--*Wells and Wilcox cor.* (10.) "The conjunction is a part of speech, used to connect words *or* sentences."--*Weld cor.* (11.) "A conjunction is a word used to connect words *or* sentences together."--*Fowler cor.* (12.) "Connectives are *particles that* unite words *or* sentences in construction."--*Webster cor.* "English Grammar is miserably taught in our district schools; the teachers know *little or nothing* about it."--*J. O. Taylor cor.* "Lest, instead of preventing *diseases*, you draw *them* on."--*Locke cor.* "The definite article *the* is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative *or the* superlative degree."--*Murray et al. cor.* "When nouns naturally neuter are *assumed to be* masculine *or* feminine."--*Murray cor.* "This form of the perfect tense represents an action *as* completely past, *though* often *as done* at no great distance *of time*, *or at a time* not specified."--*Id.* "The *Copulative Conjunction* serves to connect words *or clauses*, *so as* to continue a sentence, by expressing an addition, a supposition, a cause, *or a consequence*."--*Id.* "The *Disjunctive Conjunction* serves, not only to continue a sentence *by connecting its parts*, but also to express opposition of meaning, *either real or nominal*."--*Id.* "If we open the volumes of our divines, philosophers, historians, or artists, we shall find that they abound with all the terms necessary to communicate *the* observations and discoveries *of their authors*."--*Id.* "When a disjunctive *conjunction* occurs between a singular noun or pronoun and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with the plural noun *or* pronoun."--*Murray et al. cor.* "Pronouns must always agree with their antecedents, *or* the nouns for which they stand, in gender and number."--*Murray cor.* "Neuter verbs do not *express action*, and consequently do not govern nouns or pronouns."--*Id.* "And the auxiliary of the past imperfect *as well as of the* present tense."--*Id.* "If this rule should not appear to apply to every example *that* has been produced, *or* to others which might be cited."--*Id.* "An emphatical pause is made, after something of peculiar moment has been said, on which we desire to fix the hearer's attention."--*Murray and Hart cor.* "An imperfect[531] phrase contains no assertion, *and* does not amount to a proposition, or sentence."--*Murray cor.* "The word was in the mouth of every one, *yet* its meaning may still be a secret."--*Id.* "This word was in the mouth of every one, *and yet*, as to its precise and definite idea, this may still be a secret,"--*Harris cor.* "It cannot be otherwise, *because* the French prosody differs from that of every other European language."--*Smollet cor.* "So gradually *that it may be* engrafted on a subtonic."--*Rush cor.* "Where the Chelsea *and* Malden bridges now are." Or better: "Where the Chelsea *or the* Malden bridge now is."--*Judge Parker cor.* "Adverbs are words *added* to verbs, *to* participles, *to* adjectives, *or to* other adverbs."--*R. C. Smith cor.* "I could not have told you who the hermit was, *or* on what mountain he lived."--*Bucke cor.* "AM *and* BE (for they are the same *verb*) naturally, or in themselves, signify *being*."--*Brightland cor.* "Words are *signs*, *either oral or written*, by which we express our thoughts, *or* ideas."--*Mrs. Bethune cor.* "His fears will detect him, *that* he shall not escape."--*Comly cor.* "Whose is equally applicable to persons *and to* things"--*Webster cor.* "One negative destroys an other, *so that* two are equivalent to an affirmative."--*Bullions cor.*

"No sooner does he peep into the world, *Than* he has done his do."--*Hudibras cor.*

CHAPTER X.

--PREPOSITIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

"Nouns are often formed *from* participles."--*L. Murray corrected*. "What tenses are formed *from* the perfect participle?"--*Ingersoll cor*. "Which tense is formed *from* the *present*, or root of the verb?"--*Id*. "When a noun or a pronoun is placed before a participle, independently *of* the rest of the sentence."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 348. "If the addition consists *of* two or more words."--*Mur. et al. cor*. "The infinitive mood is often made absolute, or used independently *of* the rest of the sentence."--*Lowth's Gram.*, 80; *Churchill's*, 143; *Bucke's*, 96; *Merchant's*, 92. "For the great satisfaction of the reader, we *shall present a variety* of false constructions."--*Murray cor*. "For your satisfaction, I *shall present you a variety* of false constructions."--*Ingersoll cor*. "I shall here *present [to] you a scale* of derivation."--*Bucke cor*. "These two manners of representation in respect *to* number."--*Lowth and Churchill cor*. "There are certain adjectives which seem to be derived *from verbs*, without any variation."--*Lowth cor*. "Or disqualify us for receiving instruction or reproof *from* others."--*Murray cor*. "For being more studious than any other pupil *in* the school."--*Id*. "Misunderstanding the directions, we lost our way."--*Id*. "These people reduced the greater part of the island *under* their own power."--*Id*. "The principal accent distinguishes one syllable *of* a word from the rest."--*Id*. "Just numbers are in unison *with* the human mind."--*Id*. "We must accept of sound *in stead* of sense."--*Id*. "Also, *in stead of consultation*, he uses *consult*."--*Priestley cor*. "This ablative seems to be governed by a preposition understood."--*W. Walker cor*. "Lest my father *hear of it*, by some means or other."--*Id*. "And, besides, my wife would *hear of it* by some means."--*Id*. "For insisting *on* a requisition so odious to them."--*Robertson cor*. "Based *on* the great self-evident truths of liberty and equality."--*Manual cor*. "Very little knowledge of their nature is acquired *from* the spelling-book."--*Murray cor*. "They do not cut it off: except *from* a few words; as, *due, duly, &c.*"--*Id*. "Whether passing *at* such time, or then finished."--*Lowth cor*. "It hath disgusted hundreds *with* that confession."--*Barclay cor*. "But they have egregiously fallen *into* that inconveniency."--*Id*. "For is not this, to set nature *at* work?"--*Id*. "And, surely, that which should set all its springs *at* work, is God."--*Atterbury cor*. "He could not end his treatise without a panegyrie *on* modern learning."--*Temple cor*. "These are entirely independent *of* the modulation of the voice."--*J. Walker cor*. "It is dear *at* a penny. It is cheap *at* twenty pounds."--*W. Walker cor*. "It will be despatched, *on* most occasions, without resting."--*Locke cor*. "Oh the pain, the bliss of dying!"--*Pope*. "When the objects or the facts are presented *to him*."--*R. C. Smith cor*. "I will now present you a synopsis."--*Id*. "The disjunctive conjunction connects *words or sentences*, and suggests an opposition of meaning, *more or less direct*."--*Id*. "I shall now present *to* you a few lines."--*Bucke cor*. "Common names, *or* substantives, are those which stand for things *assorted*."--*Id*. "Adjectives, in the English language, *are not varied* by genders, numbers, or cases; *their only inflection is for* the degrees of comparison."--*Id*. "Participles are [little more than] adjectives formed *from verbs*."--*Id*. "I do love to walk out *on* a fine *summer* evening."--*Id*. "*Ellipsis*, when applied to grammar, is the elegant omission of one or more words *of* a sentence."--*Merchant cor*. "The *preposition to* is generally *required* before verbs in the infinitive mood, but *after* the following verbs it is properly omitted; namely, *bid, dare, feel, need, let, make, hear, see*: as, 'He *bid* me *do* it;' not, 'He *bid* me *to do* it.'"--*Id*. "The infinitive sometimes follows *than, for* the latter term of a comparison; as, ['Murray should have known *better than* to write, and Merchant, *better than* to copy, the text here corrected, or the ambiguous example they appended to it.]"--*Id*. "Or, by prefixing the *adverb more or less, for* the comparative, and *most or least, for* the superlative."--*Id*. "A pronoun is a word used *in stead* of a noun."--*Id*. "From monosyllables, the comparative is regularly formed by adding *r* or *er*."--*Perley cor*. "He has particularly named these, in distinction *from* others."--*Harris cor*. "To revive the decaying taste *for* ancient literature."--*Id*. "He found the greatest difficulty *in* writing."--*Hume cor*.

"And the tear, that is wiped with a little address, May be followed perhaps *by* a smile."--*Cowper*, i, 216.

CHAPTER XI.

--INTERJECTIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Of chance or change, *O* let not man complain."--*Beattie's Minstrel*, B. ii, l. 1. "O thou persecutor! *O* ye hypocrites!"--*Russell's Gram.*, p. 92. "O thou my voice inspire, Who *touch'd* Isaiah's hallow'd lips with fire!"--*Pope's Messiah*. "O happy we! surrounded by so many blessings!"--*Merchant cor.* "O thou who art so unmindful of thy duty!"--*Id.* "If I am wrong, *O* teach my heart To find that better way."--*Murray's Reader*, p. 248. "Heus! evocate huc Davum."--*Ter.* "Ho! call Davus out hither."--*W. Walker cor.* "It was represented by an analogy (*O* how inadequate!) which was borrowed from the *ceremonies* of paganism."--*Murray cor.* "O that Ishmael might live before thee!"--*Friends' Bible*, and *Scott's*. "And he said unto him, *O* let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak."--*Alger's Bible*, and *Scott's*. "And he said, *O* let not the Lord be angry."--*Alger; Gen.*, xviii. 32. "O my Lord, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word."--*Scott's Bible*. "O Virtue! how amiable thou art!"--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 128. "Alas! I fear for life."--*See Ib.* "Ah me! they little know How dearly I abide that boast so vain!"--*See Bucke's Gram.*, p. 87. "O that I had digged myself a cave!"--*Fletcher cor.* "Oh, my good lord! thy comfort comes too late."--*Shak. cor.* "The vocative takes no article: it is distinguished thus: *O Pedro!* O Peter! *O Dios!* O God!"--*Bucke cor.* "Oho! But, the relative is always the same."--*Cobbett cor.* "All-hail, ye happy men!"--*Jaudon cor.* "O that I had wings like a dove!"--*Scott's Bible*. "O glorious hope! O bless'd abode!"--*O. B. Peirce's Gram.*, p. 304. "Welcome friends! how joyous is your presence!"--*T. Smith cor.* "O blissful days!--but, ah! how soon ye pass!"--*Parker and Fox cor.*

"O golden days! O bright unvalued hours!-- What bliss, did ye but know that bliss, were yours!"--*Barbault cor.*

"Ah me! what perils do environ The man that meddles with cold iron!"--*Hudibras cor.*

THE KEY.--PART III.--SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

--SENTENCES.

The first chapter of Syntax, being appropriated to general views of this part of grammar, to an exhibition of its leading doctrines, and to the several forms of sentential analysis, with an application of its principal rules in parsing, contains no false grammar for correction; and has, of course, nothing to correspond to it, in this Key, except the title, which is here inserted for form's sake.

CHAPTER II.

--ARTICLES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE I.

UNDER NOTE I.--AN OR A.

"I have seen *a* horrible thing in the house of Israel."--*Bible cor.* "There is *a* harshness in the following sentences."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 152. "Indeed, such *a* one is not to be looked for."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "If each of you will be disposed to approve himself *a* useful citizen."--*Id.* "Land with them had acquired almost *a* European value."--*Webster cor.* "He endeavoured to find out *a* wholesome remedy."--*Neef cor.* "At no time have we attended *a* yearly meeting more to our own satisfaction."--*The Friend cor.* "Addison was not *a* humorist in character."--*Kames cor.* "Ah me! what *a* one was he!"--*Lily cor.* "He was such *a* one as I never saw before"--*Id.* "No man can be a good preacher, who is not *a* useful one."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "A usage which is too frequent with Mr. Addison."--*Id.* "Nobody joins the voice of a sheep with the shape of *a* horse."--*Locke cor.* "A universality seems to be aimed at by the omission of the article."--*Priestley cor.* "Architecture is *a* useful as well as a fine art."--*Kames cor.* "Because the same individual conjunctions do not preserve *a* uniform signification."--*Nutting cor.* "Such a work required the patience and assiduity of *a* hermit."--*Johnson cor.* "Resentment is *a* union of sorrow with malignity."--*Id.* "His bravery, we know, was *a* high courage of blasphemy."--*Pope cor.* "HYSSOP; *an* herb of bitter taste."--*Pike cor.*

"On each enervate string they taught the note To pant, or tremble through *a* eunuch's throat."--*Pope cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--AN OR A WITH PLURALS.

"At *a* session of the court, in March, it was moved," &c.--*Hutchinson cor.* "I shall relate my conversations, of which I kept memoranda."--*D. D'Ab. cor.* "I took *an* other dictionary, and with *a* pair of scissors cut out, for instance, the word ABACUS."--*A. B. Johnson cor.* "A person very meet seemed he for the purpose, *and* about forty-five years old."--*Gardiner cor.* "And it came to pass, about eight days after these sayings."--*Bible cor.* "There were slain of them about three thousand men."--*I Macc. cor.* "Until I had gained the top of these white mountains, which seemed *other* Alps of snow."--*Addison cor.* "To make them satisfactory amends for all the losses they had sustained."--*Goldsmith cor.* "As *a* first-fruit of many that shall be gathered."--*Barclay cor.* "It makes indeed a little *amend*, (or *some amends*,) by inciting us to oblige people."--*Sheffield cor.* "A large and lightsome *back* stairway (or *flight of backstairs*) leads up to an entry above."--*Id.* "Peace of mind is an *abundant recompense* for any sacrifices of interest."--*Murray et al. cor.* "With such a spirit, and *such* sentiments, were hostilities carried on."--*Robertson cor.* "In the midst of a thick *wood*, he had long lived a voluntary recluse."--*G. B.* "The flats look almost like a young *forest*."--*Chronicle cor.* "As we went on, the country for a little *way* improved, but scantily."--*Freeman cor.* "Whereby the Jews were permitted to return into their own country, after *a* captivity of seventy years at Babylon."--*Rollin cor.* "He did not go a great *way* into the country."--*Gilbert cor.*

"A large *amend* by fortune's hand is made, And the lost Punic blood is well repay'd."--*Rowe cor.*

UNDER NOTE III.--NOUNS CONNECTED.

"As where a landscape is conjoined with the music of birds, and *the* odour of flowers."--*Kames cor.* "The last order resembles the second in the mildness of its accent, and *the* softness of its pause."--*Id.* "Before the use of the loadstone, or *the* knowledge of the compass."--*Dryden cor.* "The perfect participle and *the* imperfect tense ought not to be confounded."--*Murray cor.* "In proportion as the taste of a poet or *an* orator becomes more refined."--*Blair cor.* "A situation can never be more intricate, *so* long as there is an angel, *a* devil, or *a* musician, to lend a helping hand."--*Kames cor.* "Avoid rude sports: an eye is soon lost, or *a* bone

broken."--*Inst.*, p. 262. "Not a word was uttered, nor *a* sign given."--*Ib.* "I despise not the doer, but *the* deed."--*Ib.* "For the sake of an easier pronunciation and *a* more agreeable sound."--*Lowth cor.* "The levity as well as *the* loquacity of the Greeks made them incapable of keeping up the true standard of history."--*Bolingbroke cor.*

UNDER NOTE IV.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It is proper that the vowels be a long and *a* short one."--*Murray cor.* "Whether the person mentioned was seen by the speaker a long or *a* short time before."--*Id. et al.* "There are three genders; *the* masculine, *the* feminine, and *the* neuter."--*Adam cor.* "The numbers are two; *the* singular and *the* plural."--*Id. et al.* "The persons are three; *the* first, *the* second, and *the* third."--*Idem.* "Nouns and pronouns have three cases; the nominative, *the* possessive, and *the* objective."--*Comly and Ing. cor.* "Verbs have five moods; namely, the infinitive, *the* indicative, *the* potential, *the* subjunctive, and *the* imperative."--*Bullions et al. cor.* "How many numbers have pronouns? Two, the singular and *the* plural."--*Bradley cor.* "To distinguish between an interrogative and *an* exclamatory sentence."--*Murray et al. cor.* "The first and *the* last of which are *compound* members."--*Lowth cor.* "In the last lecture, I treated of the concise and *the* diffuse, the nervous and *the* feeble manner."--*Blair cor.* "The passive and *the* neuter verbs I shall reserve for some future conversation."--*Ingersoll cor.* "There are two voices; the active and *the* passive."--*Adam et al. cor.* "WHOSE is rather the poetical than *the* regular genitive of WHICH."--*Johnson cor.* "To feel the force of a compound or *a* derivative word."--*Town cor.* "To preserve the distinctive uses of the copulative and *the* disjunctive conjunctions."--*Murray et al. cor.* "E has a long and *a* short sound in most languages."--*Bicknell cor.* "When the figurative and *the* literal sense are mixed and jumbled together."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "The Hebrew, with which the Canaanitish and *the* Phoenician stand in connexion."--*Conant and Fowler cor.* "The languages of Scandinavia proper, the Norwegian and *the* Swedish."--*Fowler cor.*

UNDER NOTE V.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"The path of truth is a plain and safe path."--*Murray cor.* "Directions for acquiring a just and happy elocution."--*Kirkham cor.* "Its leading object is, to adopt a correct and easy method."--*Id.* "How can it choose but wither in a long and sharp winter?"--*Cowley cor.* "Into a dark and distant unknown."--*Dr. Chalmers cor.* "When the bold and strong enslaved his fellow man."--*Chazotte cor.* "We now proceed to consider the things most essential to an accurate and perfect sentence."--*Murray cor.* "And hence arises a second and very considerable source of the improvement of taste."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Novelty produces in the mind a vivid and agreeable emotion."--*Id.* "The deepest and bitterest feeling still is *that of* the separation."--*Dr. M'Rie cor.* "A great and good man looks beyond time."--*See Brown's Inst.*, p. 263. "They made but a weak and ineffectual resistance."--*Ib.* "The light and worthless kernels will float."--*Ib.* "I rejoice that there is an other and better world."--*Ib.* "For he is determined to revise his work, and present to the *public an other and better* edition."--*Kirkham cor.* "He hoped that this title would secure *to* him an ample and independent authority."--*L. Murray cor. et al.* "There is, however, *an other and more limited sense.*"--*J. Q. Adams cor.*

UNDER NOTE VI.--ARTICLES OR PLURALS.

"This distinction forms what are called the diffuse *style* and the concise."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Two different modes of speaking, distinguished at first by the denominations of *the Attic manner* and *the Asiatic.*"--*Adams cor.* "But the great design of uniting the Spanish and French monarchies under the former, was laid."--*Bolingbroke cor.* "In the solemn and poetic styles, it [*do* or *did*] is often rejected."--*Allen cor.* "They cannot be, at the same time, in *both* the objective *case* and the nominative." Or: "They cannot be, at the same time, in *both* the objective and the nominative *case.*" Or: "They cannot be, at the same time, in the nominative *case*, and *also in the* objective." Or: "They cannot be, at the same time, in the nominative and objective cases."--*Murray's Gram.*, 8vo, p. 148. Or, better: "They cannot be, at the same time, in *both* cases, the nominative and *the* objective."--*Murray et al. cor.* "They are named the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees."--*Smart cor.* "Certain adverbs are capable of taking an inflection; namely, that of the comparative

and superlative degrees."--*Fowler cor.* "In the subjunctive mood, the present and imperfect tenses often carry with them a future sense."--*Murray et al. cor.* "The imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first-future tense, of this mood, are conjugated like the same tenses of the indicative."--*Kirkham bettered.* "What rules apply in parsing personal pronouns of the second and third persons?"--*Id.* "Nouns are sometimes in the nominative or *the* objective case after the neuter verb *be*, or after an active-intransitive or a passive verb." "The verb varies its *ending* in the singular, in order to agree with its nominative, in the first, second, and third persons."--*Id.* "They are identical in effect with the radical and the vanishing stress."--*Rush cor.* "In a sonnet, the first, *the* fourth, *the* fifth, and *the* eighth line, usually rhyme to *one an* other: so do the second, third, sixth, and seventh *lines*; the ninth, eleventh, and thirteenth *lines*; and the tenth, twelfth, and fourteenth *lines*."--*Churchill cor.* "The iron and golden ages are run; youth and manhood are departed."--*Wright cor.* "If, as you say, the iron and the golden age are past, the youth and the manhood of the world."--*Id.* "An Exposition of the Old and New Testaments."--*Henry cor.* "The names and order of the books of the Old and the New Testament."--*Bible cor.* "In the second and third persons of that tense."--*Murray cor.* "And who still unites in himself the human and the divine nature."--*Gurney cor.* "Among whom arose the Italian, Spanish, French, and English languages."--*Murray cor.* "Whence arise these two numbers, the singular and the plural."--*Burn cor.*

UNDER NOTE VII.--CORRESPONDENT TERMS.

"Neither the definitions nor *the* examples are entirely the same as his."--*Ward cor.* "Because it makes a discordance between the thought and *the* expression."--*Kames cor.* "Between the adjective and *the* following substantive."--*Id.* "Thus Athens became both the repository and *the* nursery of learning."--*Chazotte cor.* "But the French pilfered from both the Greek and *the* Latin."--*Id.* "He shows that Christ is both the power and *the* wisdom of God."--*The Friend cor.* "That he might be Lord both of the dead and *of the* living."--*Bible cor.* "This is neither the obvious nor *the* grammatical meaning of his words."--*Blair cor.* "Sometimes both the accusative and *the* infinitive are understood."--*Adam and Gould cor.* "In some cases, we can use either the nominative or *the* accusative, promiscuously."--*Idem.* "Both the former and *the* latter substantive are sometimes to be understood."--*Idem.* "Many *of* which have escaped both the commentator and *the* poet himself."--*Pope cor.* "The verbs MUST and OUGHT, have both a present and a past signification."--*L. Murray cor.* "How shall we distinguish between the friends and *the* enemies of the government?"--*Dr. Webster cor.* "Both the *ecclesiastical* and *the* secular powers concurred in those measures."--*Dr. Campbell cor.* "As the period has a beginning and *an* end within itself, it implies an *inflection*."--*J. Q. Adams cor.* "Such as ought to subsist between a principal and *an* accessory."--*Ld. Kames cor.*

UNDER NOTE VIII.--CORRESPONDENCE PECULIAR.

"When both the upward and the downward *slide* occur in *the sound of one* syllable, they are called a CIRCUMFLEX, or WAVE."--*Kirkham cor.* "The word THAT is used both in the nominative and in *the objective case*."--*Sanborn cor.* "But in all the other moods and tenses, both of the active and *of the* passive voice [the verbs] are conjugated at large."--*Murray cor.* "Some writers on grammar, admitting the second-future tense into the indicative mood, reject it from the subjunctive."--*Id.* "After the same conjunction, to use both the indicative and the subjunctive mood in the same sentence, and under the same circumstances, seems to be a great impropriety."--*Id.* "The true distinction between the subjunctive and the indicative mood in this tense."--*Id.* "I doubt of his capacity to teach either the French or *the* English language."--*Chazotte cor.* "It is as necessary to make a distinction between the active-transitive and the active-intransitive verb, as between the active and *the* passive."--*Nixon cor.*

UNDER NOTE IX.--A SERIES OF TERMS.

"As comprehending the terms uttered by the artist, the mechanic, and *the* husbandman."--*Chazotte cor.* "They may be divided into four classes; the Humanists, *the* Philanthropists, *the* Pestalozzians, and the Productives."--*Smith cor.* "Verbs have six tenses; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, the

first-future, and the *second-future*."--*Murray et al. cor.* "Is it an irregular *neuter* verb [from *be*, *was*, *being*, *been*; found in] *the* indicative mood, present tense, third person, and singular number."--*Murray cor.* "SHOULD GIVE is an irregular *active-transitive* verb [from *give*, *gave*, *given*, *giving*; found] in the potential mood, imperfect tense, first person, and plural number."--*Id.* "US is a personal pronoun, *of the* first person, plural number, *masculine gender*, and objective case."--*Id.* "THEM is a personal pronoun, of the third person, plural number, *masculine gender*, and objective case."--*Id.* "It is surprising that the Jewish critics, with all their skill in dots, points, and accents, never had the ingenuity to invent a point of interrogation, *a point* of admiration, or a parenthesis."--*Dr. Wilson cor.* "The fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth *verses*." Or: "The fifth, *the* sixth, *the* seventh, and the eighth verse."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "Substitutes have three persons; the First, *the* Second, and the Third."--*Id.* "JOHN'S is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and possessive case: and *is* governed by 'WIFE,' *according to Rule*" [4th, *which says*, &c.]--*Smith cor.* "Nouns, in the English language, have three cases; the nominative, the possessive, and *the* objective."--*Bar. and Alex. cor.* "The potential mood has four tenses; viz., the present, the imperfect, the perfect, and *the* pluperfect."--*Ingersoll cor.*

"Where Science, Law, and Liberty depend, And own the patron, patriot, and friend."--*Savage cor.*

UNDER NOTE X.--SPECIES AND GENUS.

"*The* pronoun is a part of speech[532] put for *the* noun."--*Paul's Ac. cor.* "*The* verb is a part of speech declined with mood and tense."--*Id.* "*The* participle is a part of speech derived *from the* verb."--*Id.* "*The* adverb is a part of speech joined to verbs, [participles, adjectives, or other adverbs,] to declare their signification."--*Id.* "*The* conjunction is a part of speech that *joins words or* sentences together."--*Id.* "*The* preposition is a part of speech most commonly set before other parts."--*Id.* "*The* interjection is a part of speech which *betokens* a sudden *emotion* or passion of the mind."--*Id.* "*The* enigma, or riddle, is also a species of allegory."--*Blair and Murray cor.* "We may take from the Scriptures a very fine example of *the* allegory."--*Idem.* "And thus have you exhibited a sort of sketch of art."--*Harris cor.* "We may 'imagine a subtle kind of reasoning,' as Mr. Harris acutely observes."--*Churchill cor.* "But, before entering on these, I shall give one instance of *metaphor*, *very beautiful*, (or, one *very beautiful* instance of metaphor,) that I may show the figure to full advantage."--*Blair cor.* "Aristotle, in his Poetics, uses *metaphor* in this extended sense, for any figurative meaning imposed upon a word; as *the* whole put for *a* part, or a part for *the* whole; a species for the genus, or *the* genus for a species."--*Id.* "It shows what kind of apple it is of which we are speaking."--*Kirkham cor.* "Cleon was *an other* sort of man."--*Goldsmith cor.* "To keep off his right wing, as a kind of reserved body."--*Id.* "This part of speech is called *the* verb."--*Mack cor.* "What sort of thing is it?"--*Hiley cor.* "What sort of charm do they possess?"--*Bullions cor.*

"Dear Welsted, mark, in dirty hole, That painful animal, *the* mole."--*Dunciad cor.*

UNDER NOTE XI.--ARTICLES NOT REQUISITE.

"Either thou or the boys were in fault."--*Comly cor.* "It may, at first view, appear to be too general."--*Murray et al. cor.* "When the verb has reference to future time."--*Idem.* "No; they are the language of imagination, rather than of passion."--*Blair cor.* "The dislike of English Grammar, which has so generally prevailed, can be attributed *only* to the intricacy of [our] syntax."--*Russell cor.* "Is that ornament in good taste?"--*Kames cor.* "There are not many fountains in good taste." Or: "Not many fountains are [ornamented] in good taste."--*Id.* "And I persecuted this way unto death."--*Bible cor.* "The sense of feeling can, indeed, give us a notion of extension."--*Addison, Spect.*, No. 411. "The distributive *adjectives*, *each*, *every*, *either*, agree with nouns, pronouns, *or* verbs, of the singular number only."--*Murray cor.* "Expressing by one word, what might, by a circumlocution, be resolved into two or more words belonging to other parts of speech."--*Blair cor.* "By certain muscles which operate [in harmony, and] all at the same time."--*Murray cor.* "It is sufficient here to have observed thus much in general concerning them."--*Campbell cor.* "Nothing disgusts us sooner than empty pomp of language."--*Murray cor.*

UNDER NOTE XII.--TITLES AND NAMES.

"He is entitled to the appellation of *gentleman*."--*G. Brown*. "Cromwell assumed the title of Protector"--*Id*. "Her father is honoured with the title of *Earl*."--*Id*. "The chief magistrate is styled *President*."--*Id*. "The highest title in the state is that of *Governor*."--*Id*. "That boy is known by the name of *Idler*."--*Murray cor*. "The one styled *Mufti*, is the head of the ministers of law and religion."--*Balbi cor*. "Ranging all that possessed them under one class, he called that whole class *tree*."--*Blair cor*. "For *oak*, *pine*, and *ash*, were names of whole classes of objects."--*Id*. "It is of little importance whether we give to some particular mode of expression the name of *trope*, or of *figure*."--*Id*. "The collision of a vowel with itself is the most ungracious of all combinations, and has been doomed to peculiar reprobation under the name of *hiatus*."--*Adams cor*. "We hesitate to determine, whether *Tyrant* alone is the nominative, or whether the nominative includes the word *Spy*."--*Cobbett cor*. "Hence originated the customary abbreviation of *twelve months* into *twelvemonth*; of *seven nights* into *sennight*; of *fourteen nights* into *fortnight*."--*Webster cor*.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--COMPARISONS AND ALTERNATIVES.

"He is a better writer than reader."--*W. Allen*. "He was an abler mathematician than linguist."--*Id*. "I should rather have an orange than *an* apple."--*G. Brown*. "He was no less able *as* a negotiator, than courageous *as* a warrior."--*Smollett cor*. "In an epic poem, we pardon many negligences that would not be permitted in a sonnet or *an* epigram."--*Kames cor*. "That figure is a sphere, globe, or ball."--*Churchill's Gram.*, p. 357.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--ANTECEDENTS TO WHO OR WHICH.

"*The* carriages which were formerly in use, were very clumsy."--*Key to Inst*. "The place is not mentioned by *the* geographers who wrote at that time."--*Id*. "Those questions which a person *puts* to himself in contemplation, ought to be terminated *with* points of interrogation."--*Mur. et al. cor*. "The work is designed for the use of *those* persons who may think it merits a place in their libraries."--*Mur. cor*. "That *those* who think confusedly, should express themselves obscurely, is not to be wondered at."--*Id*. "Those grammarians who limit the number to two, or three, do not reflect."--*Id*. "The substantives which end in *ian*, are those that signify profession." Or: "Those substantives which end in *ian*, are *such as* signify profession."--*Id*. "To these may be added *those* verbs which, among the poets, *usually* govern the dative."--*Adam and Gould cor*. "The consonants are *those* letters which cannot be sounded without the aid of a vowel."--*Bucke cor*. "To employ the curiosity of persons *skilled* in grammar:"--"of *those* who are skilled in grammar:"--"of persons *that* are skilled in grammar:"--"of *such* persons *as* are skilled in grammar:" or--"of *those* persons *who* are skilled in grammar."--*L. Murray cor*. "This rule refers only to *those* nouns and pronouns which have the same bearing, or relation."--*Id*. "So that *the* things which are seen, were not made of things *that* do appear."--*Bible cor*. "Man is an imitative creature; he may utter *again* the sounds which he has heard."--*Dr. Wilson cor*. "But *those* men whose business is wholly domestic, have little or no use for any language but their own."--*Dr. Webster cor*.

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL NOUNS.

"Great benefit may be reaped from *the* reading of histories."--*Sewel cor*. "And some attempts were made towards *the* writing of history."--*Bolingbroke cor*. "It is *an* invading of the priest's office, for any other to offer it"--*Leslie cor*. "And thus far of *the* forming of verbs."--*W. Walker cor*. "And without *the* shedding of blood *there* is no remission."--*Bible cor*. "For *the* making of measures, we have the best method here in England."--*Printer's Gram. cor*. "This is really both *an* admitting and *a* denying at once."--*Butler cor*. "And hence the origin of *the* making of parliaments."--*Dr. Brown cor*. "Next thou objectest, that *the* having of saving light and grace presupposes conversion. But that I deny: for, on the contrary, conversion *presupposes* *the* having of light and grace."--*Barclay cor*. "They cried down *the* wearing of rings and other superfluities, as we do."--*Id*. "Whose adorning, let it not be that outward adorning, of *the* plaiting of the hair, and of *the* wearing of gold, or of *the* putting-on of apparel."--*Bible cor*. "In *the* spelling of derivative words, the *primitives* must be kept whole."--*Brit. Gram. and Buchanan's cor*. "And the princes offered for *the* dedicating

of the altar."--*Numb. cor.* "Boasting is not only *a* telling of lies, but also *of* many unseemly truths."--*Sheffield cor.* "We freely confess that *the* forbearing of prayer in the wicked is sinful."--*Barclay cor.* "For *the* revealing of a secret, there is no remedy."--*G. Brown.* "He turned all his thoughts to *the* composing of laws for the good of the State."--*Rollin cor.*

UNDER NOTE XVI.--PARTICIPLES, NOT NOUNS.

"It is salvation to be kept from falling into a pit, as truly as to be taken out of it after falling in."--*Barclay cor.* "For in receiving and embracing the testimony of truth, they felt their souls eased."--*Id.* "True regularity does not consist in having but a single rule, and forcing every thing to conform to it."--*Phil. Museum cor.* "To the man of the world, this sound of glad tidings appears only an idle tale, and not worth attending to."--*Say cor.* "To be the deliverer of the captive Jews, by ordering their temple to be rebuilt," &c.--*Rollin cor.* "And for preserving them from being defiled."--*Discip. cor.* "A wise man will *forbear to show* any excellence in trifles."--*Kames cor.* "Hirsutus had no other reason for valuing a book."--*Johnson, and Wright, cor.* "To being heard with satisfaction, it is necessary that the speaker should deliver himself with ease." Perhaps better: "*To be heard, &c.*" Or: "*In order to be heard, &c.*"--*Sheridan cor.* "And, to the *end of* being well heard and clearly understood, a good and distinct articulation contributes more, than *can even the greatest* power of voice."--*Id.*

"*Potential* purports, *having power or will*; As, If you *would* improve, you *should* be still."--*Tobitt cor.*

UNDER NOTE XVII.--VARIOUS ERRORS.

"For the same reason, a neuter verb cannot become passive."--*Lowth cor.* "A period is *a* whole sentence complete in itself."--*Id.* "A colon, or member, is a chief constructive part, or *the greatest* division, of a sentence."--*Id.* "A semicolon, or half-member, is a *smaller* constructive part, or *a* subdivision, of a sentence or *of* a member."--*Id.* "A sentence or *a* member is again subdivided into commas, or segments."--*Id.* "The first error that I would mention is, too general *an* attention to the dead languages, with a neglect of our own *tongue.*"--*Webster cor.* "One third of the importations would supply the demands of *the* people."--*Id.* "And especially in *a* grave style."--*Murray's Gram., i, 178.* "By too eager *a* pursuit, he ran a great risk of being disappointed."--*Murray cor.* "The letters are divided into vowels and consonants."--*Mur. et al. cor.* "The consonants are divided into mutes and semivowels."--*Idem.* "The first of these forms is *the* most agreeable to the English idiom."--*Murray cor.* "If they gain, it is *at* too dear *a* rate."--*Barclay cor.* "A pronoun is a word used *in stead* of a noun, to prevent too frequent *a* repetition of it."--*Maunder cor.* "This vulgar error might perhaps arise from too partial *a* fondness for the Latin."--*Ash cor.* "The groans which too heavy *a* load extorts from her."--*Hitchcock cor.* "The numbers of a verb are, of course, *the* singular and *the* plural."--*Bucke cor.* "To brook no meanness, and to stoop to no dissimulation, are indications of a great mind."--*Murray cor.* "This mode of expression rather suits *the* familiar than *the* grave style."--*Id.* "This use of the word *best* suits *a* familiar and low style."--*Priestley cor.* "According to the nature of the composition, the one or *the* other may be predominant."--*Blair cor.* "Yet the commonness of such sentences prevents in a great measure too early *an* expectation of the end."--*Campbell cor.* "A eulogy or a philippic may be pronounced by an individual of one nation upon *a* subject of *an* other."--*J. Q. Adams cor.* "A French sermon is, for *the* most part, a warm animated exhortation."--*Blair cor.* "I do not envy those who think slavery no very pitiable lot."--*Channing cor.* "The auxiliary and *the* principal united constitute a tense."--*Murray cor.* "There are some verbs which are defective with respect to *the* persons."--*Id.* "In youth, habits of industry are *the* most easily acquired."--*Id.* "The apostrophe (') is used in place of a letter left out."--*Bullions cor.*

CHAPTER III.

--CASES, OR NOUNS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE II; OF NOMINATIVES.

"The whole need not a physician, but *they* that are sick."--*Bunyan cor.* "He will in no wise cast out *whosoever* cometh unto him." Better: "He will in no wise cast out *any that come* unto him."--*Hall cor.* "He feared the enemy might fall upon his men, *who*, he saw, were off their guard."--*Hutchinson cor.* "*Whosoever* shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain."--*Matt.*, v, 41. "The *ideas* of the author have been conversant with the faults of other writers."--*Swift cor.* "You are a much greater loser than *I*, by his death." Or: "*Thou art* a much greater loser by his death than *I*."--*Id.* "Such *peccadilloes* pass with him for pious frauds."--*Barclay cor.* "In whom I am nearly concerned, and *who*, I know, would be very apt to justify my whole procedure."--*Id.* "Do not think such a man as *I* contemptible for my garb."--*Addison cor.* "His wealth and *he* bid adieu to each other."--*Priestley cor.* "So that, 'He is greater than *I*,' will be more grammatical than, 'He is greater than *me*.'"--*Id.* "The Jesuits had more interests at court than *he*."--*Id. and Smollett cor.* "Tell the Cardinal that I understand poetry better than *he*."--*Id.* "An inhabitant of Crim Tartary was far more happy than *he*."--*Id.* "My father and *he* have been very intimate since."--*Fair Am. cor.* "Who was the agent, and *who*, the object struck or kissed?"--*Mrs. Bethune cor.* "To find the person *who*, he imagined, was concealed there."--*Kirkham cor.* "He offered a great recompense to *whosoever* would help him." Better: "He offered a great recompense to *any one who* would help him."--*Hume and Pr. cor.* "They would be under the dominion, absolute and unlimited, of *whosoever* (or *any one who*) might exercise the right of judgement."--*Haynes cor.* "They had promised to accept *whosoever* (or *any one who*) should be born in Wales."--*Croker cor.* "We sorrow not as *they* that have no hope."--*Maturin cor.* "If he suffers, he suffers as *they* that have no hope."--*Id.* "We acknowledge that he, and *he* only, hath been our peacemaker."--*Gratton cor.* "And what can be better than *he* that made it?"--*Jenks cor.* "None of his school-fellows is more beloved than *he*."--*Cooper cor.* "Solomon, who was wiser than *they* all."--*Watson cor.* "Those *who* the Jews thought were the last to be saved, first entered the kingdom of God."--*Tract cor.* "A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than both."--*Bible cor.* "A man of business, in good company, is hardly more insupportable, than *she* *whom* they call a notable woman."--*Steele cor.* "The king of the Sarmatians, *who* we may imagine was no small prince, restored to him a hundred thousand Roman prisoners."--*Life of Anton. cor.* "Such notions would be avowed at this time by none but rosicrucians, and fanatics as mad as *they*."--*Campbell's Rhet.*, p. 203. "Unless, as I said, Messieurs, you are the masters, and not *I*."--*Hall cor.* "We had drawn up against peaceable travellers, who must have been as glad as *we* to escape."--*Burnes cor.* "Stimulated, in turn, by their approbation and that of better judges than *they*, she turned to their literature with redoubled energy."--*Quarterly Rev. cor.* "I know not *who* else are expected."--*Scott cor.* "He is great, but truth is greater than *we* all." Or: "He is great, but truth is greater than *any of us*."--*H. Mann cor.* "*He* I accuse has entered." Or, by ellipsis of the antecedent, thus: "*Whom* I accuse has entered."--*Fowler cor.*; also *Shakspeare*.

"Scotland and *thou* did each in other live."--*Dryden cor.*

"We are alone; here's none but *thou* and I."--*Shak. cor.*

"*I* rather *would*, my heart might feel your love, Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy."--*Shak. cor.*

"Tell me, in sadness, *who* is she you love?"--*Shak. cor.*

"Better leave undone, than by our deeds acquire Too high a fame, when *he* we serve's away."--*Shak. cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE III; OF APPPOSITION.

"Now, therefore, come thou, let us make a covenant, *thee* and *me*."--*Bible cor.* "Now, therefore, come thou, we will make a covenant, *thou* and *I*."--*Variation corrected.* "The word came not to Esau, the hunter, that stayed not at home; but to Jacob, the plain man, *him* that dwelt in tents."--*Penn cor.* "Not to every man, but to the man of God, (i.e.,) *him* that is led by the spirit of God."--*Barclay cor.* "For, admitting God to be a creditor, or *him* to whom the debt should be paid, and Christ *him* that satisfies or pays it on behalf of man the debtor, this question will arise, whether he paid that debt as God, or man, or both?"--*Penn cor.* "This Lord Jesus Christ, the heavenly Man, the Emmanuel, God with us, we own and believe in: *him* whom the high priests raged against," &c.--*Fox cor.* "Christ, and *He* crucified, was the Alpha and Omega of all his addresses, the fountain and foundation of his hope and trust."--*Exp. cor.* "Christ, and *He* crucified, is the head, and the only head, of the church."--*Denison cor.* "But if Christ, and *He* crucified, *is* the burden of the ministry, such disastrous results are all avoided."--*Id.* "He never let fall the least intimation, that himself, or any other person *whosoever*, was the object of worship."--*View cor.* "Let the elders that rule well, be counted worthy of double honour, especially *them* who labour in the word and doctrine."--*Bible cor.* "Our Shepherd, *he* who is styled King of saints, will assuredly give his saints the victory."--*Sermon cor.* "It may seem odd, to talk of *us* subscribers."--*Fowle cor.* "And they shall have none to bury them: *they*, their wives, nor their sons, nor[533] their daughters; for I will pour their wickedness upon them."--*Bible cor.* "Yet I supposed it necessary to send to you Epaphroditus, my brother, and companion in labour, and fellow-soldier, but your messenger, and *him* that ministered to my wants."--*Bible cor.*

"Amidst the tumult of the routed train, The sons of false Antimachus were slain; *Him* who for bribes his faithless counsels sold, And voted Helen's stay for Paris' gold."--*Pope cor.*

"See the vile King his iron sceptre bear-- His only praise attends the pious heir; *Him* in whose soul the virtues all conspire, The best good son, from the worst wicked sire."--*Lowth cor.*

"Then from thy lips poured forth a joyful song To thy Redeemer!--yea, it poured along In most melodious energy of praise, To God, the Saviour, *him* of ancient days."--*Arm Chair cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE IV; OF POSSESSIVES.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE POSSESSIVE FORM.

"*Man's* chief good is an upright mind."--*Key to Inst.* "The translator of *Mallet's History* *has* the following note."--*Webster cor.* "The act, while it gave five *years'* full pay to the officers, allowed but one year's pay to the privates."--*Id.* "For the study of English is preceded by several *years'* attention to Latin and Greek."--*Id.* "The first, the *Court-Baron*, is the *freeholders'* or *freemen's* court."--*Coke cor.* "I affirm that *Vaugelas's* definition labours under an essential defect."--*Campbell cor.; and also Murray.* "There is a chorus in *Aristophanes's* plays."--*Blair cor.* "It denotes the same perception in my mind as in *theirs*."--*Duncan cor.* "This afterwards enabled him to read *Hickes's* Saxon Grammar."--*Life of Dr. Mur. cor.* "I will not do it for *ten's* sake."--*Ash cor.* Or: "I will not *destroy* it for *ten's* sake."--*Gen.*, xviii, 32. "I arose, and asked if those charming infants were *hers*."--*Werter cor.* "They divide their time between *milliners'* shops and *the* taverns."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "The *angels'* adoring of Adam is also mentioned in the Talmud."--*Sale cor.* "Quarrels arose from the *winners'* insulting of those who lost."--*Id.* "The vacancy occasioned by Mr. *Adams's* resignation."--*Adv. to Adams's Rhet. cor.* "Read, for instance, *Junius's* address, commonly called his *Letter to the King*."--*Adams cor.* "A perpetual struggle against the tide of *Hortensius's* influence."--*Id.* "Which, for *distinction's* sake, I shall put down severally."--*R. Johnson cor.* "The fifth case is in a clause signifying the matter of *one's* fear."--*Id.* "And they took counsel, and bought with them the *potter's* field."--*Alger cor.* "Arise for thy *servants'* help, and redeem them for thy mercy's sake."--*Jenks cor.* "Shall not their cattle, their substance, and every beast of *theirs*, be *ours*?"--COM. BIBLE: *Gen.*, xxxiv, 23. "*Its* regular plural, *bullaces*, is used by Bacon."--*Churchill cor.* "Mordecai walked every day before the court of the *women's* house."--*Scott cor.* "Behold, they that wear soft clothing, are in *kings'* houses."--*Alger's Bible.* "Then Jethro, *Moses's* father-in-law, took Zipporah, *Moses's* wife, and her two sons; and Jethro, *Moses's* father-in-law, came, with

his sons and his wife, unto Moses."--*Scott's Bible*. "King *James's* translators merely revised former translations."--*Frazer cor*. "May they be like corn on *houses'* tops."--*White cor*.

"And for his Maker's *image'* sake exempt."--*Milton cor*.

"By all the fame acquired in ten *years'* war."--*Rowe cor*.

"Nor glad vile poets with true *critics'* gore."--*Pope cor*.

"Man only of a softer mold is made, Not for his *fellows'* ruin, but their aid."--*Dryden cor*.

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES CONNECTED.

"It was necessary to have both the *physician's* and the surgeon's advice."--*L. Murray's False Syntax*, Rule 10. "This *outside* fashionableness of the *tailor's* or the *tirewoman's* making."--*Locke cor*. "Some pretending to be of Paul's party, others of *Apollos's*, others of *Cephas's*, and others, (pretending yet higher,) to be of Christ's."--*Wood cor*. "Nor is it less certain, that *Spenser and Milton's* spelling agrees better with our pronunciation."--*Phil. Museum cor*. "Law's, Edwards's, and Watts's *Survey of the Divine Dispensations*." Or thus: "*Law, Edwards, and Watts's*, Surveys of the Divine Dispensations."--*Burgh cor*. "And who was Enoch's Saviour, and the *prophets'?*"--*Bayly cor*. "Without any impediment but his own, his *parents'*, or his *guardian's* will."--*Journal corrected*. "James relieves neither the *boy's* nor the *girl's* distress."--*Nixon cor*. "John regards neither the *master's* nor the *pupil's* advantage."--*Id*. "You reward neither the *man's* nor the *woman's* labours."--*Id*. "She examines neither *James's* nor John's conduct."--*Id*. "Thou pitiest neither the *servant's* nor the *master's* injuries."--*Id*. "We promote *England's* or *Ireland's* happiness."--*Id*. "Were *Cain's* and *Abel's* occupation the same?"--*G. Brown*. "Were *Cain* and *Abel's* occupations the same?"--*Id*. "What was *Simon* and *Andrew's* employment?"--*Id*. "Till he can read for himself *Sanctius's* Minerva with *Scioppius's* and *Perizonius's* Notes."--*Locke cor*.

"And *love* and friendship's finely-pointed dart Falls blunted from each indurated heart." Or:--

"And *love's* and friendship's finely-pointed dart *Fall* blunted from each indurated heart."--*Goldsmith cor*.

UNDER NOTE III.--CHOICE OF FORMS.

"But some degree of trouble is the portion of *all men*."--*L. Murray et al. cor*. "With the names of *his father and mother* upon the blank leaf."--*Abbott cor*. "The general, in the name of *the army*, published a declaration."--*Hume cor*. "The vote of *the Commons*."--*Id*. "The *House of Lords*."--*Id*. "A collection of *the faults of writers*;"--or, "A collection of *literary faults*."--*Swift cor*. "After ten *years of wars*."--*Id*. "Professing his detestation of such practices as *those of his predecessors*."--*Pope cor*. "By that time I shall have ended my *year of office*."--*W. Walker cor*. "For the sake of *Herodias*, the wife of *his brother Philip*."--*Bible and Mur. cor*. "I endure all things for *the sake of the elect*, that they may also obtain salvation."--*Bibles cor*. "He was *heir to the son of Louis the Sixteenth*."--*W. Allen*. "The throne we honour is the *people's choice*."--*Rolla*. "An account of the proceedings of *Alexander's court*."--*Inst*. "An excellent tutor for *the child of a person of fashion*!"--*Gil Blas cor*. "It is curious enough, that this sentence of the *Bishop's* is, itself, ungrammatical."--*Cobbett cor*. "The troops broke into the palace of the *Emperor Leopold*."--*Nixon cor*. "The meeting was called by desire of *Eldon the Judge*."--*Id*. "The occupation of *Peter, John, and Andrew*, was that of fishermen."--*Murray's Key*, R. 10. "The *debility* of the venerable president of the Royal Academy, has lately increased."--*Maunder cor*.

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS WITH POSSESSIVES PLURAL.

"God hath not given us our *reason* to no purpose."--*Barclay cor*. "For our *sake*, no doubt, this is

written."--*Bible cor.* "Are not health and strength of body desirable for their own *sake*?"--*Harris and Murray cor.* "Some sailors who were boiling their *dinner* upon the shore."--*Day cor.* "And they, in their *turn*, were subdued by others."--*Pinnock cor.* "Industry on our *part* is not superseded by God's grace."--*Arrowsmith cor.* "Their *health* perhaps may be pretty well secured."--*Locke cor.* "Though he was rich, yet for *your sake* he became poor."--See 2 *Cor.*, viii, 9. "It were to be wished, his correctors had been as wise on their *part*."--*Harris cor.* "The Arabs are commended by the ancients for being most exact to their *word*, and respectful to their kindred."--*Sale cor.* "That is, as a reward of some exertion on our *part*."--*Gurney cor.* "So that it went ill with Moses for their *sake*."--*Ps. cor.* "All liars shall have their *part* in the burning lake."--*Watts cor.* "For our own *sake* as well as for thine."--*Pref. to Waller cor.* "By discovering their *ability* to detect and amend errors."--*L. Murray cor.*

"This world I do renounce; and, in your *sight*, Shake patiently my great affliction off."--*Shak. cor.*

"If your relenting *anger* yield to treat, Pompey and thou, in safety, here may meet."--*Rowe cor.*

UNDER NOTE V.--POSSESSIVES WITH PARTICIPLES.

"This will encourage him to proceed without acquiring the prejudice."--*Smith cor.* "And the notice which they give of an *action as* being completed or not completed."--*L. Mur. et al. cor.* "Some obstacle, or impediment, that prevents *it from* taking place."--*Priestley and A. Mur. cor.* "They have apostolical authority for so frequently urging the seeking of the Spirit."--*The Friend cor.* "Here then is a wide field for *reason to exert* its powers in relation to the objects of taste."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Now this they derive altogether from their greater capacity of imitation and description."--*Id.* "This is one clear reason *why they paid* a greater attention to that construction."--*Id.* "The dialogue part had also a modulation of its own, which was capable of being set to notes."--*Id.* "Why are we so often frigid and unpersuasive in public discourse?"--*Id.* "Which is only a preparation for leading his forces directly upon us."--*Id.* "The nonsense about *which, as* relating to things only, and having no declension, needs no refutation."--*Fowle cor.* "Who, upon breaking it open, found nothing but the following inscription."--*Rollin cor.* "A prince will quickly have reason to repent *of* having exalted one person so high."--*Id.* "Notwithstanding *it is* the immediate subject of his discourse."--*Churchill cor.* "With our definition of *it, as* being synonymous with *time*."--*Booth cor.* "It will considerably increase *our danger of* being deceived."--*Campbell cor.* "His beauties can never be mentioned without suggesting his blemishes also."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "No example has ever been adduced, of a *man* conscientiously approving an action, because of its badness." Or:--"of a *man who* conscientiously *approved* of an action because of its badness."--*Gurney cor.* "The last episode, of the *angel* showing to Adam the fate of his posterity, is happily imagined."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "And the news came to my son, *that he* and the bride *were* in Dublin."--*M. Edgeworth cor.* "There is no room for the *mind to exert* any great effort."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "One would imagine, that these *critics* never so much as heard *that Homer wrote* first."--*Pope cor.* "Condemn the book, for not being a geography;" or,--"because *it is not* a geography."--*Peirce cor.* "There will be in many words a transition from being the figurative to being the proper signs of certain ideas."--*Campbell cor.* "The doctrine *that the Pope is* the only source of ecclesiastical power."--*Rel. World cor.* "This *was* the more expedient, because the work *was* designed for the benefit of private learners."--*L. Murray cor.* "This *was done, because* the *Grammar, being already in type, did not admit* of enlargement."--*Id.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE V; OF OBJECTIVES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE OBJECTIVE FORM.

"Whom should I meet the other day but my old friend!"--*Spect. cor.* "Let not him boast that puts on his armour, but *him* that takes it off."--*Barclay cor.* "Let none touch it, but *them* who are clean."--*Sale cor.* "Let the sea roar, and the fullness thereof; the world, and *them* that dwell therein."--*Ps. cor.* "Pray be private, and careful *whom* you trust."--*Mrs. Goffe cor.* "How shall the people know *whom* to entrust with their property and their liberties?"--*J. O. Taylor cor.* "The chaplain entreated my comrade and *me* to dress as well as

possible."--*World cor.* "And *him* that cometh to me, I will in no wise cast out."--*John*, vi, 37. "Whom, during this preparation, they constantly and solemnly invoke."--*Hope of Is. cor.* "Whoever or whatever owes us, is Debtor; and *whomever* or whatever we owe, is Creditor."--*Marsh cor.* "Declaring the curricle was his, and he should have *in it whom* he chose."--*A. Ross cor.* "The fact is, Burke is the only one of all the host of brilliant contemporaries, *whom* we can rank as a first-rate orator."--*Knickerb. cor.* "Thus you see, how naturally the Fribbles and the Daffodils have produced the *Messalinas* of our time."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "They would find in the Roman list both the *Scipios*."--*Id.* "He found his wife's clothes on fire, and *her* just expiring."--*Observer cor.* "To present *you* holy, and *unblamable*, and *unreprovable* in his sight."--*Colossians*, i, 22. "Let the distributor do his duty with simplicity; the superintendent, with diligence; *him* who performs offices of compassion, with cheerfulness."--*Stuart cor.* "If the crew rail at the master of the vessel, *whom* will they mind?"--*Collier cor.* "He having none but them, they having none but him"--*Drayton cor.*

"Thee, Nature, partial Nature, I arraign; Of thy caprice maternal I complain."--*Burns cor.*

"Nor weens he who it is, whose charms consume His longing soul, but loves he knows not *whom*"--*Addison cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--OF VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"When it gives that sense, and also connects *sentences*, it is a conjunction."--*L. Murray cor.* "Though thou wilt not acknowledge *thyself to--be* guilty, thou canst not deny the fact *stated*."--*Id.* "They specify *some object*, like many other adjectives, and *also* connect sentences."--*Kirkham cor.* "A violation of this rule tends so much to perplex *the reader* and obscure *the sense*, that it is safer to err by *using* too many short sentences."--*L. Murray cor.* "A few exercises are subjoined to each important definition, for him [the pupil] to *practise* upon as he proceeds in committing *the grammar to memory*."--*Nutting cor.* "A verb signifying *an action directly transitive*, governs the accusative."--*Adam et al. cor.* "Or, any word *that can be conjugated*, is a verb."--*Kirkham cor.* "In these two concluding sentences, the author, hastening to *a close*, appears to write rather carelessly."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "He simply reasons on one side of the question, and then *leaves it*."--*Id.* "Praise to God teaches *us* to be humble and lowly ourselves."--*Atterbury cor.* "This author has endeavoured to surpass *his rivals*."--*R. W. Green cor.* "Idleness and *pleasure fatigue a man as soon as business*."--*Webster cor.* "And, in conjugating *any verb*,"--or, "And in *learning conjugations*, you must pay particular attention to the manner in which these signs are applied."--*Kirkham cor.* "He said Virginia would have emancipated *her slaves* long ago."--*Lib. cor.* "And having a readiness"--or, "And holding ourselves in readiness"--or, "And being in readiness--to revenge all disobedience."--*Bible cor.* "However, in these cases, custom generally determines *what is right*."--*Wright cor.* "In proof, let the following cases *be taken*."--*Id.* "We must *marvel* that he should so speedily have forgotten his first principles."--*Id.* "How should we *wonder* at the expression, 'This is a *soft* question!'"--*Id.* "And such as prefer *this course*, can parse it as a possessive adjective."--*Goodenow cor.* "To assign all the reasons that induced *the author* to deviate from other grammarians, would lead to a needless prolixity."--*Alexander cor.* "The Indicative Mood simply indicates or declares *a thing*."--*L. Murray's Gram.*, p. 63.

UNDER NOTE II.--OF VERBS INTRANSITIVE.

"In his seventh chapter *he expatiates* at great length."--*Barclay cor.* "He *quarrels with me* for adducing some *ancient* testimonies agreeing with what I say."--*Id.* "Repenting of his design."--*Hume cor.* "Henry knew, that an excommunication could not fail to *produce* the most dangerous effects."--*Id.* "The popular lords did not fail to enlarge on the subject,"--*Mrs. Macaulay cor.* "He is always master of his subject, and seems to *play* with it:" or,--"seems to *sport himself* with it."--*Blair cor.* "But as soon as it *amounts to real* disease, all his secret infirmities *show* themselves."--*Id.* "No man repented of his wickedness."--*Bible cor.* "Go one way or other, either on the right hand, or on the left,"--*Id.* "He lies down by the *river's edge*." Or: "He *lays himself down on the river's brink*"--*W. Walker cor.* "For some years past, *I have had an ardent wish* to retire to some of our American plantations."--*Cowley cor.* "I fear thou wilt shrink from the payment of it."--*Ware cor.* "We never

retain an idea, without acquiring some combination."--*Ripplingham cor.*

"Yet more; the stroke of death he must abide, Then lies *he* meekly down, fast by his brethren's side." --*Milton cor.*

UNDER NOTE III.--OF VERBS MISAPPLIED.

"The parliament *confiscated* the property of all those who had borne arms *against* the king."--*Hume cor.* "The practice of *confiscating* ships *that* had been wrecked"--*Id.* "The nearer his military successes *brought* him to the throne." Or: "The nearer, *through* his military successes, *he approached* the throne."--*Id.* "In the next example, '*you*' represents '*ladies*;' therefore it is plural."--*Kirkham cor.* "The first '*its*' *stands for* '*vale*;' the second '*its*' represents '*stream*.'"--*Id.* "Pronouns do not always *prevent* the repetition of nouns."--*Id.* "Very is an adverb of *degree*; it *relates* to the adjective *good*"--*Id.* "You will please to commit to *memory* the following paragraph."--*Id.* "Even the Greek and Latin passive verbs *form* some of their tenses *by means of* auxiliaries."--*L. Mur. cor.* "The deponent verbs in Latin *also employ* auxiliaries to *form* several of their tenses."--*Id.* "I have no doubt he made as wise and true proverbs, as any body has *made* since."--*Id.* "*Monotonous delivery* assumes as many set forms, as *ever* Proteus *did of* *fleeting* shapes."--*Kirkham cor.* "When words in apposition *are uttered* in quick succession."--*Nixon cor.* "Where *many* such sentences *occur in succession*."--*L. Mur. cor.* "Wisdom leads us to speak and *do* what is most proper."--*Blair and L. Murray cor.*

"*Jul.* Art thou not Romeo, and a Montague? *Rom.* Neither, fair saint, if either thee *displease*." Or:-- "Neither, fair saint, if either *thou dislike*."--*Shak. cor.*

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF PASSIVE VERBS.

"*To us*, too, must be allowed the privilege of forming our own laws." Or: "*We* too must *have* the privilege," &c.--*L. Murray cor.* "For not only *is* the use of all the ancient poetic feet *allowed* [to] us," &c.--*Id. et al. cor.* "By what code of morals *is the right or privilege denied me*?"--*Bartlett cor.* "To the children of Israel alone, *has* the possession of it been denied."--*Keith cor.* "At York, all quarter *was refused* to fifteen hundred Jews."--*Id.* "He would teach the French language in three lessons, provided *there were paid him* fifty-five dollars in advance."--*Prof. Chazotte cor.* "And when *it was demanded of him by* the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come." Or: "And when the *Pharisees demanded of him*," &c.--*Bible cor.* "A book *has been shown me*."--*Dr. Campbell cor.* "To John Horne Tooke *admission was refused*, only because he had been in holy orders."--*W. Duane cor.* "Mr. Horne Tooke having taken orders, admission to the bar was refused *him*."--*Churchill cor.* "Its reference to place is *disregarded*."--*Dr. Bullions cor.* "What striking lesson *is taught* by the tenor of this history?"--*Bush cor.* "No less *a sum* than eighty thousand pounds had been left *him* by a friend."--*Dr. Priestley cor.* "Where there are many things to be done, *there must be allowed to each* its share of time and labour."--*Dr. Johnson cor.* "Presenting the subject in a far more practical form, than *has heretofore been given it*."--*Kirkham cor.* "If *to a being of entire impartiality* should be shown the two companies."--*Dr. Scott cor.* "The command of the British army was offered *to him*."--*Grimshaw cor.* "*To whom* a considerable sum had been unexpectedly left."--*Johnson cor.* "Whether such a privilege may be granted *to a maid or a widow*."--*Spect. cor.* "Happily, *to all these affected terms*, the public suffrage *has been denied*."--*Campbell cor.* "Let the *parsing table* next be *shown him*."--*Nutting cor.* "Then the use of the *analyzing table* may be *explained to him*."--*Id.* "*To Pittacus there* was offered a great sum of money."--*Sanborn cor.* "More time for study had been allowed *him*."--*Id.* "If a little care were *bestowed on the walks* that lie between them."--*Blair's Rhet., p. 222.* "Suppose an office or a bribe *be offered me*."--*Pierpont cor.*

"*Is then* one chaste, one last embrace *denied*? Shall I not lay me by his clay-cold side?"--*Rowe cor.*

UNDER NOTE V.--OF PASSIVE VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"The preposition TO is *used* before nouns of place, when they follow verbs *or* participles of motion."--*Murray et al. cor.* "They were *not allowed to enter* the house."--*Mur. cor.* "Their separate signification has been *overlooked*."--*Tooke cor.* "But, whenever YE is *used*, it must be in the nominative case, and *not* in the objective."--*Cobbett cor.* "It is said, that more persons than one *receive* handsome salaries, to see *that* acts of parliament *are* properly worded."--*Churchill cor.* "The following Rudiments of English Grammar have been *used* in the University of Pennsylvania."--*Dr. Rogers cor.* "It never should be *forgotten*."--*Newman cor.* "A very curious fact *has been noticed* by those expert metaphysicians."--*Campbell cor.* "The archbishop interfered that Michelet's lectures might be *stopped*."--*The Friend cor.* "The disturbances in Gottengen have been entirely *quelled*."--*Daily Adv. cor.* "Besides those *which are noticed* in these exceptions."--*Priestley cor.* "As one, two, or three auxiliary verbs are *employed*."--*Id.* "The arguments which have been *used*."--*Addison cor.* "The circumstance is properly *noticed* by the author."--*Blair cor.* "Patagonia has never been taken *into possession* by any European nation."--*Cumming cor.* "He will be *censured* no more."--*Walker cor.* "The thing was to be *terminated* somehow."--*Hunt cor.* "In 1798, the Papal Territory was *seized* by the French."--*Pinnock cor.* "The idea has not for a moment *escaped the attention* of the Board."--*C. S. Journal cor.* "I shall easily be excused *from* the labour of more transcription."--*Johnson cor.* "If I may be allowed *to use* that expression."--*Campbell cor.* "If without offence I may *make* the observation."--*Id.* "There are other characters, which are frequently *used* in composition."--*Mur. et al. cor.* "Such unaccountable infirmities might be *overcome*, in many cases, *and* perhaps in most."--*Beattie cor.* "Which ought never to be *employed*, or *resorted to*."--*Id.* "That *care* may be taken *of the widows*." Or: "That the widows may be *provided for*."--*Barclay cor.* "Other cavils will yet be *noticed*."--*Pope cor.* "Which implies, that *to* all Christians *is* eternal salvation *offered*."--*West cor.* "Yet even the dogs are allowed *to eat* the crumbs which fall from their master's table."--*Campbell cor.* "For we say, the light within must be *heeded*."--*Barclay cor.* "This sound of a is *noticed* in Steele's Grammar."--*J. Walker cor.* "One came to *receive* ten guineas for a pair of silver buckles."--*M. Edgeworth cor.* "Let therefore the application of the several questions in the table be carefully *shown* [to] *him*."--*Nutting cor.* "After a few times, it is no longer *noticed* by the hearers."--*Sheridan cor.* "It will not admit of the same excuse, nor *receive* the same indulgence, *from* people of any discernment."--*Id.* "Of inanimate things, property may be made." Or: "Inanimate things may be made property;" i.e., "may *become* property."--*Beattie cor.*

"And, when *some rival bids a higher price*, Will not be sluggish in the work, *or* nice."--*Butler cor.*

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"All the words *employed* to denote spiritual *or* intellectual things, are in their origin *metaphors*."--*Dr. Campbell cor.* "A reply to an argument commonly *brought forward* by unbelievers."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "It was once the only form *used* in the *past* tenses."--*Dr. Ash cor.* "Of the points and other characters *used* in writing."--*Id.* "If THY be the personal pronoun *adopted*."--*Walker cor.* "The Conjunction is a word *used* to connect [words or] sentences."--*Burn cor.* "The points *which* answer these purposes, are the four following."--*Harrison cor.* "INCENSE signifies *perfume* exhaled by fire, and *used* in religious ceremonies."--*L. Mur. cor.* "In most of his orations, there is too much art; *he carries it even to* ostentation."--*Blair cor.* "To illustrate the great truth, so often *overlooked* in our times."--*C. S. Journal cor.* "The principal figures *calculated* to affect the heart, are Exclamation, Confession, Deprecation, Commination, and Imprecation."--*Formey cor.* "Disgusted at the odious artifices *employed* by the judge."--*Junius cor.* "All the reasons *for which there was allotted to us* a condition out of which so much wickedness and misery would in fact arise."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "Some characteristical circumstance being generally invented or *seized upon*."--*Ld. Kames cor.*

"And BY is likewise used with names that shew The method or the means of *what we do*."--*Ward cor.*

UNDER NOTE VII.--OF CONSTRUCTIONS AMBIGUOUS.

"Many adverbs admit of degrees of comparison, as *do* adjectives."--*Priestley cor.* "But the author who, by the

number and reputation of his works, *did* more than any one *else*, to bring our language into its present state, was Dryden."--*Blair cor.* "In some states, courts of admiralty have no juries, nor *do* courts of chancery *employ* any at all."--*Webster cor.* "I feel grateful to my friend."--*Murray cor.* "This requires a writer to have *in his own mind* a very clear apprehension of the object which he means to present to us."--*Blair cor.* "Sense has its own harmony, *which naturally contributes something to the harmony of sound.*"--*Id.* "The apostrophe denotes the omission of an *i*, which was formerly inserted, and *which gave to the word an additional syllable.*"--*Priestley cor.* "There are few *to whom* I can refer with more advantage than *to Mr. Addison.*"--*Blair cor.* "DEATH, (in *theology*,) is a perpetual separation from God, a *state of eternal torments.*"--*Webster cor.* "That could inform the *traveller* as well as *could* the old man himself!"--*O. B. Peirce cor.*

UNDER NOTE VIII.--OF YE AND YOU IN SCRIPTURE.

"Ye daughters of Rabbah, gird *you* with sackcloth."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, and the COMPREHENSIVE BIBLE: *Jer.*, xlix, 3. "Wash *you*, make *you* clean."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Isaiah*, i, 16. "Strip *you*, and make *you* bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, ET AL.: *Isaiah*, xxxii, 11. "*Ye* are not ashamed that *ye* make yourselves strange to me."--SCOTT, BRUCE, and BLAYNEY: *Job*, xix, 3. "If *ye* knew the gift of God." Or: "If *thou* knew the gift of God."--See *John*, iv, 10. "Depart from me, *ye* workers of iniquity; I know *you* not."--*Pennington cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VI; OF SAME CASES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF PROPER IDENTITY.

"Who would not say, 'If it be *I*,' rather than, 'If it be *me*?'--*Priestley cor.* "Who is there? It is *I*."--*Id.* "It is *he*."--*Id.* "Are these the houses *you* were speaking of? Yes; they are *the same*."--*Id.* "It is not *I*, *that* *you* are in love with."--*Addison cor.* "It cannot be *I*."--*Swift cor.* "To that which once was *thou*."--*Prior cor.* "There is but one man that she can have, and that *man* is *myself*."--*Priestley cor.* "We enter, as it were, into his body, and become in some measure *he*." Or, better:--"and become in some measure *identified* with him."--*A. Smith and Priestley cor.* "Art thou proud yet? Ay, that I am not *thou*."--*Shak. cor.* "He knew not *who* they were."--*Milnes cor.* "Whom do you think *me* to be?"--*Dr. Lowth's Gram.*, p. 17. "Who do men say that I, the Son of man, am?"--*Bible cor.* "But *who* say *ye* that I am?"--*Id.* "Who think *ye* that I am? I am not *he*."--*Id.* "No; I am in error; I perceive it is not the person *that* I supposed it was."--*Winter in London cor.* "And while it is *He that* I serve, life is not without value."--*Ware cor.* "Without ever dreaming it was *he*."--*Charles XII cor.* "Or he was not the illiterate personage *that* he affected to be."--*Montgom. cor.* "Yet was he *the man* who was to be the greatest apostle of the Gentiles."--*Barclay cor.* "Sweet was the thrilling ecstasy; I know not if 'twas love, or *thou*."--*J. Hogg cor.* "Time was, when none would cry, that oaf was *I*."--*Dryden cor.* "No matter where the vanquished be, *or who*."--*Rowe cor.* "No; I little thought it had been *he*."--*Gratton cor.* "That reverence, that godly fear, *which is ever due to* 'Him who can destroy both body and soul in hell.'"--*Maturin cor.* "It is *we* that they seek to please, or rather to astonish."--*J. West cor.* "Let the same be *her* that thou hast appointed for thy servant Isaac."--*Bible cor.* "Although I knew it to be *him*."--*Dickens cor.* "Dear gentle youth, is't none but *thou*?"--*Dorset cor.* "Who do they say it is?"--*Fowler cor.*

"These are her garb, not *she*; they but express Her form, her semblance, her appropriate dress."--*More cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--OF THE CASE DOUBTFUL.

"I had no knowledge of *any connexion* between them."--*Col. Stone cor.* "To promote iniquity in others, is nearly the same *thing*, as *to be* the actors of it ourselves." (That is, "*For us* to promote iniquity in others, is nearly the same *thing* as *for us* to be the actors of it *ourselves*.")--*Murray cor.* "It must arise from a *delicate* feeling in ourselves."--*Blair and Murray cor.* "Because there has not been exercised a competent physical power for their enforcement."--*Mass. Legisl. cor.* "PUPILAGE, *n.* The state of a *pupil*, or

scholar."--*Dictionaries cor.* "Then the other *part*, being the *definition*, would include all verbs, of every description."--*Peirce cor.* "John's *friendship for me* saved me from inconvenience."--*Id.* "William's *judgeship*"--or, "William's *appointment to the office of judge*,--changed his whole demeanour."--*Id.* "William's *practical acquaintance with teaching*, was the cause of the interest he felt."--*Id.* "To be but one among many, stifled the chidings of conscience."--*Tupper cor.* "As for the *opinion that it is* a close translation, I doubt not that many have been led into that error by the shortness of it."--*Pope cor.* "All presumption *that death is* the destruction of living beings, must go upon the supposition that they are compounded, and *therefore* discernible."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "This argues rather *that they are* proper names."--*Churchill cor.* "But may it not be retorted, that *this gratification itself*, is that which excites our resentment?"--*Campbell cor.* "Under the common notion, *that it is* a system of the whole poetical art."--*Blair cor.* "Whose *want of* time, or *whose* other circumstances, forbid *them to become* classical scholars."--*Lit. Jour. cor.* "It would *prove him not to have been a mere* fictitious personage." Or: "It would preclude the notion *that he was merely a* fictitious personage."--*Phil. Mu. cor.* "For *heresy*, or under pretence *that they are* heretics or infidels."--*Oath cor.* "We may here add Dr. Horne's sermon on *Christ, as being* the Object of religious adoration."--*Rel. World cor.* "To say nothing of Dr. Priestley, *as being* a strenuous advocate," &c.--*Id.* "Through the agency of Adam, *as being* their public head." Or: "*Because Adam was* their public head."--*Id.* "Objections against the *existence of* any such moral plan as this."--*Butler cor.* "A greater instance of a *man* being a blockhead."--*Spect. cor.* "We may insure or promote *what will make it* a happy state of existence to ourselves."--*Gurney cor.* "Since it often *undergoes* the same kind of unnatural treatment."--*Kirkham cor.* "Their *apparent* foolishness"--"Their *appearance of* foolishness"--or, "That they *appear* foolishness,--is no presumption against this."--*Butler cor.* "But what arises from *them* as being offences; i.e., from their *liability* to be perverted."--*Id.* "And he *went into* the house of a certain man named Justus, one that *worshipped* God."--*Acts cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FALSE IDENTIFICATION.

"But *popular*, he observes, is an ambiguous word."--*Blair cor.* "The infinitive mood, a *phrase*, or a *sentence*, is often *made the subject of* a verb."--*Murray cor.* "When any person, in speaking, introduces his name *after the pronoun I*, it is *of* the first person; as, 'I, James, of the city of Boston.'"--*R. C. Smith cor.* "The name of the person spoken to, is *of* the second person; as, 'James, come to me.'"--*Id.* "The name of the person or thing *merely* spoken of, or about, is *of* the third person; as, 'James has come.'"--*Id.* "The passive verb *has no object*, because its subject or nominative always represents *what is acted upon*, and the *object* of a verb must needs be in the *objective* case."--*Id.* "When a noun is in the nominative to an active verb, it *denotes* the actor."--*Kirkham cor.* "And the pronoun THOU or YE, *standing for the name of* the person or persons commanded, is its nominative."--*Ingersoll cor.* "The first person is that *which denotes the speaker*."--*Brown's Institutes*, p. 32. "The conjugation of a verb is a *regular arrangement of* its different variations or inflections throughout the moods and tenses."--*Wright cor.* "The first person is *that which denotes* the speaker or writer."--G. BROWN: for the correction of *Parker and Fox, Hiley, and Sanborn*. "The second person is *that which denotes the hearer, or the person addressed*."--*Id.*: for the same. "The third person is *that which denotes the person or thing merely* spoken of."--*Id.*: for the same, "I is *of* the first person, singular; WE, *of* the first person, plural."--*Mur. et al. cor.* "THOU is *of* the second person, singular; YE or You, *of* the second person, plural."--*Id.* "HE, SHE, or IT, is *of* the third person, singular; THEY, *of* the third person, plural."--*Id.* "The nominative case *denotes* the actor, and is the subject of the verb."--*Kirkham cor.* "John is the actor, therefore the noun JOHN is in the nominative case."--*Id.* "The actor is always *expressed* by the nominative case, *unless the verb be passive*."--*R. C. Smith cor.* "The nominative case *does not* always denote an agent or actor."--*Mack cor.* "In mentioning each name, tell the part of speech."--*John Flint cor.* "Of what number is boy? Why?"--*Id.* "Of what number is pens? Why?"--*Id.* "The speaker is *denoted* by the first person; the person spoken to is *denoted* by the second person; and the person or thing spoken of is *denoted* by the third person."--*Id.* "What nouns are *of* the masculine gender? The names of all males are *of* the masculine gender."--*Id.* "An interjection is a word that is uttered *merely to indicate some strong or sudden* emotion of the mind."--*G. Brown's Grammars*.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VII; OF OBJECTIVES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF THE OBJECTIVE IN FORM.

"But I do not remember *whom* they were for."--*Abbott cor.* "But if you can't help it, *whom* do you complain of?"--*Collier cor.* "Whom was it from? and what was it about?"--*M. Edgeworth cor.* "I have plenty of victuals, and, between you and *me*, something in a corner."--*Day cor.* "The upper one, *whom* I am now about to speak of."--*Leigh Hunt cor.* "And to poor *us*, *thy* enmity is most capital."--*Shak. cor.* "Which, thou dost confess, 'twere fit for thee to use, as *them* to claim." That is,--"as *for them* to claim."--*Id.* "To beg of thee, it is my more dishonour, than *thee* of them." That is,--"than *for thee* to beg of them."--*Id.* "There are still a few, who, like *thee* and *me*, drink nothing but water."--*Gil Bias cor.* "Thus, 'I *shall* fall,'--'Thou *shalt* love thy neighbour,'--'He *shall* be rewarded,'--express no resolution on the part of *me*, *thee*, or *him*." Or better:--"on the part of *the persons signified by the nominatives, I, Thou, He*."--*Lennie and Bullions cor.* "So saucy with the hand of *her* here--what's her name?"--*Shak. cor.* "All debts are cleared between you and *me*."--*Id.* "Her price is paid, and she is sold like *thee*."--HARRISON'S *E. Lang.*, p. 172. "Search through all the most flourishing *eras* of Greece."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "The family of the *Rudolphs* has been long distinguished."--*The Friend cor.* "It will do well enough for you and *me*."--*Edgeworth cor.* "The public will soon discriminate between him who is the sycophant, and *him* who is the teacher."--*Chazotte cor.* "We are still much at a loss to *determine whom* civil power belongs to."--*Locke cor.* "What do you call it? and to *whom* does it belong?"--*Collier cor.* "He had received no lessons from the *Socrateses*, the *Platoes*, and the *Confuciuses* of the age."--*Haller cor.* "I cannot tell *whom* to compare them to."--*Bunyan cor.* "I see there was some resemblance betwixt this good man and *me*."--*Id.* "They, by those means, have brought themselves into the hands and house of I do not know *whom*."--*Id.* "But at length she said, there was a great deal of difference between Mr. Cotton and *us*."--*Hutch. Hist. cor.* "So you must ride on horseback after *us*."--*Mrs. Gilpin cor.* "A separation must soon take place between our minister and *me*,"--*Werter cor.* "When she exclaimed on Hastings, you, and *me*."--*Shak. cor.* "To *whom?* to thee? What art thou?"--*Id.* "That they should always bear the certain marks of *him from whom* they came."--*Bp. Butler cor.*

"This life has joys for you and *me*, And joys that riches ne'er could buy."--*Burns cor.*

UNDER THE NOTE.--OF TIME OR MEASURE.

"Such as almost every child, ten years old, knows."--*Town cor.* "*Four months' schooling* will carry any industrious scholar, of ten or twelve years *of age*, completely through this book."--*Id.* "A boy of six years *of age* may be taught to speak as correctly, as Cicero did before the Roman senate."--*Webster cor.* "A lad about twelve years old, who was taken captive by the Indians."--*Id.* "Of nothing else *than* that individual white figure of five inches *in length*, which is before him."--*Campbell cor.* "Where lies the fault, that boys of eight or ten years *of age* are with great difficulty made to understand any of its principles?"--*Guy cor.* "Where language three centuries old is employed."--*Booth cor.* "Let a gallows be made, of fifty cubits *in height*." Or: "Let a gallows *fifty cubits high* be made."--*Bible cor.* "I say to this child, nine years old, 'Bring me that hat.' He hastens, and brings it me."--*Osborn cor.* "'He laid a floor, twelve feet long, and nine feet wide:' that is, *the floor* was long to the extent of twelve feet, and wide to the extent of nine feet."--*Merchant cor.* "The Goulah people are a tribe of about fifty thousand *in strength*." Or: "The Goulah people are a tribe about fifty thousand strong."--*Examiner cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VIII; NOM. ABSOLUTE.

"He having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed."--*Inst. of E. G.*, p. 190. "I being young, they deceived me."--*Ib.*, p. 279. "They refusing to comply, I withdrew."--*Ib.* "Thou being present, he would not tell what he knew."--*Ib.* "The child is lost; and I, whither shall I go?"--*Ib.* "O happy *we!* surrounded with so many blessings."--*Ib.* "'Thou too! Brutus, my son!' cried Cæsar, overcome."--*Ib.* "Thou! Maria! and so late! and who is thy companion?"--*Mirror cor.* "How swiftly our time passes away! and ah! *we*, how little concerned to improve it!"--*Greenleaf's False Syntax, Gram.*, p. 47.

"There all thy gifts and graces we display, *Thou*, only *thou*, directing all our way."--*Pope, Dunciad.*

CHAPTER IV.

--ADJECTIVES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE IX.

UNDER NOTE I.--OF AGREEMENT.

"I am not recommending *this* kind of sufferings to your liking."--*Sherlock cor.* "I have not been to London *these* five years."--*Webster cor.* "*Verbs of this kind* are more expressive than their radicals."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "Few of us would be less corrupted than kings are, were we, like them, beset with flatterers, and poisoned with *those* vermin."--*Kames cor.* "But it seems *these* literati had been very ill rewarded for their ingenious labours."--*R. Random cor.* "If I had not left off troubling myself about *things of that kind*."--*Swift cor.* "For *things of this sort* are usually joined to the most noted fortune."--*Bacon cor.* "The nature of *those* riches and *that* long-suffering, is, to lead to repentance."--*Barclay cor.* "I fancy *it is this* kind of gods, *that* Horace mentions."--*Addison cor.* "During *those* eight days, they are prohibited from touching the skin."--*Hope of Is. cor.* "Besides, he had *but a small quantity* of provisions left for his army."--*Goldsmith cor.* "Are you not ashamed to have no other thoughts than *those* of amassing wealth, and of acquiring glory, credit, and dignities?"--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 115. "It *distinguishes* still more remarkably the feelings of the former from *those* of the latter."--*Kames cor.* "And *these* good tidings of the reign shall be published through all the world."--*Campbell cor.* "*These* twenty years have I been with thee."--*Gen. cor.* "In *this* kind of expressions, some words seem to be understood."--*W. Walker cor.* "He thought *this* kind of excesses indicative of greatness."--*Hunt cor.* "*This* sort of fellows *is* very numerous." Or thus: "*Fellows of this sort* are very numerous."--*Spect. cor.* "Whereas *men of this sort* cannot give account of their faith." Or: "Whereas *these men* cannot give account of their faith."--*Barclay cor.* "But the question is, whether *those are* the words."--*Id.* "So that *expressions of this sort* are not properly optative."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Many things are not *such as* they appear to be."--*Sanborn cor.* "So that *all* possible means are used."--*Formey cor.*

"We have strict statutes, and most biting laws, Which for *these* nineteen years we have let sleep."--*Shak. cor.*

"They could not speak, and so I left them both, To bear *these* tidings to the bloody king."--*Shak. cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FIXED NUMBERS.

"Why, I think she cannot be above six *feet* two inches high."--*Spect. cor.* "The world is pretty regular for about forty *rods* east and ten west."--*Id.* "The standard being more than two *feet* above it."--*Bacon cor.* "Supposing, among other things, *that* he saw two suns, and two *Thebeses*."--*Id.* "On the right hand we go into a parlour *thirty-three feet* by *thirty-nine*."--*Sheffield cor.* "Three *pounds* of gold went to one shield."--*1 Kings cor.* "Such an assemblage of men as there appears to have been at that *session*."--*The Friend cor.* "And, truly, he *has* saved me *from* this labour."--*Barclay cor.* "Within *these* three *miles* may you see it coming."--*Shak. cor.* "Most of the churches, not all, had one *ruling elder or more*."--*Hutch. cor.* "While a Minute Philosopher, not six *feet* high, attempts to dethrone the Monarch of the universe."--*Berkley cor.* "The wall is ten *feet* high."--*Harrison cor.* "The stalls must be ten *feet* broad."--*Walker cor.* "A close prisoner in a room twenty *feet* square, being at the north side of his chamber, is at liberty to walk twenty *feet* southward, not to walk twenty *feet* northward."--*Locke cor.* "Nor, after all this *care* and industry, did they think themselves qualified."--*C. Orator cor.* "No *fewer* than thirteen *Gypsies* were condemned at one Suffolk *assize*, and executed."--*Webster cor.* "The king was petitioned to appoint *one person or more*."--*Mrs. Macaulay cor.* "He carries weight! he rides a race! 'Tis for a thousand *pounds*."--*Cowper cor.* "They carry three *tiers* of guns at the head, and at the stern, *two tiers*"--*Joh. Dict. cor.* "The verses consist of two *sorts* of rhymes."--*Formey cor.* "A present of forty *camel-loads* of the most precious things of Syria."--*Wood's Dict. cor.* "A large grammar, that shall extend to every *minutia*"--*S. Barrett cor.*

"So many spots, like næves on Venus' soil, One *gem* set off with *many a glitt'ring foil*."--Dryden cor.

"For, *off the end, a double handful* It had devour'd, it was so manful."--Butler cor.

UNDER NOTE III.--OF RECIPROCAL.

"That *shall* and *will* might be substituted *one for the other*."--Priestley cor. "We use not *shall* and *will* promiscuously *the one for the other*."--Brightland cor. "But I wish to distinguish the three high ones from *one an other* also."--Fowle cor. "Or on some other relation which two objects bear to *each other*."--Blair cor. "Yet the two words lie so near to *each other* in meaning, that, in the present case, *perhaps either* of them would have been sufficient."--Id. "Both orators use great liberties *in their treatment of each other*."--Id. "That greater separation of the two sexes from *each other*."--Id. "Most of whom live remote from *one an other*."--Webster cor. "Teachers like to see their pupils polite to *one an other*."--Id. "In a little time, he and I must keep company with *each other* only."--Spect. cor. "Thoughts and circumstances crowd upon *one an other*."--Kames cor. "They cannot *perceive* how the ancient Greeks could understand *one an other*."--Lit. Conv. cor. "The poet, the patriot, and the prophet, vied with *one an other* in his breast."--Hazlitt cor. "Athamas and Ino loved *each other*."--C. Tales cor. "Where two things are compared or contrasted *one with the other*." Or: "Where two things, are compared or contrasted with *each other*."--Blair and Mur. cor. "In the classification of words, almost all writers differ from *one an other*."--Bullions cor.

"I will not trouble thee, my child. Farewell; We'll no more meet; *we'll* no more see *each other*."--Shak. cor.

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF COMPARATIVES.

"Errors in education should be less indulged than any *others*."--Locke cor. "This was less his case than any *other* man's that ever wrote."--Pref. to Waller cor. "This trade enriched some *other* people more than it enriched them."--Mur. cor. "The Chaldee alphabet, in which the Old Testament has reached us, is more beautiful than any *other* ancient character known."--Wilson cor. "The Christian religion gives a more lovely character of God, than any *other* religion ever did."--Murray cor. "The temple of Cholula was deemed more holy than any *other* in New Spain."--Robertson cor. "Cibber grants it to be a better poem of its kind than *any other that ever was written*."--Pope cor. "Shakspeare is more faithful to the true language of nature, than any *other* writer."--Blair cor. "One son I had--one, more than all my *other* sons, the strength of Troy." Or: "One son I had--one, *the most of all my sons*, the strength of Troy."--Cowper cor. "Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his *other* children, because he was the son of his old age."--Bible cor.

UNDER NOTE V.--OF SUPERLATIVES.

"Of *all simpletons*, he was the greatest"--Nutting cor. "Of *all beings*, man has certainly the greatest reason for gratitude."--Id. "This lady is *prettier than any* of her sisters."--Peyton cor. "The relation which, of all *the class*, is by far the most fruitful of tropes, I have not yet mentioned."--Blair cor. "He studied Greek the most of *all noblemen*."--W. Walker cor. "And indeed that was the qualification *which* was most wanted at that time."--Goldsmith cor. "Yet we deny that the knowledge of him as outwardly crucified, is the best of all knowledge of him."--Barclay cor. "Our ideas of numbers are, of all *our conceptions*, the most accurate and distinct"--Duncan cor. "This indeed is, of all *cases, the one in which* it is least necessary to name the agent"--J. Q. Adams cor. "The period to which you have arrived, is perhaps the most critical and important moment of your lives."--Id. "Perry's royal octavo is esteemed the best of *all the pronouncing dictionaries* yet known."--D. H. Barnes cor. "This is the tenth persecution, and, of all the *ten* the most bloody."--Sammes cor. "The English tongue is the most susceptible of sublime imagery, of *all the languages* in the world."--Bucke cor. "Of *all writers* whatever, Homer is universally allowed to have had the greatest Invention."--Pope cor. "In a version of this particular work, which, *more than* any other, seems to require a venerable, antique cast."--Id. "Because I think him the *best-informed* naturalist *that* has ever written."--Jefferson cor. "Man is capable of being the most social of *all animals*."--Sheridan cor. "It is, of all *signs* (or *expressions*) that which

most moves us."--*Id.* "Which, of all *articles*, is the most necessary."--*Id.*

"Quoth he, 'This gambol thou advisest, Is, of all *projects*, the unwise.'"--*S. Butler cor.*

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF INCLUSIVE TERMS.

"Noah and his family *were the only antediluvians* who survived the flood."--*Webster cor.* "I think it superior to any *other grammar* that we have yet had."--*Blair cor.* "We have had no *other* grammarian who has employed so much labour and *judgement* upon our native language, as *has* the author of these volumes."--*British Critic cor.* "Those persons feel *most for* the distresses of others, who have experienced distresses themselves."--*L. Murray cor.* "Never was any *other* people so much infatuated as the Jewish nation."--*Id. et al. cor.* "No *other* tongue is so full of connective particles as the Greek."--*Blair cor.* "Never was *sovereign* so much beloved by the people." Or: "Never was any *other* sovereign so much beloved by *his* people."--*L. Murray cor.* "Nothing *else* ever affected her so much as this misconduct of her child."--*Id. et al. cor.* "Of all the figures of speech, *no other* comes so near to painting as *does* metaphor."--*Blair et al. cor.* "I know *no other* writer so happy in his metaphors as *is* Mr. Addison."--*Blair cor.* "Of all the English authors, none is *more* happy in his metaphors *than* Addison."--*Jamieson cor.* "Perhaps no *other* writer in the world was ever so frugal of his words as Aristotle."--*Blair and Jamieson cor.* "Never was any *other* writer so happy in that concise and spirited style, as Mr. Pope."--*Blair cor.* "In the harmonious structure and disposition of *his* periods, no *other* writer whatever, ancient or modern, equals Cicero."--*Blair and Jamieson cor.* "Nothing *else* delights me so much as the works of nature."--*L. Mur. cor.* "No person was ever *more* perplexed *than* he has been to-day."--*Id.* "In *no other* case are writers so apt to err, as in the position of the word *only*."--*Maunder cor.* "For nothing is *more* tiresome *than* perpetual uniformity."--*Blair cor.*

"*Naught else sublimes the spirit, sets it free, Like sacred and soul-moving poesy.*"--*Sheffield cor.*

UNDER NOTE VII.--EXTRA COMPARISONS.

"How much *better are ye* than the fowls!"--*Bible cor.* "Do not thou hasten above the Most *High*."--*Esdras cor.* "This word, PEER, is principally used for the nobility of the realm."--*Cowell cor.* "Because the same is not only most *generally* received, &c."--*Barclay cor.* "This is, I say, not the best and most *important* evidence."--*Id.* "Offer unto God thanksgiving, and pay thy vows unto the Most *High*."--*The Psalter cor.* "The holy place of the tabernacle of the Most *High*."--*Id.* "As boys should be educated with temperance, so the first *great* lesson that should be taught them, is, to admire frugality."--*Goldsmith cor.* "More *general* terms are put for such as are more restricted."--*Rev. J. Brown cor.* "This, *this* was the unkindest cut of all."--*Enfield's Speaker*, p. 353. "To take the basest and most *squalid* shape."--*Shak. cor.* "I'll forbear: *I have* fallen out with my more *heady* will."--*Id.* "The power of the Most *High* guard thee from sin."--*Percival cor.* "Which title had been more *true*, if the dictionary had been in Latin and *Welsh*."--*Verstegan cor.* "The waters are frozen sooner and harder, than further upward, within the inlands."--*Id.* "At every descent, the worst may become more *depraved*."--*Mann cor.*

"Or as a moat defensive to a house Against the envy of less *happy* lands."--*Shak. cor.*

"A dreadful quiet felt, and *worse by far* Than arms, a sullen interval of war."--*Dryden cor.*

UNDER NOTE VIII.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It breaks forth in its *highest, most energetic, and most impassioned* strain."--*Kirkham cor.* "He has fallen into the *vilest and grossest* sort of railing."--*Barclay cor.* "To receive that *higher and more general* instruction which the public affords."--*J. O. Taylor cor.* "If the best things have the *best and most perfect* operations."--*Hooker cor.* "It became the plainest and most elegant, the *richest* and most splendid, of all languages."--*Bucke cor.* "But the *principal and most frequent* use of pauses, is, to mark the divisions of the

sense."--*Blair cor.* "That every thing belonging to ourselves is *the best and the most perfect.*"--*Clarkson cor.* "And to instruct their pupils in the *best and most thorough manner.*"--*School Committee cor.*

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADJECTIVES SUPERADDED.

"The Father is figured out as a *venerable old man.*"--*Brownlee cor.* "There never was exhibited *an other such* masterpiece of ghostly assurance."--*Id.* "After the *first three* sentences, the question is entirely lost."--*Spect. cor.* "The *last four* parts of speech are commonly called particles."--*Al. Murray cor.* "The *last two* chapters will not be found deficient in this respect."--*Todd cor.* "Write upon your slates a list of the *first ten* nouns."--*J. Abbott cor.* "We have a few remains of *two other* Greek poets in the pastoral style, Moschus and Bion."--*Blair cor.* "The *first nine* chapters of the book of Proverbs are highly poetical."--*Id.* "For, of these five heads, only the *first two* have any particular relation to the sublime."--*Id.* "The resembling sounds of the *last two* syllables give a ludicrous air to the whole."--*Kames cor.* "The *last three* are arbitrary."--*Id.* "But in the *sentence*, 'She hangs the curtains,' *hangs* is an *active-transitive* verb."--*Comly cor.* "If our definition of a verb, and the arrangement of *active-transitive*, *active-intransitive*, passive, and neuter verbs, are properly understood."--*Id.* "These *last two lines* have an embarrassing construction."--*Rush cor.* "God was provoked to drown them all, but Noah and *seven other* persons."--*Wood cor.* "The *first six* books of the *Æneid* are extremely beautiful."--*Formey cor.* "Only a few instances *more* can *here* be given."--*Murray cor.* "A few years *more* will obliterate every vestige of a subjunctive form."--*Nutting cor.* "Some define them to be verbs devoid of the *first two* persons."--*Crombie cor.* "In *an other such* Essay-tract as this."--*White cor.* "But we fear that not *an other such* man is to be found."--*Edward Irving cor.* "O for *an other such* sleep, that I might see *an other such* man!" Or, to preserve poetic measure, say:--

"O for *such* sleep again, that I might see *An other such* man, *though but in a dream!*"--*Shak. cor.*

UNDER NOTE X.--ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS.

"*The* is an article, relating to the noun *balm*, *agreeably* to Rule 11th."--*Comly cor.* "*Wise* is an adjective, relating to the noun *man's*, *agreeably* to Rule 11th."--*Id.* "To whom I observed, that the beer was *extremely* good."--*Goldsmith cor.* "He writes *very elegantly.*" Or: "He writes *with remarkable elegance.*"--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "John behaves *very civilly* (or, *with true civility*) to all men."--*Id.* "All the sorts of words hitherto considered, have each of them some meaning, even when taken *separately.*"--*Beattie cor.* "He behaved himself *conformably* to that blessed example."--*Sprat cor.* "*Marvellously* graceful."--*Clarendon cor.* "The Queen having changed her ministry, *suitably* to her wisdom."--*Swift cor.* "The assertions of this author are *more easily* detected."--*Id.* "The characteristic of his sect allowed him to affirm no *more strongly* than that."--*Bentley cor.* "If one author had spoken *more nobly* and *loftily* than an other."--*Id.* "Xenophon says *expressly.*"--*Id.* "I can never think so very *meanly* of him."--*Id.* "To convince all that are ungodly among them, of all their ungodly deeds, which they have *impiously* committed."--*Bible cor.* "I think it very *ably* written." Or: "I think it written *in a very masterly manner.*"--*Swift cor.* "The whole design must refer to the golden age, which it represents *in a lively manner.*"--*Addison cor.* "*Agreeably* to this, we read of names being blotted out of God's book."--*Burder et al. cor.* "*Agreeably* to the law of nature, children are bound to support their indigent parents."--*Paley.* "Words taken *independently* of their meaning, are parsed as nouns of the neuter gender."--*Maltby cor.*

"Conceit in weakest bodies *strongliest* works."--*Shak. cor.*

UNDER NOTE XI.--THEM FOR THOSE.

"Though he was not known by *those* letters, or the name CHRIST."--*Bayly cor.* "In a gig, or some of *those* things." Better: "In a gig, or *some such vehicle.*"--*M. Edgeworth cor.* "When cross-examined by *those* lawyers."--*Same.* "As the custom in *those* cases is."--*Same.* "If you *had* listened to *those* slanders."--*Same.* "The old people were telling stories about *those* fairies; but, to the best of my *judgement*, there is nothing in

them."--*Same.* "And is it not a pity that the Quakers have no better authority to substantiate their principles, than the testimony of *those* old Pharisees?"--*Hibbard cor.*

UNDER NOTE XII.--THIS AND THAT.

"Hope is as strong an incentive to action, as fear: *that* is the anticipation of good, *this* of evil."--*Inst.*, p. 265.
 "The poor want some advantages which the rich enjoy; but we should not therefore account *these* happy, and *those* miserable."--*Inst.*, p. 266.

"Ellen and Margaret, fearfully, Sought comfort in each other's eye;

Then turned their ghastly look each one, *That* to her sire, *this* to her son."--*Scott cor.*

"Six youthful sons, as many blooming maids, In one sad day beheld the Stygian shades; *Those* by Apollo's silver bow were slain, *These* Cynthia's arrows stretch'd upon the plain."--*Pope cor.*

"Memory and forecast just returns engage, *That* pointing back to youth, *this* on to age."--*Pope, on Man.*

UNDER NOTE XIII.--EITHER AND NEITHER.

"These make the three great subjects of discussion among mankind; *namely*, truth, duty, and interest: but the arguments directed towards *any* of them are generically distinct."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "A thousand other deviations may be made, and still *any* of the *accounts* may be correct in principle; for *all* these divisions, and their technical terms, are arbitrary."--*R. W. Green cor.* "Thus it appears, that our alphabet is deficient; as it has but seven vowels to represent thirteen different sounds; and has no letter to represent *any* of five simple consonant sounds."--*Churchill cor.* "Then *none* of these five verbs can be neuter."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "And the *assertor*[534] is in *none* of the four already mentioned."--*Id.* "As it is not in any of these four."--*Id.* "See whether or not the word comes within the definition of *any* of the other three simple cases."--*Id.* "No one of the ten was there."--*Frazer cor.* "Here are ten oranges, take *any one* of them."--*Id.* "There are three modes, by *any* of which recollection will generally be supplied; inclination, practice, and association."--*Ripplingham cor.* "Words not reducible to *any* of the three preceding heads."--*Fowler cor.* "Now a sentence may be analyzed in reference to *any* of these four classes."--*Id.*

UNDER NOTE XIV.--WHOLE, LESS, MORE, AND MOST.

"Does not all proceed from the law, which regulates *all the* departments of the state?"--*Blair cor.* "A messenger relates to Theseus *all the* particulars."--*Ld. Kames cor.* "There are no *fewer* than twenty-nine diphthongs in the English language."--*Ash cor.* "The Redcross Knight runs through *all the* steps of the Christian life."--*Spect. cor.* "There were not *fewer* than fifty or sixty persons present."--*Mills and Merchant cor.* "Greater experience, and *a* more cultivated *state of* society, abate the warmth of imagination, and chasten the manner of expression."--*Blair and Murray cor.* "By which means, knowledge, *rather* than oratory, *has* become the principal requisite."--*Blair cor.* "No *fewer* than seven illustrious cities disputed the right of having given birth to the greatest of poets."--*Lempriere cor.* "Temperance, *rather* than medicines, is the proper means of curing many diseases."--*Murray cor.* "I do not suppose, that we Britons *are more deficient* in genius than our neighbours."--*Id.* "In which, he *says*, he has found no *fewer* than twelve untruths."--*Barclay cor.* "The several places of rendezvous were concerted, and *all the* operations *were* fixed."--*Hume cor.* "In these rigid opinions, *all the* sectaries concurred."--*Id.* "Out of whose modifications have been made *nearly all* complex modes."--*Locke cor.* "The Chinese vary each of their words on no *fewer* than five different tones."--*Blair cor.* "These people, though they possess *brighter* qualities, are not so proud as he is, nor so vain as she."--*Murray cor.* "It is certain, *that* we believe *our own judgements* more *firmly*, after we have made a thorough inquiry into the *things*."--*Brightland cor.* "As well as the whole course and *all the* reasons of the operation."--*Id.* "Those rules and principles which are of *the greatest* practical advantage."--*Newman cor.* "And *all* curse shall

be *no more*."--Rev. cor.--(See *the Greek*.) "And death shall be *no more*."--Id. "But, in recompense, we have *pleasanter* pictures of ancient manners."--Blair cor. "Our language has suffered a *greater number of* injurious changes in America, since the British army landed on our shores, than it had suffered before, in the period of three centuries."--Webster cor. "All the conveniences of life are derived from mutual aid and support in society."--Ld. Kames cor.

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVES.

"To such as think the nature of it deserving *of* their attention."--Bp. Butler cor. "In all points, more deserving *of* the approbation of their readers."--Keepsake cor. "But to give way to childish sensations, was unbecoming *to* our nature."--Lempriere cor. "The following extracts are deserving *of* the serious perusal of all."--The Friend cor. "No inquiry into wisdom, however superficial, is undeserving *of* attention."--Bulwer cor. "The opinions of illustrious men are deserving *of* great consideration."--Porter cor. "And resolutely keep its laws. Uncaring *for* consequences." Or:--"Not *heeding* consequences."--Burns cor. "This is an item that is deserving *of* more attention."--Goodell cor.

"Leave then thy joys, unsuiting *to* such age:"--Or,

"Leave then thy joys *not suiting* such an age, To a fresh comer, and resign the stage."--Dryden cor.

UNDER NOTE XVI.--FIGURE OF ADJECTIVES.

"The tall dark mountains and the *deep-toned* seas."--Dana. "O! learn from him To station *quick-eyed* Prudence at the helm."--Frost cor. "He went in a *one-horse* chaise."--David Blair cor. "It ought to be, 'in a *one-horse* chaise.'"--Crombie cor. "These are marked with the *above-mentioned* letters."--Folker cor. "A *many-headed* faction."--Ware cor. "Lest there should be no authority in any popular grammar, for the perhaps *heaven-inspired* effort."--Fowle cor. "Common-metre stanzas consist of four iambic lines; one of eight, and the next of six syllables. They were formerly written in two *fourteen-syllable* lines."--Goodenow cor. "Short-metre stanzas consist of four iambic lines; the third of eight, the rest of six syllables."--Id. "Particular-metre stanzas consist of six iambic lines; the third and sixth of six syllables, the rest of eight."--Id. "Hallelujah-metre stanzas consist of six iambic lines; the last two of eight syllables, and the rest of six."--Id. "Long-metre stanzas are merely the union of four iambic lines, of ten syllables each."--Id. "A majesty more commanding than is to be found among the rest of the *Old-Testament* poets."--Blair cor.

"You, sulphurous and *thought-executed* fires, *Vaunt-couriers* to *oak-cleaving* thunderbolts, Singe my white head! And thou, *all-shaking* thunder, Strike flat the thick rotundity o' th' world!"--Lear, Act iii, Sc. 2.

CHAPTER V.

--PRONOUNS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE X AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF AGREEMENT.

"The subject is to be joined with *its* predicate."--*Wilkins cor.* "Every one must judge of *his* own feelings."--*Byron cor.* "Every one in the family should know *his or her* duty."--*Penn cor.* "To introduce its possessor into that way in which *he* should go."--*Inf. S. Gram. cor.* "Do not they say, *that* every true believer has the Spirit of God in *him*?"--*Barclay cor.* "There is none in *his* natural state righteous; no, not one."--*Wood cor.* "If ye were of the world, the world would love *its* own."--*Bible cor.* "His form had not yet lost all *its* original brightness."--*Milton cor.* "No one will answer as if I were *his* friend or companion."--*Steele cor.* "But, in lowliness of mind, let each esteem *others* better than *himself*."--*Bible cor.* "And let none of you imagine evil in *his* heart against his neighbour."--*Id.* "For every tree is known by *its* own fruit."--*Id.* "But she fell to laughing, like one out of *his* right mind."--*M. Edgeworth cor.* "Now these systems, so far from having any tendency to make men better, have a manifest tendency to make *them* worse."--*Wayland cor.* "And nobody else would make that city *his* refuge any more."--*Josephus cor.* "What is quantity, as it respects syllables or words? It is *the* time which *a* speaker occupies in pronouncing *them*."--*Bradley cor.* "In such expressions, the adjective so much resembles an adverb in its meaning, that *it is* usually parsed as such."--*Bullions cor.* "The tongue is like a racehorse; which runs the faster, the less weight *he* carries." Or thus: "The tongue is like a racehorse; the less weight *it* carries, the faster *it* runs."--*Addison, Murray, et al. cor.* "As two thoughtless boys were trying to see which could lift the greatest weight with *his* jaws, one of them had several of his firm-set teeth wrenched from their sockets."--*Newspaper cor.* "Every body nowadays publishes memoirs; every body has recollections which *he* thinks worthy of recording."--*Duchess D'Ab. cor.* "Every body trembled, for *himself*, or for *his* friends."--*Goldsmith cor.*

"A steed comes at morning: no rider is there; But *his* bridle is red with the sign of despair."--*Campbell cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--PRONOUNS WRONG--OR NEEDLESS.

"Charles loves to study; but John, alas! is very idle."--*Merchant cor.* "Or what man is there of you, *who*, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?"--*Bible cor.* "Who, in stead of going about doing good, are perpetually intent upon doing mischief."--*Tillotson cor.* "Whom ye delivered up, and denied in the presence of Pontius Pilate."--*Bible cor.* "Whom, when they had washed *her*, they laid in an upper chamber."--*Id.* "Then Manasseh knew that the Lord was God."--*Id.* "Whatever a man conceives clearly, he may, if he will be at the trouble, put into distinct propositions, and express clearly to others."--*See Blair's Rhet., p. 93.* "But the painter, being entirely confined to that part of time which he has chosen, cannot exhibit various stages of the same action."--*Murray's Gram., i, 195.* "What he subjoins, is without any proof at all."--*Barclay cor.* "George Fox's Testimony concerning Robert Barclay."--*Title cor.* "According to the *advice of the* author of the Postscript [sic--KTH]."--*Barclay cor.* "These things seem as ugly to the eye of their meditations, as those Ethiopians *that* were pictured on *Nemesis's* pitcher."--*Bacon cor.* "Moreover, there is always a twofold condition propounded with *the Sphynx's enigmas*."--*Id.* "Whoever believeth not therein, shall perish."--*Koran cor.* "When, at *Sestius's* entreaty, I had been at his house."--*W. Walker cor.*

"There high on *Sipylus's* shaggy brow, She stands, her own sad monument of wo."--*Pope cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--CHANGE OF NUMBER.

"So will I send upon you famine, and evil beasts, and they shall bereave *you*."--*Bible cor.* "Why do you plead so much for it? why do *you* preach it up?" Or: "Why do ye plead so much for it? why do ye preach it

up?"--*Barclay cor.* "Since thou hast decreed that I shall bear man, *thy* darling."--*Edward's Gram. cor.* "You have my book, and I have *yours*; i.e., *your* book." Or thus: "*Thou hast* my book, and I have *thine*; i.e., *thy* book."--*Chandler cor.* "Neither art thou such a one as to be ignorant of what *thou* art."--*Bullions cor.* "Return, thou backsliding Israel, saith the Lord, and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon *thee*."--*Bible cor.* "The Almighty, unwilling to cut thee off in the fullness of iniquity, has sent me to give *thee* warning."--*Ld. Kames cor.* "*Wast* thou born only for pleasure? *wast thou* never to do any thing?"--*Collier cor.* "Thou shalt be required to go to God, to die, and to give up *thy* account."--*Barnes cor.* "And canst thou expect to behold the resplendent glow of the Creator? would not such a sight annihilate *thee*?"--*Milton cor.* "If the prophet had commanded thee to do some great thing, *wouldst thou* have refused?"--*C. S. Journal cor.* "Art thou a penitent? evince *thy* sincerity, by bringing forth fruits meet for repentance."--*Vade-Mecum cor.* "I will call thee my dear son: I remember all *thy* tenderness."--*C. Tales cor.* "So do thou, my son: open *thy* ears, and *thy* eyes."--*Wright cor.* "I promise you, this was enough to discourage *you*."--*Bunyan cor.* "Ere you remark an other's sin, Bid *your* own conscience look within."--*Gay cor.* "Permit that I share in thy wo, The privilege *canst thou* refuse?"--*Perfect cor.* "Ah! Strephon, how *canst thou* despise Her who, without thy pity, *dies*?"--*Swift cor.*

"Thy verses, friend, are Kidderminster stuff; And I must own, *thou'st* measured out enough."--*Shenst. cor.*

"This day, dear Bee, is thy nativity; Had Fate a luckier one, she'd give it *thee*."--*Swift cor.*

UNDER NOTE III.--WHO AND WHICH.

"Exactly like so many puppets, *which* are moved by wires."--*Blair cor.* "They are my servants, *whom* I brought forth[535] out of the land of Egypt."--*Leviticus*, xxv, 55. "Behold, I and the children *whom* God hath given me."--See *Isaiah*, viii, 18. "And he sent Eliakim, *who* was over the household, and Shebna the scribe."--*Isaiah*, xxxvii, 2. "In a short time the streets were cleared of the corpses *which* filled them."--*M'Irvine cor.* "They are not of those *who* teach things *that* they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake."--*Barclay cor.* "As a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep; *which*, if he go through, both treadeth down and teareth in pieces."--*Bible cor.* "Frequented by every fowl *which* nature has taught to dip the wing in water."--*Johnson cor.* "He had two sons, one of *whom* was adopted by the family of Maximus."--*Lempriere cor.* "And the ants, *which* are collected by the smell, are burned *with* fire."--*The Friend cor.* "They being the agents to *whom* this thing was trusted."--*Nixon cor.* "A packhorse *which* is driven constantly *one way and the other*, to *and from* market."--*Locke cor.* "By instructing children, *whose* affection will be increased."--*Nixon cor.* "He had a comely young woman, *who* travelled with him."--*Hutchinson cor.* "A butterfly, *who* thought himself an accomplished traveller, happened to light upon a beehive."--*Inst.*, p. 267. "It is an enormous elephant of stone, *which* disgorges from his uplifted trunk a vast but graceful shower."--*Ware cor.* "He was met by a dolphin, *which* sometimes swam before him, and sometimes behind him."--*Edward's Gram. cor.*

"That Cæsar's horse, *which*, as fame goes, Had corns upon his feet and toes, Was not by half so tender-hoof'd, Nor trod upon the ground so soft."--*Butler cor.*

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

"He instructed and fed the crowds *that* surrounded him."--*Murray's Key.* "The court, *which* gives currency to manners, ought to be exemplary." p. 187. "Nor does he describe classes of sinners *that* do not exist."--*Mag. cor.* "Because the nations among *which* they took their rise, were not savage."--*Murray cor.* "Among nations *that* are in the first and rude periods of society."--*Blair cor.* "The martial spirit of those nations among *which* the feudal government prevailed."--*Id.* "France, *which* was in alliance with Sweden."--*Priestley's Gram.*, p. 97. "That faction, in England, *which* most powerfully opposed his arbitrary pretensions."--*Ib.* "We may say, 'the crowd *which* was going up the street.'"--*Cobbett's E. Gram.*, ¶ 204. "Such members of the Convention *which* formed this Lyceum, as have subscribed this Constitution."--*N. Y. Lyceum cor.*

UNDER NOTE V.--CONFUSION OF SENSES.

"*The name* of the possessor shall take a particular form to show its case."--Kirkham cor. "Of which reasons, the principal one is, that no noun, properly so called, implies *the presence of the thing named*."--Harris cor. "*Boston* is a proper noun, which distinguishes *the city of Boston* from other cities."--Sanborn cor. "The word CONJUNCTION means union, or *the act of joining together*. *Conjunctions* are used to join or *connect* either words or sentences."--Id. "The word INTERJECTION means *the act of throwing between*. *Interjections* are interspersed among other words, to express *strong or sudden* emotion."--Id. "*Indeed* is composed of *in* and *deed*. *The words* may better be written separately, as they formerly were."--Cardell cor. "*Alexander*, on the contrary, is a particular name; and is *employed* to distinguish *an individual only*."--Jamieson cor. "As an indication that nature itself had changed *its* course." Or:--"that *Nature herself* had changed her course."--History cor. "Of removing from the United States and *their* territories the free people of colour."--Jenifer cor. "So that *gh* may be said not to have *its* proper sound." Or thus: "So that *the letters, g and h*, may be said not to have their proper *sounds*."--Webster cor. "Are we to welcome the loathsome harlot, and introduce *her* to our children?"--Maturin cor. "The first question is this: 'Is reputable, national, and present use, *which*, for brevity's sake, I shall hereafter simply denominate *good use*, always uniform, [i. e., undivided, and unequivocal,] in *its* decisions?'"--Campbell cor. "*In personifications*, Time is always masculine, on account of *his* mighty efficacy; Virtue, feminine, *by reason of her* beauty and loveliness."--Murray, Blair, et al. cor. "When you speak to a person or thing, the *noun or pronoun* is in the second person."--Bartlett cor. "You now know the noun; for *noun* means *name*."--Id. "*T*. What do you see? *P*. A book. *T*. Spell *book*."--R. W. Green cor. "*T*. What do you see now? *P*. Two books. *T*. Spell *books*."--Id. "If the United States lose *their* rights as a nation."--Liberator cor. "When a person or thing is addressed or spoken to, the *noun or pronoun* is in the second person."--Frost cor. "When a person or thing is *merely* spoken of, the *noun or pronoun* is in the third person."--Id. "The word OX *also*, taking the same plural termination, *makes* OXEN."--Bucke cor.

"Hail, happy States! *yours* is the blissful seat Where nature's gifts and art's improvements meet."--Everett cor.

UNDER NOTE VI.--THE RELATIVE THAT.

(1.) "This is the most useful art *that* men possess."--L. Murray cor. "The earliest accounts *that* history gives us, concerning all nations, bear testimony to these facts."--Blair et al. cor. "Mr. Addison was the first *that* attempted a regular inquiry into the pleasures of taste."--Blair cor. "One of the first *that* introduced it, was Montesquieu."--Murray cor. "Massillon is perhaps the most eloquent *sermonizer that* modern times have produced."--Blair cor. "The greatest barber *that* ever lived, is our guiding star and prototype."--Hart cor.

(2.) "When prepositions are subjoined to nouns, they are generally the same *that* are subjoined to the verbs from which the nouns are derived."--Murray's Gram., p. 200. Better thus: "*The prepositions which* are subjoined to nouns, *are* generally the same *that*," &c.--Priestley cor. "The same proportions *that* are agreeable in a model, are not agreeable in a large building."--Kames cor. "The same ornaments *that* we admire in a private apartment, are unseemly in a temple."--Murray cor. "The same *that* John saw also in the sun."--Milton cor.

(3.) "Who can ever be easy, *that* is reproached with his own ill conduct?"--T. à Kempis cor. "Who is she *that* comes clothed in a robe of green?"--Inst., p. 267. "Who *that* has either sense or civility, does not perceive the vileness of profanity?"--G. Brown.

(4.) "The second person denotes the person or thing *that* is spoken to."--Kirkham cor. "The third person denotes the person or thing *that* is spoken of."--Id. "A passive verb denotes action received, or endured by the person or thing *that is signified* by its nominative."--Id. "The princes and states *that* had neglected or favoured the growth of this power."--Bolingbroke cor. "The nominative expresses the name of the person or thing *that* acts, or *that* is the subject of discourse."--Hiley cor.

(5.) "Authors *that* deal in long sentences, are very apt to be faulty."--*Blair cor.* "Writers *that* deal," &c.--*Murray cor.* "The neuter gender denotes objects *that* are neither male nor female."--*Merchant cor.* "The neuter gender denotes things *that* have no sex."--*Kirkham cor.* "Nouns *that* denote objects neither male nor female, are of the neuter gender."--*Wells's Gram. of late*, p. 55. Better thus: "Those nouns *which* denote objects *that* are neither male nor female, are of the neuter gender."--*Wells cor.* "Objects and ideas *that* have been long familiar, make too faint an impression to give an agreeable exercise to our faculties."--*Blair cor.* "Cases *that* custom has left dubious, are certainly within the grammarian's province."--*L. Murray cor.* "Substantives *that* end in *ery*, signify action or habit."--*Id.* "After all *that* can be done to render the definitions and rules of grammar accurate."--*Id.* "Possibly, all *that* I have said, is known and taught."--*A. B. Johnson cor.*

(6.) "It is a strong and manly style *that* should chiefly be studied."--*Blair cor.* "It is this [*viz.*, *precision*] *that* chiefly makes a division appear neat and elegant."--*Id.* "I hope it is not I *that* he is displeased with."--*L. Murray cor.* "When it is this alone *that* renders the sentence obscure."--*Campbell cor.* "This sort of full and ample assertion, '*It is this that*,' is fit to be used when a proposition of importance is laid down."--*Blair cor.* "She is not the person *that* I understood it to have been."--*L. Murray cor.* "Was it thou, or the wind, *that* shut the door?"--*Inst.*, p. 267. "It was not I *that* shut it."--*Ib.*

(7.) "He is not the person *that* he seemed to be."--*Murray and Ingersoll cor.* "He is really the person *that* he appeared to be."--*Ibid.* "She is not now the woman *that* they represented her to have been."--*Ibid.* "An *only child* is one *that* has neither brother nor sister; a *child alone* is one *that* is left by itself, *or unaccompanied*."--*Blair, Jam., and Mur., cor.*

UNDER NOTE VII.--RELATIVE CLAUSES CONNECTED.

(1.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of a thing; (i. e.,) of whatever we conceive to subsist, or of *whatever* we *merely imagine*."--*Lowth cor.* (2.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any thing *which* exists, or of which we have any notion."--*Murray et al. cor.* (3.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing, that exists, or *that* we can have an idea of."--*Frost cor.* (4.) "A noun is the name of any thing *which* exists, or of which we form an idea."--*Hallock cor.* (5.) "A Noun is the name of any person, place, object, or thing, that exists, or *that* we may conceive to exist."--*D. C. Allen cor.* (6.) "The name of every thing *which* exists, or of which we can form a notion, is a noun."--*Fisk cor.* (7.) "An allegory is the representation of some one thing by an other that resembles it, and *that* is made to stand for it."--*Blair's Rhet.*, p. 150. (8.) "Had he exhibited such sentences as contained ideas inapplicable to young minds, or *such as* were of a trivial or injurious nature."--*L. Murray cor.* (9.) "Man would have others obey him, even his own kind; but he will not obey God, *who* is so much above him, and who made him."--*Penn cor.* (10.) "But what we may consider here, and *what* few persons have *noticed*, is," &c.--*Brightland cor.* (11.) "The compiler has not inserted *those* verbs *which* are irregular only in familiar writing or discourse, and which are improperly terminated by *t* in *stead* of *ed*."--*Murray, Fisk, Hart, Ingersoll et al., cor.* (12.) "The remaining parts of speech, which are called the indeclinable parts, and *which* admit of no variations, (or, *being words that* admit of no variations,) will not detain us long."--*Dr. Blair cor.*

UNDER NOTE VIII.--THE RELATIVE AND PREPOSITION.

"In the temper of mind *in which* he was then."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 102. "To bring them into the condition *in which* I am at present."--*Add. cor.* "In the posture *in which* I lay."--*Lowth's Gram.*, p. 102. "In the sense *in which* it is sometimes taken."--*Barclay cor.* "Tools and utensils are said to be right, when they *answer well* the uses *for which* they were made."--*Collier cor.* "If, in the extreme danger *in which* I now am," &c. Or: "If, in *my present* extreme danger," &c.--*Murray's Sequel*, p. 116. "News was brought, that Dairus [*sic*--KTH] was but twenty miles from the place *in which* they then were."--*Goldsmith cor.* "Alexander, upon hearing this news, continued four days *where* he then was:" or--"*in the place in which* he then was."--*Id.* "To read in the best manner *in which* reading is now taught."--*L. Murray cor.* "It may be expedient to give a few directions as to the manner *in which* it should be studied."--*Hallock cor.* "Participles are words derived from verbs, and

convey an idea of the acting of an agent, or the suffering of an object, with the time *at which* it happens." [536]--A. Murray cor.

"Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal *With which* I serv'd my king, he would not *thus*, In age, have left me naked to *my foes*."--Shak. cor.

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADVERBS FOR RELATIVES. "In compositions *that are not designed to be delivered in public*."--Blair cor. "They framed a protestation *in which* they repeated their claims."--Priestley's Gram., p. 133; Murray's, 197. "Which have reference to *inanimate* substances, *in which* sex has no existence."--Harris cor. "Which denote substances *in which* sex never had existence."--Ingersoll's Gram., p. 26. "There is no rule given *by which* the truth may be found out."--W. Walker cor. "The nature of the objects *from which* they are taken."--Blair cor. "That darkness of character, *through which* we can see no heart:" [i. e., generous emotion.]--L. Murray cor. "The states *with which* [or *between which*] they negotiated."--Formey cor. "Till the motives *from which* men act, be known."--Beattie cor. "He assigns the principles *from which* their power of pleasing flows."--Blair cor. "But I went on, and so finished this History, in that form *in which* it now appears."--Sewel cor. "By prepositions we express the cause *for which*, the instrument by which, *and* the manner *in which*, a thing is done."--A. Murray cor. "They are not such in the language *from which* they are derived."--Town cor. "I find it very hard to persuade several, that their passions are affected by words *from which* they have no ideas."--Burke cor. "The known end, then, *for which* we are placed in a state of so much affliction, hazard, and difficulty, is our improvement in virtue and piety."--Bp. Butler cor.

"Yet such his acts as Greeks unborn shall tell, And curse the *strife in which* their fathers fell."--Pope cor.

UNDER NOTE X.--REPEAT THE NOUN.

"Youth may be thoughtful, but *thoughtfulness in the young* is not very common."--Webster cor. "A proper name is *a name* given to one person or thing."--Bartlett cor. "A common name is *a name* given to many things of the same sort."--Id. "This rule is often violated; some instances of *its violation* are annexed."--L. Murray et al. cor. "This is altogether careless writing. *Such negligence respecting the pronouns*, renders style often obscure, and always inelegant."--Blair cor. "Every inversion which is not governed by this rule, will be disrelished by every *person* of taste."--Kames cor. "A proper diphthong, is *a diphthong* in which both the vowels are sounded."--Brown's Institutes, p. 18. "An improper diphthong, is *a diphthong* in which only one of the vowels is sounded."--Ib. "Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and *the descendants of Jacob*, are called Hebrews."--Wood cor. "In our language, *every word* of more than one syllable, has one of *its syllables* distinguished from the rest in this manner."--L. Murray cor. "Two consonants proper to begin a word, must not be separated; as, fa-ble, sti-fle. But when *two consonants* come between two vowels, and are such as cannot begin a word, they must be divided, as, ut-most, un-der."--Id. "Shall the intellect alone feel no pleasures in its energy, when we allow *pleasures* to the grossest energies of appetite and sense?"--Harris and Murray cor. "No man has a propensity to vice as such: on the contrary, a wicked deed disgusts *every one*, and makes him abhor the author."--Ld. Kames cor. "The same *grammatical properties* that belong to nouns, belong also to pronouns."--Greenleaf cor. "What is language? It is the means of communicating thoughts from one *person* to an other."--O. B. Peirce cor. "A simple word is *a word* which is not made up of *other words*."--Adam and Gould cor. "A compound word is *a word* which is made up of two or more words."--Id. "When a conjunction is to be supplied, *the ellipsis* is called Asyndeton."--Adam cor.

UNDER NOTE XI.--PLACE OF THE RELATIVE.

"It gives *to words a meaning which* they would not have."--L. Murray cor. "There are in the English language many *words, that* are sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as adverbs."--Id. "Which do not more effectually show the varied intentions of the mind, than do the *auxiliaries which* are used to form the potential mood."--Id. "These *accents, which* will be the subject of a following speculation, make different impressions on the mind."--Ld. Kames cor. "And others differed very much from the words *of the writers to whom* they

were ascribed."--*John Ward cor.* "Where there is in the sense *nothing which* requires the last sound to be elevated, an easy fall will be proper."--*Murray and Bullions cor.* "In the last clause there is an ellipsis of the verb; *and*, when you supply *it*, you find it necessary to use the adverb *not, in lieu of no.*"--*Campbell and Murray cor.* "Study is of the singular number, because *the* nominative *I, with which* it agrees, *is singular.*"--*R. C. Smith cor.* "John is the *person who* is in error, or thou art."--*Wright cor.* "For he hath made him, who knew no sin, to be sin for us."--*Harrison's E. Lang., p. 197.*

"My friend, take that of *me, who* have the power To seal th' accuser's lips."--*Shakspeare cor.*

UNDER NOTE XII.--WHAT FOR THAT.

"I had no idea but *that* the story was true."--*Brown's Inst., p. 268.* "The postboy is not so weary but *that* he can whistle."--*Ib.* "He had no intimation but *that* the men were honest."--*Ib.* "Neither Lady Haversham nor Miss Mildmay will ever believe but *that* I have been entirely to blame."--*Priestley cor.* "I am not satisfied but *that* the integrity of our friends is more essential to our welfare than their knowledge of the world."--*Id.* "Indeed, there is in poetry nothing so entertaining or descriptive, but *that an ingenious* didactic writer may introduce *it* in some part of his work."--*Blair cor.* "Brasidas, being bit by a mouse he had caught, let it slip out of his fingers: 'No creature,' says he, 'is so contemptible but *that it* may provide for its own safety, if it have courage.'"--*Ld. Kames cor.*

UNDER NOTE XIII.--ADJECTIVES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"In narration, Homer is, at all times, remarkably concise, *and therefore* lively and agreeable."--*Blair cor.* "It is usual to talk of a nervous, a feeble, or a spirited style; which *epithets* plainly *indicate the* writer's manner of thinking."--*Id.* "It is too violent an alteration, if any alteration were necessary, *whereas* none is."--*Knight cor.* "Some men are too ignorant to be humble; *and* without *humility* there can be no docility."--*Berkley cor.* "Judas declared him innocent; *but innocent* he could not be, had he in any respect deceived the disciples."--*Porteus cor.* "They supposed him to be innocent, *but* he certainly was not *so.*"--*Murray et al. cor.* "They accounted him honest, *but* he certainly was not *so.*"--*Felch cor.* "Be accurate in all you say or do; for *accuracy* is important in all the concerns of life."--*Brown's Inst., p. 268.* "Every law supposes the transgressor to be wicked; *and* indeed he is *so*, if the law is just."--*Ib.* "To be pure in heart, pious, and benevolent, (*and* all may be *so*,) constitutes human happiness."--*Murray cor.* "To be dexterous in danger, is a virtue; but to court danger to show *our dexterity*, is a weakness."--*Penn cor.*

UNDER NOTE XIV.--SENTENCES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"This seems not so allowable in prose; which *fact* the following erroneous examples will demonstrate."--*L. Murray cor.* "The accent is laid upon the last syllable of a word; which *circumstance* is favourable to the melody."--*Kames cor.* "Every line consists of ten syllables, five short and five long; from which *rule* there are but two exceptions, both of them rare."--*Id.* "The soldiers refused obedience, *as* has been explained."--*Nixon cor.* "Caesar overcame Pompey--*a circumstance* which was lamented."--*Id.* "The crowd hailed William, *agreeably to the expectations of his friends.*"--*Id.* "The tribunes resisted Scipio, *who knew their malevolence towards him.*"--*Id.* "The censors reprov'd vice, *and were held in great honour.*"--*Id.* "The generals neglected discipline, which *fact* has been proved."--*Id.* "There would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, *and such a construction* is improper."--*Adam and Gould cor.* "His friend bore the abuse very patiently; *whose forbearance, however*, served *only* to increase his rudeness; it produced, at length, contempt and insolence."--*Murray and Emmons cor.* "Almost all *compound* sentences are more or less elliptical; *and* some examples of *ellipsis* may be found, under *nearly all* the different parts of speech."--*Murray, Guy, Smith, Ingersoll, Fisk, et al. cor.*

UNDER NOTE XV.--REPEAT THE PRONOUN.

"In things of Nature's workmanship, whether we regard their internal or *their* external structure, beauty and design are equally conspicuous."--*Kames cor.* "It puzzles the reader, by making him doubt whether the word ought to be taken in its proper, or *in its* figurative sense."--*Id.* "Neither my obligations to the muses, nor *my* expectations from them, are so great."--*Cowley cor.* "The Fifth Annual Report of the Antislavery Society of Ferrisburgh and *its* vicinity."--*Title cor.* "Meaning taste in its figurative as well as *its* proper sense."--*Kames cor.* "Every measure in which either your personal or *your* political character is concerned."--*Junius cor.* "A jealous and righteous God has often punished such in themselves or *in their* offspring."--*Extracts cor.* "Hence their civil and *their* religious history are inseparable."--*Milman cor.* "Esau thus carelessly threw away both his civil and *his* religious inheritance."--*Id.* "This intelligence excited not only our hopes, but *our* fears likewise."--*Jaudon cor.* "In what way our defect of principle, and *our* ruling manners, have completed the ruin of the national spirit of union."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "Considering her descent, her connexion, and *her* present intercourse."--*Webster cor.* "His own and *his* wife's wardrobe are packed up in a firkin."--*Parker and Fox cor.*

UNDER NOTE XVI.--CHANGE THE ANTECEDENT.

"The *sounds* of *e* and *o* long, in *their* due degrees, will be preserved, and clearly distinguished."--*L. Murray cor.* "If any *persons* should be inclined to think," &c., "the author takes the liberty to suggest to *them*," &c.--*Id.* "And he walked in all the *way* of Asa his father; he turned not aside from *it*."--*Bible cor.* "If ye from your hearts forgive not every one his *brethren their* trespasses."--*Id.* "None ever fancied *they* were slighted by him, or had the courage to think *themselves* his *bettors*."--*Collier cor.* "And *Rebecca* took *some very good clothes* of her eldest son *Esau's*, which *were* with her in the house, and put *them* upon Jacob her younger son."--*Gen. cor.* "Where all the attention of *men* is given to *their* own indulgence."--*Maturin cor.* "The idea of a *father* is a notion superinduced to *that of* the substance, or man--let *one's idea of* man be what *it* will."--*Locke cor.* "Leaving *all* to do as they *list*."--*Barclay cor.* "Each *person* performed his part handsomely."--*J. Flint cor.* "This block of marble rests on two layers of *stones*, bound together with lead, which, however, has not prevented the Arabs from forcing out several of *them*."--*Parker and Fox cor.*

"Love gives to *all our powers* a double power, Above their functions and their offices." Or:-- "Love gives to every power a double power, *Exalts all* functions and *all* offices."--*Shak. cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XI; OF PRONOUNS.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The jury will be confined till *they* agree on a verdict."--*Brown's Inst.*, p. 145. "And mankind directed *their* first cares towards the needful."--*Formey cor.* "It is difficult to deceive a free people respecting *their* true interest."--*Life of Charles XII cor.* "All the virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers, but *their* follies and vices are innumerable."--*Swift cor.* "Every sect saith, 'Give *us* liberty;' but give it *them*, and to *their* power, and *they* will not yield it to any body else."--*Cromwell cor.* "Behold, the people shall rise up as a great lion, and lift up *themselves* as a young lion."--*Bible cor.* "For all flesh had corrupted *their* way upon the earth."--*Id.* "There happened to the army a very strange accident, which put *them* in great consternation."--*Goldsmith cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"The meeting went on *with its* business as a united body."--*Foster cor.* "Every religious association has an undoubted right to adopt a creed for *itself*."--*Gould cor.* "It would therefore be extremely difficult to raise an insurrection in that state against *its* own government."--*Dr. Webster cor.* "The mode in which a lyceum can apply *itself* in effecting a reform in common schools."--*N. Y. Lyc. cor.* "Hath a nation changed *its* gods, which yet are no gods?"--*Jer. cor.* "In the holy Scriptures, each of the twelve tribes of Israel is often called by the name of the patriarch from whom *it* descended." Or better:-- "from whom *the tribe* descended."--*Adams cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--UNIFORMITY OF NUMBER.

"A nation, by the reparation of *the wrongs which it has done*, achieves a triumph more glorious than any field of blood can ever give."--*Adams cor.* "The English nation, from *whom* we descended, have been gaining their liberties inch by inch."--*Webster cor.* "If a Yearly Meeting should undertake to alter *its* fundamental doctrines, is there any power in the society to prevent *it from* doing so?"--*Foster's Rep. cor.* "There is[537] a generation that *curse* their father, and *do not* bless their mother."--*Bible cor.* "There is[537] a generation that are pure in their own eyes, and yet *are not* washed from their filthiness."--*Id.* "He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel: the Lord *their* God is with *them*, and the shout of a king is among them."--*Id.* "My people *have* forgotten me, they have burnt incense to vanity."--*Id.* "When a quarterly meeting *has* come to a *judgement* respecting any difference, relative to any monthly meeting belonging to *it*" &c.--*Discip. cor.* "The number of such compositions is every day increasing, and it *appears* to be limited only by the pleasure or *the convenience* of *writers*."--*Booth cor.* "The Church of Christ *has* the same power now as ever, and *is* led by the same spirit into the same practices."--*Barclay cor.* "The army, whom *their* chief had thus abandoned, pursued meanwhile their miserable march." Or thus: "The army, *which its* chief had thus abandoned, pursued meanwhile *its* miserable march."--*Lockhart cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XII; OF PRONOUNS.

ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY AND.

"Discontent and sorrow manifested *themselves* in his countenance."--*Brown's Inst.*, p. 146. "Both conversation and public speaking became more simple and plain, such as we now find *them*."--*Blair cor.* "Idleness and ignorance, *if they* be suffered to proceed, &c."--*Johnson and Priestley cor.* "Avoid questions and strife: *they show* a busy and contentious disposition."--*Penn cor.* "To receive the gifts and benefits of God with thanksgiving, and witness *them* blessed and sanctified to us by the word and prayer, is owned by us."--*Barclay cor.* "Both minister and magistrate are compelled to choose between *their* duty and *their* reputation."--*Junius cor.* "All the sincerity, truth, and faithfulness, or disposition of heart or conscience to approve *them*, found among rational creatures, necessarily originate from God."--*Rev. J. Brown cor.* "Your levity and heedlessness, *if they* continue, will prevent all substantial improvement."--*Brown's Inst.*, p. 269. "Poverty and obscurity will oppress him only who esteems *them* oppressive."--*Ib.* "Good sense and refined policy are obvious to few, because *they* cannot be discovered but by a train of reflection."--*Ib.* "Avoid haughtiness of behaviour, and affectation of manners: *they imply* a want of solid merit."--*Ib.* "If love and unity continue, *they* will make you partakers of one another's joy."--*Ib.* "Suffer not jealousy and distrust to enter: *they* will destroy, like a canker, every germ of friendship."--*Ib.* "Hatred and animosity are inconsistent with Christian charity: guard, therefore, against the slightest indulgence of *them*."--*Ib.* "Every man is entitled to liberty of conscience, and freedom of opinion, if he does not pervert *them* to the injury of others."--*Ib.*

"With the azure and vermillion *Which are* mix'd for my pavilion."--*Byron cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XIII; OF PRONOUNS.

ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY OR OR NOR.

"Neither prelate nor priest can give *his* [flock or] flocks any decisive evidence that you are lawful pastors."--*Brownlee cor.* "And is there a heart of parent or of child, that does not beat and burn within *him*?"--*Maturin cor.* "This is just as if an eye or a foot should demand a salary for *its* service to the body."--*Collier cor.* "If thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut *it* off, and cast *it* from thee."--*Bible cor.* "The same might as well be said of Virgil, or any great author; whose general character will infallibly raise many casual additions to *his* reputation."--*Pope cor.* "Either James or John,--one *or the other*,--will come."--*Smith cor.* "Even a rugged rock or a barren heath, though in *itself* disagreeable, *contributes*, by contrast, to the beauty of the whole."--*Kames cor.* "That neither Count Rechteren nor Monsieur Mesnager had behaved *himself* right in this

affair."--*Spect. cor.* "If an Aristotle, a Pythagoras, or a Galileo, *suffers* for *his* opinions, *he is a* 'martyr.'"--*Fuller cor.* "If an ox gore a man or a woman, that *he or she* die; then the ox *shall surely* be stoned."--*Exod. cor.* "She was calling out to one or an other, at every step, that a Habit was ensnaring *him*."--*Johnson cor.* "Here is a task put upon children, *which* neither this author *himself*, nor any other, *has* yet undergone."--*R. Johnson cor.* "Hence, if an adjective or *a* participle be subjoined to the verb when *the construction is singular*, it will agree both in gender and *in* number with the collective noun."--*Adam and Gould cor.* "And if you can find a diphthong or a triphthong, be pleased to point *that* out too."--*Bucke cor.* "And if you can find a trissyllable or a polysyllable, point *it* out."--*Id.* "The false refuges in which the atheist or the sceptic *has* intrenched *himself*."--*Chr. Spect. cor.* "While the man or woman thus assisted by art, expects *his* charms or *hers* will be imputed to nature alone."--*Opie cor.* "When you press a watch, or pull a clock, *it answers* your question with precision; for *it repeats* exactly the hour of the day, and tells you neither more nor less than you desire to know."--*Bolingbroke cor.*

"Not the Mogul, or Czar of Muscovy, Not Prester John, or Cham of Tartary, *Is* in *his mansion* monarch more than I."--*King cor.*

CHAPTER VI.

--VERBS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XIV AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB AFTER THE NOMINATIVE.

"Before you left Sicily, you *were reconciled* to Verres."--*Duncan cor.* "Knowing that you *were* my old master's good friend."--*Spect. cor.* "When the judge *dares* not act, where is the loser's remedy?"--*Webster cor.* "Which extends it no farther than the variation of the verb *extends*."--*Mur. cor.* "They presently dry without hurt, as myself *have* often proved."--*R. Williams cor.* "Whose goings-forth *have* been from of old, from everlasting."--*Micah*, v, 2. "You *were* paid to fight against Alexander, not to rail at him."--*Porter cor.* "Where more than one part of speech *are* almost always concerned."--*Churchill cor.* "Nothing less than murders, rapines, and conflagrations, *employs* their thoughts." Or: "No less things than murders, rapines, and conflagrations, *employ* their thoughts."--*Duncan cor.* "I wondered where you *were*, my dear."--*Lloyd cor.* "When thou most sweetly *singst*."--*Drummond cor.* "Who *dares*, at the present day, avow himself equal to the task?"--*Gardiner cor.* "Every body *is* very kind to her, and not discourteous to me."--*Byron cor.* "As to what thou *sayst* respecting the diversity of opinions."--*M. B. cor.* "Thy nature, Immortality, who *knows*?"--*Everest cor.* "The natural distinction of sex in animals, gives rise to what, in grammar, *are* called genders."--*Id.* "Some pains *have* likewise been taken."--*Scott cor.* "And many a steed in his stables *was* seen."--*Penwarne cor.* "They *were* forced to eat what never was esteemed food."--*Josephus cor.* "This that you yourself *have* spoken, I desire that they may take their oaths upon."--*Hutchinson cor.* "By men whose experience best *qualifies* them to judge."--*Committee cor.* "He *dares* venture to kill and destroy several other kinds of fish."--*Walton cor.* "If a gudgeon meet a roach, He *ne'er will* venture to approach." Or thus: "If a gudgeon *meets* a roach, He *dares* not venture to approach."--*Swift cor.* "Which thou *endeavourst* to establish to thyself."--*Barclay cor.* "But they pray together much oftener than thou *insinuat'st*."--*Id.* "Of people of all denominations, over whom thou *presidest*."--*N. Waln cor.* "I can produce ladies and gentlemen whose progress *has* been astonishing."--*Chazotte cor.* "Which of these two kinds of vice *is the* more criminal?"--*Dr. Brown cor.* "Every twenty-four hours *afford* to us the vicissitudes of day and night."--*Smith's False Syntax, New Gram.*, p. 103. Or thus: "Every *period* of twenty-four hours *affords* to us the vicissitudes of day and night."--*Smith cor.* "Every four years *add* an other day."--*Smith's False Syntax, Gram.*, p. 103. Better thus: "Every *fourth year adds* an other day."--*Smith cor.* "Every error I could find, *Has* my busy muse employed."--*Swift cor.* "A studious scholar *deserves* the approbation of his teacher."--*Sanborn cor.* "Perfect submission to the rules of a school *indicates* good breeding."--*Id.* "A comparison in which more than two *are* concerned."--*Lennie's Gram.*, p. 78. "By the facilities which artificial language *affords* them."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "Now thyself *hast* lost both lop and top."--*Spencer cor.* "Glad tidings *are* brought to the poor."--*Campbell cor.* "Upon which, all that is pleasurable or affecting in elocution, chiefly *depends*."--*Sher. cor.* "No pains *have* been spared to render this work complete."--*Bullions cor.* "The United States *contain* more than a twentieth part of the land of this globe."--*Clinton cor.* "I am mindful that myself *am* strong."--*Fowler cor.* "Myself *am* (not *is*) weak;"--"Thyself *art* (not *is*) weak."--*Id.*

"How pale each worshipful and reverend guest Rises from clerical or city feast!"--*Pope cor.*

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB BEFORE THE NOMINATIVE.

"Where *were* you born? In London."--*Buchanan cor.* "There *are* frequent occasions for commas."--*Ingersoll cor.* "There necessarily *follow* from thence these plain and unquestionable consequences."--*Priestley cor.* "And to this impression *contributes* the redoubled effort."--*Kames cor.* "Or, if he was, *were* there no spiritual men then?"--*Barclay cor.* "So, by these two also, *are* signified their contrary principles."--*Id.* "In the motions made with the hands, *consists* the chief part of gesture in speaking."--*Blair cor.* "*Dares* he assume the name of a popular magistrate?"--*Duncan cor.* "There *were* no damages as in England, and so Scott lost his

wager."--*Byron cor.* "In fact, there *exist* such resemblances."--*Kames cor.* "To him *give* all the prophets witness."--*Acts*, x, 43. "That there *were* so many witnesses and actors."--*Addison cor.* "How *do* this man's definitions stand affected?"--*Collier cor.* "Whence *come* all the powers and prerogatives of rational beings?"--*Id.* "Nor *do* the scriptures cited by thee prove thy intent."--*Barclay cor.* "Nor *does* the scripture cited by thee prove the contrary."--*Id.* "Why then *citest* thou a scripture which is so plain and clear for it?"--*Id.* "But what *say* the Scriptures as to respect of persons among Christians?"--*Id.* "But in the mind of man, while in the savage state, there *seem* to be hardly any ideas but what enter by the senses;"--*Robertson cor.* "What sounds *has* each of the vowels?"--*Griscom cor.* "Out of this *have* grown up aristocracies, monarchies, despotisms, tyrannies."--*Brownson cor.* "And there *were* taken up, of fragments that remained to them, twelve baskets."--*Bible cor.* "There *seem* to be but two general classes."--*Day cor.* "Hence *arise* the six forms of expressing time."--*Id.* "There *seem* to be no other words required."--*Chandler cor.* "If there *are* two, the second increment is the syllable next to the last."--*Bullions cor.* "Hence *arise* the following advantages."--*Id.* "There are no data by which it can be estimated."--*Calhoun cor.* "To this class, *belongs* the Chinese language, in which we have nothing but naked *primitives*."--*Fowler cor.* [[Fist] "Nothing but naked *roots*" is faulty; because no word is a *root*, except some derivative spring from it."--G. B.] "There *were* several other grotesque figures that presented themselves."--*Spect. cor.* "In these *consists* that sovereign good which ancient sages so much extol."--*Percival cor.* "Here *come* those I have done good to against my will."--*Shak. cor.* "Where there *are* more than one auxiliary." Or: "Where there *are* more *auxiliaries* than one."--*O. B. Peirce cor.*

"On me to cast those eyes where *shines* nobility." --*Sidney cor.*

"Here *are* half-pence in plenty, for one you'll have twenty." --*Swift cor.*

"Ah, Jockey, ill *advise*st thou. I wis, To think of songs at such a time as this." --*Churchill cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--THE RELATIVE AND VERB.

"Thou, who *lovest* us, wilt protect us still."--*A. Murray cor.* "To use that endearing language, 'Our Father, who *art* in heaven.'"--*Bates cor.* "Resembling the passions that *produce* these actions."--*Kames cor.* "Except *dwarf*, *grief*, *hoof*, *muff*, &c., which *take s* to make the plural."--*Ash cor.* "As the cattle that *go* before me, and the children, be able to endure."--*Gen. cor.* "Where is the man who *dares* affirm that such an action is mad?"--*Dr. Pratt cor.* "The ninth book of Livy affords one of the most beautiful exemplifications of historical painting, that *are* anywhere to be met with."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "In some studies, too, that relate to taste and fine writing, which *are* our object," &c.--*Id.* "Of those affecting situations which *make* man's heart feel for man."--*Id.* "We see very plainly, that it is neither Osmyn nor Jane Shore that *speaks*."--*Id.* "It should assume that briskness and ease which *are* suited to the freedom of dialogue."--*Id.* "Yet they grant, that none ought to be admitted into the ministry, but such as *are* truly pious."--*Barclay cor.* "This letter is one of the best that *have* been written about Lord Byron."--*Hunt cor.* "Thus, besides what *were* sunk, the Athenians took above two hundred ships."--*Goldsmith cor.* "To have made and declared such orders as *were* necessary."--*Hutchinson cor.* "The idea of such a collection of men as *makes* an army."--*Locke cor.* "I'm not the first that *has* been wretched."--*Southern cor.* "And the faint sparks of it which *are* in the angels, are concealed from our view."--*Calvin cor.* "The subjects are of such a nature, as *allows* room (or, as to *allow* room) for much diversity of taste and sentiment."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "It is in order to propose examples of such perfection, as *is* not to be found in the real examples of society."--*Formey cor.* "I do not believe that he would amuse himself with such fooleries as *have* been attributed to him."--*Id.* "That shepherd, who first *taught* the chosen seed."--*Milton, P. L.*, B. i, l. 8. "With respect to the vehemence and warmth which *are* allowed in popular eloquence."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Ambition is one of those passions that *are* never to be satisfied."--*Home cor.* "Thou wast he that *led* out and *brought* in Israel."--*Bible cor.* "Art thou the man of God, that *came* from Judah?"--*Id.*

"How beauty is excell'd by manly grace And wisdom, which alone *are* truly fair."--*Milton cor.*

"What art thou, speak, that on designs unknown, While others sleep, thus *roamst* the camp alone?"--*Pope cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--NOMINATIVE WITH ADJUNCTS.

"The literal sense of the words *is*, that the action had been done."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "The rapidity of his movements *was* beyond example."--*Wells cor.* "Murray's Grammar, together with his Exercises and Key, *has* nearly superseded every thing else of the kind."--*Murray's Rec. cor.* "The mechanism of clocks and watches *was* totally unknown."--*Hume cor.* "The *it*, together with the verb *to be*, *expresses a state* of being."--*Cobbett cor.* "Hence it is, that the profuse variety of objects in some natural landscapes, *occasions neither* confusion nor fatigue."--*Kames cor.* "Such a clatter of sounds *indicates* rage and ferocity."--*Gardiner cor.* "One of the fields *makes* threescore square yards, and the other, only fifty-five."--*Duncan cor.* "The happy effects of this fable *are* worth attending to."--*Bailey cor.* "Yet the glorious serenity of its parting rays, still *lingers* with us."--*Gould cor.* "Enough of its form and force *is* retained to render them uneasy."--*Maturin cor.* "The works of nature, in this respect, *are* extremely regular."--*Pratt cor.* "No small addition of exotic and foreign words and phrases, *has* been made by commerce."--*Bicknell cor.* "The dialect of some nouns *is noticed* in the notes."--*Milnes cor.* "It has been said, that a discovery of the full resources of the arts, *affords* the means of debasement, or of perversion."--*Rush cor.* "By which means, the order of the words *is* disturbed."--*Holmes cor.* "The two-fold influence of these and the others, *requires* the verb to be in the plural form."--*Peirce cor.* "And each of these *affords* employment."--*Percival cor.* "The pronunciation of the vowels *is* best explained under the rules relative to the consonants."--*Coar cor.* "The judicial power of these courts *extends* to all cases in law and equity."--*Hall and Baker cor.* "One of you *has* stolen my money."--*Humorist cor.* "Such redundancy of epithets, in stead of pleasing, *produces* satiety and disgust."--*Kames cor.* "It has been alleged, that a compliance with the rules of Rhetoric, *tends* to cramp the mind."--*Hiley cor.* "Each of these *is* presented to us in different relations."--*Hendrick cor.* "The past tense of these verbs, (*should, would, might, could,*) is very indefinite with respect to time."--*Bullions cor.* "The power of the words which are said to govern this mood, *is* distinctly understood."--*Chandler cor.*

"And now, at length, the fated term of years The world's desire *hath* brought, and lo! the God appears."
--*Lowth cor.*

"Variety of numbers still *belongs* To the soft melody of *odes*, or *songs*." --*Brightland cor.*

UNDER NOTE III.--COMPOSITE OR CONVERTED SUBJECTS.

"Many are the works of human industry, which to begin and finish, *is* hardly granted to the same man."--*Johnson cor.* "To lay down rules for these, *is* as inefficacious."--*Pratt cor.* "To profess regard and act *injuriously*, *discovers* a base mind."--*L. Murray et al. cor.* "To magnify to the height of wonder things great, new, and admirable, extremely *pleases* the mind of man."--*Fisher cor.* "In this passage, '*according as*' *is* used in a manner which is very common."--*Webster cor.* "A CAUSE DE, *is* called a preposition; A CAUSE QUE, a conjunction."--*Webster cor.* "To these *it* is given to speak in the name of the Lord."--*The Friend cor.* "While *wheat* has no plural, *oats* has seldom any singular."--*Cobbett cor.* "He cannot assert that *ll* (i.e., *double Ell*) *is* inserted in *fullness* to denote the sound of *u*"--*Cobb cor.* "*Ch*, in Latin, *has* the power of *k*."--*Gould cor.* "*Ti*, before a vowel, and unaccented, *has* the sound of *si* or *ci*."--*Id.* "In words derived from French, as *chagrin*, *chicanery*, and *chaise*, *ch* *is* sounded like *sh*."--*Bucke cor.* "But, in the words *schism*, *schismatic*, &c., the *ch* is silent."--*Id.* "*Ph*, at the beginning of words, *is* always sounded like *f*."--*Bucke cor.* "*Ph* *has* the sound of *f* as in *philosophy*."--*Webster cor.* "*Sh* *has* one sound only, as in *shall*."--*Id.* "*Th* *has* two sounds."--*Id.* "*Sc*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, or *r*, *has* the sound of *sk*."--*Id.* "*Aw* *has* the sound of *a* in *hall*."--*Bolles cor.* "*Ew* *sounds* like *u*"--*Id.* "*Ow*, when both vowels *are* sounded, *has* the power of *ou* in *thou*."--*Id.* "*Ui*, when both vowels *are* pronounced in one syllable, *sounds* like *wi* short, as in *languid*."--*Id.*

"*Ui* three other sounds at least expresses, As who hears GUILE, REBUILD, and BRUISE, *confesses*."
--*Brightland cor.*

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, ONE, EITHER, AND NEITHER.

"When each of the letters which compose this word, *has* been learned."--*Dr. Weeks cor.* "As neither of us *denies* that both Homer and Virgil have great beauties."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Yet neither of them *is* remarkable for precision."--*Id.* "How far each of the three great epic poets *has* distinguished *himself*."--*Id.* "Each of these *produces* a separate, agreeable sensation."--*Id.* "On the Lord's day, every one of us Christians *keeps* the sabbath."--*Tr. of Iren. cor.* "And each of them *bears* the image of purity and holiness."--*Hope of Is. cor.* "Was either of these meetings ever acknowledged or recognized?"--*Foster cor.* "Whilst neither of these letters *exists* in the Eugubian inscription."--*Knight cor.* "And neither of them *is* properly termed indefinite."--*Dr. Wilson cor.* "As likewise of the several subjects, which have in effect *their several verbs*:" or,--"*each of which has* in effect *its own verb*."--*Lowth cor.* "Sometimes, when the word ends in *s*, neither of the signs *is* used."--*A. Mur. cor.* "And as neither of these manners *offends* the ear."--*J. Walker cor.* "Neither of these two tenses *is* confined to this signification only."--*R. Johnson cor.* "But neither of these circumstances *is* intended here."--*Tooke cor.* "So that all are indebted to each, and each *is* dependent upon all."--*Bible Rep. cor.* "And yet neither of them *expresses* any more action in this case, than *it* did in the other."--*Bullions cor.* "Each of these expressions *denotes* action."--*Hallock cor.* "Neither of these moods *seems* to be defined by distinct boundaries."--*Butler cor.* "Neither of these solutions *is* correct."--*Bullions cor.* "Neither *bears* any sign of case at all."--*Fowler cor.*

"Each in *his* turn, like Banquo's monarchs, *stalks*." Or:-- "All in *their* turn, like Banquo's monarchs, *stalk*."--*Byron cor.*

"And tell what each *doth* by *the* other lose."--*Shak. cor.*

UNDER NOTE V.--VERB BETWEEN TWO NOMINATIVES.

"The quarrels of lovers *are but* a renewal of love."--*Adam et al. cor.* "Two dots, one placed above the other, *are* called a *Sheva*."--*Wilson cor.* "A few centuries more or less *are* a matter of small consequence."--*Id.* "Pictures were the first step towards the art of writing; *hieroglyphics were* the second step."--*Parker cor.* "The comeliness of youth *is* modesty and frankness; of age, condescension and dignity." Or, much better: "The *great ornaments* of youth are," &c.--*Murray cor.* "Merit and good works *are* the end of man's motion."--*Bacon cor.* "Divers philosophers hold, that the lips *are* parcel of the mind."--*Shak. cor.* "The clothing of the natives *was* the skins of wild beasts." Or thus: "The *clothes* of the natives *were* skins of wild beasts."--*Hist. cor.* "Prepossessions in *favour* of our *native* town, *are* not a matter of surprise."--*Webster cor.* "Two shillings and sixpence *are* half a crown, but not a half crown."--*Priestley and Bicknell cor.* "Two vowels, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and uniting in one sound, *are* called a *diphthong*."--*Cooper cor.* "Two or more sentences united together *are* called a Compound Sentence."--*Day cor.* "Two or more words rightly put together, but not completing an entire proposition, *are* called a Phrase."--*Id.* "But the common number of times *is* five." Or, to state the matter truly: "But the common number of *tenses is* six."--*Brit. Gram. cor.* "Technical terms, injudiciously introduced, *are an other* source of darkness in composition."--*Jamieson cor.* "The United States *are* the great middle division of North America."--*Morse cor.* "A great cause of the low state of industry, *was* the restraints put upon it."--*Priestley's Gram., p. 199; Churchill's, 414.* "Here two tall ships *become* the victor's prey."--*Rowe cor.* "The expenses incident to an outfit *are* surely no object."--*The Friend cor.*

"Perhaps their loves, or else their sheep, *Were* all that did their silly thoughts so busy keep."--*Milt. cor.*

UNDER NOTE VI.--CHANGE OF THE NOMINATIVE.

"Much *care* has been taken, to explain all the kinds of words."--*Inf. S. Gr. cor.* "Not *fewer* [years] than three years, are spent in attaining this faculty." Or, perhaps better: "Not less than three *years' time*, is spent in attaining this faculty." Or thus: "Not less *time* than three years, *is* spent," &c.--*Gardiner cor.* "Where this

night are met in state Many *friends* to gratulate His wish'd presence."--*Milton cor.* "Peace! my darling, here's no danger, Here's no *ox anear* thy bed."--*Watts cor.* "But *all* of these are mere conjectures, and some of them very unhappy ones."--*Coleridge cor.* "The old theorists' *practice* of calling the Interrogatives and Repliers ADVERBS, is only a part of their regular system of naming words."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "Where *several sentences* occur, place them in the order *of the facts*."--*Id.* "And that *all the events* in conjunction make a regular chain of causes and effects."--*Kames cor.* "In regard to their origin, the Grecian and Roman republics, though equally involved in the obscurities and uncertainties of fabulous events, present one remarkable distinction."--*Adams cor.* "In these respects, *man* is left by nature an unformed, unfinished creature."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "The *Scriptures* are the oracles of God himself."--*Hooker cor.* "And at our gates are all *kinds* of pleasant fruits."--*S. Song cor.* "The *preterits* of *pluck*, *look*, and *toss*, are, in speech, pronounced *pluckt*, *lookt*, *tosst*."--*Fowler corrected.*

"Severe the doom that days *prolonged impose*, To stand sad witness of unnumbered woes!"--*Melmoth cor.*

UNDER NOTE VII.--FORMS ADAPTED TO DIFFERENT STYLES.

1. *Forms adapted to the Common or Familiar Style.* "Was it thou[538] that *built* that house?"--*Brown's Institutes*, Key, p. 270. "That boy *writes* very elegantly."--*Ib.* "*Could* not thou write without blotting thy book?"--*Ib.* "*Dost* not thou think--or, *Don't* thou think, it will rain to-day?"--*Ib.* "*Does* not--or, *Don't* your cousin intend to visit you?"--*Ib.* "That boy *has* torn my book."--*Ib.* "Was it thou that *spread* the hay?"--*Ib.* "Was it James, or thou, that *let* him in?"--*Ib.* "He *dares* not say a word."--*Ib.* "Thou *stood* in my way and *hindered* me."--*Ib.*

"Whom *do* I *see*?--Whom *dost* thou *see* now?--Whom *does* he *see*?--Whom *dost* thou *love* most?--What *art* thou *doing* to-day?--What person *dost* thou *see* teaching that boy?--He *has* two new knives.--Which road *dost* thou *take*?--What child is he *teaching*?"--*Ingersoll cor.* "Thou, who *mak'st* my shoes, *sellst* many more." Or thus: "You, who *make* my shoes, *sell* many more."--*Id.*

"The English language *has* been much cultivated during the last two hundred years. It *has* been considerably polished and refined."--*Lowth cor.* "This *style* is ostentatious, and *does* not suit grave writing."--*Priestley cor.* "But custom *has* now appropriated *who* to persons, and *which* to things" [and brute animals].--*Id.* "The indicative mood *shows* or *declares something*; as, *Ego amo*, I love; or else *asks* a question; as, *Amas tu?* Dost thou love?"--*Paul's Ac. cor.* "Though thou *cannot* do much for the cause, thou *may* and *should* do something."--*Murray cor.* "The support of so many of his relations, was a heavy tax: but thou *knowst* (or, *you know*) he paid it cheerfully."--*Id.* "It may, and often *does*, come short of it."--*Murray's Gram.*, p. 359.

"'Twas thou, who, while thou *seem'd* to chide, To give me all thy pittance *tried*."--*Mitford cor.*

2. *Forms adapted to the Solemn or Biblical Style.* "The Lord *hath prepared* his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom *ruleth* over all."--*Psalms*, ciii, 19. "Thou *answeredst* them, O Lord our God; thou *wast* a God that forgave[539] them, though thou *tookest* vengeance of their inventions."--See *Psalms*, xcix, 8. "Then thou *spakest* in vision to thy Holy One, and *saidst*, I have laid help upon one that is mighty."--*Ib.*, lxxxix, 19. "'So then, it is not of him that *willeth*, nor of him that *runneth*, but of God that *showeth* mercy;' who *dispenseth* his blessings, whether temporal or spiritual, as *seemeth* good in his sight."--*Christian Experience of St. Paul*, p. 344; see *Rom.*, ix, 16.

"Thou, the mean while, *wast* blending with my thought; Yea, with my life, and life's own secret joy."--*Coleridge cor.*

UNDER NOTE VIII.--EXPRESS THE NOMINATIVE.

"Who is here so base, that *he* would be a bondman?"--*Shak. cor.* "Who is here so rude, *he* would not be a

Roman?--*Id.* "There is not a sparrow *which* falls to the ground without his notice." Or better: "*Not a sparrow* falls to the ground, without his notice."--*Murray cor.* "In order to adjust them *in such a manner* as shall consist equally with the perspicuity and the strength of the period."--*Id. and Blair cor.* "But sometimes there is a verb *which* comes in." Better: "But sometimes there is a verb *introduced*."--*Cobbett cor.* "Mr. Prince has a genius *which* would prompt him to better things."--*Spect. cor.* "It is this *that* removes that impenetrable mist."--*Harris cor.* "By the praise *which* is given him for his courage."--*Locke cor.* "There is no man *who* would be more welcome here."--*Steele cor.* "Between an antecedent and a consequent, or what goes before, and *what* immediately follows."--*Blair cor.* "And as connected with what goes before and *what* follows."--*Id.* "No man doth a wrong for the wrong's sake."--*Bacon cor.* "All the various miseries of life, which people bring upon themselves by negligence *or* folly, and *which* might have been avoided by proper care, are instances of this."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "Ancient philosophers have taught many things in *favour* of morality, so far at least as *it respects* justice and goodness towards our fellow-creatures."--*Fuller cor.* "Indeed, if there be any such, *who* have been, or *who* appear to be of us, as suppose there is not a wise man among us all, nor an honest man, that is able to judge betwixt his brethren; we shall not covet to meddle in their *matters*."--*Barclay cor.* "There were *some* that drew back; there were *some* that made shipwreck of faith; yea, there were *some* that brought in damnable heresies."--*Id.* "The nature of the cause rendered this plan altogether proper; and, *under* similar *circumstances*, the orator's *method* is fit to be imitated."--*Blair cor.* "This is an idiom to which our language is strongly inclined, and *which* was formerly very prevalent."--*Churchill cor.* "His roots are wrapped about the heap, and *he* seeth the place of stones."--*Bible cor.*

"New York, Fifthmonth 3d, 1823.

Dear friend,

I am sorry to hear of thy loss; but *I* hope it may be retrieved. *I* should be happy to render thee any assistance in my power. *I* shall call to see thee to-morrow morning. Accept assurances of my regard. A. B."

"New York, May 3d, P. M., 1823.

Dear sir,

I have just received the kind note *you* favoured me with this morning; and *I* cannot forbear to express my gratitude to you. On further information, *I* find *I* have not lost so much as *I* at first supposed; and *I* believe *I* shall still be able to meet all my engagements. *I* should, however, be happy to see you. Accept, dear sir, my most cordial thanks. C. D."

See *Brown's Institutes*, p. 271.

"Will martial flames forever fire thy mind, And *wilt thou* never be to Heaven resign'd?"--*Pope cor.*

UNDER NOTE IX.--APPLICATION OF MOODS.

First Clause of the Note.--The Subjunctive Present.

"He will not be pardoned unless he *repent*."--*Inst.*, p. 191. "If thou *find* any kernelwort in this marshy meadow, bring it to me."--*Neef cor.* "If thou *leave* the room, do not forget to shut that drawer."--*Id.* "If thou *grasp* it stoutly, thou wilt not be hurt:" or, (familiarily,)--"thou *will* not be hurt."--*Id.* "On condition that he *come*, I will consent to stay."--*Murray's Key*, p. 208. "If he *be* but discreet, he will succeed."--*Inst.*, p. 280. "Take heed that thou *speak* not to Jacob."--*Gen.*, xxxi, 24. "If thou *cast* me off, I shall be miserable."--*Inst.*, p. 280. "Send them to me, if thou *please*."--*Ib.* "Watch the door of thy lips, lest thou *utter* folly."--*Ib.* "Though a liar *speak* the truth, he will hardly be believed."--*Bartlett cor.* "I will go, unless I *be* ill."--*L. Murray cor.* "If the word or words understood *be* supplied, the true construction will be apparent."--*Id.* "Unless thou *see* the

propriety of the measure, we shall not desire thy support."--*Id.* "Unless thou *make* a timely retreat, the danger will be unavoidable."--*Id.* "We may live happily, though our possessions *be* small."--*Id.* "If they *be* carefully studied, they will enable the student to parse all the exercises."--*Id.* "If the accent *be* fairly preserved on the proper syllable, this drawling sound will never be heard."--*Id.* "One phrase may, in point of sense, be equivalent to an other, though its grammatical nature *be* essentially different."--*Id.* "If any man *obey* not our word by this epistle, note that man."--2 *Thess.*, iii, 14. "Thy skill will be the greater, if thou *hit* it."--*Putnam, Cobb, or Knowles, cor.* "We shall overtake him, though he *run*."--*Priestley et al. cor.* "We shall be disgusted, if he *give* us too much."--*Blair cor.*

"What is't to thee, if he *neglect* thy urn, Or without spices *let* thy body burn?"--*Dryden cor.*

Second Clause of Note IX.--The Subjunctive Imperfect.[540]

"And so would I, if I *were* he."--*Inst.*, p. 191. "If I *were* a Greek, I should resist Turkish despotism."--*Cardell cor.* "If he *were* to go, he would attend to your business."--*Id.* "If thou *felt* as I do, we should soon decide."--*Inst.*, p. 280. "Though thou *shed* thy blood in the cause, it would but prove thee sincerely a fool."--*Ib.* "If thou *loved* him, there would be more evidence of it."--*Ib.* "If thou *convinced* him, he would not act accordingly."--*Murray cor.* "If there *were* no liberty, there would be no real crime."--*Formey cor.* "If the house *were* burnt down, the case would be the same."--*Foster cor.* "As if the mind *were* not always in action, when it prefers any thing."--*West cor.* "Suppose I *were* to say, 'Light is a body.'"--*Harris cor.* "If either oxygen or azote *were* omitted, life would be destroyed."--*Gurney cor.* "The verb *dare* is sometimes used as if it *were* an auxiliary."--*Priestley cor.* "A certain lady, whom I could name, if it *were* necessary."--*Spect. cor.* "If the *e* *were* dropped, *c* and *g* would assume their hard sounds."--*Buchanan cor.* "He would no more comprehend it, than if it *were* the speech of a Hottentot."--*Neef cor.* "If thou *knew* the gift of God," &c.--*Bible cor.* "I wish I *were* at home."--*O. B. Peirce cor.* "Fact alone does not constitute right: if it *did*, general warrants were lawful."--*Junius cor.* "Thou *lookst* upon thy boy, as though thou *guessed* it."--*Putnam, Cobb, or Knowles, cor.* "He fought as if he *contended* for life."--*Hiley cor.* "He fought as if he *were* contending for his life."--*Id.*

"The dewdrop glistens on thy leaf, As if thou *shed* for me a tear; As if thou *knew* my tale of grief, *Felt* all my sufferings severe."--*Latham cor.*

Last Clause of Note IX.--The Indicative Mood.

"If he *knows* the way, he does not need a guide."--*Inst.*, p. 191. "And if there *is* no difference, one of them must be superfluous, and ought to be rejected."--*Murray cor.* "I cannot say that I admire this construction though it *is* much used."--*Priestley cor.* "We are disappointed, if the verb *does* not immediately follow it."--*Id.* "If it *was* they, *that* acted so ungratefully, they are doubly in fault."--*Murray cor.* "If art *becomes* apparent, it disgusts the reader."--*Jamieson cor.* "Though perspicuity *is* more properly a rhetorical than a grammatical quality, I thought it better to include it in this book."--*Campbell cor.* "Although the efficient cause *is* obscure, the final cause of those sensations lies open."--*Blair cor.* "Although the barrenness of language, or the want of words, *is* doubtless one cause of the invention of tropes."--*Id.* "Though it *enforces* not its instructions, yet it furnishes a greater variety."--*Id.* "In other cases, though the idea *is* one, the words remain quite separate."--*Priestley cor.* "Though the form of our language *is* more simple, and has that peculiar beauty."--*Buchanan cor.* "Human works are of no significancy till they *are* completed."--*Kames cor.* "Our disgust lessens gradually till it *vanishes* altogether."--*Id.* "And our relish improves by use, till it *arrives* at perfection."--*Id.* "So long as he *keeps* himself in his own proper element."--*Coke cor.* "Whether this translation *was* ever published or not, I am wholly ignorant."--*Sale cor.* "It is false to affirm, 'As it *is* day, it is light,' unless it actually *is* day."--*Harris cor.* "But we may at midnight affirm, 'If it *is* day, it is light.'"--*Id.* "If the Bible *is* true, it is a volume of unspeakable interest."--*Dickinson cor.* "Though he *was* a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered."--*Bible cor.* "If David then *calleth* (or *calls*) him Lord, how is he his son?"--*Id.*

"Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill *Appears* in writing, or in judging, ill."--*Pope cor.*

UNDER NOTE X.--FALSE SUBJUNCTIVES.

"If a man *has built* a house, the house is his."--*Wayland cor.* "If God *has required* them of him, as is the fact, he has time."--*Id.* "Unless a previous understanding to the contrary *has been had* with the principal."--*Berrian cor.* "O! if thou *hast hid* them in some flowery cave."--*Milton cor.* "O! if Jove's will *has linked* that amorous power to thy soft lay."--*Id.* "SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: If thou love, If thou loved."--*Dr. Priestley, Dr. Murray, John Burn, David Blair, Harrison, and others.* "Till Religion, the pilot of the soul, *hath* lent thee her unfathomable coil."--*Tupper cor.* "Whether nature or art *contributes* most to form an orator, is a trifling inquiry."--*Blair cor.* "Year after year steals something from us, till the decaying fabric *totters* of itself, and *at length crumbles* into dust."--*Murray cor.* "If spiritual pride *has* not entirely vanquished humility."--*West cor.* "Whether he *has* gored a son, or *has* gored a daughter."--*Bible cor.* "It is doubtful whether the object introduced by way of simile, *relates* to what goes before or to what follows."--*Kames cor.*

"And bridle in thy headlong wave, Till thou our summons answer'd *hast*." Or:-- "And bridle in thy headlong wave, Till thou *hast granted what we crave*."--*Milt. cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XV AND ITS NOTE.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The gentry *are* punctilious in their etiquette."--*G. B.* "In France, the peasantry *go* barefoot, and the middle sort *make* use of wooden shoes."--*Harvey cor.* "The people *rejoice* in that which should cause sorrow."--*Murray varied.* "My people *are* foolish, they have not known me."--*Bible and Lowth cor.* "For the people *speak*, but *do not* write."--*Phil. Mu. cor.* "So that all the people that *were* in the camp, trembled."--*Bible cor.* "No company *like* to confess that they are ignorant."--*Todd cor.* "Far the greater part of their captives *were* anciently sacrificed."--*Robertson cor.* "*More than* one half of them *were* cut off before the return of spring."--*Id.* "The other class, termed Figures of Thought, *suppose* the words to be used in their proper and literal meaning."--*Blair and Mur. cor.* "A multitude of words in their dialect *approach* to the Teutonic form, and therefore afford excellent assistance."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "A great majority of our authors *are* defective in manner."--*J. Brown cor.* "The greater part of these new-coined words *have* been rejected."--*Tooke cor.* "The greater part of the words it contains, *are* subject to certain modifications *or* inflections."--*The Friend cor.* "While all our youth *prefer* her to the rest."--*Waller cor.* "Mankind *are* appointed to live in a future state."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "The greater part of human kind *speak* and *act* wholly by imitation."--*Rambler, No. 146.* "The greatest part of human gratifications *approach* so nearly to vice."--*Id., No. 160.*

"While still the busy world *are* treading o'er The paths they trod five thousand years before."--*Young cor.*

UNDER THE NOTE.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"In old English, this species of words *was* numerous."--*Dr. Murray cor.* "And a series of exercises in false grammar *is* introduced towards the end."--*Frost cor.* "And a jury, in conformity with the same idea, *was* anciently called *homagium*, the homage, or manhood."--*Webster cor.* "With respect to the former, there *is* indeed a plenty of means."--*Kames cor.* "The number of school districts *has* increased since the last year."--*Throop cor.* "The Yearly Meeting *has* purchased with its funds these publications."--*Foster cor.* "*Has* the legislature power to prohibit assemblies?"--*Sullivan cor.* "So that the whole number of the streets *was* fifty."--*Rollin cor.* "The number of inhabitants *was* not more than four millions."--*Smollett cor.* "The house of Commons *was* of small weight."--*Hume cor.* "The assembly of the wicked *hath* (or *has*) inclosed me."--*Psal. cor.* "Every kind of convenience and comfort *is* provided."--*C. S. Journal cor.* "Amidst the great decrease of the inhabitants in Spain, the body of the clergy *has* suffered no diminution; but *it* has rather been gradually

increasing."--*Payne cor.* "Small as the number of inhabitants *is*, yet their poverty is extreme."--*Id.* "The number of the names *was* about one hundred and twenty."--*Ware and Acts cor.*

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XVI AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF--THE VERB AFTER JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"So much ability and [so much] merit *are* seldom found."--*Mur. et al. cor.* "The *etymology and syntax* of the language *are* thus spread before the learner."--*Bullions cor.* "Dr. Johnson tells us, that, in English poetry, the accent and the quantity of syllables *are* the same thing."--*Adams cor.* "Their general scope and tendency, having never been clearly apprehended, *are* not remembered at all."--*L. Murray cor.* "The soil and sovereignty *were* not purchased of the natives."--*Knapp cor.* "The boldness, freedom, and variety, of our blank verse, *are* infinitely more favourable to *sublimity of style*, than [are the constraint and uniformity of] rhyme."--*Blair cor.* "The vivacity and sensibility of the Greeks *seem* to have been much greater than ours."--*Id.* "For sometimes the mood and tense *are* signified by the verb, sometimes they are signified of the verb by something else."--*R. Johnson cor.* "The verb and the noun making a complete sense, *whereas* the participle and the noun *do* not."--*Id.* "The growth and decay of passions and emotions, traced through all their mazes, *are* a subject too extensive for an undertaking like the present."--*Kames cor.* "The true meaning and etymology of some of his words *were* lost."--*Knight cor.* "When the force and direction of personal satire *are* no longer understood."--*Junius cor.* "The frame and condition of man *admit* of no other principle."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "Some considerable time and care *were* necessary."--*Id.* "In consequence of this idea, much ridicule and censure *have* been thrown upon Milton."--*Blair cor.* "With rational beings, nature and reason *are* the same thing."--*Collier cor.* "And the flax and the barley *were* smitten."--*Bible cor.* "The colon and semicolon *divide* a period; this with, and that without, a connective."--*Ware cor.* "Consequently, wherever space and time *are* found, there God must also be."--*Newton cor.* "As the past tense and perfect participle of LOVE *end* in ED, it is regular."--*Chandler cor.* "But the usual arrangement and nomenclature *prevent* this from being readily seen."--*N. Butler cor.* "Do and did simply *imply* opposition or emphasis."--*A. Murray cor.* "I and an other make the plural WE; thou and an other *are* equivalent to YE; he, she, or it, and an other, make THEY."--*Id.* "I and an other or others *are* the same as WE, the first person plural; thou and an other or others *are* the same as YE, the second person plural; he, she, or it, and an other or others, *are* the same as THEY, the third person plural."--*Buchanan and Brit. Gram. cor.* "God and thou *are* two, and thou and thy neighbour *are* two."--*Love Conquest cor.* "Just as AN and A *have* arisen out of the numeral ONE."--*Fowler cor.* "The tone and style of *all* of them, particularly of the first and the last, *are* very different."--*Blair cor.* "Even as the roebuck and the hart *are* eaten."--*Bible cor.* "Then I may conclude that two and three *do not* make five."--*Barclay cor.* "Which, at sundry times, thou and thy brethren *have* received from us."--*Id.* "Two and two *are* four, and one is five:" i, e., "and one, *added to four, is five.*"--*Pope cor.* "Humility and knowledge with poor apparel, *excel* pride and ignorance under costly array."--*See Murray's Key, Rule 2d.* "A page and a half *have* been added to the section on composition."--*Bullions cor.* "Accuracy and expertness in this exercise *are* an important acquisition."--*Id.*

"Woods and groves *are* of thy dressing, Hill and dale *proclaim* thy blessing." Or thus:-- "Hill and valley *boast* thy blessing."--*Milton cor.*

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF--THE VERB BEFORE JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"There *are* a good and a bad, a right and a wrong, in taste, as in other things."--*Blair cor.* "Whence *have* arisen much stiffness and affectation."--*Id.* "To this error, *are* owing, in a great measure, that intricacy and [that] harshness, in his figurative language, which I before *noticed.*"--*Blair and Jamieson cor.* "Hence, in his Night Thoughts, there *prevail* an obscurity and a hardness of style."--*Blair cor.* See *Jamieson's Rhet.*, p. 167. "There *are*, however, in that work, much good sense and excellent criticism."--*Blair cor.* "There *are* too much low wit and scurrility in Plautus." Or: "There *is*, in Plautus, too much of low wit and scurrility."--*Id.* "There *are* too much reasoning and refinement, too much pomp and studied beauty, in them." Or: "There *is* too much of

reasoning and refinement, too much *of* pomp and studied beauty, in them."--*Id.* "Hence *arise* the structure and characteristic expression of exclamation."--*Rush cor.* "And such pilots *are* he and his brethren, according to their own confession."--*Barclay cor.* "Of whom *are* Hymeneus and Philetus; who concerning the truth have erred."--*Bible cor.* "Of whom *are* Hymeneus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan."--*Id.* "And so *were* James and John, the sons of Zebedee."--*Id.* "Out of the same mouth, *proceed* blessing and cursing."--*Id.* "Out of the mouth of the Most High, *proceed* not evil and good."--*Id.* "In which there *are* most plainly a right and a wrong."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "In this sentence, there *are* both an actor and an object."--*R. C. Smith cor.* "In the breastplate, *were* placed the mysterious Urim and Thummim."--*Milman cor.* "What *are* the gender, number, and person, *of the pronoun*[541] in the first *example*?"--*R. C. Smith cor.* "There *seem* to be a familiarity and a want of dignity in it."--*Priestley cor.* "It has been often asked, what *are* Latin and Greek?"--*Lit. Journal cor.* "For where *do* beauty and high wit, But in your constellation, meet?"--*Sam. Butler cor.* "Thence to the land where *flow* Ganges and Indus."--*Milton cor.* "On these foundations, *seem* to rest the midnight riot and dissipation of modern assemblies."--*Dr. Brown cor.* "But what *have* disease, deformity, and filth, upon which the thoughts can be allured to dwell?"--*Dr. Johnson cor.* "How *are* the gender and number of the relative known?"--*Bullions cor.*

"High rides the sun, thick rolls the dust, And feebler *speed* the blow and thrust."--*Scott cor.*

UNDER NOTE I.--CHANGE THE CONNECTIVE.

"In every language, there prevails a certain structure, *or* analogy of parts, which is understood to give foundation to the most reputable usage."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "There runs through his whole manner a stiffness, *an* affectation, which renders him [Shaftsbury] very unfit to be considered a general model."--*Id.* "But where declamation *for* improvement in speech is the sole aim."--*Id.* "For it is by these, chiefly, that the train of thought, the course of reasoning, the whole progress of the mind, in continued discourse of *any kind*, is laid open."--*Lowth cor.* "In all writing and discourse, the proper composition *or* structure of sentences is of the highest importance."--*Dr. Blair cor.* "Here the wishful *and* expectant look of the beggar naturally leads to a vivid conception of that which was the object of his thoughts."--*Campbell cor.* "Who say, that the outward naming of Christ, *with the sign of* the cross, puts away devils."--*Barclay cor.* "By which an oath *with a* penalty was to be imposed *on* the members."--*Junius cor.* "Light, *or* knowledge, in what manner soever afforded us, is equally from God."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "For instance, sickness *or* untimely death is the consequence of intemperance."--*Id.* "When grief *or* blood ill-tempered *vexeth* him." Or: "When grief, *with* blood ill-tempered, *vexes* him"--*Shak. cor.* "Does continuity, *or* connexion, create sympathy and relation in the parts of the body?"--*Collier cor.* "His greatest concern, *his* highest enjoyment, was, to be approved in the sight of his Creator."--*L. Murray cor.* "Know ye not that there is[542] a prince, a great man, fallen this day in Israel?"--*Bible cor.* "What is vice, *or* wickedness? No rarity, you may depend on it."--*Collier cor.* "There is also the fear *or* apprehension of it."--*Bp. Butler cor.* "The apostrophe *with s* (*'s*) is an abbreviation for *is*, the termination of the old English genitive."--*Bullions cor.* "*Ti, ce, OR ci*, when followed by a vowel, usually has the sound of *sh*; as in *partial, ocean, special*."--*Weld cor.*

"Bitter constraint *of* sad occasion dear Compels me to disturb your season due."--*Milton cor.*

"*Debauch'ry, or* excess, though with less noise, As great a portion of mankind destroys."--*Waller cor.*

UNDER NOTE II.--AFFIRMATION WITH NEGATION.

"Wisdom, and not wealth, *procures* esteem."--*Inst., Key, p. 272.* "Prudence, and not pomp, *is* the basis of his fame."--*Ib.* "Not fear, but labour *has* overcome him."--*Ib.* "The decency, and not the abstinence, *makes* the difference."--*Ib.* "Not her beauty, but her talents *attract* attention."--*Ib.* "It is her talents, and not her beauty, *that* attract attention."--*Ib.* "It is her beauty, and not her talents, *that* attracts attention."--*Ib.*

"His belly, not his brains, this impulse *gives*: He'll grow immortal; for he cannot live." Or thus:-- "His *bowels*,

not his brains, this impulse give: He'll grow immortal; for he cannot live."--*Young cor.*

UNDER NOTE III.--AS WELL AS, BUT, OR SAVE.

"Common sense, as well as piety, *tells* us these are proper."--*Fam. Com. cor.* "For without it the critic, as well as the undertaker, ignorant of any rule, *has* nothing left but to abandon *himself* to chance."--*Kames cor.* "And accordingly hatred, as well as love, *is* extinguished by long absence'."--*Id.* "But at every turn the richest melody, as well as the sublimest sentiments, *is* conspicuous."--*Id.* "But it, as well as the lines immediately subsequent, *defies* all translation."--*Coleridge cor.* "But their religion, as well as their customs and manners, *was* strangely misrepresented."--*Bolingbroke, on History*, Paris Edition of 1808, p. 93. "But his jealous policy, as well as the fatal antipathy of Fonseca, *was* conspicuous."--*Robertson cor.* "When their extent, as well as their value, *was* unknown."--*Id.* "The etymology, as well as the syntax, of the more difficult parts of speech, *is* reserved for his attention at a later period."--*Parker and Fox cor.* "What I myself owe to him, no one but myself *knows*."--*Wright cor.* "None, but thou, O mighty prince! *can* avert the blow."--*Inst., Key*, p. 272. "Nothing, but frivolous amusements, *pleases* the indolent."--*Ib.*

"Nought, save the gurglings of the rill, *was* heard."--*G. B.*

"All songsters, save the hooting owl, *were* mute."--*G. B.*

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, EVERY, OR NO.

"Give every word, and every member, *its* due weight and force."--*Murray's Gram.*, Vol. i, p. 316. "And to one of these *belongs* every noun, and every third person of every verb."--*Dr. Wilson cor.* "No law, no restraint, no regulation, *is* required to keep him *within* bounds."--*Lit. Journal cor.* "By that time, every window and every door in the street *was* full of heads."--*Observer cor.* "Every system of religion, and every school of philosophy, *stands* back from this field, and *leaves* Jesus Christ alone, the solitary example." Or: "All *systems* of religion, and *all schools* of philosophy, *stand* back from this field, and *leave* Jesus Christ alone, the solitary example."--*Abbott cor.* "Each day, and each hour, *brings its* portion of duty."--*Inst., Key*, p. 272. "And every one that was in distress, and every one that was in debt, and every one that was discontented, *resorted* unto him."--*Bible cor.* "Every private Christian, *every* member of the church, ought to read and peruse the Scriptures, that *he* may know *his* faith and belief *to be* founded upon them."--*Barclay cor.* "And every mountain and *every* island was moved out of *its place*."--*Bible cor.*

"No bandit fierce, no tyrant mad with pride, No cavern'd hermit